REINFORCED CONCRETE

A FUNDAMENTAL APPROACH

SIXTH EDITION

EDWARD G. NAWY

REINFORCED CONCRETE

A Fundamental Approach

Sixth Edition

Edward G. Nawy
Distinguished Professor
Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering
Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey

PEARSON
Prentice
Hall

Upper Saddle River, New Jersey 07458

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Nawy, Edward G.
Reinforced concrete : a fundamental approach / Edward G. Nawy.—6th ed.
p. cm. (Prentice Hall international series in civil engineering and engineering mechanics)
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-13-241703-7
ISBN-10: 0-13-241703-0
1. Reinforced concrete. 2. Reinforced concrete construction. I. Title.
TA444.N38 2009
624.1'83412--dc22

2008009926

Vice President and Editorial Director, ECS: *Marcia J. Horton*
Senior Editor: *Holly Stark*
Associate Editor: *Dee Bernhard*
Editorial Assistant: *Jennifer Lonschein/Alicia Lucci*
Director of Team-Based Project Management: *Vince O'Brien*
Senior Managing Editor: *Scott Disanno*
Production Liaison: *Jane Bonnell*
Production Editor: *Patty Donovan, Pine Tree Composition*
Manufacturing Manager: *Alan Fischer*
Manufacturing Buyer: *Lisa McDowell*
Marketing Manager: *Tim Galligan*
Marketing Assistant: *Mack Patterson*
Art Director, Cover: *Jayne Conte*
Cover Designer: *Bruce Kenselaar*
Art Editor: *Greg Dulles*
Media Editor: *David Alick*
Media Project Manager: *John M. Cassar*
Composition/Full-Service Project Management: *Pine Tree Composition/Laserwords*

About the Cover: Shown is the Milwaukee Art Museum, Milwaukee, Wisconsin. Construction in reinforced and prestressed concrete in various shapes that include cantilevered canopies and a unique cable-stayed bridge. Rows of exposed situ-cast concrete arches form a galleria that overlooks Lake Michigan. Designed by Architect Santiago Calatrava and opened in 2002. Photo courtesy Professor Tarun Naik, University of Wisconsin at Milwaukee.

Pearson Education Ltd., *London*
Pearson Education Singapore, Pte. Ltd.
Pearson Education Canada, Inc.
Pearson Education—Japan
Pearson Education Australia PTY, Limited
Pearson Education North Asia, Ltd., *Hong Kong*
Pearson Educación de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.
Pearson Education Malaysia, Pte. Ltd.
Pearson Education, Inc., *Upper Saddle River, New Jersey*

PEARSON
Prentice
Hall

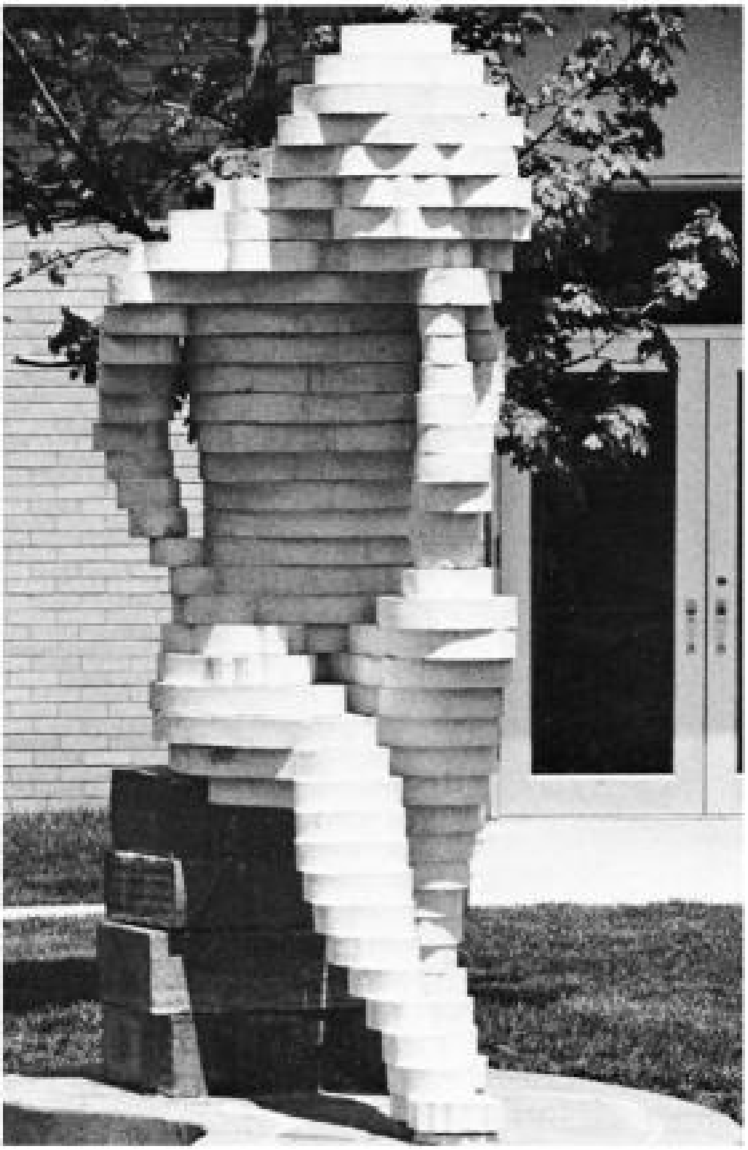
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-241703-7
ISBN-10: 0-13-241703-0

Prentice Hall International Series
in Civil Engineering and Engineering Mechanics

William J. Hall, Editor

Chopra, *Dynamics of Structures, 3/E*
Holtz and Kovacs, *Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering, 2/E (forthcoming)*
MacGregor and Wight, *Reinforced Concrete: Mechanics and Design, 5/E*
Mindess, Young, and Darwin, *Concrete, 2/E*
Nawy, *Prestressed Concrete, 5/E*
Nawy, *Reinforced Concrete: A Fundamental Approach, 6/E*
Popov, *Engineering Mechanics of Solids, 2/E*
Schneider and Dickey, *Reinforced Masonry Design, 3/E*
Wang and Salmon, *Introductory Structural Analysis*



"Reflections"—High-strength polymer concrete sculpture at Rutgers University. Work by R. H. Karol, the civil engineering class of 1982, and the author.

To
Rachel E. Nawy

For her high-limit state of endurance over the years,
which made the writing of this book in its several editions a reality.

@Seismicisolation

CONTENTS

@Seismicisolation

PREFACE

Reinforced concrete is a widely used material for constructed systems. Hence, graduates of every civil engineering program must have, as a minimum requirement, a basic understanding of the fundamentals of reinforced concrete. Additionally, design of the members of a total structure is achieved only by trial and adjustment, assuming a section, and then analyzing it. In other words, every design is essentially an analysis. Consequently, design and analysis were combined rather than differentiating the two processes in separate chapters as many other books do. In such a manner, it becomes simpler for the student first introduced to the subject of reinforced concrete design to inter-relate the two aspects of the engineering thinking process.

This edition of the book reflects the new ACI 318-08 Code version, including extensive changes in notations and the inclusion of new examples and diagrams on the strut-and-tie method. The load factors and the strength reduction factors are consistent with the ASCE A-7 Standard and the International Building Code on Seismic Design (IBC 2006). The Limit Strain Approach, which is referred to as the "unified method" in the code, is the basis of the design process in this edition, with numerous analysis and design examples applying the Limit Strain hypothesis. As a consequence, all examples in the book use the new load factors and the new strength reduction factors for flexure, shear, torsion, and those to be used for columns and other compression members.

In addition to the prolific number of analysis and design examples in the book as well as the numerous flow charts, another significant feature of this edition is the inclusion of examples in SI Units in most of the chapters and a listing of the relevant equation in the SI format. In this manner, the student as well as the practicing engineer can avail themselves of the tools for transition from the lb-in. (PI) system to the System International (SI) where needed.

The text is an outgrowth of the author's lecture notes evolved in teaching the subject at Rutgers University over the past forty-eight years and the experience accumulated over the years in teaching and research in the areas of reinforced and prestressed concrete inclusive of the Ph.D. level. The material is presented in such a manner that the student can be familiarized with the properties of plain concrete and its components, both for normal and high performance concrete, prior to embarking on the study of structural behavior. The book is uniquely different from other textbooks in that a good segment of its contents can be covered in one semester at the undergraduate level in spite of the in-depth discussions of some of its major topics. The book can effectively be suited to the senior year level, and continue to be used at more advanced and graduate levels.

The concise discussion presented in Chapters 1 through 4 on the historical development of concrete, the proportioning of the constituent materials, long-term basic behavior, and the development of safety factors should give an adequate introduction to the subject of reinforced concrete. It should also aid in developing fundamental laboratory experiments and essential knowledge of mixture proportioning, strength and behavioral requirements, and the concepts of reliability of performance of structures to which every engineering student and engineer should be exposed. The discussion of quality assurance should also give the reader a good introduction to a systematic approach needed for administering the development of concrete structural systems from conception to turnkey use. An added section in this edition to Chapter 3 on the subject of concrete durability, with several tables, aids in the selection of concrete mixture proportions for long-term durable concrete.

Since concrete is a nonelastic material, with the nonlinearity of its behavior starting at a very early stage of loading, only the ultimate strength approach, or what is sometimes termed the "limit state at failure approach," is given in this book. The working load approach was eliminated in the ACI 318-05 Code. Adequate coverage is given of the serviceability checks in terms of cracking and deflection behavior, as well as long-term effects. In this manner, the design should satisfy all the service-load-level requirements while ensuring that the theory used in the analysis (design) truly describes the actual behavior of the designed components.

Chapters 5, 6, 7, and 8 cover the flexural, diagonal tension, torsion, and serviceability behavior of one-dimensional members: beams and one-way slabs. Full emphasis has been placed on giving the student and the engineer a feeling for the internal strain distribution in structural reinforced concrete elements and a basic understanding of the reserve strength and the safety factors inherent in the design expressions. Chapter 9, on the analysis and design of columns and other compression members, treats the subject of strain compatibility and strain distribution in a manner similar to that in Chapter 5 on flexural analysis and design of beams. It includes a detailed discussion of how to construct interaction diagrams for columns as well as proportioning columns subjected to biaxial bending and buckling as well as the P-delta effect. It was completely revised to accommodate the ACI 318-08 Code stipulations and format.

It is important to mention that Chapter 6, on diagonal tension, also contains detailed coverage of the behavior of deep beams, corbels, and brackets, with sufficient design examples to supplement the theory. This topic has been included in view of the increased use of precast construction; the wider understanding of the effects of induced horizontal loads on floors, and the frequent need for including shear walls and deep beams in today's multilevel structures. A new detailed section was added to it on the strut-and-tie modeling of structures, with particular emphasis on deep beams and corbels, which appears as an appendix in the ACI 318-08 Code. It includes an extensive deep beam design example, to aid the designer who elects this method for the design of deep beams, and an additional example on the strut-and-tie design of corbels. Additionally, Chapter 7 treats the topic of torsion in some detail considering the space constraints of the book. The discussion ranges from the basic fundamentals of pure torsion in elastic and plastic materials to the design of reinforced concrete members subjected to combined torsion, shear, and bending. The material presented and the accompanying illustrative examples should give the background necessary for pursuing more advanced studies in this area, as listed in the selected references.

Chapter 11 presents extensive coverage of the subject of analysis and design of two-way slab and plate floor systems. Following a discussion of fundamental behavior, it gives detailed design examples using both the ACI procedures and yield-line theory for the flexural design of reinforced concrete floors. It also includes ultimate load solutions to most floor shapes and possible gravity loading patterns. Detailed discussion of the deflection behavior and evaluation of two-way panels, as well as the cracking mechanism of such panels, with appropriate analysis examples, makes this chapter another unique feature of this concise textbook.

Chapter 13 deals with continuous reinforced concrete structures. It presents a review of the various methods of analysis for continuity of multi-span beams and portals and gives relevant examples including those on the topics of limit theory and plastic hinging. Chapter 14 is an introduction to prestressed concrete consistent with ACI and PCI standards. It should serve as a brief treatment of the subject in order to illustrate the fundamental differences between reinforced and prestressed concrete. Chapter 15 on the LRFD design of bridge deck structures with extensive examples gives a snapshot of the relevant AASHTO requirements for truckloads, expressions for flexural design and the modified compression field approach for shear and torsion as presented in AASHTO 2004 provisions. Complete revamp of the design examples was made to comply with the AASHTO design requirements for shear and torsion in the latest modified compression theory strain expressions.

Chapter 16, dealing with the seismic behavior of concrete structures, is one of the highlights of this book and has been updated to conform to ACI 318-08 Code and the IBC 2006 Code on seismicity. It presents the subject in as concise a manner as possible, yet it is comprehensive enough to give several examples on the proportioning of elements of a frame and a shear wall with boundary elements in high seismicity zones. Design tables in this edition were completely replaced with new tables to conform with the IBC 2006 Code stipulations for the seismic design categories and occupation importance factors.

Chapter 17 on the strength design of masonry structures is a new chapter uniquely introduced in this edition, as a very important part of the design knowledge needed in this area, which has been essentially neglected in university curricula and recently has become of major significance in civil engineering education. It comprises the design of CMU masonry flexural elements and prestressed CMU masonry walls subjected to axial loading combined with wind and earthquake in normal and seismic regions. It summarizes the masonry code provisions of the joint ACI 530.1-08/TMS 402-08/ASCE5-08/TMS and the latest Specifications for Masonry Structures (TMS 602-08/ACI 531.1-08/ASCE 6-08). It contains numerous tables and illustrative computational examples that enable a good coverage of the strength design requirements in this area, which both the student and the design engineer can master with minimum effort.

The numerous flowcharts for every topic presented in this book should aid the user in developing the logic and step-by-step thinking in easily comprehending the analysis and design procedures for efficient reinforced concrete systems, supplemented with numerous charts and design tables in Appendix A.

Selected photographs of various areas of structural behavior of concrete elements at failure are included in all the chapters. They are taken from the extensive published research work by the author with many of his M.S. and Ph.D. students at Rutgers University over the past more than four decades. These photographs of tests to failure of various types of structural elements should aid the reader in visualizing the behavior of structural elements under load, particularly in departments where undergraduate testing of structural members is cost-prohibitive. Additionally, photographs of landmark structures, mainly in the United States, are included throughout the book to illustrate the versatility of design in reinforced concrete.

The textbook fully conforms to the provisions of ACI 318-08 with an eye to stressing the basics rather than tying every step to the code, which has been changing so frequently. Consequently, no attempt was made to tie any design or analysis step to the particular equation numbers in the code, but rather, the student is expected to gain the habit of getting familiar with the provisions and section numbers of the ACI Code as a dynamic, ever-changing document. Conversions to SI units are included in the illustrative examples throughout the book, in addition to the separate solutions in SI Units, which have been added to most chapters in this edition.

The various topics have been presented in as concise a manner as possible but without sacrificing the need for the instructional details by students first exposed to reinforced concrete design. Hence, the topic of prestressed concrete has been only briefly covered in Chapter 14, and the reader is left to pursue more advanced works such as the author's book *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach* (fifth edition, 2006), also conforming to the ACI 318-08 Code.

Portions of this book are intended for a first course at the junior or senior level of the standard college or university curriculum in civil engineering, while the advanced topics can be adequately covered for use at the graduate level. The contents should also serve as a valuable guideline to the practicing engineer who has to keep abreast of the state of the art in concrete, as well as the designer who is interested in a concise treatment of the fundamentals.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Grateful acknowledgment is due to the American Concrete Institute for contribution to the author's accomplishments and for permitting generous quotations of its ACI 318 Code and the illustrations from other ACI publications. Particular acknowledgment and appreciation is noted for the enthusiastic help of Dr. Ward R. Malisch of the American Concrete Institute for his being always available for advice and supportive contribution to the several editions of this book. Special mention is made of the author's original mentor, the late Professor A. L. L. Baker of London University's Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine, who inspired him with the affection that he developed for systems constructed of concrete. Grateful acknowledgment is also made to the author's many students, both undergraduate and graduate, who have had much to do with generating the writing of this book in its several editions; to the many who assisted in his research activities over the years, shown in the various photographs of laboratory tests throughout the book; and to the many colleagues at other universities who have continuously used the book and have given advice and suggestions over the years for modifications and additions.

Thanks are due to the panel of reviewers of the first edition—Professor William J. Hall of the University of Illinois at Urbana, Engineering Editor of the Prentice Hall Advanced Series; Professor Vitelmo V. Bertero of the University of California at Berkeley; Professor Dan E. Branson of the University of Iowa; and particularly to Professor Thomas T. C. Hsu of the University of Houston, who has meticulously reviewed and contributed to the chapters on shear and torsion in the first and the subsequent editions of this book—for their suggestions and advice. Thanks also to Professor P. N. Balaguru of Rutgers, for his input to the flexure and axial load sections of the first edition; to engineer Mark J. Cipollone, MS, Rutgers, for his input to the original manuscript; to Regina Silviera Rocha Souza, MS, Rutgers, for her ideas and computational review of the text of the first edition; and to Robert M. Nawy, BA, BS, MBA, Rutgers engineering class of 1983, for his extensive work on the original solutions. Also, acknowledgment is made to Dr. Basile G. Rabbat, PCA Manager, Transportation Structures and Structural Codes; Dr. Douglas D. Lee, President of Douglas D. Lee Associates; Dr. S. K. Ghosh, Consulting Engineer; Professor Murat Saatcioglu of the University of Ottawa; and Professor Alex Aswad of Penn State University at Harrisburg, for their input and advice during the development of changes made to the second, third, and fourth editions. Thanks are due to Professor Richard Furlong of the University of Texas at Austin for his input to Chapter 9 on compression members, to engineer Gregg Romano, MS, Rutgers, for his contribution to Chapter 15 on the LRFD design of bridge deck structures in the previous edition, to Professor Tarun Naik of the University of Wisconsin-Milwaukee for advice on materials, to Professor Richard Klingner of the University of Texas–Austin for advice on masonry, and to Professor Nakin Saksawang of Florida International University for editing the contents of the present edition of the book.

Grateful acknowledgment is also made to the Prentice Hall officers and staff, particularly to Marcia Horton, Vice President and Editorial Director, for her continuous support over the years; Holly Stark, Senior Engineering Editor; and to Dee Bernhard, Associate Editor, for their cooperation and help in developing this edition; Vincent O'Brien, Director of Team-Based Project Management, who has always been supportive of the author's work; to Scott Disanno, Senior Managing Editor, for his contribution to the successful production of this edition; to staff contact Dolores Mars for her supportive role in several past editions of this book; to Jennifer Lonschein of the engineering department for her ever-present help and cooperation that has always been needed when compiling a textbook; to Jane Bonnell, Production Liaison, for her facilitating a smooth production process; and of course to Patty Donovan, Senior Project Coordinator, Pine Tree Composition, for commendable efforts in bringing to fruition this sixth edition and the past editions of the book. Last but not least, the author is grateful to Mayrai Gindy, Ph.D., Rutgers, and Nakin Saksawang, Ph.D., Rutgers, for assistance in the fifth edition, and to Joseph Davis, Ph.D., Rutgers, for his past help and his diligent contribution to additional computational and processing work to the new sections of this edition.

Edward G. Nawy
Rutgers University
The State University of New Jersey
Piscataway, New Jersey

@Seismicisolation

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

Concrete and its cementatious (volcanic) constituents, such as pozzolanic ash, have been used since the days of the Greeks, the Romans, and possibly earlier ancient civilizations. However, the early part of the nineteenth century marks the start of more intensive use of the material. In 1801, F. Coignet published his statement of principles of construction, recognizing the weakness of the material in tension. J. L. Lambot in 1850 constructed for the first time a small cement boat for exhibition in the 1855 World's Fair in Paris. J. Monier, a French gardener, patented in 1867 metal frames as reinforcement for concrete garden plant containers, and Koenen in 1886 published the first manuscript on the theory and design of concrete structures. In 1906, C. A. P. Turner developed the first flat slab without beams.

Thereafter, considerable progress occurred in this field such that by 1910 the German Committee for Reinforced Concrete, the Austrian Concrete Committee, the American Concrete Institute, and the British Concrete Institute were already established. Many buildings, bridges, and liquid containers of reinforced concrete were already constructed by 1920, and the era of linear and circular prestressing began.

Photo 1.1 Chaochow Bridge on Hsiaoho River, China (A.D. 605–617).

Photo 1.2 Felix Candela's Xochimilco Restaurant, Mexico.

The rapid developments in the art and science of reinforced and prestressed concrete analysis, design, and construction have resulted in unique structural systems, such as the Kresge Auditorium, Boston; the 1951 Festival of Britain Dome; Marina Towers and Lake Point Tower, Chicago; the Trump Tower, New York; Two Union Square Towers, Seattle; and many, many others.

Ultimate-strength theories were codified in 1938 in the USSR and in 1956 in England and the United States. Limit theories have also become a part of codes of several countries throughout the world. New constituent materials and composites of concrete have become prevalent, including the high-strength concretes of a strength in compression up to 20,000 psi (137.9 MPa) and 1800 psi (12.41 MPa) in tension. Steel reinforcing bars of strength in excess of 60,000 psi (413.7 MPa) and high-strength welded wire fabric in excess of 100,000 psi (689.5 MPa) ultimate strength are being used. Additionally, deformed bars of various forms have been produced. Such deformations help develop the maximum possible bond between the reinforcing bars and the surrounding concrete as a requisite for the viability of concrete as a structural medium. Prestressing steel of ultimate strengths in excess of 300,000 psi (2068 MPa) is available.

All these developments and the massive experimental and theoretical research that has been conducted, particularly in the last two decades, have resulted in rigorous theories and codes of practice. Consequently, a simplified approach has become necessary to understand the fundamental structural behavior of reinforced concrete elements.

1.2 BASIC HYPOTHESIS OF REINFORCED CONCRETE

Plain concrete is formed from a hardened mixture of cement, water, fine aggregate, coarse aggregate (crushed stone or gravel), air, and often other admixtures. The plastic mix is placed and consolidated in the formwork and then cured to facilitate the acceleration of the chemical hydration reaction of the cement–water mix, resulting in hardened concrete. The finished product has high compressive strength and low resistance to ten-

Photo 1.3 Afrikaans Languages Monument, Stellenbosch, South Africa (height of the main dynamically designed hollow columns, 186 ft).

sion, such that its tensile strength is approximately one-tenth of its compressive strength. Consequently, tensile and shear reinforcement in the tensile regions of sections has to be provided to compensate for the weak-tension regions in the reinforced concrete element.

It is this deviation in the composition of a reinforced concrete section from the homogeneity of standard wood or steel sections that requires a modified approach to the basic principles of structural design, as will be explained in subsequent chapters of this book. The two components of the heterogeneous reinforced concrete section are to be so arranged and proportioned that optimal use is made of the materials involved. This is possible because concrete can easily be given any desired shape by placing and compacting the wet mixture of the constituent ingredients into suitable forms in which the plastic mass hardens. If the various ingredients are properly proportioned, the finished product becomes strong, durable, and, in combination with the reinforcing bars, adaptable for use as main members of any structural system.

1.3 ANALYSIS VERSUS DESIGN OF SECTIONS

From the foregoing discussion, clearly a large number of parameters have to be dealt with in proportioning a reinforced concrete element, such as geometrical width, depth, area of reinforcement, steel strain, concrete strain, and steel stress. Consequently, trial and adjustment are necessary in the choice of concrete sections, with assumptions based on conditions at site, availability of the constituent materials, particular demands of the owners, architectural and headroom requirements, applicable codes, and environmental conditions. Such an array of parameters has to be considered because of the fact that reinforced concrete is often a site-constructed composite, in contrast to the standard mill-fabricated beam and column sections in steel structures.

Photo 1.4 Rockefeller Empire State Plaza, Albany, New York—Ammann & Whitney design. (Courtesy of New York Office of General Services.)

A trial section has to be chosen for each critical location in a structural system. The trial section has to be analyzed to determine if its nominal resisting strength is adequate to carry the applied factored load. Since more than one trial is often necessary to arrive at the required section, the first design input step generates a series of trial-and-adjustment analyses.

The trial-and-adjustment procedures for the choice of a concrete section lead to the convergence of analysis and design. Hence every design is an analysis once a trial section is chosen. The availability of handbooks, charts, desktop and handheld personal computers and programs supports this approach as a more efficient, compact, and speedy instructional method, compared with the traditional approach of treating the analysis of reinforced concrete separately from pure design.

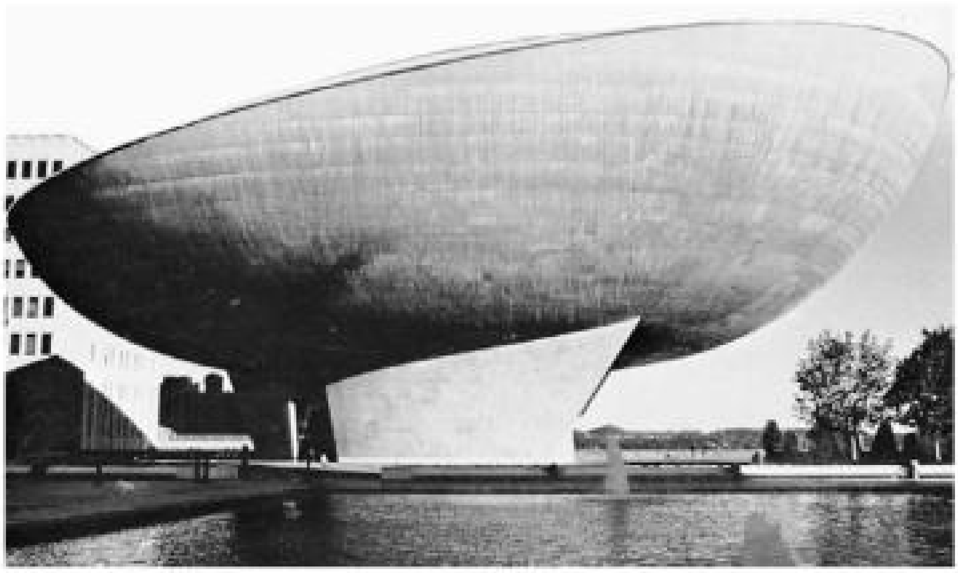


Photo 1.5 Empire State Performing Arts Center, Albany, New York—Ammann & Whitney design. (Courtesy of New York Office of General Services.)

Photo 1.6 Toronto City Hall, Toronto, Canada. (Courtesy of Portland Cement Association.)

Photo 1.7 Two Union Square Towers, Seattle, Washington; 62 stories and 759 ft high. Concrete strength is 20,000 psi. Design by the NBBJ Group, Architects, Seattle, Washington. (Courtesy of [illegible] Turner Construction Company.)

Photo 1.8 The Trump Towers, Fifth Avenue, New York City; concrete strength in excess of 8000 psi. (Courtesy of Concrete Industry Board.)

Photo 1.9 The Borgata Hotel and Casino, Atlantic City, NJ.: A 42-story high-rise 2000 room hotel and tower framed with 7-1/2" thick, 5000 psi post-tensioned prestressed concrete flat plate floor slabs spanning 30 feet. Concrete in shear walls and other situ-cast elements, 9000 psi strength. *Owner:* Marina District Development Company—A Joint Venture of Boyd Gaming Corp and MGM MIRAGE, Las Vegas, NV. *Structural Engineer:* Cagley, Harman & Associates of Philadelphia, PA, and Rockville, MD. *Principal Architects:* Anthony A. Marnell II, Las Vegas, NV. *Executive Architect:* Bowes Lewis Thrower/ Cope Linder Associates, Philadelphia, PA. *Model:* Shawn Buckley, Pentagon Studios, Las Vegas, NV.

Photo 1.10 Milwaukee Art Museum, Milwaukee, Wisconsin. Reinforced and prestressed concrete in various shapes that include cantilevered canopies and a unique cable-stayed bridge. Rows of exposed situ-cast concrete arches form a galleria that overlooks Lake Michigan. Designed by Architect Santiago Calatrava and opened in 2002. (Photo courtesy Professor Tarun Naik, University of Wisconsin at Milwaukee.)

Photo 1.11 Veterans' Glass City Skyway, Toledo, Ohio. 612 ft twin cable-stayed spans with 403 ft pylon. The top 196 ft of the pylon features four sides of glass enveloping LED light fixtures which allow an array of as many as 16.7 million color combinations at night. The bridge construction involved 185,000 cubic yards of concrete, 1.9 million pounds of post-tensioning strands, and 32.6 million pounds of mild steel reinforcement. The bridge was o[illegible] Ms. Linda Figg, President, FIGG, Tallahassee, Florida, the engineers of record.)

2

CONCRETE-PRODUCING MATERIALS

2.1 INTRODUCTION

To understand and interpret the total behavior of a composite element requires a knowledge of the characteristics of its components. Concrete is produced by the collective mechanical and chemical interaction of a large number of constituent materials. Hence a discussion of the functions of each of these components is vital prior to studying concrete as a finished product. In this manner, the designer and the materials engineer can develop skills for the choice of the proper ingredients and so proportion them as to obtain an efficient and desirable concrete satisfying the designer's strength and serviceability requirements.

This chapter presents a brief account of the concrete-producing materials: cement, fine and coarse aggregate, water, air, and admixtures. The cement manufacturing process, the composition of cement, the type and gradation of fine and coarse aggregate, and the function and importance of the water, air, and admixtures are reviewed. The reader is referred to books on concrete, such as the selected references at the end of this chapter, for further information.

Photo 2.1 LaGuardia Airport parking garage ramps, New York.

Photo 2.2 North Shore Synagogue, Glencoe, Illinois. (Courtesy of Portland Cement Association.)

2.2 PORTLAND CEMENT

2.2.1 Manufacture

Portland cement is made of finely powdered crystalline minerals composed primarily of calcium and aluminum silicates. The addition of water to these minerals produces a paste that, when hardened, becomes of stonelike strength. Its specific gravity ranges between 3.12 and 3.16 and it weighs 94 lb/ft^3, which is the unit weight of a commercial sack or bag of cement.

The raw materials that make cement are:

1. Lime (CaO), from limestone
2. Silica (SiO_2), from clay
3. Alumina (Al_2O_3), from clay

(with very small percentages of magnesia: MgO and sometimes some alkalis). Iron oxide is occasionally added to the mixture to aid in controlling its composition.

The process of manufacture can be summarized as follows:

1. The raw mix of CaO, SiO_2, and Al_2O_3 is ground with other added minor ingredients either in dry or wet form. The wet form is called a *slurry*.
2. The mixture is fed into the upper end of a slightly inclined rotary kiln.
3. As the heated kiln operates, the material passes from its upper to its lower end at a predetermined, controlled rate.
4. The temperature of the mixture is raised to the point of incipient fusion, that is, the *clinkering temperature*. It is kept at that temperature until the ingredients combine

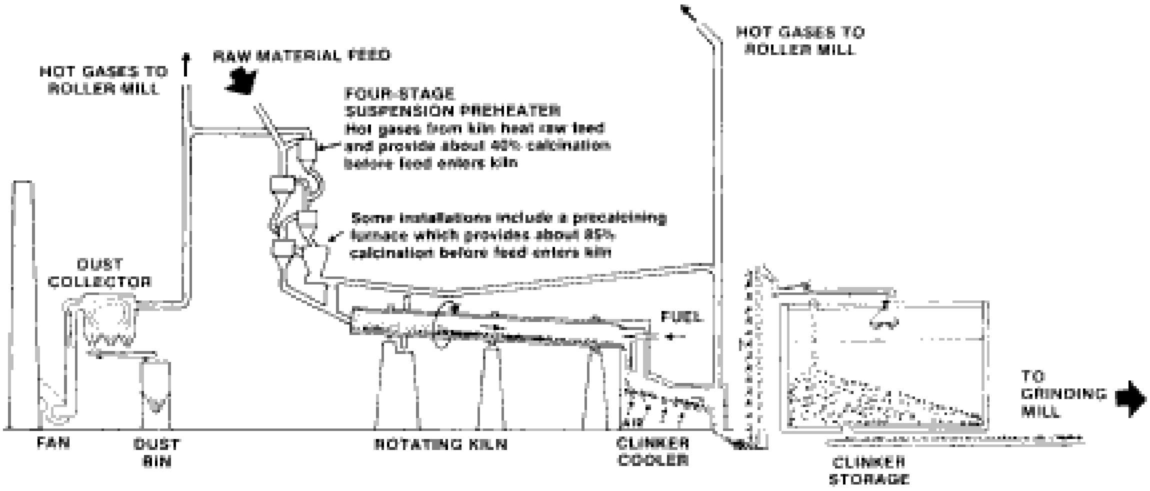


Figure 2.1 Portland cement manufacturing process. (From Ref. 2.5.)

to form at 2700°F the portland cement pellet product. The pellets, which range in size from $\frac{1}{16}$ to 2 in., are called *clinkers*.

5. The clinkers are cooled and ground to a powdery form.
6. A small percentage of gypsum is added during grinding to control or retard the setting time of the cement in the field.
7. Most of the final portland cement goes into silos for bulk shipment; some is packed in 94-lb bags for retail marketing.

Figure 2.1 illustrates schematically the manufacturing process of portland cement. The form and properties of the manufactured compound are described in the following sections.

2.2.2 Strength

The strength of cement is the result of a process of hydration. This chemical process results in recrystallization in the form of interlocking crystals producing the cement gel, which has high compressive strength when it hardens. Table 2.1 shows the relative contribution of each component of the cement toward the rate of gain in strength. The early strength of portland cement is higher with higher percentages of C_3S. If moist curing is continuous, later strength levels will be greater, with higher percentages of C_2S. C_3A contributing to the strength developed during the first day after placing the concrete because it is the earliest to hydrate.

Table 2.1 Properties of Cements

Component	Rate of Reaction	Heat Liberated	Ultimate Cementing Value
Tricalcium silicate, C_3S	Medium	Medium	Good
Dicalcium silicate, C_2S	Slow	Small	Good
Tricalcium aluminate, C_3A	Fast	Large	Poor
Tetracalcium aluminoferrate, C_4AF	Slow	Small	Poor

When portland cement combines with water during setting and hardening, lime is liberated from some of the compounds. The amount of lime liberated is approximately 20% by weight of the cement. Under unfavorable conditions, this might cause disintegration of a structure owing to leaching of the lime from the cement. Such a situation should be prevented by adding a silicious mineral such as pozzolan to the cement. The added mineral reacts with the lime in the presence of moisture to produce strong calcium silicate.

2.2.3 Average Percentage Composition

Since there are different types of cement for various needs, it is necessary to study the percentage variation in the chemical composition of each type in order to interpret the reasons for variation in behavior. Table 2.2, studied in conjunction with Table 2.1, gives concise reasons for the difference in reaction of each type of cement when in contact with water.

2.2.4 Influence of Fineness of Cement on Strength Development

The size of the cement particles strongly influences the rate of reaction of cement with water. For a given weight of finely ground cement, the surface area of the particles is greater than that of the coarsely ground cement. This results in a greater rate of reaction with water and a more rapid hardening process for larger surface areas. This is one reason for the high early-strength type-III cement giving in 3 days a strength that type I gives in 7 days and a strength in 7 days that type I gives in 28 days.

2.2.5 Influence of Cement on the Durability of Concrete

Disintegration of concrete due to cycles of wetting, freezing, thawing, and drying and the propagation of resulting cracks is a matter of great importance. The presence of minute air voids throughout the cement paste increases the resistance of concrete to disintegration. This can be achieved by the addition of air-entraining admixtures to the concrete while mixing.

Disintegration due to chemicals in contact with the structure, such as in the case of port structures and substructures, can also be slowed down or prevented. Since the concrete in such cases is exposed to chlorides and sometimes sulfates of magnesium and

Table 2.2 Percentage Composition of Portland Cements

Type of Cement	Component (%)							General Characteristics
	C_3S	C_2S	C_3A	C_4AF	$CaSO_4$	CaO	MgO	
Normal: I	49	25	12	8	2.9	0.8	2.4	All-purpose cement
Modified: II	45	29	6	12	2.8	0.6	3.0	Comparative low heat liberation; used in large structures
High early strength: III	56	15	12	8	3.9	1.4	2.6	High strength in 3 days
Low heat: IV	30	46	5	13	2.9	0.3	2.7	Used in mass concrete dams
Sulfate resisting: V	43	36	4	12	2.7	0.4	1.6	Used in sewers and structures exposed to sulfates

sodium, it is sometimes necessary to specify sulfate-resisting cements. Usually, type II cement will be adequate for use in seawater structures.

2.2.6 Heat Generation during Initial Set

Since the different types of cement generate different degrees of heat at different rates, the type of structure governs the type of cement to be used. The bulkier and heavier in cross section the structure is, the less the generation of heat of hydration that is desired. In massive structures such as dams, piers, and caissons, type IV cement is more advantageous to use. From this discussion it is seen that the type of structure, the weather, and other conditions under which it is built and will exist are the governing factors in the choice of the type of cement that should be used.

2.3 WATER AND AIR

2.3.1 Water

Water is required in the production of concrete in order to precipitate chemical reaction with the cement, to wet the aggregate, and to lubricate the mixture for easy workability. Normally, drinking water can be used in mixing. Water having harmful ingredients, contamination, silt, oil, sugar, or chemicals is destructive to the strength and setting properties of cement. It can disrupt the affinity between the aggregate and the cement paste and can adversely affect the workability of a mixture.

Since the character of the colloidal gel or cement paste is the result only of the chemical reaction between cement and water, it is not the proportion of water relative to the whole of the mixture of dry materials that is of concern, only the proportion of water relative to the cement. Excessive water leaves an uneven honeycombed skeleton in the finished product after hydration has taken place, while too little water prevents complete chemical reaction with the cement. The product in both cases is a concrete that is weaker than and inferior to normal concrete.

2.3.2 Entrained Air

With the gradual evaporation of excess water from the mix, pores are produced in the hardened concrete. If evenly distributed, these could give improved characteristics to the product. Very even distribution of pores by artificial introduction of finely divided, uniformly distributed air bubbles throughout the product is possible by adding air-entraining agents such as vinsol resin. Air entrainment increases workability, decreases density, increases durability, reduces bleeding and segregation, and reduces the required sand content in the mix. For these reasons, the percentage of entrained air should be kept at the required optimum value for the desired quality of the concrete. The optimum air content is 9% of the mortar fraction of the concrete. Air entraining in excess of 5 to 6% of the total mix proportionally reduces the concrete strength.

2.3.3 Water/Cement Ratio

To summarize the preceding discussion, strict control has to be maintained on the water/cement ratio and the percentage of air in the mixture. As the water/cement ratio is the real measure of the strength of the concrete, it should be the principal criterion governing the design of most structural concretes. It is usually given as the ratio of weight of water to the weight of cement in the mixture.

2.3.4 Water/Cementitious Ratio

For high-strength high-performance concrete, mineral pozzolanic or chemical admixtures are used replacing part of the cement in a particular mixture design. Hence, the water/cement ratio (w/c) would not be the governing criteria for strength requirement, but the water/cementitious ratio, $W/(C+P)$.

2.4 AGGREGATES

Aggregates are those parts of the concrete that constitute the bulk of the finished product. They comprise 60 to 80% of the volume of the concrete and have to be so graded that the whole mass of concrete acts as a relatively solid, homogeneous, dense combination, with the smaller sizes acting as an inert filler of the voids that exist between the larger particles.

Aggregates are of two types:

1. *Coarse aggregate:* gravel, crushed stone, or blast-furnace slag
2. *Fine aggregate:* natural or manufactured sand

Since the aggregate constitutes the major part of the mixture, the more aggregate in the mix, the cheaper is the cost of the concrete, provided that the mixture is of reasonable workability for the specific job for which it is used.

2.4.1 Coarse Aggregate

Coarse aggregate is classified as such if the smallest size of the particle is greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm). Properties of the coarse aggregate affect the final strength of the hardened concrete and its resistance to disintegration, weathering, and other destructive effects. The mineral coarse aggregate must be clean of organic impurities and must bond well with the cement gel.

The common types of coarse aggregate are:

1. *Natural crushed stone.* This is produced by crushing natural stone or rock from quarries. The rock could be of igneous, sedimentary, or metamorphic type. Although crushed rock gives higher concrete strength, it is less workable in mixing and placing than are the other types.
2. *Natural gravel.* This is produced by the weathering action of running water on the beds and banks of streams. It gives less strength than crushed rock but is more workable.
3. *Artificial coarse aggregates.* These are mainly slag and expanded shale and are frequently used to produce lightweight concrete. They are by-products of other manufacturing processes, such as blast-furnace slag or expanded shale, or pumice for lightweight concrete.
4. *Heavyweight and nuclear-shielding aggregates.* With the specific demands of our atomic age and the hazards of nuclear radiation due to the increasing number of atomic reactors and nuclear power stations, special concretes have had to be produced to shield against x-rays, gamma rays, and neutrons. In such concretes, economic and workability considerations are not of prime importance. The main heavy, coarse aggregate types are steel punchings, barites, magnatites, and limonites.

Whereas concrete with ordinary aggregate weighs about 144 lb/ft^3, concrete made with these heavy aggregates weighs from 225 to 330 lb/ft^3. The property of high density radiation-shielding concrete depends on the density of the compact product rather than primarily on the water/cement ratio criterion. In certain cases, high density is the only consideration, whereas in others both density and strength govern.

2.4.2 Fine Aggregate

Fine aggregate is a smaller filler made of sand. It ranges in size from No. 4 to No. 100 (4.75 mm to 150 μm) U.S. standard sieve sizes. A good fine aggregate should always be free of organic impurities, clay, or any deleterious material or excessive filler of size smaller than No. 100 sieve. It should preferably have a well-graded combination conforming to the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) sieve analysis standards. For radiation-shielding concrete, fine steel shot and crushed iron ore are used as fine aggregate.

2.4.3 Grading for Normal-weight Concrete Mixtures

The recommended grading of coarse and fine aggregates for normal-weight concretes is presented in Table 2.3.

2.4.4 Grading for Lightweight Concrete Mixtures

The grading requirements for lightweight aggregate for structural concrete are given in Table 2.4.

2.4.5 Grading of Heavyweight and Nuclear-shielding Aggregates

The grading requirements to ensure heavyweight concrete are given in Table 2.5.

Table 2.3 Grading Requirements for Aggregates in Normal-Weight Concrete (ASTM C-33)

U.S. Standard Sieve Size, in (mm)	*Percent Passing*				
	Coarse Aggregate				
	No. 4 to 2 in.	**No. 4 to 1½ in.**	**No. 4 to 1 in.**	**No. 4 to ¾ in.**	**Fine Aggregate**
2 in. (50)	95–100	100	—	—	—
1½ in. (37.5)	—	95–100	100	—	—
1 in. (25.0)	25–70	—	95–100	100	—
¾ in. (19.00)	—	35–70	—	90–100	—
½ in. (12.5)	10–30	—	25–60	—	—
⅜ in. (9.5)	—	10–30	—	20–55	100
No. 4 (4.75)	0–5	0–5	0–10	0–10	95–100
No. 8 (2.36)	0	0	0–5	0–5	80–100
No. 16 (1.18)	0	0	0	0	50–85
No. 30 (600 μm)	0	0	0	0	25–60
No. 50 (300 μm)	0	0	0	0	10–30
No. 100 (150 μm)	0	0	0	0	2–10

Table 2.4 Grading Requirements for Aggregates in Lightweight Structural Concrete (ASTM C 330)

Size Designation	Percentages (by masses) Passing Sieves Having Square Openings								
	1 in. (25.0 mm)	$\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19.0 mm)	$\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.5 mm)	$\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.5 mm)	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	No. 8 (2.36 mm)	No. 16 (1.18 mm)	No. 50 (300 μm)	No. 100 (150 μm)
Fine aggregate No. 4 to 0	—	—	—	100	85–100	—	40–80	10–35	5–25
Coarse aggregate									
1 in. to No. 4	95–100	—	25–60	—	0–10	—	—	—	—
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. to No. 4	100	90–100	—	10–50	0–15	—	—	—	—
$\frac{1}{2}$ in. to No. 4	—	100	90–100	40–80	0–20	0–10	—	—	—
$\frac{3}{8}$ in. to No. 8	—	—	100	80–100	5–40	0–20	0–10	—	—
Combined fine and coarse aggregate									
$\frac{1}{2}$ in. to 0	—	100	95–100	—	50–80	—	—	5–20	2–15
$\frac{3}{8}$ in. to 0	—	—	100	90–100	65–90	35–65	—	10–25	5–15

Table 2.5 Grading Requirements for Coarse Aggregate for Heavyweight Concrete (ASTM C-637)

Sieve Size	Percentage Passing: Grading 1: for $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (37.5 mm) Maximum-size Aggregate	Percentage Passing: Grading 2: for $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19.0 mm) Maximum-size Aggregate
	Coarse Aggregate	
2 in. (50 mm)	100	—
$1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (37.5 mm)	95–100	100
1 in. (25.0 mm)	40–80	95–100
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19.0 mm)	20–45	40–80
$\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.5 mm)	0–10	0–15
$\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.5 mm)	0–2	0–2
	Fine Aggregate	
No. 8 (2.36 mm)	100	—
No. 16 (1.18 mm)	95–100	100
No. 30 (600 μm)	55–80	75–95
No. 50 (300 μm)	30–55	45–65
No. 100 (150 μm)	10–30	20–40
No. 200 (75 μm)	0–10	0–10
Fineness modulus	1.30–2.10	1.00–1.60

Data in Tables 2.3 to 2.5 reprinted with permission from the American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, Pa.

2.4.6 Unit Weights of Aggregates

The unit weight of the concrete depends on the unit weight of the aggregate, which in turn depends on the type of aggregate: whether it is normal, lightweight, or heavyweight (for radiation shielding). Table 2.6 gives the unit weights of the various aggregates and the corresponding unit weight of the concrete.

2.5 ADMIXTURES

Admixtures are materials other than water, aggregate, or hydraulic cement that are used as ingredients of concrete and that are added to the batch immediately before or during

Table 2.6 Unit Weight of Aggregates

Type	Unit Weight of Dry-rodded Aggregate (lb/ft^3)[a]	Unit Weight of Concrete (lb/ft^3)[a]
Insulating concretes (perlite, vermiculite, etc.)	15–50	20–90
Structural lightweight	40–70	90–110
Normal weight	70–110	130–160
Heavyweight	>135	180–380

[a] $1\ lb/ft^3 = 16.02\ kg/m^3$.

the mixing. Their function is to modify the properties of the concrete so as "to make it more suitable for the work at hand, or for economy, or for other purposes such as saving energy" (Ref. 2.6). The major types of admixtures can be summarized as follows:

1. Accelerating admixtures
2. Air-entraining admixtures
3. Water-reducing admixtures and set-controlling admixtures
4. Finely divided mineral admixtures
5. Admixtures for no-slump concretes
6. Polymers
7. High-range water-reducing admixtures (HRWRA)

2.5.1 Accelerating Admixtures

These admixtures are added to the concrete mix to reduce the time of setting and accelerate early strength development. The best known are calcium chlorides. Other accelerating chemicals include a wide range of soluble salts, such as chlorides, bromides, carbonates, and silicates, and some other organic compounds, such as triethanolamine.

It must be stressed that calcium chlorides should not be used where progressive corrosion of steel reinforcement can occur. The maximum dosage is 1% by weight of the portland cement, and preferably ½%.

2.5.2 Air-entraining Admixtures

These admixtures form minute bubbles 1 mm in diameter or smaller in the concrete or mortar during mixing and are used to increase the workability of the mixture during placing and the frost resistance of the finished product. Most air-entraining admixtures are in

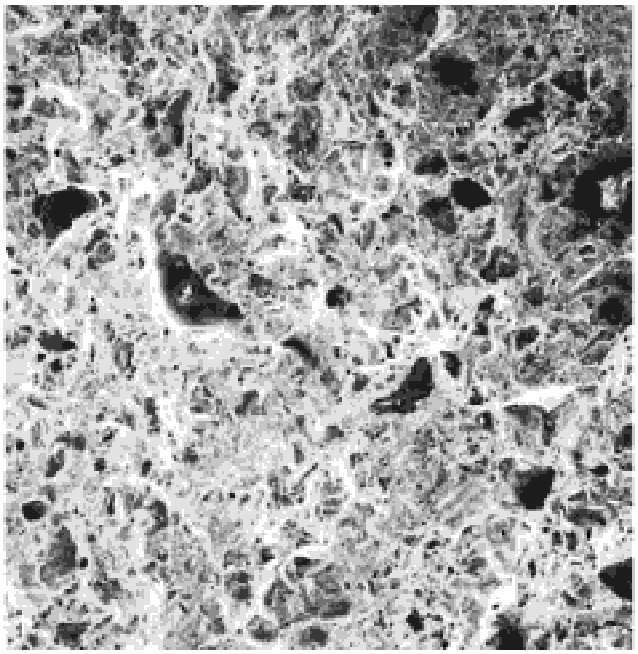


Photo 2.3 Scanning electron microscope photograph of polymer–cement mortar fracture surface (tensile specimen). (Courtesy by Nawy, Sun, and Sauer.)

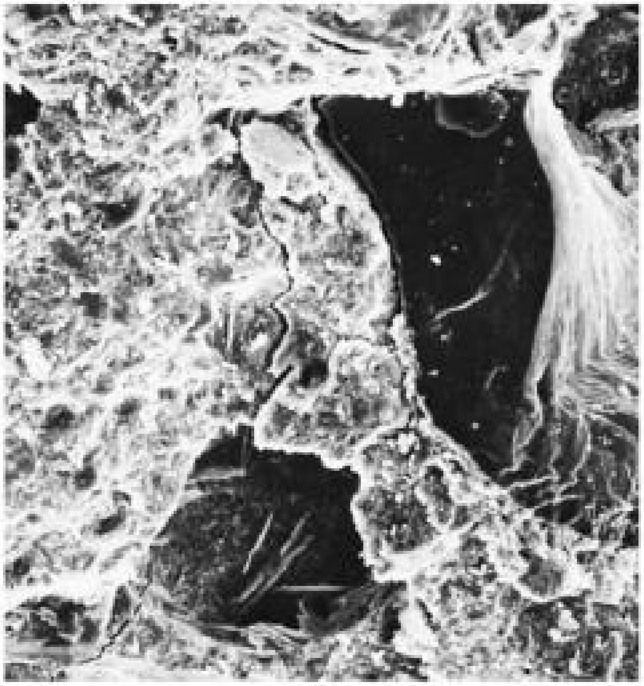


Photo 2.4 Scanning electron microscope photograph of concrete fracture surface. (Tests by Nawy, Sun, and Sauer.)

liquid form, although a few are powders, flakes, or semisolids. The amount of the admixture required to obtain a given air content depends on the shape and the grading of the aggregate used. The finer the size of the aggregate, the larger is the percentage of admixture needed. It is also governed by several other factors, such as type and condition of the mixer, use of fly ash or other pozzolans, and the degree of agitation of the mixture. It can be expected that air entrainment reduces the strength of the concrete. Maintaining cement content and workability, however, offsets the partial reduction of strength because of the resulting reduction in the water/cement ratio.

2.5.3 Water-reducing and Set-controlling Admixtures

These admixtures increase the strength of the concrete. They also enable reducing the cement content in proportion to the reduction in the water content.

Most admixtures of the water-reducing type are water soluble. The water they contain becomes part of the mixing water in the concrete and is added to the total weight of water in the design of the mix. It has to be emphasized that the proportion of the mortar to the coarse aggregate should always remain the same. Changes in the water content, air content, or cement content are compensated for by corresponding changes in the fine aggregate content so that the volume of the mortar remains the same.

2.5.4 Finely Divided Admixtures

These are mineral admixtures used to rectify deficiencies in the concrete mixture by providing missing fines from the fine aggregate; improving one or more qualities of the concrete, such as reducing permeability or expansion; and reducing the cost of concrete-making materials. Such admixtures include hydraulic lime, slag cement, fly ash, and raw or calcined natural pozzolan

2.5.5 Admixtures for No-slump Concrete

No-slump concrete is defined in Ref. 2.6 as a concrete with a slump of 1 in. (25 mm) or less immediately after mixing. The choice of the admixture depends on the desired properties of the finished product, such as its effect on the plasticity, setting time and strength development, freeze–thaw effects, and strength and cost.

2.5.6 Polymers

These are new types of admixtures that enable producing concretes of very high strength up to a compressive strength of 15,000 psi or higher and a tensile splitting strength of 1500 psi or higher. Such concretes are generally produced using a polymerizing material through (1) modifying the concrete property through water reduction in the field or (2) impregnating and irradiating under elevated temperature in laboratory environment.

Polymer-modified concrete (PMC) is concrete made through the addition of resin and hardener as an "admixture." The principle is to replace part of the mixing water by the polymer so as to attain the high compressive strength and other qualities reported in detail in Ref. 2.7. The optimum polymer/concrete ratio by weight seems to lie within the range of 0.3 to 0.45 to achieve such high compressive strengths.

2.5.7 Superplasticizers

These are admixtures which can be termed "high-range, water-reducing chemical admixtures." There are four types of plasticizers:

1. Sulfonated melamine formaldehyde condensates, with a chloride content of 0.005% (MSF)
2. Sulfonated naphthalene formaldehyde condensates, with negligible chloride content (NSF)
3. Modified lignosulfonates, which contain no chlorides
4. Other superplasticizers, such as sulfonic acid esters or other carbohydrate esters

These admixtures are made from organic sulfonates and are termed superplasticizers in view of their considerable ability to facilitate reducing the water content in a concrete mixture while simultaneously increasing the slump up to 8 in. (206 mm) or more. A dosage of 1% to 2% by weight of cement is advisable. Higher dosages can result in a reduction in compressive strength.

A dosage of 1% to 2 % by weight of cement is advisable. Higher dosages can result in a reduction in compressive strength unless the cement content is increased to balance this reduction effect. It should be noted that the superplasticizers exert their action by decreasing the surface tension of water and by equidirectional charging of the cement particles. These properties, coupled with the addition of silica fume, help the concrete achieve high strength and water reduction without loss of workability.

2.5.8 Silica-fume Admixture Use in High-strength Concrete

Silica fume is generally accepted as an efficient admixture for high-strength concrete mixtures. It is a pozzolanic material that has received considerable attention in both research and application. Silica fume is a by-product resulting from the use of high-purity quartz with coal in the electric arc furnace in the production of silicon and ferrosilicon alloys. Its main constituent, fine spherical particles of silicon dioxide, makes it an ideal cement replacement, simultaneously raising the concrete strength. Being a waste product with relative ease of collection as compared to fly ash or slag, silica fume has gained rapid popularity. Norway first experimented with this product, followed by other Scandinavian countries in the 1970s. Canada and the United States have embarked on extensive use of this product since the early 1980s.

Proportions of silica fume in concrete mixtures vary from 5% to 30% by weight of the cement depending on strength and workability requirements. However, water demand is greatly increased with increasing proportion of silica fume, and high-range water reducers are essential to keep the water/cement ratio low in order to produce higher-strength, yet workable, concrete. Silica fume seems to attain a high early strength in about 3 to 7 days with relatively less increase in strength at 28 days. The strength-development pattern of flexural and tensile splitting strengths is similar to that of compressive strength gain for silica-fume-added concrete. The addition of silica fume to the mixture can produce significant increase in strength, increased modulus of elasticity, and increased flexural strength.

2.5.9 Corrosion Inhibitors

Corrosion inhibitors are usually organic compounds that can migrate through the concrete, forming a protective film around the reinforcing bars thereby inhibiting corrosion. Several types are available such as DCI, Rheocrete, and Cortec MCI. The MCI 2000 series is a water soluble concentrate that forms both anodic and cathodic protection, is environmentally safe, and seems to have an effective corrosion inhibition mechanism for long-term durability of the reinforcement.

SELECTED REFERENCES

2.1. American Society for Testing and Materials, *Annual Book of ASTM Standards*, Part 14, *Concrete and Mineral Aggregates*, ASTM, Philadelphia, 1993, 834 pp.

2.2. Popovices, S., *Concrete-Making Materials*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1998, 370 pp.

2.3. ACI Committee 221, "Selection and Use of Aggregate for Concrete," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 58, No. 5, 1961, pp. 513–542.

2.4. American Concrete Institute, *ACI Manual of Concrete Practice*, Part 1, *Materials*, ACI, Farmington Hills, MI, 2008.

2.5. Portland Cement Association, *Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures*, 14th ed., PCA, Skokie, IL, 2002, 358 pp.

2.6. ACI Committee 212, "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete," in *ACI Manual of Concrete Practice 1983*, ACI, 212.3R-91, ACI, Farmington Hills, MI, 1993, 31 pp.

2.7. Nawy, E. G., Ukadike, M. M., and Sauer, J. A., "High Strength Field Modified Concretes," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE*, Vol. 103, No. ST12, December 1977, pp. 2307–2322.

2.8. American Concrete Institute, *Super-plasticizers in Concrete*, Special Publication SP-62, ACI, Detroit, 1979, 427 pp.

2.9. Nawy, E. G., *Fundamentals of High Performance Concrete*, 2nd ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 2001, 452 pp.

2.10. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 944 pp.

2.11. Nawy, E. G., *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

3

CONCRETE

3.1 INTRODUCTION

The general knowledge gained from Chapter 2 can now be utilized to design and obtain a concrete of characteristics and functions to suit a definite purpose. As should be realized by now, the proportioning and types of ingredients establish in part the quality of the concrete and hence the quality of the total structural system. Not only must good materials be chosen, but uniformity must be maintained in the whole product. The general characteristics of good concrete are summarized in the following sections.

3.1.1 Compactness

The space occupied by the concrete should, as much as possible, be filled with solid aggregate and cement gel free of honeycombing. Compactness may be the primary criterion for those types of concrete that intercept nuclear radiation.

3.1.2 Strength

Concrete should always have sufficient strength and internal resistance to the various types of failure.

Photo 3.1 Lake Point Tower, Chicago. (Courtesy of Portland Cement Association.)

Photo 3.2 Terminal building, Dulles Airport, Washington, D.C. (Courtesy of Ammann & Whitney.)

3.1.3 Water/Cement Ratio and Water/Cementitious Ratio

The water/cement ratio should be suitably controlled to give the required design strength.

3.1.4 Texture

Exposed concrete surfaces should have a dense and hard texture that can withstand adverse weather conditions.

3.1.5 Parameters Affecting Concrete Quality

To achieve the aforementioned properties, good quality control has to be exercised on the factors shown in Fig. 3.1. The following are the most important parameters:

1. Quality of cement
2. Proportion of cement in relation to water in the mixture
3. Strength and cleanliness of aggregate
4. Interaction or adhesion between cement paste and aggregate
5. Adequate mixing of the ingredients
6. Proper placing, finishing, and compaction of the fresh concrete
7. Curing at a temperature not below 50°F while the placed concrete gains strength
8. Chloride content not to exceed 0.15% in reinforced concrete exposed to chlorides in service and $\frac{1}{2}$–1% for dry protected concrete

A study of these requirements shows that most of the control actions have to be taken prior to placing the fresh concrete. Since such control is governed by the proportions and the mechanical ease or difficulty in handling and placing, the development of criteria based on the theory of proportioning for each mixture should be studied. Most mixture design methods have become essentially only of historical and academic value.

The two universally accepted methods for mixture proportioning for normal-weight and lightweight concrete are the American Concrete Institute's methods of proportioning, described in the recommended practice for selecting proportions for normal-weight,

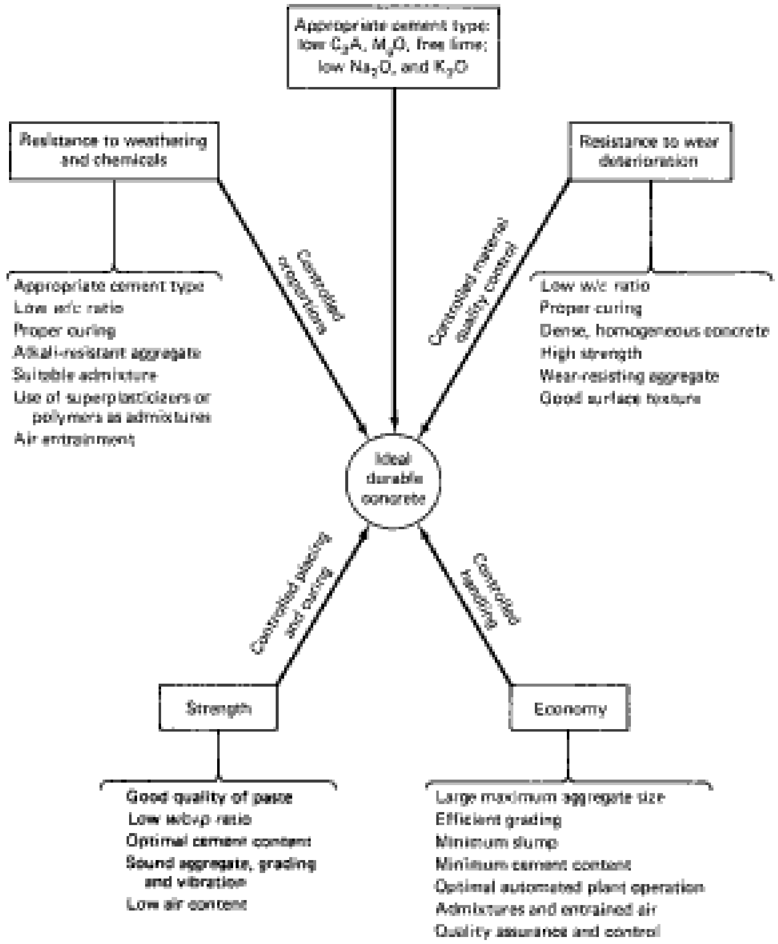


Figure 3.1 Principal properties of good concrete.

heavyweight, and mass concrete and the recommended practice for selecting proportions for structural lightweight concrete (Refs. 3.1 and 3.2).

3.2 PROPORTIONING THEORY—NORMAL STRENGTH CONCRETE

Water/cement ratio (*w/c* ratio) theory states that for a given combination of materials and as long as workable consistency is obtained, the strength of concrete at a given age depends on the ratio of the weight of mixing water to the weight of cement. In other words, if the ratio of water to cement is fixed, the strength of concrete at a certain age is also essentially fixed, as long as the mixture is plastic and workable and the aggregate sound, durable, and free of deleterious materials. Whereas strength depends on the *w/c* ratio, economy depends on the percentage of aggregate present that would still give a workable mixture. The aim of the designer should always be to get concrete mixtures of optimum strength at minimum cement content and acceptable workability. The lower the *w/c* ratio is, the higher the concrete strength.

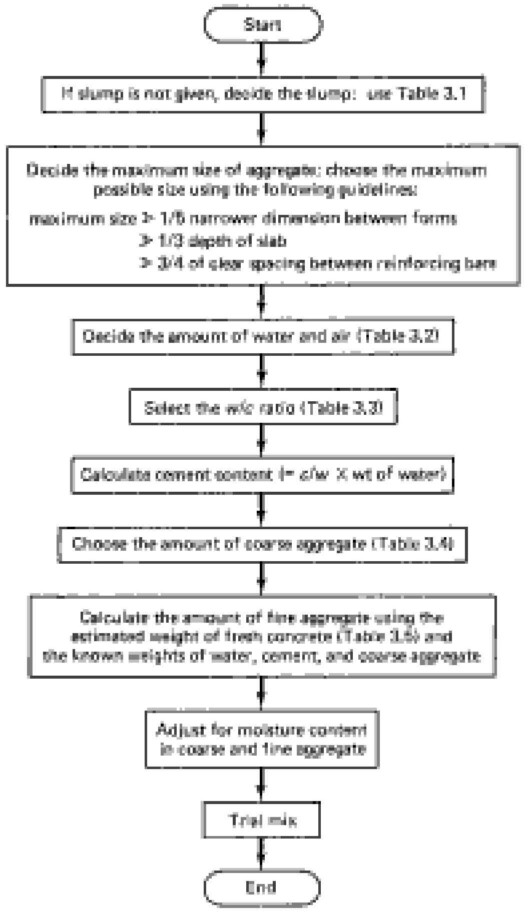


Figure 3.2 Flowchart for normal-strength concrete mixture design.

Once the *w/c* ratio is established and the workability or consistency needed for the specific design is chosen, the rest should be simple manipulation with diagrams and tables based on large numbers of trial mixes. Such diagrams and tables allow an estimate of the required mix proportions for various conditions and permit predetermination on small unrepresentative batches. If admixtures such as flyash, slag, silica fume or others are incorporated in the mix, the water/cement ratio (*w/c*) measure becomes water/cementitious ratio, *w/cm*.

3.2.1 ACI Method of Mixture Design for Normal Strength Concrete

The flowchart in Fig. 3.2 and the following design example best illustrate the mixture design process using the ACI mixture design method. One aim of the design is to produce workable concrete that is easy to place in the forms. A measure of the degree of consistency and extent of workability is the *slump*. In the slump test, the plastic concrete specimen is formed into a conical metal mold as described in ASTM Standard C-143. The mold is lifted, leaving the concrete to "slump," that is, to spread or drop in height. This drop in height is the slump measure of the degree of workability of the mix. Figure 3.3 gives a flowchart for high-strength concrete mixture proportioning.

3.2.2 Example 3.1: Mixture Design of Normal-weight Concrete

Design a concrete mixture using the following details:

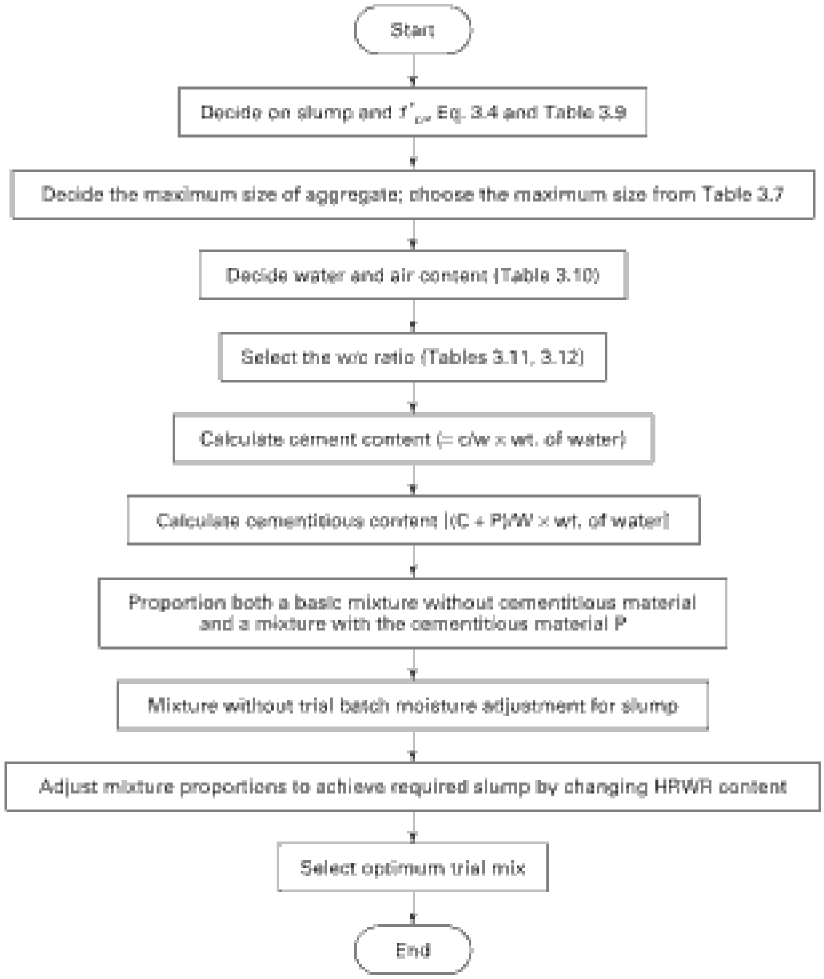


Figure 3.3 Flowchart for mixture proportioning of high-strength high-performance concrete.

Required strength: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa)

Type of structure: beam

Maximum size of aggregate $= \frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm)

Fineness modulus of sand $= 2.6$

Dry-rodded weight of coarse aggregate $= 100$ lb/ft^3

Moisture absorption 3% for coarse aggregate and 2% for fine aggregate

Solution: Required slump for beams (Table 3.1) = 3 in.

$$\text{maximum aggregate size (given)} = \frac{3}{4} \text{ in.}$$

For a slump between 3 and 4 in. and a maximum aggregate size of $\frac{3}{4}$ in.,

weight of water required per cubic yard of concrete (Table 3.2) = 340 lb/yd^3

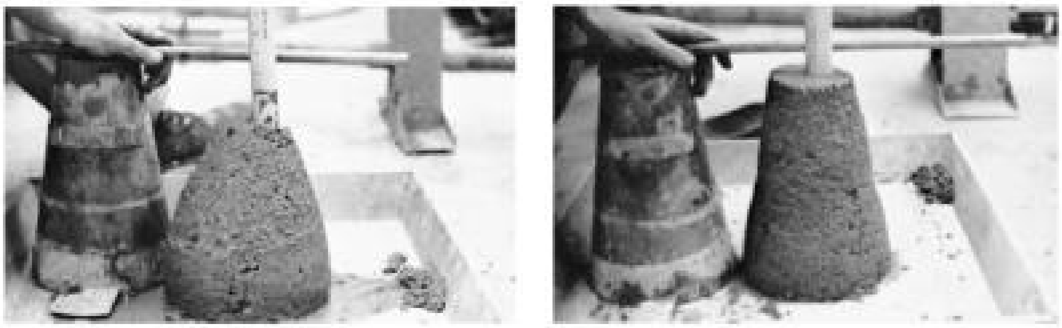


Photo 3.3 Left, $4\frac{1}{2}$-in. slump mix; right, $1\frac{1}{2}$-in. slump mix.

For the specified compression strength $f'_c = 4000$ psi,

$$w/c \text{ ration (Table 3.3)} = 0.57$$

Table 3.4 is also needed if volumes instead of weights are used in the mixture design calculations. Therefore,

$$\text{amount of cement required per cubic yard of concrete} = \frac{340}{0.57} = 596.5 \text{ lb/yd}^3$$

Using a sand fineness value of 2.6 and Table 3.4,

$$\text{volume of coarse aggregate} = 0.64 \text{ yd}^3$$

Using the dry-rodded weight of 100 lb/ft^3 for coarse aggregate,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{weight of coarse aggregate} &= (0.64) \times (27 \text{ ft}^3 \text{ yd}^3) \times 100 \\ &= 1728 \text{ lb/yd}^3\end{aligned}$$

estimated weight of fresh concrete for aggregate of $\frac{3}{4}$-in. maximum size (Table 3.5) = 3960 lb/yd^3

$$\begin{aligned}\text{weight of sand} &= [\text{weight of fresh concrete} - \text{weights of (water} \\ &\quad + \text{cement} + \text{coarse aggregate)}] \\ &= 3960 - 340 - 596.5 - 1728 = 1295.5 \text{ lb}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{net weight of sand to be taken} &= 1.02 \times 1295.5 \\ \text{(moisture absorption 2\%)} &= 1321.41 \text{ lb}\end{aligned}$$

Table 3.1 Recommended Slumps for Various Types of Construction

	Slump (in.)[a]	
Types of Construction	**Maximum**[b]	**Minimum**
Reinforced foundation walls and footings	3	1
Plain footings, caissons, and substructure walls	3	1
Beams and reinforced walls	4	1
Building columns	4	1
Pavements and slabs	3	1
Mass concrete	2	1

[a]1 in. = 25.4 mm.

[b]May be increased 1 in. for methods of consolidation other than vibration.

Table 3.2 Approximate Mixing Water and Air Content Requirements for Different Slumps and Nominal Maximum Sizes of Aggregates

Slump (in.)	Water (lb/yd³ of Concrete for Indicated Nominal Maximum Sizes of Aggregate)							
	3/8 in.[a]	1/2 in.[a]	3/4 in.[a]	1 in.[a]	1 1/2 in.[a]	2 in.[a,b]	3 in.[b,c]	6 in.[b,c]
	Nonair-entrained Concrete							
1 to 2	350	335	315	300	275	260	220	190
3 to 4	385	365	340	325	300	285	245	210
6 to 7	410	385	360	340	315	300	270	—
Approximate amount of entrapped air in nonair-entrained concrete (%)	3	2.5	2	1.5	1	0.5	0.3	0.2
	Air-entrained Concrete							
1 to 2	305	295	280	270	250	240	205	180
3 to 4	340	325	305	295	275	265	225	200
6 to 7	365	345	325	310	290	280	260	—
Recommended average total air content[d] (percent for level of exposure)								
Mild exposure	4.5	4.0	3.5	3.0	2.5	2.0	1.5[e,f]	1.0[e,f]
Moderate exposure	6.0	5.5	5.0	4.5	4.5	4.0	3.5[e,f]	3.0[e,f]
Extreme exposure[g]	7.5	7.0	6.0	6.0	5.5	5.0	4.5[e,f]	4.0[e,f]

[a]These quantities of mixing water are for use in computing cement factors for trial batches. They are maximal for reasonably well shaped angular coarse aggregates graded within limits of accepted specifications.

[b]The slump values for concrete containing aggregate larger than 1 1/2 in. are based on slump tests made after removal of particles larger than 1 1/2 in. by wet screening.

[c]These quantities of mixing water are for use in computing cement factors for trial batches when 3-in. or 6-in. nominal maximum-size aggregate is used. They are average for reasonably well shaped coarse aggregates, well graded from coarse to fine.

[d]Additional recommendations for air content and necessary tolerances on air content for control in the field are given in a number of ACI documents, including ACI 201, 345, 318, 301, and 302. ASTM C-94 for ready-mixed concrete also gives air-content limits. The requirements in other documents may not always agree exactly, so in proportioning concrete consideration must be given to selecting an air content that will meet the needs of the job and also meet the applicable specifications.

[e]For concrete containing large aggregates that will be wet screened over the 1 1/2-in. sieve prior to testing for air content, the percentage of air expected in the 1 1/2-in.-minus material should be tabulated in the 1 1/2-in. column. However, initial proportioning calculations should include the air content as a percent of the whole.

[f]When using large aggregate in low-cement-factor concrete, air entrainment need not be detrimental to strength. In most cases the mixing water requirement is reduced sufficiently to improve the water/cement ratio and thus to compensate for the strength-reducing effect of entrained-air concrete. Generally, therefore, for these large maximum sizes of aggregate, air contents recommended for extreme exposure should be considered even though there may be little or no exposure to moisture and freezing.

[g]These values are based on the criteria that 9% air is needed in the mortar phase of the concrete. If the mortar volume will be substantially different from that determined in this recommended practice, it may be desirable to calculate the needed air content by taking 9% of the actual mortar volume.

Table 3.3 Relationship Between Water/Cement Ratio and Compressive Strength of Concrete

Compressive Strength at 28 days[a] (psi)[b]	*Water/Cement Ratio, by Weight*	
	Nonair-entrained Concrete	Air-entrained Concrete
6000	0.41	—
5000	0.48	0.40
4000	0.57	0.48
3000	0.68	0.59
2000	0.82	0.74

[a]Values are estimated average strengths for concrete containing not more than the percentage of air shown in Table 3.2. For a constant water/cement ratio, the strength of concrete is reduced as the air content is increased.

Strength is based on 6 in. × 12 in. cylinders moist-cured 28 days at 73.4 ± 3°F (23 ± 1.7°C) in accordance with Section 9(b) of ASTM C-31, "Making and Curing Concrete Compression and Flexure Test Specimens in the Field."

Relationship assumes maximum size of aggregate abut 3/4 to 1 in.; for a given source, strength produced for a given water/cement ratio will increase as maximum size of aggregate decreases.

[b]1000 psi = 6.9 MPa.

Table 3.4 Volume of Coarse Aggregate per Unit of Volume of Concrete

Maximum Size of Aggregate (in.)[a]	*Volume of Dry-rodded Coarse Aggregate[b] Per Unit Volume of Concrete for Different Fineness Moduli of Sand*			
	2.40	2.60	2.80	3.00
$\frac{3}{8}$	0.50	0.48	0.46	0.44
$\frac{1}{2}$	0.59	0.57	0.55	0.53
$\frac{3}{4}$	0.66	0.64	0.62	0.60
1	0.71	0.69	0.67	0.65
$1\frac{1}{2}$	0.75	0.73	0.71	0.69
2	0.78	0.76	0.74	0.72
3	0.82	0.80	0.78	0.76
6	0.87	0.85	0.83	0.81

[a]1 in. = 25.4 mm.

[b]Volumes are based on aggregates in dry-rodded condition as described in ASTM C-29, "Unit Weight of Aggregate." These volumes are selected from empirical relationships to produce concrete with a degree of workability suitable for usual reinforced construction. For less workable concrete, such as that required for concrete pavement construction, they may be increased about 10%. For more workable concrete, the coarse aggregate content may be decreased up to 10%, provided that the slump and water/cement ratio requirements are satisfied.

Table 3.5 First Estimate of Weight of Fresh Concrete

Maximum size of aggregate (in.)[a]	*First Estimate of Concrete Weight*[b] *(lb/yd³)*[c]	
	Nonair-entrained concrete	Air-entrained concrete
$\frac{3}{8}$	3840	3690
$\frac{1}{2}$	3890	3760
$\frac{3}{4}$	3960	3840
1	4010	3900
$1\frac{1}{2}$	4070	3960
2	4120	4000
3	4160	4040
6	4230	4120

[a]1 in. = 25.4 mm.

[b]Values calculated and presented below are for concrete of medium richness (550 lb of cement per cubic yard) and medium slump with aggregate specific gravity of 2.7. Water requirements are based on values for 3- to 4-in. slump in Table 5.3.2 of ASTM C-143. If desired, the estimated weight may be refined as follows if necessary information is available: for each 10-lb difference in mixing water from Table 5.3.2, values for 3- to 4-in. slump, correct the weight per cubic yard 15 lb in the opposite direction; for each 100-lb difference in cement content from 550 lb, correct the weight per cubic yard 15 lb in the same direction; for each 0.1 by which aggregate specific gravity deviates from 2.7, correct the concrete weight 100 lb in the same direction.

weight of fresh concrete per cubic yard, lb

$$= 16.85G_a(100 - A) + C\left(1 - \frac{G_a}{G_c}\right) - W(G_a - 1)$$

where G_a = weighted average specific gravity of combined fine and course aggregate, bulk saturated surface dry density

G_c = specific gravity of cement (generally 3.15)

A = air content, %

W = mixing water requirement, lb/yd³

C = cement requirement, lb/yd³

[c]1 lb/yd³ = 0.6 kg/m³.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{net weight of gravel} &= 1.03 \times 1728 \\
\text{(moisture absorption 3\%)} &= 1779.84 \text{ lb} \\
\text{net weight of water} &= 340 - 0.02 \times 1295.5 - 0.03 \times 1728 \\
&= 262.25 \text{ lb}
\end{aligned}$$

For 1 yd³ of concrete:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{cement} &= 596.5 \text{ lb} \simeq 600 \text{ lb (273 kg)} \\
\text{sand} &= 1321.41 \text{ lb} \simeq 1320 \text{ lb (600 kg)} \\
\text{gravel} &= 1779.84 \text{ lb} \simeq 1780 \text{ lb (810 kg)} \\
\text{water} &= 262.25 \text{ lb} \simeq 260 \text{ lb (120 kg)}
\end{aligned}$$

3.2.3 Mixture Design for Structural Lightweight Concrete

Structural lightweight concrete can best be defined as concrete having a 28-day compressive strength in excess of 2000 psi and an air-dry unit weight less than 115 lb/ft^3. The coarse aggregate used is primarily expanded shale, slate, slags, and so on, and the same principles and procedures used in normal-weight concrete are applicable to this type of concrete. Air entrainment is very desirable, if not mandatory. A recommended percentage of air-entraining agents of at least 6% is necessary to give the product acceptable weathering qualities.

3.3 HIGH-STRENGTH HIGH-PERFORMANCE CONCRETE MIXTURES DESIGN

3.3.1 Introduction

High-strength concrete by present ACI definitions covers concretes whose cylinder compressive strength exceeds 6000 psi (41.4 MPa). Proportioning concrete mixtures is more critical for high-strength concrete than for normal-strength concrete. The procedure is similar to the proportioning process for normal-strength concrete except that adjustments have to be made for the admixtures that replace part of the cement content in the mixture and the need to use often smaller size aggregates in very-high-strength concretes (Refs. 3.3, 3.5).

Several types of strength-modifying admixtures can be used: high-range water-reducers (superplasticizers), polymers and pozzolanic mineral admixtures such as; fly ash, blast-furnace slag, and silica fume. However, in mixture proportioning for very-high-strength concrete, isolating the water/cementitious materials ratio w/cm from the paste/aggregate ratio due to the very low water content can be more effective in arriving at the optimum mixture with a lesser number of trial mixtures and field trial batches.

A few other methods are available today. The very low w/cm ratio required for strengths in the range of 20,000 psi (138 MPa) or higher requires major modifications to the present ACI standards approach used in mixture proportioning that seems to work well for strengths up to 12,000 psi (83 MPa); see Refs. 3.3, 3.5. The optimum mixture that can be chosen with minimum trials has to produce a satisfactory concrete product both in its plastic and its hardened states. An approach presented in Ref. 3.7 is based on mortar volume/stone volume ratio, proportioning the solids in the mortar on the basis of the ratio:

$$\frac{\text{solid sand volume} + \text{cementitious solid volume}}{\text{mortar volume}}$$

The ACI standard is well established for fly ash concretes (FAC) as in Refs. 3.3 to 3.6. Ample mixture proportioning results are available for polymers. The same is true for silica fume concretes (SFC) and slag concrete (SC or GGBFSC). They are, however, not established in the form of a standard. The computational example using fly ash as a mineral admixture for concrete mixture design (FAC) for strengths up to 12,000 psi (83 MPa) should serve as a systematic step-by-step guide for proportioning mixtures using polymers, silica fume, and granulated blast furnace slag within the strength ranges possible in the use of other admixtures such as silica fume.

The age at test is a governing criteria for selecting mixture proportions. The standard 28 days strength for normal-strength concrete penalizes high-strength concrete since the latter continues gaining strength after that age. One has also to consider that a structure is subjected to service load at 60 to 90 days age at the earliest. Consequently, mixture proportioning has to be based in this case on these latter age levels and also on either *field experience* or *laboratory trial batch*. The average compressive field strength results should exceed the specified design compressive strength by a sufficiently high margin so as to reduce the probability of lower test results.

3.3.2 Selecting Mixture Proportions on the Basis of Laboratory Trial Batches

In this case, the laboratory trial batches should give

$$f'_{cr} = \frac{(f'_c + 1400)}{0.90} \text{ psi} \tag{3.1a}$$

In SI units,

$$f'_{cr} = \frac{(f'_c + 9.7)}{0.90} \text{ MPa} \tag{3.1b}$$

It is important to note that high-strength high-performance concrete requires special attention to the selection and control of the ingredients in the mixture in order to obtain optimum proportioning and maximum strength. To achieve this aim, care in the choice of the particular cement, admixture brand, dosage rate, mixing procedure, and quality and size of aggregate becomes paramount. Since all the cement does not hydrate, it is advisible that the cement content be kept minimum for optimum mixture proportioning.

3.3.2.1 Cement and Other Cementitious Ingredients. A proper selection of types and source of cement is extremely important. ASTM cement requirements are only minimum requirements and certain brands are better than others due to the variations in the physical and chemical properties of the various cements. High-strength concrete requires high cementitious materials content, namely a low water/cementitious materials ratio (w/cm), and the fineness of the cementitious materials has a major effect on the workability of the fresh mix and the strength of the hardened concrete. They contribute to the reduction in water demand and lower the temperature of hydration. Hence, a determination has to be made whether to choose fly ash class F or G, silica fume, or granulated slag.

3.3.2.2 Coarse Aggregate. Aggregates greatly influence the strength of the hardened concrete as they comprise the largest segment of all the constituents. Consequently, only hard aggregate should be used for normal-weight high-strength concrete so that the aggregate would *at least* have the strength of the cement gel. As higher strength is sought, the aggregate size should be decreased. It is advisable to limit aggregate size to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) maximum size for strengths up to 9000 psi (62 MPa). For higher strengths, a $\frac{1}{2}$ in. or preferably $\frac{3}{8}$ in. size aggregate should be used (12.7–9.5 mm). For strengths in the range of 15,000 to 20,000 psi (103–138 MPa), higher strength trap rock from selected quarries should be used in order to achieve such very high strengths. Beyond 20,000 to 30,000 psi strength, the aggregate size should not exceed $\frac{3}{8}$ in. in structural components.

3.3.2.3 Fine Aggregate. A fineness modulus (FM) in the range of 2.5 to 3.2 is recommended for high-strength concrete to facilitate workability. Lower values result in decreased workability and a higher water demand. The mixing water demand depends on the void ratio in the sand. The basic void ratio is 0.35 and should be adjusted for other void ratios such that the void content V in percent can be evaluated from

$$V = \left(1 - \frac{\text{Oven-dry rodded unit weight (lb/ft}^3\text{)}}{\text{Bulk dry specific gravity} \times 62.4}\right) \times 100 \tag{3.2a}$$

in SI units

$$V = \left(1 - \frac{\text{Oven-dry rodded unit weight (kg/m}^3\text{)}}{\text{Bulk dry specific gravity} \times 10^3}\right) \times 100 \tag{3.2b}$$

The mixing water has to be accordingly adjusted to account for the change in the basic void ratio such that the mixing water adjustment would be as follows:

$$\text{Mixing Water Adjustment (lb/yd}^3\text{) } A = 8\,(V - 35) \tag{3.2c}$$

in SI units,

$$\text{Mixing Water Adjustment (kg/m}^3\text{) } A = 4.7\,(V - 35) \tag{3.2d}$$

3.3.2.4 Workability-Enhancing Chemical Admixtures. High-strength mixtures have a rich cementitious content that requires a high water content, with the knowledge that excessive water reduces the compressive strength of the concrete and affects its long-term performance. Thus, water-reducing admixtures become mandatory. High-range water-reducing admixtures (HRWR) are used. These are sometimes called superplasticizers. The dosage rate is usually based on fluid oz. per 100 lb (45 Kg) of total cementitious materials if they are in liquid form. If the water-reducing agent is in powdered form, the dosage rate would be on weight ratio basis.

The optimum admixture percentage should be determined on trial and adjustment basis as they can reduce the water demand by almost 30 to 35% with a corresponding increase in compressive strength. A slump of 1 to 2 in. (25 to 35 mm) is considered adequate. If, however, no HRWR admixtures are used, the slump should be increased to 2 to 4 in. (50 to 100 mm). In addition, air-entraining admixtures are used if the concrete is exposed to freezing and thawing cycles in severe environmental conditions. For structural components in building systems, air entraining is unnecessary as these are usually not subjected to the type of frost action that exposed bridge decks or sea oil platforms endure.

3.3.3 Recommended Proportions

Tables 3.6 to 3.14 adapted from Refs. 3.3 and 3.9 recommend the necessary ingredient contents for proportioning mixtures for high-strength concrete. A flowchart giving the mixture proportioning sequence for high-strength concrete is shown in Figure 3.3.

Table 3.6(a) Required Average Compressive Strength when Data Are Available to Establish a Sample Standard Deviation

Specified Compressive Strength, psi	Required Average Compressive Strength, psi	
$f'_c \le 5000$	Use larger value computed from Eq. 3.3(a) and 3.3(b)	
	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1.34s_s$	3.3(a)
	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 2.33s_s - 500$	3.3(b)
$f'_c > 5000$	Use larger value computed from Eq. 3.3(a) and 3.3(c)	
	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1.34s_s$	3.3(a)
	$f'_{cr} = 0.90f'_c + 2.33s_s$	3.3(c)

Table 3.6(b) Required Average Compressive Strength when Data Are Not Available to Establish a Sample Standard Deviation

Specified Compressive Strength, psi	Required Average Compressive Strength, psi
$f'_c < 3000$	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1000$
$3000 \le f'_c \le 5000$	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1200$
$f'_c > 5000$	$f'_{cr} = 1.10\,f'_c + 700$

3.3.4 Example 3.2: Trial Mixture Design

Design a high-strength concrete mixture for the columns in a multi-story structure for a specified 28 days compressive strength of 10,000 psi (69 MPa). A slump of 9 in. (229 mm) is required for workability needed in congested reinforcement in the columns. Do not use an

Table 3.7 Maximum Size Coarse Aggregate

Required Concrete Strength f'_c psi (MPa)	Maximum Aggregate Size in. (mm)
< 9000 (62)	$\frac{3}{4}$–1 (19–25)
≥ 9000 (62)	$\frac{3}{8}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ (9.5–12.7)

Table 3.8 Coarse Aggregate to Concrete Fractional Volume Ratio (Sand Fineness Modulus 2.5–3.2)

Nominal max. size in. (mm)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (12.7)	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)	1 (25)
Fractional volume of oven-dry rodded coarse aggregate	0.65	0.68	0.72	0.75

Table 3.9 Recommended Slump

With HRWR* in. (mm)	No HRWR in. (mm)
1–2 (25–50) before adding HRWR	2–4 (50–100)

*Adjust slump to that desired in the field by adding HRWR
HRWR = High Range Water Reducer

Table 3.10 Mixing Water Requirement and Air Content of Fresh Concrete Using Sand with 35% Void Ratio—First Trial Water Content*

Slump in. (mm)	*Mixing Water lb/yd³ (kg/m³)* — *Max. Size Coarse Aggregate in. (mm)* $\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (12.5)	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)	1 (25)
1–2 (25–50)	310 (183)	295 (174)	285 (168)	280 (165)
2–3 (50–75)	320 (189)	310 (183)	295 (174)	290 (171)
3–4 (75–100)	330 (195)	320 (189)	305 (180)	300 (177)
Entrapped air %[‡]	3 (2.5)*	2.5 (2.0)	2 (1.5)	1.5 (1.0)

Notes:

lb/yd³ = 0.59 kg/m³
*Mixtures using HRWR
[‡]Adjust mixing water values for sand void ratio other than 35%

$$\text{where Void Content } V, \% = \left(1 - \frac{\text{Oven-dry rodded unit wt}}{\text{Bulk specific gravity (dry)} \times 62.4}\right) \times 100$$

and Mixing water adjustment,
$$\text{lb/yd}^3 = (V - 35) \times 8$$
$$\text{kg/m}^3 = (V - 35) \times 4.7$$

Table 3.11 w/cm Ratio for Concrete without High-Range Water Reducer (without HRWR)

Field Strength f'_{cr} [†*] psi (MPa)		w/cm Ratio — Maximum Size Coarse Aggregate, in. (mm) $\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (12.7)	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)	1 (25)
7000 (48)	28 day	0.42	0.41	0.40	0.39
	56 day	0.46	0.45	0.44	0.43
8000 (55)	28 day	0.35	0.34	0.33	0.33
	56 day	0.38	0.37	0.36	0.35
9000 (62)	28 day	0.30	0.29	0.29	0.28
	56 day	0.33	0.32	0.31	0.30
10,000 (69)	28 day	0.26	0.26	0.25	0.25
	56 day	0.29	0.28	0.27	0.26

*$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1400$ ($f'_{cr} = f'_c + 9.7$)

†These are average field values; enter into the table 0.9 (required f'_{cr})

Table 3.12 w/cm Ratio for Concrete with High-Range Water Reducer (with HRWR)

Field Strength f'_{cr} [†*] psi (MPa)		w/cm Ratio — Maximum Size Coarse Aggregate, in. (mm) $\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (12.7)	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)	1 (25)
7000 (48)	28 day	0.50	0.48	0.45	0.43
	56 day	0.55	0.52	0.48	0.46
8000 (55)	28 day	0.44	0.42	0.40	0.38
	56 day	0.48	0.45	0.42	0.40
9000 (62)	28 day	0.38	0.36	0.35	0.34
	56 day	0.42	0.39	0.37	0.36
10,000 (69)	28 day	0.33	0.32	0.31	0.30
	56 day	0.37	0.35	0.33	0.32
11,000 (76)	28 day	0.30	0.29	0.27	0.27
	56 day	0.37	0.31	0.29	0.29
12,000 (83)	28 day	0.27	0.26	0.25	0.25
	56 day	0.30	0.28	0.27	0.26

*$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1400$ ($f'_{cr} = f'_c + 9.7$)

†These are average field values; enter into the table 0.9 (required f'_{cr})

Note: A comparison of the values contained in Tables 4.6 and 4.7 permits, in particular, the following conclusions:

1. For a given water cementitious material ratio, the field strength of concrete is greater with the use of HRWR than without it, and this greater strength is reached within a shorter period of time.
2. With the use of HRWR, a given concrete field strength can be achieved in a given period of time using less cementitious material than would be required when not using HRWR.

Table 3.13 Fly Ash Values to Replace Part of the Cement

Type	Replacement % by Weight
ASTM Class F	15–25
ASTM Class C	20–35

aggregate size exceeding ½ in. (12.7 mm). Use a high-range water reducer (HRWR) to obtain the 9-in. slump and a set-retarding admixture. Assume that the ready-mix producer has no prior history with high-strength concrete.

Given the following sand properties:

Fineness modulus FM	= 2.90
Bulk specific gravity (over dry), BSG_{dry}	= 2.59
Absorption based on dry weight, Abs	= 1.1%
Dry rodded unit weight, DRUW	= 103 lb/ft^3 (1620 kg/m^3)
Moisture content in sand	= 6.4%

Solution: From the author's solution in Ref. 3.5.

1. *Select Slump and Required Concrete Strength:* Because a HRWR agent is used, choose strength on the basis of 1- to 2-in. slump prior to the addition of HRWR. Also, since the ready-mix producer has no prior history with high-strength concrete, laboratory trial mixtures have to be designed for the selection of the optimum proportions. From Eq. 3.1(a),

$$f'_{cr} = (f'_c + 1400)/0.90$$
$$= (10{,}000 + 1400)/0.90 = 12{,}670 \text{ psi (87 MPa)}$$

2. *Select Maximum Aggregate Size:* A crushed limestone graded ½ in. (12.7 mm) maximum size is selected with BSG_{dry} = 2.76, Abs = 0.70 and DRUW = 101 lb/ft^3, stone moisture content = 0.5%.

Table 3.14 Modification Factor for Standard Deviation when Fewer than Thirty Tests are Available

Number of Tests[a]	Modification Factor for Standard Deviation[b]
Less than 15	Use Table 3.6
15	1.16
20	1.08
25	1.03
30 or more	1.00

[a]Interpolate for intermediate number of tests.

[b]Modified standard deviation to be used to determine required average strength f'_{cr} in Eqs. 3.3a or 3.4.

3. *Select Optimum Coarse Aggregate Content:* From Table 3.8, fractional ratio = 0.68. Dry weight of coarse aggregate/yd^3 of concrete is

$$W_{dry} = (\% \text{ DRUW}) \times (\text{DRUW} \times 27)$$
$$= 0.68 \times 101 \times 27 = 1854 \text{ lb } (841 \text{ kg})$$

4. *Estimate Mixing Water and Air Content:* From Table 3.10, the first estimate of the required mixing water is 295 lb/yd^3 (174 kg/m^3) of concrete and the entrapped air content when HRWR is used = 2.5%
From Eq. 3.2(a), the void content of the sand to be used is

$$V = \left[1 - \frac{103}{2.59 \times 62.4}\right] \times 100 = 36\%$$

From Eq. 3.3(a), the mixing water adjustment

$$A = 8\,(V - 35) = 8(36 - 35) = +8 \text{ lb/yd}^3 \; (4.7 \text{ kg/m}^3) \text{ of concrete}$$

Hence, total mixing water $W = 295 + 8 = 303$ lb (138 kg)

5. *Select Water/Cementitious Materials Ratio w/cm:* The values in Tables 3.11 and 3.12 are average field strengths values. Hence, strength f'_{cr} for which the w/cm ratio is to be found is:

$$f'_{cr} = 0.90 \times 12{,}670 = 11{,}400 \text{ psi } (77 \text{ MPa})$$

From Table 3.12 for $\frac{1}{2}$-in. size aggregate, the desirable

$$W/(C + P) \text{ ratio} = 0.272 \text{ by interpolation}$$

6. *Compute Content of Cementitious Material:* From before, mixing water $W = 303$ lb, hence, $C + P = 303 / 0.272 = 1114$ lb (505 kg)
7. *Proportion the Basic Mixture with Cement Only:* Volumes of all materials per yd^3 except sand are as follows:

Cement	= 1114 ÷ (3.15 × 62.4) =	5.67 ft^3
Stone	= 1854 ÷ (2.76 × 62.4) =	10.77
Water	= 303 ÷ 62.4 =	4.86
Air	= 0.02 × 27 =	0.54
Total =		21.77 ft^3 (0.62 m^3) (1 cu. m. = 35.31 cu. ft)

Hence the required volume of sand per yd^3 of concrete = 27 − 21.77 = 5.23 ft^3
Converting the sand volume to weight,

$$\text{sand} = 5.23 \times 62.4 \times 2.59 = 845 \text{ lb } (384 \text{ kg})$$

The mix proportions by weight for the no fly ash concrete would be:

	lb/yd^3 (kg/m^3)
Cement	= 1114 (661)
Sand, dry	= 845 (501)
Stone, dry	= 1854 (1100)
water, incl. 3 oz/cwt retarding admixture (cwt = hundred weight of cement)	= 303 (180)
Total	4116 lb/yd^3 (2428 kg/yd^3)

8. *Proportion Companion Mixtures Using Cement and Fly Ash:*

Use in this case ASTM Class C fly ash (FA) which has bulk specific gravity s.g. = 2.64

From Table 3.13, the FA replacement = 20–35%.

Use four trial mixtures: 20, 25, 30, 35% levels

For trial mixture No. 1, FA = 0.20 (1114) = 223 lb

hence, cement = 1114 − 223 = 891 lb.

In a similar manner, the weights of the cementitious materials would be

Mixture No.	Cement lb (kg)	Fly Ash lb (kg)
1	891 (404)	223 (101)
2	835 (379)	279 (126)
3	780 (354)	334 (151)
4	724 (328)	390 (177)

Taking mixture No. 1, the volumes of components except sand per yd^3 of concrete are:

$$\text{Cement} = 891 \div (3.15 \times 62.4) = 4.53\ ft^3$$

$$\text{FA} = 223 \div (2.64 \times 62.4) = 1.35$$

From before,

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Stone} && = 10.77 \\ &\text{Water (Incl. 2.5 oz/cwt retarder)} && = \ 4.86 \\ &\text{Air} && = \ \underline{0.54} \\ &\text{Total} && = 22.05\ ft^3 \\ &\text{Sand Volume} = 27 - 22.05 && = \ 4.95\ ft^3 \\ & && = 4.95 \times 62.4 \times 2.59 = 800\ \text{lb} \end{aligned}$$

The mix proportions by weight for the fly ash concrete would be:

	lb/yd^3 (kg/m^3)
Cement	= 891 (526)
Fly Ash	= 223 (132)
Sand, dry	= 800 (472)
Stone, dry	= 1854 (1094)
Water, incl. retarder	= 303 (179)
Total =	4071 lb/yd^3 (2402) ($1\ lb/yd^3 = 0.59\ kg/m^3$)

In a similar manner, the mix proportions for 25, 30, and 35% of fly ash content are computed to give the following companion mixtures (Table 3.15).

9. *Trial Mixtures Adjustment for Absorbed Water Content in Aggregate:* From before,

moisture content in sand = 6.4%

moisture content in stone = 0.5%

Table 3.15 Mixture Proportions in Ex. 3.2 without Moisture Trial Batch Adjustment

Ingredient (1)	Basic Mix: C only lb (2)	*C + FA Mixes, lb* # 1 (3)	# 2 (4)	# 3 (5)	# 4 (6)
Cement	1114	891	835	780	724
Fly Ash	0	223	279	334	390
Sand (dry)	845	800	790	781	773
Stone (dry)	1854	1854	1854	1854	1854
Water (+ Ret.)	303	303	303	303	303
Total	4116	4071	4061	4052	4044
lb/yd^3 concrete					
kg/m^3 concrete	2428	2402	2396	2391	2386

1 lb/yd^3 = 0.59 kg/m^3

From Table 3.15, corrections in the basic mixture for the wetness of the aggregates,

$$\text{wet sand} = 845\,(1 + 0.064) = 899 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{wet stone} = 1854\,(1 + 0.005) = 1863 \text{ lb}$$

From input data, sand absorption based on dry weight = 1.1% and stone absorption = 0.7%, hence, the water correction is

$$= 303 - 845\,(0.064 - 0.011) - 1854\,(0.005 - 0.007)$$

$$= 303 - 45 + 4 = 262 \text{ lb } (119 \text{ kg})$$

Accordingly, the batch weight of water has to be corrected to account for the excess moisture contributed by the aggregates = total moisture − aggregate absorbed moisture. Hence, Table 3.15 is modified to Table 3.16.

10. *Size of Laboratory Trial Mixture:* The usual size of the trial mixture is 3.0 ft^3 (0.085 m^3). The reduced batch weights to yield 3.0 ft^3 of concrete would be $\frac{1}{9}$ the values tabulated in Table 3.16 to give (Table 3.17)

11. *Adjustment of Trial Mixture Due to Slump Observation:*

(a) *Basic Mix*

Assume that the water calculated to produce the 1- to 2-in. slump, namely, 29.11 lb from Table 3.17 was found not to be adequate and has to be increased to 30 lb/3 ft^3 including the 2.5 oz/cwt retarding admixture.

Table 3.16 Moisture Adjusted Mixture Proportions in Ex. 3.2

Ingredient (1)	Basic Mix: C only lb (2)	*C + FA Mixes, lb* # 1 (3)	# 2 (4)	# 3 (5)	# 4 (6)
Cement	1114	891	835	780	724
Fly Ash	0	223	279	334	390
Sand (wet)	899	851	841	831	823
Stone (wet)	1863	1863	1863	1863	1863
Water (+ Ret.)	262	262	262	262	262
Total	4138	4090	4080	4070	4062
lb/yd^3 concrete					
kg/m^3 concrete	2441	2413	2407	2401	2397

1 lb/yd^3 = 0.59 Kg/m^3

Table 3.17 Reduced Batch Weight Yielding 3 Ft^3 of Concrete

Ingredient (1)	Basic Mix: C only lb (2)	C + FA Mixes, lb # 1 (3)	# 2 (4)	# 3 (5)	# 4 (6)
Cement	123.78	99.00	92.78	86.67	80.44
Fly Ash	0	24.78	31.00	37.11	43.33
Sand (wet)	99.89	94.56	93.44	92.33	91.44
Stone (wet)	207.00	207.00	207.00	207.00	207.00
Water (+ Ret.)	29.11	29.11	29.11	29.11	29.11
Total lb/3 ft^3 concrete	460	455	453	452	451
kg/(1/10) m^3 concrete	245.3	242.7	241.6	241.1	240.5

The actual batch weights have therefore to be adjusted so that the actual batch weight for the basic mix (no fly ash) becomes:

Cement = 123.78 lb
Sand = 99.89
Stone = 207.00
Water = 30.00

These values have to be adjusted for moisture correction to dry weight.
The basic total added water $= 30 \times 9 = 270$ lb/yd^3
From before, the absorbed water in the aggregates $= 45 - 4 = 41$ lb
Actual total water content $= 270 + 41 = 311$ lb/yd^3 $= 34.56$ lb per 3 ft^3.

Cement	= 123.78 lb	
Sand	$= 99.89 \div 1.064$	= 93.88
Stone	$= 207 \div 1.005$	= 205.97
Batch water	$= 30.00 + 45/9 - 4/9$	= 34.56

Yield of Trial Batch:
Consequently the actual yield of the trial mixture becomes:

Cement	$= 123.78\text{ lb} \div (3.15 \times 62.4)$	= 0.63
Sand	$= 93.88 \div (2.59 \times 62.4)$	= 0.58
Stone	$= 205.97 \div (2.76 \times 62.4)$	= 1.20
Water	$= 34.56 \div 62.4$	= 0.55
Air	$= 0.02 \times 3\ ft^3$	= 0.06

Total yield volume of trial batch = 3.02 ft^3

The yield in lb/yd^3 of concrete is obtained by multiplying all the previous values by 9 and converting the volumes to weights giving:

Cement = 1114 lb
Sand, dry = 845
Stone = 1854
Water (incl. retarder) = 309

The new mixture proportions result in a water/cementitious materials

$$\text{ratio w/cm} = 309/1114 = 0.28$$

versus the desirable ratio of 0.272 previously obtained from Table 3.11.
In order to maintain the 0.272 ratio, the weight of cement should be increased to $309/0.272 = 1136$ lb/yd^3 of concrete.

The increase in volume due to the adjustment of the weight of cement $= (1136 - 1114) \div (3.15 \times 62.4) = 0.11$ ft^3.

This increase in volume should be adjusted for by the removal of an equal volume of sand. Hence, weight of sand to be removed $= 0.11 \times 2.59 \times 62.4 = 17.79$ lb/yd^3, say 18 lb/yd^3. The resulting adjusted mixture proportions become:

Cement	= 1136 lb
Sand, dry = 845 − 18	= 827
Stone, dry	= 1854
Water + 2.5 oz/cwt retarder	= 311

(b) *Increasing Slump to 9 in. (229 mm):* The required slump in this example is 9 in. (229 mm). To achieve this value without the addition of water, which will reduce the strength, a high-range water reducer, namely, a plasticizer is used.

The dosage recommended by the manufacturer of the HRWR ranged between 8 and 16 oz/100 lb of cementitious material. Laboratory tests in a laboratory with ambient temperature of 74°F, indicated the following:

8-oz dosage produced 5-in. slump

11-oz dosage produced 10-in. slump

16-oz dosage produced segregation of the fresh concrete.

In all these cases, a constant dosage rate of retarding admixture of 2.5 oz/cwt was also added to the mixture with the mixing water.

The HRWR was added to the mixture about 15 min after initial mixing. It was determined that

1. The mixture with 10 in. (255 mm) slump had adequate workability, hence no correction needed to the coarse aggregate content.
2. Air content of the HRWR concrete mixture was found to be 1.9%; hence, no correction needed.
3. The 28-day compressive strength of the basic mixture was found to be 12,700 psi, satisfying the required $f'_{cr} = 12{,}670$ psi.

Note: It is important to recognize if additional water at this stage was needed to produce the required slump and workability, then an additional cycle of corrections to actual batches of aggregate have to be executed in the same manner as in the previous steps.

12. *Summary of Trial Mixtures Laboratory Performance:* In addition, field trials must verify the chosen laboratory trial mixture. In this case, mixture No. 3 from Table 3.18 giving the highest 28 days compressive strength of 12,750 psi (88 MPa) is the closest to the required $f'_{cr} = 12{,}670$ psi that can give an average compressive strength $f'_c = 10{,}000$ required in this example.

Table 3.18 summarizes the performance of the five mixtures, namely the basic no-FA concrete and the four concretes with FA at 20, 25, 30, and 35% content of the total cementitious material. Slump values for no-HRWR mixtures and those with HRWR were measured in the laboratory slump tests.

This section on high-strength high-performance concrete mixture design is a condensation of the author's section on this topic in Ref. 3.5.

Table 3.18 Laboratory Final Trial Mixtures

Ingredient lb (1)	Basic Mix: C only lb (2)	C + FA Mixes, lb # 1 20% CF (3)	# 2 25% CF (4)	# 3 30% CF (5)	# 4 35% CF (6)
Cement	1136	891	835	780	724
Fly Ash	—	223	279	334	390
Sand (dry)	827	782	772	763	755
Stone (dry)	1854	1863	1863	1863	1863
Water (+ Ret.)	311	304	300	298	297
Slump, in. (mm)	1.00 (25)	1.20 (31)	1.15 (29)	1.50 (38)	1.90 (48)
Retarder, oz/cw	3.5	2.5	2.0	2.5	2.0
HRWR, oz/cwt	10.00	10.50	11.00	10.25	9.00
Slump, in. (mm)	10.00 (250)	10.75 (270)	8.75 (220)	10.50 (270)	9.25 (235)
28 day strength, psi (MPa)	12,600 (87)	12,400 (85)	12,550 (87)	12,750 (88)	12,250 (84)

3.4 PCA METHOD OF MIXTURE DESIGN

The mixture design method proposed by the Portland Cement Association (PCA) is essentially similar to the ACI method. Generally, results would be very close once trial batches are prepared in the laboratory. The PCA publication listed in the references gives the details of the method as well as other information on properties of the ingredients.

3.5 ESTIMATING COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF A TRIAL MIXTURE USING THE SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH

The compressive strength for which the trial mixture is designed is not the strength specified by the designer. The mixture should be overdesigned to assure that the actual structure has concrete with specified minimum compressive strength. The extent of mixture overdesign depends on the degree of quality control available in the mixing plant.

ACI Committee 318 specifies a systematic way of determining the compressive strength for mixture designs using the specified compressive strength f'_c. The procedure is presented in a self-explanatory flowchart form in Fig. 3.4. The cylinder compressive strength f'_c (see Section 3.7) is the test result at 28 days after casting normal-weight concrete. Mixture design has to be based on an adjusted higher value f'_{cr}. This adjusted cylinder compressive strength f'_{cr} for which a trial mixture design is calculated depends on the extent of field data available.

1. *No cylinder test records available.* If field-strength test records for the specified class (or within 1000 psi of the specified class) of concrete are not available, the trial mixture strength f'_{cr} can be calculated by increasing the cylinder compressive strength f'_c by a reasonable value depending on the extent of spread in values expected in the supplied concrete. Such a spread can be quantified by the standard deviation values represented by the values in excess on f'_c in Table 3.19. Table 3.20 can then be used to obtain the [illegible] the required cylinder strength value f'_c.

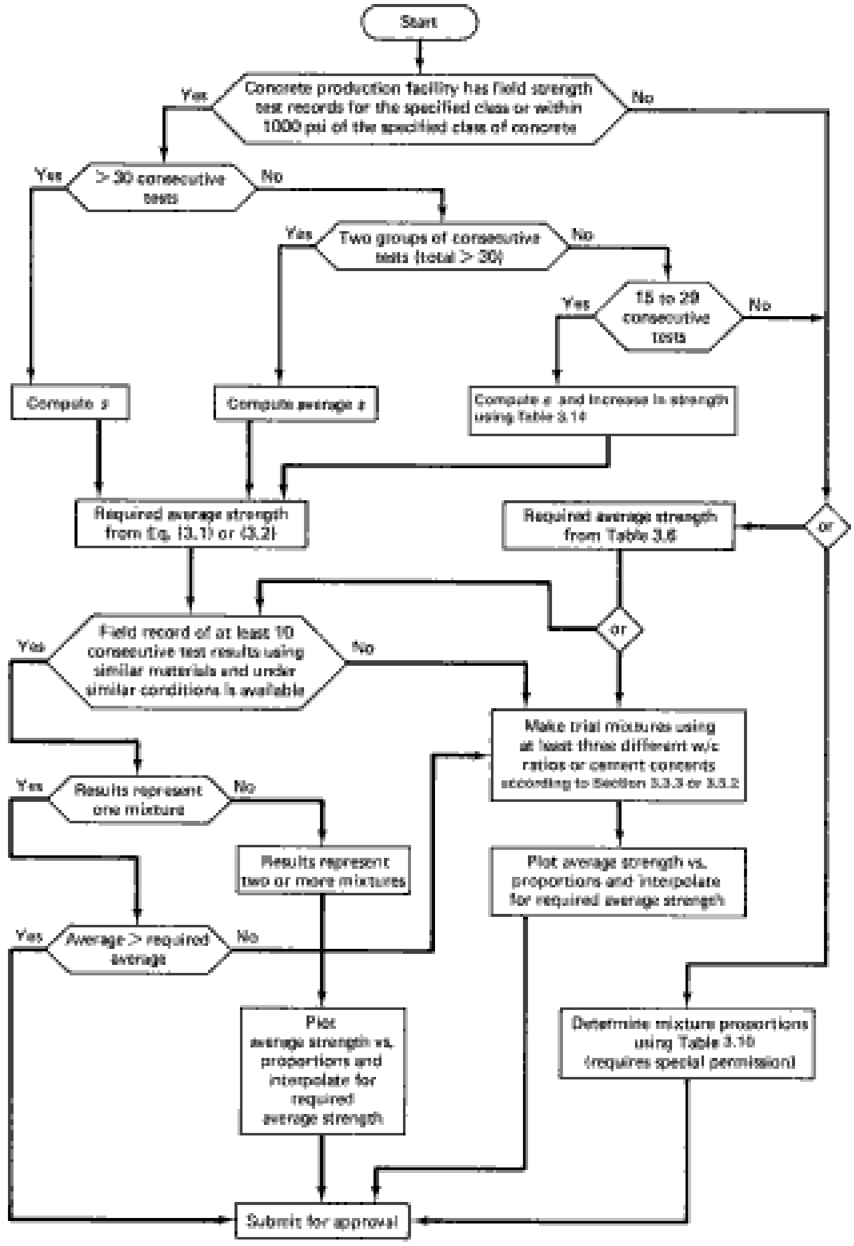


Figure 3.4 Flowchart for selection and documentation of concrete proportions.

Table 3.19 Required Average Compressive Strength when Data Are Not Available to Establish a Standard Deviation

Specified Compressive Strength, f'_c (psi)	Required Average Compressive Strength, f'_{cr} (psi)[a]
Less than 3000	$f'_c + 1000$
3000–5000	$f'_c + 1200$
More than 5000	$1.10\, f'_c + 700$

[a]1000 psi = 6.9 MPa.

@Seismicisolation

Table 3.20 Maximum Permissible Water/Cement Ratios for Concrete when Strength Data from Field Experience or Trial Mixtures are Not Available

	Absolute Water/Cement Ratio by Weight	
Specified Compressive Strength,[a] f'_c (psi)[b]	**Nonair-entrained Concrete**	**Air-entrained Concrete**
2500	0.67	0.54
3000	0.58	0.46
3500	0.51	0.40
4000	0.44	0.35
4500	0.38	[c]
5000	[c]	[c]

[a]28-day strength. With most materials, the water/cement ratios shown will provide average strengths greater than those calculated using Eqs. 3.1 and 3.2.

[b]1000 psi = 6.9 MPa.

[c]For strengths above 4500 psi for nonair-entrained concrete and 4000 psi for air-entrained concrete, mixture proportions should be established using trial mixtures.

2. *Data available on more than thirty consecutive cylinder tests.* If more than thirty consecutive test results are available, Eqs. 3.4–3.5 in Section 3.5.2 can be used to establish the required mixture strength, f'_{cr}, from f'_c. If two groups of consecutive test results with a total of more than 30 are available, f'_{cr} can be obtained using Eqs. 3.4a, b, and c.

Photo 3.4 Cylinder compression test.

3. *Data available on fewer than thirty consecutive cylinder tests.* If the number of consecutive test results available is fewer than thirty and more than 15, Eq. 3.3a should be used in conjunction with Table 3.21. Essentially, the designer should calculate the standard deviation s using Eq. 3.4, multiply the s value by a modification factor provided in Table 3.21, and use the modified s in Eqs. 3.3(a), 3.3(b). In this manner, the expected degree of spread of cylinder test values as measured by the standard deviation s is well accounted for.

3.5.1 Recommended Proportions for Concrete Strength f'_{cr}

Once the required average strength f'_{cr} for mixture design is determined, the actual mixture can be established to obtain this strength using either existing field data or a basic trial mixture design.

1. *Use of field data.* Field records of existing f'_{cr} values can be used if at least 10 consecutive test results are available. The test records should cover a period of time of at least 45 days. The materials and conditions of the existing field mixture data should be the same as the ones to be used in the proposed work.
2. *Trial mixture design.* If the field data are not available, trial mixtures should be used to establish the maximum water/cement ratio or minimum cement content for designing a mixture that produces a 28-day f'_{cr} value. In this procedure, the following requirements have to be met:
   - **(a)** Materials used and age of testing should be the same for the trial mixture and the concrete used in the structure.
   - **(b)** At least three water/cement ratios or three cement contents should be tried in the mixture design. The trial mixtures should result in the required f'_{cr}. Three cylinders should be tested for each w/c ratio and each cement content tried.
   - **(c)** The slump and air content should be within ± 0.75 in. and 0.5% of the permissible limits.
   - **(d)** A plot is constructed of the compressive strength at the designated age versus the cement content or water/cement ratio, from which one can then choose the w/c ratio or the cement content that can give the average f'_{cr} value required.

Table 3.21 Modification Factor for Sample Standard Deviation when Fewer than 30 Tests are Available

Number of tests[a]	**Modification factor for standard deviation**[b]
Less than 15	Use Table 3.19
15	1.16
20	1.08
25	1.03
30 or more	1.00

[a]Interpolate for intermediate number of tests.

[b]Modified standard deviation to be used to determine required average strength [illegible] whichever apply.

3.5.2 Trial Mixture Design for Average Strength When Prior Field-strength Data Are Available

If field test data are available for more than thirty consecutive tests, the trial mix should be designed for compressive strength f'_{cr} calculated from

$$\begin{aligned}&(a)\ f'_c \le 5000\text{psi}\\ &f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1.34s_c\end{aligned} \tag{3.3a}$$

or

$$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 2.33s_c - 500 \tag{3.3b}$$

$$\begin{aligned}&(b)\ f'_c > 5000\text{psi}\\ &f'_{cr} = 0.90f'_c + 2.33s_c\end{aligned} \tag{3.3c}$$

The larger value of f'_{cr} from Eqs. 3.3a and 3.3b should be used in designing the mixture for $f'_c \le 5000$psi, with the expectation of attaining the minimum f'_c specified design compressive strength and Equations 3.3a and 3.3c for $f'_c > 5000$ psi. When average compressive strength data is not available to establish a standard deviation, the following is used for the required average strength, f'_{cr}, psi:

For	$f'_c < 3000$,	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1000$,
	$f'_c = 3000 - 5000$,	$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1200$
	$f'_c > 5000$,	$f'_{cr} = 1.10\ f'_c + 700$

The standard deviation s is defined by the expression

$$s = \left[\frac{\Sigma(\bar{f}_{ci} - \bar{f}_c)^2}{n - 1}\right]^{1/2} \tag{3.4}$$

where $\bar{f}_{ci}$ = individual strength
$\bar{f}_c$ = average of the n specimens

If two test records are used to determine the average strength, the standard deviation becomes

$$s = \left[\frac{(n_1 - 1)\, s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)\, s_2^2}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}\right]^{1/2} \tag{3.5}$$

where s_1, s_2 = standard deviations calculated from two test records, 1 and 2, respectively
n_1, n_2 = number of tests in each test record, respectively

If the number of test results available is fewer than 30 and more than 15, the value of s used in Eqs. 3.3a and 3.3b should be multiplied by the appropriate modification factor value given in Table 3.21.

3.5.3 Example 3.3: Calculation of Design Strength for Trial Mixture

Calculate the average compressive strengths f'_{cr} for the design of a concrete mixture if the specified compressive strength f'_c is 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) such that (a) the standard deviation obtained using more than 30 consecutive tests is 500 psi (3.45 MPa); (b) the standard deviation obtained using 15 consecutive tests is 450 psi (3.11 MPa); (c) records of prior cylinder test results are not available.

Solution: (a) Using Eq. 3.3(a),

$$\begin{aligned}f'_{cr} &= 5000 + 1.34 \times 500\\ &= 5670 \text{ psi}\end{aligned}$$

Using Eq. 3.3(b),

$$f'_{cr} = 5000 + 2.33 \times 500 - 500$$
$$= 5665 \text{ psi}$$

Hence the required trial mix strength $f'_{cr} = 5670$ psi (39.12 MPa).

(b) $s = 450$ psi in 15 tests. From Table 3.19, the modification factor for s is 1.16. Hence the value of standard deviation to be used in Eqs. 3.3(a) and 3.3(b) is $1.16 \times 450 = 522$ psi (3.6 MPa). Using Eq. 3.3(a),

$$f'_{cr} = 5000 + 1.34 \times 522$$
$$= 5700 \text{ psi}$$

Using Eq. 3.3(b)

$$f'_{cr} = 5000 + 2.33 \times 522 - 500$$
$$= 5716 \text{ psi}$$

Hence the required trial mix strength $f'_{cr} = 5716$ psi (39.44 MPa).

(c) Records of prior test results are not available. Using Table 3.19,

$$f'_{cr} = f'_c + 1200 \quad \text{for 5000-psi concrete}$$

Hence the trial mixture strength = 5000 + 1200 = 6200 psi (42.78 MPa).

If the mixing plant keeps good records of its cylinder test results over a long period, the required trial mixture strength f'_{cr} can be reduced as a result of such quality control, hence reducing costs for the owner.

3.6 MIXTURE DESIGNS FOR NUCLEAR-SHIELDING CONCRETE

Whereas from the foregoing discussion it is seen that the design criterion was the *w/c* ratio, in concrete used for shielding against x-rays, gamma rays, and neutrons, the criterion is compactness or density of the mixture, regardless of workability. To achieve maximum density, tests have been conducted on various mixtures using crushed magnatite ore or fine steel shot instead of sand and steel punchings, magnatites, barites, or limonites instead of stone, as discussed previously. Results of these tests for both compactness and strength have shown that the *w/c* ratio has to be limited to 3.5 to 4.0 gal of water per bag of cement.

3.7 QUALITY TESTS ON CONCRETE

3.7.1 Workability or Consistency

Possible tests for workability or consistency include:

1. Slump test by means of the standard ASTM Code. The slump in inches recorded in the mixture indicates its workability.
2. Remolding tests using Power's flow table.
3. Kelley's ball apparatus.

The first method is the accepted ASTM standard.

3.7.2 Air Content

Measurement of the air content in fresh concrete is always necessary, especially when air-entraining agents are used.

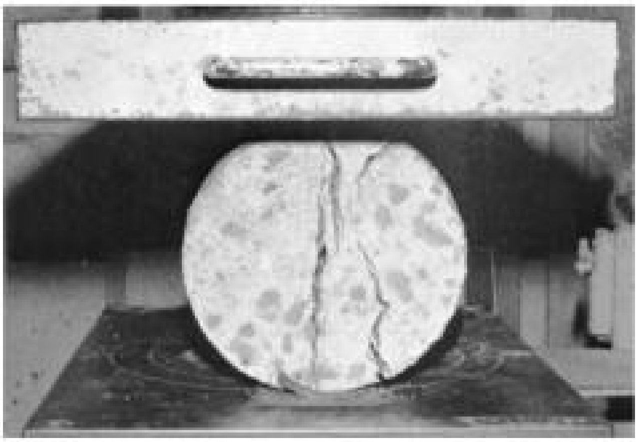


Photo 3.5 Tensile splitting test.

3.7.3 Compressive Strength of Hardened Concrete

This is done by loading cylinders 6 in. in diameter and 12 in. high in compression perpendicular to the axis of the cylinder. For high-strength concrete, cylinders 4 in. dia. × 8 in.-height can be used applying proper dimensional correction.

3.7.4 Flexural Strength of Plain Concrete Beams

This test is performed by three-point loading of plain concrete beams of size 6 in. × 6 in. × 18 in. that have spans three times their depth.

3.7.5 Tensile Splitting Tests

These tests are performed by loading the standard 6 in. × 12 in. cylinder by a line load perpendicular to its longitudinal axis, with the cylinder placed horizontally on the testing machine platten. The tensile splitting strength can be defined as

$$f_t' = \frac{2P}{\pi DL} \tag{3.6}$$

where P = total value of the line load registered by the testing machine
D = diameter of the concrete cylinder
L = cylinder height

The results of all these tests give the designer a measure of the expected strength of the designed concrete in the built structure.

3.8 PLACING AND CURING OF CONCRETE

3.8.1 Placing

The techniques necessary for placing concrete depend on the type of member to be cast; that is, whether it is a column, a beam, a wall, a slab, a foundation, a mass concrete dam, or an extension of previously placed and hardened concrete. For beams, columns, and walls, the forms should be well oiled after cleaning them, and the reinforcement should be cleared of rust and other harmful materials. In foundations, the earth should be compacted and thoroughly moistened to about 6 in. in depth to avoid absorption of the moisture present in the wet concrete. Concrete should always be placed in horizontal layers

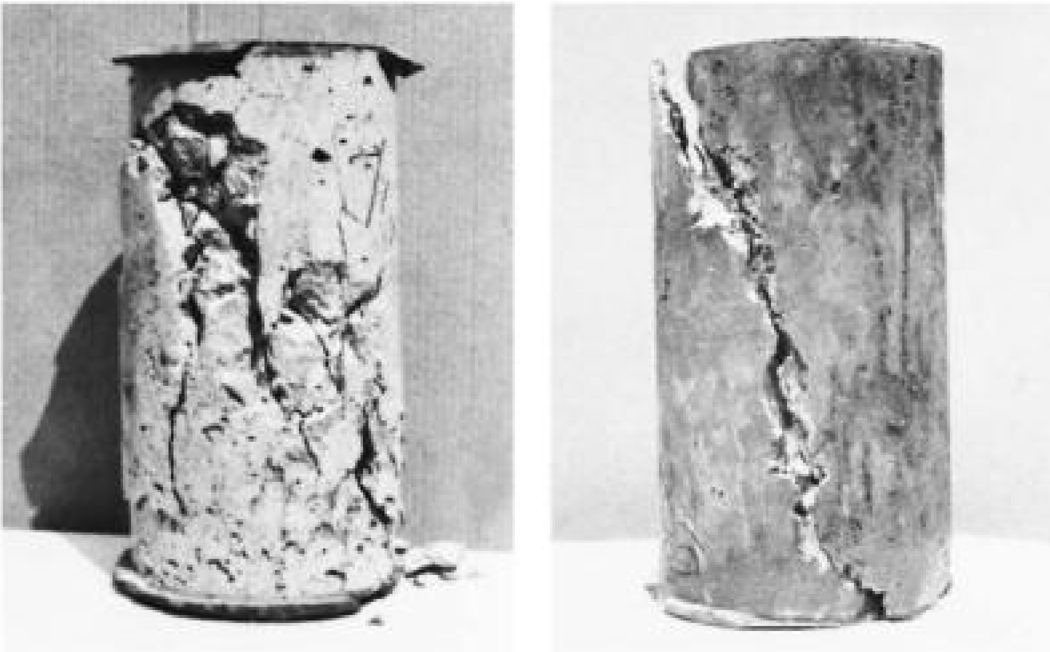


Photo 3.6 Concrete cylinders tested to failure in compression. Left, low-epoxy-cement content; right, high-epoxy-cement content. (Tests by Nawy, Sun, and Sauer.)

that are compacted by means of high-frequency, power-driven vibrators of either the immersion or external type, as the case requires, unless it is placed by pumping. Keep in mind, however, that overvibration can be harmful since it could cause segregation of the aggregate and bleeding of the concrete.

3.8.2 Curing

As seen in chapter 2, hydration of the cement takes place in the presence of moisture at temperatures above 50°F. It is necessary to maintain such a condition in order that the chemical hydration reaction can take place. If drying is too rapid, surface cracking takes place. This would result in reduction of concrete strength due to cracking, as well as failure to attain full chemical hydration.

To facilitate good curing conditions, any of the following methods can be used:

1. Continuously sprinkling with water.
2. Ponding with water.
3. Covering the concrete with wet burlap, plastic film, or waterproof curing paper.
4. Using liquid membrane-forming curing compounds to retain the original moisture in the wet concrete.
5. Steam curing in cases where the concrete member is manufactured under factory conditions, such as in cases of precast beams and pipes and prestressed girders and poles. Steam-curing temperatures are about 150°F. Curing time is usually 1 day, compared to the 5 to 7 days necessary when using the other methods.

3.8.3 Internal Curing Through Water Entrainment

Proper curing is a significant factor in high performance of concrete and the control of early-age cracking. This is particularly important when high-strength high performance concrete is desired both in reinforced and prestressed concrete structures. In addition to the methods briefly enumerated in Sec. 3.8.2, water entrainment, enhanced hydration and reduction of autogenous shrinkage can be achieved through *internal curing*, using structural lightweight aggregate (LWA) as a supplement to the normal aggregate in the proportioned mixture.

As discussed by T. A. Holm (Ref. 3.25), structural lightweight aggregate containing high internal moisture content may partially substitute ordinary aggregate to provide "internal curing" in concrete containing high volume of cementitious materials. High cementitious concretes are vulnerable to self-desiccation. They can benefit significantly from the moisture available within the structural lightweight aggregate, especially at early-age during the critical first seven days, when a large proportion of autogenous shrinkage takes place. This property is particularly helpful when curing vertical members and concretes containing high volumes of pozzolans that are sensitive to early drying.

This "internal curing" process is made possible when the moisture content of structural lightweight aggregate has a high degree of saturation during mixing (percent of internal pore volume occupied by water)—a fact known for many years that the absorbed moisture in structural lightweight aggregate acts not as part of the w/cm ratio, but available for internal curing. It is important to stress that the benefits of internal curing by virtue of water entrainment go far beyond the improvements in long-term strength gain. A significant reduction in permeability is achieved by the major increase in the length of curing time available, hence a resulting high performance of the finished product.

At this time, it is reasonable to assume that the amount of absorbed water, entrained in the pores of structural lightweight aggregate (substituted for an equal volume of normal density aggregate) that is necessary to fully cure low w/cm concrete mixtures may be estimated by:

$$\text{w/cm (high performance concrete)} + \left(\frac{\textit{Entrained water}}{\textit{Cementitious materials}}\right) \le 0.45,$$

where the entrained water = (Mass of LWA) × (Moisture content of LWA)

3.9 PROPERTIES OF HARDENED CONCRETE

The mechanical properties of hardened concrete can be classified as (1) short-term or instantaneous properties and (2) long-term properties. The short-term properties can be enumerated as (1) strength in compression, tension, and shear and (2) stiffness measured by modulus of elasticity. The long-term properties can be classified in terms of creep and shrinkage. The following sections present some details of the aforementioned properties.

3.9.1 Compressive Strength

Depending on the type of mixture, the properties of aggregate, and the time and quality of curing, compressive strengths of concrete can be obtained up to 20,000 psi or more. Commercial production of concrete with ordinary aggregate is usually in the range from 3000 to 10,000 psi, with the most common concrete strengths in the range from 3000 to 9000 psi.

The compressive strength, f'_c, is based on standard 6 in. × 12 in. cylinders cured under standard laboratory conditions and tested at a specified rate of loading at 28 days of age. The standard specifications used in the United States are usually taken from ASTM C-39. It should be mentioned that the strength of concrete in the actual structure may not be the same as that of the cylinder because of the difference in compaction and curing conditions.

The ACI Code specifies for a strength test the average of two cylinders from the same sample tested at the same age, which is usually 28 days. As for the frequency of testing, the Code specifies that the strength level of an individual class of concrete can be considered as satisfactory if (1) the average of all sets of three consecutive strength tests equal or exceed the required f'_c, and (2) no individual strength test (average of two cylinders) falls below the required f'_c by more than 500 psi. The average concrete strength for which a concrete mixture must be designed should exceed f'_c by an amount that depends on the uniformity of plant production, as explained in Section 3.5.

It must be emphasized that the design f'_c should not be the average cylinder strength. The design value should be chosen as the conceivable minimum cylinder strength.

3.9.2 Tensile Strength

The tensile strength of concrete is relatively low. A good approximation for the tensile strength f_{ct} is $0.10f'_c < f_{ct} < 0.20f'_c$. It is more difficult to measure tensile strength than compressive strength because of the gripping problems with testing machines. A number of methods are available for tension testing, the most commonly used method being the cylinder splitting test, sometimes referred to as the Brazilian test.

For members subjected to bending, the value of the modulus of rupture f_r rather than tensile splitting strength f'_t is used in design. The modulus of rupture is measured by testing to failure plain concrete beams 6 in. square in cross section, having a span of 18 in. and loaded at the third points (ASTM C-78). The modulus of rupture has a higher value than the tensile splitting strength. The ACI specifies a value of $7.5\sqrt{f'_c}$ for the modulus of rupture of normal-weight normal-strength concrete.

In most cases, lightweight concrete has a lower tensile strength than does normal-weight concrete. Following are the ACI Code stipulations for lightweight concrete.

1. If the splitting tensile strength f_{ct} is specified,

$$f_r = 1.09f_{ct} \leq 7.5\sqrt{f'_c}$$

2. If f_{ct} is not specified, use a factor of 0.75 for all lightweight concrete and 0.85 for sand-lightweight concrete. Linear interpolation may be used for mixtures of natural sand and lightweight fine aggregate.

3.9.3 Shear Strength

Shear strength is more difficult to determine experimentally than the tests discussed previously because of the difficulty in isolating shear from other stresses. This is one reason for the large variation in shear-strength values reported in the literature, varying from 20% of the compressive strength in normal loading to a considerably higher percentage of up to 85% of the compressive strength in cases where direct shear exists in combination with compression. Control of a structural design by shear strength is significant only in rare cases, since shear stresses must ordinarily be limited to continually lower values in order to protect the concrete from failure in diagonal tension.

3.9.4 Stress–Strain Curve

Knowledge of the stress–strain relationship of concrete is essential for developing all the analysis and design terms and procedures in concrete structures. Figure 3.5a shows a typical stress–strain curve obtained from tests using cylindrical concrete specimens loaded in uniaxial compression over several minutes. The first portion of the curve, to about 40% of the ultimate strength f'_c, can be considered essentially linear for all practical purposes. After approximately 70% of the failure stress, the material loses a large portion of its

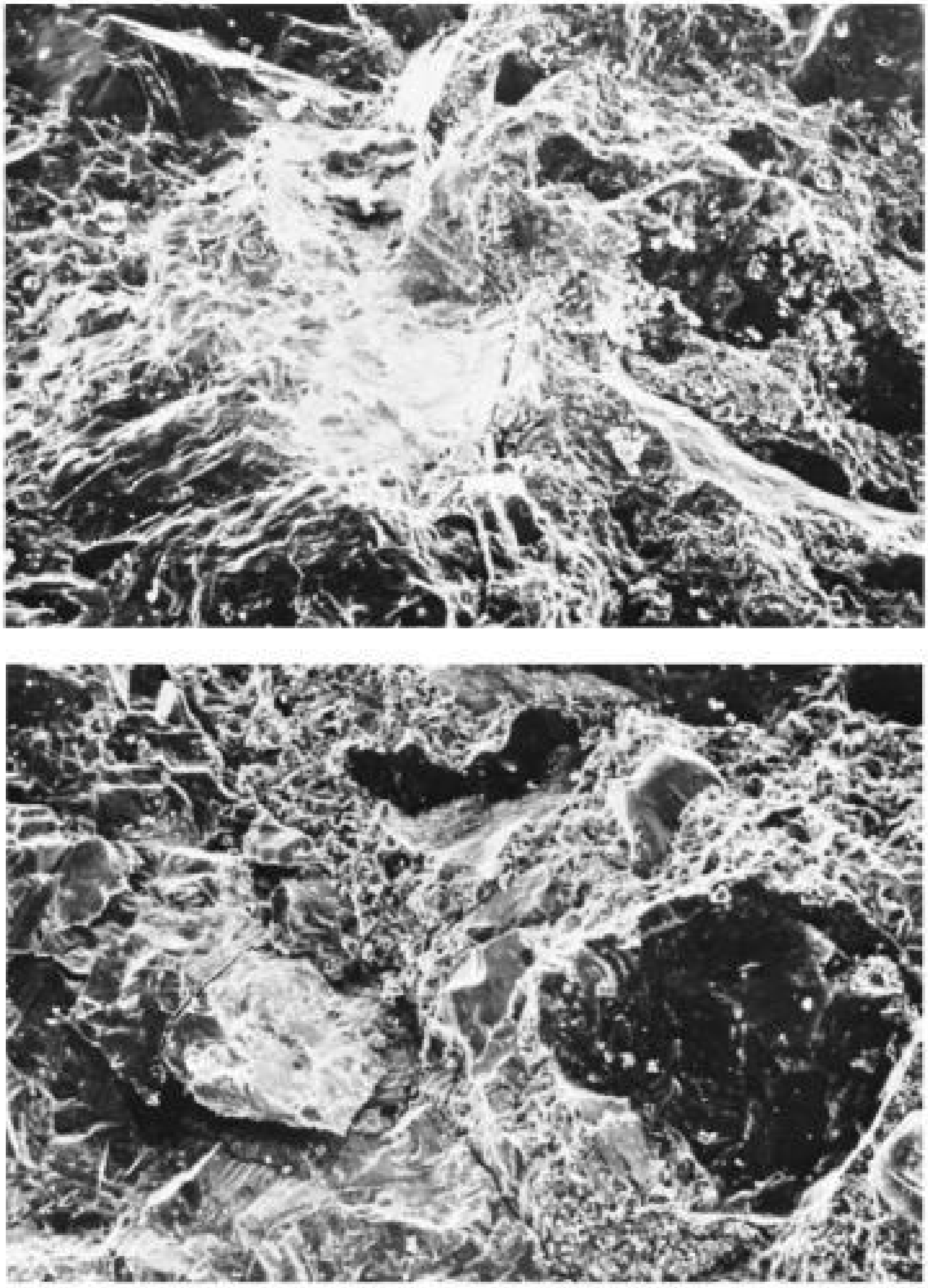


Photo 3.7 Electron microscope photographs of concrete from specimens in the preceding photographs. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

stiffness, thereby increasing the curvilinearity of the diagram. At ultimate load, cracks parallel to the direction of loading become distinctly visible, and most concrete cylinders (except those with very low strengths) fail suddenly shortly thereafter. Figure 3.5b shows the stress–strain curves of concrete of various strengths reported by the Portland Cement Association. It can be observed that (1) the lower the strength of concrete, the higher the failure strain; (2) the length of the initial relatively linear portion increases with the in-

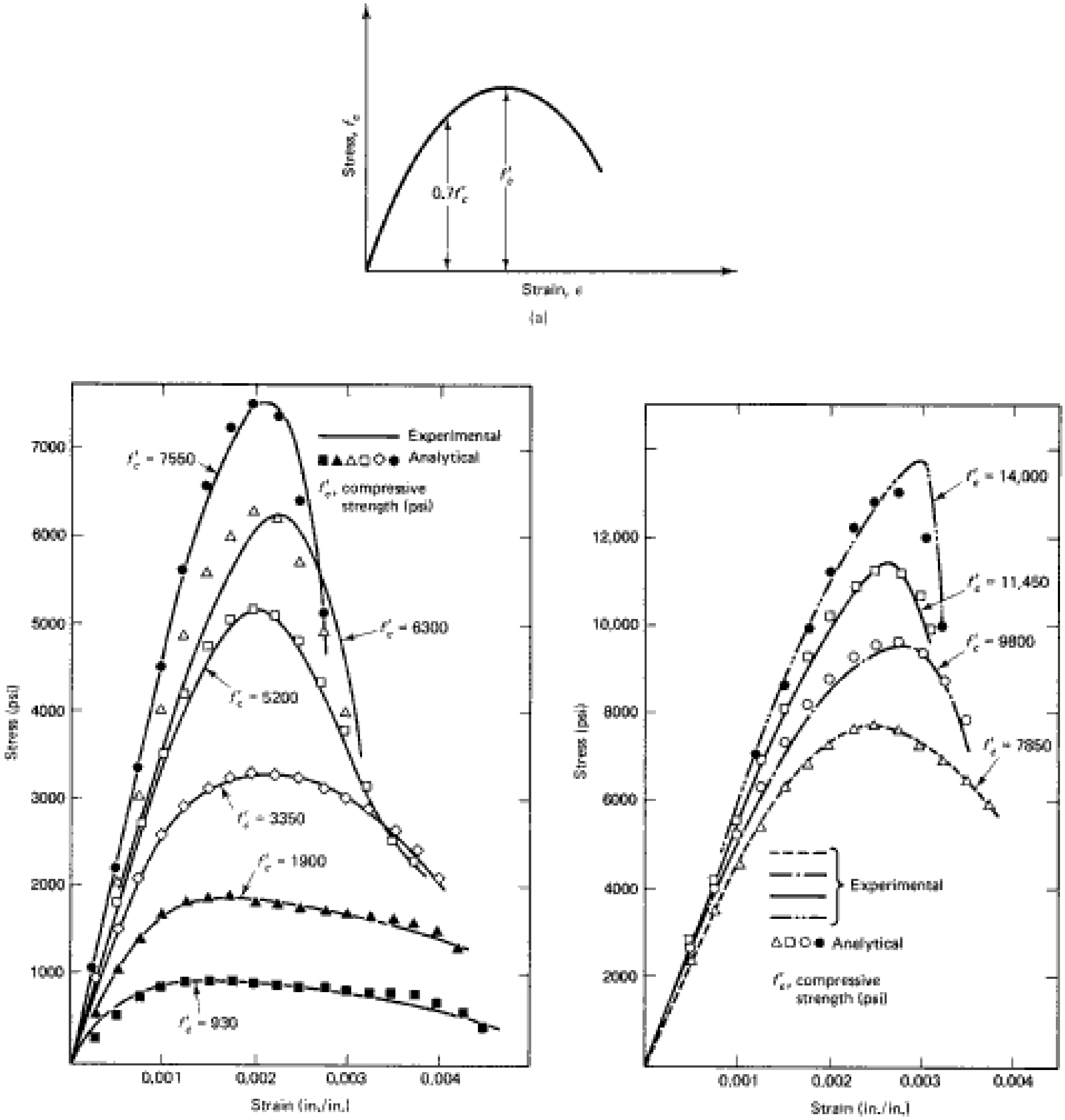


Figure 3.5 (a) Typical stress–strain curve of concrete; (b) stress–strain curves for various concrete strengths.

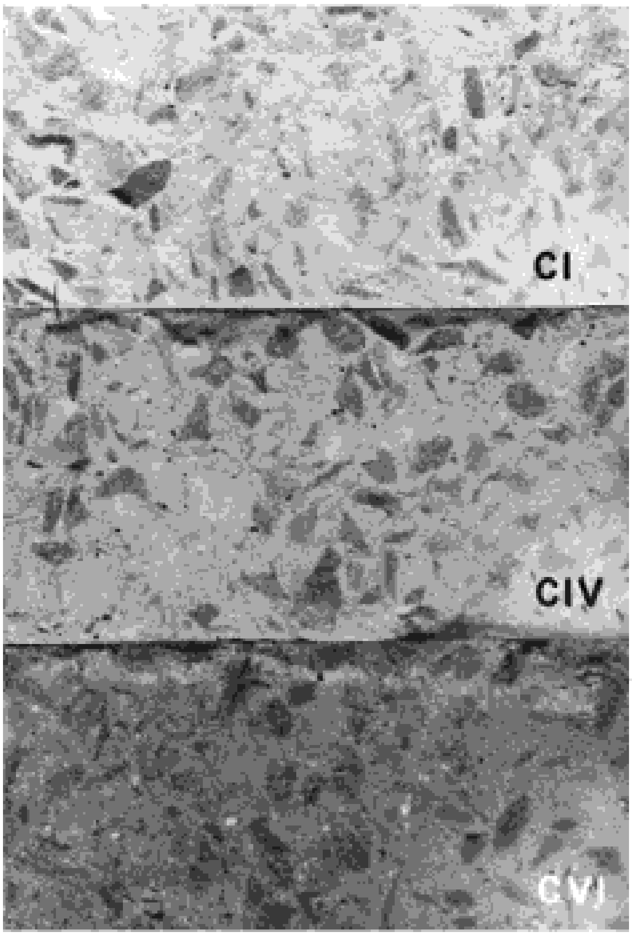


Photo 3.8 Fracture surfaces in tensile splitting tests of concretes with different *w/c* contents. Specimens CI and CIV have higher *w/c* content, hence more bond failures than specimen CVI. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

crease in the compressive strength of concrete; and (3) there is an apparent reduction in ductility with increased strength.

3.9.5 Modulus of Elasticity

Since the stress–strain curve shown in Fig. 3.6 is curvilinear at a very early stage of its loading history, Young's modulus of elasticity can be applied only to the tangent of the curve at the origin. The initial slope of the tangent to the curve is defined as the initial tangent modulus, and it is also possible to construct a tangent modulus at any point of the curve. The slope of the straight line that connects the origin to a given stress (about $0.4f'_c$) determines the secant modulus of elasticity of concrete. This value, termed in design calculation the *modulus of elasticity*, satisfies the practical assumption that strains occurring during loading can be considered basically elastic (recoverable on unloading) and that any subsequent strain due to the load is regarded as creep.

The ACI Code gives the following expressions for calculating the secant modulus of elasticity of concrete (E_c) for f'_c up to 6000 psi

$$E_c(\text{psi}) = 33w_c^{1.5}\sqrt{f'_c} \quad \text{for } 90 < w_c < 155 \text{ lb/ft}^3;$$

$$E_c(\text{MPa}) = 0.043w_c^{1.5}\sqrt{f'_c}$$

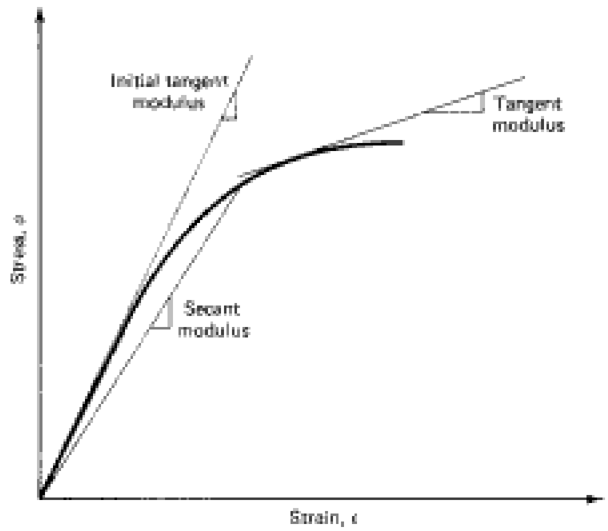


Figure 3.6 Tangent and secant moduli of concrete.

where w_c is the density of concrete in pounds per cubic foot (1 lb/ft^3 = 16.02 kg/m^3) and f'_c is the compressive cylinder strength in psi. For normal-weight concrete,

$$E_c = 57{,}000\sqrt{f'_c}\ \text{psi} \quad \text{or} \quad E_c = 4730\sqrt{f'_c}\ \text{N/mm}^2$$

For concrete compressive strength $f'_c = 6000 - 12{,}000$ psi,

$$E_c\,(\text{psi}) = (40{,}000\sqrt{f'_c} + 1.0 \times 10^6)\left(\frac{w_c}{145}\right)^{1.5};\ E_c\,(\text{MPa}) = (3.32\sqrt{f'_c} + 6895)\left(\frac{w_c}{2320}\right)^{1.5}$$

For $f'_c > 12{,}000$ psi, reference has to be made to the research literature, or conduct control tests in large projects to establish a realistic E_c.

These expressions are valid only in general terms, since the value of the modulus of elasticity is also affected by factors other than loads, such as moisture in the concrete specimen, the water/cement ratio, age of the concrete, and temperature. Therefore, for special structures such as arches, tunnels, and tanks, and high-strength concretes, the modulus of elasticity needs to be determined from test results.

Limited work exists on the determination of the modulus of elasticity in tension because the low tensile strength of concrete is normally disregarded in calculations. It is, however, valid to assume within those limitations that the value of the modulus in tension is equal to that in compression.

3.9.6 Shrinkage

Basically, there are two types of shrinkage: plastic shrinkage and drying shrinkage. *Plastic shrinkage* occurs during the first few hours after placing fresh concrete in the forms. Exposed surfaces such as floor slabs are more easily affected by exposure to dry air because of their large contact surface. In such cases, moisture evaporates faster from the concrete surface than it is replaced by the bleed water from the lower layers of the concrete elements.

Drying shrinkage, on the other hand, occurs after the concrete has already attained its final set and a good portion of the chemical hydration process in the cement gel has been accomplished. Drying shrinkage is the decrease in the volume of a concrete element when it loses moisture by evaporation. The opposite phenomenon, that is, volume increase through water absorption, is termed *swelling*. In other words, shrinkage and swelling represent water movement out of or into the gel structure of a concrete specimen due to the difference in humidity or saturation levels between the specimen and the surroundings irrespective of the external load.

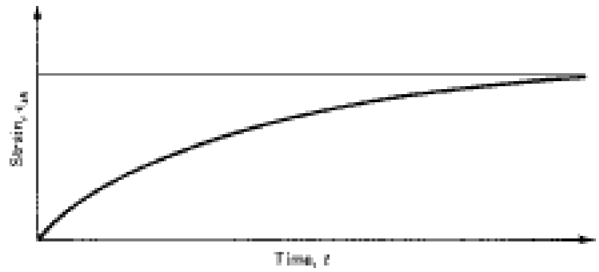


Figure 3.7 Shrinkage–time curve.

Shrinkage is not a completely reversible process. If a concrete unit is saturated with water after having fully shrunk, it will not expand to its original volume. Figure 3.7 relates the increase in shrinkage strain ϵ_{sh} with time. The rate decreases with time since older concretes are more resistant to stress and consequently undergo less shrinkage, such that the shrinkage strain becomes almost asymptotic with time.

Several factors affect the magnitude of drying shrinkage:

1. *Aggregate.* The aggregate acts to restrain the shrinkage of the cement paste; hence concretes with high aggregate content are less vulnerable to shrinkage. In addition, the degree of restraint of a given concrete is determined by the properties of aggregates; those with high modulus of elasticity or with rough surfaces are more resistant to the shrinkage process.
2. *Water/cement ratio.* The higher the water/cement or water/cementitious ratio, the higher the shrinkage effects. Figure 3.8 is a typical plot relating aggregate content to water/cement ratio.
3. *Size of the concrete element.* Both the rate and total magnitude of shrinkage decrease with an increase in the volume of the concrete element. However, the duration of shrinkage is longer for larger members since more time is needed for drying to reach the internal regions. It is possible that 1 year may be needed for the drying process to begin at a depth of 10 in. from the exposed surface and 10 years to begin at 24 in. below the external surface.
4. *Medium ambient conditions.* The relative humidity of the medium affects greatly the magnitude of shrinkage; the rate of shrinkage is lower at high states of relative humidity. The environment temperature is another factor, in that shrinkage becomes stabilized at low temperatures.

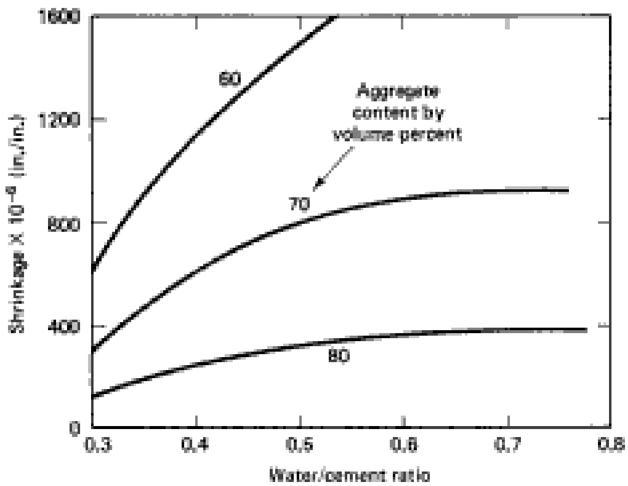


Figure 3.8 *w/c* ratio and aggregate content effect on shrinkage.

5. *Amount of reinforcement.* Reinforced concrete shrinks less than plain concrete; the relative difference is a function of the reinforcement percentage.
6. *Admixtures.* This effect varies depending on the type of admixture. An accelerator such as calcium chloride, used to accelerate the hardening and setting of the concrete, increases the shrinkage. Pozzolans can also increase the drying shrinkage, whereas air-entraining agents have little effect.
7. *Type of cement.* Rapid-hardening cement shrinks somewhat more than other types, while shrinkage-compensating cements minimize or eliminate shrinkage cracking if used with restraining reinforcement.
8. *Carbonation.* Carbonation shrinkage is caused by the reaction between carbon dioxide (CO_2) present in the atmosphere and that present in the cement paste. The amount of the combined shrinkage varies according to the sequence of occurrence of carbonation and drying processes. If both phenomena take place simultaneously, less shrinkage develops. The process of carbonation, however, is dramatically reduced at relative humidities below 50%.

3.9.6.1 Shrinkage Prediction for Standard Conditions. The value of the ultimate shrinkage strain at standard conditions has the following range.

$$(\varepsilon_{SH})_u = 415 \times 10^{-6} \text{ to } 1070 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in./in. (mm/mm)}$$

An average value of $(\varepsilon_{SH})_u$ as recommended by ACI Committee 209 as follows

moist-cured for seven days $\quad (\gamma_{SH})_u = 800 \times 10^{-6}$ in./in. (mm/mm)

steam-cured for 1–3 days $\quad (\gamma_{SH})_u = 730 \times 10^{-6}$ in./in. (mm/mm)

A common average shrinkage strain in standard conditions for both moist-cured and steam-cured concretes can be used[3.5] with sufficient accuracy having a value

$$(\varepsilon_{SH})_u = 780 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in./in. (mm/mm)}$$

The shrinkage strain prediction expression for standard conditions becomes

after 7 days of moist curing:

$$(\varepsilon_{SH})_t = \frac{t}{35 + t}(\varepsilon_{SH})_u$$

where t is the age of concrete in days after curing.

after 1–3 days of steam curing:

$$(\varepsilon_{SH})_t = \frac{t}{55 + t}(\varepsilon_{SH})_u$$

3.9.6.2 Shrinkage and Temperature Reinforcement Requirements for Building Structures. Reinforcement for shrinkage and temperature stresses normal to flexural reinforcement has to be provided in structural slabs, mat foundations and walls in accordance with ACI 318 Code for Building Structures,[3.9] when the flexural reinforcement extends in one direction only. They serve to control cracking due to restraint of the structural element by adjacent members. The percentage of reinforcement required is:

(a) 0.20 percent for grades 40 and 50 ksi. Steel reinforcement.
(b) 0.18 percent for grade 60 ksi steel reinforcement.
(c) For stresses exceeding 60 ksi, the percentage is proportioned to give $\dfrac{0.0018 \times 60{,}000}{f_y}$.

The spacing of the reinforcement should not exceed 5 times the slab thickness, nor further apart than 18 in. Also, additional consideration needs to be given to effects of forces due to prestressing, vibration, impact, creep, and excessive restraint.

3.9.6.3 Shrinkage and Temperature Reinforcement Requirements for Liquid Retaining Structures, Sanitary Containment Structures. These are special structures where water tightness is essential to prevent leakage and loss of potable water or hazardous sewage liquids. The requirements for reinforcement percentage are set in the ACI 350 Code for Environmental Structures for structural slabs, walls and mat foundations, where the flexural reinforcement extends in one direction only. Where shrinkage and temperature movements are significantly restrained, additional consideration needs to be given to effects of forces due to prestressing, vibration, impact, creep.

Concrete sections that are 24 in. thick or greater may have the minimum shrinkage and temperature reinforcement based on 12 in. concrete layer at each face. The reinforcement in the bottom of the base slabs supported on soil may be reduced by 50 percent of that required in this table.

Table 3.22 Minimum Shrinkage and Temperature Reinforcement for Environmental Structures[a,3.27]

Length between Movement Joints, ft	Minimum shrinkage and temperature Reinforcement ratio	
	Grade 40	Grade 60
Less than 20 ft	0.003	0.003
20 to less than 30	0.004	0.003
30 to less than 40	0.005	0.004
40 and greater	0.006[a]	0.005[a]

[a]Maximum shrinkage and temperature reinforcement where movement joints are not provided.

When using this table, the actual joint spacing should be multiplied by 1.5 if no more than 50 percent of the reinforcement passes through the joint

Note that due to the rigidity of the joint between the wall and the base of a liquid-retaining structure, the 0.005 value (Grade 60 steel) for horizontal reinforcement in Table 3.22 to prevent extensive vertical cracks is not sufficient at the lower quarter segment of the wall. The design engineer should prescribe a higher percentage than the code stipulates, and in walls and base slabs of 36 in. thickness and higher, the value should even be close to one percent to control the vertical cracks and thereby prevent long term leakage of the retained liquid.

3.9.7 Creep

Creep, or lateral material flow, is the increase in strain with time due to a sustained load. Initial deformation due to load is the *elastic strain*, while the additional strain due to the same sustained load is the *creep strain*. This practical assumption is acceptable since the initial recorded deformation includes few time-dependent effects.

Figure 3.9 illustrates the increase in creep strain with time, and as in the case of shrinkage, it can be seen that creep decreases with time. Creep cannot be observed directly and can be determined only by deducting elastic strain and shrinkage strain from the total deformation. Although shrinkage and creep are not independent phenomena, it can be assumed that superposition of strains is valid; hence

$$\text{total strain } (\epsilon_t) = \text{elastic strain } (\epsilon_e) + \text{creep } (\epsilon_c) + \text{shrinkage } (\epsilon_{sh})$$

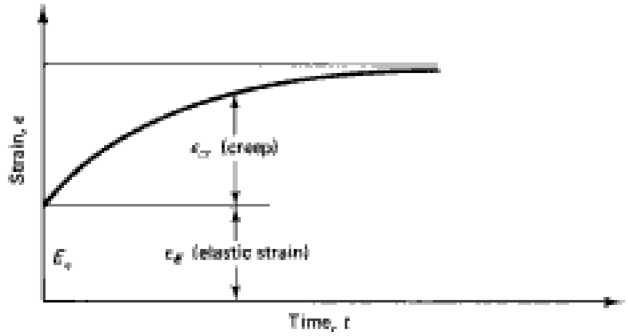


Figure 3.9 Strain-time curve.

An example of the relative numerical values of strain due to the foregoing three factors is presented for a normal concrete specimen subjected to 900 psi in compression:

$$\text{Immediate elastic strain, } \epsilon_e = 250 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in.-in.}$$

$$\text{Shrinkage strain after 1 year, } \epsilon_{sh} = 500 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in.-in.}$$

$$\text{Creep strain after 1 year, } \epsilon_{cr} = 750 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in.-in.}$$

$$\epsilon_T = 1500 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in./in.}$$

These relative values illustrate that stress–strain relationships for short-term loading lose their significance and long-term loadings become dominant in their effect on the behavior of a structure.

Figure 3.10 qualitatively shows in a three-dimensional model the three types of strain discussed resulting from sustained compressive stress and shrinkage. Since creep is time dependent, this model has to be such that its orthogonal axes are deformation, stress, and time.

Numerous tests have indicated that creep deformation is proportional to the applied stress, but the proportionality is valid only for low stress levels. The upper limit of the relationship cannot be determined accurately, but can vary between 0.2 and 0.5 of the

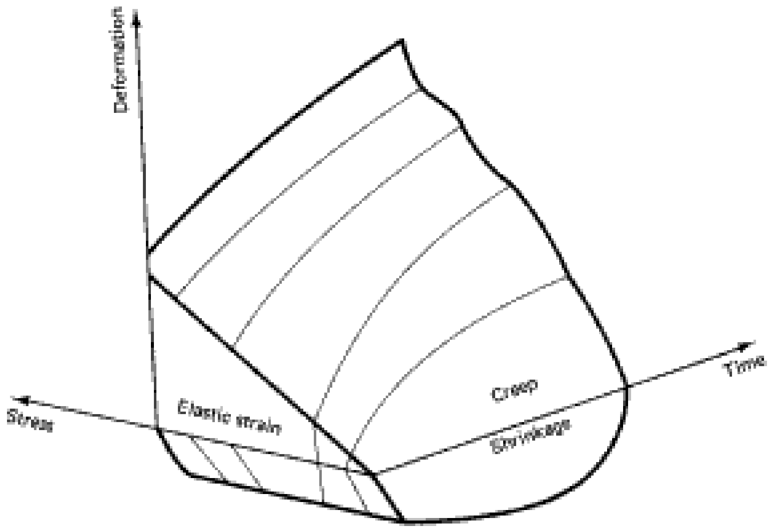


Figure 3.10 Three-dimensional model of time-dependent structural behavior.

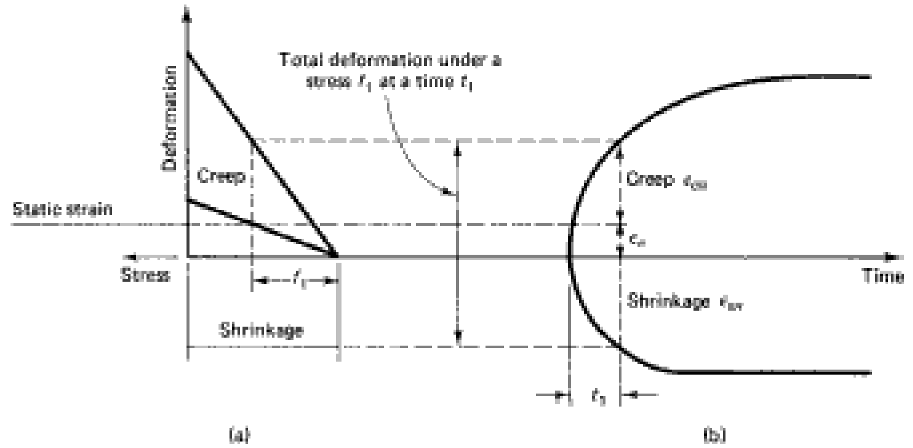


Figure 3.11 (a) Section parallel to the stress–deformation plane; (b) section parallel to the deformation–time plane.

ultimate strength f'_c. This range in the limit of the proportionality is expected due to the large extent of microcracks at about 40% of the ultimate load.

Figure 3.11a shows a section of the three-dimensional model in Fig. 3.10 parallel to the plane containing the stress and deformation axes at time t_1. It indicates that both elastic and creep strains are linearly proportional to the applied stress. In a similar manner, Fig. 3.11b illustrates a section parallel to the plane containing the time and strain axes at a stress f_1; hence it shows the familiar creep–time and shrinkage–time relationships.

As in the case of shrinkage, creep is not completely reversible. If a specimen is unloaded after a period under a sustained load, an immediate elastic recovery is obtained that is less than the strain precipitated on loading. The instantaneous recovery is followed by a gradual decrease in strain, called *creep recovery*. The extent of the recovery depends on the age of the concrete when loaded with older concretes presenting higher creep recoveries, while residual strains or deformations become frozen in the structural element (see Fig. 3.12).

Creep is closely related to shrinkage and, as a general rule, a concrete that is resistant to shrinkage also presents a low creep tendency, as both phenomena are related to the hydrated cement paste. Hence creep is influenced by the composition of the concrete, the environmental conditions, and the size of the specimen, but principally creep depends on loading as a function of time.

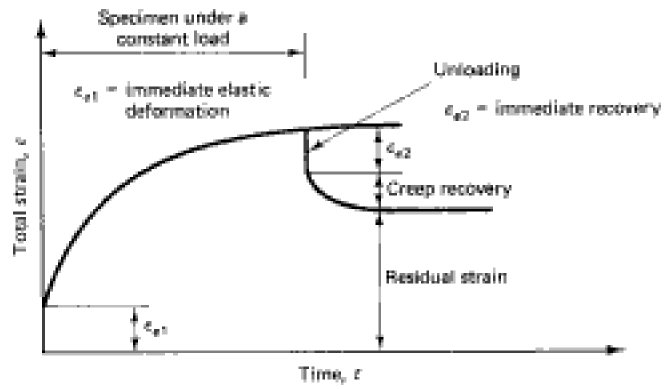


Figure 3.12 Creep recovery versus time.

The composition of a concrete specimen can be essentially defined by the water/cement ratio, aggregate and cement types, and aggregate and cement contents. Therefore, like shrinkage, an increase in the water/cement ratio and in the cement content increases creep. Also, as in shrinkage, the aggregate induces a restraining effect such that an increase in aggregate content reduces creep.

3.9.8 Creep Effects

As in shrinkage, creep increases the deflection of beams and slabs and causes loss of prestress. In addition, the initial eccentricity of a reinforced concrete column increases with time due to creep, resulting in the transfer of the compressive load from the concrete to the steel in the section.

Once the steel yields, additional load has to be carried by the concrete. Consequently, the resisting capacity of the column is reduced and the curvature of the column increases further, resulting in overstress in the concrete and leading to failure.

3.9.9 Rheological Models

Rheological models are mechanical devices that portray the general deformation behavior and flow of materials under stress. A model is basically composed of elastic springs and ideal dashpots denoting stress, elastic strain, delayed elastic strain, irrecoverable strain, and time. The springs represent the proportionality between stress and strain, and the dashpots represent the proportionality of stress to the rate of strain. A spring and a dashpot in parallel form a Kelvin unit, and in series they form a Maxwell unit.

Two rheological models will be discussed: the Burgers model and the Ross model. The Burgers model in Fig. 3.13 is shown since it can approximately simulate the stress–strain–time behavior of concrete at the limit of proportionality with some limitations. This model simulates the instantaneous recoverable strain (a); the delayed recoverable elastic strain in the spring (b); and the irrecoverable time-dependent strain in dashpots (c and d). The weakness in this model is that it continues to deform at a uniform rate as long as the load is sustained by the Maxwell dashpot, a behavior not similar to concrete, where creep reaches a limiting value with time, as shown in Fig. 3.9.

A modification in the form of the Ross rheological model in Fig. 3.14 can eliminate this deficiency. A in this model represents the Hookian direct proportionality of stress-to-strain element, D represents the Newtonian element, and B and C are the elastic springs that can transmit the applied load $P(t)$ to the enclosing cylinder walls by direct friction. Since each coil has a defined frictional resistance, only those coils whose resistances equal the applied load $P(t)$ are displaced; the others remain unstressed, symbolizing the irrecoverable deformation in concrete. As the load continues to increase, it overcomes the spring resistance of unit B, pulling out the spring from the dashpot and signifying failure in a concrete element. More rigorous models have been used, such as Roll's model to assist in predicting the creep strains. Mathematical expressions for such

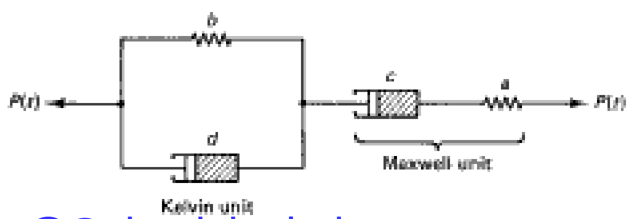


Figure 3.13 Burgers model.

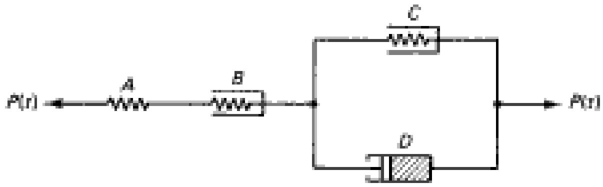


Figure 3.14 Ross model.

predictions can be very rigorous. One convenient expression due to Ross defines creep C under load after a time interval t as follows:

$$C = \frac{t}{a + bt} \tag{3.7}$$

where a and b are constants determinable from tests.

Work by Branson (Refs. 3.15 and 3.16) has simplified creep evaluation. The additional strain ϵ_{cu} due to creep can be defined as

$$\epsilon_{cu} = \rho_u f_{ci} \tag{3.8a}$$

where ρ_u = unit creep coefficient, generally called *specific creep*
f_{ci} = stress intensity in the structural member corresponding to unit strain ϵ_{ci}

If C_u is the ultimate creep coefficient,

$$C_u = \rho_u E_c \tag{3.8b}$$

An average value of $C_u = 2.35$.

Branson's model, verified by extensive tests, relates the creep coefficient C_t at any time to the ultimate creep coefficient as follows:

$$C_t = \frac{t^{0.6}}{10 + t^{0.6}} C_u \tag{3.9}$$

or, alternatively,

$$\rho_t = \frac{t^{0.6}}{10 + t^{0.6}} \tag{3.10}$$

where t is the time in days.

The selected references at the end of the chapter give detailed information on the creep coefficients and constants to be used to evaluate creep effect. The brief discussion in this section is intended to provide exposure to the procedures considered in any fundamental study of creep and shrinkage behavior.

3.10 HIGH-STRENGTH CONCRETE

3.10.1 General Principles

Concretes with compressive strength f'_c of at least 6000 psi (44.4 MPa) can be classified as high-strength concrete at this time, with the possibility today of achieving 20,000-psi (137.9-MPa) concrete under field conditions. To produce such concrete, chemical and mineral admixtures as well as air-entraining agents have to be used. Chemical retarders are used to retard the setting time for the cement-rich, high-strength concrete. Mineral admixtures such as fly ash, slag cement, and silica fume are also frequently used.

It is found that silica-fume admixtures in the range from 5 to 30% by weight of cement are an ideal additive for drastic increase in the compressive strength and considerable reduction in permeability. The increase in concrete density and strength is due to the dispersion of ultrafine particles of silica fume between the cement grains. This in turn results in a reduction of workability, which is enhanced further by the reduced water/cement ratios of the high-strength concrete mixture. Consequently, high-range, water/reducing admixtures, called plasticizers, would have to be added in the required proportions in order to increase workability appreciably while maintaining a low water/cement ratio.

As with other ingredients of high-strength concrete, the fine and coarse aggregates should be of good quality. For low *w/c* ratios, smaller-size coarse aggregates give better results. The grading of the aggregates is relatively unimportant in high-strength concrete compared to conventional concrete due to the high content of fine cementitious materials. However, it is sometimes helpful to increase the fineness modulus to make the concrete consistency less viscous. Gap grading provides better results than continuous grading. For compressive strength above 8000 psi, it is advisible to use a maximum size of aggregate less than $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ in. Cleanliness of both the fine and coarse aggregates deserves particular attention. In general, three characteristics of the coarse aggregate—compressive strength, bonding potential with cement paste, and low water absorption capacity—are important in the production of high-strength concrete.

In addition to stringent quality control of materials, high-strength concrete requires proper proportioning to attain the desired mixture along with careful mixing, handling, placing, and curing. Available mixture proportions data could be used as guidelines for trial mixture designs. However, to attain the desired strength and characteristics, extensive trial mixture designs are required. In addition, the importance of curing increases due to the use of low *w/c* ratios, as one must not only avoid moisture escape but also provide extra water for hydration. Similarly, proper mixing, handling, and placing are important to prevent moisture loss and produce workable concrete.

As to water content, it is important to consider the *total* water content, including that from the coarse and fine aggregate and all admixtures. Whereas in conventional practice a range of 0.40 to 0.45 *w/c* is used, the following are the recommended values for higher-strength concretes:

f'_c (psi)	*w/c*
6,000–10,000	0.40–0.35
10,000–12,000	0.35–0.30
12,000–20,000	0.30–0.22

The very low *w/cm* ratio ranges are achieved by utilizing large amounts of superplasticizer and high cement content.

In summary, four basic principles have to be considered in the production of high-strength concrete: (1) improved aggregate–matrix bond, (2) reduced porosity, (3) improved compaction, and (4) application of internal agents such as silica fumes and plasticizers and external agents such as lateral confinement through internal steel hoops, heat or steam curing, proper handling, and strict quality control.

3.10.2 Design Criteria

Available expressions defining concrete properties are based primarily on experimental data of concrete with compressive strength below 6000 psi. Such expressions do not necessarily define the relevant parameters when high-strength concrete is being used. When the concrete compressive strength exceeds 6000 psi for high-strength concrete, particularly in the range from 8000 to 12,000 psi, engineering properties of the concrete, such as elasticity, flexural strength, tensile resistance, and bond strength, may be affected.

The principal mechanical properties of concrete are compressive and tensile strength, creep and shrinkage, and modulus of elasticity. The actual values of tensile strength, modulus of elasticity, creep, and shrinkage are a function of compressive strength for most low- and moderate-strength concretes. But such correlation is not always the case for high compressive strengths.

3.10.2.1 Modulus of Elasticity E_c. The modulus of elasticity is strongly influenced by the concrete materials and proportions used. An increase in the modulus E_c is expected with the increase in compressive strength since the slope of the ascending branch of the stress–strain diagram becomes steeper for higher-strength concretes, but at a *lower* rate than the compressive strength. The value of the secant modulus E_c for normal-strength concretes at 28 days is usually approximately 4×10^6 psi, whereas for higher-strength concretes values in the range from 7 to 8×10^6 psi have been recorded. These higher values can be used to reduce short- and long-term deflection of flexural members and eccentricity of columns and other biaxially loaded members.

For concretes in the strength range up to 6000 psi, the ACI Code empirical equation for the secant modulus of concrete E_c given in Section 3.9.5 is reasonably applicable. However, as the strength of concrete increases, in the range from 12,000 to 20,000 psi, the value of E_c increases at a faster rate than that generated by the ACI expression ($E_c = 33\, w_c^{1.5}\sqrt{f'_c}$), thereby underestimating the true E_c value.

Available expressions for E_c applicable to concrete strength up to 12,000 psi are inconclusive. The expression due to Carrasquillo et al. (Ref. 3.19) for normal-weight concrete of strengths up to 12,000 psi and lightweight concrete up to 9000 psi is

$$E_c(40{,}000\sqrt{f'_c} + 1 \times 10^6)\left(\frac{w_c}{145}\right)^{1.5} \tag{3.11}$$

where w_c is the unit weight of the hardened concrete in pcf. Other investigations report that as f'_c approaches 12,000 psi for normal-weight concrete and less for lightweight concrete, Eq. 3.11 can underestimate the true value of E_c. At the present state of the art, it is advisable in cases of very high strength use in major structures where f'_c is in the range of 20,000 psi or higher that adequate stress–strain cylinder compression tests be performed with stress–strain readings. In this manner, the deduced secant modulus value of E_c at an $f_c = 0.45 f'_c$ intercept could predict more accurately the true value of the E_c for the particular mixture and aggregate size and properties until an acceptable expression is available to the designer. The long-term stiffness and deflection computations would thereby be more representative.

Work at Rutgers (Ref. 3.22) on high-strength composite construction has resulted in considerable enhancement of the ductility of high-strength reinforced concrete beams. Prestressed concrete prisms of high-strength concrete were used in place of the normal mild steel bar reinforcement. The mixture proportions in lb/yd^3 were as shown in Table 3.23. The mixture was designed for 7-day compressive strength of 12,000 psi (84 MPa). The ratio of the cementations/fine/coarse aggregate was 1:1.22:2.06, and the slump varied between 4 and 6 in. (100 and 150 mm). The prestressing strands were stress relieved 270-kips (1900-MPa), 7-wire, ⅜-in.-(9.5-mm)-diameter strands.

Figure 3.15 shows the cross section of the composite beams, and Fig. 3.16 gives a typical stress–strain relationship of the concrete, which achieved in some of the mixes a

Table 3.23 Mix Proportions (lb/yd^3) for Composite Beams = $f'_c > 13{,}000$ psi

Coarse Aggregate, ⅜ in.	Fine Aggregate (Natural Sand)	Portland Cement, Type III	Water	Powder Silica Fume, Force 10,000	Liquid Super Plasticizer (W. R. Grace)
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
1851	1100	720	288	180	54

1 lb/yd^3 = 0.59 kg/m^3.

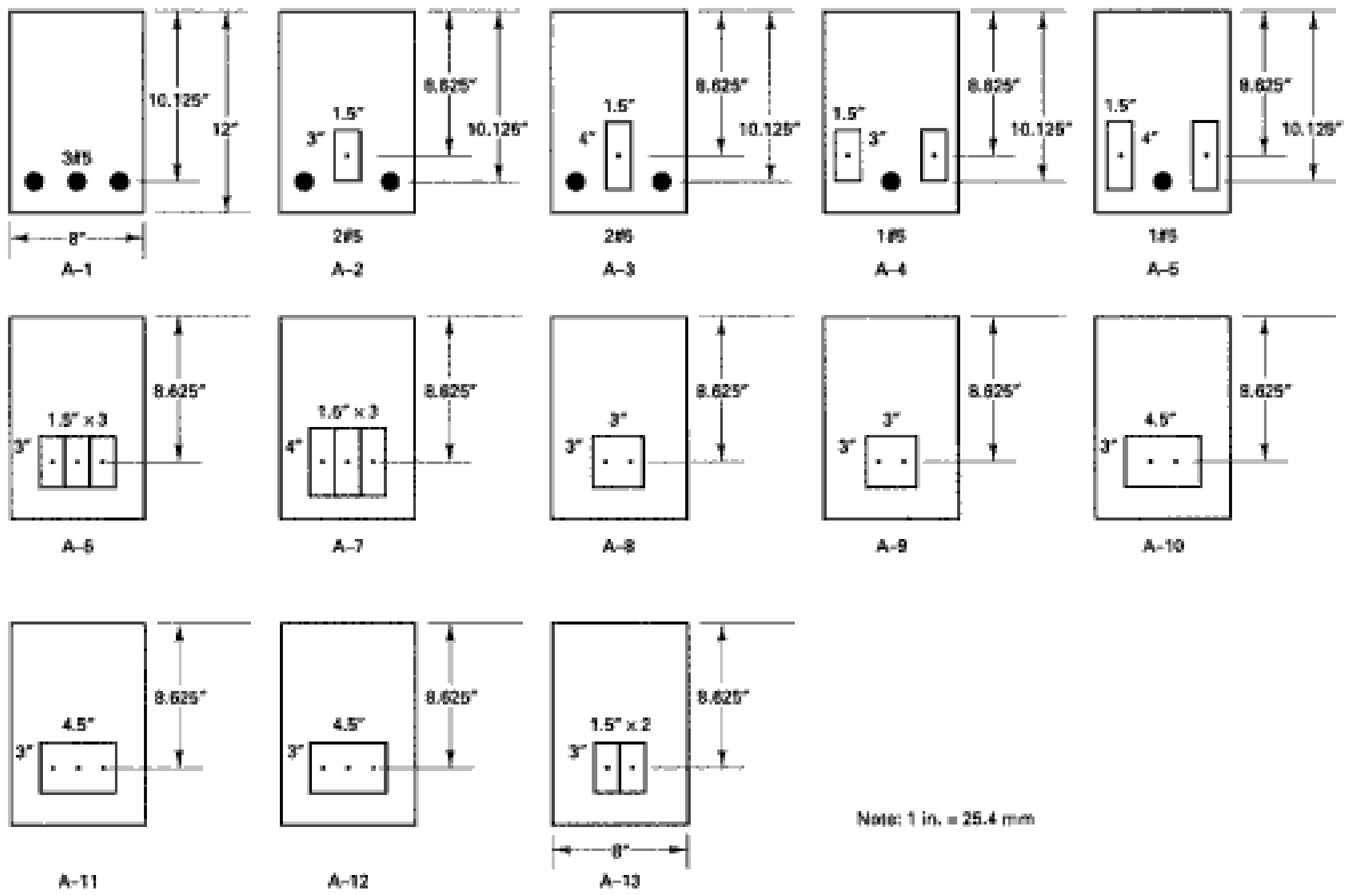


Figure 3.15 Cross sections of high-strength concrete composite beams reinforced with high-strength prestressed concrete prisms.

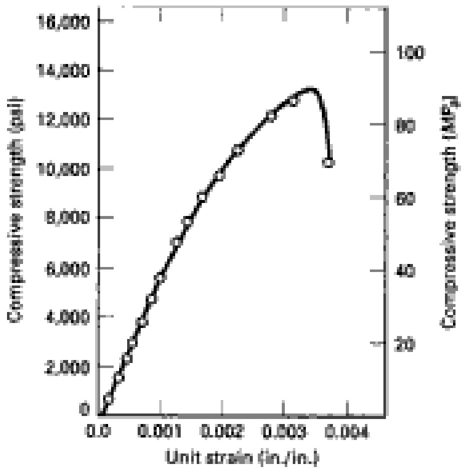


Figure 3.16 Stress–strain diagram of high-strength concrete (13,250 psi) with mixture proportions given on Table 3.23.

7-day strength of 13,250 psi (91.4 MPa). The tested specimens were instrumented with a fiber-optic sensor system developed by the author using Bragg grating sensors both internally and externally.

3.10.2.2 Modulus of Rupture f'_r. An evaluation of the tensile behavior of concrete can be made by the modulus of rupture or bending test. A range of $7.5\sqrt{f'_c}$ to $12\sqrt{f'_c}$ has been reported for high-strength concrete modulus of rupture values with a reasonable expression in terms of compressive strength as follows for plain normal-weight concrete (Refs. 3.13 and 3.16):

$$f'_r\,(\text{psi}) = 11.7\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{3.12}$$

3.10.2.3 Tensile Splitting Strength f'_t. Tensile strength of concrete is an important parameter in determining when the first flexural crack may develop. A general expression for high-strength concrete for an f'_c range of 3000 to 12,000 psi is given as follows:

$$f'_t = 7.4\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{3.13}$$

However, with deliberate selection of materials and proportions, including the use of silica fume and smaller coarse aggregates, the tensile strength may be increased to almost twice that predicted by this expression.

3.10.2.4 Creep and Shrinkage. With high-strength concrete, greater stress may be applied with little or no increase in long-term deformation above the level expected in moderate-strength concrete. Since high-strength concrete has low water/cement ratios that could be as low as 0.22 for $f'_c = 20{,}000$ psi, shrinkage can be very limited, with a range of shrinkage strain of 250×10^{-6} to 500×10^{-6} in./in.

3.10.3 Confining Effect on High-Strength Concrete

Use of high-strength concrete in compression members, such as in tall structures, leads to considerable reduction in the size of the concrete sections. Widely accepted properties of such concretes are their higher modulus E_c values, less ductile mode of failure, and larger strain at maximum stress. The use of confining circular or rectangular spiral reinforcement leads to increased strength and ductility of the confined concrete. Published experimental results on the effects of rectilinear confinement in very high strength concrete (in excess of 12,000 psi) are scarce. Results of tests in Ref. 3.20 for concretes of up to 13,560-psi compressive strength indicate general improvement of the behavior of the concrete when confined. Instead of collapsing in a very brittle fashion, the concrete failed in a more ductile and gradual manner.

The peak stress f_0 in Figure 3.17b, the strain ϵ_0, and especially the ductility increased with the increase in the volumetric ratio, but not proportionately. If the peak stress $f_0 = Kf'_c$, where K is the effective confinement, then K can be expressed as

$$K = 1 + 0.0091\left(1 - \frac{0.245s}{h''}\right)\left(\rho'' + \frac{nd''}{8sd}\rho\right)\frac{f''_y}{\sqrt{f'_c}} \tag{3.14}$$

where s = center-to-center spacing of the lateral ties, in.
h'' = length of one side of the rectangular ties, in.
n ≤ number of longitudinal steel bars
d'' = nominal diameter of lateral ties, in.
d = nominal diameter of longitudinal steel bars, in.
ρ'' = volumetric ratio of lateral reinforcement
ρ = volumetric ratio of longitudinal reinforcement
f''_y = yielding stress of the lateral steel, psi

The peak strain ϵ_0 can be predicted by the following expression (Ref. 3.20):

$$\epsilon_0 = 0.00265 + \frac{0.035\left(1 - \frac{0.734s}{h''}\right)(\rho'' f''_y)^{2/3}}{\sqrt{f'_c}} \tag{3.15}$$

3.10.4 Mixture Proportions for 20,000-psi Concrete

For very high compressive strength in excess of 12,000 psi (82.74 MPa), it is essential to make a large number of trial mixtures (five or more) and take extra care in the selection of aggregate size and source. Steel cylinder molds are preferred for uniformity of test results, using 4 in. × 8 in. molds and applying the appropriate dimensional correction. It is also necessary to grind the cylinder ends and then either cap them with high-strength capping compound prior to loading or apply the load directly to the ground ends or through a removable steel cap with a hard neoprene pad bearing directly on the ground specimen ends. Preparation of the cylinders should resemble as closely as possible the field conditions of concrete placement. Mock-up placement of the high-strength concrete is advisable in order to evaluate the construction procedures and performance of the concrete in field conditions and to identify potential problems with batching, placement, and testing of the concrete at early ages, with corrective measures taken immediately.

A good example of the use of high-strength concrete in the 20,000-psi range (137.9 MPa) at 56 days and a concrete modulus $E_c = 7.8 \times 10^6$ psi (53.8×10^3 MPa) is the Two Union Square Building, Seattle, Washington (Ref. 3.22). Actual typical mix obtained is listed in Table 3.24, with the design mixture values in parentheses.

A slump of 8 in. with $w/cm = 0.22$ resulted from the mixture proportions indicated. A typical compressive age plot for the indicated mixture based on 4 in. × 8 in. cylinder tests is shown in Fig. 3.18.

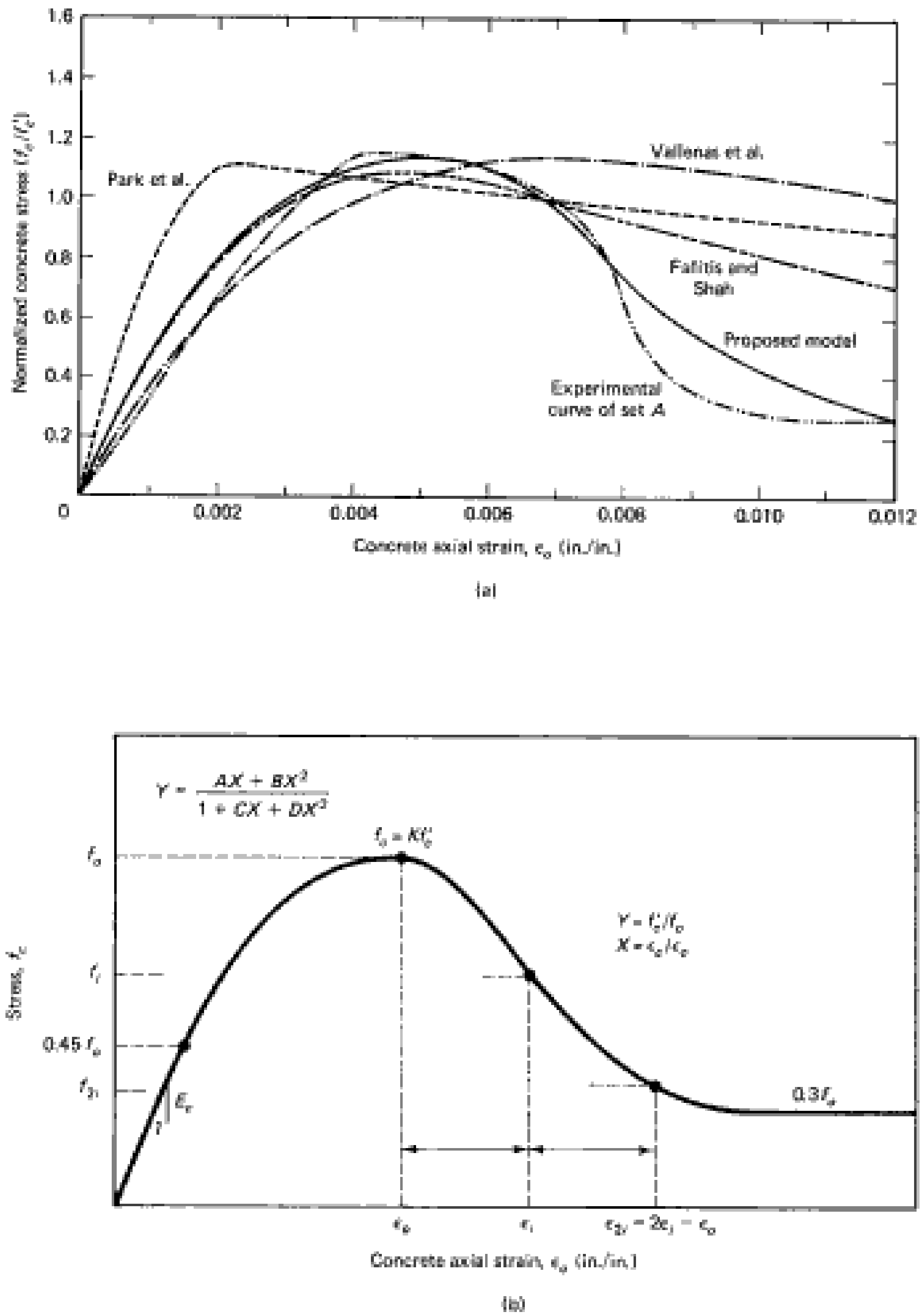


Figure 3.17 (a) Normalized complete stress–strain curve by various authors; (b) stress and strain parameters. (From Ref. 3.15.)

Table 3.24 Mix Proportions for $f'_c > 18{,}000$ psi

Coarse Aggregate (⅜ in.) (lb)	Fine Aggregate (paving sand) (lb)	Cement (lb)	Water (lb)	Silica Fume (gal)	Superplasticizer: W. R. Grace Dartard 40 (oz/100)	Superplasticizer: W. R. Grace Mighty 150 (lb cement)
1872	1165	957	217	13	2.1	9.8
1894	1165	956	217	13	2.1	16.4
(1805)	(1100)	(950)	($w/c = 0.22$)	(70 lb)[a]	(6.0)	(up to 24)

[a]Weight of solid silica fume only. Water contained as part of the emulsion must be subtracted from the total water allowed.

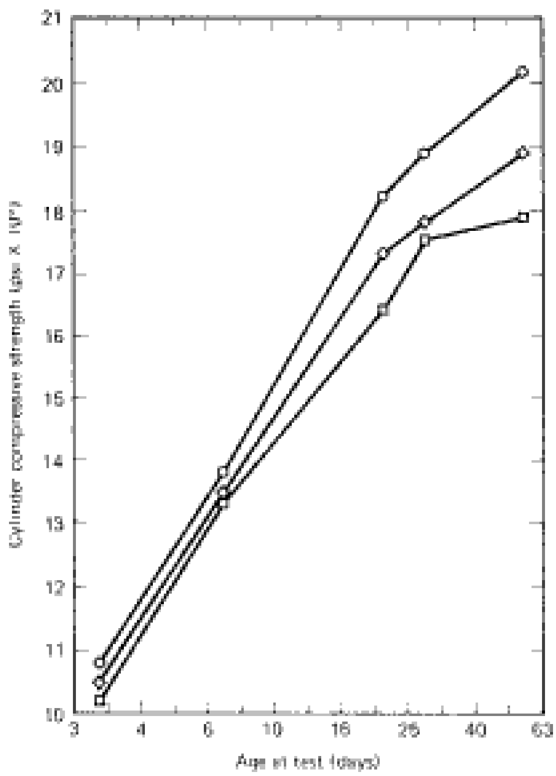


Figure 3.18 Compressive strength versus age of high-strength concrete.

3.11 DURABILITY REQUIREMENTS IN CONCRETE

3.11.1 General

In freezing and thawing, the value of f'_c should be greater than that required for normal durability and structural strength requirements. The concrete mixtures should be proportioned to comply with the maximum water-cementitious materials ratio (*w/cm*) and other requirements based on the exposure class assigned to the concrete by the structural engineer as presented in Tables 3.25(a), (b), (c), and (d) for exposure categories and classes. The combinations of these materials should be included in the calculation of the *w/cm* of the concrete mixture. The maximum *w/cm* ratios do not apply to lightweight concrete.

3.11.2 Categories and Classes

As stipulated in the ACI 318 Code, the licensed design professional has the responsibility of determining and assigning the anticipated exposure of the structural concrete members for each of the exposure categories in accordance with Tables 3.25(a), (b), (c), and (d) and Tables 3.26(a), (b), (c), and (d). Additional requirements for freezing and thawing based on air content and exposure category F are given in Tables 3.27.1 and 3.27.2.

These sets of tables are adapted from the ACI 318-08 Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete. The four categories of exposure are designated as follows in these tables, **F:** freezing and thawing; **S:** sulfate exposure; **P:** requiring low permeability; and **C:** corrosion protection of reinforcement.

Table 3.25(a) Exposure Category F—Freezing and Thawing Exposure

Class	Description	Condition
F0	Not applicable	Concrete not exposed to freezing and thawing conditions
F1	Moderate	Concrete exposed to freezing and thawing cycles and occasional exposure to moisture
F2	Severe	Concrete exposed to freezing and thawing cycles and in continuous contact with moisture
F3	Very severe	Concrete exposed to freezing and thawing cycles that will be in continuous contact with moisture and exposure to deicing chemicals

Table 3.25(b) Exposure Category S—Sulfate Exposure

Class	Description	Water-soluble Sulfate (SO_4) in Soil Percent by Weight	Dissolved Sulfate (SO^4) in Water, ppm
S0	Not applicable	$SO_4 < 0.10$	$SO_4 < 150$
S1	Moderate	$0.10 \le SO_4 < 0.20$	$150 \le SO_4 < 1500$ Seawater
S2	Severe	$0.20 \le SO_4 < 2.00$	$1500 \le SO_4 < 10{,}000$
S3	Very severe	$SO_4 > 2.00$	$SO_4 > 10{,}000$

Table 3.25(c) Exposure Category P—In Contact with Water Requiring Low Permeability Concrete

Class	Description	Condition
P0	Not applicable	Concrete where low permeability to water is not required
P1	Required	Concrete required to have low permeability to water

Table 3.25(d) Exposure Category C—Conditions Requiring Corrosion Protection of Reinforcement

Class	Description	Condition
C0	Not applicable	Concrete that will be dry or protected from moisture in service
C1	Moderate	Concrete exposed to moisture but not to external source of chlorides in service
C2	Severe	Concrete exposed to moisture and an external source of chlorides in service—from deicing chemicals, salt, brackish water, seawater, or spray from these sources

Table 3.26(a) For Exposure Category F—Freezing and Thawing Exposure

Exposure Class	Max *w/cm*	Min f'_c psi	Additional Minimum Requirements	
F0	N/A	2500	N/A	N/A
F1	0.45	4500	Table 3.27.1	N/A
F2	0.45	4500	Table 3.27.1	N/A
F3	0.45	4500	Table 3.27.1	Table 3.27.2

Table 3.26(b) For Exposure Category S—Sulfate Exposure

Exposure Class	Max *w/cm*	Min f'_c psi	*Required Cementations Materials[a], types*			Calcium Chloride Admixture
			ASTM C 150	ASTM C 595	ASTM C 1157	
S0	No Restriction	No Restriction	No Restriction	No Restriction	No Restriction	No Restriction
S1	0.50	4000	II[b,c]	IP(MS), IS(<70)(MS)	MS	No Restriction
S2	0.45	4500	V[c]	IP(HS), IS(<70)(HS)	HS	Not Permitted
S3	0.45	4500	V + pozzolan or slag[d]	IP(HS) + pozzolan or slag or IS(<70)HS + pozzolan or slag	HS + pozzolan or slag[d]	Not Permitted

[a]Alternative combinations of cementitious materials to those listed in Table 3.26 (b) shall be permitted when tested for sulfate resistance and meeting the criteria in Table 3.27.3.

[b]For seawater exposure, other types of Portland cement with tricalcium aluminate (C_3A) contents up to 10 percent are permitted if the water-cementitious material ratio does not exceed 0.40.

[c]Other available types of cement such as Type III or Type I are permitted in Exposure Classes S1 or S2 of the C_3A contents are less than 8 or 5 percent, respectively.

[d]The amount of the specified source of the pozzolan or slag to be used shall not be less than the amount that has been determined by service record to improve sulfate resistance when used in concrete containing Type V cement. Alternatively, the amount of the specific source of the pozzolan or slag to be used shall not be less than the amount tested in accordance with ASTM C 1012 and meeting the criteria of Table 3.27.3.

Table 3.26(c) For Exposure Category P—In Contact with Water Requiring Low Permeability

Exposure Class	Max *w/cm*	Min f'_c psi	Additional Minimum Requirements
P0	N/A	2500	None
P1	0.50	4000	None

Table 3.26(d) For Exposure Category C—Conditions Requiring Corrosion Protection of Reinforcement

Exposure Class	Max w/cm	Min f'_c psi	Max Water-Soluble Chloride Ion (Cl^-) Content in Concrete, Percent by Weight of Cement[b]	Additional[a] Minimum Requirement
Reinforced Concrete				
C0	N/A	2500	1.00	None
C1	N/A	2500	0.30	None
C2	0.40	5000	0.15	Cover[c]
Prestressed Concrete				
C0	N/A	2500	0.06	None
C1	N/A	2500	0.06	None
C2	0.40	5000	0.06	Cover[c]

[a]Pozzolan that has been determined by test or service record to improve sulfate resistance when used in concrete containing Type V cement. Alternatively, other combinations of cementitious materials in the proceeding tables can be used.

[b]Water-soluble chloride ion content that is contributed from the ingredients including water, aggregates, cementitious materials, and admixtures shall be determined on the concrete mixture by ASTM C 1218 at age between 28 and 42 days.

[c]ACI requirements for cover shall be satisfied. Including those for unbonded tendons.

3.11.3 Additional Requirements for Freezing-and-Thawing Exposure

3.11.3.1 Normal Weight and Lightweight Concrete Subject to Exposure. Classes F1, F2, or F3 shall be air entrained with air content indicated in Table 3.27.1. Tolerance on air content as delivered shall be ± 1.5 percent. For f'_c greater than 5000 psi, reduction of air content indicated in Table 3.27.1 by 1.0 percent shall be permitted.

TABLE 3.27.1 Total Air Content for Concrete Exposed to Cycles of Freezing and Thawing

Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size, in.[a]	*Air Content, percent* Exposure Class F1	Exposure Class F2 and F3
3/8	6	7.5
1/2	5.5	7
—	5	6
1	4.5	6
1½	4.5	5.5
2[b]	4	5
3[b]	3.5	4.5

[a]See ASTM C 33 for tolerance on oversize for various nominal maximum size designations.

[b]These air contents apply to total mixture. When testing these concretes, however, aggregate particles larger than 1 1/2 in. are removed by sieving and air content is measured on the sieved fraction (tolerance on air content as delivered applies to this value). Air content of total mixture is computed from value measured on the sieved fraction passing the 1 1/2 sieve in accordance with ASTM C 231.

3.11.3.2. The quality of pozzolans, including fly ash and silica fume, and slag in concrete subject to exposure Class F3, shall not exceed the limits in Table 3.27.2.

TABLE 3.27.2 Requirements for Concrete Subject to Exposure Class F3

Cementitious Materials	Maximum Percent of Total Cementitious Materials by Weight[a]
Fly ash or other pozzolans conforming to ASTM C 618	25
Slag conforming to ASTM C 989	50
Silica fume conforming to ASTM C 1240	10
Total of fly ash or other pozzolans, slag, and silica fume	50[b]
Total of fly ash or other pozzolans and silica fume	35[b]

[a]The total cementitious material also includes ASTM C 150, C 595, C 845, and C 1157 cement.
The maximum percentages above shall include:
(a) Fly ash or other pozzolans present in Type IP or I(PM) blended cement, ASTM C 595, or ASTM C 1157;
(b) Slag used in the manufacture of a IS or I(SM) blended cement, ASTM C 595, or ASTM C 1157;
(c) Silica fume, ASTM C 1240, present in blended cement.
[b]Fly ash or other pozzolans and silica fume shall constitute no more than 25 and 10 percent, respectively, of the total weight of the cementitious materials.

Table 3.27.3 Suitability of Cementitious Materials Combinations Exposed to Water-Soluble Sulfates

Exposure Class	Maximum Expansion When Tested Using ASTM C 1012
S1	0.10 % at 6 months
S2	0.05 % at 6 months or 0.10 % at 12 months
S3	0.10 % at 18 months

Note: The 12-month limit is only applied when the 6-month limit is not met.

SELECTED REFERENCES

3.1. ACI Committee 211, *Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete,* ACI 211.1-91, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 38 pp.

3.2. ACI Committee 211, *Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete,* ACI 211.2-91, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 14 pp.

3.3. ACI Committee 211, *Guide for Selecting Proportions for High Strength Concrete with Portland Cement and Fly Ash,* ACI 211.4R-93, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

3.4. ACI Manual of Concrete Practice 2008, Vols. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI.

3.5. Nawy, E. G., *Fundamentals of High Performance Concrete,* 2nd Ed. John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 2001, 410 pp.

3.6. Nawy, E. G., Ed. *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook,* 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

3.7. Addis, B. J., and Alexander, M. G., "A Method of Proportioning Trial Mixes for High Strength Concrete," Proceedings, Second International Symposium on High Strength Concrete, Berkeley, CA, ACI SP-121, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, pp. 287–308.

3.8. Portland Cement Association, *Design and Control of Concrete Mixtures,* 14th ed., PCA, Skokie, 2002, 358 pp.

3.9. ACI Committee 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete* (ACI 318–08) and the *Commentary* (ACI 318R-08), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2008, 465 pp.

3.10. American Society for Testing and Materials, *Significance of Tests and Properties of Concrete and Concrete Making Materials*, Special Technical Publication 169C, ASTM, Philadelphia, 1978, 882 pp.

3.11. Ross, A. D., "The Elasticity, Creep and Shrinkage of Concrete," in *Proceedings of the Conference on Non-metallic Brittle Materials*, Interscience Publishers, London, 1958, pp. 157–174.

3.12. Neville, A. M., *Properties of Concrete*, 4th ed., Longman, London, 1995, 844 pp.

3.13. Freudenthal, A. M., and Roll, F., "Creep and Creep Recovery of Concrete under High Compressive Stress," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 54, June 1958, Farmington Hills, MI, pp. 1111–1142.

3.14. Ross, A. D., "Creep Concrete Data," *Proceedings, Institution of Structural Engineers*, London, Vol. 15, 1937, pp. 314–326.

3.15. Branson, D. E., *Deformation of Concrete Structures*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1977, 546 pp.

3.16. Branson, D. E., "Compression Steel Effects on Long Term Deflections," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 68, August 1971, Farmington Hills, MI, pp. 555–559.

3.17. Mindess, S., and Young, J. F., *Concrete*, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, N.J., 1981, 671 pp.

3.18. Nawy, E. G., and Balaguru, P. N., "High Strength Concrete," Chapter 5 in *Handbook of Structural Concrete*, Pitman Books, London/McGraw-Hill, New York, 1983, 1968 pp.

3.19. Carrasquillo, R. L., Nilson, A. H., and Slate, F. O., "Properties of High Strength Concrete Subjected to Short Term Loads," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 78, No. 3, May–June 1981, Farmington Hills, MI, pp. 171–178.

3.20. Yong, Y. K., Nour, M. G., and Nawy, E. G., "Behavior of Laterally Confined High-Strength Concrete under Axial Loads," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE*, Vol. 114, No. 2, February 1988, pp. 332–351.

3.21. Shah, S. P., and Ahmad, S. H., "Structural Properties of High Strength Concrete and Its Implications for Precast Prestressed Concrete," *Journal of the Prestressed Concrete Institute*, November–December 1985, pp. 92–119.

3.22. Hester, W. T., *Two Union Square Summary of Mock-Up Concrete Placement*, Report, University of California, Berkeley, 1987, 23 pp.

3.23. Chen, B., and Nawy, E. G., "Structural Behavior Evaluation of High-Strength Concrete Reinforced with Prestressed Prisms Using Fiber Optic Sensors," *Proceedings, ACI Structural Journal*, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, Nov.–Dec. 1994, pp. 708–718.

3.24. Chen, B., Maher, M. H., and Nawy, E. G., "Fiber Optic Bragg Grating Sensor for Non-Destructive Evaluation of Composite Beams," *Proceedings, ASCE Journal of the Structural Division*, Vol. 120, No. 12, American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, 1995, pp. 3456–3470.

3.25. Holm, T. A., "Water Entrainment, Enhanced Hydration and Reduction of Autogenous Shrinkage Due to Internal Curing," Private Communication, January 2002, 2 pp.

3.26. Holm, T. A., "Lightweight Concrete and Aggregate," Standard Technical Publication 169C, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2001, pp. 522–532.

3.27. ACI Committee 350, *Code Requirements for Environmental Engineering Concrete Structures* (ACI 350-01) *and Commentary* (ACI 350R-01), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2001, 387 pp.

3.28 Nawy, E. G., "*Concrete—The Sustainable Infrastructure Material for the 21st Century*," Keynote Address Paper, No. E-C103, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, D.C., September 2006, pp. 1–23.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

3.1. Design a concrete mix using the following data:

Required strength, $f'_c = 5000$ psi (34.5 MPa)

Type of structure: beam

Maximum size of aggregate [illegible]

Fineness modulus of sand = 2.6

Dry-rodded weight of coarse aggregate = 100 lb/ft^3

Moisture absorption: 2% for coarse aggregate and 2% for fine aggregate

3.2. Using the data of Ex. 3.1, design a 6% air-entrained mixture.

3.3. Repeat Ex. 3.1 for a mixture design strength f'_c = 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).

3.4. Estimate the strength of the trial mixture, f'_{cr}, for the following cases:
(a) f'_c = 3500 psi (24.15 MPa); s (using 40 consecutive tests) = 300 psi (2.07 MPa).
(b) f'_c = 3000 psi (20.7 MPa); s (using 20 consecutive tests) = 250 psi (1.73 MPa).
(c) f'_c = 3000 psi (20.7 MPa); test results are not available.
(d) f'_c = 4000 psi (27.6 MPa); s (using 15 tests) = 375 psi (2.59 MPa).

3.5. Using the data in Ex. 3.2, design a high strength high performance concrete for a mixture design strength f'_c = 8000 psi (55 MPa) with a slump of 6 in. (152 mm) using fly ash as mineral admixture in addition to a reasonable content of high-range water-reducing agent (superplasticizer).

3.6. Using the data in Ex. 3.2, design a high-strength high-performance concrete for a mixture design strength f'_c = 15,000 psi (104 MPa) with a slump of 8 in. (203 mm) using silica fume as mineral admixture in addition to a reasonable content of high-range water-reducing agent.

3.7. Estimate the strength of a trial mixture, f'_{cr} = 7500 psi (52 MPa); s (using 20 consecutive tests) = 500 psi (4.3 MPa).

3.8. Solve problem 3.7 for a condition where no prior tests are available.

4

REINFORCED CONCRETE

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Concrete is strong in compression but weak in tension. Therefore, reinforcement is needed to resist the tensile stresses resulting from the induced loads. Additional reinforcement is occasionally used to reinforce the compression zone of concrete beam sections. Such steel is necessary for heavy loads in order to reduce long-term deflections. Whereas Chapters 2 and 3 dealt with plain concrete and its constituent materials, this chapter discusses composite reinforced concrete, which can withstand high tensile as well as compressive forces. A discussion of the types of reinforcing material, the variety of structural systems, and their components are presented.

Concrete structures have to perform adequately under service-load conditions, in addition to having the necessary reserve strength to resist ultimate load. The subjects of reliability, safety, and load factors are also presented.

Photo 4.1 University of Illinois Assembly Hall at Urbana. (Courtesy of Ammann & Whitney.)

4.2 TYPES AND PROPERTIES OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

Steel reinforcement for concrete consists of bars, wires, and welded wire fabric, all of which are manufactured in accordance with ASTM standards. The most important properties of reinforcing steel are:

1. Young's modulus, E_s
2. Yield strength, f_y
3. Ultimate strength, f_u
4. Steel grade designation
5. Size or diameter of the bar or wire

To increase the bond between concrete and steel, projections called *deformations* are rolled on the bar surface as shown in Fig. 4.1 in accordance with ASTM specifications. The deformations shown must satisfy ASTM Specification A616-76 to be accepted as deformed bars. The deformed wire has indentations pressed into the wire or bar to serve as deformations. Except for wire used in spiral reinforcement in columns, only deformed bars, deformed wires, or wire fabric made from smooth or deformed wire may be used in reinforced concrete under approved practice.

Figure 4.2 shows typical stress–strain curves for grade 40, 60, and 80 steels. They have corresponding yield strengths of 40,000, 60,000, and 80,000 psi (276, 414, and 552 N/mm^2, respectively) and generally have well-defined yield points. For steels that lack a well-defined yield point, the yield-strength value is taken as the strength corresponding to a unit strain of 0.005 for grades 40 and 60 steels and 0.0035 for grade 80 steel. The ultimate tensile strengths corresponding to the 40, 60, and 80 grade steels are 70,000, 90,000, and 100,000 psi (483, 621, and 690 N/mm^2), and some steel types are given in Table 4.1.

The percent elongation at fracture, which varies with the grade, bar diameter, and manufacturing source, ranges from 4.5 to 12% over an 8-in. (203.2-mm) gage length.

For most steels, the behavior is assumed to be elastoplastic, and Young's modulus is taken as 29×10^6 psi (200×10^6 MPa). Table 4.1 presents the reinforcement-grade

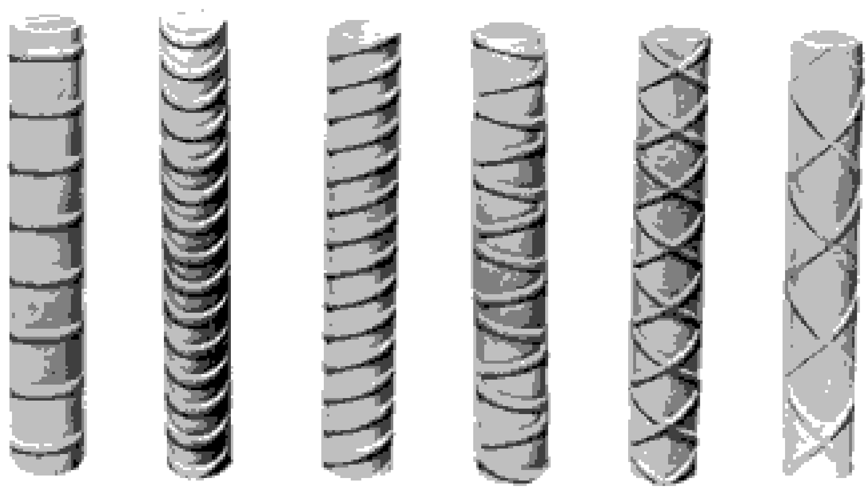


Figure 4.1 Various forms of ASTM-approved deformed bars.

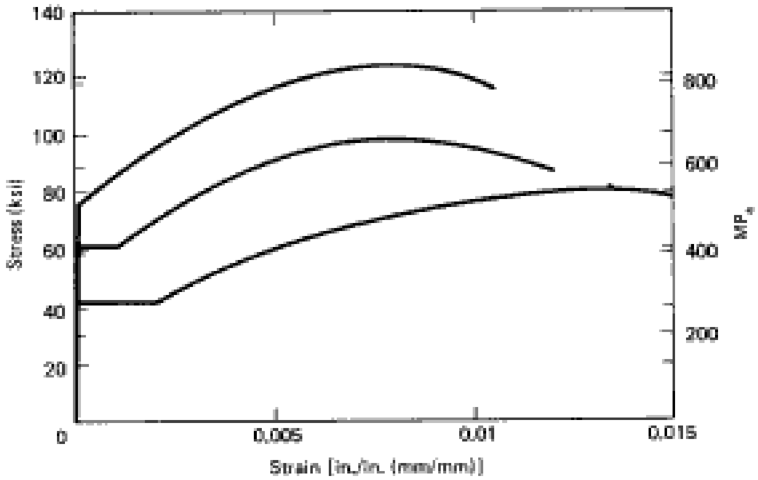


Figure 4.2 Typical stress–strain diagrams for various steels.

strengths, and Table 4.2 (a) and (b) presents geometrical properties of the various sizes of bars.

Welded wire fabric is increasingly used for slabs because of the ease of placing the fabric sheets, control of reinforcement spacing, and better bond. The fabric reinforcement is made of smooth or deformed wires that run in perpendicular directions and are welded together at intersections. Table 4.3 presents geometrical properties of some standard wire reinforcement.

4.3 BAR SPACING AND CONCRETE COVER FOR STEEL REINFORCEMENT

It is necessary to guard against honeycombing and ensure that the wet concrete mix passes through the reinforcing steel without separation. Since the graded aggregate size in structural concrete often contains $\frac{3}{4}$-in. (19-mm diameter) coarse aggregate, minimum

Table 4.1 Reinforcement Grades and Strengths

1982 Standard Type	Minimum Yield Point or Yield Strength, f_y (psi)	Ultimate Strength, f_u (psi)
Billet steel (A615)		
Grade 40	40,000	70,000
Grade 60	60,000	90,000
Axle steel (A617)		
Grade 40	40,000	70,000
Grade 60	60,000	90,000
Low-alloy steel (A706): Grade 60	60,000	80,000
Deformed wire		
Reinforced	75,000	85,000
Fabric	70,000	80,000
Smooth wire		
Reinforced	70,000	80,000
Fabric	65,000, 56,000	75,000, 70,000

Table 4.2(a) Weight, Area, and Perimeter of Individual Bars

Bar Designation Number	Weight per Foot (lb)	*Standard Nominal Dimensions* Diameter, d_b [in. (mm)]	Cross-Sectional Area, A_b (in.^{2})	Perimeter (in.)
3	0.376	0.375 (9)	0.11	1.178
4	0.668	0.500 (13)	0.20	1.571
5	1.043	0.625 (16)	0.31	1.963
6	1.502	0.750 (19)	0.44	2.356
7	2.044	0.875 (22)	0.60	2.749
8	2.670	1.000 (25)	0.79	3.142
9	3.400	1.128 (28)	1.00	3.544
10	4.303	1.270 (31)	1.27	3.990
11	5.313	1.410 (33)	1.56	4.430
14	7.65	1.693 (43)	2.25	5.32
18	13.60	2.257 (56)	4.00	7.09

allowable bar spacing and minimum required cover are needed. Additionally, to protect the reinforcement from corrosion and loss of strength in case of fire, codes specify a minimum required concrete cover. Some of the major requirements of ACI Code 318 are:

1. Clear distance between parallel bars in a layer must not be less than the bar diameter d_b or 1 in. (25.4 mm).
2. Clear distance between longitudinal bars in columns must not be less than $1.5d_b$ or 1.5 in. (38.1 mm).
3. Minimum clear cover in cast-in-place concrete beams and columns should not be less than 1.5 in. (38.1 mm) when there is no exposure to weather or contact with the ground; this same cover requirement also applies to stirrups, ties, and spirals.

Table 4.2(b) ASTM Standard Metric Reinforcing Bars

Bar Size Designation (No.)	*Nominal Dimensions* Mass (kg/m)	Diameter (mm)	Area (mm^2)
10 M	0.785	11.3	100
15 M	1.570	16.0	200
20 M	2.355	19.5	300
25 M	3.925	25.2	500
30 M	5.495	29.9	700
35 M	7.850	35.7	1000
45 M	11.775	43.7	1500
55 M	19.625	56.4	2500

ASTM A615M Grade 300 is limited to size No. 5, 10 M through No. 20 M, otherwise grades 400 or 500 MPa for all the sizes. Check availability with local suppliers for No. 45 M and 55 M.

Table 4.3 Standard Wire Reinforcement

W&D Size		U.S. Customary			Area (in.²/ft of width for various spacings)						
					Center-to-center spacing (in.)						
Smooth	Deformed	Nominal Diameter (in.)	Nominal Area (in.²)	Nominal Weight (lb/ft)	2	3	4	6	8	10	12
W31	D31	0.628	0.310	1.054	1.86	1.24	0.93	0.62	0.465	0.372	0.31
W30	D30	0.618	0.300	1.020	1.80	1.20	0.90	0.60	0.45	0.366	0.30
W28	D28	0.597	0.280	0.952	1.68	1.12	0.84	0.56	0.42	0.336	0.28
W26	D26	0.575	0.260	0.934	1.56	1.04	0.78	0.52	0.39	0.312	0.26
W24	D24	0.553	0.240	0.816	1.44	0.96	0.72	0.48	0.36	0.288	0.24
W22	D22	0.529	0.220	0.748	1.32	0.88	0.66	0.44	0.33	0.264	0.22
W20	D20	0.504	0.200	0.680	1.20	0.80	0.60	0.40	0.30	0.24	0.20
W18	D18	0.478	0.180	0.612	1.08	0.72	0.54	0.36	0.27	0.216	0.18
W16	D16	0.451	0.160	0.544	0.96	0.64	0.48	0.32	0.24	0.192	0.16
W14	D14	0.422	0.140	0.476	0.84	0.56	0.42	0.28	0.21	0.168	0.14
W12	D12	0.390	0.120	0.408	0.72	0.48	0.36	0.24	0.18	0.144	0.12
W11	D11	0.374	0.110	0.374	0.66	0.44	0.33	0.22	0.165	0.132	0.11
W10.5		0.366	0.105	0.357	0.63	0.42	0.315	0.21	0.157	0.126	0.105
W10	D10	0.356	0.100	0.340	0.60	0.40	0.30	0.20	0.15	0.12	0.10
W9.5		0.348	0.095	0.323	0.57	0.38	0.285	0.19	0.142	0.114	0.095
W9	D9	0.338	0.090	0.306	0.54	0.36	0.27	0.18	0.135	0.108	0.09
W8.5		0.329	0.085	0.289	0.51	0.34	0.255	0.17	0.127	0.102	0.085
W8	D8	0.319	0.080	0.272	0.48	0.32	0.24	0.16	0.12	0.096	0.08
W7.5		0.309	0.075	0.255	0.45	0.30	0.225	0.15	0.112	0.09	0.075
W7	D7	0.298	0.070	0.238	0.42	0.28	0.21	0.14	0.105	0.084	0.07
W6.5		0.288	0.065	0.221	0.39	0.26	0.195	0.13	0.097	0.078	0.065
W6	D6	0.276	0.060	0.204	0.36	0.24	0.18	0.12	0.09	0.072	0.06
W5.5		0.264	0.055	0.187	0.33	0.22	0.165	0.11	0.082	0.066	0.055
W5	D5	0.252	0.050	0.170	0.30	0.20	0.15	0.10	0.075	0.06	0.05
W4.5		0.240	0.045	0.153	0.27	0.18	0.135	0.09	0.067	0.054	0.045
W4	D4	0.225	0.040	0.136	0.24	0.16	0.12	0.08	0.06	0.048	0.04
W3.5		0.211	0.035	0.119	0.21	0.14	0.105	0.07	0.052	0.042	0.035
W3		0.195	0.030	0.102	0.18	0.12	0.09	0.06	0.045	0.036	0.03
W2.9		0.192	0.029	0.098	0.174	0.116	0.087	0.058	0.043	0.035	0.029
W2.5		0.178	0.025	0.085	0.15	0.10	0.075	0.05	0.037	0.03	0.025
W2		0.159	0.020	0.068	0.12	0.08	0.06	0.04	0.03	0.024	0.02
W1.4		0.135	0.014	0.049	0.084	0.056	0.042	0.028	0.021	0.017	0.014

In the case of slabs, plates, shells, and folded plates, where concrete is not exposed to a severe environment and where the reinforcement size does not exceed a No. 11 bar diameter (35.8 mm), the clear cover should not be less than $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm). Detailed requirements as to thickness of cover for various conditions can be found in various codes of practice, such as the Underwriters' National Building Code and the ACI 318 Code.

4.4 CONCRETE STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

Every structure is proportioned as to both architecture and engineering to serve a particular function. Form and function go hand in hand, and the best structural system is the one that fulfills most of the needs of the user while being serviceable, attractive, and economically cost efficient. Although most structures are designed for a life span of 50 years, the durability performance record indicates that properly proportioned concrete structures have generally had longer useful lives.

Numerous concrete landmarks can be cited where major credit is due to the art and science of structural design applied with ingenuity, logic, and imagination. Such concrete structural systems as the TWA Terminal, New York; the Newark Terminal, New Jersey; Symphony Hall, Melbourne, Australia; Chicago's Marina Towers and Water Tower Place; the Dallas Super Dome; Two Union Square Towers, Seattle; Trump Tower, New York; the Borgata Tower and Casino complex in Atlantic City; and many others are a testimony to the marriage of form and function with superior engineering judgment. Photographs of several such landmarks appear throughout this book.

Such concrete systems are composed of a variety of concrete structural elements that, when synthesized, produce a total system. The components can be broadly classified into (1) floor slabs, (2) beams, (3) columns, (4) walls, and (5) foundations.

4.4.1 Floor Slabs

Floor slabs are the main horizontal elements that transmit the moving live loads as well as the stationary dead loads to the vertical framing supports of a structure. They can be slabs on beams, as in Fig. 4.3, or waffle slabs, slabs without beams (flat plates) resting directly on columns, or composite slabs on joists. They can be proportioned such that they act in one direction (one-way slabs) or proportioned so that they act in two perpendicular directions (two-way slabs and flat plates). A detailed discussion of the analysis and design of such floor systems is given in subsequent chapters.

4.4.2 Beams

Beams are the structural elements that transmit the tributory loads from floor slabs to vertical supporting columns. They are normally cast monolithically with the slabs and are structurally reinforced on one face, the lower tension side, or both the top and bottom faces. As they are cast monolithically with the slab, they form a T-beam section for interior beams or an L beam at the building exterior, as seen in Fig. 4.3. The plan dimensions of a slab panel determine whether the floor slab behaves essentially as a one-way or two-way slab.

4.4.3 Columns

The vertical elements support the structural floor system. They are compression members subjected in most cases to both bending and axial load and are of major importance in the safety considerations of any structure. If a structural system is also composed of horizontal compression members, such members would be considered as beam-columns.

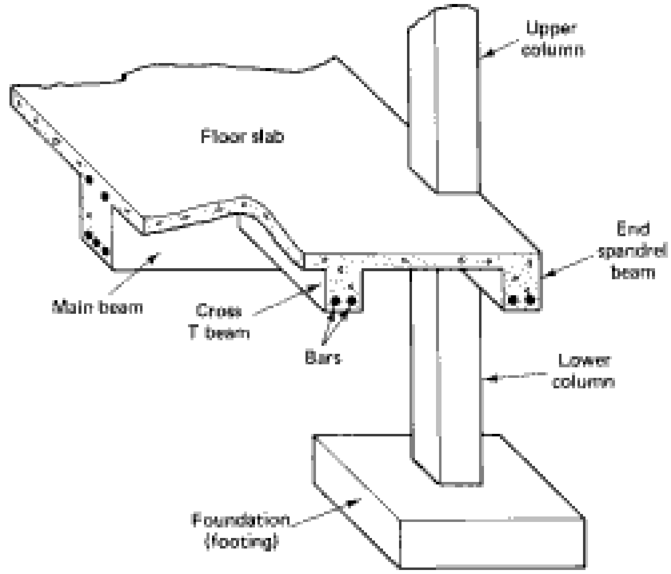


Figure 4.3 Typical reinforced concrete structural framing system.

4.4.4 Walls

Walls are the vertical enclosures for building frames. They are not usually or necessarily made of concrete but of any material that esthetically fulfills the form and functional needs of the structural system. Aditionally, structural concrete walls are often necessary as foundation walls, stairwell walls, and shear walls that resist horizontal wind loads and earthquake-induced loads.

4.4.5 Foundations

Foundations are the structural concrete elements that transmit the weight of the superstructure to the supporting soil. They could be in many forms, the simplest being the isolated footing shown in Fig. 4.3. It can be viewed as an inverted slab transmitting a distributed load from the soil to the column. Other forms of foundations are piles driven to rock, combined footings supporting more than one column, mat foundations, and rafts, which are basically inverted slab and beam construction.

The results of the analysis and design process of a structure have to be presented in concise and standardized form, which the constructor can use for building the entire system. Hence knowledge and easy reading of working drawings is important. A typical layout drawing of a multilevel parking garage structure is shown in Fig. 4.4. The *ACI Manual of Detailing* gives an adequate coverage of typical working drawings for various structural systems and of the layout and detailing of reinforcement.

4.5 RELIABILITY AND STRUCTURAL SAFETY OF CONCRETE COMPONENTS

Three developments in recent decades have had a major influence on present and future design procedures. They are the vast increase in experimental and analytical evaluation of concrete elements, the probabilistic approach to the interpretation of behavior, and the digital computational tools available for rapid analysis of the safety and reliability of systems.

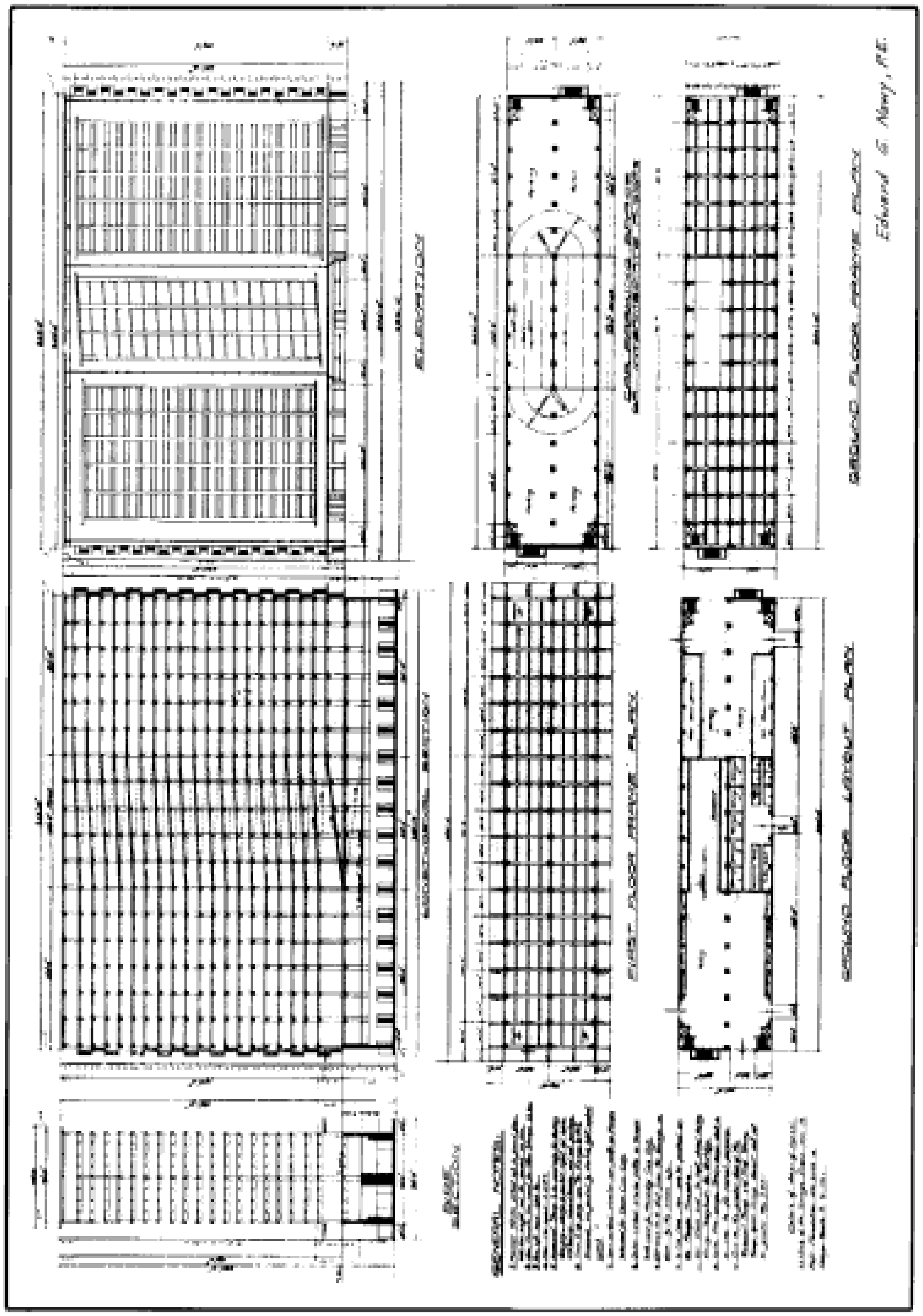


Figure 4.4 Typical working drawing for a reinforced concrete parking structure. (Design by E. G. Nawy.)

Until recently, most safety factors in design have had an empirical background based on local experience over an extended period of time. As additional experience is accumulated and more knowledge is gained from failures as well as familiarity with the properties of concrete, factors of safety are adjusted and in most cases lowered by the codifying bodies.

A. L. L. Baker in 1956 (Ref. 4.6) proposed a simplified method of safety factor determination, as shown in Table 4.4, based on probabilistic evaluation. This method expects the design engineer to make critical choices regarding the magnitudes of safety margins in a design. The method takes into consideration that different weights should be assigned to the various factors affecting a design. The weighted failure effects W_i for the various factors of workmanship, loading conditions, results of failure, and resistance capacity are tabulated in Table 4.4.

The safety factor against failure is

$$SF = 1.0 + \frac{\Sigma W_i}{10} \tag{4.1}$$

where the maximum total weighted value ΣW_i of all parameters affecting performance equals 10. In other words, for the worst combination of conditions affecting structural performance, the safety factor SF = 2.0.

This method assumes adequate information on prior performance data similar to a design in progress. Such data in many instances are not readily available for determining safe weighted values W_i in Eq. 4.1. Additionally, if the weighted factors are numerous, a probabilistic determination of them is more difficult to codify. Hence an undue value-judgment burden is probably placed on the design engineer if the full economic benefit of the approach is to be achieved.

Another method with a smaller number of probabilistic parameters deals primarily with loads and resistances. Its approach for both steel and concrete structures is generally similar; both the load and resistance factor design methods (LRFD) and first-order second-moment method (FOSM) propose general reliability procedures for evaluating probability-based factored load design criteria, as in Refs. 4.7, 4.8, 4.10, and 4.14. They

Table 4.4 Baker's Weighted Safety Factor

Weighted Failure Effect		Maximum W_i
1. Results of failure: 1.0 to 4.0		
Serious, either human or economic		4.0
Less serious, only the exposure of nondamageable material	1.0	
2. Workmanship: 0.5 to 2.0		
Cast in place		2.0
Precast "factory manufactured"	0.5	
3. Load conditions: 1.0 to 2.0 (high for simple spans and overload possibilities; low for load combinations such as live loads and wind)		2.0
4. Importance of member in structure (beams may use lower value than columns)		0.5
5. Warning of failure		1.0
6. Depreciation of strength		0.5
		Total = ΣW_i = 10.0

$$SF = 1.0 + \frac{\Sigma W_i}{10}$$

are intended for use in proportioning structural members on the basis of load types such that the resisting strength levels are *greater* than the factored load or moment distributions. As these approaches are basically load oriented, they reduce the number of individual variables that have to be considered, such as those listed in Table 4.4.

Assume that ϕ_i represents the resistance factors of a concrete element and that γ_i represents the load factors for the various types of load. If R_n is the nominal resistance of the concrete element and W_i represents the load effect of various types of superimposed load,

$$\phi_i R_n \geq \gamma_i W_i \tag{4.2}$$

where i represents the various types of load, such as dead, live, wind, earthquake, or time-dependent effects.

Figure 4.5a and b shows a plot of the separate frequency distributions of the actual load W and the resistance R with mean values $\bar{R}$ and $\bar{W}$. Figure 4.5c gives the two distributions superimposed and intersecting at point C.

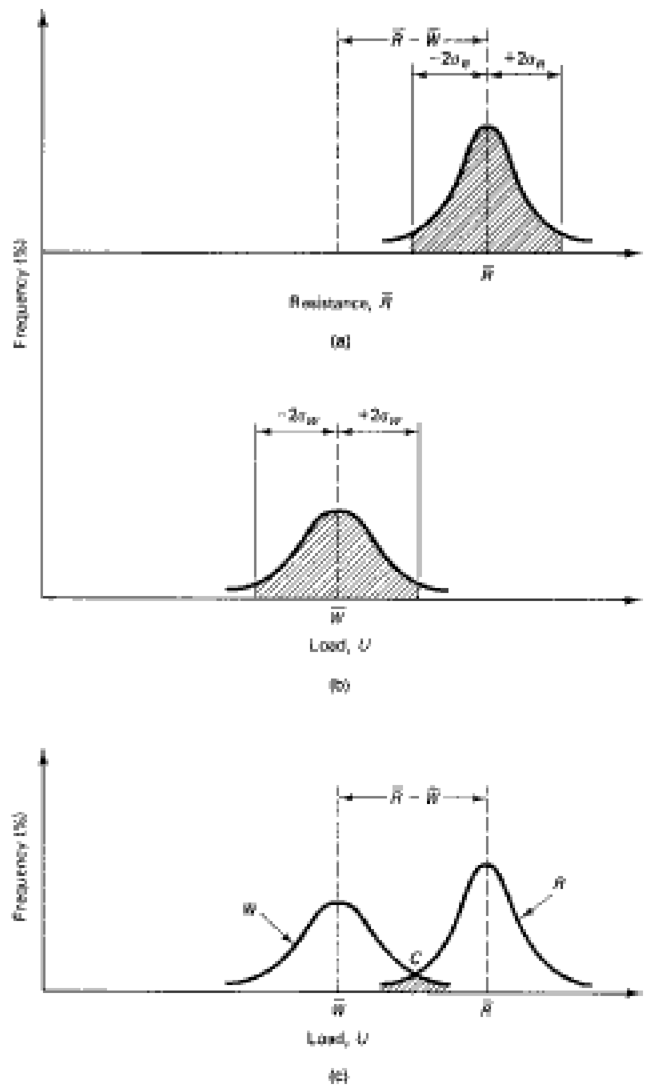


Figure 4.5 Frequency distribution of loads versus resistance.

It can be recognized that safety and reliable integrity of the structure can be expected to exist if the load effect W falls at a point to the left of intersection C on the W curve and to the right of intersection C on the resistance curve R. Failure, on the other hand, would be expected to occur if the load effect or the resistance falls within the shaded area in Fig. 4.5c. If β is a safety index, then

$$\beta = \frac{\overline{R} - \overline{W}}{\sqrt{\sigma_R^2 + \sigma_W^2}} \tag{4.3}$$

where σ_R and σ_W are the standard deviations of the resistance and the load, respectively.

A plot of the safety index β for a hypothetical structural system is shown in Fig. 4.6 against the probability of failure of the system. One can observe that such a probability is reduced as the difference between the mean resistance $\overline{R}$ and load effect $\overline{W}$ is increased, or the variability of resistance and load effect as measured by their standard deviations σ_R and σ_W is decreased, thereby reducing the shaded area under intersection C in Fig. 4.5c.

The extent of increasing the $\overline{R} - \overline{W}$ difference or decreasing the degree of scatter of σ_R or σ_W is naturally dictated by economic considerations. It is economically unreasonable to design a structure for zero failure, particularly since types of risk other than load are an accepted matter, such as the risks of severe earthquake, hurricane, volcanic eruption, or fire. Safety factors and corresponding load factors would thus have to disregard those types or levels of load, stress, and overstress whose probability of occurrence is very low. In spite of this, it is still possible to achieve reliable safety conditions by choosing such a safety index value β through a proper choice of R_n and W_i values using the appropriate resistance factors ϕ_i and load factors γ_i in Eq. 4.2. A safety index β having the value 1.75 to 3.2 for concrete structures is suggested in Ref. 4.8, where the lower value accounts for load contributions from wind and earthquake.

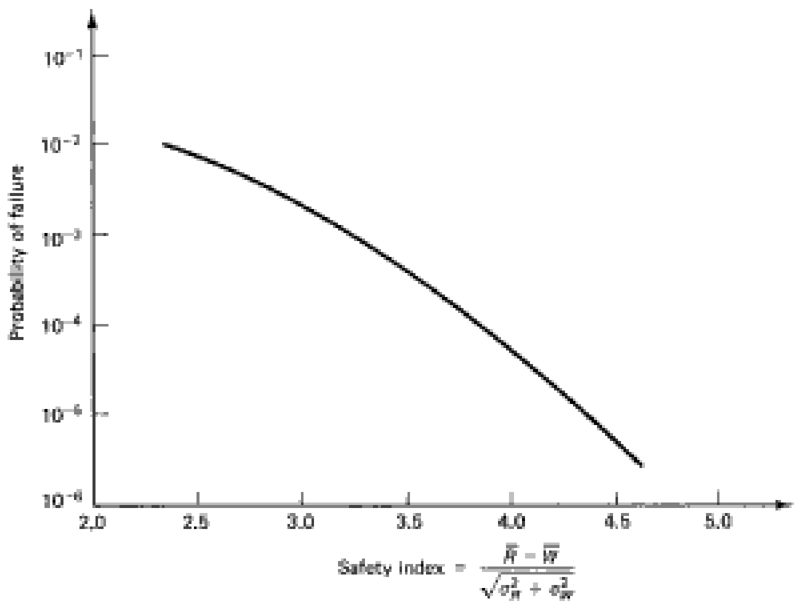


Figure 4.6 Probability of failure versus safety index β.

If the factored external load is expressed as U_i, then $\Sigma\gamma_i W = U_i$ for the different loading combinations.

In cases where other load combinations such as snow or lateral pressure are not present, a typical U_i value recommended in the ASCE-7 Standard (Ref. 4.14) and IBC 2000 (Ref. 4.17) for maximum U_i to be used in Equation 4.2, that is, $\phi_i R_n \geq \gamma_i W_i \geq U_{imax}$:

$$U = \phi_i R_n = \text{Maximum}\,[1.2D + 1.6L] \tag{4.4}$$

As more substantive records of performance are compiled with time, the details of the foregoing approach to reliability, safety, and reserve strength evaluation of structural components can be more universally accepted and extended beyond treatment of the component elements to the treatment of the total structural system, such as described in Table 4.4.

4.6 ACI LOAD FACTORS AND SAFETY MARGINS

4.6.1 General Principles

The general concept of safety and reliability of performance presented in the preceding sections is inherent in a more simplified but less accurate fashion in the ACI 318 Code. The γ load factors and the ϕ strength reduction factors give an overall safety factor based on load types such that

$$SF = \frac{\gamma_1 D + \gamma_2 L}{D + L} \times \frac{1}{\phi} \tag{4.5}$$

where ϕ is the strength reduction factor and γ_1 and γ_2 are the respective load factors for the dead load D and the live load L. Basically, a single common factor is used for dead load and another for live load. Variation in resistance capacity is considered in the ϕ reduction factor. Hence the method is a simplified empirical approach to the safety and reliability of structural performance that is not economically efficient for every case and not fully adequate in other instances, such as combinations of dead and wind loads.

The ACI factors are termed *load factors*, because they restrict the estimation of reserve strength to the loads only as compared to the other parameters listed in Table 4.4. The estimated service or working loads are magnified by the coefficients, such as a coefficient of 1.2 for dead loads and 1.6 for live load, with the basic combination of vertical loads combining dead load plus live load. The *dead load*, which constitutes the weight of the structure and other relatively permanent features, can be estimated more accurately than the live load. The *live load* is estimated using the weight of nonpermanent loads, such as people and furniture. The transient nature of live loads makes them difficult to estimate more accurately. Therefore, a higher load factor is normally used for live loads than for dead loads.

It should also be noted that the philosophy used for combining the various load components for earthquake loading is essentially the same as that used for wind loading.

4.6.2 ACI Load Factors *U*

The ACI 318 Building Code for concrete structures is an international code. As such, it has to conform to the International Building Code, IBC 2000, IBC 2003 (Ref. 4.17) and be consistent with the ASCE-7 Standard on Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures (Ref. 4.14). These two standards contain the same probabilistic values for the expected safety resistance factors ϕ, R_n where ϕ is a strength reduction factor, depending on the type of stress being considered in the design, namely flexure or shear or compression, etc.

Thus, the new ACI design loads U (factored loads) have to be at least equal to the values obtained from Equations 4.6(a) through 4.6(g). The effect of one or more loads not acting simultaneously has to be investigated.

$$U = 1.4(D + F) \tag{4.6a}$$

$$U = 1.2(D + F + T) + 1.6(L + H) + 0.5(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \tag{4.6b}$$

$$U = 1.2D + 1.6(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) + (1.0\ L \text{ or } 0.8W) \tag{4.6c}$$

$$U = 1.2D + 1.6W + 0.5L + 1.0(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \tag{4.6d}$$

$$U = 1.2D + 1.0E + 1.0L + 0.2S \tag{4.6e}$$

$$U = 0.9D + 1.6W + 1.6H \tag{4.6f}$$

$$U = 0.9D + 1.0E + 1.6H \tag{4.6g}$$

where

D = dead load; E = earthquake load; F = lateral fluid pressure load & maximum height;
H = load due to the weight and lateral pressure of soil and water in soil;
L = live load; L_r = roof load; R = rain load; S = snow load;
T = self-straining force such as creep, shrinkage, and temperature effects;
W = wind load.

Exceptions to the values in these expressions

(a) The load factor on L in Eq. 4.6(c) to 4.6(e) is allowed to be reduced to 0.5 except for garages, areas occupied as places of public assembly, and all areas where the live load L is greater that 100 lb/ft^2.

(b) Where wind load W has not been reduced by a directionality factor, the code permits to use $1.3W$ in place of $1.6W$ in Eq. 4.6(d) and 4.6(f).

(c) Where earthquake load E is based on service-level seismic forces, $1.4E$ shall be used in place of $1.0E$ in Eq. 4.6(d) and 4.6(g).

(d) The load factor on H is to be set equal to zero in Eq. 4.6(f) and Eq. 4.6(g) if the structural action due to H counteracts that due to W or E. Where lateral earth pressure provides resistance to structural actions from other forces, it should not be included in H but shall be included in the design resistance.

Due regard has to be given to sign in determining U for combinations of loadings, as one type of loading may produce effects of opposite sense to that produced by another type. The load combinations with $0.9D$ are specifically included for the case where a higher dead load reduces the effects of other loads. Consideration has also to be given to various combinations of loading to determine the most critical design condition, particularly when strength is dependent on more than one load effect, such as strength for combined flexure and axial load or shear strength in members with axial load. In cases where special circumstances require greater reliance on the strength of particular members than encountered in usual practice, the ACI Code allows some reduction in the stipulated strength reduction factors ϕ or an increase in the stipulated load factors U.

4.6.3 Reduction in Live Loads

For large areas, it is reasonable to assume that the *full* intensity of live load does *not* cover the entire floor area. Hence, members having an influence area of 400 ft² (37.2 m²) or more can be designed for a reduced live load from the following equation:

$$L = L_0\left(0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{A_I}}\right) \tag{4.7}$$

where

L = Reduced design live load per square foot of area supported by the member,
L_0 = Unreduced design live load per square foot of area,
A_I = Influence area: For other than cantilevered construction, A_I is 4 times the tributary area for a column; 2 times tributary area for beams, or equal area for a two-way slab (Ref. 4.17).

In SI units, Equation 4.7 becomes

$$L = L_0\left(0.25 + \frac{4.57}{\sqrt{A_I}}\right) \tag{4.8}$$

where L, L_0 and A_I are in square meters of area.

The reduced design live load cannot be less than 50% of the unit live load L_0 for member supporting one floor or less than 40% of the unit live load L_0 for members supporting two or more floors. For live loads of 100 lb/ft² (4.79 kN/m²) or less, no reduction can be made for areas used as places of public assembly, except that in the case of garages for passenger cars a reduction of up to 20% can be made. Live loads in all other cases not stipulated by the code cannot be reduced except as accepted by the jurisdictional authority.

4.7 DESIGN STRENGTH VERSUS NOMINAL STRENGTH: STRENGTH REDUCTION FACTOR ϕ

The strength of a particular structural unit calculated using the current established procedures is termed *nominal strength*. For example, in the case of a beam, the resisting moment capacity of the section calculated using the equations of equilibrium and the properties of concrete and steel is called the *nominal resisting moment capacity* M_n of the section. This nominal strength is reduced using a strength reduction factor, ϕ, to account for inaccuracies in construction, such as in the dimensions or position of reinforcement or variations in properties. The reduced strength of the member is defined as the design strength of the member.

For a beam, the design moment strength ϕM_n should be at least equal to or slightly greater than the external factored moment M_u for the worst condition of factored load U. The factor ϕ varies for the different types of behavior and for the different types of structural elements. For beams in flexure, for instance, the reduction factor is 0.9.

For tied columns that carry dominant compressive loads, the ϕ factor equals 0.65. The smaller strength reduction factor used for columns is due to the structural importance of the columns in supporting the total structure compared to other members and to guard against progressive collapse and brittle failure with no advance warning of collapse. Beams, on the other hand, are designed to undergo excessive deflections before failure. Hence the inherent capability of the beam for advanced warning of failure permits the use of a higher strength reduction factor or resistance factor.

Table 4.5 Resistance or Strength Reduction Factor ϕ

Structural Element	Factor ϕ
Beam or slab: bending or flexure	0.9
Columns with ties	0.65
Columns with spirals	0.75
Columns carrying very small axial loads (refer to Chapter 9 for more details)	0.65–0.9 or 0.75–0.9
Beam: shear and torsion	0.75
Bearing except for strut-and-tie	0.65
Bearing areas in strut-and-tie	0.75
Post-tensioned anchorage zone	0.85
Flexural shear and bearing in plain structural concrete	0.60

For structures that rely on intermediate precast structural walls in seismic zones categories D, E, and F, the strength reduction factor, ϕ, has to be modified as follows to resist earthquake E:

1. Shear $\phi = 0.60$ if the nominal shear strength of the member is less than the shear corresponding to the development of normal flexural strength. The nominal flexural strength is determined considering the most critical factored axial loads and considering E.
2. For diaphragms, ϕ in shear should not exceed the minimum ϕ for shear used for the vertical components of the primary lateral-face-resisting system.
3. For joints and diagonally reinforced coupling beams, ϕ for shear is taken as 0.85.

Table 4.5 summarizes the resistance factors ϕ for various structural elements as given in the ACI Code. A comparison of these values to those given in Ref. 4.8 indicates that the ϕ values in this table, as well as the load factors of Eq. 4.8, are in some cases more conservative than they should be. In cases of earthquakes, wind, and shear forces, the probability of load magnitude and reliability of performance is subject to higher randomness and hence a higher coefficient of variation than the other types of loading.

4.8 QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

Quality control assures the reliability of performance of the designed system in accordance with assumed and expected reserve strengths in the design. To exercise "quality control" and achieve "quality assurance" encompasses monitoring the roles and performance of all participants: the client or owner, the designer, the concrete producer, the laboratory tester, the constructor, and the user.

Most of the different phases of the total process of construction are affected by complex standards and regulations of the various codifying agencies. Also, in contrast to mechanized production such as in the case of machines, building construction does not follow the moving-belt or chain-production process, where the products move but the workers are relatively stationary; the contrary is true. Consequently, complications are more profound in constructed systems such as those made with concrete. This is due partially to the fact that concrete is a nonhomogeneous material with properties dependent

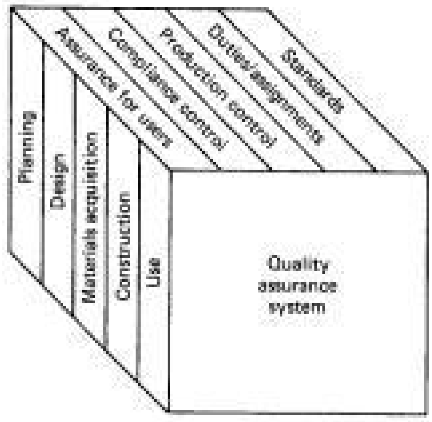


Figure 4.7 Components of a quality assurance system. (From Ref. 4.12.)

on many variables, requiring extra effort in quality control due to the greater effect of the human factor on the quality of the finished product.

The reliability of the performance of personnel involved in the various stages of creating a concrete structural system from conception through design, construction, and use depends on knowledge, training, and communication at all levels. A smooth flow of correct information among all participants and a shared systematic understanding of the developing problems lead to increased motivation toward improved solutions and hence improved quality control and a resulting high level of quality assurance. In summary, a quality assurance system needs to be provided based on the exercise of quality control at the various phases and interacting parameters of a total system, as shown in Fig. 4.7.

4.8.1 The User

Construction of a designed system is governed basically by five primary tasks: planning, design, materials selection, construction, and use (including maintenance). Figure 4.8 presents schematically the sequence of these enumerated tasks and the respective divisions of responsibility. As seen from this diagram, the process starts with the user, since

Photo 4.2 Flexural behavior of a reinforced concrete beam. (Test by Nawy et al.)

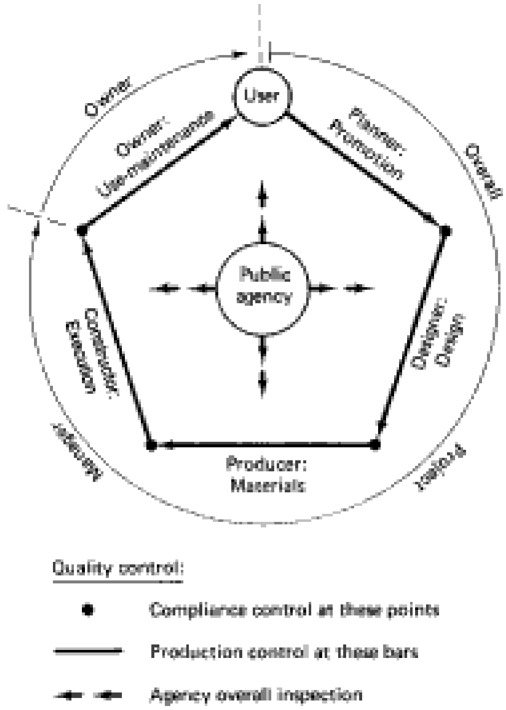


Figure 4.8 Quality control schematic.

the principal aim of a project is to satisfy the user's needs, and it culminates with the user as the primary beneficiary of the final product.

Quality assurance is necessary to satisfy the user's needs and rights. It ensures that the activities influencing the final quality of a concrete structure are:

1. Based on clearly defined fundamental requirements that satisfy the operational, environmental, and boundary conditions set for the project at the outset
2. Properly presented in accurate, well-dimensioned engineering working drawings based on optimal design procedures
3. Correctly and efficiently carried out by competent personnel in accordance with predetermined plans and working drawings well supervised during the design stage
4. Systematically executed in accordance with detailed specifications that conform to the applicable codes and local regulations

To achieve these aims, the expertise denoted by the other components of the polygon in Fig. 4.8 are called upon, starting with the planner and designer and culminating with the constructor.

4.8.2 Planning

In order to plan the successful execution of a proposed constructed system, all main and subactivities have to be clearly defined. This is accomplished through dividing the total project into a network plan of separately defined activities, relating each activity with time, analyzing the input control and the resulting output control, and expressing these conditions in the form of a checklist. In such a manner, the successful decision-making process concerning performance requirements becomes easier to accomplish. Such a process usually entails decisions on what function needs to be accomplished in a construction project, *where* and *when* that function will be executed, *how* the system will be constructed, and *who* the user will be. Correct determination of these factors leads to a decision as to the level of quality control needed and the degree of quality assurance that is expected to result.

4.8.3 Design

Quality control in design aims at verifying that the designed system has the safety, serviceability, and durability required for the use to which the system is intended as required by the applicable codes, and that such a design is correctly presented in the working drawings and the accompanying specifications. The degree of quality control depends on the type of system to be constructed: The more important the system, the more control that is required.

As a minimum, a design must always be checked by an engineer other than the originating design engineer. Usually, one of three types of verifications is used, depending on the practice of the designing agency: (1) total direct checking, in which all computations are verified; (2) total parallel checking, in which calculations are *independently* made and the two sets of calculations compared; and (3) partial checking, in which selected parts are checked in both direct and parallel checking.

Quality control of the design calculations can generally be achieved through assuring that:

1. A clear understanding exists of the structural concept that applies to the particular system.
2. There is knowledge and compliance with the relevant fundamental requirements of the design and the environmental, operational, and boundary conditions.
3. Where possible, applicable computational models utilizing available computer programs are used for checks.
4. No discrepancies exist between the different phases or parts of the total design computations.
5. All expected load cases and load combinations as described in Section 4.6 are considered.
6. The appropriate safety factors are adopted and the required reliability levels verified.
7. Verifiable computer programs are used in the design, and the experienced designer is well acquainted with the programming steps and background of the programs, particularly when total computer-aided designs are used.

Since engineering working drawings are the primary link between the design process and the construction process, they should be a major object of design quality assurance. Consequently, the student has to be well acquainted with reading and interpreting working drawings and must be able to produce clear sketches that accurately express the design details if the constructed system is to reflect the actual design. Figure 4.4, as well as Figs. 10.12 to 10.21, are intended to give general guidance on the systematic detailing necessary for composing sets of logical engineering working drawings.

Quality control of working drawings normally encompasses a verification of whether the following parameters are included in the project set of drawings:

1. General definition of the structure
2. Consistency among the working drawings
3. Compliance with the site boundary conditions, including soil test boring requirements

4. Listing of the type, grade, quality, and structural strength of the various construction materials involved, such as cement, concrete mixture proportions and strength, reinforcing steel, and formwork
5. No ambiguity and risk of misunderstanding of the details in the drawings
6. Compliance with the design computation results and correct dimensioning
7. Adequate cross-sectional and construction details, as well as explicit dimensional tolerances
8. Sequence of formwork placing and removal

4.8.4 Materials Selection

It has to be emphasized at the outset that the quality of materials such as reinforced concrete is not determined only by compressive or tensile strength tests. As seen from previous sections of this book, many other factors affect the quality of the finished product, such as water/cement ratio, cement content, creep and shrinkage characteristics, freeze and thaw properties, and other durability aspects and conditions.

Two types of quality are involved: (1) *required quality*, which is the specified contractural requirement for the material, and (2) *usage quality*, which is the ability of the material to satisfy the needs of the user (Ref. 4.12).

Required quality of the material, such as ready-mix concrete, is assured by production control. Such a process involves:

1. General organization of the production staffing and operation.
2. Production sequence and supply line of the constituent materials, such as stone, fine aggregate, cement, and additives.
3. Internal control, involving frequency of verifications and tests, analysis of test results, the recording and observation methods used, and the procedures applied in dealing with discrepancies and deviations.
4. Use of statistical control charts to classify the specified requirements of quality levels into measurable main variables and nonmeasurable variables, selection of the main variables to be controlled by the control charts, and the preparation of a mean chart and a range chart for each variable selected. The measurable variables are to be controlled using $\overline{X}$ and $\overline{R}$ charts, while the nonmeasurable variables are controlled by $\overline{p}$ and $\overline{c}$ charts, denoting the averages of means and variations. An action limit and a warning limit with an upper and a lower boundary need to be specified.
5. Classification of defects as a measure of the nondefinable variables.

Usage quality is determined by the compliance control set in the specifications. These are prescribed by the client for the mixture proportioning and design and the constituent materials of the concrete, as well as the quality of the reinforcement, whether normal or prestressing reinforcement. A projection of the expected quality control record and hence quality assurance of the concrete, for instance, can normally be made if the concrete producer has maintained good statistical quality control of strength test results over a lengthy period of operation. Hence compliance control levels can vary depending on the reliability and confidence in the effectiveness of quality management of the material producer to conform with the specifications of the delivered lots.

4.8.5 Construction

Construction is the execution stage of a project, which can be used to satisfy all design and specification requirements within prescribed time limits at minimum cost. To achieve the desired quality, the construction phase has to be preceded by an elaborate

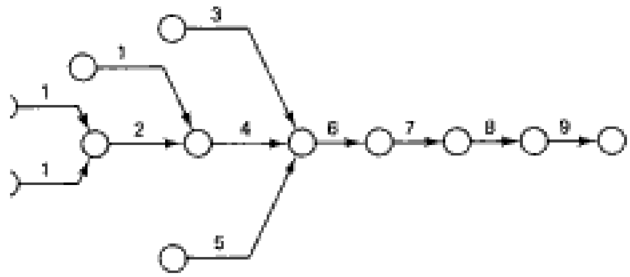


Figure 4.9 Operations sequence network for concrete structures.

and correct preparation stage, which can be part of the design phase. The preparation or planning phase is very critical since it gives an overall clear view of the various activities involved and the possible problems that could arise at the various phases of execution. The use of computers in the planning phase is essential today for large projects in order that relevant input as to product quality, output, time scheduling, and costs can be charted and monitored.

The human factor is of major significance at the construction phase. In most instances, the major site activities involve labor-force use and path scheduling of its utilization. An improved information flow system, clear delineation of the chain of command, and reward for superior performance increase motivation and lead to overall improvement in the entire quality assurance system and an optimization of the efficiency/cost ratio of a project. The steps to be carried out to achieve quality assurance, as proposed in Ref. 4.12, are summarized briefly next and are represented graphically in Fig. 4.9.

1. Organizational preparation covering planning, time scheduling, contract details, and definition and assignment of duties
2. On-site preparation, involving access roads site trailers and offices, energy provisions, amenities, and so on
3. Formwork acquisition, type, and preparation for installation
4. Reinforcement procurement, fabrication, and planning
5. Concrete mixture proportioning, laboratory mixture designing, and coordination with design engineers
6. Concrete delivery, placing in the forms, and field slump testing
7. Curing and surface treatment of the hardened concrete
8. Quality control tests of the concrete at 7- and 28-day intervals
9. Removal of formwork, sequential removal of shoring supports, then reshoring

The probability of errors in execution for quality control can normally be expected. The extent and importance of such errors depend on a variety of factors described in previous sections. To apply corrective measures, a logical sequence of steps has to be followed for the detection and analysis of the undesired occurrence. A quantitative analysis of the error impact can often be made provided that the probabilities of occurrence of all the basic events are known to the investigators.

The flowchart in Fig. 4.10 depicts the cause–effect sequence that can be followed in identifying an undesired event in a quality assurance program. γ in the chart is the safety margin factor available in the original design.

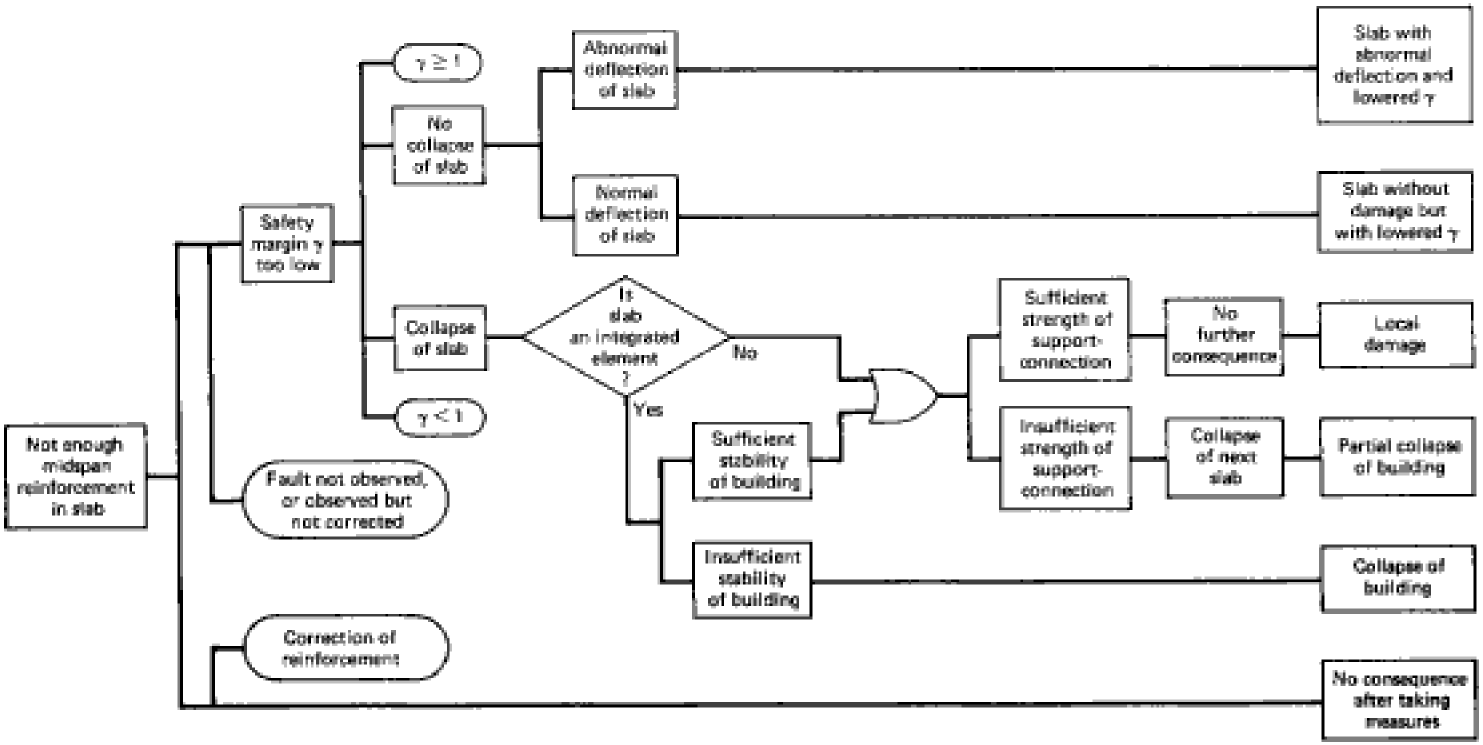


Figure 4.10 Cause–effect flowchart. (From Ref. 4.12.)

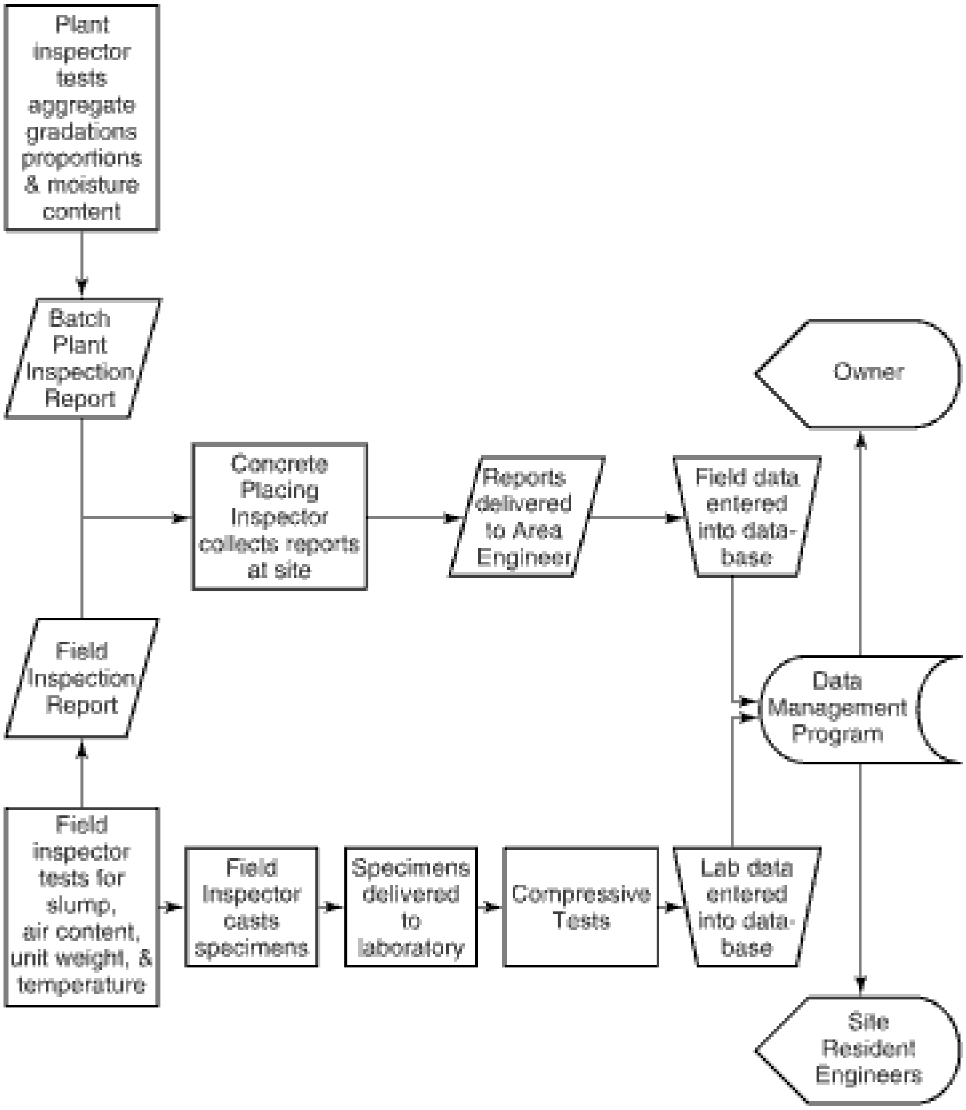


Figure 4.11 Flowchart for Quality Control–Quality Assurance Operations Using Internet for Data Control and Transfer (Refs. 4.18, 4.19)

In the case of massive projects where huge quantities of concrete and extensive construction activities are involved, special procedures have to be undertaken in order to facilitate rapid flow of information between the participants, even through the Internet. Figure 4.11 gives a flowchart[4.18, 4.19] of the sequence of operations for achieving the quality control and quality assurance needed for such massive projects, as well as maintaining an electronic database available on daily basis through the Internet to all participants in such projects.

In summary, the brief discussion in Section 4.8 should provide the reader with an introduction to a continuously evolving topic that has a profound impact on the strength and durability of constructed systems, that is, quality control and quality assurance. It should complement Section 4.5 on reliability and structural safety and Sections 4.6 and 4.7 on load factors and design strengths.

SELECTED REFERENCES

4.1. American Society for Testing and Materials, *Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement,* A6 15-79, ASTM, Philadelphia, 1980, pp. 588–599.

4.2. American Society for Testing and Materials, *Standard Specification for Rail-Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement,* A6 16-79, ASTM, Philadelphia, 1980, pp. 600–605.

4.3. American Society for Testing and Materials, *Standard Specification for Axle Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement,* A6 17-79, ASTM, Philadelphia, 1980, pp. 606–611.

4.4. American Society for Testing and Materials, *Standard Specification for Cold-Drawn Steel Wire for Concrete Reinforcement,* A8 2-79, ASTM, Philadelphia, 1980, pp. 154–157.

4.5. American Society for Testing and Materials, *Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement,* A706-79, ASTM, Philadelphia, 1980, pp. 755–760.

4.6. Baker, A. L. L., *The Ultimate Load Theory Applied to the Design of Reinforced and Prestressed Concrete Frames,* Concrete Publications, London, 1956, 91 pp.

4.7. Galambos, T. V., "Proposed Criteria for Load and Resistance Factor Design of Steel Building Structures," *Steel Research for Construction Bulletin 27,* American Iron and Steel Institute, January 1978.

4.8. Ellingwood, B., McGregor, J. G., Galambos, T. V., and Cornell, C. A., "Probability Based Load Criteria: Load Factors and Load Combinations," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE,* Vol. 108, No. ST5, May 1982, pp. 978–997.

4.9. National Bureau of Standards, *Development of a Probability Based Load Criterion for American National Standard A58—Building Code Requirements for Minimum Design Loads in Buildings and Other Structures,* Special Publication 577, NBS, Washington, D.C., June 1980, 221 pp. and ASCE Standard 7-07, *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,* American Society of Civil Engineers, 2007, Reston, VA, 360 pp.

4.10. American National Standards Institute, *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,* ANSI A58, ANSI, New York, 1982, 100 pp.

4.11. ACI Committee 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete* (ACI 318–08), and the *Commentary* (ACI 318R–08), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2005, 465 pp.

4.12. Comité Euro-International du Béton, *Quality Control and Quality Assurance for Concrete Structures,* CEB Commission I (Dr. A. G. Meseguer, Chairman), Bulletin d'Information 157, Paris, March 1983, 98 pp.

4.13. Riggs, J. L., *Production Systems: Planning, Analysis, and Control,* Wiley, New York, 1981, 649 pp.

4.14. ASCE, *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,* ANSI/ASCE Standard 7-98, American Society of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA, June 1998, 352 pp.

4.15. Nawy, E. G., Editor-in-Chief, *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook,* 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

4.16. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach,* 5th ed., Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 946 pp.

4.17. International Codes Council, *International Building Code 2006* (IBC), Whittier, CA, 667 pp.

4.18. Zoltanetzky, P. Jr., and Lim, H. P. E., "Concrete Quality Assurance at All New York City DEP Projects Using the Internet," ACI Fall Convention, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, November, 1999, 5 pp.

4.19. Nawy, E. G., *Fundamentals of High Performance Concrete,* 2nd ed., John Wiley and Sons, New York, 2001, 452 pp.

4.20 Nawy, E. G., "*Concrete—The Sustainable Infrastructure Material for the 21st Century,*" Keynote Address Paper, No. E-C103, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, D.C., September 2006, pp. 1–23.

5

FLEXURE IN BEAMS

5.1 INTRODUCTION

Loads acting on a structure, be they live gravity loads or other types, such as horizontal wind loads, earthquakes, or those due to shrinkage and temperature, result in bending and deformation of the constituent structural elements. The bending of the beam element is the result of the deformational strain caused by the flexural stresses due to the external load.

As the load is increased, the beam sustains additional strain and deflection, leading to development of flexural cracks along the span of the beam. Continuous increases in the level of the load lead to failure of the structural element when the external load reaches the capacity of the element. Such a load level is termed the *limit state of failure in flexure*. Consequently, the designer has to design the cross section of the element or beam such that it would not develop excessive cracking at service load levels and have adequate safety and reserve strength to withstand the applied loads or stresses without failure.

Flexural stresses are a result of the external bending moments. They control in most cases the selection of the geometrical dimensions of a reinforced concrete section. The design process through the selection and analysis of a section is usually started by satisfying the flexural (bending) requirements, except for special components such as footings. Thereafter, other factors, such as shear capacity, deflection, cracking, and bond development of the reinforcement, are analyzed and satisfied.

Photo 5.1 Priory Church, St. Louis, Missouri. (Courtesy Portland Cement Association.)

While the input data for the analysis of sections differ from the data needed for design, every design is essentially an analysis. One assumes the geometrical properties of a section in a design and proceeds to analyze such a section to determine if it can safely carry the required external loads. Hence a good understanding of the fundamental principles in the analysis procedure significantly simplifies the task of designing sections. The basic mechanics of materials principles of equilibrium of internal couples have to be adhered to at all stages of loading.

If a beam is made up of homogeneous, isotropic, and linearly elastic material, the maximum bending stress can be obtained using the well-known beam flexure formula $f = Mc/I$. At ultimate load, the reinforced concrete beam is neither homogeneous nor elastic, thereby making that expression inapplicable for evaluating the stresses. However, the basic principles of the theory of bending can still be used to analyze reinforced concrete beam cross sections. Figure 5.1 shows a typical continuous reinforced concrete beam. If the beam is so proportioned that all its constituent materials attain their capacity prior to failure, both the concrete and the steel fail simultaneously at midspan when the ultimate strength of the beam is reached. The corresponding strain and stress diagrams are shown in Figure 5.2.

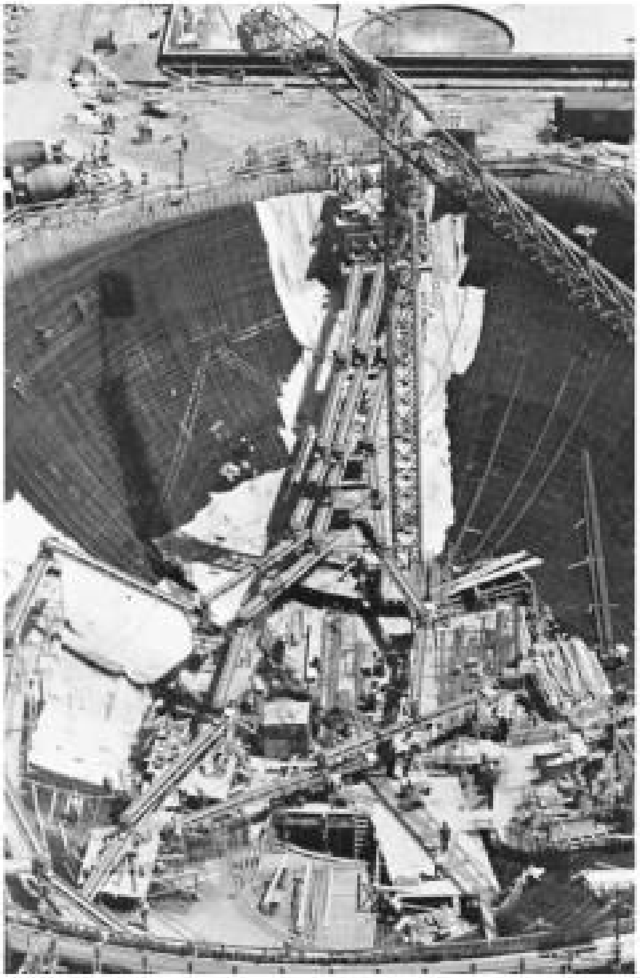


Photo 5.2 Empire State Performing Arts Center (Albany, New York) during construction.

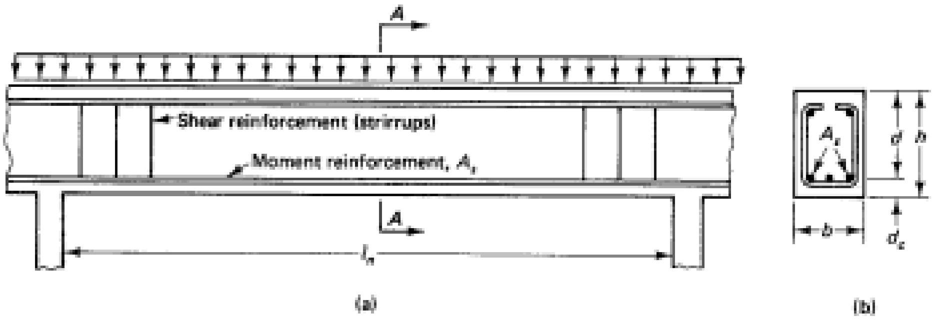


Figure 5.1 Typical reinforced concrete beam: (a) elevation; (b) section *A–A*.

The following assumptions are made in defining the behavior of the section:

1. Strain distribution is assumed to be linear. This assumption is based on Bernoulli's hypothesis that plane sections before bending remain plane and perpendicular to the neutral axis after bending.
2. Strain in the steel and the surrounding concrete is the same prior to cracking of the concrete or yielding of the steel.
3. Concrete is weak in tension. It cracks at an early stage of loading at about 10% of its limit compressive strength. Consequently, concrete in the tension zone of the section is neglected in the flexural analysis and design computations, and the tension reinforcement is assumed to take the total tensile force.

To satisfy the equilibrium of the horizontal forces, the compressive force C in the concrete and the tensile force T in the steel should balance each other, that is,

$$C = T \tag{5.1}$$

The terms in Figure 5.2 are defined as follows:

b = width of the beam at the compression side
d = depth of the beam measured from the extreme compression fiber to the centroid of steel area
h = total depth of the beam
A_s = area of the tension steel
ϵ_c = strain in extreme compression fiber
ϵ_s = strain at the level of tension steel
f'_c = compressive strength of the concrete
f_s = stress in the tension steel
f_y = yield strength of the tension reinforcement
c = depth of the neutral axis measured from extreme compression fibers

Photo 5.3 Simply supported beam in flexural failure. (Tests by Nawy.)

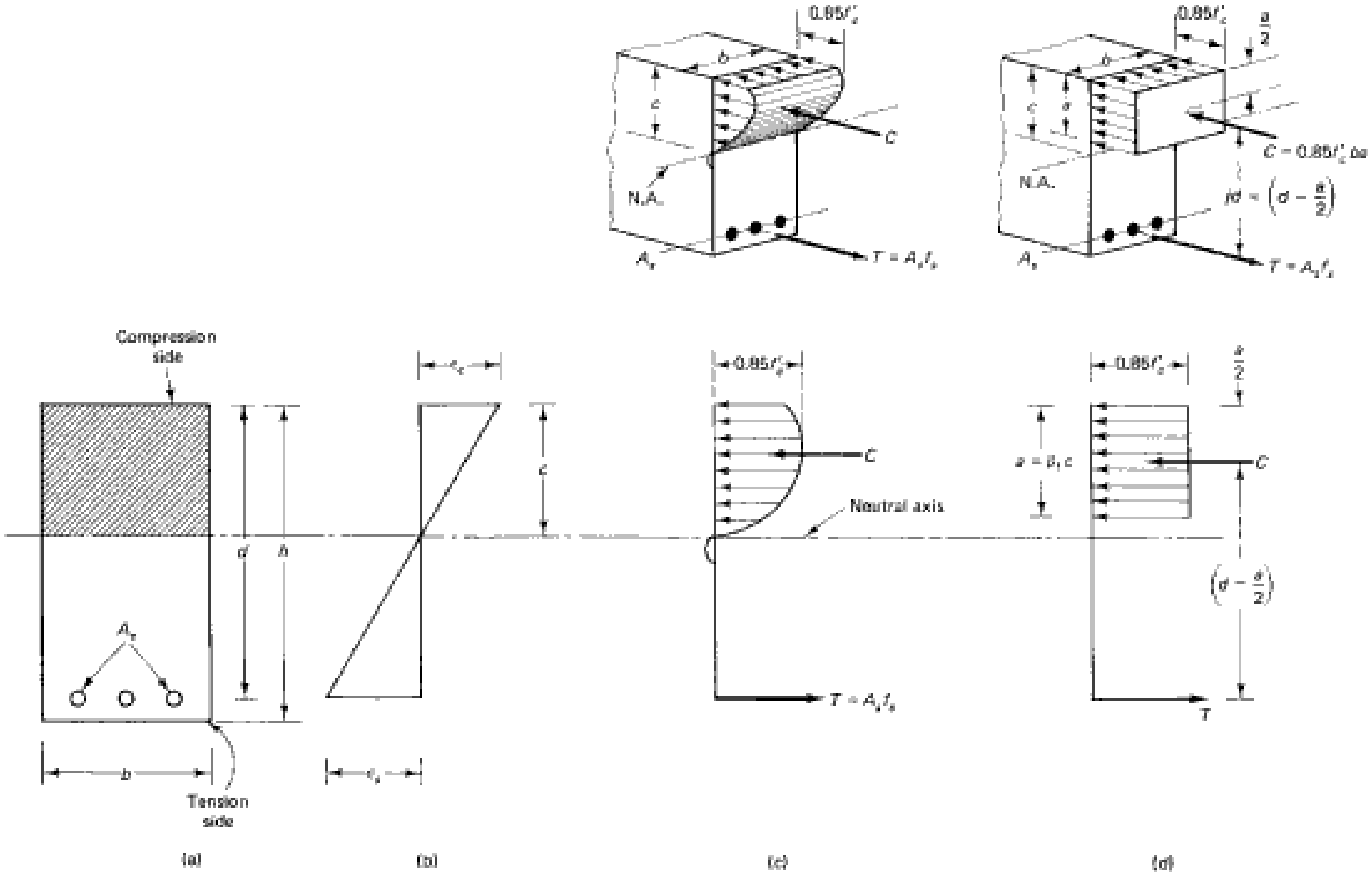


Figure 5.2 Stress and strain distribution across beam depth: (a) beam cross-section; (b) strains; (c) actual stress block; (d) assumed equivalent stress block.

5.2 THE EQUIVALENT RECTANGULAR BLOCK

The actual distribution of the compressive stress in a section has the form of a rising parabola, as shown in Figure 5.2c. It is time-consuming to evaluate the volume of the compressive stress block if it has a parabolic shape. An equivalent rectangular stress block due to Whitney can be used with ease and without loss of accuracy to calculate the compressive force and hence the flexural moment strength of the section. This equivalent stress block has a depth a and an average compressive strength $0.85f'_c$. As seen from Figure 5.2d, the value of $a = \beta_1 c$ is determined using a coefficient β_1 such that the area of the equivalent rectangular block is approximately the same as that of the parabolic compressive block, resulting in a compressive force C of essentially the same value in both cases.

The $0.85f'_c$ value for the average stress of the equivalent compressive block is based on the core test results of concrete in the structure at a minimum age of 28 days. Based on exhaustive experimental tests, a maximum allowable strain of 0.003 in./in. was adopted by the ACI as a safe limiting value. Even though several forms of stress blocks including trapezoidal have been proposed to date, the simplified equivalent rectangular block is accepted as the standard in the analysis and design of reinforced concrete. The behavior of the steel is assumed to be elastoplastic, as shown in Figure 5.3a.

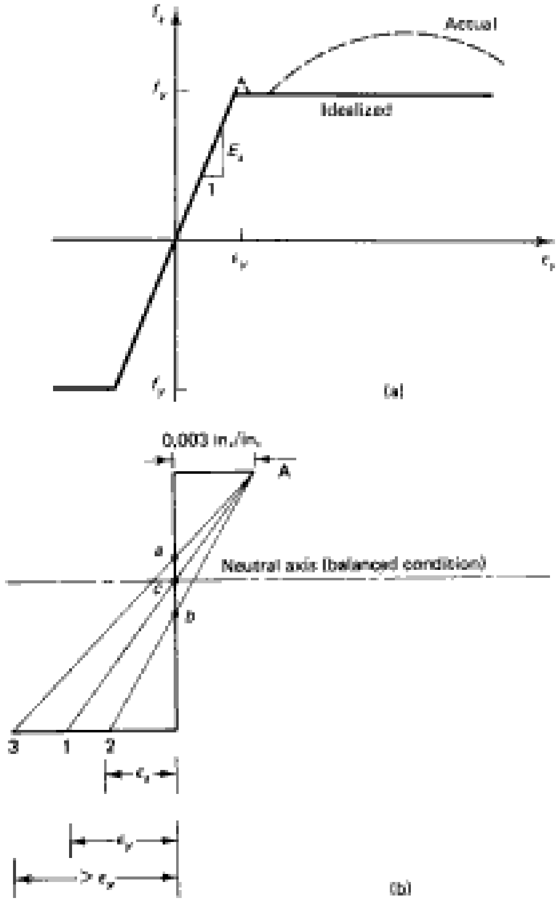


Figure 5.3 Strain distribution across depth: (a) idealized stress–strain diagram of the reinforcement; (b) strain distribution for various modes of flexural failure.

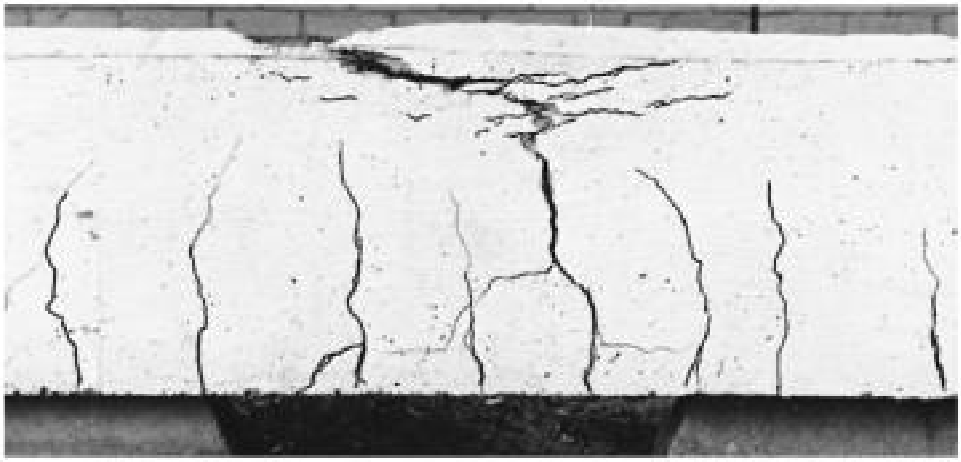


Photo 5.4 Close-up of flexural cracks in Photo 5.3.

Using all the preceding assumptions, the stress distribution diagram shown in Fig. 5.2c can be redrawn as shown in Figure 5.2d. One can easily deduce that the compression force C can be written as $0.85f'_c ba$, that is, the *volume* of the compressive block at or near the ultimate when the tension steel has yielded, $\epsilon_s > \epsilon_y$. The tensile force T can be written as $A_s f_y$. Thus equilibrium Eq. 5.1 can be rewritten as

$$0.85f'_c ba = A_s f_y \tag{5.2}$$

or

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85f'_c b} \tag{5.3}$$

The moment of resistance of the section, that is, the nominal strength M_n, can be expressed as

$$M_n = (A_s f_y)\, jd \quad \text{or} \quad M_n = (0.85f'_c ba)\, jd \tag{5.4a}$$

where jd is the lever arm, denoting the distance between the compression and tensile forces of the internal resisting couple. Using the simplified equivalent rectangular stress block from Figure 5.2d, the lever arm is

$$jd = d - \frac{a}{2}$$

Hence the nominal moment of resistance becomes

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2} \right) \tag{5.4b}$$

Since $C = T$, the moment equation can also be written as

$$M_n = 0.85f'_c ba \left(d - \frac{a}{2} \right) \tag{5.4c}$$

If the reinforcement ratio $\rho = A_s/bd$, Eq. 5.3 can be rewritten as

$$a = \frac{\rho d f_y}{0.85f'_c}$$

If $r = b/d$, Eq. 5.4c becomes

$$M_n = \rho r d^2 f_y \left(d - \frac{\rho d f_y}{1.7 f'_c} \right) \tag{5.5a}$$

or

$$M_n = [\omega r f'_c (1 - 0.59\omega)] d^3 \tag{5.5b}$$

where $\omega = \rho f_y / f'_c$. Equation 5.5b is sometimes expressed as

$$M_n = Rbd^2 \tag{5.6a}$$

where

$$R = \omega f'_c (1 - 0.59\omega) \tag{5.6b}$$

Equations 5.5 and 5.6 are useful for the development of charts. A plot of the R value for singly reinforced beams is shown in Figure 5.4.

Depending on the type of failure, namely, yielding of the steel or crushing of the concrete, analysis of the strain state in the *tension* reinforcement becomes the determinant of the measure of ductility of the reinforced or prestressed concrete element. The percentage of the tension reinforcement would, therefore, determine the magnitude of

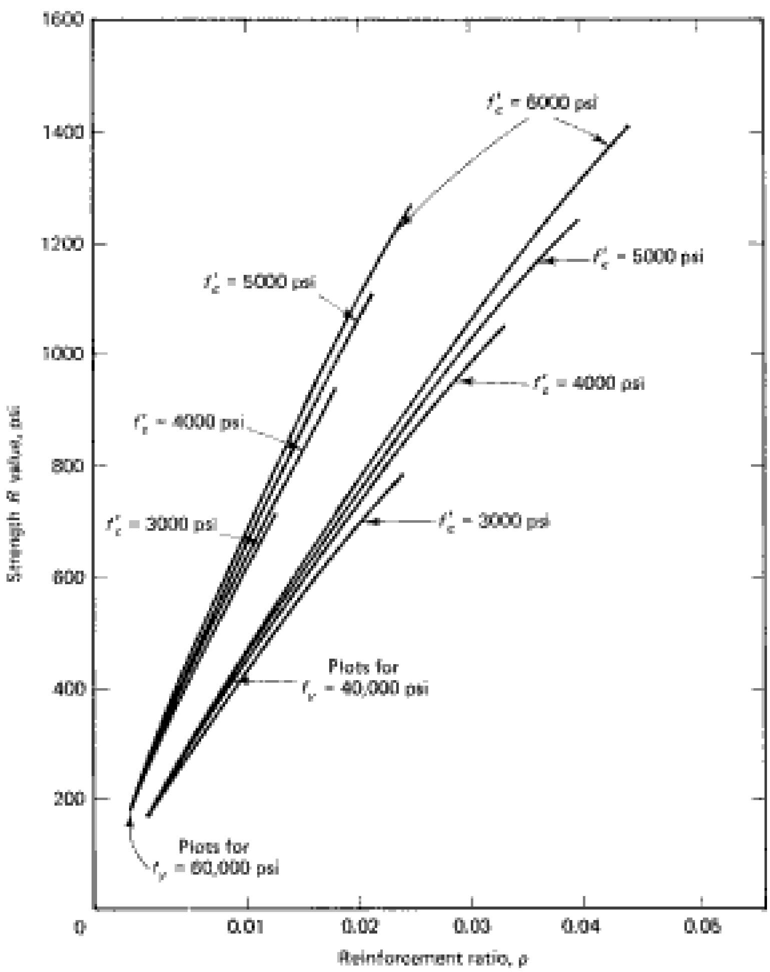


Figure 5.4 Strength curves for singly reinforced beams.

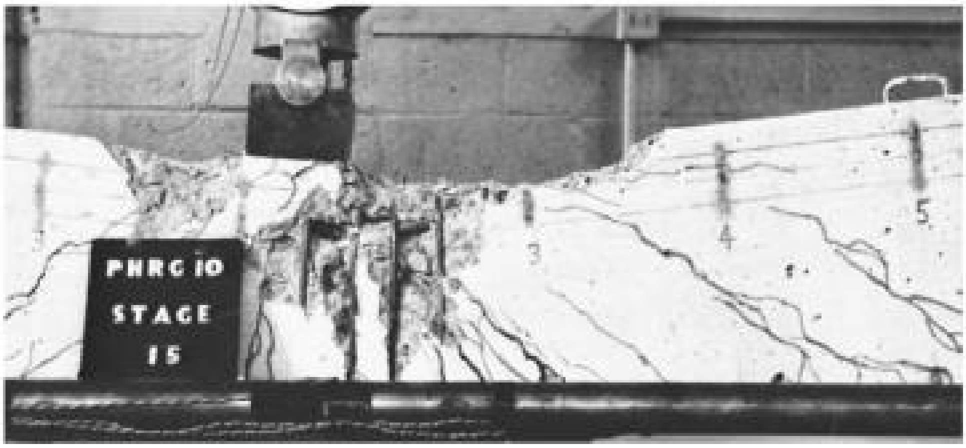


Photo 5.5 Beam at failure subjected to combined compression and bending. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

strain, and whether failure develops by initial yielding of steel (a ductile type of failure) or by initial crushing of the concrete (a brittle mode of failure). If failure precipitates by simultaneous yielding of the tensile reinforcement and the crushing of the concrete extreme compression fibers, such a mode of failure is termed as *balanced* failure. In such a case, the corresponding *limit* strain, ε_y, in the tensile reinforcement is reached at the same time that the *limit* strain, ε_{cu} is reached in concrete (0.003 in./in.).

In order to prevent such a state of behavior in flexural members, a strain greater than ε_y in the extreme tensile reinforcement has to be required in design. For example, if 60 ksi grade steel is used as reinforcement, the yield strain $\varepsilon_y = f_y/E_s = 60{,}000/29 \times 10^6 =$ 0.002 in./in. The design has to be based on ε_s (termed ε_t at the level of the extreme tensile reinforcement layer) sufficiently larger than 0.002 in./in. in flexural members to ensure ductile performance. To achieve this result, the percentage of reinforcement $\rho = A_s/bd$ should be in the range of 50 to 60% of the percentage needed for the limit balanced behavior. Such a lower percentage of reinforcement would also prevent congestion of the

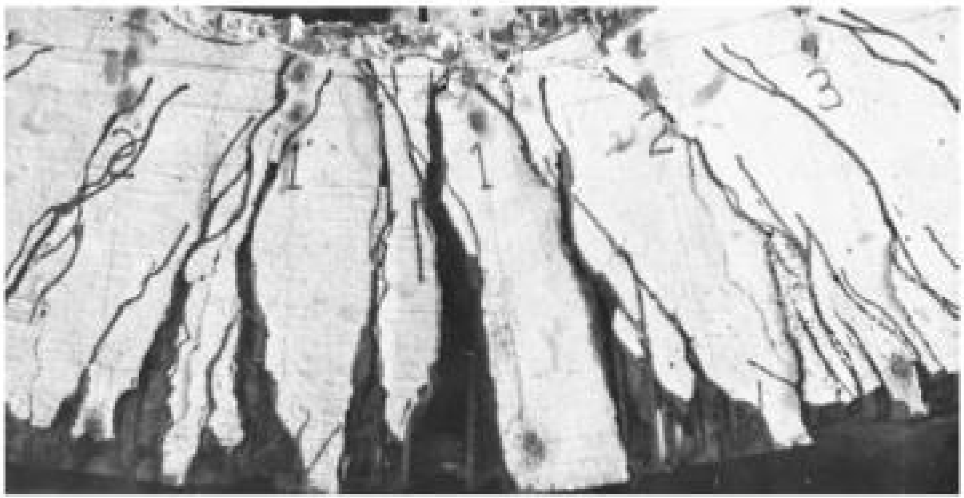


Photo 5.6 [illegible]. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

reinforcement in the concrete section. However, a minimum percentage of reinforcement has also to be maintained, so that the reinforced concrete element does *not* behave as a plain concrete section.

The neutral axis depth, c, can be expressed from Figure 5.2 as

$$\frac{c}{d} = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right) \text{ or } 0.003\left(\frac{d_t}{c} - 1\right) \tag{5.7a}$$

For the limit balanced strain $\varepsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in. at the extreme tensile reinforcement fibers,

$$\frac{c_b}{d_t} = \frac{0.003}{0.003 + f_y/E_s} \tag{5.7b}$$

where c_b = balanced neutral axis depth at the limit strain $\varepsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in. for 60 ksi steel
d_t = effective depth to the extreme tensile reinforcement layer

If the modulus of mild steel reinforcement, E_s, is taken as 29×10^6 psi, Equation 5.7(b) becomes

$$\frac{c_b}{d_t} = \frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 + f_y} \quad \text{for 60 ksi steel} \tag{5.7c}$$

and

$$f_s = \varepsilon_t E_s\left(\frac{d_t}{c} - 1\right) = 87{,}000\left(\frac{d_t}{c} - 1\right) \le f_y \tag{5.7d}$$

for the stress in the extreme tensile reinforcement.

The relationship between the depth a of the equivalent rectangular stress block and the depth c of neutral axis is

$$a = \beta_1 c \tag{5.8}$$

The value of the stress block depth factor β_1 is

$$\beta_1 = \begin{Bmatrix} 0.85 & \text{for } 2500 < f'_c \le 4000 \text{ psi} \\ 0.85 - 0.05\left(\dfrac{f'_c - 4000}{1000}\right) & \text{for } 4000 \text{ psi} < f'_c \le 8000 \text{ psi} \\ 0.65 & \text{for } f'_c > 8000 \text{ psi} \end{Bmatrix} \tag{5.9}$$

The code also stipulates the minimum steel requirement as

$$A_{s,min} \ge \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} b_w d \ge \frac{200 b_w d}{f_y} \tag{5.10a}$$

and for statically determinate T section with the flange in tension, or for cantilevers,

$$A_{s,min} \ge \frac{6\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} b_w d \ge \frac{200 b_w d}{f_y} \tag{5.10b}$$

but not greater than that calculated by Eq. 5.10a with b_w set equal to the width of the flange. (Equation 5.10b resulted from having to compute the minimum A_s over a width of flange = 2 b_w.) Both Equations 5.10a and b need not be applied to each section, provided that A_s is at least *one third greater* than required by analysis.

@Seismicisolation

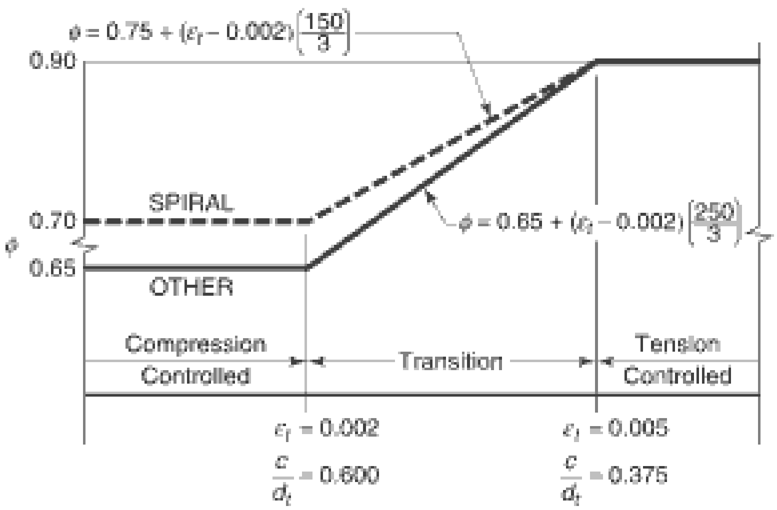
5.3 STRAIN LIMITS METHOD FOR ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

5.3.1 General Principles

In this approach, sometimes referred to as the "unified method," being maintained as applicable to flexural analysis of prestressed concrete elements, the nominal flexural strength of a concrete member is reached when the net compressive strain in the extreme compression fibers reaches the ACI code-assumed limit 0.003 in./in. It also stipulates that when the net tensile strain in the extreme tension steel, ε_t, is sufficiently large, as discussed in the previous section, at a value equal or greater than 0.005 in./in., the behavior is fully ductile.The concrete beam section is characterized as *tension-controlled*, with ample warning of failure as denoted by excessive cracking and deflection.

If the net tensile strain in the extreme tension fibers, ε_t, is small, such as in compression members, being equal or less than a *compression-controlled* strain limit, a brittle mode of failure is expected, with little warning of such an impending failure. Flexural members are usually tension-controlled. Compression members are usually compression-controlled. However, some sections, such as those subjected to small axial loads, but large bending moments, the net tensile strain, ε_t, in the extreme tensile fibers, will have an intermediate or transitional value between the two strain limit states, namely, between the compression-controlled strain limit $\varepsilon_t = f_y/E_s = 60{,}000/29 \times 10^6 = 0.002$ in./in., and the tension-controlled strain limit $\varepsilon_t = 0.005$ in./in. Figure 5.5 delineates these three zones as well as the variation in the strength reduction factors applicable to the total range of behavior. See also Figure 5.6.

For the tension-controlled state, the strain limit $\varepsilon_t = 0.005$ corresponds to reinforcement ratio $\rho/\rho_b = 0.63$, where ρ_b is the balanced reinforcement ratio for the balanced strain $\varepsilon_t = 0.002$ in the extreme tensile reinforcement. The net tensile strain $\varepsilon_t = 0.005$ for a tension-controlled state is a single value that applies to all types of reinforcement regardless whether mild steel or prestressing steel. High reinforcement ratios that produce a net tensile strain



Interpolation on c/d_t: Spiral $\phi = 0.75 + 0.15\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right]$

Other $\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right]$

Figure 5.5 Strain limit zones and variation of strength reduction factor ϕ with the net tensile strain ε_t for grade 60 reinforcement.

less than 0.005 result in a ϕ-factor value lower than 0.90, resulting in less economical sections. Therefore, it is more efficient to add compression reinforcement if necessary or deepen the section in order to make the strain in the extreme tension reinforcement, $\varepsilon_t \geq 0.005$.

Variation of ϕ as a Function of Strain. Variation of the ϕ value for the range of strain between $\epsilon_T = 0.002$ and $\epsilon_T = 0.005$ can be linearly interpolated to give the following expressions,

Tied sections:

$$0.65 \leq \left[\phi = 0.65 + (\varepsilon_t - 0.002)\left(\frac{250}{3}\right)\right] \leq 0.90 \tag{5.11a}$$

Spirally-reinforced sections:

$$0.75 \leq \left[\phi = 0.75 + (\varepsilon_t - 0.002)\left(\frac{150}{3}\right)\right] \leq 0.90 \tag{5.11b}$$

Variation of ϕ as a Function of Neutral Axis Depth Ratio c/d. Equations 5.7a and b can be expressed in terms of the ratio of the neutral axis depth c to the effective d_t of the layer of reinforcement closest to the tensile face of the section as follows:

Tied sections:

$$0.65 \leq \left(\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right]\right) \leq 0.90 \tag{5.12a}$$

Spirally reinforced sections:

$$0.75 \leq \left(\phi = 0.75 + 0.15\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right]\right) \leq 0.90 \tag{5.12b}$$

For rectangular beams, it is easy to determine whether the tension reinforcement has yielded or not, namely, if $f_s = f_y$ from the following expression, with

Limit strain $\varepsilon_t = 0.002$:

$$\frac{c_b}{d_t} = \left(\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 + f_y}\right) \tag{5.13a}$$

and comparing this ratio to a/d_t of the beam being analyzed. Alternatively, at a strain of 0.004, which is close to the balanced strain condition, the corresponding reinforcement percentage is

$$\rho_b = 0.85\beta_1\frac{f'_c}{f_y}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_u}{\varepsilon_u + 0.004}\right) \tag{5.13b}$$

For ductile behavior such that the beam is well into the tension controlled zone, a reinforcement percentage, ρ, should be chosen in the range of 40 to 60 percent of the ρ_b value

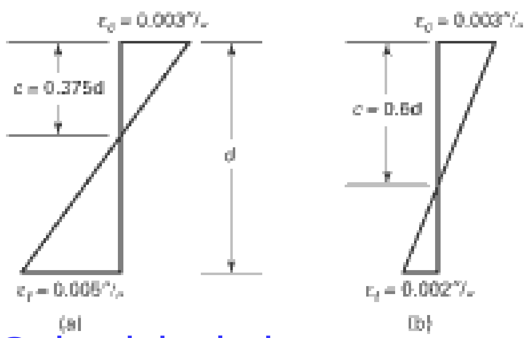


Figure 5.6 Strain limits: (a) tension controlled; (b) compression controlled.

in Eq. 5.13 b. For one layer of tension reinforcement in singly-reinforced beam sections, Eq. 5.6 in conjunction with Figure 5.4 can be used for proportioning the geometry of the section on the basis of a reasonably assumed strength R value.

It should be remembered that for flexural members with axial load less than $0.10 f'_c A_g$ and a strain less than 0.004 at nominal moment strength, the resulting ϕ value can become significantly lower than 0.9 for flexure that the section geometry would have to be modified or reinforcement percentage increased to accommodate the required nominal moment strength with ductile behavior; hence the code strain limiting value of 0.004 for non-prestressed members and for those with axial load less than $0.10 A_g f'_c$.

In summary, when the net tensile strain in the extreme tension reinforcement is sufficiently large (equal to or greater than 0.005), the section is defined as tension-controlled where ample warning of failure with extensive deflection and cracking can occur. When the net tensile strain in the extreme tension reinforcement is small (less than or equal to the compression-controlled strain limit), a brittle failure condition is expected to develop, with little warning of impending failure. Flexural members are usually tension-controlled. Some sections, such as those with small axial load and large bending moment, will have net tensile strain between the above limits in the tension reinforcement closest to the extreme tensile fibers of a concrete section. These sections are in a transition region between compression- and tension-controlled sections.

In such cases for non-prestressed members and with axial load equal or less than $0.10 f'_c A_g$, the net tensile strain ϵ_t at the extreme tension steel should *not be less than 0.004* at nominal moment strength. Otherwise, the resulting ϕ value can become so low that additional reinforcement would be needed to produce the required nominal strength and with reduced ductility.

A balanced strain condition develops at a section when the maximum strain at the extreme compression fibers just reaches 0.003 in./in. simultaneously with the first yield strain $\epsilon_y = f_y/E_s$ in the tension reinforcement corresponding to a net tensile strain in the tension reinforcement set in this method at a value $\epsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in. This condition cannot be used in the flexural design of beams not subjected to compression. In such members, a strain ϵ_t in the extreme tensile reinforcement need not considerably exceed 0.0075 in./in. for practical consideration of section size.

As a rule of thumb, for the first trial in the design of a beam for flexure, a c/d_t ratio of 75% the limit $c/d_t = 0.375$ would ensure a ductile behavior, with $\epsilon_t >> 0.005$.

When using the ϕ values obtained from Equations 5.11 or 5.12 for cases where the compression member is in the tensile failure zone of an interaction diagram, somewhat larger moment strength values are obtained in this method than might be available. This is due to the fact that columns are primarily loaded in compression, and ϵ_t values will be less than f_y/E_s if not actually less than zero.

5.3.2 Negative Moment Redistribution in Continuous Beams

The code permits decreasing the negative moments at the supports for continuous members by not more than $1000\ \epsilon_t$% with a maximum of 20%. The reason is that for ductile members, plastic hinge regions develop at points of maximum moment and cause a shift in the elastic moment diagram. The result is a reduction of the negative moment and a corresponding increase in the positive moment. The redistribution of the negative moment as permitted by the code can only be used when ϵ_t is equal to or greater than 0.0075 in./in. at the section at which the moment is reduced. This redistribution is logically inapplicable to working stress design or to slab systems designed by the direct design method (DDM).

Figure 5.7 shows the permissible moment redistribution for minimum rotational capacity. It should be emphasized that the procedure presented in Sec. 5.3.1 does not in any way alter the strength computations for non-prestressed concrete sections. For prestressed concrete s[...]ent ratio for combined prestressed and

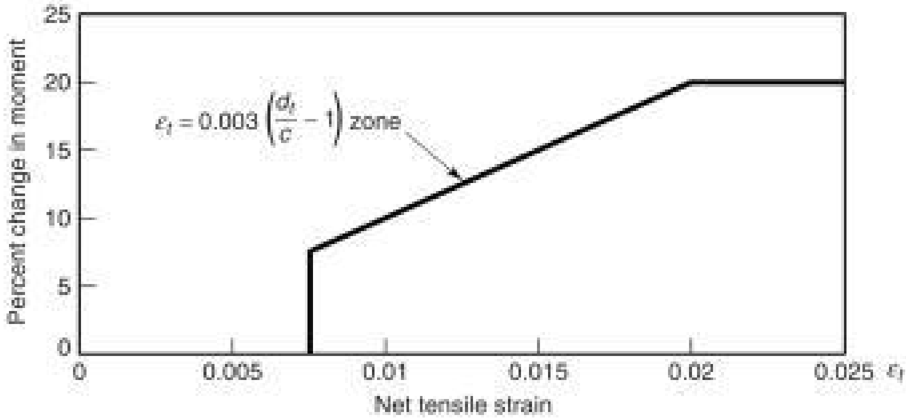


Figure 5.7 Allowable redistribution percentage for minimum rotational capacity.

mild steel reinforcement has a reinforcement index ω not exceeding 0.36 β_1 upper limit allowed by the ACI 318 Code, a modified computational procedure has to be followed.

The ACI 318 Code, as in Equations 5.12, stipulates a maximum strength reduction factor $\phi = 0.90$ for pure bending, to be used in computing the design strength of flexural members. This corresponds to neutral axis depth ratio $c/d_t = 0.375$ or lower. For a useful redistribution of moment in continuous members, this neutral axis depth ratio should be considerably lower, so that the net tensile strain is within the range of $\varepsilon_t = 0.0075$ in./in., giving a redistribution factor of 7.5 %, and a limit $\varepsilon_t = 0.020$, giving 20% redistribution, as shown in Figure 5.7.

As an example, if $d_t = 20$ in. and neutral axis depth $c = 5.1$ in.,

$$\varepsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t}{c} - 1\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{20}{5.1} - 1\right) = 0.0088 \text{ in./in.} > 0.0075 \text{ in./in. minimum value for inelastic redistribution to be applied.}$$

In this case, the maximum allowable moment redistribution = $1000\,\varepsilon_t = 8.8\%$

This gives a net reduction in negative moment value = $(100 - 8.8) = 91.2\%$.

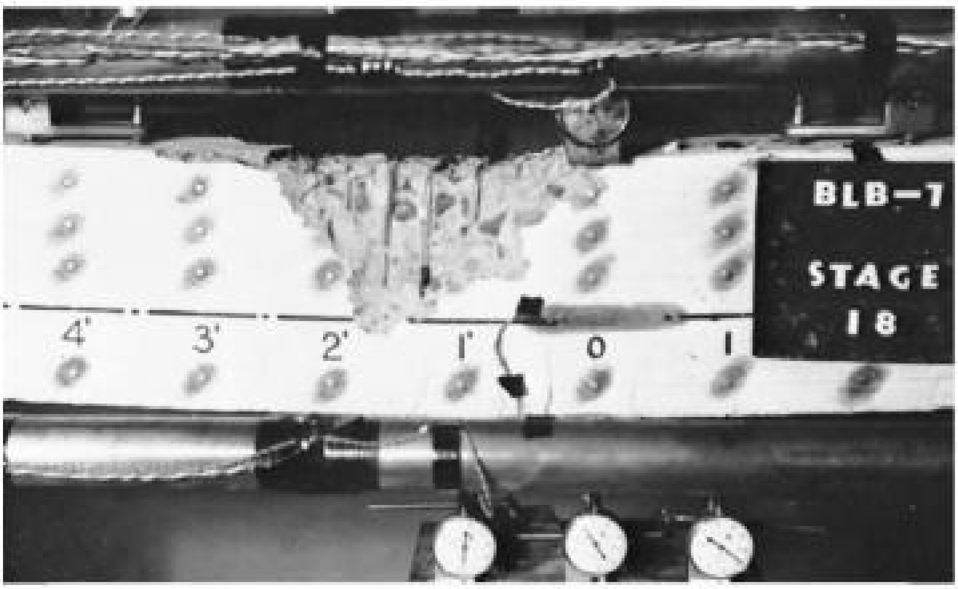


Photo 5.7 Beam subjected to combined axial load and bending. The neutral axis is at 70% of depth. (Tests by Nawy et al.).

Summarizing, the ACI 318-08 code stipulates that a redistribution (reduction) of the moments at supports of continuous flexural members *not to exceed* 1000 ε_t percent, with a maximum of 20%, as seen in Figure 5.7, while increasing the positive midspan moment accordingly. But inelastic moment redistribution should only be made when ε_t is equal or greater than 0.0075 at the section for which moment is reduced.

5.4 ANALYSIS OF SINGLY REINFORCED RECTANGULAR BEAMS FOR FLEXURE

The sequence of calculations presented in the flowchart of Figure 5.8 can be used for the analysis of a given beam for both longhand and computers. The flowchart was developed using the method of analysis presented in Section 5.2. The following examples illustrate typical analysis calculations following the flowchart logic in Figure 5.8.

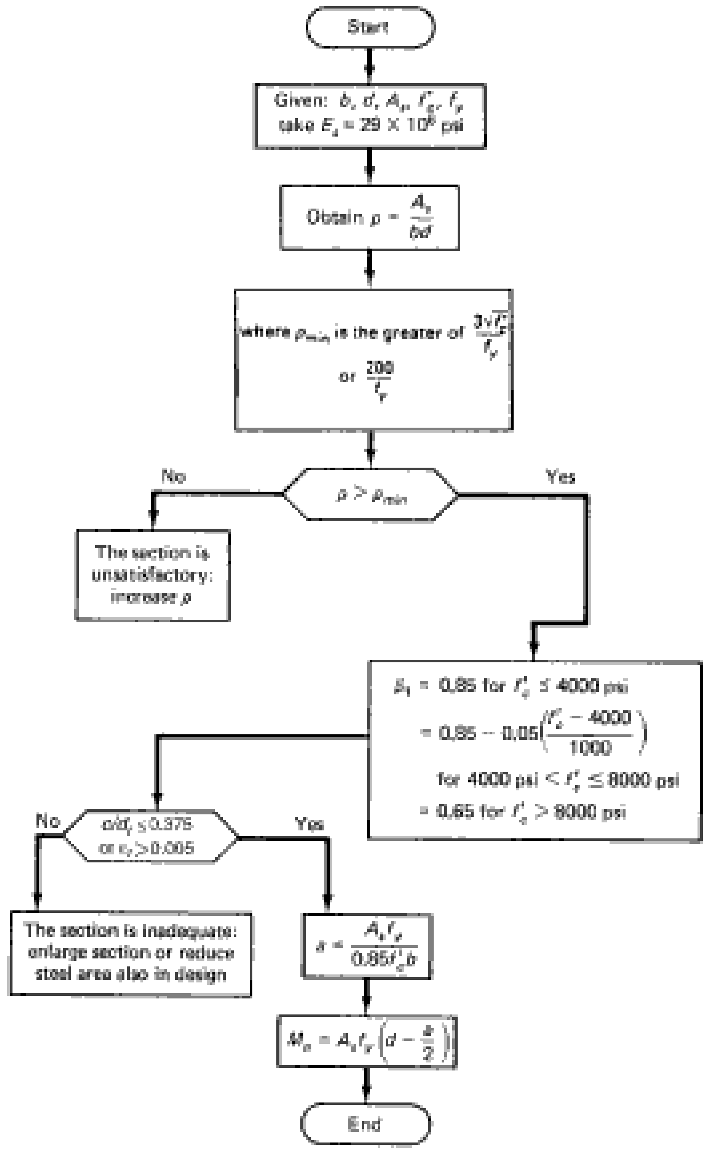


Figure 5.8 Flowchart for analysis of singly reinforced rectangular beams in bending.

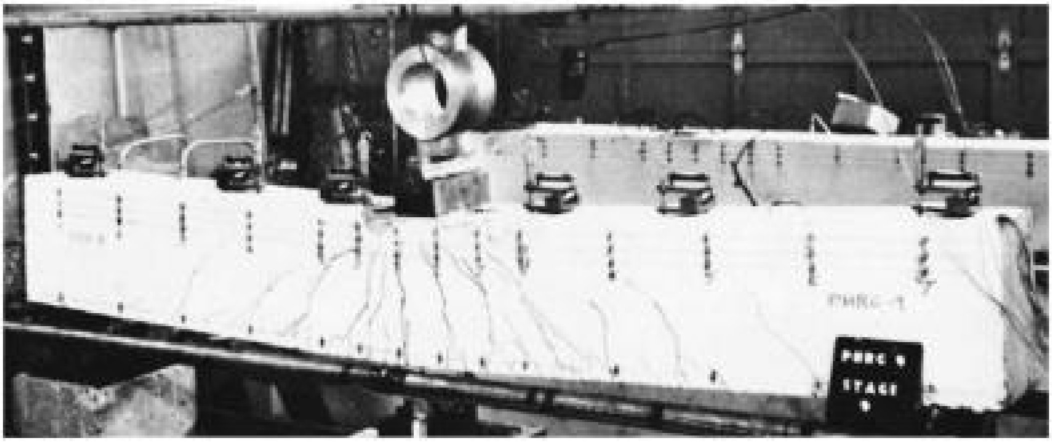


Photo 5.8 Flexural cracking and deflection of beam subjected to flexure only prior to failure. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

5.4.1 Example 5.1: Flexural Analysis of a Singly Reinforced Beam (Tension Reinforcement Only)

A singly reinforced concrete beam has the cross-section shown in Figure 5.9. Determine if the beam is tension- or compression-controlled. Given $f'_c = 4000$ psi (27.6 MPa), determine if the beam satisfies the ACI Code if:

(a) $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi; (b) $f_y = 40{,}000$ psi

$$\rho = \frac{6.0}{10 \times 18} = 0.033$$

From Eq. 5.10a.

$$\text{minimum allowable reinforcement ratio } \rho_{min} = 3\sqrt{f'_c}/f_y = \frac{3\sqrt{4000}}{40{,}000} = 0.0047$$

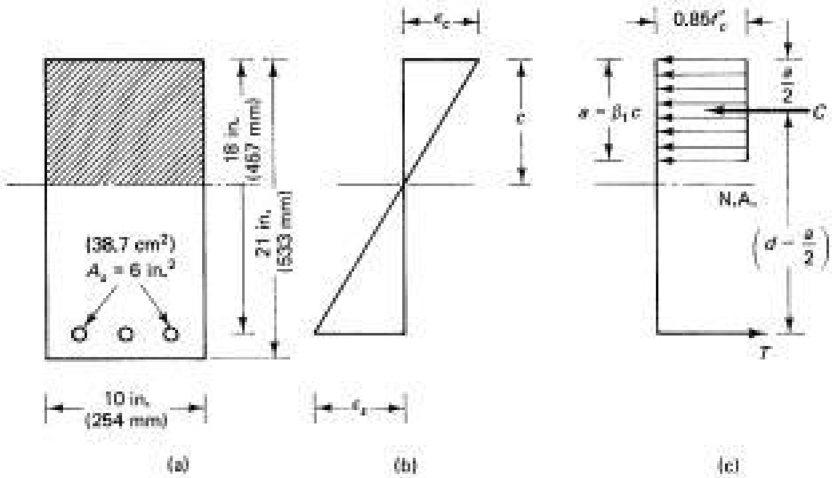


Figure 5.9 Stress and strain distribution in a typical singly reinforced rectangular section: (a) cross-section; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

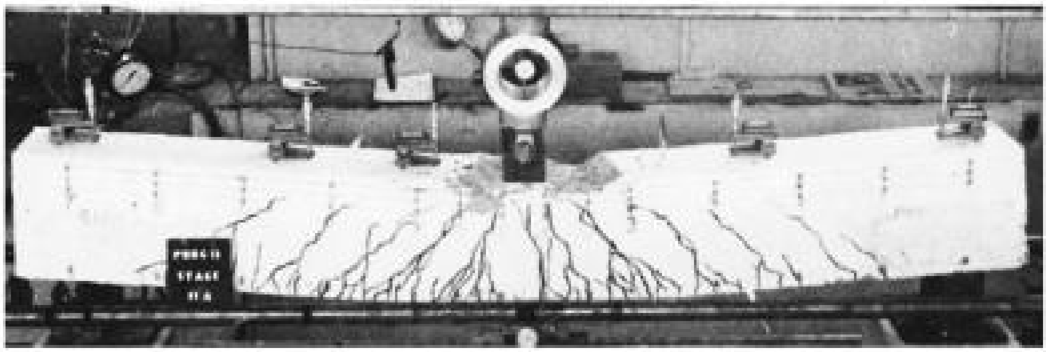


Photo 5.9 Crushing of concrete at compression side of beam subjected to flexure.

Solution: (a) $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{6.0 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 10} = 10.59 \text{ in.} \quad c = 12.46 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{12.46}{18.0} = 0.69 > 0.60 \text{ from Figure 5.5}$$

Hence, A_s did not yield and the strain is smaller than 0.002 in./in. Brittle behavior results as the section is compression-controlled and does *not* satisfy the ACI Code requirements for flexural beams

Solution: (b) $f_y = 40{,}000$ psi

$$\beta_1 = 0.85$$

Assume $f_s = f_y$.

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{3\sqrt{4000}}{40{,}000} = 0.0047 \text{ or } \rho_{min} = \frac{200}{40{,}000} = 0.005 \text{ (controls)}$$

$$a = \frac{6.0 \times 40{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 10} = 7.06 \text{ in.} \quad c = 8.31 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d-c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{18 - 8.31}{8.31}\right) = 0.0035 \text{ in./in.} < 0.005$$

$$\epsilon_y = \frac{f_y}{E_s} = \frac{40{,}000}{29 \times 10^6} = 0.00137 \text{ in./in.} < 0.0035$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{8.31}{18.0} = 0.46 > 0.375 < 0.69 \text{ (for } f_y = 40{,}000)$$

Hence, the beam is in the transition zone, tension steel yielded: But ϵ_t <0.005, hence a reduced ϕ for calculating M_u can be used.

Therefore, ACI requirements for flexure with ϕ in the transition zone is satisfied. However, as previously discussed, using a ϕ value less than 0.90 flexure is uneconomical. Thus this section is uneconomical. To improve the design decrease A_s or increase depth.

5.4.2 Example 5.2: Nominal Resisting Moment in a Singly Reinforced Beam

For the beam cross section shown in Figure 5.10, calculate the nominal moment strength if f_y is 60,000 psi (413.4 MPa) and f'_c is (a) 3000 psi (20.7 MPa); (b) 5000 psi (34.5 MPa); (c) 9000 psi (62.1 MPa).

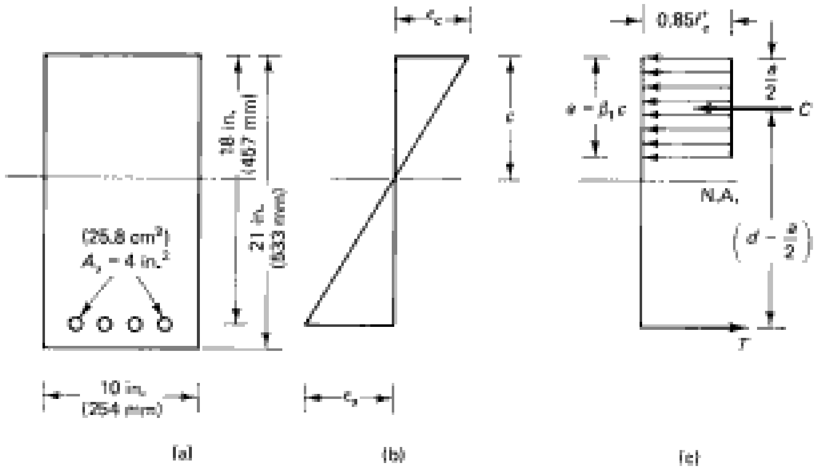


Figure 5.10 Beam cross-section strain and stress diagrams, Ex. 5.2: (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

Solution:

$$b = 10 \text{ in. } (254.0 \text{ mm})$$
$$d = 18 \text{ in. } (457.2 \text{ mm})$$
$$A_s = 4 \text{ in.}^2 \ (2580 \text{ mm}^2)$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

Note that f_y should be in psi units in the ρ_{min} expression.

(a) $f'_c = 3000$ psi (20.7 MPa).

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} = \frac{3\sqrt{3000}}{60{,}000} = 0.0027$$

or

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{200}{f_y} = \frac{200}{60{,}000} = 0.0033 \text{ (controls)}$$

$$\rho = \frac{A_s}{bd} = \frac{4}{10 \times 18} = 0.0222 > 0.0033 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$\beta_1 = 0.85$$

Since the reinforcement is in one layer,

$$d_t = d = 18 \text{ in.}$$
$$C = 0.85 f'_c ba = 0.85 \times 3{,}000 \times 10 \times a = 25{,}500a \text{ lb}$$
$$T = A_s f_y = 4.0 \times 60{,}000 = 240{,}000 \text{ lb}$$
$$C = T \qquad a = \frac{240{,}000}{25{,}500} = 9.4 \text{ in.}$$
$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{9.4}{0.85} = 11.1 \text{ in.}$$
$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{11.1}{18.0} = 0.62 > 0.60, \text{ compression-controlled}$$

Hence the beam is not ductile and does not satisfy the ACI 318 Code.

Solution: (b)

$$f'_c = 5{,}000 \text{ psi}, \qquad \beta_1 = 0.80$$

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{3\sqrt{5000}}{60{,}000} = 0.0035$$

$$\text{Actual } \rho = \frac{4.0}{10 \times 18} = 0.022, \quad \text{O.K.}$$

$$C = 0.85 \times 5{,}000 \times 10a = 42{,}500\,a$$

$$T = 240{,}000 \qquad a = \frac{240{,}000}{42{,}500} = 5.65 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{5.65}{0.80} = 7.06 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{7.06}{18.0} = 0.39 > 0.375 < 0.60$$

Hence the beam is ductile, but in the trasition zone with ϕ less than 0.90.

$$\epsilon_s = \epsilon_y$$

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 4.0 \times 60{,}000\left(18 - \frac{5.65}{2}\right)$$

$$= 3{,}642{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (411 kN-m)}$$

Solution: (c)

$$f'_c = 9{,}000 \text{ psi}, \qquad \beta_1 = 0.65$$

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{3\sqrt{9000}}{60{,}000}$$

$$= 0.0047 < 0.022, \text{ O.K.}$$

$$a = \frac{4.0 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 9000 \times 10} = 3.14 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{3.14}{0.65} = 4.83 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right)$$

$$= 0.003\left(\frac{18 - 4.83}{4.83}\right) = 0.0082 \text{ in./in.}$$

>> 0.005 > 0.0075, hence, tension-controlled, namely, ductile behavior, $\phi = 0.90$.

$$M_n = 4.0 \times 60{,}000\left(18 - \frac{3.14}{2}\right) = 3{,}943{,}200 \text{ in.-lb (446 kN-m)}$$

5.5 TRIAL-AND-ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURES FOR THE DESIGN OF SINGLY REINFORCED BEAMS

In Ex. 5.2, the geometrical properties of the beam, that is, b, d, and A_s, were given. In a design example, an assumption of width b (or the ratio b to d) and the level of reinforcement ratio ρ have to be made. The ratio b/d varies between 0.3 and 0.6 in usual practice. Although the ACI Code permits a tensile reinforcement ratio ρ at a limit strain of 0.005, it is advisible to use a higher strain value, such as $\epsilon_t = 0.0075$ in order to prevent congestion of steel, secure a good bond between the reinforcement and the adjacent concrete, and provide good deflection control.

Studies on cost optimum design indicate that cost-effective sections can be obtained using a minimum practical b/d ratio and a maximum practical reinforcement ratio ρ within the above-stated limitations. Hence one could use the following steps to design the beam cross section following the flowchart logic of Figure 5.11.

1. Calculate the external factored moment. To obtain the beam self-weight, an assumption has to be made for the value of d. The minimum thickness for deflection specified in the ACI Code can be used as a guide. Assume a b/d ratio r between 0.3 and 0.6 and calculate $b = rd$. A first trial assumption $b \simeq d/2$ is recommended.
2. **(a)** Select a value of moment factor R based on an assumed ρ value based on $\varepsilon_t = 0.005$ or higher, or $c/d_t \leq 0.375$. Assuming that $b \simeq d/2$, calculate d for $M_n = Rbd^2$ and proceed to analyze the section.

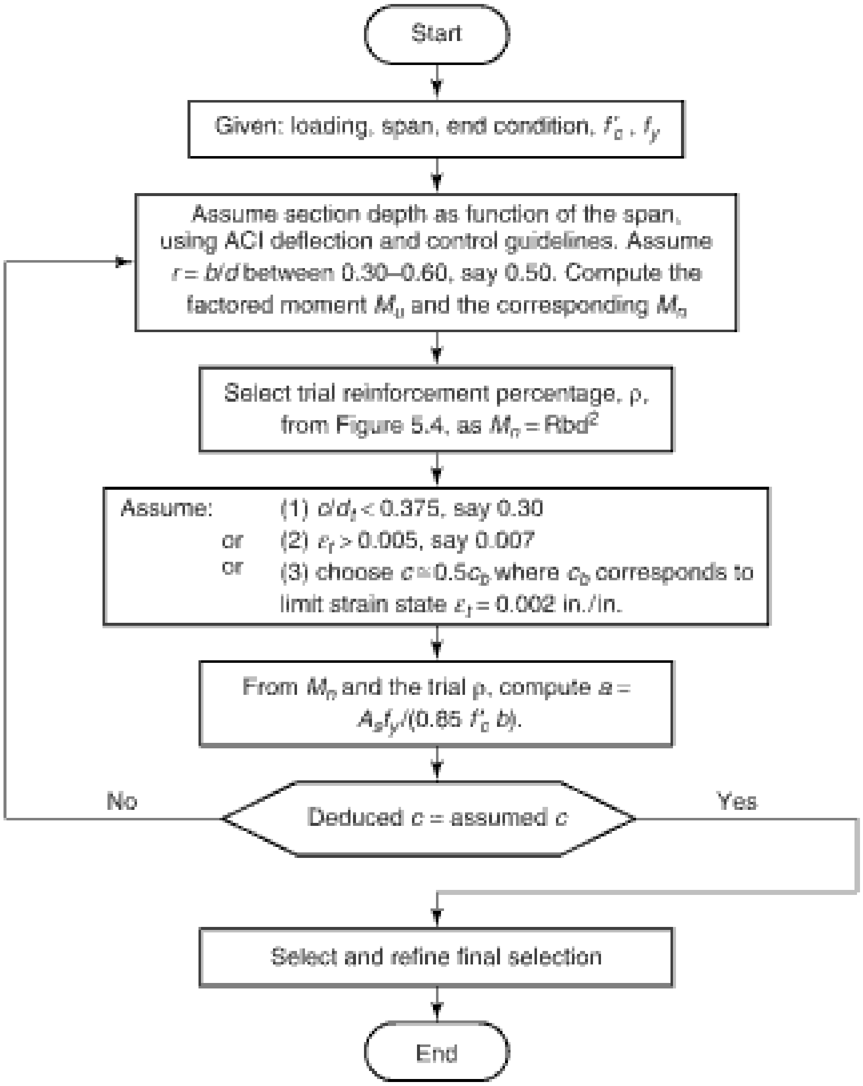


Figure 5.11 Flowchart for sequence of operations for flexural design of singly-reinforced beams.

(b) Alternatively, choose d on the basis of minimum deflection requirement. Choose a width b as in 2(a). Assume a moment arm $jd = 0.85d$ to $0.90d$. Calculate A_s as a first trial, then analyze the section using $b = d/2$.

3. Assume the neutral axis depth ratio c/d_t less than 0.375.
4. Equate forces $C = T$ to get A_s, then check final ε_t to verify that its value > 0.005.

The process of arriving at the final section is highly convergent even by longhand computations in that it should not require more than three trial cycles. The use of computers enormously simplifies the design–analysis process and permits the student or engineer to proportion sections at a fraction of the time needed when using handbooks, charts, or longhand computations, easy as these other means can be.

For designers who prefer charts, Eq. 5.6 ($M_n = Rbd^2$) can be used for the first trial in design. The value of R can be obtained from charts (see Figure 5.4) for various values of ρ, f'_c, and f_y available in handbooks.

5.5.1 Example 5.3: Design of a Singly Reinforced Simply Supported Beam for Flexure

A reinforced concrete simply supported beam has a span of 30 ft (9.14 m) and is subjected to a service uniform live load W_L = 1650 lb/ft (24.1 kN/m), as shown in Figure 5.9. Design a beam section to resist the factored external bending load. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

Solution: Assume a minimum thickness from the ACI Code deflection table:

$$\frac{l_n}{16} = \frac{30 \times 12}{16} = 22.5 \text{ in.}$$

Try a section with $b = 12$ in., $d = 23$ in. and $h = 26$ in. ($r = b/d = 0.5$)

$$\text{Self-weight} = \frac{12 \times 26}{144} \times 150 = 325 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$\text{factored, } w_u = 1.2 \times 325 + 1.6 \times 1650 = 3030 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$\text{factored moment, } M_u = \frac{3030(30)^2}{8} \times 12 = 4{,}090{,}500 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{required resisting moment, } M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{4{,}090{,}500}{0.9} = 4{,}545{,}000 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Try maximum area of tension reinforcement to satisfy depth c to the neutral axis = 0.5 c_b

$$d_t = 23 \text{ in.}$$

Limit balanced strain state:

$$c_b = 23\left(\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 + 60{,}000}\right) = 13.61 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Try } c = 0.5\,c_b \simeq 6.8 \text{ in.} \quad a = 5.8 \text{ in.}$$

or, alternatively,

$$\text{Try } \frac{c}{d_t} = 0.30, \quad c = 0.30 \times 23 = 6.9 \text{ in.}$$

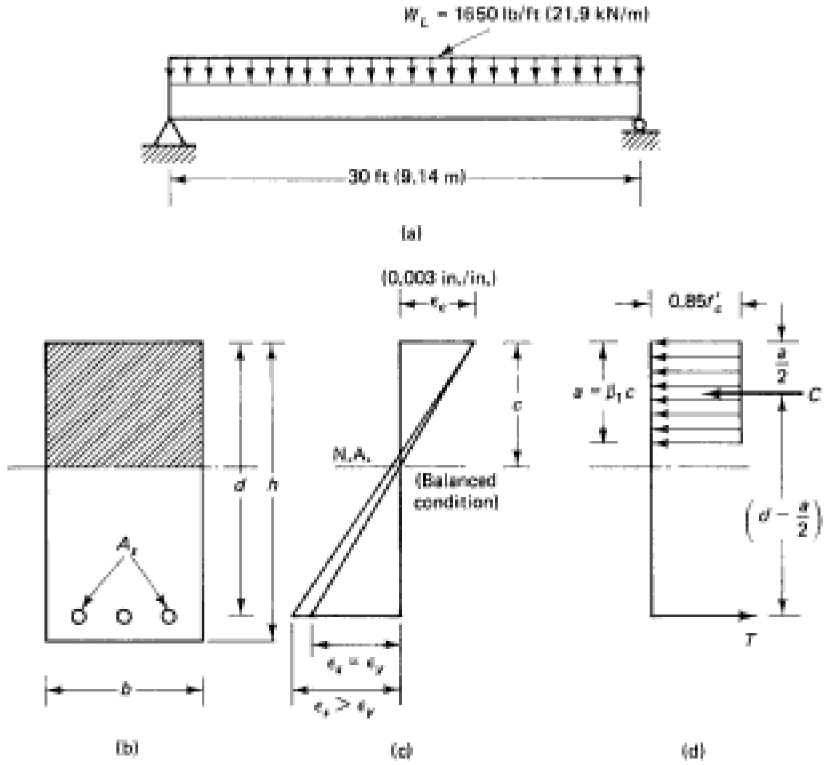


Figure 5.12 Simply supported reinforced concrete uniformly loaded beam: (a) elevation; (b) cross section; (c) strains; (d) stress.

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 6.9 = 5.85 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 0.85 f'_c ba = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 5.85 = 238{,}680 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T = A_s f_y = 60{,}000 A_s \qquad C = T$$

$$\text{hence, trial } A_s = \frac{238{,}680}{60{,}000} = 3.98 \text{ in.}^2$$

Using 3 #10 bar reinforcement = 3.81 in.^{2}

$$a = \frac{3.81 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12} = 5.60 \text{ in.}, \; c = 6.59 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d - c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{23 - 6.59}{6.59}\right)$$

$$= 0.0075 \text{ in./in.} > 0.005 \text{ in./in.,} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

hence the section is tension-controlled,

$$f_s = f_y \quad \text{and} \quad \phi = 0.90$$

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 3.81 \times 60{,}000\left(23 - \frac{5.60}{2}\right)$$

$$= 4{,}617{,}720 \text{ in.-lb } (522 \text{ (kN-m)}$$

> required M_n = 4,145,000 in.-lb, O.K. Adopt the design.

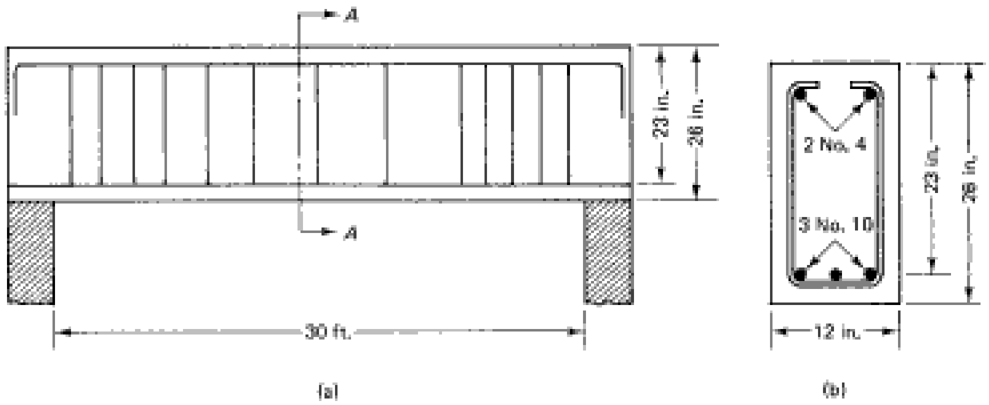


Figure 5.13 Details of reinforcement, Ex. 5.3: (a) section elevation (not to scale); (b) midspan section *A–A*.

5.5.2 Arrangement of Reinforcement

Figure 5.13 shows the cross-section of the beam at midspan. In arranging the reinforcing bars, one should satisfy the minimum cover requirements explained in Section 4.3. The required clear cover for beams is 1.5 in. (38 mm).

The stirrups shown in Figure 5.13 should be designed to satisfy the shear requirements of the beam explained in Chapter 6. Two bars called *hangers* are placed on the compression side to support the stirrups. Reinforcement detailing provisions and bar development length requirements are discussed in Chapter 10.

5.6 ONE-WAY SLABS

One-way slabs are concrete structural floor panels for which the ratio of the long span to the short span equals or exceeds a value of 2.0. When this ratio is less than 2.0, the floor panel becomes a two-way slab or plate, as discussed in Chapter 11. A one-way slab is designed as a singly reinforced 12-in. (304.8-mm) wide beam strip using the same design and analysis procedure discussed earlier for singly reinforced beams. Figure 5.14 shows a one-way slab floor system.

Loading for slabs is normally specified in pounds per square foot (psf). One has to distribute the reinforcement over the 12-in. strip and specify the center-to-center spacing of the reinforcing bars. In slab design, a thickness is normally assumed, and the reinforcement is calculated using a trial lever arm $(d - a/2)$ or $0.9d$.

Supported slabs, that is, slabs not on grade, do not normally require shear reinforcement for typical loads. Transverse reinforcement has to be provided perpendicular to the direction of bending in order to resist shrinkage and temperature stresses. Shrinkage and temperature reinforcement should not be less than 0.002 times the gross area for grade 40 bars and 0.0018 for grade 60 steel and welded wire fabric. For structural slabs and footings of uniform thickness, the maximum spacing of the tension reinforcement should not exceed five times the thickness, or 18 in.

5.6.1 Example 5.4: Design of a One-way Slab for Flexure

A one-way single-span reinforced concrete slab has a simple span of 10 ft (3.05 m) and carries a live load of 140 psf (5.75 kPa) and a dead load of 20 psf (0.96 kPa) in addition to its self-weight. Design the slab and the size and spacing of the reinforcement at midspan assuming a simple support

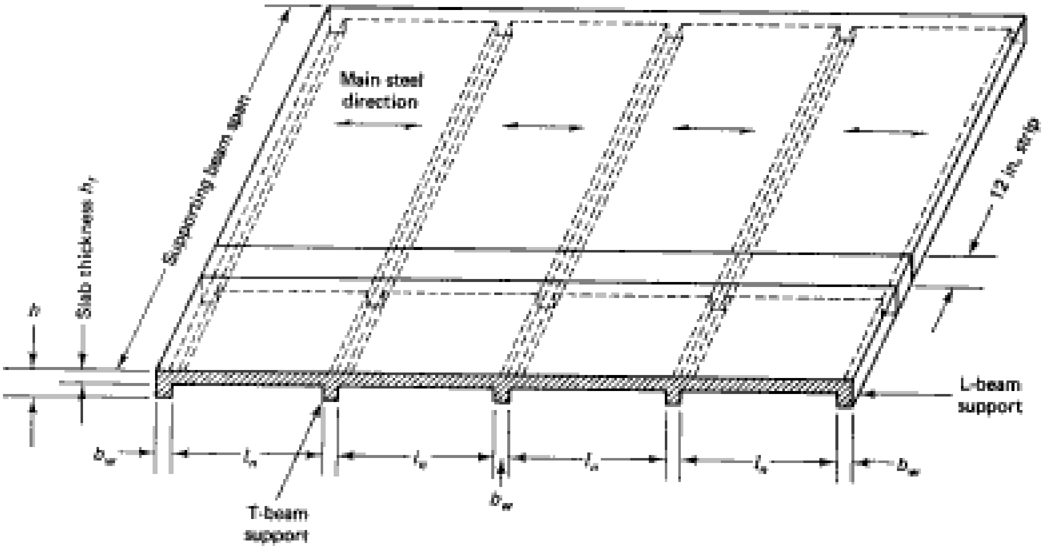


Figure 5.14 Isometric view of four-span continuous one-way-slab floor system.

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.4 MPa)}$$
$$\text{Minimum thickness for deflection} = \frac{l}{20}$$

Solution: Minimum depth for deflection, $h = l/20 = 10 \times 12/20 = 6$ in. (152.4 mm) Assume for flexure an effective depth $d = 5$ in. (127 mm).

$$\text{self-weight of a 12-in. strip} = \frac{6 \times 12}{144} \times 150 = 75 \text{ lb/ft (3.59 kN/m)}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{factored external load } w_u = 1.2(20 + 75) + 1.6 \times 140 = 338 \text{ lb/ft}$$
$$\text{factored external moment } M_u = \frac{338 \times 10^2}{8} \times 12 \text{ in.-lb}$$
$$= 50{,}700 \text{ in.-lb (5.7 N-m)}$$
$$\text{required nominal moment strength } M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{50{,}700}{0.90} = 56{,}334 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Assume moment arm $jd = 0.90\,d = 0.9 \times 5.0 = 4.5$ in.

$$M_n = Tjd = A_s f_y jd$$
$$\text{or} \quad 56{,}334 = A_s \times 60{,}000 \times 4.5$$
$$A_s = 0.21 \text{ in.}^2\text{/12 in. strip}$$
$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{0.21 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12} = 0.31 \text{ in.}$$

Recalculate A_s using the correct moment arm:

$$\ldots 0{,}000\left(5 - \frac{0.31}{2}\right)$$

to give $A_s = 0.194$ in.^{2} per 12-in. slab strip. Use #4 bars at 12-in. center-to-center spacing. Check strain ϵ_t:

$$c = a/\beta_1 = \frac{0.31}{0.85} = 0.37 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d-c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{5-0.37}{0.37}\right) = 0.038 \text{ in./in.} \gg 0.005 \text{ in./in.}$$

hence, section is tension-controlled, $\phi = 0.90$.

Check Minimum Reinforcement

$$\text{Actual } \rho = \frac{0.20}{5.0 \times 12} = 0.0033$$

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{200}{f_y} = \frac{200}{60{,}000} = 0.0033 \text{ (controls)}$$

$$\frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} = \frac{3\sqrt{4{,}000}}{60{,}000} = 0.0031$$

Accept the design.

Shrinkage and temperature reinforcement:

$$\text{Min. } A_s = 0.0018\,bh$$

$$\text{area of steel} = 0.0018 \times 6 \times 12 = 0.13 \text{ in.}^2 = \text{No. 4 bars at 18 in. c-c}$$

Provide No. 4 bars at 18 in. center to center (maximum allowable spacing $= 5h = 5 \times 6 = 30$ in. for temperature and shrinkage).

Hence this design can be adopted with slab thickness $h = 6$ in. (152.4 mm) and effective depth $d = 6.0 - (0.75 + 0.25) = 5$ in. (127.0 mm) to satisfy the $\frac{3}{4}$-in. minimum concrete cover requirement. Use for main reinforcement No. 4 bars at 12 in. center to center and for temperature reinforcement No. 4 bars at 18 in. center to center, as shown in Figure 5.15.

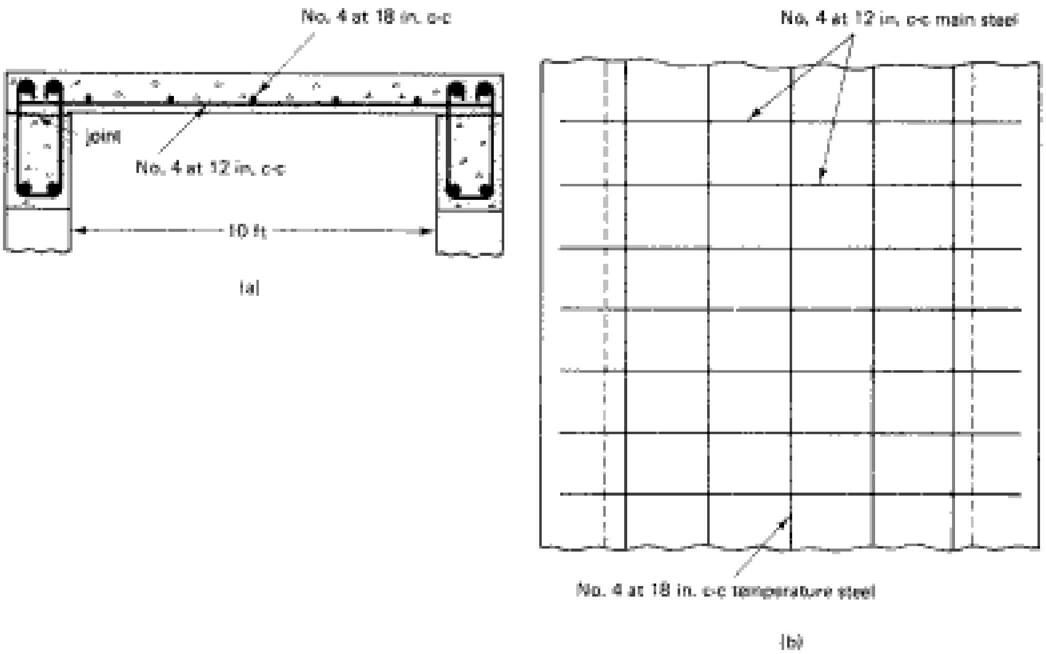


Figure 5.15 Reinforcement details of the one-way slab in Ex. 5.4: (a) sectional elevation; (b) reinforcement plan.

5.7 DOUBLY REINFORCED SECTIONS

Doubly reinforced sections contain reinforcement both at the tension and at the compression face, usually at the support section only. They become necessary when either architectural limitations restrict the beam web depth at midspan, or the midspan section dimensions are not adequate to carry the support negative moment even when the tensile steel at the support is sufficiently increased. In such cases, about one-third to one-half of the bottom bars at midspan are extended and well anchored at the supports to act as compression reinforcement. The bar development length has to be well established and the compressive and tensile steel at the support section well tied with closed stirrups to prevent buckling of the compressive bars at the support.

In analysis or design of beams with compression reinforcement A'_s, the analysis is so divided that the section is theoretically split into two parts, as shown in Figure 5.16. The two parts of the solution comprise (1) the singly reinforced part involving the equivalent rectangular block, as discussed in Section 5.2, with the area of tension reinforcement being $(A_s - A'_s)$; and (2) the two areas of equivalent steel A'_s at both the tension and compression sides to form the couple T_2 and C_2 as the second part of the solution.

It can be seen from Figure 5.16 that the total nominal resisting moment $M_n = M_{n1} + M_{n2}$, that is, the summation of the moments for parts 1 and 2 of the solution.

Part 1. The tension force $T_1 = A_{s1}f_y = C_1$. But $A_{s1} = (A_s - A'_s)$ since equilibrium requires that A_{s2} at the tension side be balanced by an equivalent A'_s at the compression side. Hence the nominal resisting moment

$$M_{n1} = A_{s1}f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad M_{n1} = (A_s - A'_s)f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \qquad (5.14a)$$

where

$$a = \frac{A_{s1}f_y}{0.85f'_c b} = \frac{(A_s - A'_s)f_y}{0.85f'_c b}$$

Part 2.

$$A'_s = A_{s2} = (A_s - A_{s1})$$

$$T_2 = C_2 = A_{s2}f_y$$

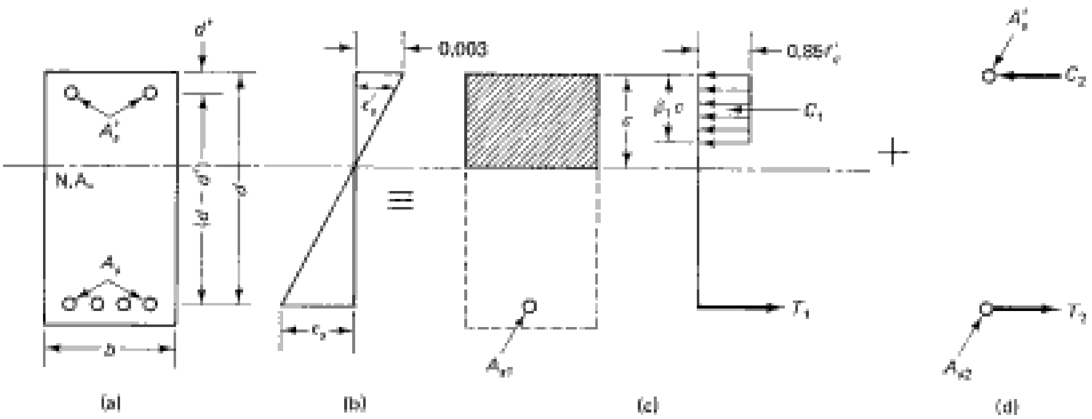


Figure 5.16 Doubly reinforced beam design: (a) cross-section; (b) strains; (c) part I of the solution, singly reinforced part; (d) part 2 of the solution, contribution of compression reinforcement.

Taking the moment about the tension reinforcement, we have

$$M_{n2} = A_{s2}f_y(d - d') \tag{5.14b}$$

Adding the moments for parts 1 and 2 yields

$$M_n = M_{n1} + M_{n2} = (A_s - A'_s)f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f_y(d - d') \tag{5.15a}$$

The design moment strength ϕM_n must be equal to or greater than the external factored moment M_u such that

$$M_u = \phi\left[(A_s - A'_s)f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f_y(d - d')\right] \tag{5.15b}$$

This equation is valid *only* if A'_s yields. Otherwise, the beam has to be treated as a singly reinforced beam neglecting the compression steel, or one has to find the actual stress f'_s in the compression reinforcement A'_s and use the actual force in the moment equilibrium equation.

Strain-Compatibility Check. It is always necessary to verify that the strains across the depth of the section follow the linear distribution indicated in Fig. 5.16. In other words, a check is necessary to ensure that strains are compatible across the depth at the strength design levels. Such a verification is called a *strain-compatibility check.*

In order to ensure tension-controlled behavior, the ratio $c/d_t \leq 0.375$, preferably 0.30. In this manner, the strain ε_t in the tensile reinforcement is greater than 0.005. Find $\varepsilon_t = 0.003\ (d/c - 1)$. Once the strain ε_t is verified to be higher than 0.005, say 0.006–0.008, the nominal moment strength is computed as in Equation 5.22.

For A'_s to yield, the strain ϵ'_s in the compression steel should be greater than or equal to the yield strain of reinforcing steel, which is f_y/E_s. The strain ϵ'_s can be calculated from similar triangles. Referring to Fig. 5.16b,

$$\epsilon'_s = \frac{0.003(c - d')}{c}$$

or

$$\epsilon'_s = 0.003\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right)$$

Since

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{(A_s - A'_s)f_y}{\beta_1 \times 0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{(\rho - \rho')f_y d}{\beta_1 \times 0.85 f'_c}$$

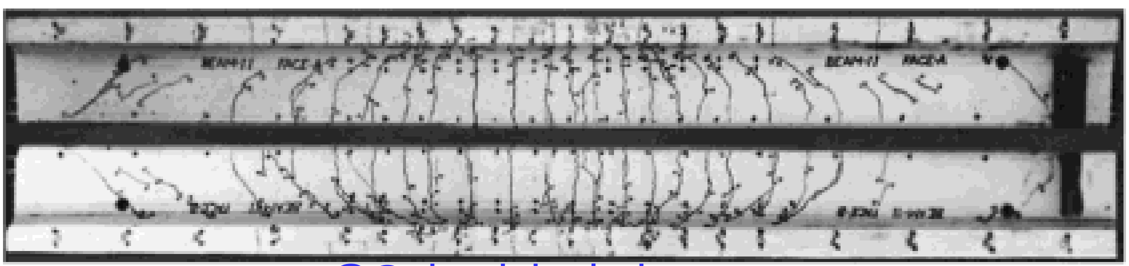


Photo 5.10 Flexural cracking in heavily reinforced beam. (Tests by Nawy, Potyondy, et al.)

$$\epsilon'_s = 0.003\left[1 - \frac{0.85\beta_1 f'_c d'}{(\rho - \rho')d f_y}\right] \tag{5.16}$$

As mentioned earlier, for compression steel to yield, the following condition must be satisfied:

$$\epsilon'_s \ge \frac{f_y}{E_s} \quad \text{or} \quad \epsilon'_s \ge \frac{f_y}{29 \times 10^6}$$

The compression steel yields if

$$0.003\left[1 - \frac{0.85\beta_1 f'_c}{(\rho - \rho')f_y}\frac{d'}{d}\right] \ge \frac{f_y}{29 \times 10^6}$$

or

$$-\frac{0.85\beta_1 f'_c d'}{(\rho - \rho')f_y d} \ge \frac{f_y - 87{,}000}{87{,}000} \tag{5.17}$$

or

$$\rho - \rho' \ge \frac{0.85\beta_1 f'_c d'}{f_y d}\,\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 - f_y} \tag{5.18}$$

If ϵ'_s is less than ϵ_y the stress in the compression steel, f'_s, can be calculated as

$$f'_s = E_s \epsilon'_s = 29 \times 10^6 \epsilon'_s \tag{5.19}$$

Using Eqs. 5.16 and 5.19 yields

$$f'_s = 29 \times 10^6 \times 0.003\left[1 - \frac{0.85\beta_1 f'_c d'}{(\rho - \rho')f_y d}\right] \tag{5.20}$$

This value of f'_s can be used as a first approximation in the strain-compatibility check.

In this discussion, adjustment for the concrete area replaced by the compression reinforcement is disregarded as being insignificant for practical design purposes. Note that in cases where the compression reinforcement A'_s did not yield the depth of the rectangular compressive block should be calculated using the actual stress in the compression steel from the calculated strain value ϵ'_s at the compression reinforcement level so that

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s}{0.85 f'_c b} \tag{5.21}$$

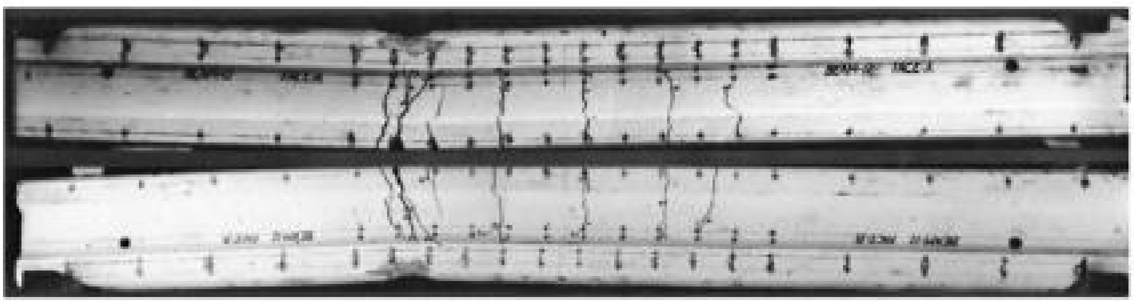


Photo 5.11 Flexural cracking in doubly reinforced beam. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

Equation 5.20 can be used for the f'_s value in the first trial in order to obtain an "a" value and hence the first trial neutral axis depth value c. Once c is known, ϵ'_s can be evaluated from similar triangles in Figure 5.16b, thereby obtaining the first approximation of f'_s to be used in recalculating a more refined value. More than one or two additional trials for calculating f'_s are not justified since undue refinement has negligible practical effect on the true value of the nominal moment strength M_n.

The nominal moment strength in Eq. 5.15 becomes in this case

$$M_n = (A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s)\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s (d - d') \tag{5.22}$$

The flowchart in Figure 5.17 can be used for the sequence of calculations in the analysis of doubly reinforced beams. Examples 5.5 and 5.6 illustrate the analysis and design of doubly reinforced sections.

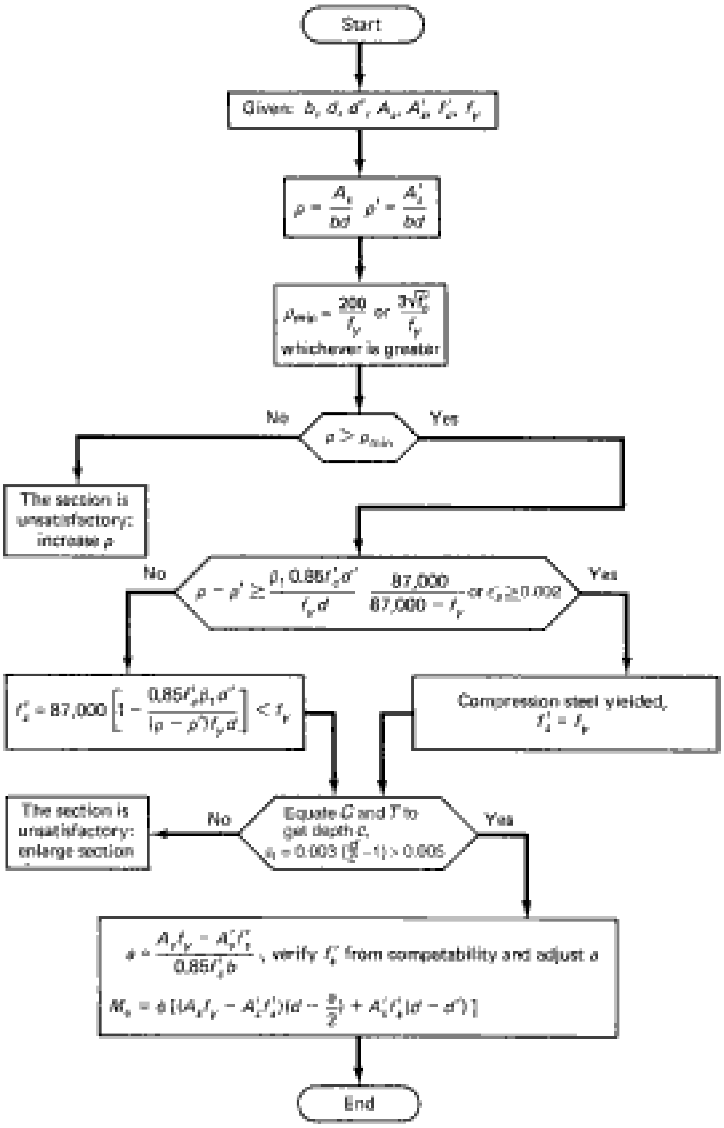


Figure 5.17 Flowchart for the analysis of doubly reinforced rectangular beam.

5.7.1 Example 5.5: Analysis of a Doubly Reinforced Beam for Flexure

Calculate the nominal moment strength M_n of the doubly reinforced section shown in Figure 5.18. Given:

$f'_c = 5000$ psi (34.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete

$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (413.4 MPa)

$d' = 2.5$ in. (64 mm)

$d_t = 21$ in.

$A_s = 4$ No. 10 bars

$A'_s = 2$ No. 7 bars

Solution:

$$A_s = 5.08 \text{ in.}^2, \quad \rho = \frac{A_s}{bd} = \frac{5.08}{14 \times 21} = 0.0173$$

$$A'_s = 1.2 \text{ in.}^2, \quad \rho' = \frac{A'_s}{bd} = \frac{1.2}{14 \times 21} = 0.0041$$

$$A_s - A'_s = A_{s1} = 5.08 - 1.2 = 3.88 \text{ in.}^2$$

$(\rho - \rho') = 0.0173 - 0.0041 = 0.0132$,

to check if the compression steel yielded, using Eq. 5.18.

Alternatively, assume that compression steel yielded, to be subsequently verified.

To check whether the compression steel has yielded, use Eq. 5.18:

$$\rho - \rho' \geq \frac{0.85\beta_1 f'_c d'}{f_y d} \frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 - f_y}$$

$$\geq \frac{0.85 \times 0.80 \times 5000 \times 2.5}{60{,}000 \times 21} \frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 - 60{,}000}$$

$$\geq 0.0217$$

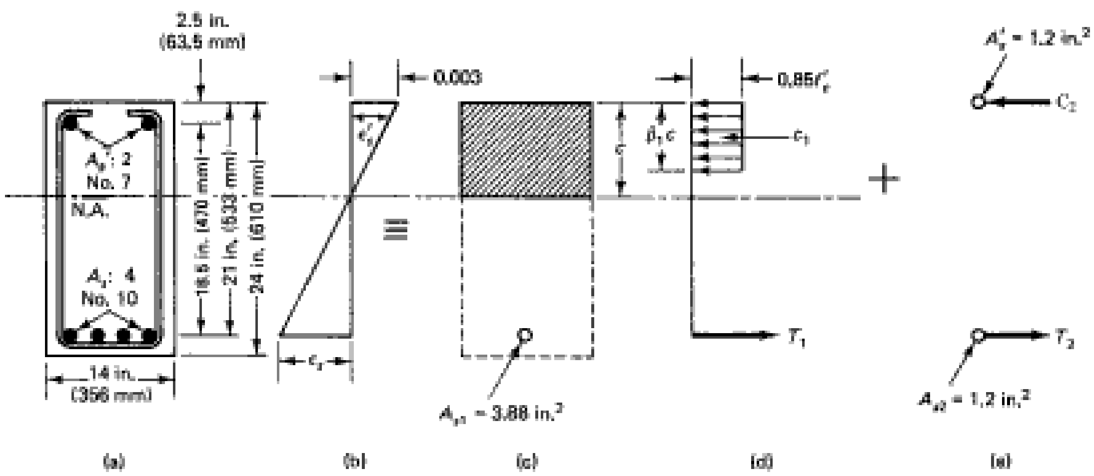


Figure 5.18 Doubly reinforced cross-section geometry and stress and strain distribution: (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) part 1 section; (d) part 1 forces; (e) part 2 forces.

The actual $(\rho - \rho') = 0.0132 < 0.0217$. Therefore, the compression steel did not yield and f'_s is less than f_y. For the first trial in cases where the compression steel did not yield

$$f'_s = 87{,}000\left[1 - \frac{0.85\beta_1 f'_c}{(\rho - \rho')f_y}\frac{d'}{d}\right]$$

$$= 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{0.85 \times 0.80 \times 5000}{0.0132 \times 60{,}000} \times \frac{2.5}{21}\right) = 42{,}538 \text{ psi}$$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{5.08 \times 60{,}000 - 1.2 \times 42{,}538}{0.85 \times 5000 \times 14} = 4.26 \text{ in. (108 mm)}$$

$$\text{neutral-axis depth } c = \frac{4.26}{0.80} = 5.325 \text{ in.}$$

By trial and adjustment, from similar triangles in Fig. 5.18b, the strain ϵ'_s at the compression steel level = 0.00159 in./in., giving $f'_s = 0.00159 \times 29 \times 10^6 = 46{,}110$ psi. An additional trial cycle for a more refined value of $a = 4.21$ in.; hence $c = 5.26$ in. gives $f'_s = 45{,}650$ psi (315 kN).

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d - c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{21 - 5.26}{5.26}\right) = 0.009 \gg 0.005 \text{ in./in.}$$

hence, tensile steel reinforcement yielded, tension-controlled, $\phi = 0.90$.

$$M_n = (A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s)\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s(d - d')$$

$$= [5.08 \times 60{,}000 - 1.2 \times 45{,}650]\left(21.0 - \frac{4.21}{2}\right)$$

$$+ 1.2 \times 45{,}650(21.0 - 2.5) = 5{,}737{,}558 \text{ in.-lb (648 kN-m)}$$

From Equation 5.12a,

$$\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right]$$

$$= 0.65 + 0.25\left(\frac{1}{5.26/21} - \frac{5}{3}\right)$$

$$= 1.23 > 0.90, \text{ hence } \phi = 0.90$$

$$M_u = \phi M_n = 5{,}737{,}558 \times 0.9 = 5{,}163{,}802 \text{ in.-lb (583 kN-m)}$$

Note that if $\epsilon_t < 0.005$, compute ϕ from Eq. 5.11a or 5.12a, find f_s for the tension reinforcement and multiply the moment

$$M_n = (A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s)\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s(d - d')$$

by the new ϕ value to get the design moment M_u.

5.7.2 Trial-and-Adjustment Procedure for the Design of Doubly Reinforced Sections for Flexure

1. *Midspan section.* The trial-and-adjustment procedure described in Section 5.5 is followed in order to design the section at midspan if it is a rectangular section; otherwise, follow the same procedure as that for the design of T beams and L beams (Section 5.10).
2. *Support section.* The width b and the effective depth d are already known from part 1 together with the value of the external negative factored moment M_u.
   (a) Find the strength M_{n1} of a singly reinforced section using the already established b and d dimensions of the section at midspan and a reinforcement area to give $\epsilon_t \geq 0.005$.

(b) From step (a), find $M_{n2} = M_n - M_{n1}$ and determine the resulting $A_{s2} = A'_s$. The total steel area at the tension side would be $A_s = A_{s1} + A'_s$.
(c) *Alternatively*, determine how many bars are extended from the midspan to the support to give the A'_s to be used in calculating M_{n2}.
(d) From step (c), find the value of $M_{n1} = M_n - M_{n2}$. Calculate A_{s1} for a singly reinforced beam as the first part of the solution. Then determine total $A_s = A_{s1} + A'_s$. Verify that A_{s1} does not give $\epsilon_t < 0.005$ if it is revised in the solution.
(e) Check for the compatibility of strain in both alternatives to verify whether the compression steel yielded or not and use the corresponding stress in the steel for calculating the forces and moments.
(f) Check for satisfactory minimum reinforcement requirements.
(g) Select the appropriate bar sizes.

If it is necessary to design a doubly reinforced rectangular precast continuous beam, alternative method 2(a) or 2(b) of Section 5.5 for singly reinforced beams can be followed. An assumption is made of an R value higher than the R value that is used for singly reinforced beams for selection of the first trial section. Since it is not advisable to use an A'_s value larger than $\frac{1}{4}A_s$ to $\frac{1}{3}A_s$, assume that $R' \simeq 1.3R$ to $1.5R$.

5.7.3 Example 5.6: Design of a Doubly Reinforced Beam for Flexure

A doubly reinforced concrete beam section has a maximum effective depth $d = 25$ in. (635 mm) and is subjected to a total factored moment $M_u = 9.4 \times 10^6$ in.-lb (1062 kN-m), including its self-weight. Design the section and select the appropriate reinforcement at the tension and the compression faces to carry the required load. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.58 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.4 \text{ MPa})$$

$$\text{Minimum effective cover } d' = 2.5 \text{ in. } (63.5 \text{ mm})$$

Solution: Assume $b = \frac{1}{2}h \simeq 14$ in.; also assume $c = 0.56\, c_b$ for the singly-reinforced part of the solution, where c_b = neutral axis depth for balanced strain ($\simeq 0.005$)

$$d_t = 25 + \frac{9}{16} \simeq 25.5 \text{ in.}; \quad (d - d') = 25 - 2.5 = 22.5 \text{ in.}$$

Alternatively, assume $c/d_t \simeq 0.32$

$$\text{hence, } c = 0.32 \times 25.5 = 8.16 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 8.16 = 6.94 \text{ in.}$$

Use $a = 6.50$ in. as sufficiently accurate for computing A_{s1}

$$C = 0.85 f'_c ba = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 14 \times 6.94 = 330{,}344 \text{ lb} = T \text{ for the singly-reinforced part of the solution}$$

$$T = A_{s1} f_y = 60{,}000\, A_{s1}$$

$$A_{s1} = 5.50 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$M_{n1} = A_{s1} f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 5.50 \times 60{,}000 \left(25 - \frac{6.94}{2}\right) = 7{,}104{,}900 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{required } M_n = \frac{9.4 \times 10^6}{0.90} = 10.44 \times 10^6 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$> M_{n1}, \text{ hence a doubly-reinforced section is needed.}$$

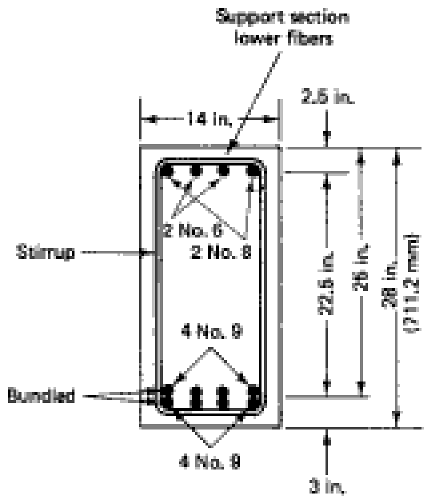


Figure 5.19 Reinforcing details of the doubly reinforced beam in Ex. 5.6.

$$M_{n2} = 10{,}440{,}000 - 7{,}104{,}900 = 3{,}335{,}100$$

$$\epsilon'_s = 0.003\left(\frac{c - d'}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{8.16 - 2.5}{8.16}\right) = 0.00208 \text{ in./in.}$$

$$\epsilon_y = \frac{f_y}{E_s} = \frac{60{,}000}{29 \times 10^6} = 0.00207 < \epsilon'_s,$$

hence the compression steel yielded.

Note that in cases where the strain is *less* than 0.005, namely, the section is in the transition zone of Fig. 5.5, a value of ϕ lower than 0.90 for flexure has to be used for the final design moment, with a strain not less than 0.004 as a limit.

For the second part of the solution:

$$M_{n2} = 3{,}335{,}100 = A'_s \times f'_s(d - d')$$

$$\text{or} \qquad 3{,}335{,}100 = A'_s \times 60{,}000(25 - 2.5)$$

$$A'_s = \frac{3{,}335{,}100}{60{,}000 \times 22.5} = 2.47 \text{ in.}^2$$

Total tension steel = 5.50 + 2.47 = 7.97 in.^{2}

Use eight #9 bars in two layers = 8.00 in.^{2} and 2 No. 6 and 2 No. 8 bars as compression steel = 2.46 in.^{2}

Alternate Check of Stress in the Compression Reinforcement:

$$\rho = \frac{8.00}{14 \times 25} = 0.0230$$

$$\rho' = \frac{2.46}{14 \times 25} = 0.0070$$

Actual $\rho - \rho' = 0.0230 - 0.0070 = 0.0160$

$$(\rho - \rho') = \frac{0.85 f'_c \beta_1 d'}{f_y d_t} \times \frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 - f_y}$$

$$= \frac{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 0.85 \times 2.5}{60{,}000 \times 25.5} \times \frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 - 60{,}000} = 0.0152$$

Actual $(\rho - \rho') > 0.0152$, hence, compression reinforcement yielded, $f'_s = f_y$

$$a = \frac{(A_s - A'_s)f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{(8.0 - 2.46) \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4000 \times 14} = 6.98 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = a/\beta_1 = \frac{6.98}{0.85} = 8.21 \text{ in.}$$

$$c/d_t = \frac{8.21}{25.5} = 0.321 < 0.375, \text{ hence } \phi = 0.90 \text{ to give the required design moment } M_u = 9.4 \times 10^6 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

Alternatively,

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{25.5 - 7.92}{7.92}\right) = 0.007 > 0.005 \text{ in./in.}$$

hence, the section is tension-controlled and the tensile-side reinforcement ($A_s = A_{s1} + A'_s$) has yielded, $\phi = 0.90$.

Check for Minimum Reinforcement

$$\rho_{\min} = \frac{200}{f_y} = \frac{200}{60{,}000} = 0.0033 < \text{actual } \rho$$

or

$$\rho_{\min} = \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} = \frac{3\sqrt{4{,}000}}{60{,}000} = 0.0031 < \text{actual } \rho \quad \text{O.K.}$$

hence, adopt Section.

5.8 NONRECTANGULAR SECTIONS

T beams and L beams are the most commonly used flanged sections. Because slabs are cast monolithically with the beams as shown in Figure 5.20, additional stiffness or strength is added to the rectangular beam section from participation of the slab. Based on extensive tests and longstanding engineering practice, a segment of the slab can be considered to act as a monolithic part of the beam across the beam flange. In the case of composite sections, if the beam and slab are continuously shored during construction

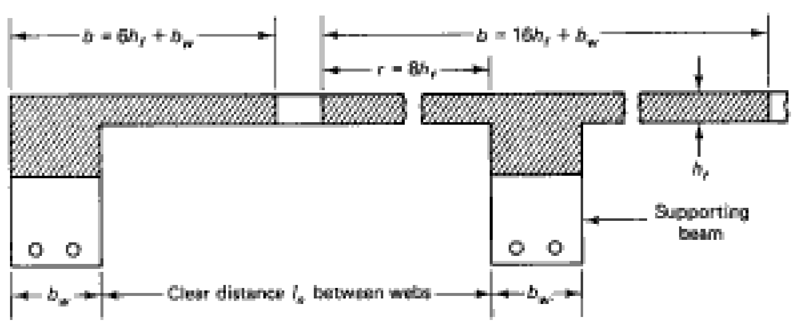


Figure 5.20 T- and L-beams as part of a slab beam floor system (cross-section at beam midspan).

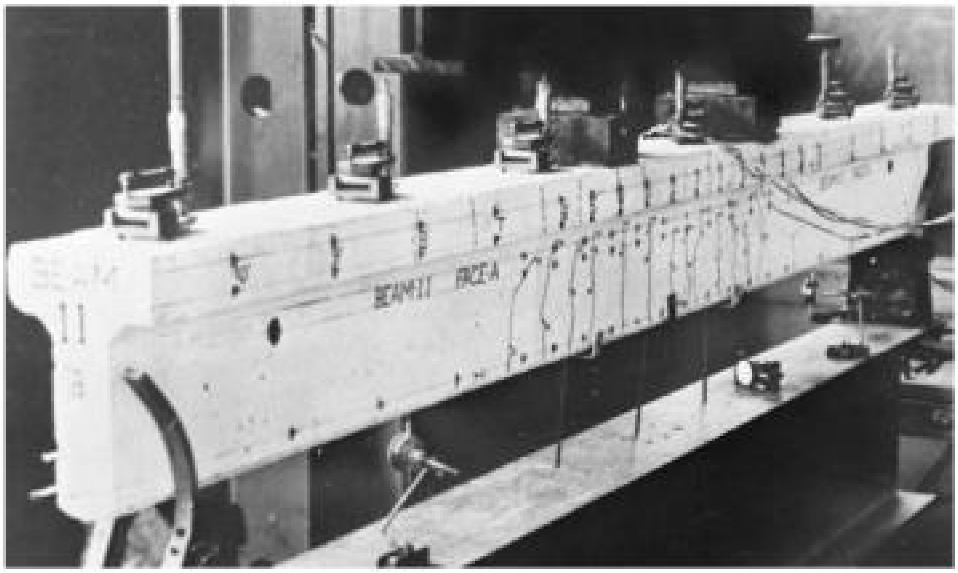


Photo 5.12 Structural behavior of simply supported prestressed flanged beam. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

(supported continuously), the slab and beam can be assumed to act together in supporting all loads, including their self-weight. However, if the beam is not shored, the beam must carry its weight plus the weight of the slab while it hardens. After the slab has hardened, the two together will support the additional loads.

The flange width accepted for inclusion with the beam in forming the flanged section has to satisfy the following requirements:

T Beams:

Effective overhang $\not> 8h_f$
Overhang width on each side $\not> \frac{1}{2}$the clear distance to the face of the next web ($\not> \frac{1}{2}l_n$)
Flange width $b \not> \frac{1}{4}$of supporting beam span $= \frac{1}{4}\ L$

Spandrel or Edge Beams (beams with a slab on one side only):

The effective overhang $\not> 6h_f$ nor $\not> \frac{1}{2}$ the clear distance to the next web ($\not> \frac{1}{2}l_n$) nor $\frac{1}{12}$ the span length of the beam.
Beams with overhang on one side are called *L-beams.*

5.9 ANALYSIS OF T- AND L-BEAMS

5.9.1 General Principles

Flanged beams are considered primarily for use as sections at midspans, as shown in Figure 5.20. This is because the flange is in compression at midspan and can contribute to the moment strength of the midspan section. At the support, the flange is in tension; consequently, it is disregarded in the flexural strength computations of the support section. In other words, the support section would be an inverted doubly reinforced section having the compressive steel A'_s at the bottom fibers and tensile steel A_s at the top fibers. Figure 5.21 shows an elevation of a continuous beam with sections taken at midspan and at the supports to illustrate this discussion.

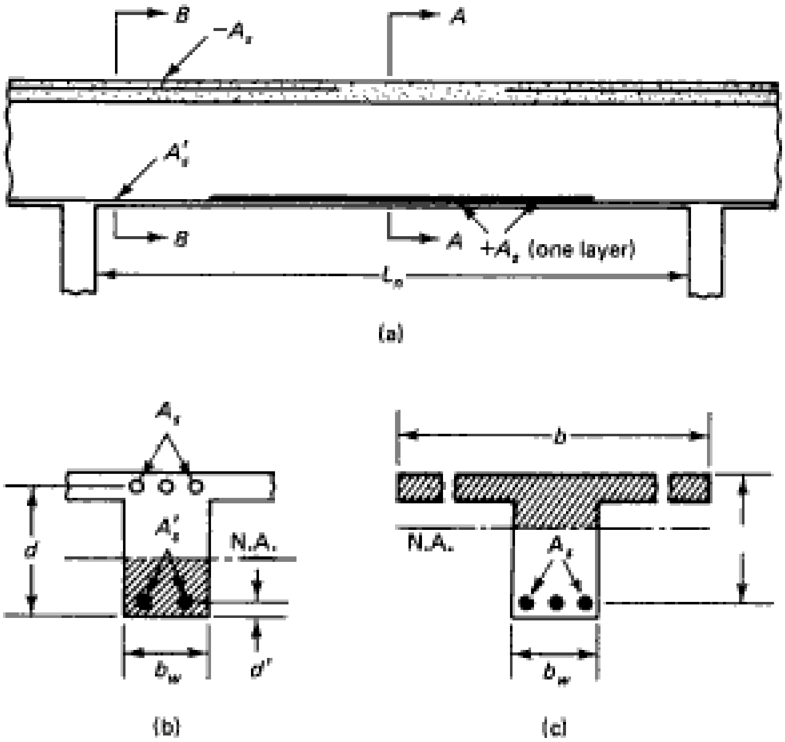


Figure 5.21 Elevation and sections of a monolithic continuous beam: (a) beam elevation; (b) support section *B–B* (inverted doubly reinforced beam); (c) midspan section *A–A* (real T-beam).

The basic principles used for the design of rectangular beams are also valid for the flanged beams. The major difference between the rectangular and flanged sections is in the calculation of compressive force C_c. Depending on the depth of the neutral axis, c, the following cases can be identified.

Case 1: Depth of Neutral Axis c Less than Flange Thickness h_f (Figure 5.22). This case can be treated similarly to the standard rectangular section provided that the depth a of the equivalent rectangular block is less than the flange thickness. The flange width b of the compression side *should be used* as the beam width in the analysis.

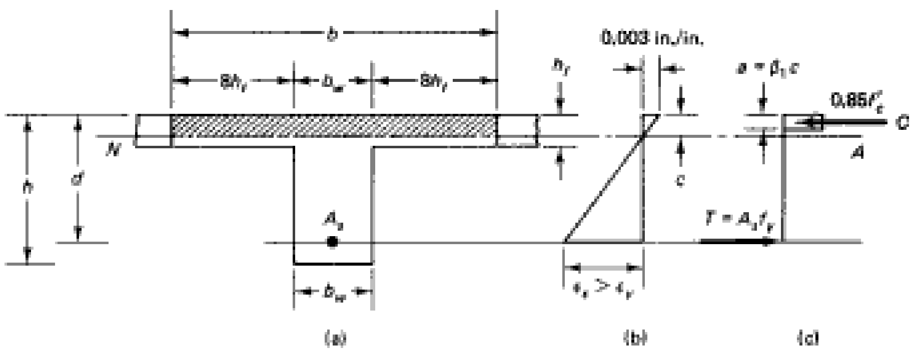


Figure 5.22 T-beam section with neutral axis within the flange ($c < h_f$): (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

Referring to Figure 5.22 for force equilibrium, where C is equal to T, gives

$$0.85f'_c ba = A_s f_y \quad \text{or} \quad a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85f'_c b}$$

The nominal moment strength would thus be $M_n = A_s f_y\,(d - a/2)$. This expression is the same as that of Eq. 5.4 for the rectangular section. Since the force contribution of concrete in the tension zone is neglected, it does not matter whether part of the flange is in the tension zone.

Case 2: Depth of Neutral Axis c Larger than Flange Thickness h_f (Figure 5.23). In this case, $c > h_f$, the depth of the equivalent rectangular stress block a could be smaller or larger than the flange thickness h_f. If c is greater than h_f and a is less than h_f, the beam could still be considered as a rectangular beam for design purposes. Hence the design procedure explained for case 1 is applicable to this case.

If both c and a are greater than h_f, the section has to be considered as a T-section. This type of T-beam ($a > h_f$) can be treated in a manner similar to that for a doubly reinforced rectangular cross section (Figure 5.23). The contribution of the flange overhang compressive force is considered analogous to the contribution of imaginary compressive reinforcement. In Figure 5.23, the compressive force C_n is equal to the average concrete strength f'_c multiplied by the cross-sectional area of the flange overhangs.

Thus $C_n = 2r'h_f \times 0.85f'_c = 0.85f'_c\,(b - b_w)h_f$, where r' is the overhang length on each side of the web. The compressive force C_n is *equated* to a tensile force T_n for equilibrium such that $T_n = (A_{sf} \times f_y)$, where A_{sf} is an imaginary compressive steel area whose force capacity is equivalent to the force capacity of the compression flange overhang. Consequently, an equivalent area A_{sf} of compression reinforcement to develop the overhang flanges would have a value of

$$A_{sf} = \frac{0.85f'_c(b - b_w)h_f}{f_y} \tag{5.23}$$

For a beam to be considered as a *real* T-beam, the tension force $A_s f_y$ generated by the steel should be greater than the compression force capacity of the total flange area $0.85\,f'_c b h_f$. Hence

$$a = \frac{A_{sf} f_y}{0.85f'_c b} > h_f \tag{5.24a}$$

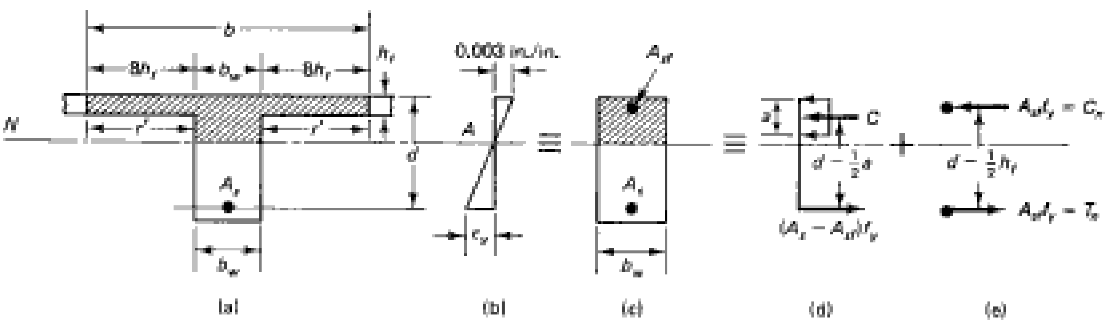


Figure 5.23 Stress and strain distribution in flanged sections design (T-beam transfer): (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) transformed section; (d) part-1 forces; (e) part-2 forces.

or

$$h_f < (1.18\bar{\omega}d = a) \tag{5.24b}$$

where $\bar{\omega} = (A_s/bd)(f_y/f'_c)$.

The concrete stress block is, in reality, parabolic and extends to the neutral-axis depth c. Consequently, from a theoretical viewpoint, if one were using a parabolic stress block, Eq. 5.24b for a T-beam can also be written as

$$h_f < \frac{1.18\bar{\omega}d}{\beta_1} \tag{5.24c}$$

In order to ensure tension-controlled behavior, the ratio $c/d_t \leq 0.375$, and preferably less, such as a value of 0.30. In this manner, the strain ε_t in the tensile reinforcement is greater than 0.005 in./in. Find $\varepsilon_t = 0.003\ (d_t/c - 1)$. Once the strain ε_t is verified to be higher than 0.005, the nominal moment strength is computed as in Equation 5.27.

A strain-compatibility check is not needed since the imaginary steel area A_{sf} is assumed to yield in all cases. To satisfy the requirement of minimum reinforcement so that the beam does not behave as nonreinforced, for positive reinforcement,

$$\rho_w = \frac{A_s}{b_w d} \geq \frac{200}{f_y} \geq \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} \tag{5.25a}$$

Photo 5.13 The Trump Towers under construction, Fifth Avenue, New York City. (Courtesy of Concrete Industry Board.)

For negative reinforcement and T sections with flanges in tension,

$$\rho_{min} \geq \frac{6\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} \geq \frac{200}{f_y} \tag{5.25b}$$

It is to be noted that b_w is used in Eq. 5.25(a) instead of width b, which is used in the case of singly or doubly reinforced beams.

As in the case of design and analysis of doubly reinforced sections, the reinforcement at the tension side is considered to be composed of two areas: A_{s1} to balance the rectangular block compressive force on area $b_w a$, and A_{s2} to balance the imaginary steel area A_{sf}. Consequently, the total nominal moment strength for parts 1 and 2 of the solution is

$$M_n = M_{n1} + M_{n2} \tag{5.26a}$$

$$M_{n1} = A_{s1} f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = (A_s - A_{sf}) f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \tag{5.26b}$$

$$M_{n2} = A_{s2} f_y \left(d - \frac{h_f}{2}\right) = A_{sf} f_y \left(d - \frac{h_f}{2}\right) \tag{5.26c}$$

The design moment strength ϕM_n, which has to be at least equal to the external factored moment M_u, becomes

$$M_u = \phi M_n = \phi \left[(A_s - A_{sf}) f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A_{sf} f_y \left(d - \frac{h_f}{2}\right) \right] \tag{5.27}$$

The flowchart in Figure 5.24 presents the sequence of calculations for the analysis of the T-beam. The following analysis example illustrates the nominal moment strength calculations for a typical precast T beam.

5.9.2 Example 5.7: Analysis of a T Beam for Moment Capacity

Calculate the nominal moment strength and the design ultimate moment of the precast T-beam shown in Figure 5.25 if the beam span is 30 ft (9.14 m). Given:

$f'_c = 4000$ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete

$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (413.4 MPa)

Reinforcement area at the tension side:

(a) $A_s = 4.0$ in.^{2} (2580 mm^2)
(b) $A_s = 6.0$ in.^{2} (3870 mm^2)

Solution (a): $A_s = 4.0$ in.^{2}

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{200}{60{,}000} = 0.0033$$

$$\rho_w = \frac{A_s}{b_w d} = \frac{4.0}{10 \times 18} = 0.022 > \rho_{min} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$\overline{\omega} = \frac{A_s}{bd}\frac{f_y}{f'_c} = \frac{4.0}{40 \times 18}\left(\frac{60{,}000}{4{,}000}\right) = 0.083$$

$$c = \frac{1.18\overline{\omega}\, d}{\beta_1} = \frac{1.18 \times 0.083 \times 18}{0.85} = 2.08 \text{ in.}$$

$$< (h_f = 2.5 \text{ in.})$$

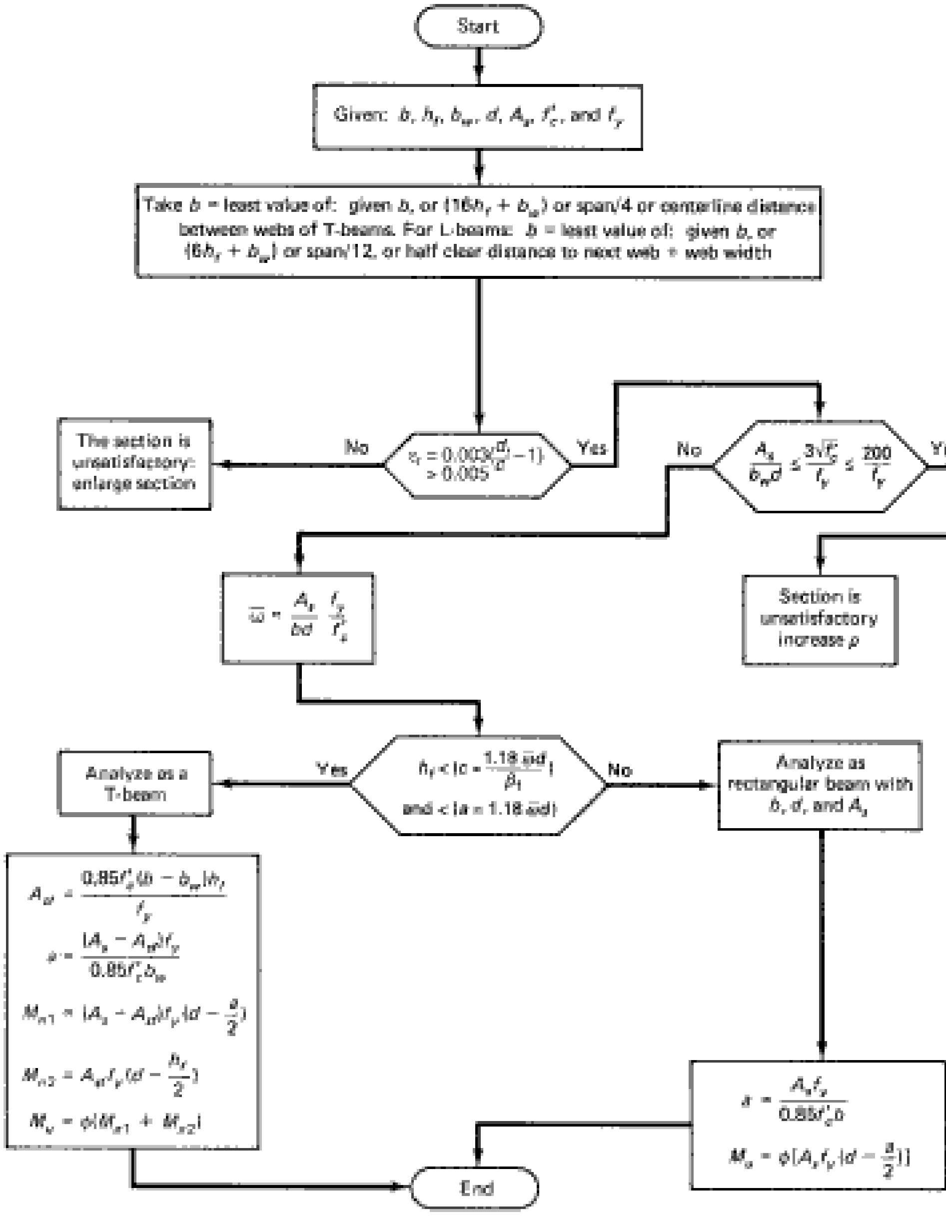


Figure 5.24 Flowchart for the analysis of T- and L-beams.

Therefore, the beam can be analyzed as a rectangular beam using b, d, and A_s.

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{4.0 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 40} = 1.765 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{1.765}{\beta_1} = \frac{1.765}{0.85} = 2.08 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d-c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{18-2.08}{2.08}\right) = 0.023 \text{ in./in.}$$

> 0.005, hence tension controlled and $f_s = f_y$, $\phi = 0.90$

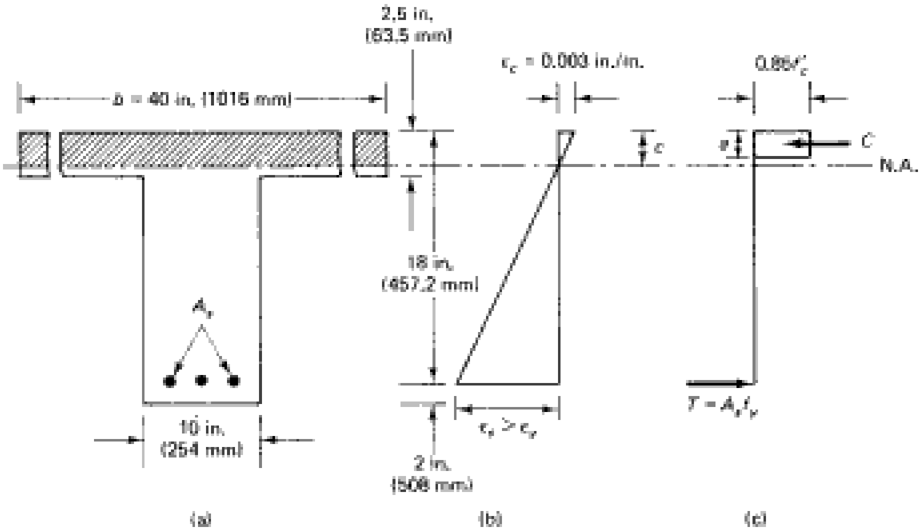


Figure 5.25 Geometry, strain, and force distributions in the T-beam of Ex. 5.7: (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

$$M_n = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 4 \times 60{,}000\left(18 - \frac{1.765}{2}\right) = 4{,}108{,}200 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_u = \phi M_n = 0.90 \times 4{,}108{,}200 = 3{,}697{,}380 \text{ in.-lb (418 kN-m)}$$

Solution (b): $A_s = 6.0 \text{ in.}^2$

$$\rho = \frac{6.0}{b_w d} = 0.03 \gg \rho_{min} = 0.0033$$

$$\bar{\omega} = \frac{6.0}{40 \times 18}\left(\frac{60{,}000}{4{,}000}\right) = 0.125$$

$$c = \frac{1.18\bar{\omega}\,d}{\beta_1} = \frac{1.18 \times 0.125 \times 18}{0.85} = 3.124 > (h_f = 2.5)$$

Therefore, the neutral axis is *below* the flange. The beam has to be treated as a T-beam or equivalent doubly-reinforced beam with imaginary compressive steel area A_{sf}.

$$A_{sf} = \frac{0.85 f'_c(b - b_w)h_f}{f_y}$$

$$= \frac{0.85 \times 4{,}000(40 - 10) \times 2.5}{60{,}000} = 4.25 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$a = \frac{(A_s - A_{sf})f_y}{0.85 f'_c b_w} = \frac{(6.0 - 4.25) \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 10} = 3.09 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{3.09}{0.85} = 3.64 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d - c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{18 - 3.64}{3.64}\right) = 0.012 \text{ in./in.}$$

>> 0.005, hence tension-controlled ductile behavior, $\phi = 0.90$.

$$M_{n1} = (A_s - A_{sf})f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

$$= (6.00 - 4.25)\,60{,}000\left(18 - \frac{3.09}{2}\right) = 1{,}727{,}775 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_{n2} = A_{sf}f_y\left(d - \frac{h_f}{2}\right) = 4.25 \times 60{,}000\left(18 - \frac{2.5}{2}\right) = 4{,}271{,}250 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Total moment due to both parts of the solution is $M_n = M_{n1} + M_{n2} = 1{,}727{,}775 + 4{,}271{,}250$

$$M_n = 5{,}999{,}025 \text{ in.-lb} = 5{,}999 \text{ in.-kips}$$

$$M_u = \phi M_n = 0.9 \times 5{,}999{,}025 = 5{,}399{,}123 \text{ in.-lb } (610 \text{ kN-m})$$

5.10 TRIAL-AND-ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE FOR THE DESIGN OF FLANGED SECTIONS

The slab thickness h_f of the flange overhang is known at the outset since the slab is designed first. Also available is the external factored moment M_u at midspan. The trial-and-adjustment steps for proportioning the web of the beam section can be summarized as follows.

1. Choose a singly reinforced beam section that can resist the external factored moment M_u and the moment due to self-weight. Remember that a T-section or an L-section would have a smaller size or depth than a singly reinforced section.
2. Check whether the span/depth ratio is reasonable, between 12 and 18. If not, adjust the preliminary section.
3. Calculate the flange width on the basis of the criteria in Section 5.8.
4. Choose $c/d_t \leq 0.375$ to ensure that $\varepsilon_t > 0.005$ in./in.
5. Determine if the neutral axis is within or outside the flange, where the neutral-axis depth $c = 1.18\bar{\omega}d/\beta_1$ for rectangular singly reinforced sections.
   (a) If $c < h_f$, the beam has to be treated as a singly reinforced beam with a width b equivalent to the flange width determined in step 3.
   (b) If $c > h_f$ and the equivalent block depth a is also $> h_f$, design as a T-beam or an L-beam, as the case may be.
6. Find the equivalent compressive steel area A_{sf} for the flange overhang and analyze the assumed section as in Ex. 5.7(b). Calculate the nominal resisting capacities M_{n1} and M_{n2}.
7. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until the calculated $\phi M_n = \phi(M_{n1} + M_{n2})$ is close in value to the factored moment M_u and verify that the assumed self-weight of the web is correct.
8. *Alternatively*, the first trial section can be chosen using a moment factor $R'' > R$ in step 3(a) of Section 5.5 for singly reinforced beams such that $R'' = 1.35R - 1.50R$. Select a trial section depth from $M_n = R''bd^2$ and proceed to analyze the section.

5.10.1 Example 5.8: Design of an End-span L-Beam

A roof-garden floor is composed of a monolithic one-way slab system on beams as in Figure 5.26. The effective beam span is 35 ft (10.67 m) and all beams are spaced at 7 ft 6 in. (2.29 m) clear span. The floor supports a 6-ft 4-in. (1.52-m) depth of soil in addition to its self-weight. Assume also that the slab edges support a 12-in.-wide, 7-ft-high wall weighing 630 lb per linear foot. Design the midspan section of the edge spandrel L beam AB assuming that the moist soil weighs 125 lb/ft^3 (2.56 tons/m^3). Given:

$$f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi } (20.7 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$

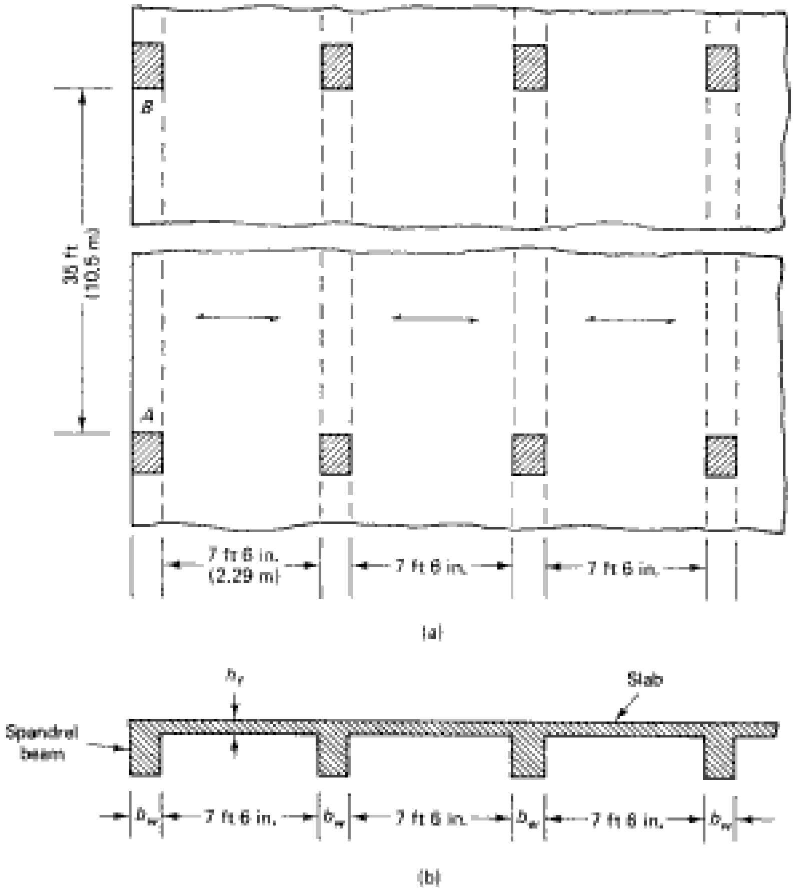


Figure 5.26 Spandrel beam *AB* design in Ex. 5.8: (a) floor plan; (b) transverse section.

Given:

$$\text{effective span} = 35 \text{ ft}$$
$$f'_c = 3{,}000 \text{ psi, normal weight}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$\text{Soil weight} = 125 \text{ lb/ft}^3$$

Solution:

Slab Design

$$\text{Effective slab span} = 7.5 \text{ ft}$$
$$\text{Weight of soil} = 6.33 \times 125 = 791, \text{ say } 800 \text{ psf}(38.3 \text{ kPa})$$

No appreciable live load is assumed, as the structure supports a roof garden with deep soil fill.

$$\text{Assume a slab thickness } h = 4 \text{ in. } (101 \text{ mm})$$
$$= \frac{4}{12} \times 150 = 50 \text{ psf}$$

$$d = h - \left(\frac{3}{4}\text{ in. cover} + \frac{1}{2}\text{ dia. of No. 4 bars}\right)$$
$$= 4.0 - 1.0 = 3.0\text{ in.}$$

factored load intensity

$$w_u = 1.2(800 + 50) = 1020\text{ lb/ft}^2\text{ (49 kPa)}$$

(assuming the live load relatively insignificant).
From the ACI Code, the negative moment for the interior support of a continuous slab is

$$-M_u = \frac{w_u l^2}{11} = \frac{1020(7.5)^2}{11} \times 12 = 62{,}591\text{ in.-lb}$$

The required slab negative moment strength

$$-M_n = \frac{62{,}591}{0.9} = 69{,}546\text{ in.-lb}$$

Assume A_s yielded, to be subsequently verified

$$M_n = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

Assume that $(d - a/2) \simeq 0.9d = 0.9 \times 3.0 = 2.7$ in.

$$A_s = \frac{69{,}546}{60{,}000 \times 2.7} = 0.429\text{ in.}^2\text{ on a 12-in. strip}$$

Try No. 5 bars at 7.5 in center to center. $A_s = 0.50$ in.^{2}.

$$\text{Actual } \rho = \frac{0.50}{12 \times 3} = 0.0139$$

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} = 0.0027$$

$$\text{also} = \frac{200}{f_y} = 0.0033 < 0.0139,\text{ hence, O.K.}$$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{0.50 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 3{,}000 \times 12} = 0.98\text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{0.98}{0.85} = 1.15\text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{3.0 - 1.15}{1.15}\right) = 0.005\text{ in./in.}$$

hence, tension-controlled and $f_s = f_y$

$$M_n = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 0.50 \times 60{,}000\left(3.0 - \frac{0.98}{2}\right)$$
$$= 75{,}300\text{ in.-lb} > \text{required } M_n = 69{,}546\text{ in.-lb} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Similarly, for the positive moment, $+M_u = w_u l_n^2/16$, requiring No. 5 bars at 10 in. c-c. Use No. 5 bars at $7\frac{1}{2}$-in. center-to-center main negative reinforcement (15.9-mm diameter at 190.5-mm spacing) and No. 5 bars at 10 in. center to center for main positive reinforcement

$$\text{Temperature steel} = 0.0018\,bh$$
$$= 0.0018 \times 12 \times 4.0 = 0.0864\text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{Maximum allowable spacing} = 5\,h = 5 \times 4 = 20 \text{ in.} \quad \text{or} \quad 18 \text{ in. max}$$

Use #3 bars at 15 in. = 0.088 in.^{2} for temperature (9.53-mm diameter at 380-mm spacing).

Beam Web Design

Figure 5.27 gives the forces acting on the flanged section.

In order to choose a trial web section, assume that $h = l_n/18$ for deflection, or

$$h = \frac{35.0 \times 12}{18} = 23.33 \text{ in.}$$

Assume that $h = 26$ in. (660 mm), $d = 22.5$ (572 mm) and $b_w = 14$ in. (356 mm)

Load area on L-beam AB = 7.5/2 + 14/12 = 4.92 ft.

Superimposed working load

$$w_w = (4.92 - 1.0) \times 800 = 3136 \text{ lb/ft}$$

Slab weight:

$$\frac{4.0}{12} \times 150 \times 4.92 = 246 \text{ lb/ft}$$

Weight of beam web:

$$\frac{14(26-4)}{144} \times 150 = 321 \text{ lb/ft}$$

7-ft wall weight = 840 lb/ft.

Load factor for soil weight $H = 1.6$ (see Sec. 4.6.2)

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total factored load} &= 1.2\,(3.136 + 246 + 321) + 1.6 \times 630 \\ &= 5{,}452 \text{ lb/ft.}\end{aligned}$$

Use the ACI Code positive moment factor for unrestrained discontinuous end for this case, namely, $+M_n = w_u l_n^2/11$

Apply a factored moment:

$$M_u = \frac{w_u l_n^2}{11} = \frac{5452(35.0)^2}{11} \times 12 = 7{,}285{,}855 \text{ in.-lb}$$

assuming reinforcement A_s to have yielded, to be subsequently verified, $\phi = 0.90$.

$$M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{7{,}285{,}855}{0.9} = 8{,}095{,}394 \text{ in.-lb (915 kN-m)}$$

To determine whether the beam is an actual L-beam or not, it is necessary to find if the neutral axis falls outside the flange. Consequently, the area of the tension steel A_s has to

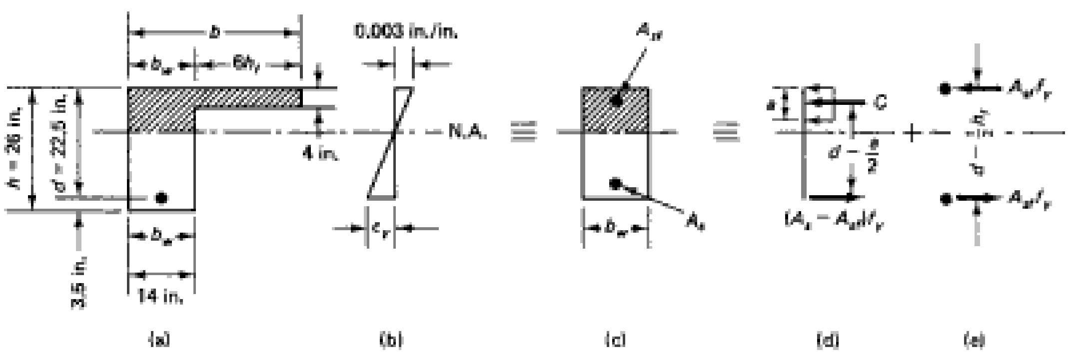


Figure 5.27 Forces and stresses in L-beams: (a) cross section; (b) strain diagram; (c) transformed section; (d) part-1 forces; (e) part-2 forces.

be assumed. If rectangular section is initially assumed with an appropriate moment arm $jd \approx 0.85d$

$$= 0.85 \times 22.5 = 19.3 \text{ in.}$$

$$M_n = A_s f_y jd \quad \text{or} \quad 8{,}095{,}394 = A_s \times 60{,}000 \times 19.3$$

$$A_s = \frac{8{,}095{,}394}{60{,}000 \times 19.3} = 6.99 \text{ in.}^2$$

Assume seven #9 bars in two layers = 7.0 in.^{2} (4515 mm^2)

$$\rho = \frac{A_s}{bd}$$

$$b = b_w + \frac{l_n}{12} = 14 + \frac{35 \times 12}{12} = 49 \text{ in.}$$

$$b = b_w + 6h_f = 14 + 6 \times 4.0 = 38 \text{ in. (965 mm), controls.}$$

$$\rho = \frac{7.0}{38 \times 22.5} = 0.0082$$

$$\overline{\omega} = \rho \frac{f_y}{f'_c} = 0.0082 \times \frac{60{,}000}{3{,}000} = 0.164$$

depth of the neutral axis

$$c = \frac{1.18\overline{\omega}\, d}{\beta_1} = \frac{1.18 \times 0.164 \times 22.5}{0.85}$$

or

$$= 5.12 \text{ in.} > 4.0 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 5.12 = 4.35 > 4.0$$

Hence, the section is an L-beam since the neutral axis is below the flange, as shown in Figure 5.27.

d = 22.5 in. to centroid of all bars.

d_t = effective depth to the first layer of tensile reinforcement closest to the extreme tension fibers

$$= 26 - \left(1.5 + 0.5 \text{ stirrup} + \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{9}{8}\right) = 23.44 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{23.44 - 5.12}{5.12}\right) = 0.011 \text{ in./in.} \gg 0.005$$

hence, the beam is tension-controlled, $f_s = f_y$, and $\phi = 0.90$

$$A_{sf} = \frac{h_f(b - b_w)0.85f'_c}{f_y} = \frac{4.0(35 - 14) \times 0.85 \times 3{,}000}{60{,}000} = 3.57 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (2303 mm}^2\text{)}$$

$$a = \frac{(A_s - A_{sf})f_y}{0.85f'_c b_w} = \frac{(7.0 - 3.57)60{,}000}{0.85 \times 3{,}000 \times 14} = 5.76 \text{ in. (146 mm)}$$

$$M_n = (A_s - A_{sf})\, f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A_{sf} f_y\left(d - \frac{1}{2}h_f\right)$$

$$= (7.0 - 3.57)60{,}000\left(22.5 - \frac{5.76}{2}\right) + 3.57 \times 60{,}000\left(22.5 - \frac{4.0}{2}\right)$$

$$= 8{,}428{,}896 \text{ in.-lb}$$

design moment

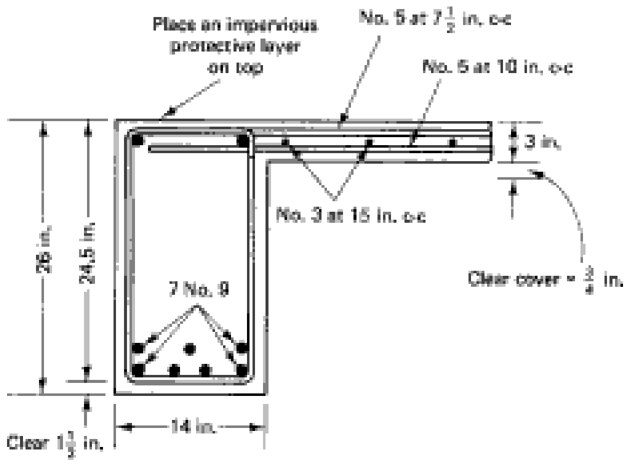


Figure 5.28 Midspan section flexural reinforcement details for beam *AB* of Ex. 5.8.

$$M_n = 0.9 \times 8{,}428{,}896 = 7{,}586{,}006 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Actual factored moment:

$$M_u = 7{,}285{,}855 \text{ in.-lb} < 7{,}586{,}006 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Adopt the design. Flexural reinforcement details for the L-beam AB are shown in Figure 5.28.

5.10.2 Example 5.9: Design of an Interior Continuous Floor Beam for Flexure

Design a rectangular interior beam having a clear span of 25 ft (7.62 m) and carrying a working live load of 9000 lb per linear foot (40.0 kN) in addition to its self-weight and slab weight, as shown in Figure 5.29. Assume the beam to have a 4-in. (101.6-mm) slab cast monolithically with it. Given:

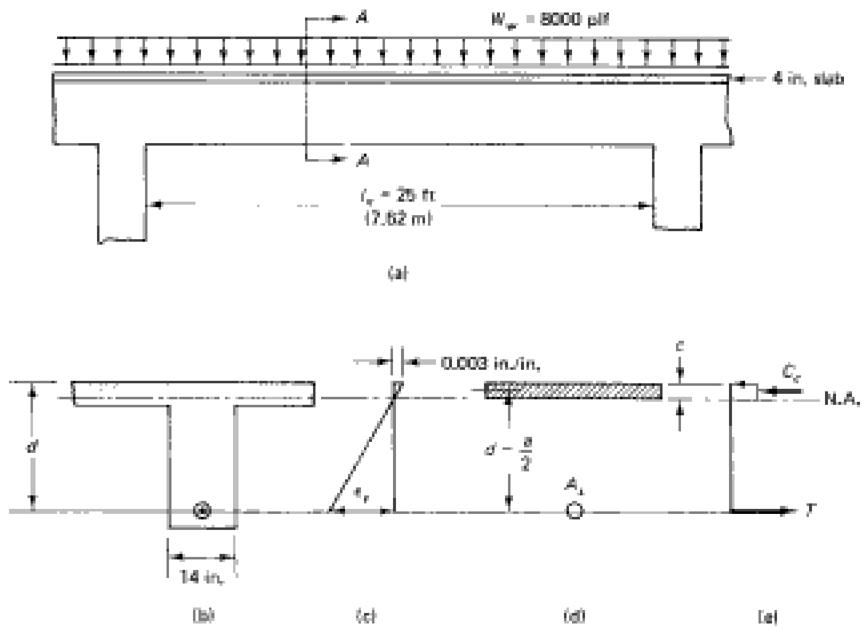


Figure 5.29 Continuous beam midspan section in Ex. 5.9: (a) beam elevation; (b) section A-A; (c) strain distribution; (d) A_s inside flange; (e) force and stress.

$f'_c = 4000$ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete
$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (413.4 MPa)
$d' = 2.5$ in.

Assume no wind or earthquake.

Solution: Assume that the web self-weight = 400 lb/ft.

$$\text{factored load } w_u = 1.2 \times 400 + 1.6 \times 9000$$
$$= 14{,}400 \text{ lb/ft}$$

The positive factored moment M_u for interior midspan lower fibers (ACI) is

$$+M_u = \frac{w_u \ell_n^2}{16} = \frac{14{,}400 \times (25.0)^2}{16} \times 12 = 6{,}750{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (763 kN-m)}$$

The negative factored moment M_u at support (tension at top fibers) is

$$-M_u = \frac{14{,}400\,(25.0)^2}{11} \times 12 = 9{,}818{,}182 \text{ in.-lb (1109 kN-m)}$$

Section at Midspan (T-Beam)

Assume that $b_w = 14$ in. (0.3556 m).

$$b \ngtr 16 \times 4 + 14 = 78 \text{ in.}$$
$$\ngtr \frac{25 \times 12}{4} = 75 \text{ in.}$$

overhang $\ngtr$ half clear distance to next web not known

Therefore, $b = 75$ in. (1.905 m) controls.

If the depth a of the stress block is assumed equivalent to the flange thickness $h_f = 4$ in., the compressive force C_n (volume of the compressive block) is

$$C_n = 0.85 f'_c b h_f = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 75 \times 4.0 = 1{,}020{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{required positive } +M_n = \frac{6{,}750{,}000}{\phi = 0.90} = 7{,}500{,}000 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{required negative } -M_n = 10{,}909{,}891 \text{ in.-lb}$$

In order to obtain on first trial a reasonable area A_s of steel at the tension side and also to determine if the beam section is flanged, find for a first trial an A_s for a rectangular section that can resist $M_n = 7{,}500{,}000$ in.-lb.

For deflection purposes assume that interior partitions would be damaged by excessive deflection; hence use

$$d = \frac{l}{12} = \frac{25.0 \times 12}{12} = 25 \text{ in. (635 mm)}$$

For a self-weight of 400 lb/ft, try $b_w = 14$ in. (354 mm) and $h = 28.0$ in. (711 mm).

$$\text{self-weight} = \frac{14 \times 28}{144} \times 150 = 408 \text{ lb/ft; no need to revise the moments.}$$

$$\text{midspan section } d = 28 - \left(d_c + \text{stirrup}\phi + \frac{1}{2}\text{ bar dia.}\right)$$
$$= 28 - (1.5 + 0.5 + 1.27/2)$$
$$= 25.3 \text{ in.} = d_s$$

$$\text{support section } d = 24.3 - \frac{1.27}{2} = 24.67$$

$$\text{From before, required } + M_n = 7{,}500{,}000 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Assume that moment arm $jd = 0.9d = 0.9 \times 25.3 = 22.7$ in.

$$+A_s = \frac{M_n}{f_y \times 0.9d} = \frac{7{,}500{,}000}{60{,}000 \times 22.7} = 5.51 \text{ in.}^2$$

Assuming four No. 10 bars at midspan, $+A_s = 4 \times 1.27 = 5.08$ in.^{2} to be verified

$$\rho = \frac{5.08}{b \times d} = \frac{5.08}{75 \times 25.3} = 0.0027$$

Check for the neutral-axis position

$$\overline{\omega} = \rho \frac{f_y}{f'_c} = 0.0027 \times \frac{60{,}000}{4000} = 0.040$$

$$c = \frac{1.18\omega d}{\beta_1} = 1.18 \times 0.0405 \times \frac{25.3}{0.85} = 1.42 \text{ in.} \ll h_f = 4.0 \text{ in., hence, singly-reinforced}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 1.42 = 1.21 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{1.42}{25.3} = 0.056 \ll 0.375\text{, hence, tension-controlled and } \phi = 0.90$$

The nominal resisting moment $M_n = A_s f_y(d - a/2)$.

$$M_n = 5.08 \times 60{,}000\left(25.3 - \frac{1.21}{2}\right) = 7{,}527{,}036 \text{ in.-lb (850 kN-m)}$$

The actual M_n is larger than the required $M_n = 7{,}500{,}000$ in.-lb.

$$\frac{A_s}{b_w d} = \frac{5.08}{14 \times 25.3} = 0.0143 > \rho_{min} = \frac{200}{f_y} = 0.0033 \quad \text{and} \quad \rho_{min} = \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y}, \quad \text{hence O.K.}$$

Adopt a midspan section with $b_w = 14$ in. (355.6 mm), $h = 28$ in. (686 mm), $d = 25.0$ in. (635 mm), and $A_s =$ four No. 10 bars (diameter 32 mm).

Section at support (doubly reinforced rectangular section)

This section is subjected to moments similar to the moments acting on the section in Ex. 5.6 and has the same cross-sectional dimensions. The required nominal moment of resistance $M_n = 10{,}909{,}091$ in.-lb (1212 kN-m). Assume that two No. 10 bars extend from the midspan to the support $= 2.54$ in.^{2} $M_{n2} = A'_s f_y(d - d')$, assuming that A'_s has yielded since the area is so close to 2.4 in.^{2} in Ex. 5.6, to be subsequently verified, or

Support section $d = 24.67$ in. from before.

$$M_{n2} = 2.54 \times 60{,}000(24.67 - 2.5) = 3{,}378{,}708 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_{n1} = 10{,}909{,}091 - 3{,}378{,}708 = 7{,}530{,}383 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Assume that moment arm $jd \simeq 0.85d = 24.67 \times 0.85 = 21.0$ in.

$$\text{trial } A_{s1} = \frac{7{,}530{,}383}{60{,}000 \times 21.0} = 5.98 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{total } A_s = A_{s1} + A_{s2} = 5.98 + 2.54 = 8.52 \text{ in.}^2$$

Try seven No. 10 bars (50.0 mm) in *two* layers, $A_s = 8.89$ in.^{2}

$$A_{s1} = 8.89 - 2.54 = 6.35 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\rho - \rho' = \frac{6.35}{14 \times 24.67} = 0.0184 > 0.0155$$

from Ex. 5.6; hence the assumption that A'_s yielded is valid.

$$a = \frac{(A_s - A'_s)f_y}{0.85f'_c b} = \frac{6.35 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4000 \times 14} = 8.00 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{8.00}{0.85} = 9.41 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{9.41}{25.3} = 0.372 < 0.375. \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Hence $\phi = 0.90$

$$M_{n1} = (A_s - A'_s)f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 6.35 \times 60{,}000\left(24.67 - \frac{8.00}{2}\right) = 7{,}875{,}270 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Available $M_n = M_{n1} + M_{n2} = 7{,}875{,}270 + 3{,}378{,}708$

$$= 11{,}253{,}978 \text{ in.-lb} > \text{required} - M_n = 10{,}909{,}891 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Hence adopt the design.

$$\text{Design} - M_u = \phi M_n = 0.90 \times 11{,}253{,}978 = 10{,}128{,}580 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Therefore, use seven No.10 bars on top at the support in *two* layers and two No. 10 bars at the bottom fibers of the section at the support. Provide closed stirrups to tie the tension and the compression steel at the support. It is to be noted that bar sizes larger than No. 11 should be avoided where possible in superstructure beams, because they are difficult to cut and less efficient for crack control.

For the design to be complete, diagonal tension capacity, serviceability and bar development checks have to be made, as discussed in Chapters 6, 8, and 10. Details of the reinforcement over the span are shown in Figure 5.30.

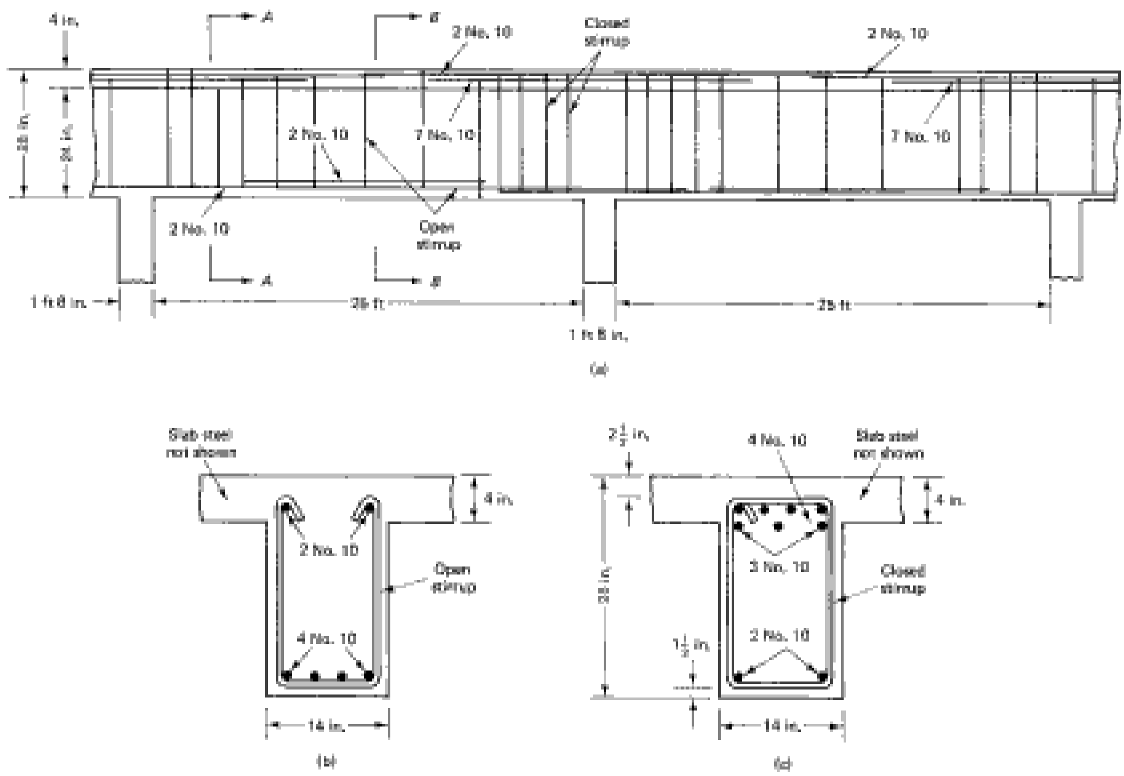


Figure 5.30 Reinforcement arrangement for the continuous beam in Ex. 5.9: (a) sectional elevation (not to scale); (b) midspan section B–B; (c) support section A–A.

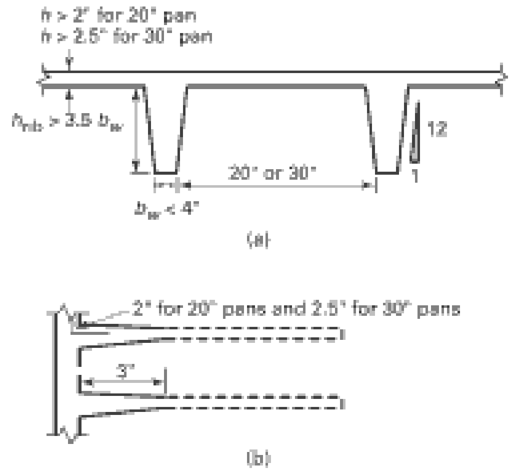


Figure 5.31 Reinforced concrete floor joist construction
(a) Typical joist cross section
(b) Plan view of tapered ends

5.11 CONCRETE JOIST CONSTRUCTION

This type of construction comprises closely spaced reinforced concrete joists which are monolithically built with thin concrete slabs. Standard pan forms for joist construction have 20 or 30 in. clear space between the ribs at the lower fibers as shown in Figure 5.31. The depth of the rib varies between 10 and 20 in. in 2-in. increments.

An advantage of such construction systems is their effectiveness in spanning longer openings and in reducing the dead loads by essentially eliminating concrete in tension in the space between the ribs below the neutral axis. While the joist ribs are essentially beam ribs, some distinction is made in the ACI Code. The differentiation is because of the closeness of the joist ribs in a floor system resulting in a good redistribution of local overloads to adjacent members. Hence, a higher shear capacity and a less stringent concrete cover requirement are allowed, provided that the dimensional requirements of Figure 5.31 are adhered to.

The minimum concrete cover for the joists if not exposed to weather or in contact with the ground is $\frac{3}{4}$ in. for No. 11 size bars and smaller unless fire requirements govern. A $\frac{3}{4}$-in. cover may be adequate for a 1-h rating and 1-in. cover for a 2-h rating. Hence, the design engineer should apply the local fire building code requirements for determining the cover thickness to be used in the design.

5.11.1 Example 5.10: Design of Reinforced Concrete Joist Sections

Compute the negative and positive nominal moment strengths M_n, of the joist section shown in Figure 5.32. Given

$$f'_c = 4{,}000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413 \text{ MPa})$$

$$A_s = 2\ \#\ 5 \text{ at bottom and } 6\ \#\ 4 \text{ in the flange}$$

Assume cover d_c = 1.25 in. to center of reinforcement both at top and bottom.

Solution: (a) Positive moment strength $+M_n$:

$$d = 16.0 + 3.5 - 1.25 = 18.25 \text{ in. } (464 \text{ mm})$$

$A_s =$ [illegible]

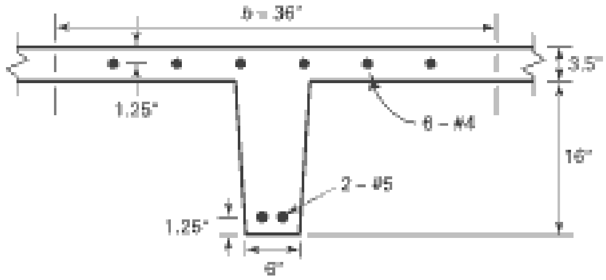


Figure 5.32 Joist beam cross section.

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{0.62 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 36} = 0.304 \text{ in.} < h_f = 3.5 \text{ in. (89 mm)}$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = 0.35 \text{ in.}$$

The neutral axis is inside the flange, hence consider as singly-reinforced beam.

$$\varepsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right)$$

$$= 0.003\left(\frac{12.25 - 0.35}{0.35}\right)$$

$$= 0.15 \gg 0.005,$$

hence, tension-controlled

$$+M_n = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

$$= 0.62 \times 60{,}000\left(18.25 - \frac{0.3}{2}\right) = 673{,}264 \text{ in.-lb} = 56 \text{ ft.-kip (76 kN-m)}$$

(b) Negative moment strength, $-M_n$:

Compression side width $b = 6.0$ in.

$$A_s = 6 \times 0.20 = 1.20 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (774 mm}^2\text{)}$$

$$a = \frac{1.20 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 6.0} = 3.53 \text{ in. (89 mm)}$$

$$c = a/\beta_1 = \frac{3.53}{0.85} = 4.15 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{3.53}{18.25} = 0.193 \ll 0.375,$$

hence, section tension-controlled

$$-M_n = 1.20 \times 60{,}000\left(18.25 - \frac{3.53}{2}\right) = 1{,}186{,}920 \text{ in.-lb} = 99 \text{ ft-kip (134 kN-m)}$$

5.12 SI EXPRESSIONS AND EXAMPLE FOR FLEXURAL DESIGN OF BEAMS

$$E_c = w_c^{1.5}\, 0.043 \sqrt{f'_c} \text{ MPa}$$

where w_c = 1500 to 2500 kg/m^3 (90 to 155 lb/ft^3). For standard, normal-weight concrete, w_c = 2400 kg/m^3 to @ ...

$$E_s = 200{,}000 \text{ MPa}$$

$$\text{modulus of rupture } f'_r = 0.7\sqrt{f'_c}$$

$$A_{s,\min} = \frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{4f_y} b_w d \geq \frac{1.4}{f_y} bd$$

where f_y is in MPa units.

For cantilevers and negative moment zone,

$$A_{s,\min} = \frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{2f_y} b_w d$$

$$\beta_1 = 0.85 - 0.008\,(f'_c - 30)$$

The value of β_1 for strengths above 30 MPa should be reduced continuously at the rate of 0.008 for each 1 MPa of strength in excess of 30 MPa, but β_1 cannot be less than 0.65.

Spacing of reinforcement for structural slabs and footings in the direction of the span should not exceed 3 × slab thickness or 450 mm.

For singly reinforced beams, from Eq. 5.4 or 5.5,

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad \omega r f'_c (1 - 0.59\omega) d^3$$

$$\bar{\rho}_b = \beta_1 \frac{0.85 f'_c}{f_y} \frac{0.003 E_s}{0.003 E_s + f_y}$$

where f_c, f_y and E_s are in MPa units and $r = b/d$

For doubly reinforced beams, from Eq. 5.22,

$$M_n - (A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s)\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s (d - d')$$

or

$$M_n = 0.85 f'_c ba \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s (d - d')$$

$$f'_s = 0.003 E_s \left[1 - \frac{0.85 \beta_1 f'_c d'}{(\rho - \rho') f_y d}\right]$$

For flanged sections, from Eq. 5.27

$$M_n = (A_s - A_{sf}) f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A_{sf} f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

where

$$A_{sf} = \frac{0.85 f'_c (b - b_w) h_f}{f_y}$$

and

$$a = \frac{(A_s - A_{sf}) f_y}{0.85 f'_c b_w}$$

For tension-controlled state,

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \left(\frac{600}{600 + f_y}\right) \text{where } f_y \text{ (MPa)}$$

$$\phi = 0.36 + \frac{200}{c/d_t}$$

$$0.65 \le \phi = 0.48 + 83\,\epsilon_t \le 0.90$$

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right)$$

$$\epsilon_t' = 0.003\left(\frac{c - d'}{c}\right)$$

5.12.1 Example 5.11

Solve Ex. 5.3 using SI units and the strains limit approach.

Solution:

$$f_c' = 27.6 \text{ MPa}$$

$$f_y = 414 \text{ MPa}$$

$$w_u = 24.1 \text{ kN/m}$$

$$l_n = 9.14 \text{ m} = 9140 \text{ mm}$$

$$\text{concrete unit weight} = 23.6 \text{ kN/m}^3$$

$$= 23.6 \times 10^{-3} \text{N/mm}^3$$

$$\text{Pa} = \text{N/m}^2$$

$$\text{MPa} = \text{N/mm}^2$$

Assume a minimum thickness from the ACI deflection table

$$\frac{l_n}{16} = \frac{9.14}{16} = 0.571 \text{m} = 571 \text{ mm}$$

For the purpose of estimating the preliminary self-weight, assume a total thickness h = 700 mm, effective depth d = 600 mm, and width of beam b = 300 mm.
beam self-weight

$$= 300 \times 700(23.6 \times 10^{-3}) \text{ kN/mm}$$

$$= 4956 \text{ kN/mm} = 4.96 \text{ kN/m}$$

factored load

$$w_u = 1.2D + 1.6L = 1.2 \times 4.96 + 1.6 \times 24.1 \text{ kN/m} = 44.5 \text{ kN/m}$$

Required factored moment $M_u = \dfrac{44.5(9.14)^2}{8} = 465$ kN-m.

$$\text{nominal moment strength} = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{465}{0.9} = 517 \text{ kN-m}$$

assuming it is tension-controlled with $\phi = 0.90$ to be subsequently verified.

$$d_t = 600 \text{ mm} = 60 \text{ cm}$$

Assume $\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.27 < 0.375$, hence, tension-controlled.

$$c = 0.27 \times 600 = 162 \text{ mm}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 162 = 138 \text{ mm}$$

$$C = 0.85 f'_c ba = 0.85 \times 27.6 \times 300 \times 138 = 971{,}244 \text{ Newtons}$$

trial $A_s = 971{,}244/414 = 2346$ (2 No. 30M + One No. 35M bars = 2400 mm^2)

$$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t - c}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{600 - 162}{162}\right) = 0.0081 > 0.005$$

hence, the beam is tension-controlled: $f_s = f_y$ and $\phi = 0.90$.

$$\rho = \frac{2400}{300 \times 600} = 0.0133$$

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{4f_y} = \frac{\sqrt{27.6}}{4 \times 414} = 0.003 < 0.0133$$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{2400 \times 414}{0.85 \times 27.6 \times 300} = 141 \text{ mm}$$

Therefore, the available nominal moment strength is:

$$M_n = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 2400 \times 414\left(600 - \frac{141}{2}\right) = 526 \times 10^6 \text{ N-mm} > \text{required } M_n = 517 \text{ kN-m}$$

Adopt the section. Use two No. 30 M and one No. 35 M metric bars = 2 × 700 + 1000 = 2400 mm.^{2}

Note that the designed section resists a slightly larger moment than the required moment:

$$\text{Percent overdesign} = \frac{526 - 517}{517} \simeq 1.7\%$$

SELECTED REFERENCES

5.1. Whitney, C. S., "Plastic Theory of Reinforced Concrete Design," *Transactions of the ASCE*, Vol. 107, 1942, pp. 251–326.

5.2. Hognestad, E. N., Hanson, N. W., and McHenry, D., "Concrete Stress Distribution in Ultimate Strength Design," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 52, December 1955, pp. 455–479.

5.3. Whitney, C. S., and Cohn, E., "Guide for Ultimate Strength Design of Reinforced Concrete," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 53, November 1956, pp. 455–475.

5.4. Mattock, A. H., Kriz, L. B., and Hognestad, E. N., "Rectangular Stress Distribution in Ultimate Strength Design," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 58, February 1961, pp. 825–928.

5.5. ACI–ASCE Joint Committee: "Report of ASCE–ACI Joint Committee on Ultimate Strength Design," *ASCE, Proceedings*, Vol. 81, October 1955, 68 pp. See also *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 52, January 1956, pp. 550–524.

5.6. Nawy, E. G., *Fundamentals of High Performance Concrete*, 2nd ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 2001.

5.7. ACI Committee 318, "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-08) and Commentary (ACI 318R-08), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2008, pp. 465.

5.8. ACI Committee 340, ACI *Design Handbook*, Special Publication SP-17 (97), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1997, 482 pp.

5.9. Nawy, E. G., "Strength, Serviceability and Ductility," Chapter 12, in *Handbook of Structural Concrete*, Pitman Books, London/McGraw-Hill, New York, 1983, 1968 pp.

5.10. Chen, B., and Nawy, E. G., "Structural Behavior Evaluation of High Strength Concrete Reinforced with Prestressed Prisms Using Fiber Optic Sensors," *Proceedings*, ACI Structural Journal, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1997, Dec. 1994, pp. 708–718.

5.11. Chen, B., Maher, M. H. and Nawy, E. G., "Fiber Optic Bragg Grating Sensor for Non-Destructive Evaluation of Composite Beams," *Proceedings, ASCE Journal of the Structural Division*, Vol. 120, No. 12, American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, Dec. 1994, pp. 3456–3470.

5.12. Nawy, E. G., Editor-in-Chief, *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

5.13. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 944 pp.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

5.1. For the beam cross-section shown in Fig. 5.33 determine whether the failure of the beam will be initiated by crushing of concrete or yielding of steel. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa) for case (a)}, A_s = 10 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$f'_c = 7000 \text{ psi (48.3 MPa) for case (b)}, A_s = 5 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Also determine whether the section satisfies ACI Code requirements.

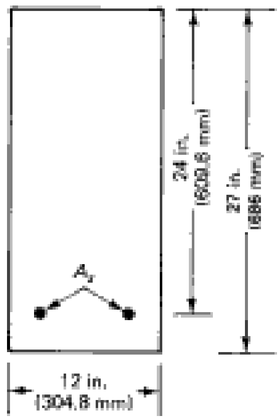


Figure 5.33

5.2. Calculate the nominal moment strength of the beam sections shown in Fig. 5.34. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi (34.5 MPa) for case (a)}$$
$$f'_c = 6000 \text{ psi (41.4 MPa) for case (b)}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

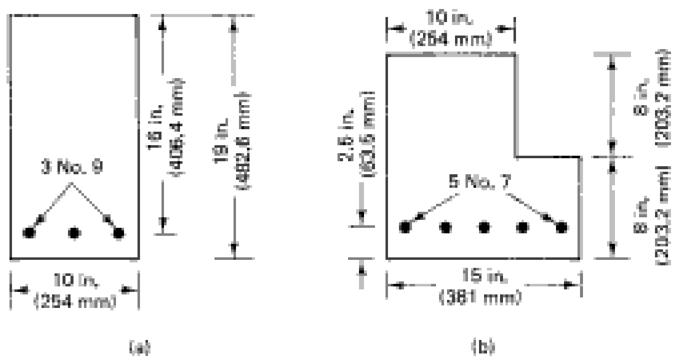


Figure 5.34

5.3. Calculate the safe distributed load intensity that the beam shown in Fig. 5.35 can carry. Given:

f'_c = 4000 psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete
f_y = 60,000 psi (414 MPa)

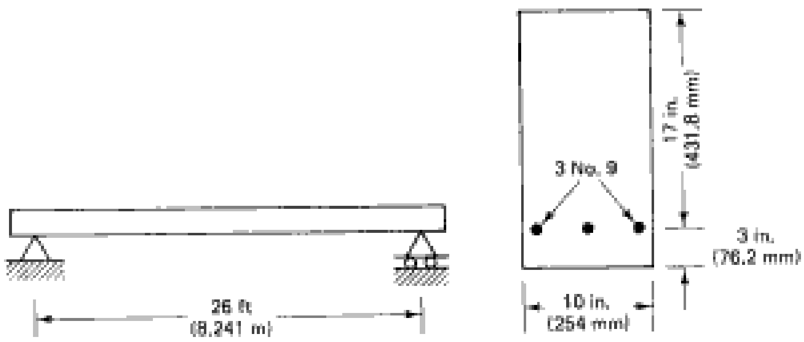


Figure 5.35

5.4. Design a one-way slab to carry a live load of 100 psf and an external dead load of 50 psf. The slab is simply supported over a span of 12 ft. Given:

f'_c = 4000 psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete
f_y = 60,000 psi (414 MPa)

5.5. Design the simply supported beams shown in Fig. 5.36 as rectangular sections. Given:

f'_c = 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete
f_y = 60,000 psi (414 MPa)

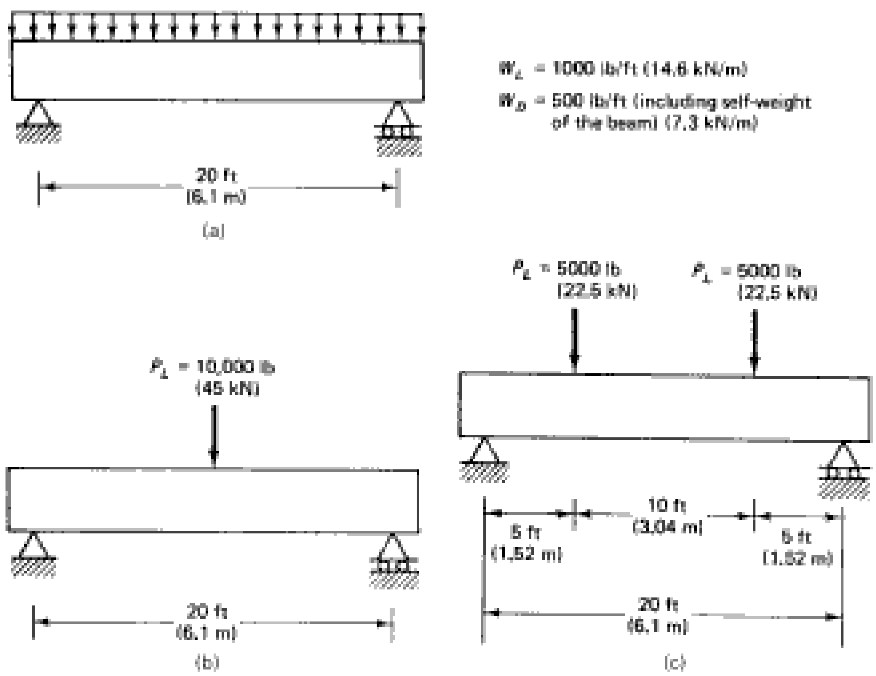


Figure 5.36

5.6. Check whether the sections shown in Fig. 5.37 satisfy ACI 318 Code requirements for maximum and minimum reinforcement areas.

$f'_c = 5000$ psi (34.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete
$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

The compression fibers in all the figures are the top fibers of the sections.

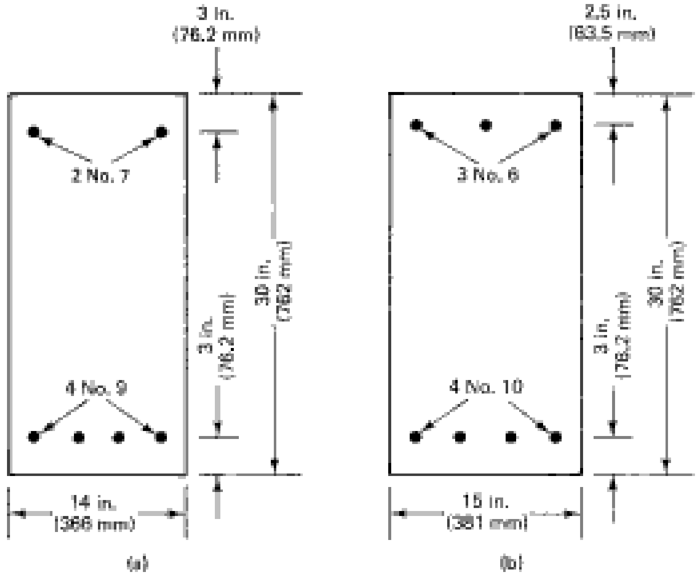


Figure 5.37

5.7. Compute the stresses in the compression steel, f'_s, for the cross sections shown in Fig. 5.38. Also compute the nominal moment strength for the section in part (b). Given:

$f'_c = 6000$ psi (41.4 MPa), normal-weight concrete
$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

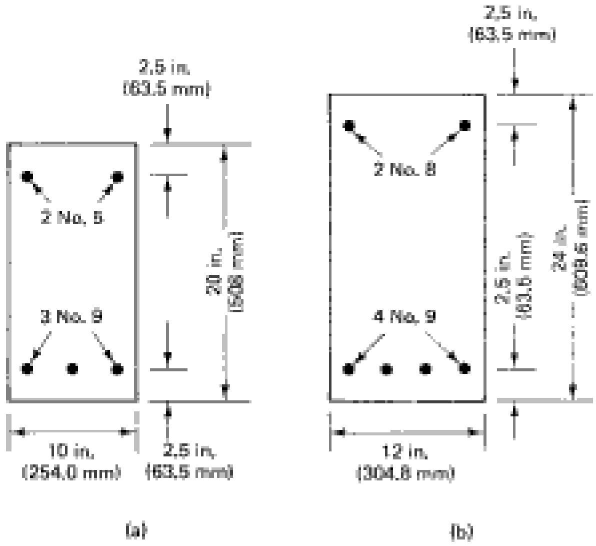


Figure 5.38

5.8. Calculate the ultimate moment capacity of the beam sections of Problem 5.2. Assume two No. 6 bars for compression reinforcement.

5.9. Solve Problem 5.3 if [illegible] compression reinforcement. Assume $d' = 3.0$ in.

5.10. At failure, determine whether the precast sections shown in Fig. 5.39 will act similarly to rectangular sections or as flanged sections. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

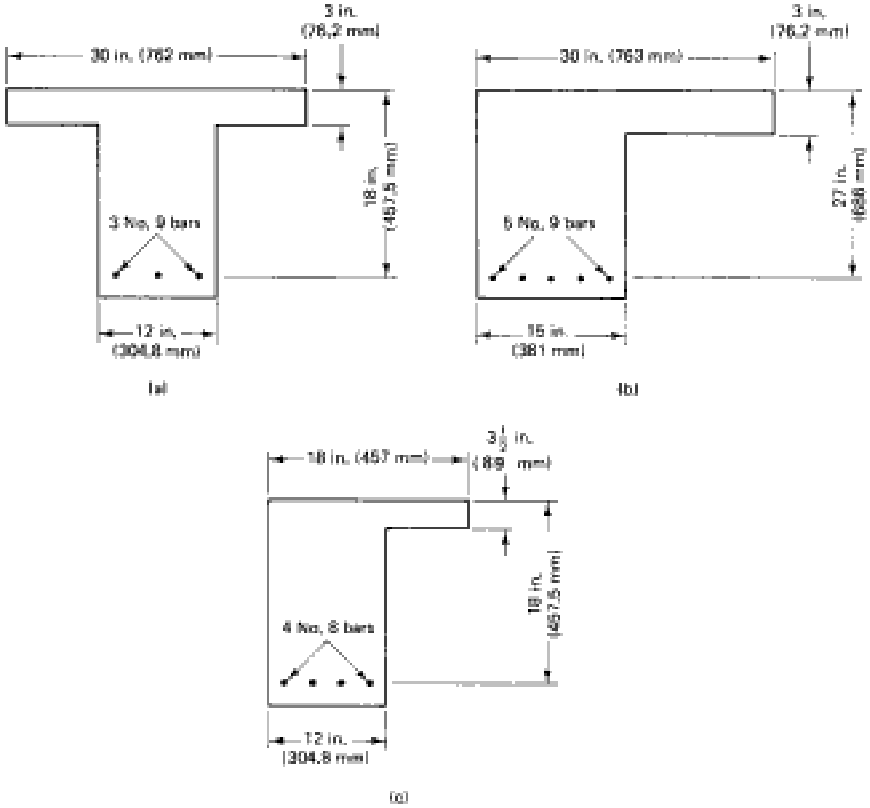


Figure 5.39

5.11. Check whether the sections of Problem 5.10 satisfy ACI Code requirements.

5.12. Calculate the nominal moment strength of the sections shown for Problem 5.10.

5.13. Repeat Problem 5.5 using a T-section instead of a rectangular section. Use a flange thickness of 3 in. (76.2 mm) and a flange width of 30 in. (762 mm).

5.14. Using the details of Problem 5.4, design a reinforced concrete T-beam for the slab floor system shown in Fig. 5.40. The floor area is 30 ft × 60 ft (9.14 m × 18.29 m) with an effective T-beam span of 30 ft (9.14 m).

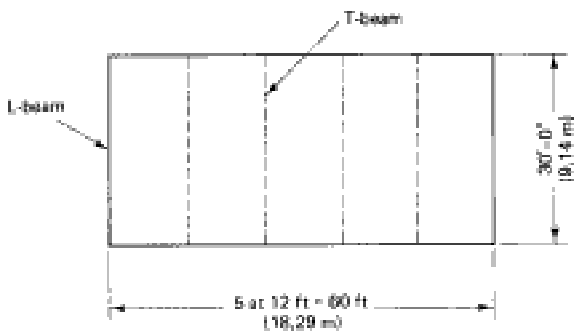


Figure 5.40 Plan of one-way slab floor system.

6

SHEAR AND DIAGONAL TENSION IN BEAMS

6.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter presents procedures for the analysis and design of reinforced concrete sections to resist the shear forces resulting from externally applied loads. Since the strength of concrete in tension is considerably lower than its strength in compression, design for shear is of major importance in concrete structures.

The behavior of reinforced concrete beams at failure in shear is distinctly different from their behavior in flexure. They fail abruptly without sufficient advanced warning, and the diagonal cracks that develop are considerably wider than the flexural cracks. The accompanying photographs show typical beam shear failure in diagonal tension as discussed in the subsequent sections. Because of the brittle nature of such failures, the designer has to design sections that are adequately strong to resist the external factored shear loads without reaching their shear strength capacity. Shear is also a significant parameter in the behavior of brackets, corbels, and deep beams. Consequently, the design of these elements is also discussed in detail.

Photo 6.1 Water Tower Place, Chicago. (Courtesy of Portland Cement Association.)

Photo 6.2 Typical diagonal tension failure at rupture load level. (Test by Nawy et al.)

Photo 6.3 Simply supported beam prior to developing diagonal tension crack (load stage 11). (Test by Nawy et al.)

Photo 6.4 Principal diagonal tension crack at failure of beam in Photo 6.3 (load stage 12).

6.2 BEHAVIOR OF HOMOGENEOUS BEAMS

Consider the two infinitesimal elements A_1 and A_2 of a rectangular beam in Figure 6.1a made of homogeneous, isotropic, and linearly elastic material. Figure 6.1b shows the bending stress and shear stress distributions across the depth of the section. The tensile normal stress f_t and the shear stress v are the values in element A_1 across plane $a_1 - a_1$ at a distance y from the neutral axis. From the principles of classical mechanics, the normal stress f and the shear stress v for element A_1 can be written as

$$f = \frac{My}{I} \tag{6.1}$$

and

$$v = \frac{VA\bar{y}}{Ib} \tag{6.2}$$

where M and V = bending moment and shear force at section a_1–a_1
A = cross-sectional area of the section at the plane passing through the centroid of element A_1
y = distance from the element to the neutral axis
$\bar{y}$ = distance from the centroid of A to the neutral axis
I = moment of inertia of the cross section
b = width of the beam

Figure 6.2 shows the internal stresses acting on the infinitesimal elements A_1 and A_2. Using Mohr's circle in Fig. 6.2b, the principal stresses for element A_1 in the tensile zone below the neutral axis become

$$f_{t(\max)} = \frac{f_t}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{f_t}{2}\right)^2 + v^2} \quad \text{principal tension} \tag{6.3a}$$

$$f_{c(\max)} = \frac{f_t}{2} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{f_t}{2}\right)^2 + v^2} \quad \text{principal compression} \tag{6.3b}$$

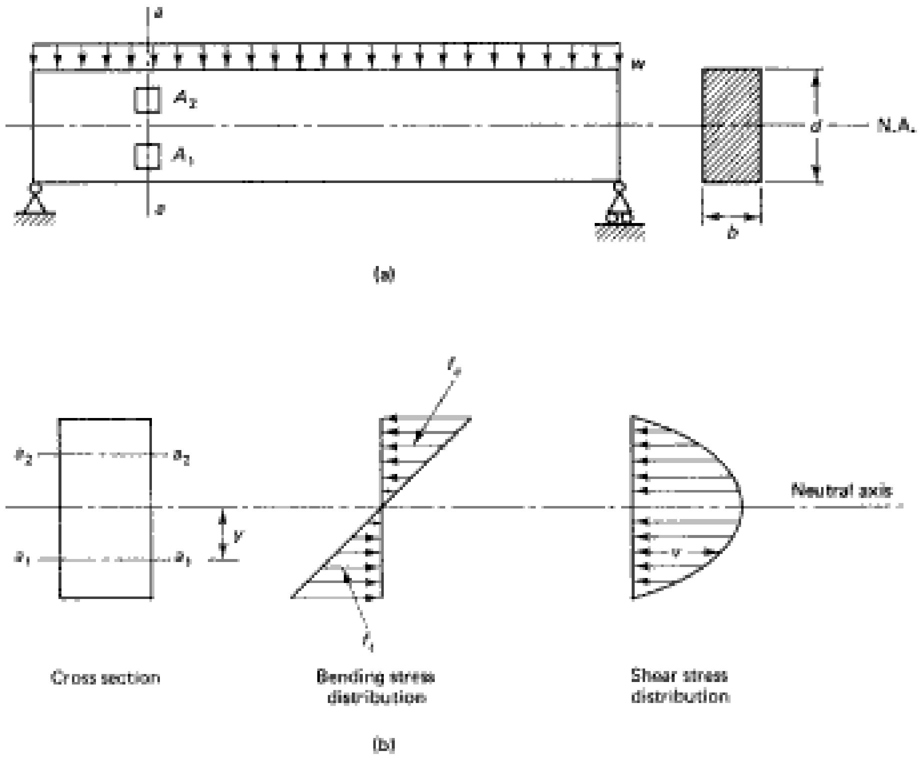


Figure 6.1 Stress distribution for a typical homogeneous rectangular beam.

and

$$\tan 2\theta_{max} = \frac{v}{f_t/2} \tag{6.3c}$$

6.3 BEHAVIOR OF REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS AS NONHOMOGENEOUS SECTIONS

The behavior of reinforced concrete beams differs in that the tensile strength of concrete is about one-tenth of its strength in compression. The compressive stress f_c in element A_2 of Fig. 6.2c above the neutral axis prevents cracking because the maximum principal stress in the element is in compression. For element A_1 below the neutral axis, the maximum principal stress is in tension; hence cracking ensues. As one moves toward the support, the bending moment and hence f_t decrease, accompanied by corresponding increase in the shear stress. The principal stress $f_{t(max)}$ in tension acts at an approximately 45° plane to the normal at sections close to the support, as seen in Fig. 6.3. Because of the low tensile strength of concrete, diagonal cracking develops along planes perpendicular to the planes of principal tensile stress; hence the term *diagonal tension cracks*. To prevent such cracks from opening, special "diagonal tension" reinforcement has to be provided.

If f_t close to the support in Fig. 6.3 is assumed equal to zero, the element becomes nearly in a state of pure shear and the principal tensile stress, using Eq. 6.3a, would be equal to the shear stress v on a 45° plane. It is this diagonal tension stress that causes the inclined cracks.

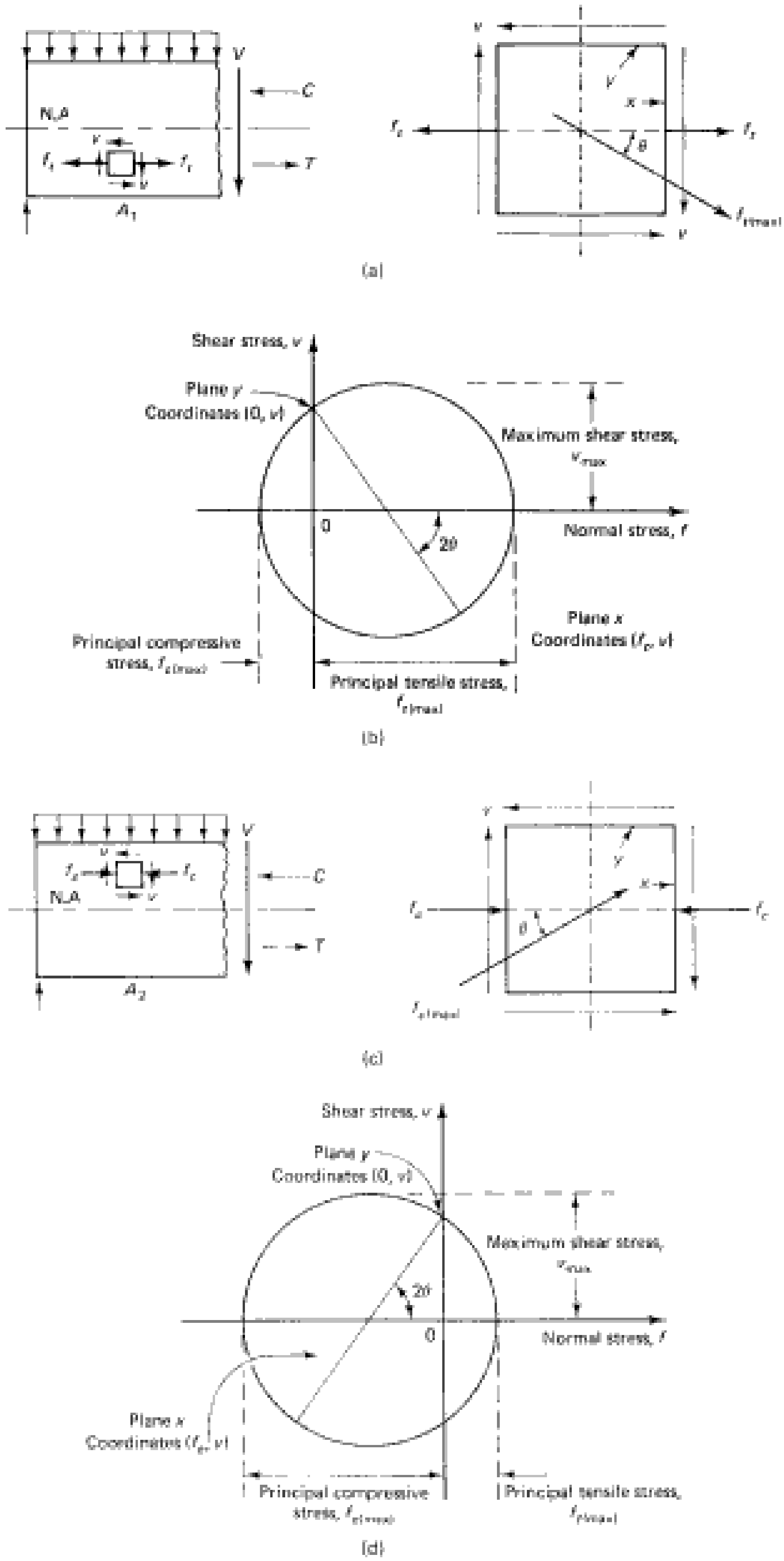


Figure 6.2 Stress states in elements A_1 and A_2: (a) stress state in element A_1; (b) Mohr's circle representation, element A_1; (c) stress state in element A_2; (d) Mohr's circle representation, element A_2.

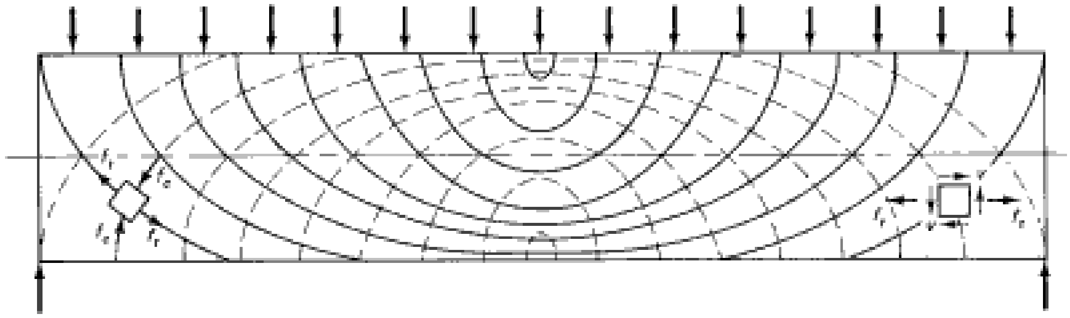


Figure 6.3 Trajectories of principal stresses in a homogeneous isotropic beam. Solid lines: tensile trajectories; dashed lines: compressive trajectories.

Definitive understanding of the correct shear mechanism in reinforced concrete is still incomplete. However, the approach of the ACI–ASCE Joint Committee 426 gives a systematic empirical correlation of the basic concepts developed from extensive test results.

6.4 REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS WITHOUT DIAGONAL TENSION REINFORCEMENT

In regions of large bending moments, cracks develop almost perpendicular to the axis of the beam. These cracks are called *flexural cracks.* In regions of high shear due to the diagonal tension, the inclined cracks develop as an extension of the flexural crack and are termed *flexure shear cracks.* Figure 6.4 portrays the types of cracks expected in a reinforced concrete beam with or without adequate diagonal tension reinforcement.

6.4.1 Modes of Failure of Beams without Diagonal Tension Reinforcement

The slenderness of the beam, that is, its shear span/depth ratio, determines the failure mode of the beam. Figure 6.5 demonstrates schematically the failure patterns. The shear span a for concentrated load is the distance between the point of application of the load and the face of support. For distributed loads, the shear span l_c is the clear beam span. Fundamentally, three modes of failure or their combinations occur: (1) flexural failure, (2) diagonal tension failure, and (3) shear compression failure. The more slender the beam, the stronger the tendency toward flexural behavior, as seen from the following discussion.

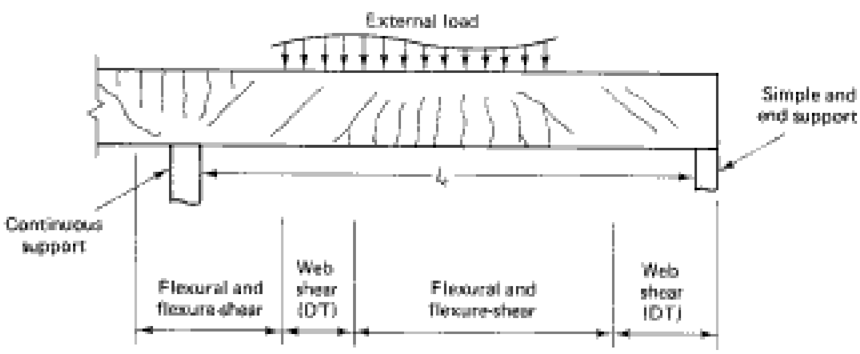


Figure 6.4 Crack categories.

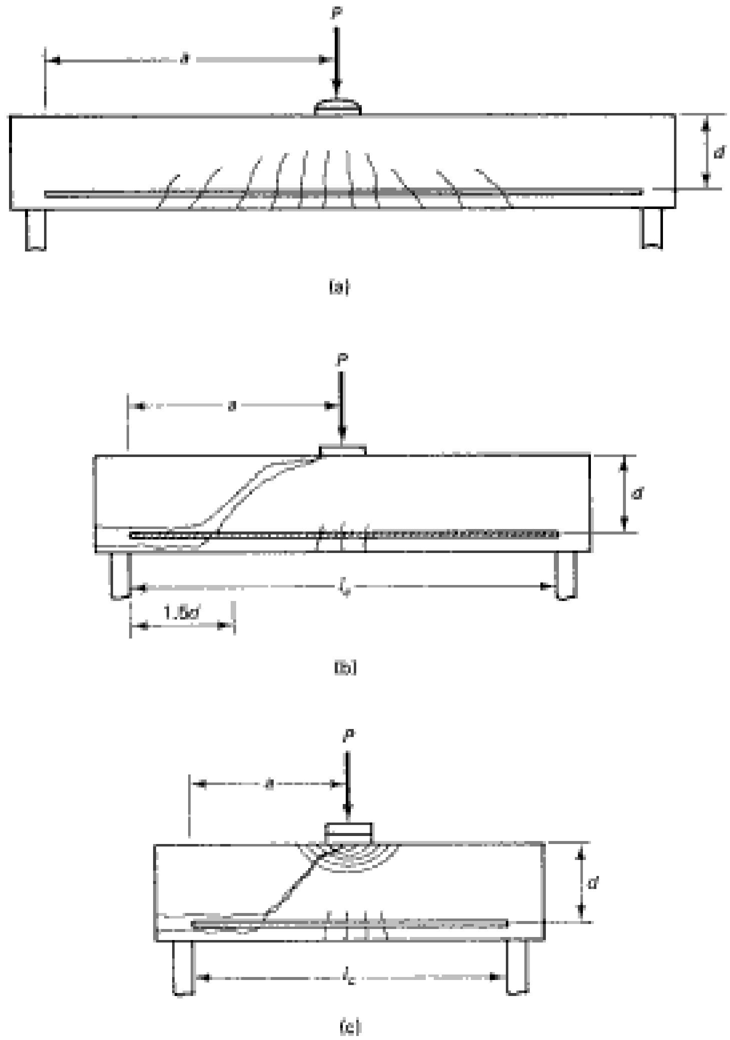


Figure 6.5 Failure patterns as a function of beam slenderness: (a) flexural failure; (b) diagonal tension failure; (c) shear compression failure.

6.4.2 Flexural Failure (F)

In this region, cracks are mainly vertical in the middle third of the beam span and perpendicular to the lines of principal stress. These cracks result from a very small shear stress v and a dominant flexural stress f of a value close to an almost horizontal principal stress $f_{t(max)}$. In such a failure mode, a few very fine vertical cracks start to develop in the midspan area at about 50% of the failure load in flexure. As the external load increases, additional cracks develop in the central region of the span, and the initial cracks widen and extend deeper toward the neutral axis and beyond, with a marked increase in the deflection of the beam. If the beam is underreinforced, failure occurs in a ductile manner by initial yielding of the main longitudinal flexural reinforcement. This type of behavior gives ample warning of the imminence of collapse of the beam. The shear span/depth ratio for this behavior exceeds a value of 5.5 in the case of concentrated loading and is in excess of 16 for distributed loading.

6.4.3 Diagonal Tension Failure (DT)

This failure precipitates if the strength of the beam in diagonal tension is lower than its strength in flexure. The shear span/depth ratio is of *intermediate* magnitude, with the ratio a/d varying between 2.5 and 5.5 for the case of concentrated loading. Such beams can be considered of intermediate slenderness. Cracking starts with the development of a few fine vertical flexural cracks at midspan, followed by the destruction of the bond between the reinforcing steel and the surrounding concrete at the support. Thereafter, without ample warning of impending failure, two or three diagonal cracks develop at about $1\frac{1}{2}d$ to $2d$ distance from the face of the support. As they stabilize, one of the diagonal cracks widens into a principal diagonal tension crack and extends to the top compression fibers of the beam, as seen in Figure 6.5b or 6.7. Notice that the flexural cracks do not propagate to the neutral axis in this essentially brittle failure mode, with relatively small deflection at failure.

6.4.4 Shear Compression Failure (SC)

These beams have a small shear span/depth ratio, a/d, of magnitude 1 to 2.5 for the case of concentrated loading and less than 5.0 for distributed loading. As in the diagonal tension case, few fine flexural cracks start to develop at midspan and stop propagating as destruction of the bond occurs between the longitudinal bars and the surrounding concrete at the support region. Thereafter, an inclined crack steeper than in the diagonal tension case suddenly develops and proceeds to propagate toward the neutral axis. The rate of its progress is reduced with crushing of the concrete in the top compression fibers and a redistribution of stresses within the top region. Sudden failure takes place as the principal inclined crack dynamically joins the crushed concrete zone, as illustrated in Fig. 6.5c. This type of failure can be considered relatively less brittle than the diagonal tension failure due to the stress redistribution. Yet it is, in fact, a brittle type of failure with limited warning, and such a design should be avoided completely.

A reinforced concrete beam or element is not homogeneous, and the strength of the concrete throughout the span is subject to a normally distributed variation. Hence one cannot expect that a stabilized failure diagonal crack occurs at both ends of the beam. Also, because of these properties, overlapping combinations of flexure–diagonal tension failure and diagonal tension–shear compression failure can occur at overlapping shear span/depth ratios. If the appropriate amount of shear reinforcement is provided, brittle failure of horizontal members can be eliminated with little additional cost to the structure. Table 6.1 summarizes the effect of the slenderness values on the mode of failure.

Table 6.1 Beam Slenderness Effect on Mode of Failure

Beam Category	Failure Mode	*Shear Span/Depth Ratio as a Measure of Slenderness*[a] Concentrated Load, a/d	Distributed Load, l_c/d
Slender	Flexure (F)	Exceeds 5.5	Exceeds 16
Intermediate	Diagonal tension (DT)	2.5–5.5	11–16[b]
Deep	Shear compression (SC)	1–2.5	1–5[b]

[a] a = shear span for concentrated loads
l_c = shear span for distributed loads
d = effective depth of beam
[b] For a uniformly distributed load, a transition develops from deep beam to intermediate beam effect.

6.5 DIAGONAL TENSION ANALYSIS OF SLENDER AND INTERMEDIATE BEAMS

The occurrence of the first inclined crack determines the shear strength of a beam without web reinforcement. Because crack development is a function of the tensile strength of the concrete in the beam web, a knowledge of the principal stress in the critical sections is necessary, as discussed in Sections 6.2 and 6.3. The controlling principal stress in concrete is the result of the shearing stress v_u due to the external factored shear V_u and the horizontal flexural stress f_t due to the external factored bending moment M_u. The ACI Code provides an empirical model based on results of extensive tests to failure of a large number of beams without web reinforcement. The model is a regression solution to the basic equation for two-dimensional principal stress at a point

$$f_{t(\max)} = f'_t = \frac{f_t}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{f_t}{2}\right)^2 + v^2}$$

where $f_{t(\max)}$ is the principal stress in tension and can be assumed to be equal to a constant multiplied by the tensile splitting strength f'_t of plain concrete. Since f'_t has been proven to be a function of $\sqrt{f'_c}$, Eq. 6.3a becomes

$$\sqrt{f'_c} = K_1\left[\frac{f_t}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{f_t}{2}\right)^2 + v^2}\right] \tag{6.4}$$

where K_1 is a constant.

The flexural stress f_t in the concrete is a function of the steel stress in the longitudinal reinforcement or the moment of resistance of the section, namely,

$$f_t \propto \frac{E_c}{E_s} f_s \propto \frac{E_c M_n}{E_s A_s d}$$

But the reinforcement ratio $\rho_w = A_s/bd$ at the tension side and E_c/E_s have a constant value. Hence

$$f_t = F_1 \frac{M_n}{\rho_w b_w d^2} \tag{6.5}$$

where F_1 is a constant to be determined by test and M_n is the nominal moment strength of a given section. The shear stress v at the specific cross-section bd due to the vertical external factored shear force V_n is

$$v = F_2 \frac{V_n}{b_w d} \tag{6.6}$$

where V_n is the nominal shear resistance at the section under consideration and F_2 is the other constant, to be determined from the beam tests. Coefficients F_1 and F_2 both depend on several variables, including the geometry of the beam, type of loading, amount and arrangement of reinforcement, and the interaction between the steel reinforcement and the concrete.

Substituting f_t of Eq. 6.5 and v of Eq. 6.6, rearranging terms, and evaluating the constants K_1, F_1, and F_2 of the experimental model yields the following regression expression:

$$\frac{V_n}{b_w d\sqrt{f'_c}} = 1.9 + 2500\rho_w \frac{V_n d}{M_n\sqrt{f'_c}} \le 3.5 \tag{6.7}$$

A plot of Eq. 6.7 is shown in Figure 6.6. Note that $M_u/V_u d = a/d$ (see Figure 6.5); consequently, Eq. 6.7 accounts indirectly for the shear span/depth ratio, hence it accounts for the slenderness of the member. If the nominal shear resistance of the *plain* concrete web is termed V_c, V_n in the left-hand side of Eq. 6.7 has to be expressed as V_c. Transform-

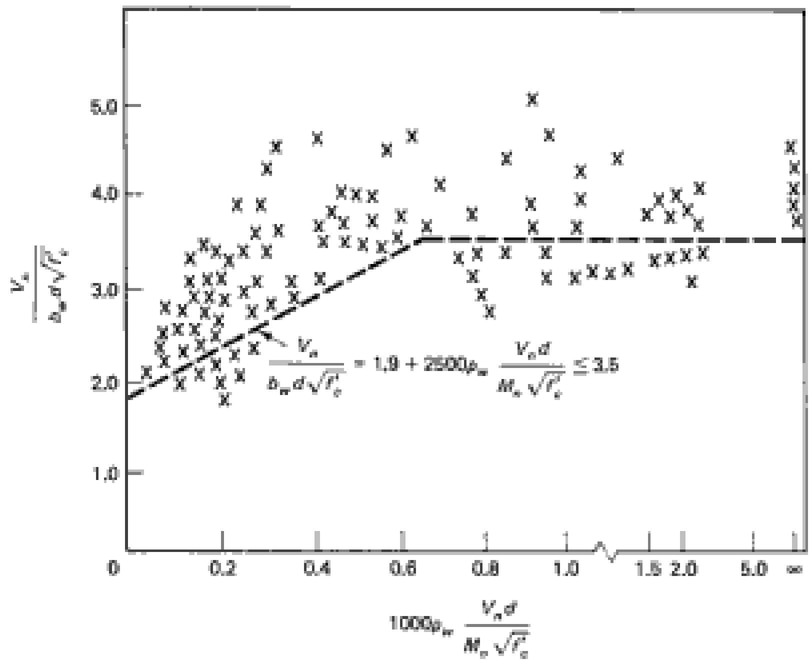


Figure 6.6 Shear resistance of reinforced concrete beam webs.

ing Eq. 6.7 into a force format for evaluation of the nominal shear resistance of the web of a beam of normal concrete and having no diagonal tension steel gives

$$V_c = 1.9 b_w d\sqrt{f'_c} + 2500\rho_w \frac{V_u d}{M_u} b_w d \le 3.5 b_w d\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{6.8}$$

It is to be emphasized that the ratio $V_n d/M_n$ or $V_u d/M_u$ cannot exceed 1.0, where $V_n = V_u/\phi$ and $M_n = M_u/\phi$ as the values of shear and moment at the section for which V_c is being evaluated. Also note that using nominal values (subscript n) results in a minor inaccuracy since ϕ is 0.9 for moment while it is 0.75 for shear.

For members subjected to axial compression, V_c can be calculated using Eq. 6.8 with a moment M_m substituted for M_u and $V_u d/M_u$ not limited to 1.0, where

$$M_m = M_u - N_u\left(\frac{4h - d}{8}\right)$$

The first critical values of V_u and M_u are taken at a distance d from the face of the support since the stabilized (principal) diagonal tension cracks develop in that zone, as seen from Fig. 6.5b. As one moves toward the midspan of the beam, the values of M_u and V_u will change. The appropriate moments M_u and shears V_u have to be calculated for the particular section that is being analyzed for web steel reinforcement.

The factor λ in the expressions for shear and torsion accounts for the type of concrete used with values as follows:

$\lambda = 1.0$ for normal weight concrete

$\lambda = 0.75$ for all lightweight concrete

Otherwise, λ has to be determined based on proportions of lightweight and normal weight aggregate, but not to exceed 0.85.

For simplicity of calculations, a more conservative ACI expression can be applied, particularly if the same beam section is not repetitively used in the structure:

$$V_c = \lambda \times 2.0\sqrt{f'_c}b_w d \tag{6.9}$$

where λ is a factor dependent on the type of concrete, with values of 1.0 for normal-weight concrete, 0.85 for sand-lightweight concrete, and 0.75 for all lightweight concrete.

However, fiber-reinforced concrete beams with hooked or crimped steel fibers in a dosage greater than or equal to 200 lb/yd^3 have shown in laboratory tests as shear strength greater than $3\,\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}b_w d$ (Ref. 6.31).

When axial compression also exists, V_c in Eq. 6.9 becomes

$$V_c = 2\lambda\left(1 + \frac{N_u}{2000A_g}\right)\sqrt{f'_c}b_w d \tag{6.10a}$$

When significant axial tension exists,

$$V_c = 2\lambda\left(1 + \frac{N_u}{500A_g}\right)\sqrt{f'_c}b_w d \tag{6.10b}$$

N_u/A_g is expressed in psi, where N_u is the axial load on the member and A_g is the gross area of the section; N_u is negative in tension.

In the case of circular members, the area used to compute V_c should be taken as the product of the diameter and the effective depth of the concrete section. It is permitted to take the effective depth as 0.8 times the diameter of the concrete section. For the circular hoops that are used for such sections, A_v is taken as two times the area of the bar size of a circular hoop, tie, or spiral at a spacing s, and f_{yh} as the specified yield strength of circular hoop, tie, or spiral reinforcement.

6.6 WEB STEEL PLANAR TRUSS ANALOGY

As discussed previously, web reinforcement has to be provided to prevent failure due to diagonal tension. Theoretically, if the necessary steel bars in the form of the tensile stress trajectories shown in Fig. 6.3 are placed in the beam, no shear failure can occur. However, practical considerations eliminate such a solution, and other forms of reinforcing are improvised to neutralize the principal tensile stresses at the critical shear failure planes. The mode of failure in shear reduces the beam to a simulated arched section in compression at the top and tied at the bottom by the longitudinal beam tension bars, as seen in Figure 6.7A(a). If one isolates the main concrete compression element shown in Figure 6.7A(b), it can be considered as the compression member of a triangular truss, as shown in Figure 6.7A(c) with the polygon of forces C_c, T_b, and T_s representing the forces acting on the truss members—hence the expression *truss analogy*. Force C_c is the compression in the simulated concrete strut, force T_b is the tensile force increment of the main longitudinal tension bar, and T_s is the force in the bent bar. Figure 6.7B(a) shows the analogy truss for the case of using vertical stirrups instead of inclined bars, with the forces polygon having a vertical tensile force T_s instead of the inclined one in Figure 6.7A(c).

As can be seen from the previous discussion, the shear reinforcement basically performs four main functions:

1. Carries a portion of the external factored shear force V_u
2. Restricts the growth of the diagonal cracks
3. Holds the longitudinal main reinforcing bars in place so that they can provide the dowel capacity needed to carry the flexural load
4. Provides some confinement to the concrete in the compression zone if the stirrups are in the form of closed ties.

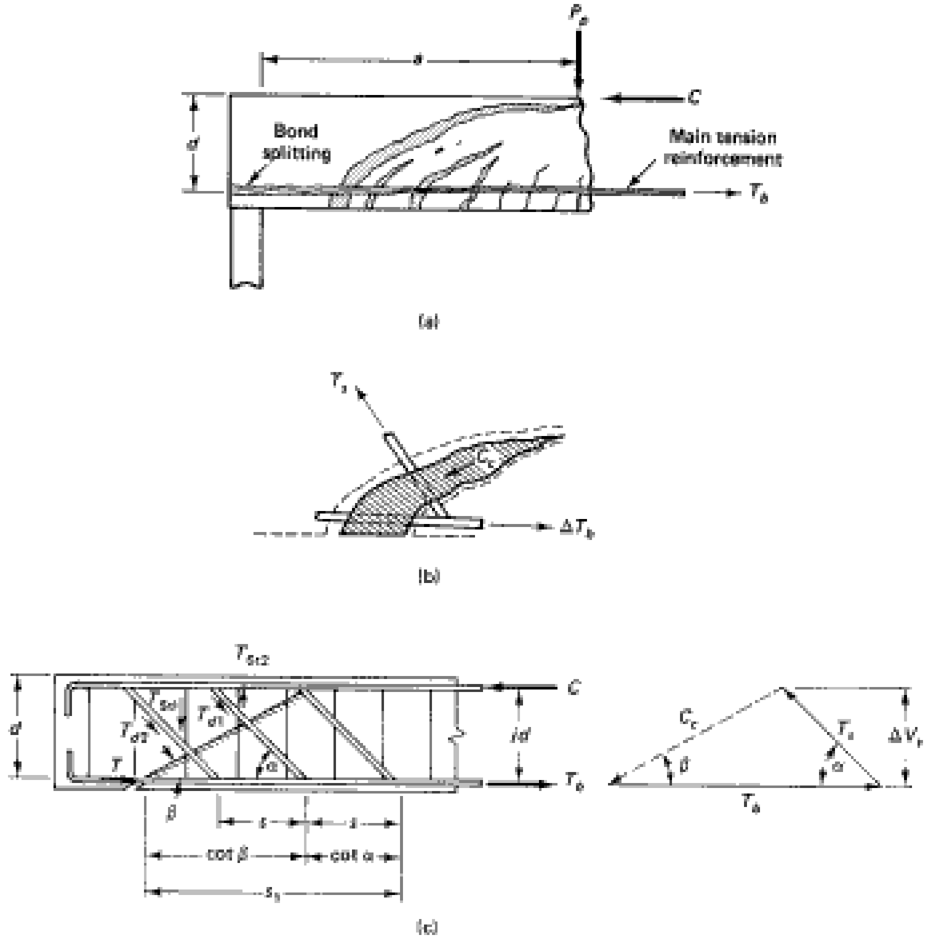


Figure 6.7A Diagonal tension failure mechanism: (a) failure pattern; (b) concrete simulated strut; (c) planar truss analogy.

This discussion, however, does not adequately account for the equilibrium role of additional longitudinal tensile reinforcement in enhancing the shear strength of a beam (Ref. 6.16 Sec. 3.2.1). To do so and hence maintain total equilibrium in beam shear caused by shear-bending interaction, one has to consider the horizontal tensile component $V_n \cot \theta$ of the vertical external nominal shear force V_n. This component is considered as equally shared by the top compression bars (truss compression chords) and the bottom longitudinal tensile bars (truss ties), as shown in Figure 6.8. While neglecting this tensile component is not significant when only shear is present, it has to be accounted for when torsion is also acting, as is discussed in Sec. 7.2. In such a case, the shear flow concept in a membrane element model should be applied in which both the longitudinal and transverse reinforcement have to be considered, as in Chapter 7, Figure 7.10.

6.6.1 Web Steel Resistance

If V_c, the nominal shear resistance of the plain web concrete, is less than the nominal total vertical shearing force $V_u/\phi = V_n$, web reinforcement has to be provided to carry the difference in the two values; hence

$$V_s = V_n - V_c \tag{6.11}$$

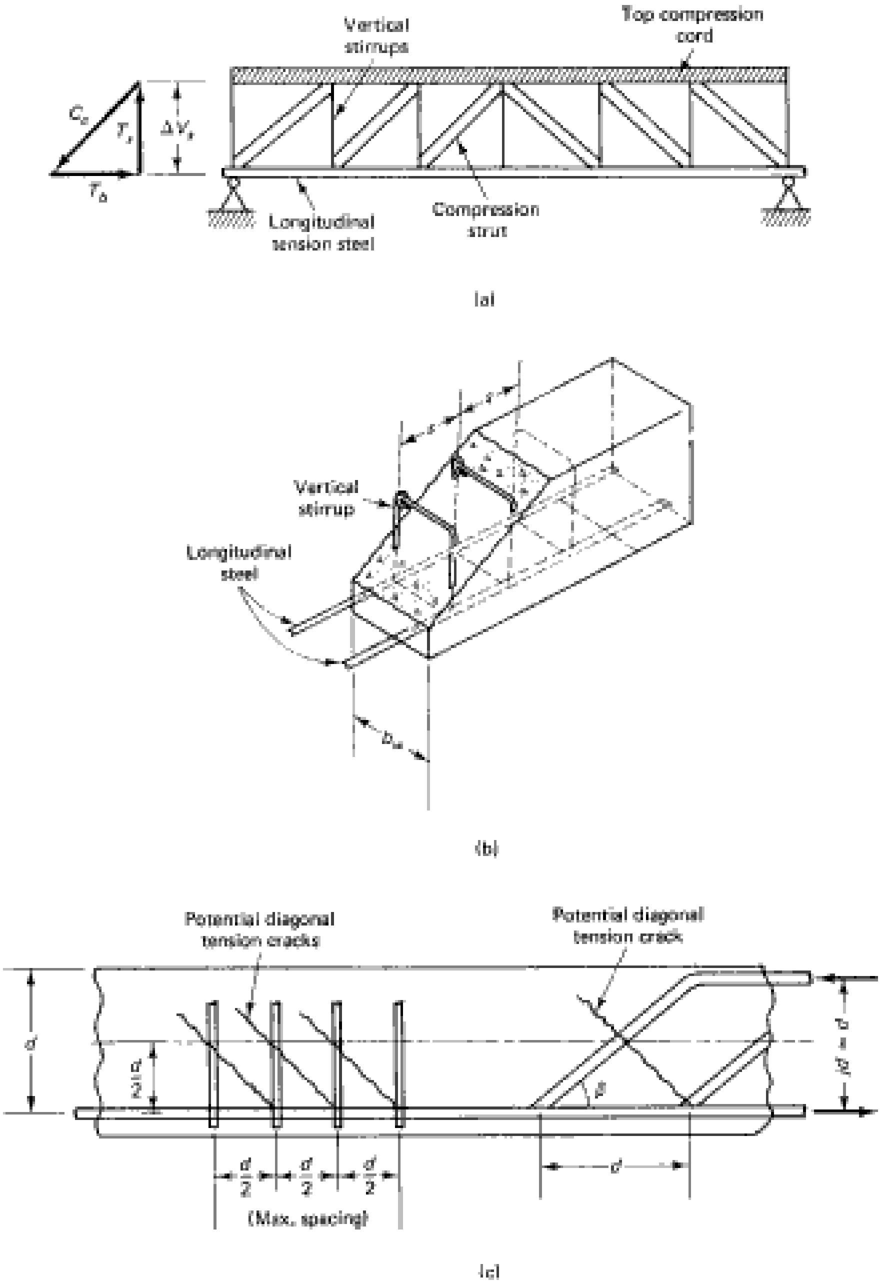


Figure 6.7B Web steel arrangement: (a) truss analogy for vertical stirrups; (b) three-dimensional view of vertical stirrups; (c) spacing of web steel.

The nominal resisting shear V_c can be calculated from Eq. 6.8 or 6.9, and V_s can be determined from equilibrium analysis of the bar forces in the analogous triangular truss cell. From Figure 6.7A(c),

$$V_s = T_s \sin \alpha = C_c \sin \beta \tag{6.12a}$$

where T_s is the force resultant of all web stirrups across the diagonal crack plane and n is the number of spacings s. If $s_1 = ns$ in the bottom tension chord of the analogous truss cell, then

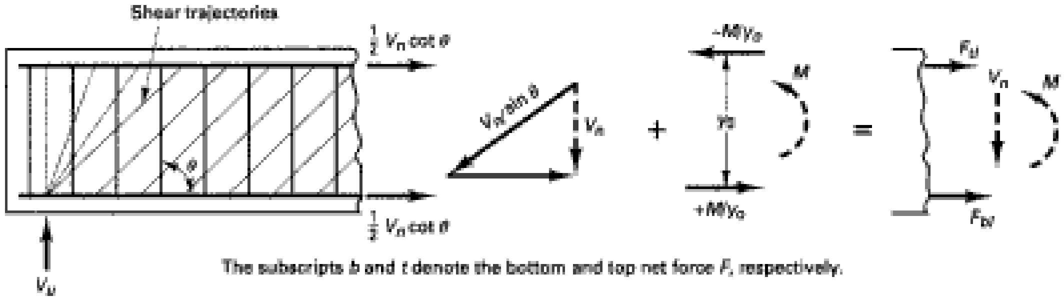


Figure 6.8 Shear–flexure interaction equilibrium.

$$s_1 = jd(\cot\alpha + \cot\beta) \tag{6.12b}$$

Assuming that moment arm $jd \simeq d$, the stirrup force per unit length from Eqs. 6.12a and 6.12b, where $s_1 = ns$, becomes

$$\frac{T_s}{s_1} = \frac{T_s}{ns} = \frac{V_s}{\sin\alpha}\,\frac{1}{d(\cot\beta + \cot\alpha)} \tag{6.12c}$$

If there are n inclined stirrups within the s_1 length of the analogous truss chord, and if A_v is the area of one inclined stirrup,

$$T_s = nA_v f_{yt} \tag{6.13a}$$

where f_{yt} = strength of transverse reinforcement

Hence

$$nA_v = \frac{V_s ns}{d\sin\alpha(\cot\beta + \cot\alpha)f_{yt}} \tag{6.13b}$$

But assume that in the case of diagonal tension failure the compression diagonal makes an angle $\beta = 45°$ with the horizontal; Eq. 6.13b becomes

$$V_s = \frac{A_v f_{yt} d}{s}\,[\sin\alpha(1 + \cot\alpha)]$$

to get

$$V_s = \frac{A_v f_{yt} d}{s}(\sin\alpha + \cos\alpha) \tag{6.14a}$$

or

$$s = \frac{A_v f_{yt} d}{V_n - V_c}(\sin\alpha + \cos\alpha) \tag{6.14b}$$

If the inclined web steel consists of a single bar or a single group of bars all bent at the same distance from the face of the support,

$$V_s = A_v f_{yt} \sin\alpha \leq 3.0\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$$

If vertical stirrups are used, angle α becomes 90°, giving

$$V_s = \frac{A_v f_{yt} d}{s} \tag{6.15a}$$

or

$$s = \frac{A_v f_{yt} d}{(V_u/\phi) - V_c} = \frac{A_v \phi f_{yt} d}{V_u - \phi V_c} \tag{6.15b}$$

6.6.2 Limitations on Size and Spacing of Stirrups

Equations 6.14 and 6.15 give inverse relationships between the spacing of the stirrups and the shear force or shear stress they resist, with the spacing s decreasing with the increase $(V_n - V_c)$. In order for every *potential* diagonal crack to be resisted by a vertical stirrup as seen in Fig. 6.7A(c), maximum spacing limitations are to be applied as follows for vertical stirrups:

1. $V_n - V_c > 4\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$: $s_{max} = d/4 \le 12$ in.
2. $V_n - V_c \le 4\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$: $s_{max} = d/2 \le 24$ in.
3. $V_n - V_c > 8\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$: enlarge section

A minimum web steel area A_v has to be provided if the factored shear force V_u exceeds one-half the shear strength ϕV_c of the plain concrete web. This precaution is necessary to prevent brittle failure, thus enabling both the stirrups and the beam compression zone to continue carrying the increasing shear after the formulation of the first inclined crack.

$$\text{Minimum } A_v = 0.75\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{b_w s}{f_{yt}} \quad \text{or} \quad A_v = \frac{50 b_w s}{f_{yt}}, \text{ whichever is larger} \tag{6.16}$$

where A_v is the area of all the vertical stirrup legs in the cross-section.

Summarizing, the minimum area of shear reinforcement, $A_{v,min}$, should be provided in all reinforced and prestressed flexural members where V_u exceed $0.5\,\phi V_c$.

6.7 WEB REINFORCEMENT DESIGN PROCEDURE FOR SHEAR

The following is a summary of the recommended sequence of design steps.

1. Determine the critical section and calculate the factored shear force V_u. When the reaction, in the direction of applied shear, introduces compression into the end regions of a member, the critical section can be assumed at a distance of d from the support, provided that no concentrated load acts between the support face and distance d thereafter.
2. Check whether

$$V_u \le \phi(V_c + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d)$$

   where b_w is the web width or diameter of the circular section. If this condition is not satisfied, the cross section has to be enlarged.
3. Use minimum shear reinforcement A_v if V_u is larger than one-half ϕV_c, with the following exceptions:
   (a) Concrete joist construction
   (b) Slabs and footings
   (c) Small shallow beams of depth not exceeding 10 in. (254 mm) or $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the flange thickness:

$$\text{Minimum } A_v = 0.75\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{b_w s}{f_{yt}} \quad \text{or} \quad A_v = \frac{50 b_w s}{f_{yt}}, \text{ whichever is larger}$$

   where f_{yt} = strength of transverse reinforcement.
   Good construction practice dictates that some stirrups always be used to facilitate proper handling of the reinforcement cage.
4. If $V_u > \phi V_c$, shear reinforcement must be provided such that $V_u \le \phi(V_c + V_s)$, where

$$V_s = \begin{cases} \dfrac{A_v f_{yt} d}{s} & \text{for vertical stirrups} \\[2ex] \dfrac{A_v f_{yt} d}{s}(\sin\alpha + \cos\alpha) & \text{for inclined stirrups} \end{cases}$$

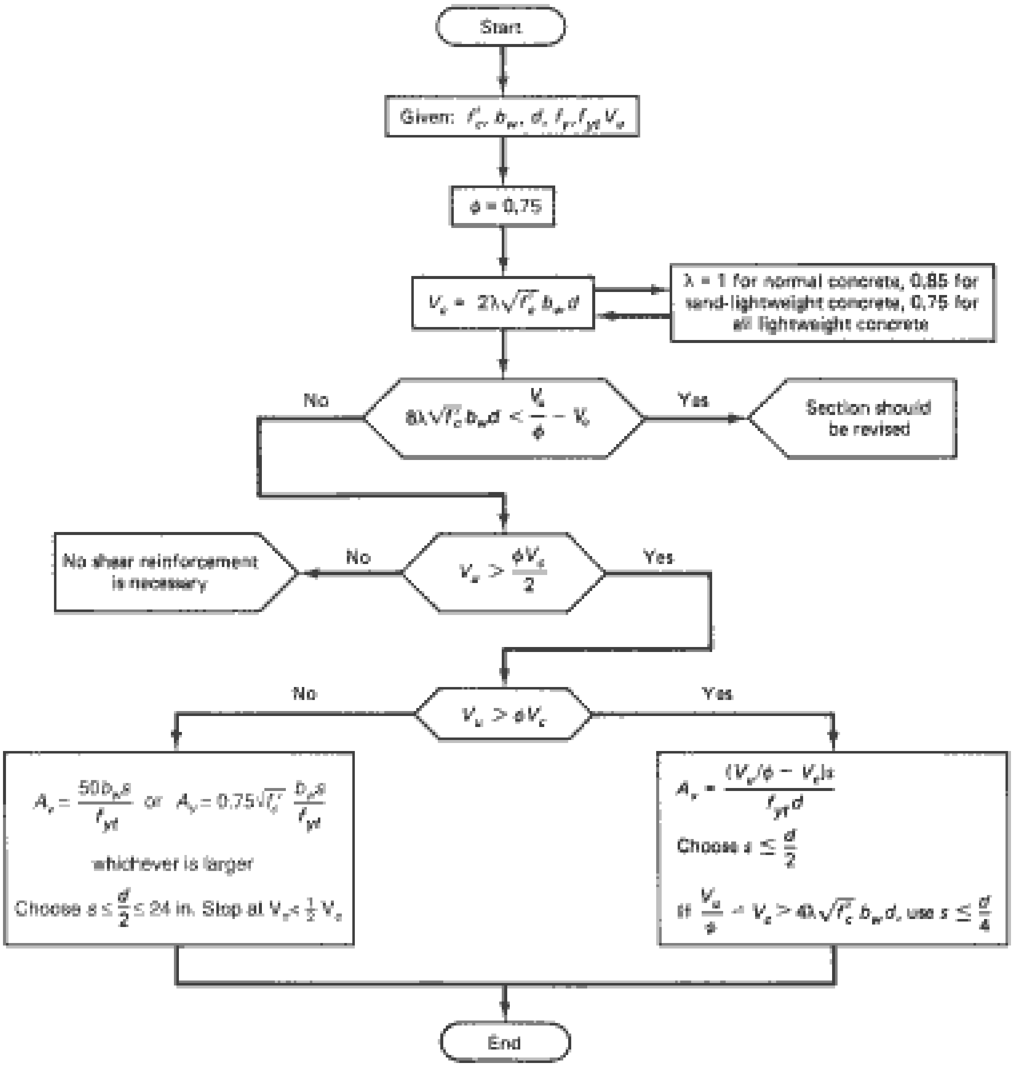


Figure 6.9 Flowchart for web reinforcement design procedure.

5. Maximum spacing s must be $s = d/2 \le 24$ in., except that in cases where

$$V_s > 4\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d \text{ the spacing then becomes } s \le d/4 \le 12 \text{ in.}$$

Figure 6.9 presents a flowchart for the performance of the sequence of calculations necessary for the design of vertical stirrups. Simple corresponding modifications of this chart can be made so that the chart can be used in the design of inclined web steel.

6.8 EXAMPLES OF THE DESIGN OF WEB STEEL FOR SHEAR

6.8.1 Example 6.1: Design of Web Stirrups

A rectangular isolated beam has an effective span of 25 ft (7.62 m) and carries a working live load of 7500 lb per linear foot (110 kN/m) and no external dead load except its self-weight. Design the necessary shear reinforcement. Use the simplified term of Eq. 6.9 for calculating the capacity V_c

$f'_c = 4000$ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete
$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)
$b_w = 14$ in. (356 mm)
$d = 28$ in. (712 mm)
$h = 30$ in. (762 mm)
longitudinal tension steel: six No. 9 bars (diameter 28.6 mm)
no axial force acts on the beam

Solution:

Factored shear force (Step 1)

$$\text{beam self-weight} = \frac{14 \times 30}{144} \times 150 = 438 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$\text{total factored load} = 1.2 \times 438 + 1.6 \times 7500 = 12{,}526 \text{ lb/ft}$$

The factored shear force at the face of the support is

$$V_u = \frac{25}{2} \times 12{,}526 = 156{,}575 \text{ lb}$$

The first critical section is at a distance $d = 28$ in. from the face of the support of this beam (half-span = 150 in.).

$$V_u \text{ at } d = \frac{150 - 28}{150} \times 156{,}575 = 127{,}348 \text{ lb}$$

Shear capacity (Step 2)

The shear capacity of the plain concrete in the web from the simplified equation for normal-weight concrete ($\lambda = 1.0$) is

$$V_c = 2.0\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 2 \times 1.0\sqrt{4000} \times 14 \times 28 = 49{,}585 \text{ lb}$$

Check for adequacy of section for shear:

$$8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 198{,}338 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{127{,}348}{0.75} = 169{,}797 \text{ lb} \quad \text{cross-section O.K.}$$

$$V_u > \frac{1}{2} V_c \quad \text{hence stirrups are necessary}$$

Shear reinforcement (Steps 3 to 5)

Try No. 4 two-legged stirrups (area per leg = 0.20 in.^{2}).

$$A_v = 2 \times 0.2 = 0.40 \text{ in.}^2$$

From Eq. 6.15b,

$$s = \frac{A_v f_{yt} d}{(V_u/\phi) - V_c} = \frac{0.4 \times 60{,}000 \times 28}{169{,}797 - 49{,}585}$$
$$= 5.6 \text{ in. (142 mm)}$$

Since $V_n - V_c > 4\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d$, the maximum allowable spacing $s = d/4 = 28/4 = 7$ in. At the critical section, $d = 28$ in. from the face of the support, the maximum allowable spacing would in this case be 5.6 in.

The shear force for distributed load decreases linearly from the support to midspan of the beam. Hence the web reinforcement can be reduced accordingly after determining the zone where minimum reinforcement is necessary and the zone where no web reinforcement is needed. The same size and spacing of stirrups needed at the critical section d from face of support should be continued to the support. Figure 6.10 illustrates the various values being calculated:

Critical plane x_d (consider the midspan as the origin): $V_u = 169{,}993$ lb and from before, $s = 5.6$ in. x_d from the midspan point $= 150 - 28 = 122$ in.

Plane x_1 at $s = d/4$ maximum spacing:

$$V_{s1} = 4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d = 4\sqrt{4000} \times 14 \times 28 = 99{,}169 \text{ lb}$$

$$V_{n1} = 99{,}169 + 49{,}585 = 148{,}754 \text{ lb}$$

$$x_1 \text{ from midspan point} = (150 - 28) \times \frac{148{,}754}{169{,}797} = 106.9 \text{ in.}$$

Plane x_2 at $s = d/2$ maximum spacing:

$$s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{V_n - V_c} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{28}{2} = \frac{0.4 \times 60{,}000 \times 28}{V_s}$$

or

$$V_{s2} = 48{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$V_{n2} = 48{,}000 + 49{,}585 = 97{,}585 \text{ lb}$$

$$x_2 \text{ from midspan point} = 122 \times \frac{97{,}585}{169{,}797} = 70.1 \text{ in.}$$

From Figure 6.10a, the distance 36.73 in. is the transition zone from $s = 7$ in. to $s = 14$ in.; hence a stirrup spacing of 8 in. center to center is shown in Figure 6.10b.

Plane x_3 at shear force V_c:

$$V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d = 49{,}585 \text{ lb}$$

$$x_3 \text{ from midspan point} = 122 \times \frac{49{,}585}{169{,}797} = 35.6 \text{ in.}$$

Discontinue the stirrups at plane where $V_n \leq \frac{1}{2}V_c$.

Minimum web steel: Test when $V_u > \frac{1}{2}\phi V_c$ or $V_n > \frac{1}{2}V_c$

$$V_n = 127{,}348$$

$$\frac{1}{2}V_c = \frac{1}{2} \times 49{,}585 = 24{,}793 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{minimum } A_v = \frac{50 b_w s}{f_{yt}} = \frac{50 \times 14 \times 14}{60{,}000} = 0.16 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$< \text{actual } A_v = 0.40 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

also

$$\text{maximum allowed } s = \frac{A_v f_{yt}}{50 b_w} = \frac{0.40 \times 60{,}000}{50 \times 14} = 34.3 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{versus maximum used } s = \frac{d}{2} = 14 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$x_y = 122.0 \times \frac{24{,}793}{169{,}797} = 17.8 \text{ in. from midspan}$$

Proportion the spacing of the vertical stirrups accordingly.

The shaded area in Figure 6.10a is the shear force area for which stirrups must be provided. The spacing of the stirrups in Figure 6.10b is based on the practical consideration of the desirability of using whole spacing dimensions and varying the spacing as little as possible.

6.8.2 Example 6.2: Alternative Solution to Example 6.1

Find the force V_c and the change in stirrup spacing for the beam in Ex. 6.1 if the more refined Eq. 6.8 is used where the separate contribution of the main longitudinal steel at the tension side is more accurately reflected.

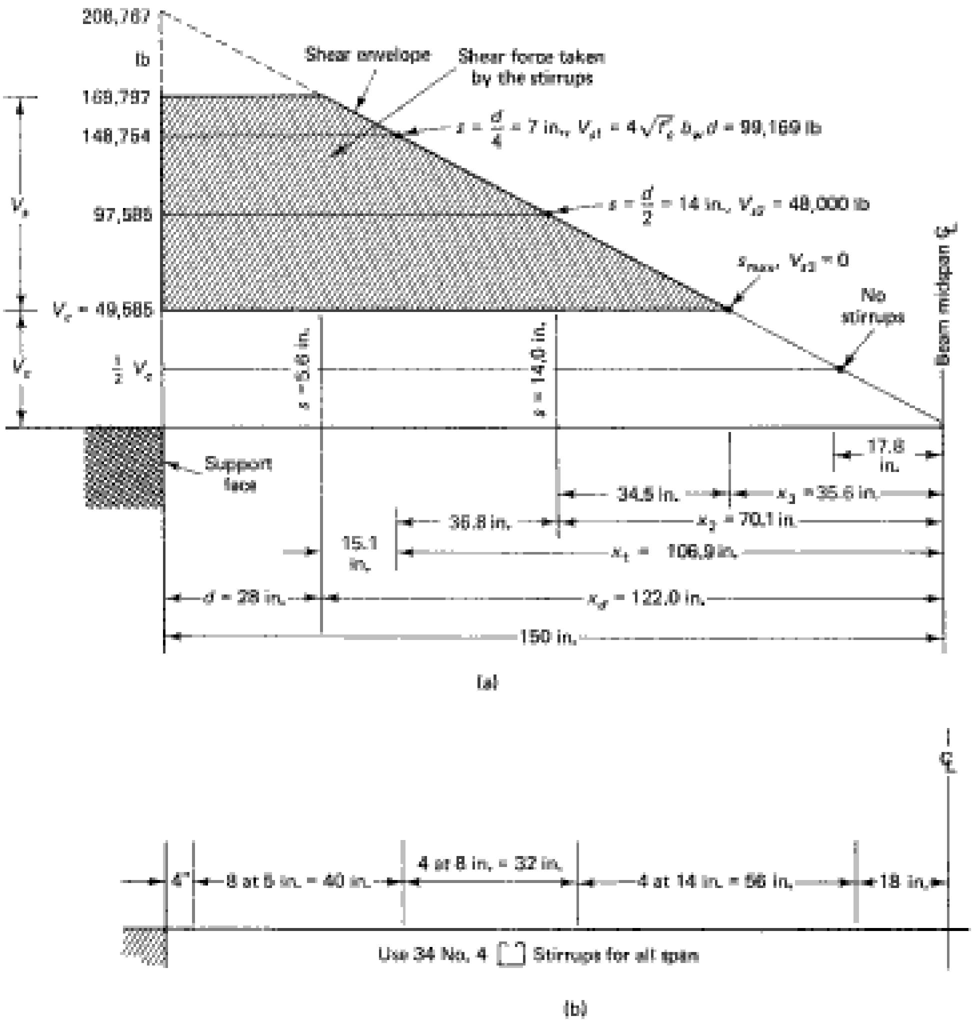


Figure 6.10 Stirrups arrangements for Ex. 6.1: (a) shear envelope and stirrup design segments; (b) vertical stirrups spacing.

Solution: The shear capacity of the plain concrete in the web is

$$V_c = 1.9\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d + 2500\rho_w \frac{V_u d}{M_u} b_w d \le 3.5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$$

where ρ_w is the longitudinal steel ratio in the web at the tension side only.

$$\rho_w = \frac{6.0}{14 \times 28} = 0.0153$$

$$V_u \text{ at } d \text{ from support} = 127{,}348 \text{ lb} \qquad \text{(Ex. 6.1)}$$

$$V_u d = 127{,}348 \times 28 = 3{,}565{,}744 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_u \text{ at } d \text{ from support} = \frac{w_u l}{2}(d) - \frac{w_u d^2}{2} = \left(12{,}526 \times \frac{25}{2}\right) \times 28 - \frac{12{,}526(28)^2}{12 \times 2}$$

$$= 3{,}974{,}917 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Photo 6.5 Two Union Square, Seattle, Washington, 20,000-psi high-strength concrete used for this high-rise building; design by the NBBJ Group, Architects. (Courtesy Turner Construction and the RBBJ Group, Dr. Weston Hester of the University of California, materials consultant.)

$$\frac{V_u d}{M_u} = \frac{3{,}565{,}744}{3{,}974{,}917} = 0.9 < 1.0 \qquad \text{use } 0.9$$

$$V_c = 1.9\sqrt{4000} \times 14 \times 28 + 2500 \times 0.0153 \times 0.9 \times 14 \times 28$$

$$= 47{,}105.4 \text{ lb} + 13{,}494.6 = 60{,}600 \text{ lb}$$

At face of support, where $V_u d/M_u = 1.0$ for this beam, $V_c = 47{,}105.4 + 14{,}994 = 62{,}100$ lb. Use a two-legged No. 4 size vertical stirrup, as in Ex. 6.1.

$$s = \frac{A_v f_{yt} d}{V_u/\phi - V_c} = \frac{0.4 \times 60{,}000 \times 28}{169{,}797 - 60{,}600} = 6.15 \text{ in.} \quad (156.0 \text{ mm})$$

For $s = d/4 = 7$ in.:

$$4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 4\sqrt{4000} \times 14 \times 28 = 99{,}169 \; lb$$

By similar triangles from Figure 6.11(a),

$$x_1 = \frac{(122 - 35.6) \times 99{,}169}{(169{,}797 - 60{,}600)} + 35.6 = \frac{86.4 \times 99{,}169}{109{,}197} + 35.6 = 78.5 + 35.6 = 114.1 \; in.$$

$$V_{c1} = \frac{78.5(60{,}600 - 49{,}585)}{86.4} + 49{,}585 = 10{,}008 + 49{,}585 = 59{,}593 \; lb$$

$$V_{n1} = 59{,}593 + 99{,}169 = 158{,}762 \; lb$$

For $s = d/2 = 14$ in.:

$$s_2 = A_v f_{yt} d/(V_n - V_c), \; or \; \frac{28}{2} = \frac{0.40 \times 60{,}000 \times 28}{V_s} \quad giving \quad V_s = 48{,}000 \; lb$$

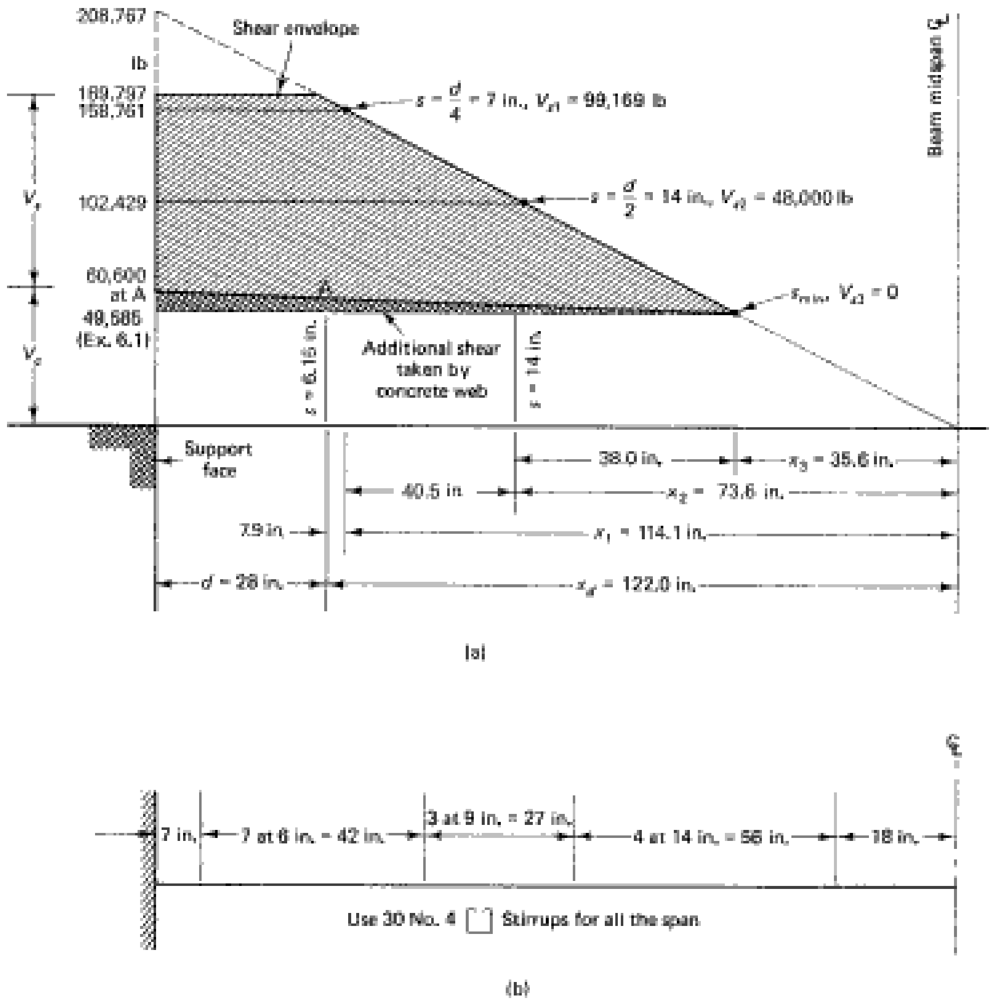


Figure 6.11 Stirrups arrangement for Ex. 6.2: (a) shear envelope and stirrup design segments; (b) vertical stirrups spacing.

By similar triangles from Figure 6.11(a) as in the case for $s_1 = d/4$,

$$x_2 = \frac{86.4 \times 48,000}{109,197} + 35.6 = 38.0 + 35.6 = 73.6 \text{ in.}$$

$$V_{c2} = \frac{38.0\,(60,600 - 49,585)}{86.4} + 49,585 = 4845 + 49,585 = 54,430 \text{ lb}$$

$$V_{n2} = 54,430 + 48,000 = 102,430 \text{ lb}$$

At the point in the shear envelope where $V_s = 0$, the value of $V_u d/M_u$ in Eq. 6.8 is close to zero for uniformly distributed loads. Hence assume that

$$V_c = 2.0\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d \quad \text{instead of} \quad V_c = 1.9\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d + 2500\rho_w \frac{V_u d}{M_u} b_w d$$

$\lambda = 1.0$ for normal-weight concrete. Therefore, use $x_3 = 35.6$ in. in Figure 6.11 (as in Figure 6.10 of Ex. 6.1) as being accurate enough for all practical purposes. Proportion the spacing of the stirrups accordingly as in Fig. 6.11b.

The shear diagram showing all these details is given in Figure 6.11. It can be seen that this refined solution reduces the shear taken by the stirrups at the d critical section by the difference between the 49,585 lb of Ex. 6.1 and the 60,600 lb of Ex. 6.2, as shown in the darkly shaded portion. This difference is taken by the plain concrete in the web. There is a small saving in the number of stirrups that can be justified only if the beam section designed by the refined method is extensively and repetitively used in a multifloor multispan building.

Note in these shear problems that if concentrated loads act on the beam close to the midspan or, in the case of reversible loads, Figure 6.12, almost constant stirrup spacing throughout the span becomes necessary. The spacing to be used would be that required at the critical section at distance d from the face of the support. Superposition of the shear diagram for a concentrated live load over that of the distributed load due to self-weight or otherwise gives the total shear force for stirrup spacing determination. Note that the V_c values

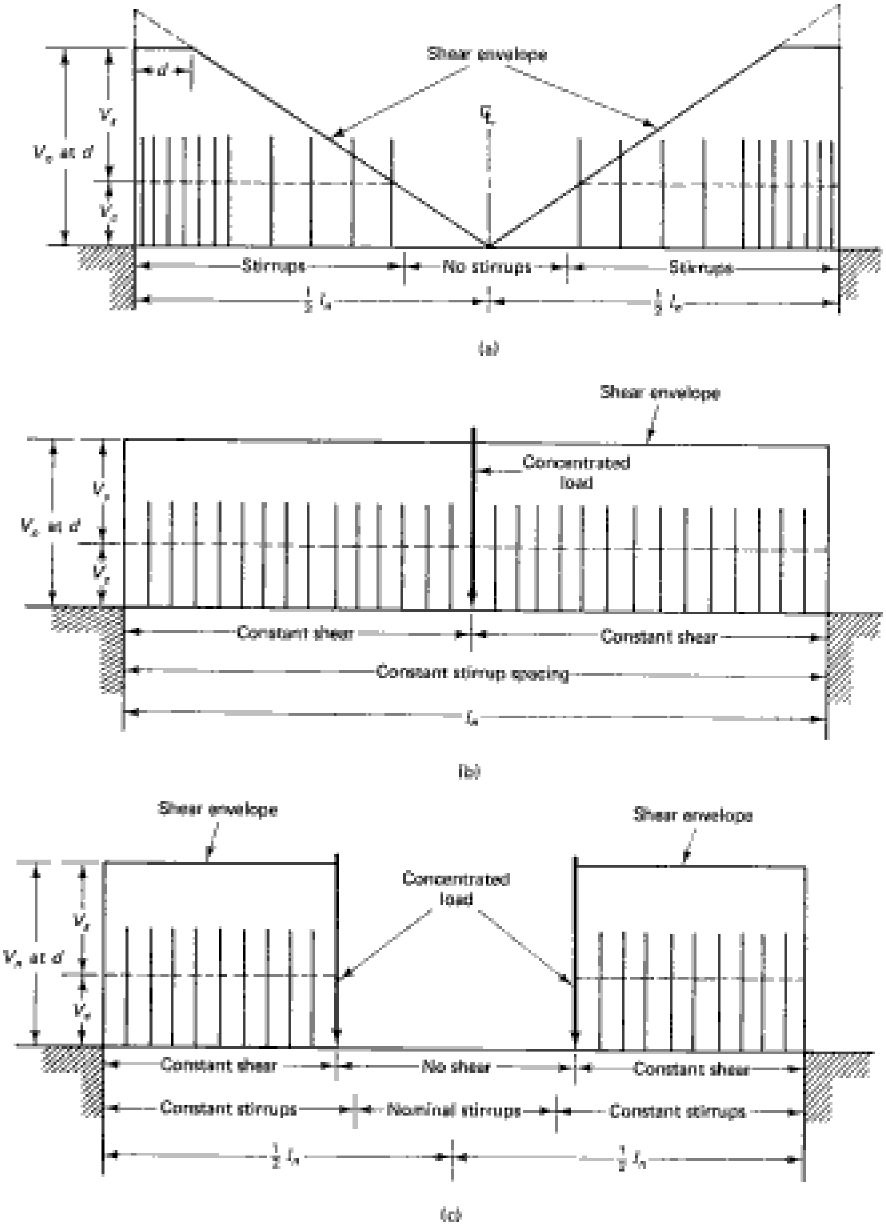


Figure 6.12 Schematic stirrups distribution: (a) stirrups spacing for uniformly distributed load on beam; (b) stirrups spacing for centrally loaded beam; (c) stirrups spacing for third-point loaded beam. Self-weight is not included in the shear envelope.

using Eq. 6.8 give a parabolic line in Figure 6.11 for the cross-shaded portion, approximated by a straight-inclined line in the solution and plotted as such in the diagram.

6.9 DEEP BEAMS: NONLINEAR APPROACH

Deep beams are structural elements loaded as beams but having a large depth/thickness ratio and a shear span/depth ratio not exceeding 2 for concentrated load and 4 for distributed load, where the shear span is the clear span of the beam for distributed load. Floor slabs under horizontal loads, wall slabs under vertical loads, short-span beams carrying heavy loads, and some shear walls are examples of this type of structural element.

Because of the geometry of deep beams, they behave in a nonlinear analysis as two-dimensional rather than one-dimensional members and are subjected to a two-dimensional state of stress. As a result, plane sections before bending do not necessarily remain plane after bending. The resulting strain distribution is no longer considered linear, and shear deformations that are neglected in normal beams become significant compared to pure flexure. Consequently, the stress block becomes nonlinear even at the elastic stage. At the limit state of ultimate load, the compressive stress distribution in the concrete would no longer follow the same parabolic shape or intensity as that shown in Fig. 5.2c for a normal beam.

Figure 6.13 illustrates the linearity of the stress distribution at midspan prior to cracking in a normal beam where the effective span/depth ratio exceeds a value of $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 5. In contrast, Figure 6.14a shows the nonlinearity of stress at midspan corresponding to the nonlinear strain under discussion. Recognize also that the magnitude of the maximum tensile stress at the bottom fiber far exceeds the magnitude of the maximum compressive stress. The stress trajectories in Fig. 6.14b and c confirm this observation. Note the steepness and concentration of the principal tensile stress trajectories at midspan and the concentration of the compressive stress trajectories at the support for both cases of loading of the beam at top or bottom.

The concrete cracks in a direction perpendicular to the tensile principal stress trajectories. As the load increases, the cracks widen and propagate, and more cracks open. Hence less and less concrete remains to resist the indeterminate state of stress. Because the shear span is small, the compressive stresses in the support region affect the magnitude and direction of the principal tensile stresses such that they become less inclined and lower in value.

In many cases, the cracks would almost be vertical or follow the direction of the compression trajectories, with the beam almost shearing off from the support in a total shear failure. Hence, in the case of deep beams, horizontal reinforcement is needed throughout the height of the beams, in addition to the vertical shear reinforcement along the span. From Fig. 6.14b and c and the steep gradient of the tensile stress trajectories at the lower fibers, a concentration of horizontal reinforcing bars is required to resist the high tensile stresses at the lower regions of the deep beam (Ref. 6.8, 6.9).

Additionally, the high depth/span ratio of the beam should provide an increased resistance to the external shear load due to a higher compressive arch action. Consequently, it should be expected that the nominal resisting shear strength V_c for the plain concrete in deep beams will considerably exceed the V_c value for normal beams.

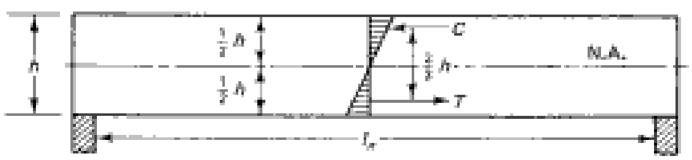


Figure 6.13 [illegible] normal beams ($l_n/h \ge 3\frac{1}{2}$ to 5).

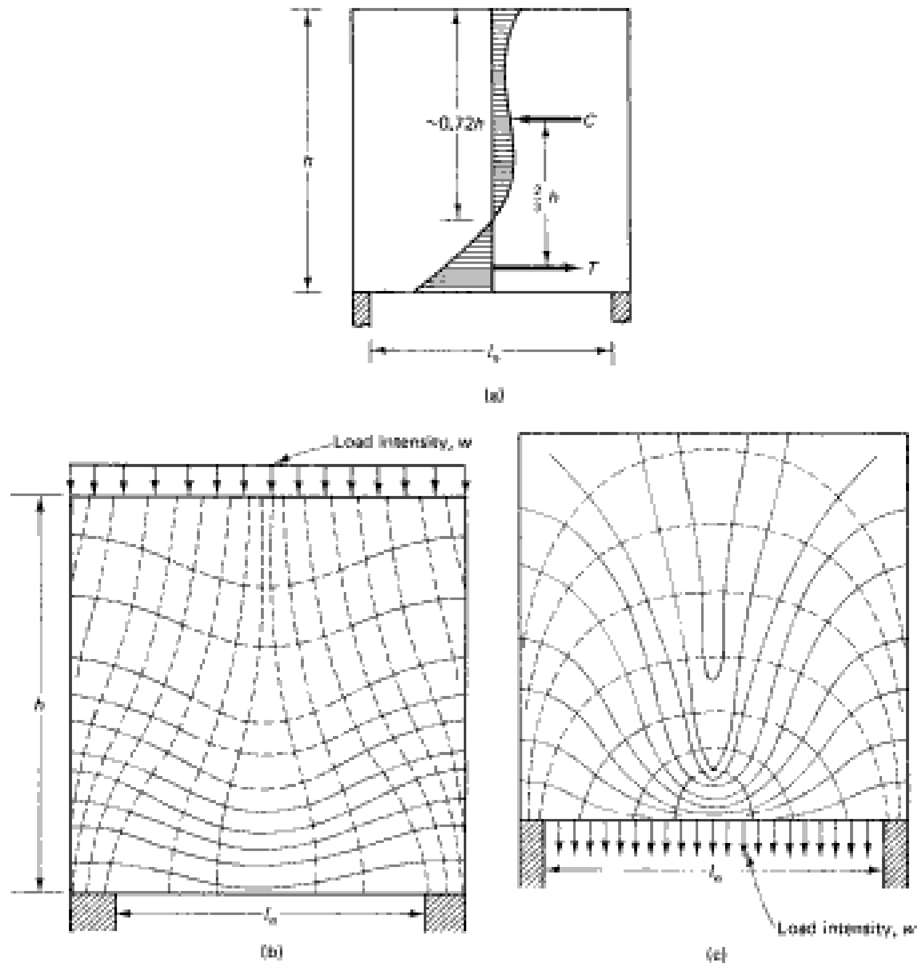


Figure 6.14 Elastic stress distribution in deep beams: (a) deep beam ($l_n/h \leq 1.0$); (b) principal stress trajectories in deep beams loaded on top; (c) principal stress trajectories in deep beams loaded at bottom.

In summary, shear in deep beams is a major consideration in their design. The magnitude and spacing of both the vertical and horizontal shear reinforcement differ considerably from those used in normal beams, as well as the expressions that have to be used for their design.

Another totally different approach is the *Strut-and-Tie* truss model approach presented in Section 6.11, including a full design comparative example, and appears in ACI 318-08 Code Appendix A. The Euro Code, EC-2, (Ref. 6.26) maintains, however, that the linear elastic approach presented in Section 6.9 is one of the recommended methods, and lumps the design of deep beams with the design of walls. It stipulates also that for the strut-and-tie method to be efficient and economical, the solution should be computer oriented for the analysis of such in-plane structures (Ref. 6.28).

6.9.1 Design Criteria for Shear in Deep Beams Loaded at the Top

From the discussion in Section 6.9, it can be inferred that deep beams ($a/d < 2.0$ and $l_n/d < 4.0$) have a higher nominal shear resistance V_c than do normal beams, where a = shear span to support face for concentrated load, and l_n = shear span for distributed load (Fig. 6.5). While th[illegible] the factored shear force V_u is taken at distance d from the face of the support in normal beams, the shear plane in the deep beam is considerably steeper in inclination and closer to the support. If x is the distance of the failure plane from the face of the support, l_n the clear span for uniformly distributed load, and a the shear arm or span for concentrated loads, the expression for distance is

$$\text{uniform load:} \qquad x = 0.15 l_n \tag{6.17a}$$

$$\text{concentrated load:} \quad x = 0.50 a \tag{6.17b}$$

In either case, the distance x should not exceed the effective depth d.

The factored shear force V_u has to satisfy the condition

$$V_u \leq \phi(10\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d) \tag{6.18a}$$

or

$$V_n = 10\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d] \tag{6.18b}$$

If not, the section has to be enlarged. The strength reduction factor $\phi = 0.75$.

The present ACI Code does not give guidance on determining the shear value V_c of the plain concrete or the maximum permissible value, although the shear capacity of the plain concrete in the deep beam has to be considerably higher than in normal beams as previously discussed. A value of $V_c \leq 6.0\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$ can be used for deep beams as compared to the limit value of $V_c \leq 3.5\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$ in normal beams. In the strut-and-tie approach given in Section 6.11, compressive forces in the struts and tensile forces in the ties are used for determining the necessary reinforcement in lieu of the approach presented in this section.

Using an empirical approach and provided that the deep beam is loaded at the top surface and supported at the bottom surface, the nominal shear resisting force V_c of the plain concrete can be taken as

$$V_c = \left(3.5 - 2.5\frac{M_u}{V_u d}\right)\left(1.9\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + 2500\rho_w \frac{V_u d}{M_u}\right) b_w d \leq 6\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d \tag{6.19a}$$

where $1.0 < 3.5 - 2.5(M_u/V_u d) \leq 2.5$. This factor is a multiplier of the basic equation for V_c in normal beams to account for the higher resisting capacity of deep beams. If some minor unsightly cracking is not tolerated, the designer can use

$$V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d \tag{6.19b}$$

When the factored shear V_u exceeds ϕV_c, shear reinforcement has to be provided such that $V_u \leq \phi(V_c + V_s)$, where V_s is the force resisted by the shear reinforcement:

$$V_s = \left[\frac{A_v}{s_v}\left(\frac{1 + l_n/d}{12}\right) + \frac{A_{vh}}{s_h}\left(\frac{11 - l_n/d}{12}\right)\right] f_y d \tag{6.20}$$

where A_v = total area of vertical reinforcement spaced at s_v in the horizontal direction at both faces of the beam

A_{vh} = total area of horizontal reinforcement spaced at s_h in the vertical direction at both faces of the beam

$$\text{maximum } s_v \leq \frac{d}{5} \leq 12 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{maximum } s_h \leq \frac{d}{5} \leq 12 \text{ in.}$$

and

$$\text{minimum } A_{vh} = 0.0015 b s_h \tag{6.21a}$$

$$\text{minimum } A_v = 0.0025 b s_v \tag{6.21b}$$

The shear reinforcement required at the critical section must be provided throughout the deep beams.

In the case of continuous deep beams, because of the large stiffness and negligible rotation of the beam section at the supports, the continuity factor at the first interior support has a value close to 1.0. Consequently, the same reinforcement for shear can be used in all spans for all practical purposes if all the spans are equal and similarly loaded.

Another approach to the design of deep beams and corbels is the strut-and-tie method as detailed in Section 6.11. The net result is the increase in the area of the longitudinal reinforcement required using the latter approach on the basis of the compressive stress flow path selected by the design engineer for the concentrated external loads acting on the member.

6.9.2 Design Criteria for Flexure in Deep Beams

6.9.2.1 Simply-supported Beams. The ACI Code does not specify a design procedure but requires a rigorous nonlinear analysis for the flexural analysis and design of deep beams. The simplified provisions presented in this section are based on the recommendations of the Euro-International Concrete Committee (CEB Ref. 6.8).

Figure 6.14a shows a schematic stress distribution in a homogeneous deep beam having a span/depth ratio $l_n/h \simeq 1.0$. It was experimentally observed that the moment lever arm does not change significantly even after initial cracking. Since the nominal resisting moment is

$$M_n = A_s f_y \text{ (moment arm } jd) \tag{6.22a}$$

the reinforcement area A_s for flexure is

$$A_s = \frac{M_u}{\phi f_y jd} \geq \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} bd \geq \frac{200bd}{f_y} \tag{6.22b}$$

The lever arm as recommended by CEB is

$$jd = 0.2(l + 2h) \quad \text{for } 1 \leq \frac{l}{h} < 2 \tag{6.23a}$$

and

$$jd = 0.6l \qquad \text{for } \frac{l}{h} < 1 \tag{6.23b}$$

where l is the effective span measured center to center of supports or 1.15 clear span l_n, whichever is smaller. The tension reinforcement has to be placed in the lower segment of beam height such that the segment height is

$$y = 0.25h - 0.05l < 0.20h \tag{6.24}$$

It should consist of closely spaced small-diameter bars well anchored into the supports.

6.9.2.2 Continuous Beams. Continuous deep beams can be treated in the same manner as simply supported deep beams in the empirical approach outlined in the previous section, except that additional reinforcement has to be provided for the negative moment at the support. Figure 6.15 presents stress trajectories of the principal tensile and compressive stresses in a continuous deep beam. Comparing this diagram to Figure 6.14b for the simply supported case, one can observe the similarity of the steepness of the tensile stress trajectories at midspan. At the continuous supports, the total section is in tension. These principal stress trajectories serve as guidelines for the compression strut paths discussed in Section 6.11.

The concentration of the tensile stress trajectories at the support regions of the continuous deep beam necessitates a concentration of well-anchored horizontal shear reinforcement. The required total flexural reinforcement area

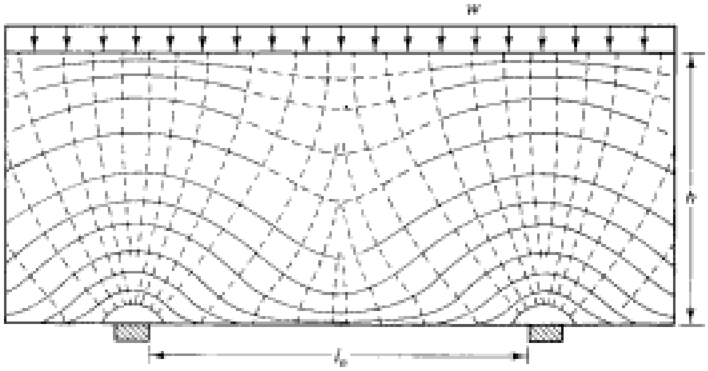


Figure 6.15 Tensile and compression trajectories in a continuous deep beam. Solid line: tension trajectories; dashed line: compression trajectories.

$$A_s = \frac{M_u}{\phi f_y jd} \geq \frac{200bd}{f_y} \geq \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} bd$$

as in Eq. 6.22b for the simply-supported beam. The lever arm jd is, however, different and has a value

$$jd = 0.2(l + 1.5h) \quad \text{for } 1 \leq \frac{l}{h} \leq 2.5 \tag{6.25a}$$

$$jd = 0.5l \quad \text{for } \frac{l}{h} < 1.0 \tag{6.25b}$$

The distribution of the negative flexural reinforcement A_s in continuous beams should be such that the steel area A_{s1} should be placed in the top 20% of the beam depth, and the balance steel area A_{s2} at the next 60% of the beam depth, as shown in Fig. 6.16. The value of A_{s1} and A_{s2} would be as follows:

$$A_{s1} = 0.5\left(\frac{l}{h} - 1\right)A_s \tag{6.26a}$$

$$A_{s2} = A_s - A_{s1} \tag{6.26b}$$

For cases where the ratio l/h has a value equal to or less than 1.0, use nominal steel for A_{s1} in the top 20% of the beam depth and provide the total A_s in the next 60% of the

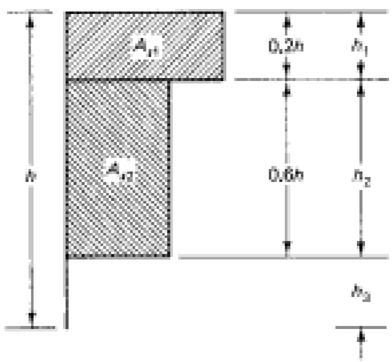


Figure 6.16 Distribution of horizontal flexural steel in continuous deep beams.

depth. In the lower h_3 zone the positive reinforcement coming from the beam span should pass through the support for anchorage and continuity.

6.9.3 Sequence of Deep Beams Design Steps for Shear

The following is a recommended procedure for the design of shear reinforcement in deep beams based on ACI requirements. The sequence of steps should essentially be similar to that in Section 6.7 for web reinforcement design in normal beams. Additionally, flexural reinforcement has to be provided to resist the stresses due to bending.

1. Check whether the beam can be classified as a deep beam, that is, $a/d < 2.0$ or $l_n/d < 4.0$ for a concentrated or a uniform load, respectively.
2. Determine the critical section distances x from the face of support: $x = 0.5a$ for concentrated load and $x = 0.15l_n$ for distributed load. Calculate the factored V_n at the critical section, and check whether it is less than the maximum $\phi V_n = V_u$ permitted by Eqs. 6.18a or 6.18b; if not, enlarge the beam section.
3. Calculate the shear resisting capacity V_c of the plain concrete from Eq. 6.19.
4. Calculate V_s if $V_u > \phi V_c$ and choose s_v and s_h by assuming the size of shear reinforcement in both the horizontal and vertical directions.
5. Verify if the size and maximum spacing from step 4 satisfy Eqs. 6.21a and 6.21b; if not, revise and recheck using Eq. 6.20.
6. Select reasonable size and spacing of the shear reinforcement in both horizontal and vertical directions. Where possible, use welded wire fabric mats since they provide superior anchorage of the reinforcement to tied bar mats and are easier to handle and keep in position at both faces of the deep beam.
7. Design the flexural reinforcement as in Section 6.9.2 after determining the moment lever arm jd for the particular case of simply supported or continuous deep beams.
8. Distribute the flexural reinforcement in accordance with Eqs. 6.26a and 6.26b and Fig. 6.16 if the beam is continuous. If the beam is simply supported, concentrate the flexural horizontal longitudinal bars in the lower $(0.25h - 0.05l) \leq 0.20h$ part of the beam depth.
9. Sketch a detailed schematic of the distribution of both the shear and the flexural reinforcement. The longitudinal flexural reinforcement must be well-anchored into the supports by embedment, hooks, or welding to special devices. Bent upbars are not recommended.

6.9.4 Example 6.3: Design of Shear Reinforcement in Deep Beams

A simply supported beam having a clear span $l_n = 10$ ft (3.05 m) is subjected to a uniformly distributed live load of 81,000 lb/ft (1182 kN/m) on the top. The height h of the beam is 6 ft (1.83 m) and its thickness b is 20 in. (508 mm). The area of its horizontal tension steel is 8.0 in.^{2} (5161 mm^2), determined in Ex. 6.4. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Design the shear reinforcement for this beam using the non-linear empirical approach.

Solution: *Check l_n/d and evaluate factored shear force V_u (Step 1)*
Assume that $d = 0.9h = 0.9 \times 6 \times 12 = 65$ in. (1651 mm).

$$\frac{l_n}{d} = \frac{10.0 \times 12}{65} = 1.85 < 4$$

Hence treat as a deep beam.

$$\text{beam self-weight} = \frac{20 \times 72}{144} \times 150 = 1500 \text{ lb/ft } (21.9 \text{ kN/m})$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{total factored load} &= 1.2 \times 1500 + 1.6 \times 81{,}000 \\ &= 131{,}400 \text{ lb/ft } (1942 \text{ kN/m}) \\ \text{distance of the critical section} &= 0.15 l_e = 0.15 \times 10.0 \\ &= 1.5 \text{ ft} = 18 \text{ in. } (457.2 \text{ mm})\end{aligned}$$

The factored shear force V_u at the critical section is

$$V_u = \frac{131{,}400 \times 10}{2} - 131{,}400 \times \frac{18}{12} = 459{,}900 \text{ lb } (2040 \text{ kN})$$

Nominal shear strength V_n *and resisting capacity* V_c *(Steps 2 and 3)*

$$\begin{aligned}\phi V_n &= \phi(10\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d) = 0.75(10\sqrt{4000} \times 20 \times 65) \\ &= 616{,}644 \text{ lb } (2742 \text{ kN}) > 459{,}900 \qquad \text{O.K.}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}M_u &= \frac{131{,}400 \times 10 \text{ ft}}{2} \times 1.5 - \frac{131{,}400 \times (1.5)^2}{2} \\ &= 837{,}675 \text{ ft-lb} = 10{,}052{,}100 \text{ in.-lb}\end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{M_u}{V_u d} = \frac{10{,}052{,}100}{459{,}900 \times 65} = 0.34$$

$$\left(3.5 - 2.5 \frac{M_u}{V_u d}\right) = (3.5 - 2.5 \times 0.34) = 2.65 > 2.5 \qquad \text{use } 2.5$$

$$\rho_w = \frac{8.0}{20 \times 65} = 0.0062$$

$$\frac{V_u d}{M_u} = \frac{1}{0.34} = 2.94$$

From Eq. 6.19,

$$\begin{aligned}V_c &= 2.5\left(1.9\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + 2500\, \rho_w \frac{V_u d}{M_u}\right) b_w d \\ &= 2.5(1.9\sqrt{4000} + 2500 \times 0.0062 \times 2.94) \times 20 \times 65 = 538{,}644 \text{ lb}\end{aligned}$$

$$6\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 493{,}315 \text{ lb} < 538{,}644 \text{ lb}$$

Hence $V_c = 493{,}315$ lb (2144 kN) controls.

Shear reinforcement (Steps 4 and 5)

Assume No. 3 (9.52-mm diameter) bars placed both horizontally and vertically on both faces of the beam.

$$A_v = 2 \times 0.11 = 0.22 \text{ in.}^2 (141.9 \text{ mm}^2) = A_{vh}$$

$$V_s = V_n - V_c$$

or

$$V_s = \frac{V_u}{\phi} - V_c = \frac{459{,}900}{0.75} - 493{,}315 = 119{,}885 \text{ lb } (533 \text{ kN})$$

$$V_s = \left[\frac{A_v}{s_v}\left(\frac{1 + l_n/d}{12}\right) + \frac{A_{vh}}{s_h}\left(\frac{11 - l_n/d}{12}\right)\right] f_y d$$

Assume that $s_v = s_h = s$ (similar spacing in both the vertical and horizontal directions).

Hence

$$119{,}885 = \left[\frac{0.22}{s}\left(\frac{1 + 120/65}{12}\right) + \frac{0.22}{s}\left(\frac{11 - 120/65}{12}\right)\right] 60{,}000 \times 65$$

$$s = 7.16 \text{ in. } (179 \text{ mm})$$

If no insignificant cracks are tolerated, $V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 164{,}338$ lb. This gives $V_s = \dfrac{459{,}900}{0.75} - 164{,}338 = 448{,}862$ lb. For this condition, the spacing, s, of the shear reinforcement becomes for No. 5 bars:

$$s = 7.16\left(\frac{119{,}885}{448{,}862}\right)\left(\frac{0.62}{0.22}\right) = 5.39 \text{ in.}$$

requiring No. 5 bars on each face both vertically and horizontaly at $5\frac{1}{4}$ in. c.c.
The maximum permissible spacing of vertical bars $s_v = d/5$ or 12 in., whichever is smaller.

$$s_v = \frac{65}{5} = 13 \text{ in.} \qquad s_v = 7.16 \text{ in. controls}$$

The maximum permissible spacing of horizontal bar $s_h = d/5$ or 12 in., whichever is smaller.

$$s_h = \frac{65}{5} = 13 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{hence } s_h = 12 \text{ in. controls}$$

Since similar spacing assumed in both directions, $s_h = 7.16$ in. Use spacing $s_v = s_h = 7$ in. (178 mm).

Check for minimum steel:

$$\text{minimum } A_{vh} = 0.0015 b_w s_h = 0.0015 \times 20 \times 7 = 0.21 \text{ in.}^2 < 0.22 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$\text{minimum } A_v = 0.0025 b_w s_v = 0.0025 \times 20 \times 7 = 0.35 \text{ in.}^2 > 0.22 \text{ in.}^2$$

Hence No. 3 bars are not adequate for vertical steel. No. 4 bars on both faces = 2×0.20 in.^{2} = 0.40 in.^{2}. Use horizontal No. 3 bars at 7 in. center to center (9.53-mm diameter at 178 mm center to center) and vertical No. 4 bars at 7 in. center to center (12.70 mm diameter at 178 mm center to center). Figure 6.17. Use of No. 4 bars instead of No. 3 bars in Eq. 6.20 for V_s would give a higher value of the force V_s that the shear reinforcement is resisting. It should be noted that the vertical shear reinforcement is more effective than the horizontal ones.

A better reinforcing system would be to use welded wire fabric in deep beams. For a comparable reinforcing area needed, use size D20 welded wire fabric (0.5 in. = 12.7 mm diameter) spaced at $s_h = 8$ in. (203 mm) center to center in the horizontal direction and $s_v = 6$ in. (152 mm) center to center in the vertical direction.

6.9.5 Example 6.4: Flexural Steel in Deep Beams

Design the flexural reinforcement for the beam in Ex. 6.3.

Solution: $l_n = 120$ in. (3048 mm) and $h = 72$ in. (1828 mm). Since the width of the supports is not given, assume that $l = 1.15 l_n = 138$ in. (3505 mm). The external factored load $U = 131{,}400$ lb/ft.

$$\text{external factored moment } M_u = \frac{w_u l_n^2}{8} = \frac{131{,}400(10.0)^2}{8} = 1{,}642{,}500 \text{ ft-lb}$$

$$= 19{,}710{,}000 \text{ in.-lb } (2228 \text{ kNm})$$

$$\frac{l}{h} = \frac{138}{72} = 1.92 > 1 < 2$$

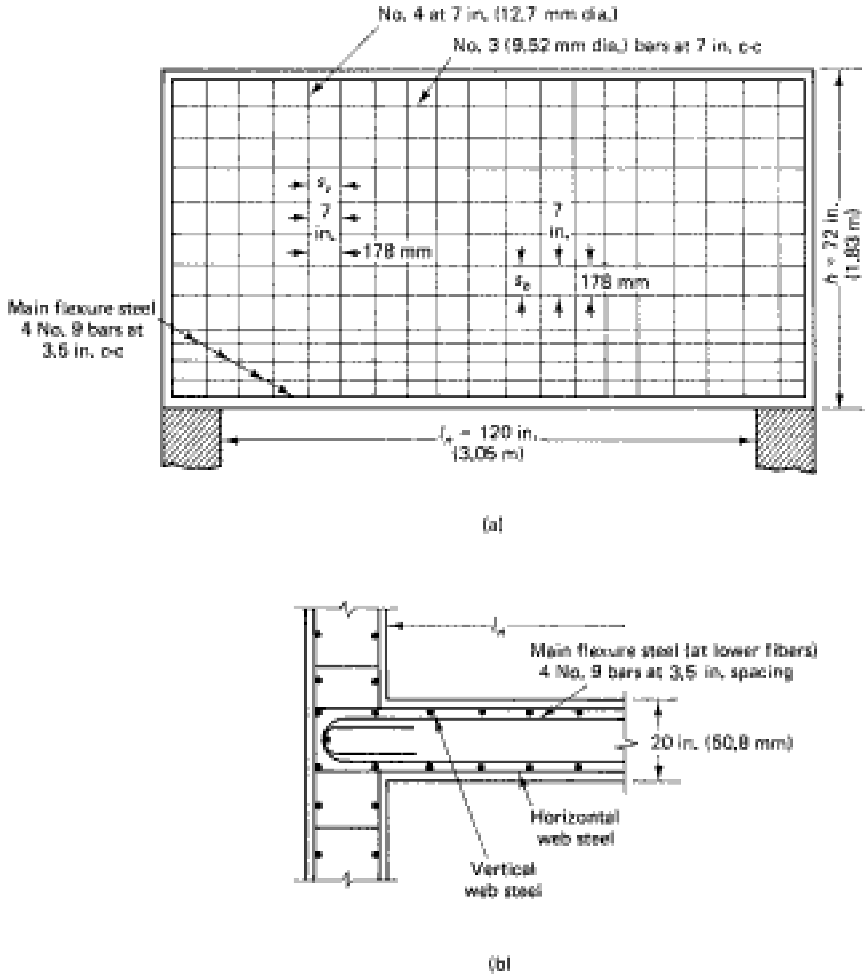


Figure 6.17 Reinforcement for a simply supported deep beam (Ex. 6.4): (a) sectional elevation of beam; (b) cross-sectional plan of beam at support.

$$jd = 0.2(138 + 2 \times 72) = 56.4 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_s = \frac{19{,}710{,}000}{0.9 \times 56.4 \times 60{,}000} = 6.47 \text{ in.}^2 \ (4045 \text{ mm}^2)$$

$$> \left(\frac{200}{f_y} = 4.33 \text{ in.}^2\right) > \left(\frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y}\, bd = 4.1 \text{ in.}^2\right) \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Use four No. 9 horizontal bars on each face, area = 8.00 in.^{2}. The height over which A_s is to be distributed above the lower beam face is

$$0.25h - 0.05l = 0.25 \times 72 - 0.05 \times 138 = 11.1 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Spacing of flexural steel} = \frac{11.1}{3} = 3.7 \text{ in.}$$

Space four No. 9 bars at 3.5-in. center-to-center vertical spacing on each face of the deep beam to be well anchored into the supports (28.6-mm-diameter bars at 76.2-mm spacing). Figures 6.17a and b give, respectively, a sectional elevation and a horizontal cross section showing the details of the vertical and horizontal shear reinforcement as well as the flexural reinforcement [illegible] of the deep beam.

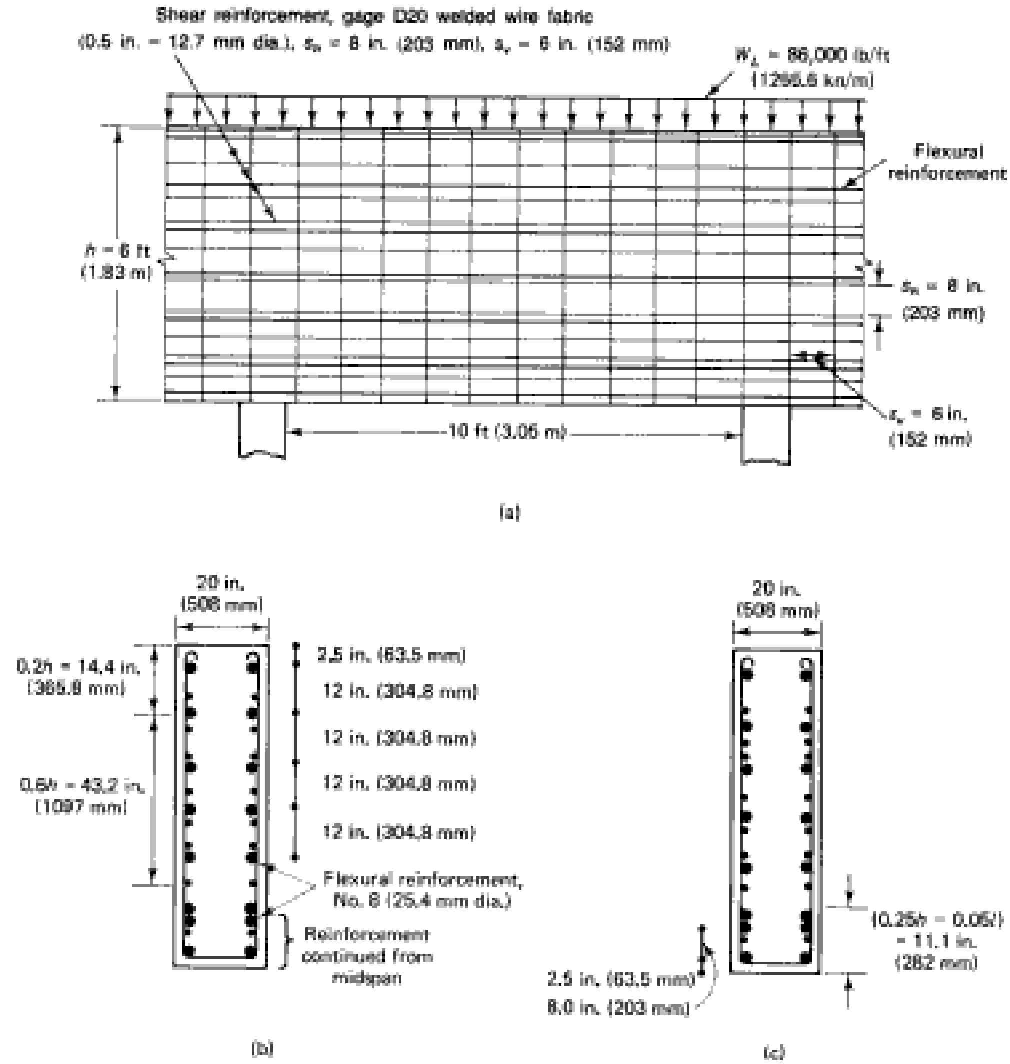


Figure 6.18 Continuous deep beam reinforcement: (a) sectional elevation of the beam; (b) section over support; (c) section at midspan.

6.9.6 Example 6.5: Reinforcement Design for Continuous Deep Beams

Design the reinforcement necessary for an interior span of a continuous beam over several supports if the loading and the properties of the beam are the same as those of Ex. 6.3.

Solution: *Shear reinforcement*

Since the deep beam has a large stiffness, the shear continuity factor for the first interior support is assumed to equal 1.0. Hence use the same vertical and horizontal shear reinforcement as in Ex. 6.3. Use size D20 welded wire fabric (0.5 in. = 12.7-mm diameter) spaced at 6 in. (152 mm) center to center in the vertical direction and 8 in. (203 mm) center to center in the horizontal direction (Figure 6.18).

Flexural reinforcement

Assume that $d = 65$ in. from Ex. 6.3. The approximate positive factored moment at midspan is

$$+M_u = \frac{w_u l_n^2}{16} = \frac{131{,}400(10)^2}{16} = 821{,}250 \text{ ft-lb}$$

$$= 9{,}855{,}000 \text{ in.-lb } (1114 \text{ kNm})$$

$$+M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi = 0.9} = 10{,}950{,}000 \text{ in.-lb } (1238 \text{ kNm})$$

For continuous deep beams,

$$\text{lever arm } jd = 0.20(l + 1.5h)$$

$$= 0.20(138 + 1.5 \times 72) = 49.2 \text{ in.}$$

$$+A_s = \frac{M_n}{f_y jd} = \frac{10{,}950{,}000}{60{,}000 \times 49.2} = 3.71 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$< +A_s = \frac{200bd}{f_y} = \frac{200(20 \text{ in.})(0.9 \times 72 \text{ in.})}{60{,}000} = 4.32 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$< \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y}bd = \frac{3\sqrt{4000}}{60{,}000}20(0.9 \times 72) = 4.10 \text{ in.}^2$$

Hence $+A_s = 4.32$ in.^{2} controls.

Use three No. 8 bars on each face (three 25.4-mm diameter on each face), area = 4.74 in.^{2} (3057 mm^2). Continue the reinforcement over all the beam span into the support as in Figure 6.18.

The maximum negative factored moment at an interior span is

$$-M_u = \frac{w_u l_n^2}{11} = \frac{131{,}400(10)^2}{11} \times 12 = 14{,}334{,}445 \text{ in.-lb } (1620 \text{ kN-m})$$

$$\text{lever arm } jd = 0.2(l + 1.5h) = 0.2(138 + 1.5 \times 72) = 49.2 \text{ in.}$$

The negative nominal moment of resistance is

$$-M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{14{,}344{,}445}{0.9} = 15{,}927{,}161 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{total negative steel } A_s = \frac{15{,}927{,}161}{60{,}000 \times 49.2} = 5.40 \text{ in.}^2 \ (3375 \text{ mm}^2)$$

The reinforcement area A_{s1} to be provided for the upper zone is

$$A_{s1} = 0.5\left(\frac{l}{h} - 1\right)A_s = 0.5\left(\frac{138}{72} - 1\right)5.40 = 2.48 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$h_1 = 0.2 \times 72 = 14.4 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_{s2} = 5.40 - 2.48 = 2.92 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ over } h_2 = 72.0 - 14.4 - 14.4 = 43.2 \text{ in.}$$

Using No. 8 bars (25.4-mm diameter):

Zone h_1: two No. 8 bars on each face (3.16 in.^{2} > 2.48 in.^{2})

Zone h_2: three No. 8 bars on each face (4.74 in.^{2} > 2.92 in.^{2})

Figure 6.18 shows in elevation and cross section the arrangement of reinforcement for this beam.

6.10 BRACKETS OR CORBELS

Brackets or corbels are short-haunched cantilevers that project from the inner face of columns to support heavy concentrated loads or beam reactions. They are very important structural elements for supporting precast beams, gantry girders, and any other forms of precast structural systems. Precast and prestressed concrete is becoming increasingly dominant, and larger spans are being built, resulting in heavier shear loads at supports. Hence the design of brackets and corbels has become increasingly important. The safety of the total structure could depend on the sound design and construction of the supporting element, in this case the corbel, necessitating a detailed discussion of this subject.

In brackets or corbels, the ratio of the shear arm or span to the corbel depth is often less than 1.0. Such a small ratio changes the state of stress of a member into a two-dimensional one, as discussed in the case of deep beams. Shear deformations would hence affect their nonlinear stress behavior in the elastic state and beyond, and the shear strength becomes a major factor. They differ from deep beams in the existence of potentially large horizontal forces transmitted from the supported beam to the corbel or bracket. These horizontal forces result from long-term shrinkage and creep deformation of the supported beam, which in many cases is anchored to the bracket.

The cracks are usually mostly vertical or steeply inclined pure shear cracks. They often start from the point of application of the concentrated load and propagate toward the bottom reentrant corner junction of the bracket to the column face as in Figure 6.19a, or start at the upper reentrant corner of the bracket or corbel and proceed almost vertically through the corbel toward its lower fibers, as shown in Figure 6.19b. Other failure patterns in such elements are shown in Figure 6.19c and d. They can also develop through a combination of the ones illustrated. Bearing failure can also occur by crushing of the concrete under the concentrated load-bearing plate, if the bearing area is not adequately proportioned.

As will be noticed in the subsequent discussion, detailing of the corbel or bracket reinforcement is of major importance. Failure of the element can be attributed in many cases to incorrect detailing that does not realize full anchorage development of the reinforcing bars.

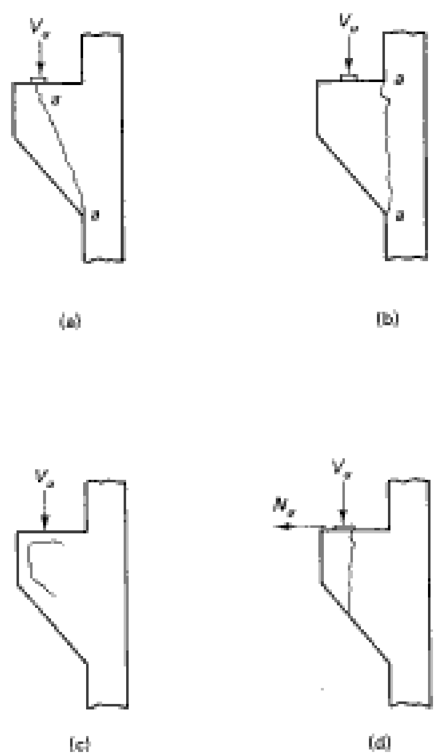


Figure 6.19 Failure patterns: (a) diagonal shear; (b) shear friction; (c) anchorage splitting; (d) vertical splitting.

As with deep beams, a totally different approach from the *Shear Friction* design approach of Section 6.10.1 presented herein, a Strut-and-Tie design approach as in Section 6.11 can also be used for the design of corbels. The correct force path in the strut-and-tie model has to be developed by the designer to render a safe design.

6.10.1 Shear Friction Hypothesis for Shear Transfer in Corbels

Corbels cast at different times than the main supporting columns can have a potential shear crack at the interface between the two concretes through which shear transfer has to develop. As discussed in the case of deep beams, the smaller the ratio a/d is, the larger the tendency for pure shear to occur through essentially vertical planes. This behavior is more accentuated in the case of corbels with a potential interface crack between two dissimilar concretes.

The shear friction approach in this case is recommended by the ACI, as shown in Figure 6.19b. An assumption is made of an already cracked vertical plane (a–a in Figure 6.20) along which the corbel is considered to slide as it reaches its limit state of failure. A coefficient of friction μ is used to transform the horizontal resisting forces of the well-anchored closed ties into a vertical nominal resisting force larger than the external factored shear load. Hence the nominal vertical resisting shear force

$$V_n = A_{vf} f_y \mu \tag{6.27a}$$

to give

$$A_{vf} = \frac{V_n}{f_y \mu} \tag{6.27b}$$

where A_{vf} is the total area of the horizontal, anchored closed shear ties.

For the design of shear-friction reinforcement A_{vf} to resist V_u, where $V_u \le V_n$, normal weight concrete placed monolithically or placed against roughened concrete surface V_n should not exceed the smallest of the following values:

$$V_n \le 0.20 f'_c A_c \tag{6.28a}$$

$$V_n \le 480 + 0.08\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d \tag{6.28b}$$

$$V_n \le 1600 A_c \tag{6.28c}$$

where A_c is the area of concrete which can be taken as $b_w d$ resisting shear transfer.

For all-lightweight or sand-lightweight concrete, V_n should not be taken greater than the smaller of the following values:

$$V_n \le (0.20 - 0.7 a_v/d) f'_c b_w d \tag{6.28d}$$

$$V_n \le (800 - 280\, a_v/d)\, b_w d \tag{6.28e}$$

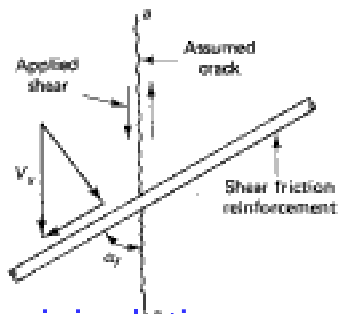


Figure 6.20 Shear friction reinforcement at crack

If the shear friction reinforcement is inclined to the shear plane such that the shear force produces some tension in the shear friction steel,

$$V_n = A_{vf} f_y (\mu \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha) \tag{6.29}$$

where α_f is the angle between the shear friction reinforcement and the shear plane. The reinforcement area becomes

$$A_{vf} = \frac{V_n}{f_y(\mu \sin \alpha + \cos \alpha)} \tag{6.30a}$$

The assumption is made that all the shear resistance is due to the resistance at the crack interface between the corbel and the column. The ACI coefficient of friction μ has the following values:

Concrete cast monolithically	1.4λ
Concrete placed against hardened roughened concrete	1.0λ
Concrete placed against unroughened hardened concrete	0.6λ
Concrete anchored to structural steel	0.7λ

where $\lambda = 1.0$ for normal-weight concrete, 0.85 for sand-lightweight concrete, and 0.75 for all-lightweight concrete.

High values of the friction coefficient μ are used so that the calculated shear strength values are in agreement with experiments. If considerably higher strength concretes are used in the corbels, such as polymer-modified concretes, to interface with the normal concrete of the supporting columns, higher μ values could logically be used for such cases than those listed above. Work by the author in Ref. 6.13 substantiates the use of higher values.

Part of the horizontal steel A_{vf} is incorporated in the top tension tie, and the remainder of A_{vf} is distributed along the depth of the corbel as in Figure 6.21. Evaluation of the top horizontal primary reinforcement layer A_s will be discussed in the next section.

6.10.2 Horizontal External Force Effect

When the corbel or bracket is cast monolithically with the supporting column or wall and is subjected to a large horizontal tensile force N_{uc} produced by the beam supported by the corbel, a modified approach is used, often termed the *strut theory approach*. In all

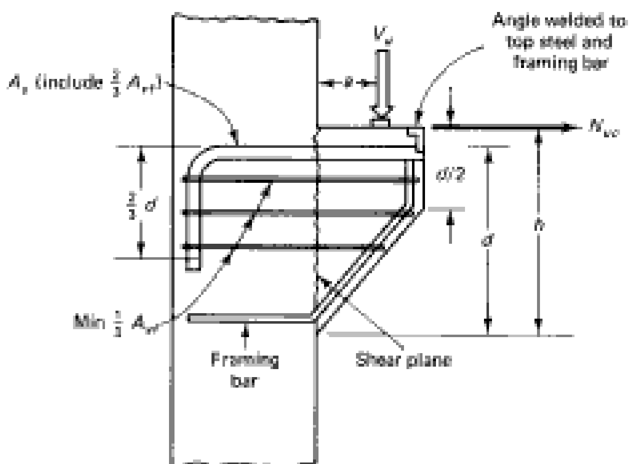


Figure 6.21 Reinforcement schematic for corbel design by shear friction hypothesis.

cases, the horizontal factored force N_{uc} cannot exceed the vertical factored shear V_u. As seen in Figure 6.22, reinforcing steel A_n has to be provided to resist the force N_{uc}.

$$A_n = \frac{N_{uc}}{\phi f_y} \tag{6.30b}$$

and

$$A_f = \frac{V_u a_v + N_{uc}(h - d)}{\phi f_y jd} \tag{6.30c}$$

where A_f is the reinforcement area resisting the moment.

Reinforcement A_f also has to be provided to resist the bending moments caused by V_u and N_{uc}.

Reinforcement A_n to resist tensile force N_{uc} should be determined from $N_{uc} \cong \phi A_n f_y$. Tensile force N_{uc} should not be taken less than 0.2 V_u unless special provisions are made to avoid tensile forces. Tensile force N_{uc} should be regarded as a live load even when tension results from creep, shrinkage or temperature changes.

The value of N_{uc} considered in the design should not be less than $0.20V_u$. The flexural steel area A_f can be approximately obtained by the usual expression for the limit state at failure of beams, that is,

$$A_f = \frac{M_u}{\phi f_y jd} \tag{6.30d}$$

where $M_u = V_u a_v + N_{uc}(h - d)$. The axis of such an assumed section lies along a compression strut inclined at an angle β to the tension tie A_s, as shown in Figure 6.22. The volume C_c of the compressive block is

$$C_c = 0.85 f'_c \beta_1 cb = \frac{T_s}{\cos\beta} = \frac{A_s f_y}{\cos\beta} = \frac{V_u}{\sin\beta} \tag{6.31}$$

for which the depth $\beta_1 c$ of the block is obtained perpendicular to the *direction* of the compressive strut.

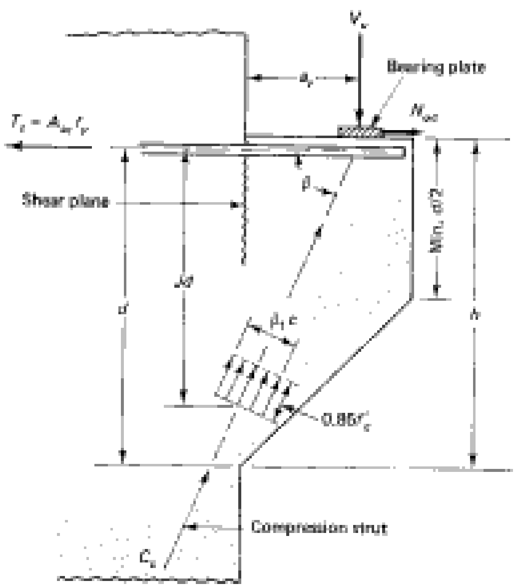


Figure 6.22 Compression strut in corbel.

$$\beta_1 c = \frac{A_{sc} f_y}{0.85 f'_c b \cos \beta} \tag{6.32a}$$

The effective depth d minus the $\beta_1 c/2 \cos \beta$ in the vertical direction gives the lever arm jd between the force T_s and the horizontal component of C_c in Fig. 6.22. Therefore,

$$jd = d - \frac{\beta_1 c}{2 \cos \beta} \tag{6.32b}$$

If jd is substituted in Eq. 6.30d,

$$A_f = \frac{M_u}{\phi f_y (d - \beta_1 c/2 \cos \beta)} \tag{6.33}$$

To eliminate several trials and adjustments, the lever arm jd from Eq. 6.32c can be approximated for all practical purposes in most cases as

$$jd \simeq 0.85d \tag{6.34a}$$

so that

$$A_f = \frac{M_u}{0.85 \phi f_y d} \tag{6.34b}$$

The area A_{sc} of the primary tension reinforcement (tension tie) can now be calculated and placed as shown in Figure 6.23.

$$A_{sc} \geq \frac{2}{3} A_{vf} + A_n \tag{6.35}$$

or

$$A_{sc} \geq A_f + A_n \tag{6.36}$$

whichever is larger:

$$\rho = \frac{A_{sc}}{bd} \geq 0.04 \frac{f'_c}{f_y}$$

where A_n = area of reinforcement resisting tensile force N_{uc}.

If A_h is assumed to be the total area of the closed stirrups or ties parallel to A_s,

$$A_h \geq 0.5(A_{sc} - A_n) \tag{6.37}$$

The bearing area under the external load V_u on the bracket should not project beyond the straight portion of the primary tension bars A_{sc}, nor should it project beyond the interior face of the transverse welded anchor bar shown in Figure 6.23.

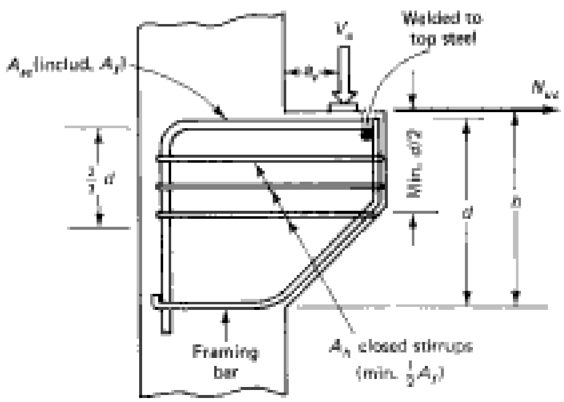


Figure 6.23 Reinforcement schematic for corbel design by strut theory.

6.10.3 Sequence of Corbel Design Steps

As discussed in the preceding section, a horizontal factored force N_{uc}, a vertical factored force V_n, and a bending moment $[V_n a_v + N_{uc}(h - d)]$ basically act on the corbel. To prevent failure, the corbel has to be designed to resist these three parameters simultaneously by one of the following two methods, depending on the type of corbel construction sequence, that is, whether the corbel is cast monolithically with the column or not:

1. For monolithically cast corbel with the supporting column, by evaluating the steel area A_h of the closed stirrups that are placed below the primary steel ties A_{sc}. Part of A_h is due to the steel area A_n from Eq. 6.30b resisting the horizontal force N_{uc}.
2. Calculating the steel area A_{vf} by the shear friction hypothesis if the corbel and the column are *not* cast simultaneously, using part of A_{vf} along the depth of the corbel stem and incorporating the balance in the area A_{sc} of the primary top steel reinforcing layer.

The primary tension steel area A_{sc} is the major component of both methods 1 and 2. Calculations of A_{sc} depend on whether Eq. 6.35 or 6.36 governs. If Eq. 6.35 controls, $A_{sc} = \frac{2}{3}A_{vf} + A_n$ is used and the remaining $\frac{1}{3}A_{vf}$ is distributed over a depth $\frac{2}{3}d$ adjacent to A_{sc}.

If Eq. 6.36 controls, $A_{sc} = A_f + A_n$ with the addition of $\frac{1}{2}A_f$ provided as closed stirrups parallel to A_{sc} and distributed within $\frac{2}{3}d$ vertical distance adjacent to A_{sc}.

In both cases, the primary tension reinforcement and the closed stirrups automatically yield the total amount of reinforcement needed for either type of corbel. Since the mechanism of failure is highly indeterminate and randomness can be expected in the propagation action of the shear crack, it is sometimes advisable to choose the larger calculated value of the primary top steel area A_{sc} in the corbel regardless of whether the corbel element is cast simultaneously with the supporting column.

The horizontal closed stirrups are also a major element in reinforcing the corbel, as seen from the foregoing discussions. Occasionally, additional inclined closed stirrups are also used.

The following sequence of steps is proposed for the design of the corbel:

1. Calculate the factored vertical force V_u and the nominal resisting force V_n of the section such that $V_n \geq V_u/\phi$, where $\phi = 0.75$ for all calculations. V_u/ϕ should be $\leq 0.20 f'_c b_w d$ or $\leq 800 b_w d$. If not, the concrete section at the support should be enlarged.
2. Calculate $A_{vf} = V_n/f_y\mu$ for resisting the shear friction force and use in the subsequent calculation of the primary tension top steel A_{sc}.
3. Calculate the flexural steel area A_f and the direct tension steel area A_n, where

$$A_f = \frac{V_u a_v + N_{uc}(h - d)}{\phi f_y jd} \quad \text{and} \quad A_n = \frac{N_{uc}}{\phi f_y}$$

4. Calculate the primary steel area:
   (a) $A_{sc} = \frac{2}{3}A_{vf} + A_n$
   (b) $A_{sc} = A_f + A_n$
   and select whichever is larger. If case (a) controls, the remaining $\frac{1}{3}A_{vf}$ has to be provided as closed stirrups parallel to A_{sc} and distributed within a $\frac{2}{3}d$ distance adjacent to A_{sc}, as in Figure 6.21. If case (b) controls, use in addition $\frac{1}{2}A_f$ as closed stirrups distributed within a distance $\frac{2}{3}d$ adjacent to A_{sc} as in Figure 6.23.

$$A_h \geq 0.5(A_{sc} - A_n)$$

   and

$$\frac{A_{sc}}{bd} \geq 0.04\frac{f'_c}{f_y}$$

or

$$\text{minimum } A_{sc} = 0.04 \frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}} bd$$

5. Select the size and spacing of the corbel reinforcement with special attention to the detailing arrangements, as many corbel failures are due to incorrect detailing.

A flowchart for proportioning corbels is given in Figure 6.24.

6.10.4 Example 6.6: Design of a Bracket or Corbel

Design a corbel to support a factored vertical load V_u = 80,000 lb (160 kN) acting at a distance a = 5 in. (127 mm) from the face of the column. It has a width b = 10 in. (254 mm), a total thickness h = 18 in. (457 mm), and an effective depth d = 14 in. (356 mm). Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi (34.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

supporting column size: 12 × 18 in. and corbel width = 18 in.

Assume the corbel to be either cast after the supporting column was constructed or both cast simultaneously. Neglect the weight of the corbel.

Solution:

Step 1

$$V_n \geq \frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{80{,}000}{0.75} = 106{,}667 \text{ lb}$$

$$0.2 f'_c b_w d = 0.2 \times 5000 \times 10 \times 14 = 140{,}000 \text{ lb} > V_n$$

$$(480 + 0.08 f'_c)\, b_w d = (480 + 0.08 \times 5000)\, 10 \times 14 = 123{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

$$1600\, b_w d = 1600 \times 10 \times 14 = 224{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

The smallest V_n available

$$= 123{,}200 > \text{actual } V_n = 106{,}667 \text{ lb} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Step 2

(a) Monolithic construction; normal-weight concrete $\mu = 1.4\lambda$:

$$A_{vf} = \frac{V_n}{f_y \mu} = \frac{106{,}667}{60{,}000 \times 1.4} = 1.27 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (800 mm}^2\text{)}$$

(b) Nonmonolithic construction; μ=1.0λ:

$$A_{vf} = \frac{106{,}667}{60{,}000 \times 1.0} = 1.78 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (1113 mm}^2\text{)}$$

Choose the larger A_{vf} = 1.78 in.^{2} as controlling.

Step 3

Since no value of the horizontal external force N_{uc} transmitted from the superimposed beam is given, use

$$\text{minimum } N_{uc} = 0.20 V_u = 0.2 \times 80{,}000 = 16{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$A_f = \frac{M_u}{\phi f_y jd} = \frac{V_u a_v + N_{uc}(h - d)}{\phi f_y jd} \quad \text{where } jd = 0.85d$$

$$= \frac{80{,}000 \times 5 + 16{,}000(18 - 14)}{0.75 \times 60{,}000(0.85 \times 14)} = 0.87 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (531 mm}^2\text{)}$$

$$A_n = \frac{N_{uc}}{\phi f_y} = \frac{16{,}000}{0.75 \times 60{,}000} = 0.36 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (278 mm}^2\text{)}$$

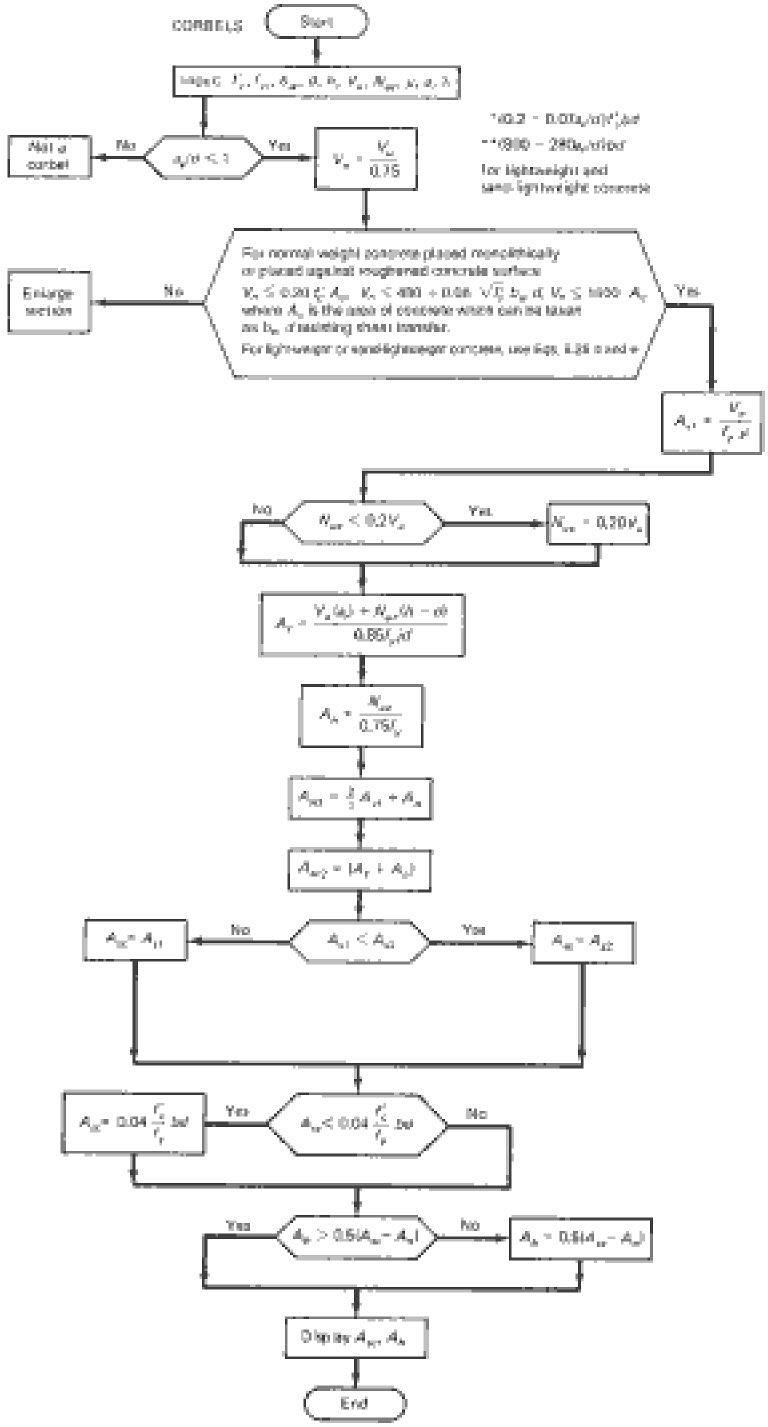


Figure 6.24 Flowchart for design of corbels.

@Seismicisolation

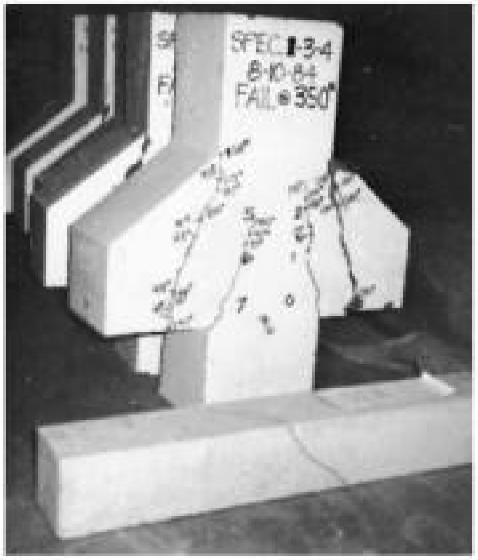


Photo 6.6 High-strength concrete corbel at failure. (Nawy et al.)

Step 4

Check the controlling area of primary steel A_s

(a) $A_{sc} = (\frac{2}{3}A_{vf} + A_n) = \frac{2}{3} \times 1.78 + 0.36 = 1.55 \text{ in.}^2$
(b) $A_{sc} = A_f + A_n = 0.87 + 0.36 = 1.23 \text{ in.}^2$

$$\text{minimum } A_{sc} = 0.04\frac{f'_c}{f_y}bd = 0.04 \times \frac{5{,}000}{60{,}000} \times 10 \times 14 = 0.47 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$< 1.55 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Provide $A_{sc} = 1.55 \text{ in.}^2$ (969 mm^2). Horizontal closed stirrups: Since case (a) controls

$$A_h = 0.5(A_{sc} - A_n) = 0.5(1.55 - 0.36) = 0.60 \text{ in.}^2$$

Step 5

Select bar sizes:

(a) Required $A_{sc} = 1.55 \text{ in.}^2$; use three No. 7 bars = 1.80 in.^2 (three bars of diameter 22.2 mm = 1161 mm^2).
(b) Required $A_h = 0.60 \text{ in.}^2$; use three No. 3 closed stirrups = $2 \times 3 \times 0.11 = 0.66 \text{ in.}^2$ spread over $\frac{2}{3}d = 9.33$ in. vertical distance. Hence use three No. 3 closed stirrups at 3 in. center to center. Also use three framing size No. 3 bars and one welded No. 3 anchor bar.

Details of the bracket reinforcement are shown in Figure 6.25. The bearing area under the load has to be checked and the bearing pad designed such that the bearing stress at the factored load V_u should not exceed 70% of $\phi(0.85f'_cA_1)$, where A_1 is the pad area.

$$\text{Design } V_u = 80{,}000 \text{ lb} = \phi\,(0.85\,f'_cA_1, \text{ where } \phi = 0.70) = 0.70(0.85 \times 5000)A_1$$

$$A_1 = \frac{80{,}000}{0.70 \times 0.85 \times 5000} = 26.9 \text{ in.}^2\ (19{,}516 \text{ mm}^2)$$

Use a plate $5\frac{1}{4}$ in. $\times$ $5\frac{1}{4}$ in. Its thickness has to be designed based on the manner in which V_u is applied.

For the alternative strut-and-tie solution, see Example 6.8.

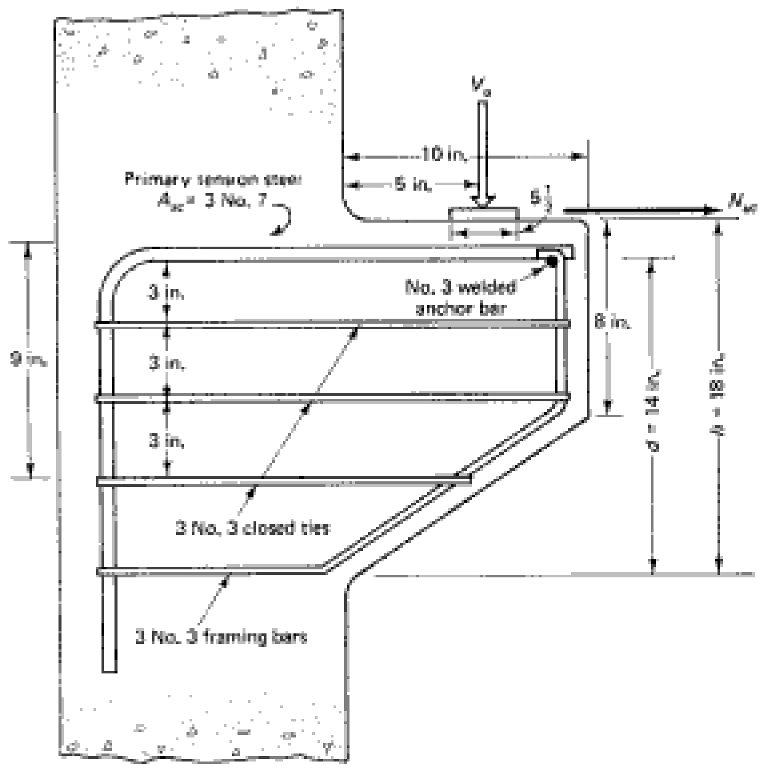


Figure 6.25 Corbel reinforcement details (Ex. 6.5).

6.11 STRUT-AND-TIE MODEL ANALYSIS AND DESIGN OF CONCRETE ELEMENTS

6.11.1 Introduction

As an alternative to the usual approach for plane sections before bending remaining plane after bending, the strut-and-tie model is applied effectively in regions of discontinuity. These regions could be the support sections in a beam, the zones of load application, the discontinuity caused by abrupt changes in a section, such as brackets, beam daps, pile caps cast with column sections, portal frames, and others. Consequently, structural elements can be divided into segments called *B-regions*, where the standard beam theory applies, with the assumption of linear strains, and the others as *D-regions*, where the plane sections hypothesis is no longer applicable. Figure 6.26 (adapted from Ref. 6.1) demonstrate the locations of B and D regions.

The analysis essentially follows the truss analogy approach, where parallel *inclined* cracks are assumed and expected to form in the regions of high shear. The concrete between the *inclined* cracks carries inclined compressive forces such as in Fig. 6.7A(a) and (b), acting as diagonal struts. Thus, provision of transverse stirrups along the beam span, as in Fig. 6.7B(c), results in truss-like action in which the longitudinal steel provides the tension chord of the truss as a tie, hence the "strut-and-tie" expression.

Strut-and-tie modeling has been introduced in some codes including ACI 318-02 Appendix A. Simplifying assumptions in design have to be made when applying this approach to different structural systems. These simplifications are necessitated because of the wide range of alternatives in the selection of the path of forces, which represent the compressive struts and the tension ties intersecting at the "nodal" points, and the choice of locations where the corresponding reinforcement is to be placed.

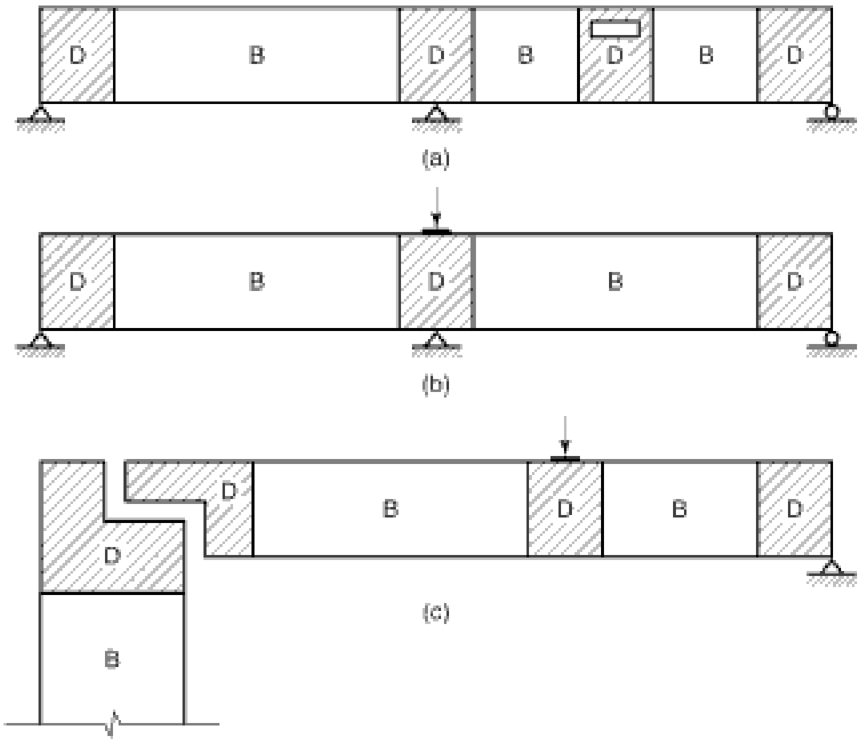


Figure 6.26 B-regions and D-regions in beams: (a) continuous beam; (b) beam with concentrated load; (c) dapper-ended beam on column support.

Therefore, depending on the interpretation of the designer, simplifications of the paths of forces that are chosen to represent the real structure can considerably differ. Since this load-path modeling method is a plastic method with stress concentration conditions and load concentration, it does not provide a check for the serviceability levels inherent in the semi-plastic methods, but represents strength-limit states at the critical sections. Thus, after excessive deformation and cracking, the idealizations made in the choice of the force paths render this method less accurate for design purposes, particularly because no unique design solutions are possible. This approach is *more an art than an engineering science* in the selection of the models. Significant overdesign is, therefore, required and extensive full-scale tests needed for different structural systems. Such extensive tests were conducted in the case of anchor blocks in post-tensioned beams, as discussed by the author in Reference 6.20. It should be thus emphasized that this approach is a design method that enables analyzing *nonflexural regions*, particularly as affected by shear and torsion, with infinite possible configurations for identifying load paths in structural systems (Ref. 6.21 and Ref. 6.27) and that it does not provide a check on serviceability, as it principally deals with high-overload conditions and with load-carrying capacity.

6.11.2 Strut-and-Tie Mechanism

For equilibrium, at least three forces have to act at a joint, termed as the *node*, as in Figure 6.27, where C = compression vector and T = tension vector. The nodes are classified in accordance with the sense of the forces intersecting at the nodal point. As an example, a C-C-T node resists one tensile force and two compressive forces. A typical representa-

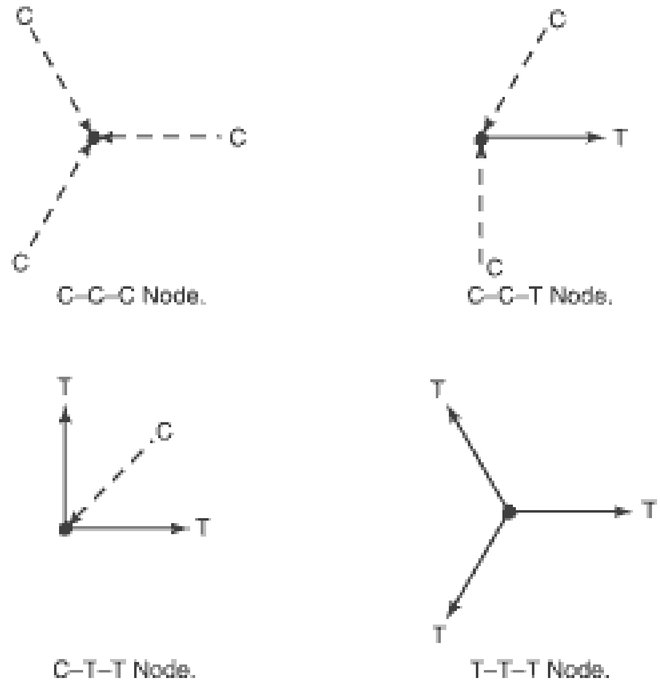


Figure 6.27 Classifications of strut-and-tie nodes.

tion of the strut-and-tie model of a simply supported deep beam is shown in Figure 6.28, and for a continuous beam in Fig. 6.29. A *C-C-T* nodal zone can be represented as a hydrostatic nodal zone if the tie is assumed to extend through the node and anchored by a plate on the far end of the node (Ref. 6.1, Appendix A). Typical nodal zones are shown in Figs. 6.30 and 6.31 (Ref. 6.1), including the possible distribution of the steel reinforcement through the nodal zones. Fig. 6.32 demonstrates the simplified truss model

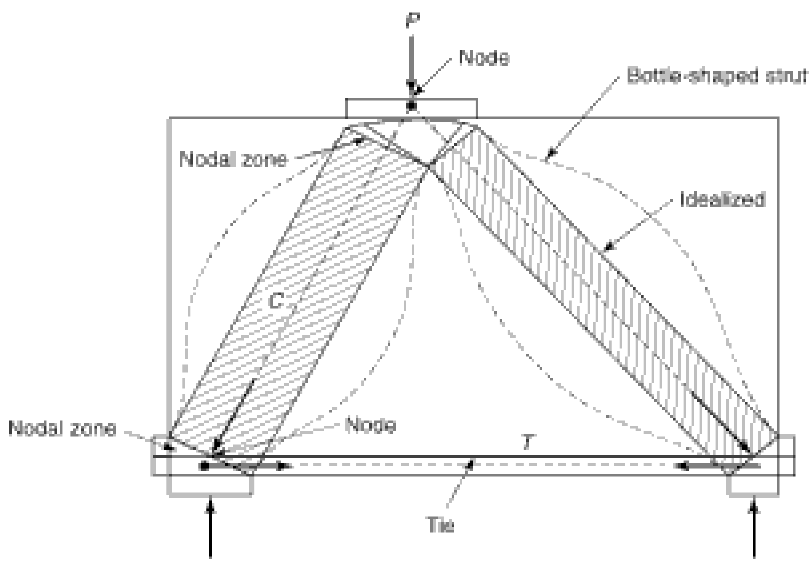


Figure 6.28 Strut-and-tie model of a simply supported deep beam subjected to concentrated load on top.

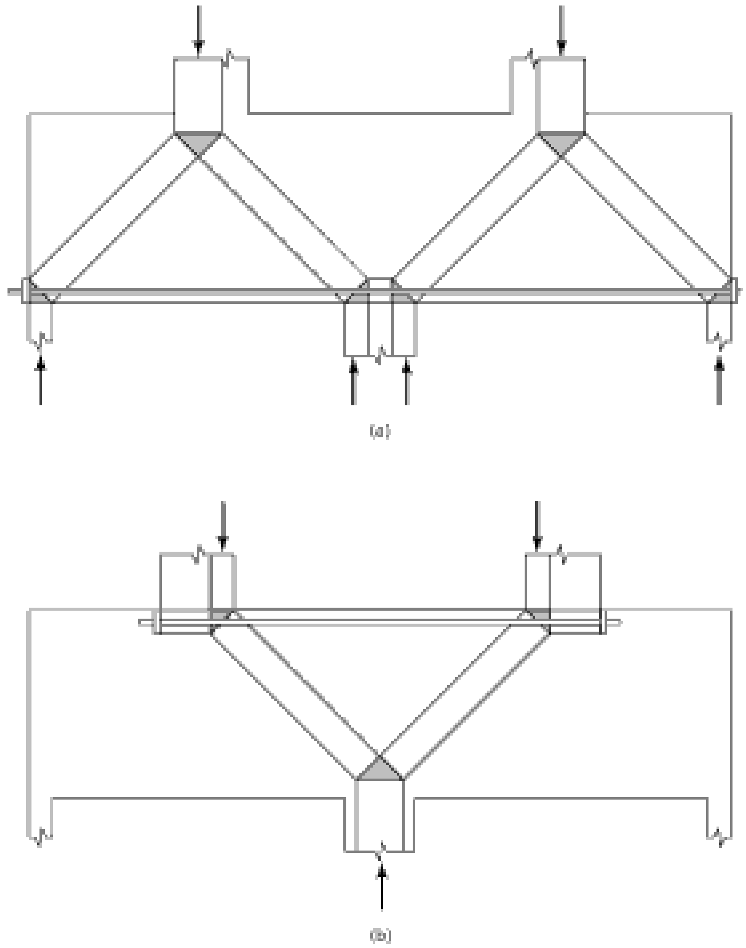


Figure 6.29 Typical strut-and-tie model for continuous beams subjected to concentrated loads on top: (a) positive moment truss; (b) negative moment truss.

for simply supported deep beams loaded on the top fibers. Note that nodes A and B at the beam support are compressive nodes as seen by the crushing of the concrete in Fig. 6.32(d).

In order to design the critical D-region, the following steps need to be taken:

1. Isolate each D-region
2. Compute the stresses, which act on the boundaries of the D-region, replacing them with one or more resultant forces on each boundary.
3. Select a truss model to transfer the resultant forces *across* the D-region.

If more than three forces act at a nodal point as shown in Fig. 6.30 (b), it becomes necessary to exercise engineering judgment in resolving the system of forces such that *only three forces* act at the nodal point. That is why no unique solution is possible, as assumptions based on significant idealizations can widely differ (Ref. 6.27). The angle between the axes of struts and ties that intersect through the node should not be too small, namely, not less than 25°, in order to avoid any incompatibilities that can result because of the lengthening of the ties and the shortening of the struts occurring in the same direction. Figure 6.32(c) represents a simplified idealized truss model for the principal compressive and tensile stress trajectories resulting from the applied distributed load at the

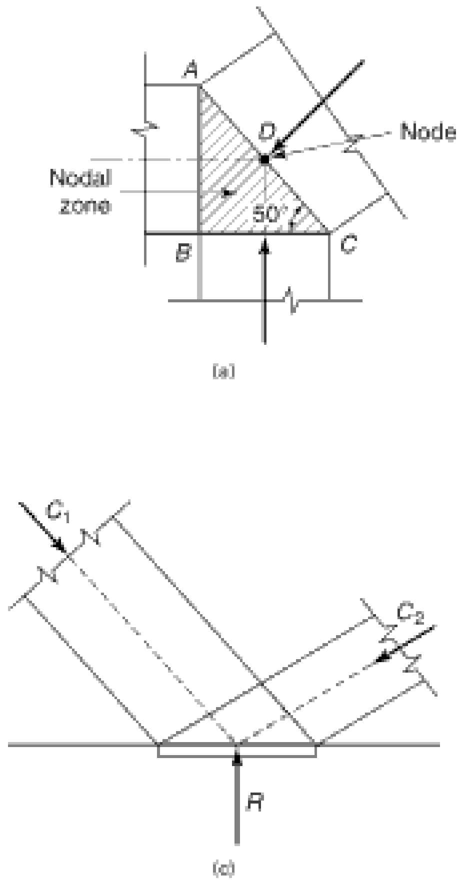


Figure 6.30 Typical nodal zones: (a) three struts acting at node; (b) two struts AE and CE acting at node; (c) support nodal zone; (d) subdivided nodal zone.

top deep beam fibers. The assumed truss model is one alternative. Other possible alternative models can also be used, provided that they satisfy equilibrium and compatibility. Figure 6.33 (Refs. 6.22, 6.23), to follow, is a modified more rigorous model for Example 6.7, than the simplified Fig. 6.34 of the solution.

It is important to recognize that the decisions made in steps 2 and 3 are very critical in arriving at an efficiently representative model and a safe structure. The axes of the struts and ties are selected to coincide with the axes of the compression and tension fields and the forces in the struts and ties computed. Serviceability limit checks have thereafter to be applied. The vertical and horizontal components equilibrate the forces in the inclined strut, as is usually done in a truss analysis (see Fig. 6.34) of the forces in the nodal zones.

6.11.3 ACI Design Requirements

(1) *Nodal Forces*

$$\phi F_n \geq F_u \tag{6.38}$$

where, F_n = nominal strength of a strut, tie, or nodal zone, lb

F_u = factored force acting on a strut, tie, bearing area, or nodal zone, lb

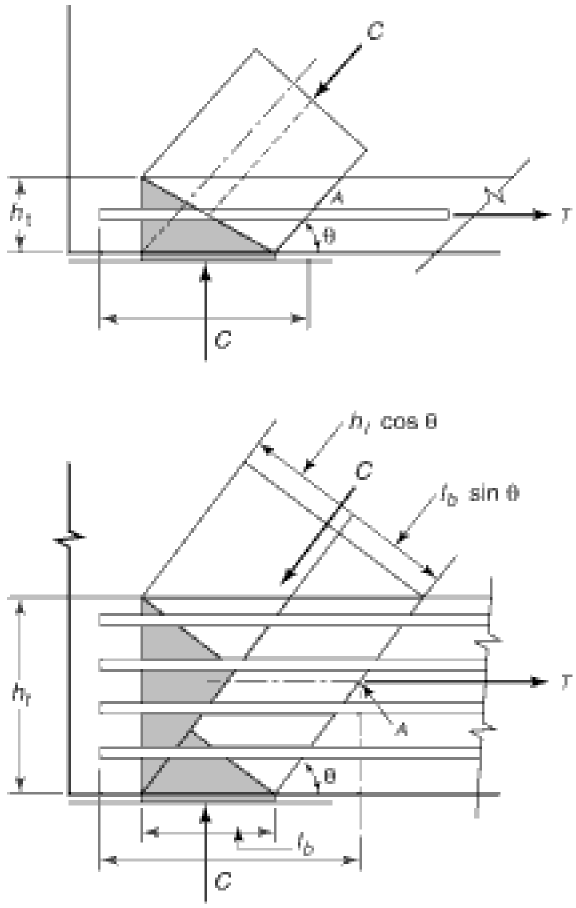


Figure 6.31 Extended nodal zone demonstrating the effect of distribution of forces: (a) one layer of reinforcing bars; (b) distributed steel.

where $\phi = 0.75$ for both struts and ties (similar to the strength reduction for shear)

(2) *Strength of Struts*

$$F_{ns} = f_{ce}\, A_{cs} \tag{6.39}$$

where F_{ns} = nominal strength of strut, *lb*

A_{cs} = effective cross-sectional area at one end of a strut, taken perpendicular to the axis of the strut, *in.*^{2}

f_{ce} = effective compressive strength of the concrete in a strut or nodal zone, *psi*

$$f_{ce} = 0.85\, \beta_s\, f'_c \tag{6.40}$$

(in the ACI Code, f_{ce} is designated as f_{cu})

where

β_s = 1.0 for struts which have the same cross-sectional area of the midstrut cross-section in case of bubble struts.

= 0.75 for struts with reinforcement resisting transverse tensile forces

= 0.40 for struts in tension members or tension flanges

= 0.60 all other cases

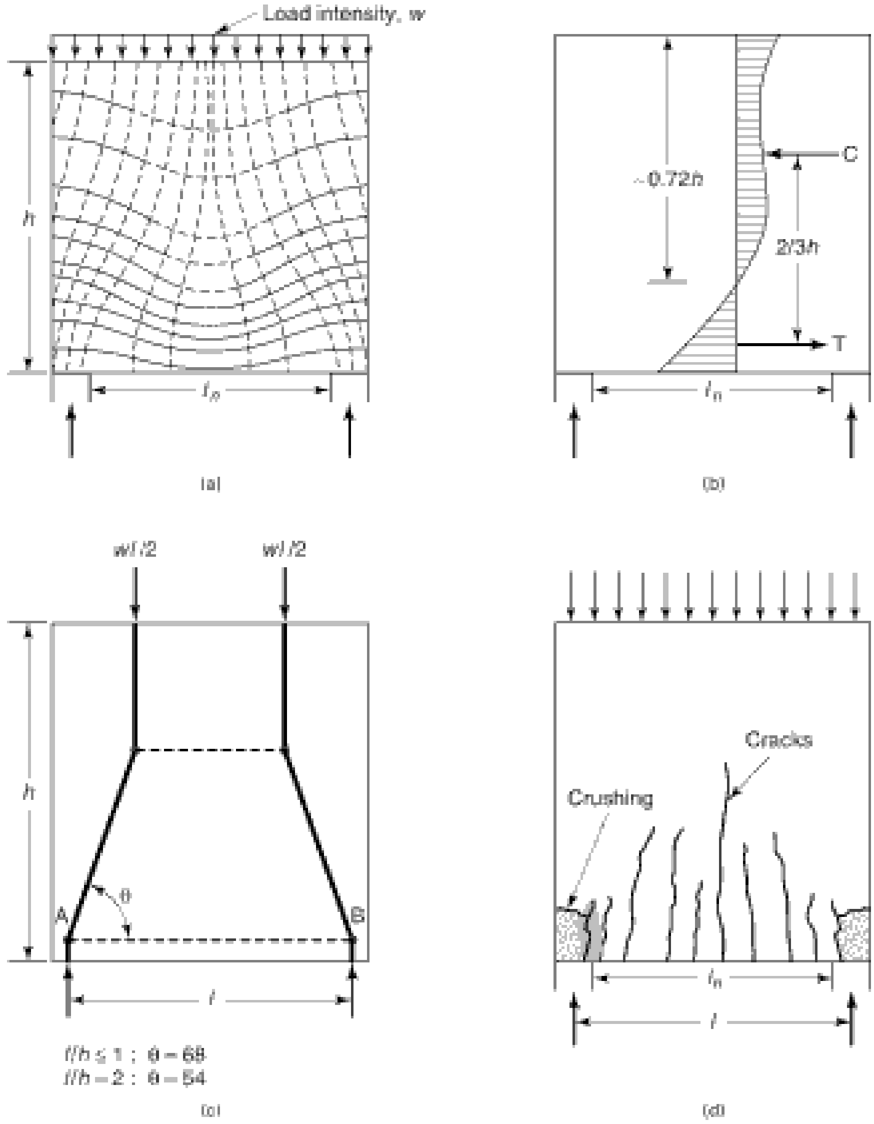


Figure 6.32 Truss model and stress distribution in simply supported deep beams: (a) lines of principal stress trajectories for beams loaded on top; (b) elastic stress distribution across beam depth; (c) idealized truss model (adapted from Refs. 6.22, 6.23); (d) cracking pattern.

For f'_c not greater than 6000 psi, the strut configuration and the compressive forces in the strut can be satisfied if $\sum \frac{A_{si}}{b_{si}} \sin \gamma_i \geq 0.003$, where A_{si} is the total area of reinforcement at spacing s_i in a layer of reinforcement with bars at an angle α_i to the axis of the strut.

(3) *Longitudinal Reinforcement*

$$F_{ns} = f_{ce} A_{cs} + A'_s f'_s \tag{6.41}$$

where A'_s = area of compression reinforcement in a strut, in.^{2}
f'_s = stress in compression reinforcement, psi.

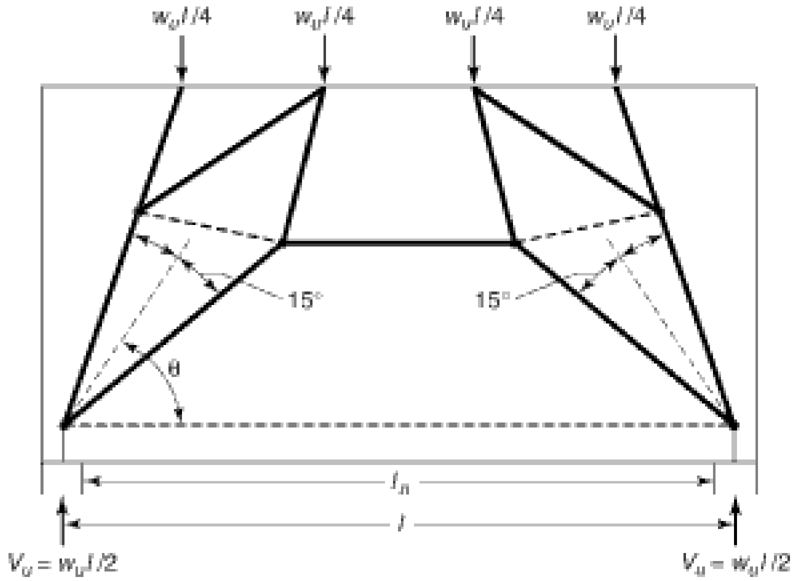


Figure 6.33 Strut-and-tie alternative model for example 6.7 (truss solid lines = compression; dashed lines = tension).

(4) *Strength of Ties*

$$F_{nt} = A_{ts} f_y + A_{tp} (f_{se} + \Delta f_p) \tag{6.42}$$

where F_{nt} = nominal strength of tie, lb.
A_{ts} = area of non-prestressed reinforcement in a tie, in.^{2}
A_{tp} = area of prestressing reinforcement, in.^{2}
f_{se} = effective stress after losses in prestressing reinforcement
Δf_p = increase in prestressing stress beyond the service load level
$(f_{se} + \Delta f_p)$ should not exceed f_{py}. When no prestressing reinforcement is used, $A_{ps} = 0$ in Equation 6.42.

$$h_{t,max} = F_{nt}/f_{ce} \tag{6.43}$$

where $h_{t,max}$ = maximum effective height of concrete concentric with the tie, used to dimension nodal zone, in.

Δf_p can be taken as 60,000 psi for bonded prestressed reinforcement, or 10,000 psi for non-bonded reinforcement.

If the bars in the tie are in one layer, the effective height of the tie can be taken as the diameter of the bars in the tie *plus* twice the cover to the surface of the bars. The reinforcement in the ties have to be anchored by hooks, mechanical anchorages, post-tensioning anchors, or straight bars, all with full development length.

(5) *Strength of Nodal Zones*

$$F_{nn} = f_{ce} A_{nz} \tag{6.44}$$

where F_{nn} = nominal strength of a face of a nodal zone, lb
A_{nz} = area of face of a nodal zone or a section through a nodal zone, in.^{2}

It can be assumed that the principal plane directions in the struts and ties act parallel to the planes of the struts and ties. Under such a condition, the stresses on faces perpendicular to these planes are principal stresses.

(6) Confinement in the Nodal Zone

The ACI 318-05, Appendix A, stipulates that unless confining reinforcement is provided within the nodal zone and its effect is supported by analysis and experimentation, the computed compressive stress on a face of a nodal zone due to the strut and tie forces should not exceed the values given by Eq. 6.45 (Ref. 6.1):

$$f_{cr} = 0.85\,\beta_n\,f'_c \tag{6.45}$$

where β_n = 1.0 in nodal zones bounded by struts or bearing stresses
= 0.8 in nodal zones anchoring one tie
= 0.6 in nodal zones anchoring two or more ties

In the case of corbels, the area A_h to control shear cracks has to satisfy the expression

$$A_h \geq 0.5\,(A_{sc} - A_n) \tag{6.46}$$

where A_n = area of reinforcement resisting tensile force N_{uc}.

6.11.4 Example 6.7: Design of Deep Beam by Strut-and-Tie Method

Solve Example 6.3 using the strut-and-tie method in designing the flexural and shear reinforcement for the indicated deep beam.

Solution:

(1) Truss model selection

The uniformly distributed load on the beam top is idealized by two concentrated loads as shown in Fig. 6.32 and detailed in Fig. 6.33. The ensuing truss model can be considered to simulate the stress trajectories of the principal stresses. $l/h = 10/6 = 1.67 < 2.0$, hence a deep beam.

Strut inclination angle θ in Figure 6.32 (c) is interpolated between $\theta = 68°$ for $l/h \leq 1$ and $\theta = 54°$ for $l/h = 2$ (Ref. 6.23).

Hence, $\theta = 68 - (68 - 54)(1.67 - 1.0)$

$$= 68 - 0.67 \times 14 = 58.62°$$

Assume supports center line span = 11 ft 5 in.

Assume d_c = cover to centroid of tensile reinforcement = 7 in.

Vertical distance of node C in Figure 6.33(a) from the centroid of the tensile reinforcement $= \dfrac{2h}{3} = \dfrac{2 \times 6}{3} = 4' - 0''$

$$\text{Length } CD = 11'\text{-}5'' - 2\left(4' - \frac{7''}{12}\right)\cot 58.62°$$
$$= 11.42 - 4.17 = 7.25 \text{ ft.}$$

Intensity of total factored distributed load from Ex. 6.3 is w_u = 131,400 lb/ft.

Idealized equivalent concentrated load is

$$P_u = \frac{w_u l}{2} = \frac{131{,}400 \times 10}{2} = 657{,}000 \text{ lb./strut (Fig. 6.33)}$$

$$V_n = \frac{P_u}{\phi} = \frac{657{,}000}{0.75} = 876{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

Compressive forces in each of the compressive struts EC and FD = 876,000 lb.

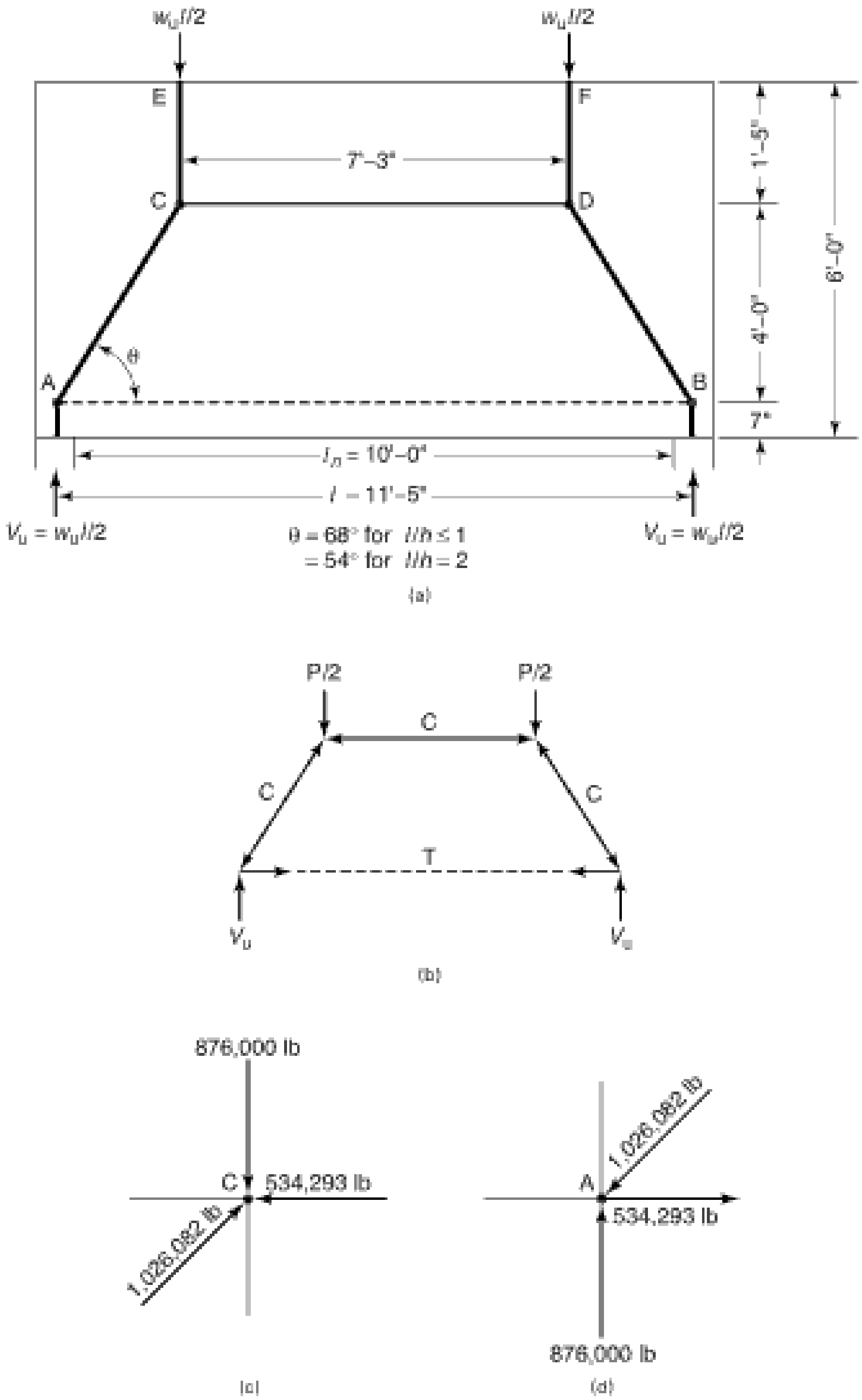


Figure 6.34 Truss-and-tie model in example 6.7: (a) idealized truss model; (b) truss forces (C = compression, T = tension); (b) forces on joint C (C-C-C node); (d) forces on joint A (C-C-T node).

(2) Vertical and horizontal components of forces in the truss model

The compressive forces in the truss shown in Figure 6.33(b) are computed in the usual manner, as the vector sine and cosine components of the inclined struts at the assumed $\theta = 58.62°$ Figure 6.33(c) gives the intersecting nodal forces in the *D*-region of node *C*, giving a strut force in *CA* = 1,026,082 lb. (*C-C-C* node). Figure 6.33(d) gives the intersecting forces in the *D*-region of node *A*, giving a tie force in truss member *AB* = 534,293 lb. (*C-C-T* node).

Evidently, idealizing the distributed load into four or six equivalent concentrated loads would have reduced the compressive forces in the struts and the tensile forces in the ties, leading to reduced reinforcement areas that ideally become relatively closer to the reinforcement area obtained in Ex. 6.3 (see truss model in Fig. 6.34).

(3) Horizontal and vertical reinforcement across depth of beam web to control shear cracking

Horizontal web requirement is not required as part of the truss. However, in order to control cracking, ACI-318 Code requires an area $A_{vh} \geq 0.0015\, b_w\, s_h$ as in Example 6.3.

Assuming a spacing of 12 in. on centers,

Min $A_{vh} = 0.0015\, b_w\, s_h = 0.0015 \times 20 \times 12 = 0.36$ in.^{2}

Use No. 4 bars at 12 in. on centers as horizontal reinforcement in each of the two faces of the deep beam (0.40 in.^{2}).

Vertical web requirement to control cracking: assume a spacing of 8 in. on centers.

From Eq. 6.21b, Min $A_v = 0.0025\, b_w s_v = 0.0025 \times 20 \times 8 = 0.40$ in.^{2}

Use No. 4 bars at 8 in. on centers as vertical reinforcement in each of the two faces of the deep beam.

(4) Check of orthogonal shear reinforcement crossing compression strut

As given in Sec. 6.11.3, the minimum reinforcement crossing the struts for

$$f'_c \leq 6000 \text{ psi} = \sum \frac{A_{si}}{b_s s_i} \sin \gamma_i \geq 0.003.$$

γ_1 = inclination of vertical reinforcement to the strut = 31.38° where $\sin \gamma_1 = 0.521$

γ_2 = inclination of horizontal reinforcement to the strut = 58.62° where $\sin \gamma_2 = 0.854$

$$\sum \frac{A_{si}}{b_s s_i} \sin \gamma_i = \frac{0.60 \times 0.521}{20 \times 8} + \frac{0.40 \times 0.854}{20 \times 12} = 0.0020 + 0.0014 = 0.0034 > 0.003 \text{ O.K.}$$

Hence, adopt the reinforcement in item (3), namely, No. 4 bars at 8 in. c/c for vertical reinforcement and No. 4 bars at 12 in. c/c for horizontal reinforcement for both faces of the deep beam.

(5) Strength of struts

From Equation 6.40, compressive strength of concrete in a strut or nodal zone is

$f_{cu} = 0.85\, \beta_s f'_c$ where $\beta_s = 0.75$

$= 0.85 \times 0.75 \times 4{,}000 = 2{,}550$ psi.

Required strength of struts *CA*, *DB* is

$$F_{nt} = 1{,}026{,}082 \text{ lb.}$$

From Equation 6.39,

$$F_{nt} = f_{cs} A_{cs} \text{ or } 1{,}026{,}082 = 2{,}550\, A_{cs} \text{ hence } A_{cs} = \frac{1{,}026{,}082}{2{,}550} = 402 \text{ in.}^2$$

Width of *CA*, *DB* $= \frac{402}{20} = 20.1$ in., which is within the available area of the deep beam, hence, O.K. Similarly, for struts *EC* and *FD*, $A_{cs} = 876{,}000/2550 = 344$ in.^{2}; minimum required strut width = 344/20 = 17.2 in., which is available within the beam area, hence O.K.

(6) Strength of ties

Required strength $F_{nt} = 534{,}293$ lb.
From Equation 6.42,

$$F_{nt} = A_{ts} f_y + A_{ps} (f_{se} + \Delta f_p)$$

or $534{,}293 = A_{ts} \times 60{,}000$

$$A_{ts} = \frac{534{,}293}{60{,}000} = 8.9 \text{ in.}^2$$

Trying No. 10 bars, $n = \dfrac{8.9}{1.27} = 7.0$

Use 8 No. 10 bars in 4 layers of two bars at 3 in. on centers.

$d_c = 2.15$ in. cover $+ 3 + 1.5 \doteq 7$ in. assumed in constructing the truss model dimensions. From Equation 6.43, the maximum height of concrete concentric with the tie for dimensioning the nodal zone is

$$h_{t\,max} = F_{nt}/f_{cu} = \frac{534{,}293}{2{,}550} = 210 \text{ in.}$$

Actual tie height $= 2.15 + 3 + 3 + 3 + 2.15 = 13.3$, say 14 in., accept.

Anchor the 8 No. 10 bars using hooks at bar ends with full development length. Check the development length.

(7) Strength of nodal zones

From Equation 6.45, maximum allowable concrete strength in the nodal zone anchoring nonconfined two or more ties is
$f_{cu} = 0.85\,\beta_n f'_c$, where $\beta_n = 0.6$
or $f_{cu} = 0.85 \times 0.6 \times 4{,}000 = 2{,}040$ psi.
Surface area of node perpendicular to CA:

$$A_{nz} = 20\left(\frac{14}{\cos\theta}\right) = \frac{20 \times 14}{0.521} = 537 \text{ in.}^2$$

From Equation 6.44, the nominal strength of the nodal force is

$$F_n = f_{cu} A_{nz} = 2{,}040 \times 537 = 1{,}095{,}480 \text{ lb.} > 1{,}026{,}082 \text{ lb.,} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Confinement of the nodal zone is not required, since the stress in the concrete in the nodal zone did not exceed the calculated permissible $f_{cu} = 2{,}040$ psi.

Hence, adopt the design.

Another truss model simulating the uniformly distributed load on the top of the beam by four concentrated loads instead of two, could have reduced the amount of the horizontal reinforcement. Such a truss model could have the form shown in Fig. 6.33 (Ref. 6.22) in idealizing the stress trajectories of the principal stresses in the deep beam. Careful engineering judgment has to be exercised in the selection of the path of forces on the basis of the principles outlined in Section 6.11.1, to determine whether the resulting reinforcement is excessive or relatively efficient. Principles of equilibrium and compatibility have to be maintained in any chosen model (Ref 6.27).

Comparison of the solution in Example 6.7 to that in Example 6.3 demonstrates the conservative values obtained in the strut-and-tie solution. This can possibly be justified because of the inherent large variability and wide range of assumptions that can be made by the designer in the selection of the path of forces that produce the truss model.

6.11.5 Example 6.8: Design of Brackets and Corbels by the Strut-and-Tie Method

Design the corbel in Example 6.6 by the strut-and-tie method.

Solution:

Column size: 12 × 18 in.

Corbel width = 18 in.

(1) Truss Model Selection

Assume the corbel is monolithically cast with the column. The total depth h = 18 in. and effective depth d = 14 in. are based on the requirement that the vertical dimension of the corbel outside the bearing area is at least *one half* the column face width of 14 in. (column size: 12 × 14 in.). Select a simple strut-and-tie model as shown in Fig. 6.35(a), assuming that the center of tie AB is located at a distance of 4 in. below the top extreme corbel fibers, using one layer of reinforcing bars. Also assume that horizontal tie DG lies on a horizontal line passing at the re-entrant corner C of the corbel. The solid lines in Fig. 6.34 denote tension tie action (T), and the dashed lines denote compression strut action (C). The nodal points A, B, C, D result from the selected strut-and-tie model. Note that the entire corbel is a D-region structure because of the existing statical discontinuities in the geometry of the corbel and the vertical and horizontal loads.

(2) Strut-and-tie truss forces

From Example 6.6, V_u = 80,000 lb

$$N_{uc} = 0.20\, V_u = 16{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

The following are the truss member forces calculated from statics in Fig. 6.34:

a) Compression strut BC:

$$\text{Length } BC = \sqrt{(7)^2 + (14)^2} = 15.652 \text{ in.}$$

$$F_{BC} = 80{,}000 \times \frac{15.652}{14} = 89{,}443 \text{ lb.}$$

b) Tension tie BA:

$$F_{BA} = 80{,}000 \times \frac{7}{14} + 16{,}000 = 56{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

c) Compression strut AC:

$$F_{AC} = \frac{56{,}000\sqrt{(8)^2 + (14)^2}}{8} = 112{,}872 \text{ lb.}$$

d) Tension tie AD:

$$F_{AD} = \frac{112{,}872 \times 14}{\sqrt{(8)^2 + (14)^2}} = 98{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

e) Compression strut CC':

$$F_{CC'} = 80{,}000 + 98{,}000 = 178{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

f) Tension tie CD:

$$F_{CD} = 56{,}000 - 80{,}000 \times \frac{7}{14} = 16{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

(3) Steel Bearing Plate Design

$f_{ce} = \phi(0.85\, f'c)$ where = 0.75 for bearing in strut-and-tie models.

$$\text{Area of plate is } A_1 = \frac{80{,}000}{0.75(0.85\, f'_c)}$$

$$= \frac{80{,}000}{0.75 \times 0.85 \times 5000} = 25.10 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use 5½ × 5½ in. plate and select a thickness to produce a rigid plate.

(4) Tie Reinforcement Design

$$\frac{56{,}000}{\phi f_y} = \frac{56{,}000}{0.75 \times 60{,}000} = 1.25 \text{ in.}^2$$

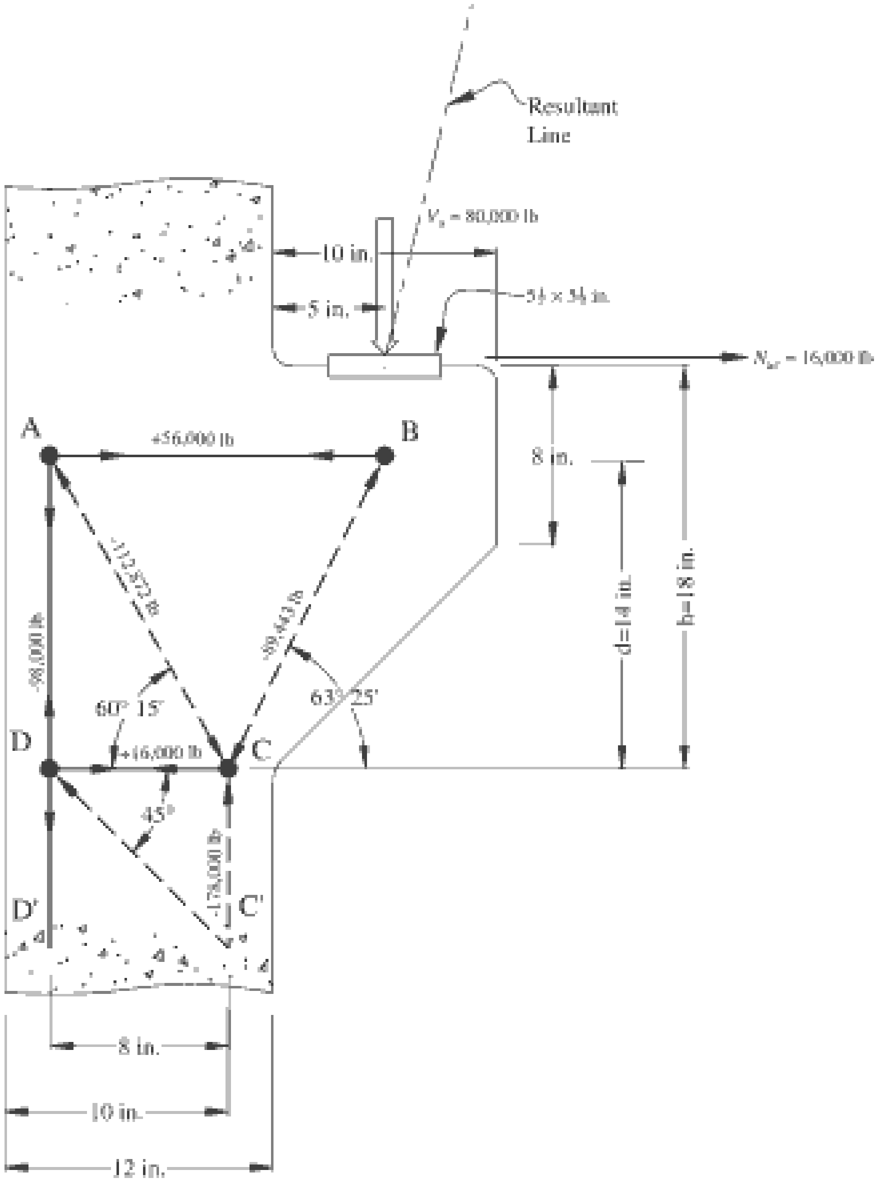


Figure 6.35(a) Strut-and-Tie Model in Example 6.8.

Use 3 # 6 bars = 1.32 in.^{2}, or, conservatively,
3 # 7 bars = 1.80 in.^{2} as in Example 6.6.

These top bars in one layer have to be fully developed along the longitudinal column reinforcement.

$$A_{n,CD} = \frac{16{,}000}{0.75 \times 60{,}000} = 0.36 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use 2 # 6 tie bars = 0.88 in.^{2} to form part of the cage shown in Fig. 6.35(b).

(5) *Horizontal Reinforcement A_h for Crack Control of Shear Cracks*

$$A_h = 0.50(A_{sc} - A_n)$$

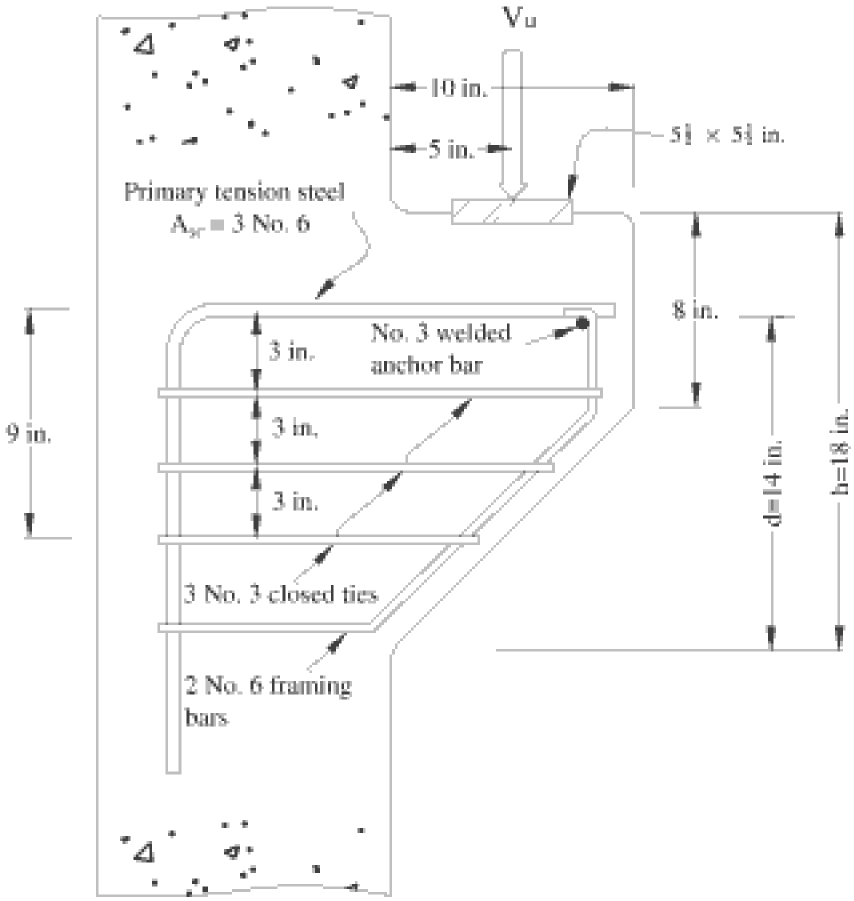


Figure 6.35(b) Corbel reinforcement details (Ex. 6.5).

where A_n = reinforcement resisting the frictional force N_{uc}.

$$A_v = \frac{N_{uc}}{\phi f_y} = \frac{16{,}000}{0.75 \times 60{,}000} = 0.36 \text{ in.}^2$$

Hence, $A_h = 0.50(1.25 - 0.36) = 0.45 \text{ in.}^2$

Try 3 #3 closed ties evenly spaced vertically as shown in Fig. 6.35, giving A_h = 3(2 0.11) = 0.66 in.2 > 0.45 in.2, O.K.

Because $\beta_s = 0.75$ is used for calculating the effective concrete compressive strength in the struts in the following section, where $f_{cu} = 0.85\beta_s f_c'$, the minimum reinforcement provided has also to satisfy:

$$\sum \frac{A_h / tie}{bs_i} \sin \gamma_i \geq 0.003$$

$$= \frac{2(0.11)}{14 \times 3.0} \sin 60°15' = 0.0045 > 0.003 \text{ O.K.}$$

Hence adopt 3#3 closed ties at 3.0 in. c. to c. spacing.

(6) *Strut Capacity Evaluation*

(i) *Strut CC'*

The width w_s of nodal zone C has to satisfy the allowable stress limit on the nodal zones, namely, node B below the bearing plate and node C in the re-entrant corner to the column. Both nodes are [illegible]fined.

Because of the non-confinement of the nodes $f_{ce} = 0.85\,\beta_n f'_c$ where $\beta_n = 0.80$ for a nodal zone anchoring one tie. Hence, $f_{ce} = 0.85 \times 0.80 \times 5000 = 3400$ psi.

$F_{n,CC'} = \phi\, f_{ce}\, b\, w_s = 0.75 \times 3400 \times 18 \times w_s/1000 = 45.9\, w_s$ kips, where w_s = min. width of the strut. Taking moment about node D, $F_{u,CC'}\,(10 - w_s/2) = 80^k\,(5 + 10) - 16^k \times 18$ to give min. $w_s = 2.24$ in. But available corbel $w_s = 2 + 2 = 4$ in.; hence $F_{n,CC'} = 45.9 \times 4.0 = 183.6$ kip > actual 178 kip, O.K.

(ii) Strut BC

Nominal strength is limited to $F_{ns} = f_{ce} A_{cs}$, where $f_{ce}' = 0.85\beta_s f'_c$

$f_{ce}' = 0.85 \times 0.75 \times 5000 = 3188$ psi $= 3.188$ ksi

A_{cs} is the smaller strut cross-sectional area at the two ends of the strut, namely, at node C, while at node B, the node width can be assumed equal to the steel plate width of 5.50 in.

A_c at node $C = bw_s = 18 \times 2.24 = 40.32$ in.^{2}

Available factored $F_{ns,C} = \phi\, F_{ns,C}$

$= 0.75 \times 3.188 \times 40.32 = 96.4$ kip > required $F_{BC} = 89.4$ kip, O.K.

(iii) Strut AC

Required min. width, w_s, of strut AC

$$= \frac{F_{u,AC}}{\phi\, f_{ce} b} = \frac{112.87\ kip}{0.75 \times 3.188 \times 18} = 2.62\ \text{in.}$$

Examination of the corbel and column depth of 12 in., shows there is a minimum clear cover of 2.0 in. from the outer concrete surface. Hence the widths, w_s, of all struts fit within the corbel geometry.

Adopt the design as shown in Fig. 6.35(b).

6.12 SI DESIGN EXPRESSIONS AND EXAMPLE FOR SHEAR DESIGN

Equation 6.8: $$V_c = \left[\left(\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + 120\rho_w \frac{V_u d}{M_u}\right)\right]\frac{b_w d}{7}$$

Equation 6.9: $$V_c = \lambda\,\frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{6}\,b_w d$$

where $\lambda = 1.0$ for normal weight concrete; 0.75 for all lightweight concrete.

Equation 6.10: $$V_c = \lambda\left(1 + \frac{N_u}{14A_g}\right)\frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{6}\,b_w d$$

where N_u/A_g is expressed in MPa.

Equation 6.15a: $$V_s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{s}$$

Equation 6.15b: $$V_s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{(V_u/\phi) - V_c}$$

$$\text{Min } A_v = \frac{b_w s}{3 f_y}$$ where b_w and s are expressed in mm and f_y in MPa.

Limitations on Spacing Stirrups

1. $V_n - V_c > \dfrac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{3}\,b_w d$: $\quad s_{max} = \dfrac{d}{4} \le 610$ mm
2. $V_n - V_c \le \dfrac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{3}\,b_w d$: $\quad s_{max} = \dfrac{d}{2} \le 610$ mm
3. $V_n - V_c > \dfrac{2}{3}\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d$: $\quad$ enlarge section

6.12.1 Example 6.8: SI Shear Design

Solve Ex. 6.1 using SI units

$f'_c = 27.6$ MPa	$\lambda = 1.0$ for normal-weight concrete
$f_y = 414$ MPa	$l = 7.62$ m
$b_w = 356$ mm	$w_L = 104$ kN/m
$d = 710$ mm	No axial load
$h = 765$ mm	No wind or earthquake

$A_s = 6$ No. 9 bars (diameter 28.6 mm.) = 3850 mm.^{2}

Closest area using metric bars from Fig. B.2b in the appendix:

$$2 \text{ No. } 25\text{ M} + 4 \text{ No. } 30\text{ M} = 2 \times 500 + 4 \times 700 = 3800 \text{ mm.}^2$$

Solution: beam self-weight = 356 × 765 (23.6 × 10^{-3}) kN/mm = 6430 kN/mm = 6.4 kN/m. Total factored load $w_u = 1.2 \times 6.4 + 1.6 \times 104 = 174$ kN/m.

$$\text{factored shear force at face of support, } V_u = \frac{174 \times 7.62}{2} = 663 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{Half-span} = \frac{7620}{2} = 3810 \text{ mm}$$

$$V_u \text{ at } d \text{ from support} = \frac{3810 - 710}{3810} \times 663 = 539 \text{ kN}$$

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{539}{0.75} = 717 \text{ kN}$$

$$V_c = \lambda \frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{6} b_w d = 1.0 \frac{\sqrt{27.6}}{6} 356 \times 710\ N$$
$$= 221 \text{ kN}$$

Check for adequacy of section:

$$V_c + \left(\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{f'_c}\right) b_w d = 212 + \left(\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{27.6}\right) 356 \times 710 \times \frac{1}{1000}$$
$$= 1106 \text{ kN} > 717 \text{ kN}$$

Hence, the section is adequate. Since $V_u > \frac{1}{2}V_c$, stirrups are needed.

Web Steel Reinforcement: Try No. 4 stirrups or, from Fig. B.2b, try No. 10 M metric bar, $A_v = 2 \times 100 = 200$ mm.^{2}.

$$s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{V_u/\phi - V_c} = \frac{200 \times 414 \times 710 \text{ N} - \text{mm}}{(717 - 221)10^3\text{N}} = 119 \text{ mm}$$

Plane x_1 at $s = d/4$ maximum spacing:

$$V_n - V_c = 717 - 221 = 496 \text{ kN}$$

$$\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{f'_c}b_w d = \frac{\sqrt{27.6}}{3} \times 356 \times 710 \times \frac{1}{1000} = 445 \text{ kN}$$

$< V_s = 496$ kN

@Seismicisolation

Find plane for $s = d/4$ at a distance x_1 from midspan.

$$V_{n1} = V_c + 445 = 221 + 445 = 666 \text{ kN}$$

$$x_1 \text{ from midspan} = \frac{(3810 - 710) \times 666}{717} = 2879 \text{ mm}$$

Plane x_2 at $s = d/2$ maximum spacing:

$$s = \frac{d}{2} = \frac{A_v f_y d}{V_{n2} - V_c}$$

or

$$V_{n2} = V_c + \frac{A_v f_y d}{s = 710/2}$$

$$= 221 + \frac{200 \times 414 \times 710}{710/2} \times \frac{1}{1000} = 386 \text{ kN}$$

$$x_2 \text{ from midspan} = \frac{(3810 - 710) \times 386}{717} = 1670 \text{ mm}$$

Plane x_3 at shear force V_c:

$$V_c = 221 \text{ kN}$$

$$x_3 \text{ from midspan} = \frac{(3810 - 710)221}{717} = 956$$

Discontinue stirrups at plane where $V_n \le \frac{1}{2} V_c$.

$$\text{minimum } A_v = \frac{b_w s}{3 f_y} = \frac{356 \times 710/2}{3 \times 414} = 102 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$< \text{ actual } A_v = 200 \text{ mm}^2, \quad \text{O.K.}$$

x_4 for $\frac{1}{2} V_c = 956/2 = 478$ mm from midspan.

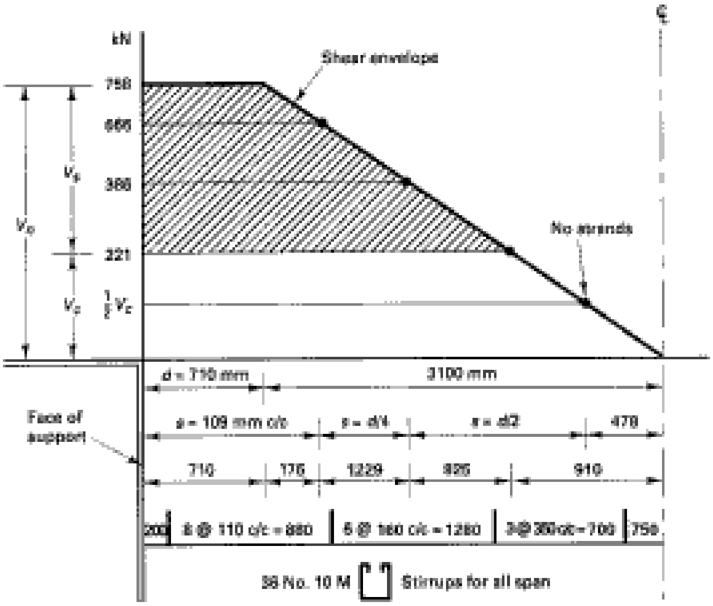


Figure 6.36 Shear envelope and stirrups arrangement (SI units) for Ex. 6.7.

Photo 6.7 Construction Photograph of the Borgata Hotel and Casino Complex, Atlantic City, New Jersey, during the casting of the slabs and columns in 2003: Courtesy the Borgata Management, and Cagley, Harman and Associates, Design Engineers, Philadelphia, PA. Details are given in Photo 1.9.

SELECTED REFERENCES

6.1. ACI Committee 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-08) and Commentary (ACI 318R-08)*, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2005, pp. 465.

6.2. ACI–ASCE Committee 426, "The Shear Strength of Reinforced Concrete Members," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE*, Vol. 99, No. ST6, June 1973, pp. 1091–1187.

6.3. Taylor, H. P. J., *The Fundamental Behavior of Reinforced Concrete Beams in Bending and Shear*, Special Publication SP-42, Vol. 1, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1974, pp. 43–77.

6.4. Zsutty, T. C., "Beam Shear Strength Prediction by Analysis of Existing Data," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 65, November 1968, pp. 943–951.

6.5. Mattock, A. H., "Diagonal Tension Cracking in Concrete Beams with Axial Forces," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE*, Vol. 95, No. ST9, September 1969, pp. 1887–1900.

6.6. Laupa, A., Seiss, C. P., and Newmark, N. M., *Strength in Shear of Reinforced Concrete Beams*, University of Illinois Bulletin 428, Vol. 52, March 1955, 73 pp.

6.7. Moody, K. G., Viest, I. M., Elstner, R. C. and Hognestad, E., "Shear Strength of Reinforced Concrete Beams," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vols. 51-15, 51-21, 51-28, and 51-34, February 1954, pp. 317–332, 417–434, 525–539, 697–732, respectively.

6.8. Comité Euro-International du Béton, *International Recommendations for the Design and Construction of Concrete Structures*, June 1970, 80 pp.; and "*CEB-FIP" Model Code for Concrete Structures*, Vol. 2, CEB, Paris, April 1990.

6.9. Park, R., and Paulay, T., *Reinforced Concrete Structures*, Wiley, New York, 1975, 768 pp.

6.10. Raths, C. H., and Kriz, L. B., "Connections in Precast Concrete Structures—Strength of Corbels," *Journal of the Prestressed Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 10, No. 1, February 1965, pp. 16–47.

6.11. Leonhardt, F., "Uber die Kunst des Bewehrens von Stahlbetontragwerken," *Beton und Stahlbetonbau*, Vol. 60, No. 8, p[illegible]

6.12. ACI–ASCE Committee 426, *Suggested Revisions to Shear Provisions for Building Codes*, ACI 426 IR-77, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1979, 84 pp.

6.13. Mattock, A. H., Chen, K. C., and Soongswang, K., "The Behavior of Reinforced Concrete Corbels," *Journal of the Prestressed Concrete Institute*, Vol. 21, No. 2, April 1976, pp. 52–77.

6.14. Nawy, E. G., and Ukadike, M. M., "Shear Transfer in Concrete and Polymer Modified Concrete Members Subjected to Shear Load," *Journal of the American Society for Testing and Materials, Proceedings*, Philadelphia, March 1983, pp. 83–97.

6.15. ACI Committee 340, *ACI Design Handbook*, Special Publications SP-17(97), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1997, 482 pp.

6.16. Yong, Y. K., McCloskey, D. H., and Nawy, E. G., *Reinforced Corbels of High Strength Concrete*, Special Publication SP-87, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1985, pp. 197–212.

6.17. Hsu, T. T. C., *Unified Theory of Reinforced Concrete*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL., 1993, 313 pp.

6.18. Nawy, E. G., *Fundamentals of High Performance Concrete*, 2nd ed. John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY., 2001, 410 pp.

6.19. Nawy, E. G., Ed.-in-chief, *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fl. 2008, 1560 pp.

6.20. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 944 pp.

6.21. Warner, R. F., Rangan, B.V., Hall, A.S., and Faulkes, K. A., *Concrete Structures*, Longman, UK, 1999, 974 pp.

6.22. Schlaich, J., Schaeffer, K., and Jennewein, M., 1987, "Toward a Consistent Design of Structural Concrete," *PCI Journal*, v. 32, No. 3, May–June, pp. 74–150.

6.23. Schlaich, J., Weischede, D., "Detailing of Concrete Structures (in German)," Bulletin d'Information 150, Comité Euro-International du Béton, Paris, March 1982, 163 pp.

6.24. Bergmeister, K., Breen, J. E., and Jirsa, J. O., "Dimensioning of the Nodes and Development of Reinforcement," *IABSE Colloquim Stuttgart 1991*, International Association for Bridge and Structural Engineering, Zurich, 1991, pp. 551–556.

6.25. FIP Commission 3, 1999, *FIP Recommendations 1996, Practical Design of Structural Concrete*, FIP Congress Amsterdam 1996, Fédération Internationale de la Precontraint, Lausanne.

6.26. Joint ACI-ASCE Committee 445, "Recent Approaches to Shear Design of Structural Concrete," *ASCE Journal of Structural Engineering*, Dec., 1998, pp. 1375–1417, and *Manual of Concrete Practice*, 2000 and later editions.

6.27. Nawy, E. G., "Discussion of Appendix A of ACI 318-02, on the Strut and Tie Method," Concrete International Journal, Vol. 24, No. 1, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, January 2002, pp. 122–124.

6.28 Beckett D. and Alexandrou A., "*Introduction to Euro Code 2—Design of Concrete Strucures*," E. & F. Spon, London, 1997, pp.195.

6.29 Nawy, E. G., "ACI 318-02 Shear Provision on the Design of Deep Beams," *Concrete International Journal (CI)*, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2002.

6.30 Tjhin, T. N. and Kuchma, D. A., "Corbel at Column," SP-208, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2002, pp. 105–115.

6.31 Parra-Montesinos, G. J., " Shear Strength of Beams with Deformed Steel Fibers," *Concrete International*, Vol. 28, No.11, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, November 2006, pp. 57–66.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

6.1. A simply supported beam has a clear span $l_n = 22$ ft (6.70 m) and is subjected to an external uniform service dead load $W_D = 900$ lb per ft (13.1 kN/m) and live load $w_L = 1200$ lb per ft (17.5 kN/m). Determine the maximum factored vertical shear V_u at the critical section. Determine the nominal shear resistance V_c by both the short method and by the more refined method of taking the contribution of the flexural steel into acc the diagonal tension reinforcement. Given:

$$b_w = 12 \text{ in. } (305 \text{ mm})$$
$$d = 17 \text{ in. } (432 \text{ mm})$$
$$h = 20 \text{ in. } (508 \text{ mm})$$
$$A_s = 6.0 \text{ in.}^2 \ (3780 \text{ mm}^2)$$
$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$

Assume that no torsion exists.

6.2. Solve Problem 6.1 assuming that the beam is made of sand-lightweight concrete and that it is subjected to an axial service compressive load of 2500 lb acting at its plastic centroid.

6.3. A cantilever beam is subjected to a concentrated service live load of 25,000 lb (111 kN) acting at a distance of 3 ft 6 in. (1.07 m) from the wall support. Its cross section is 10 in. × 20 in. with an effective depth $d = 17$ in. (432 mm). Design the stirrups needed. Given:

$$f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi } (20.7 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = f_{yt} = 40{,}000 \text{ psi } (275.8 \text{ MPa})$$

6.4. The first interior span of a continuous beam has a clear span $l_n = 18$ ft (5.49 m) and is subjected to an intensity of external uniform service live load $w_L = 1800$ lb per linear foot (26 kN/m) and a service dead load $w_D = 2200$ lb per linear foot (32 kN/m) not including its self-weight. Design the section for flexure and diagonal tension, including the size and spacing of the stirrups, assuming that the beam width $b_w = 15$ in. (381 mm). Assume that the beam is not subjected to torsion and that all spans are equal. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$

6.5. A continuous beam has two equal spans $l_n = 18$ ft (5.49 m) and is subjected to an external service dead load w_D of 350 lb per ft. (5.1 kN/m) and a service live load w_L of 900 lb per ft. (13.2 kN/m). In addition, an external service concentrated dead load P_D of 20,000 lb and an external service concentrated live load P_L of 28,500 lb (127 kN) are applied to one midspan only. Design the diagonal tension reinforcement necessary. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$

6.6. Design the vertical stirrups for a beam having the shear diagram shown in Figure 6.37 assuming that $V_c = 2\sqrt{f'_c}b_wd$. Given:

$$b_w = 14 \text{ in. } (356 \text{ mm})$$
$$d_w = 20 \text{ in. } (508 \text{ mm})$$

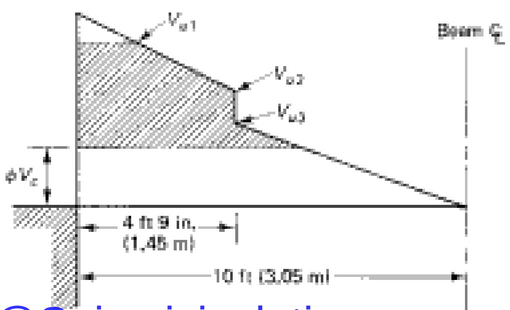


Figure 6.37

$$V_{u1} = 75{,}000 \text{ lb } (334 \text{ kN})$$
$$V_{u2} = 60{,}000 \text{ lb } (267 \text{ kN})$$
$$V_{u3} = 45{,}000 \text{ lb } (200 \text{ kN})$$
$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

6.7. Calculate the nominal shear strength V_c of the plain concrete in the web of the continuous normal-weight concrete beam shown in Figure 6.38 using the more refined expression for evaluating the shear. Given:

$$\rho_w = 0.025$$
$$\frac{l_n}{d} = 16$$
$$\frac{x}{l_n} = 0.45$$
$$M_0 = -\frac{w_u l_n^2}{8} = 120{,}000 \text{ ft-lb } (162.7 \text{ kNm})$$
$$M_x = 55{,}000 \text{ ft-lb } (74.6 \text{ kNm})$$
$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa}), \text{ lightweight concrete}$$
$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

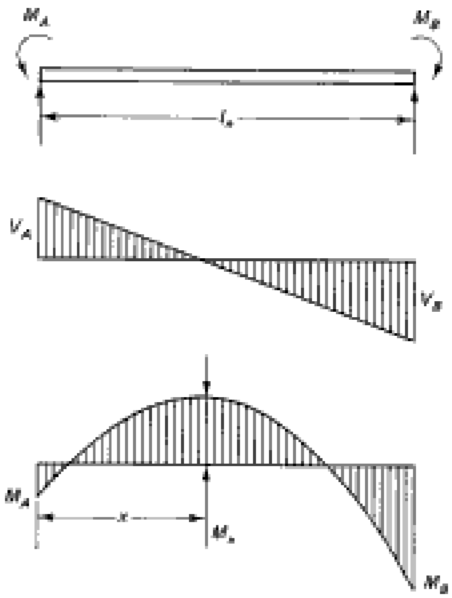


Figure 6.38

Also compute the intensity of factored load w_u per foot to which this span is subjected.

6.8. A simply supported deep beam has a clear span l_n = 10 ft (3.1 m) and an effective center-to-center span l = 11 ft 6 in. (3.5 m). The total depth of the beam is h = 8 ft 10 in. (2.7 m). It is subjected to a uniform factored load on the top fibers of intensity w = 120,000 lb/ft (1601.8 kN/m), including its self-weight. Design the beam for flexure and shear by (a) nonlinear approach for flexure, and (b) strut-and-tie approach.

Given: f'_c = 4500 psi (31.0 MPa), normal-weight concrete
$f_y = f_{yt}$ = 60,000 psi (413.7 MPa)

Assume the beam to be loaded only in its plane and that wind and earthquake are not a consideration.

6.9. Solve Problem 6.8 if the same beam was continuous over three spans and was subjected to the same intensity of load.

6.10. Design a bracket to support a concentrated factored load V_u = 125,000 lb (556.0 kN) acting at a lever arm a = 4 in. (101.6 mm) from the column face; horizontal factored force N_{uc} = 40,000 lb (178 kN). Given:

$$b = 28 \text{ in. } (711 \text{ mm})$$
$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

Column size = 12 × 28 in. (305 × 711 mm); Corbel width = 28 in.

Use both the shear-friction approach and the strut-and-tie method in your solution. Assume that the bracket was cast after the supporting column cured and that the column surface at the bracket location was not roughened before casting the bracket. Detail the reinforcing arrangements for the bracket.

6.11. Solve Problem 6.10 if the structural system was made from monolithic sand-lightweight concrete in which the corbel or bracket is cast simultaneously with the supporting column. Use both the strut-and-tie method and the shear friction approach in your solution.

7

TORSION

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Torsion occurs in monolithic concrete construction primarily where the load acts at a distance from the longitudinal axis of the structural member. An end beam in a floor panel, a spandrel beam receiving load from one side, a canopy or a bus-stand roof projecting from a monolithic beam on columns, peripheral beams surrounding a floor opening, and a helical staircase are all examples of structural elements subjected to twisting moments. These moments occasionally cause excessive shearing stresses. As a result, severe cracking can develop well beyond the allowable serviceability limits unless special torsional reinforcement is provided. Photos 7.2 and 7.3 illustrate the extent of cracking at failure of a beam in torsion. They show the curvilinear plane of twist caused by the imposed torsional moments. In actual spandrel beams of a structural system, the extent of damage due to torsion is usually not as severe, as seen in Photos 7.4 and 7.5. This is due to the redistribution of stresses in the structure. However, loss of integrity due to torsional distress should always be avoided by proper design of the necessary torsional reinforcement.

Photo 7.1 Newark International Airport terminal, New Jersey. (Courtesy of Port of New York–New Jersey Authority.)

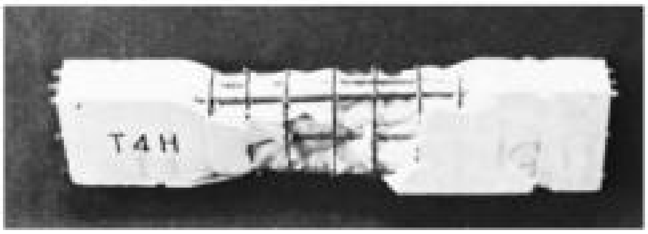
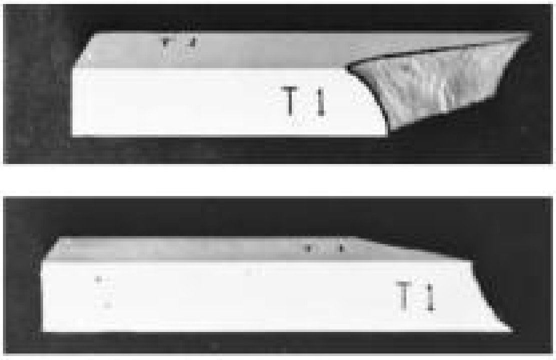


Photo 7.2 Reinforced plaster beam at failure in pure torsion. (Rutgers tests: Law, Nawy, et al.)

(a)



(b)

Photo 7.3 Plain mortar beam in pure torsion: (a) top view; (b) bottom view. (Rutgers tests: Law, Nawy, et al.)

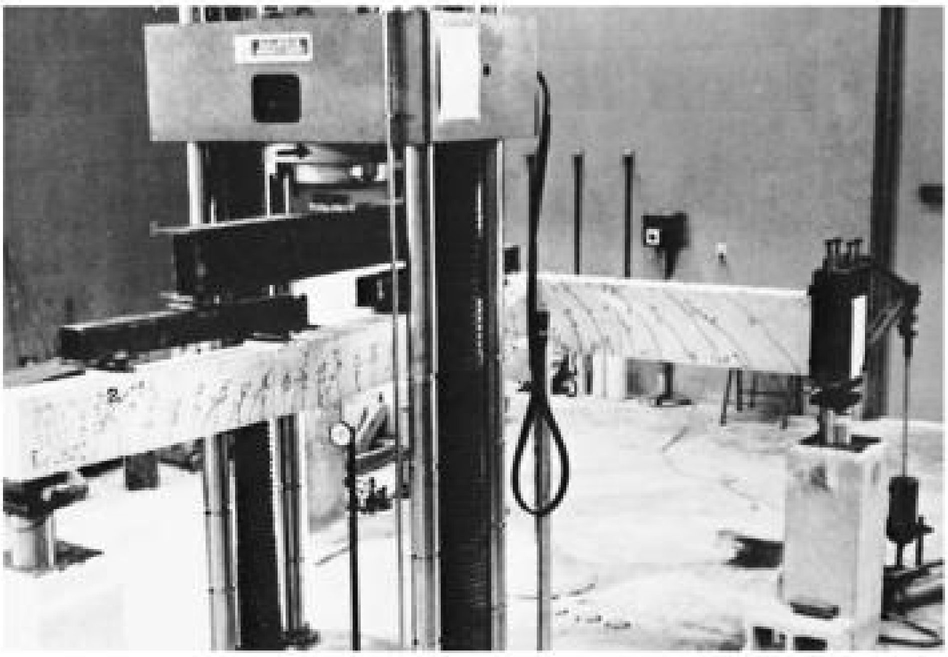


Photo 7.4 Reinforced concrete beams in torsion: testing setup. (Courtesy of Thomas T. C. Hsu.)

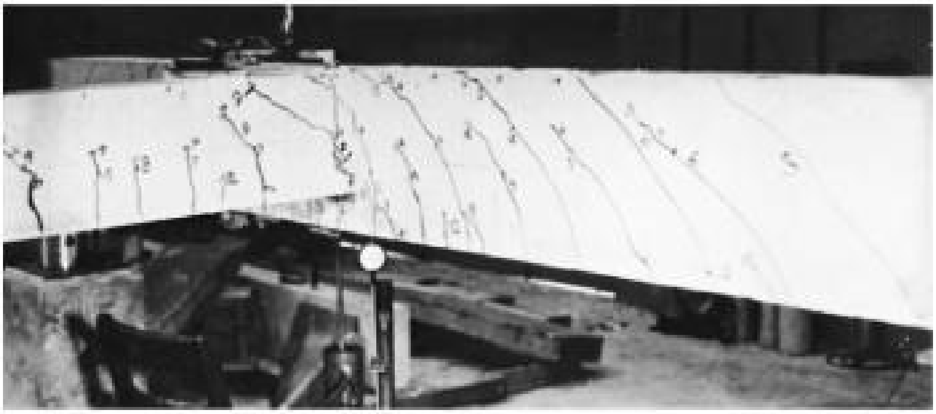


Photo 7.5 Close-up of torsional cracking of beams in Photo 44. (Courtesy of Thomas T. C. Hsu.)

An introduction to the subject of torsional stress distribution has to start with the basic elastic behavior of simple sections, such as circular or rectangular sections. Most concrete beams subjected to twist are components of rectangles. They are usually flanged sections such as T beams and L beams. Although circular sections are rarely a consideration in normal concrete construction, a brief discussion of torsion in circular sections serves as a good introduction to the torsional behavior of other types of sections.

Shear stress is equal to shear strain times the shear modulus at the elastic level in circular sections. As in the case of flexure, the stress is proportional to its distance from the neutral axis (i.e., the center of the circular section) and is maximum at the extreme fibers. If r is the radius of the element, $J = \pi r^4/2$, its polar moment of inertia, v_{te}, the elastic shearing stress due to an elastic twisting moment, T_e, has the following value:

$$v_{te} = \frac{T_e r}{J} \tag{a}$$

When deformation takes place in the circular shaft, the axis of the circular cylinder is assumed to remain straight. All radii in a cross-section also remain straight (i.e., without warping) and rotate through the same angle about the axis. As the circular element starts to behave plastically, the stress in the plastic outer ring becomes constant while the stress in the inner core remains elastic, as shown in Figure 7.1. As the whole cross-section

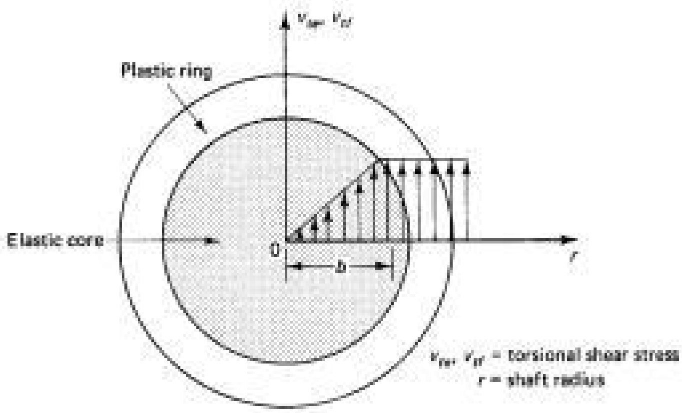


Figure 7.1 Torsional stress distribution through circular section.

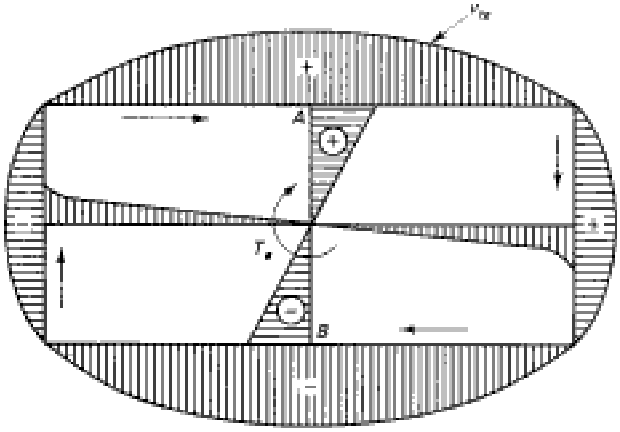


Figure 7.2 Pure torsion stress distribution in a rectangular section.

becomes plastic, $b = 0$ and the shear stress where v_{tf} is the nonlinear shear stress due to an ultimate twisting moment T_p, where the subscript f denotes failure.

$$v_{tf} = \frac{3}{4}\frac{T_p r}{J} \tag{b}$$

In rectangular sections, the torsional problem is considerably more complicated. The originally plane cross sections undergo warping due to the applied torsional moment. This moment produces axial as well as circumferential shear stresses with zero values at the corners of the section and the centroid of the rectangle and maximum values on the periphery at the middle of the sides, as seen in Figure 7.2. The maximum torsional shearing stress would occur at midpoints A and B of the larger dimension of the cross-section. These complications plus the fact that reinforced concrete sections are neither homogeneous nor isotropic make it difficult to develop exact mathematical formulations based on physical models such as Eqs. (a) and (b) for circular sections.

For over sixty years, the torsional analysis of concrete members has been based on either (1) the classical theory of elasticity developed through mathematical formulations coupled with membrane analogy verifications (St. Venant's) or (2) the theory of plasticity represented by the sand-heap analogy (Nadai's). Both theories were applied essentially to the state of pure torsion. But experiments revealed that the elastic theory is not entirely satisfactory for the accurate prediction of the state of stress in concrete in pure torsion. The behavior of concrete was found to be better represented by the plastic approach. Consequently, almost all developments in torsion as applied to concrete and reinforced concrete have been in the latter direction.

7.2 PURE TORSION IN PLAIN CONCRETE ELEMENTS

7.2.1 Torsion in Elastic Materials

St. Venant presented in 1853 his solution to the elastic torsional problem with warping due to pure torsion that develops in noncircular sections. Prandtl in 1903 demonstrated the physical significance of the mathematical formulations by his membrane analogy model. The model establishes particular relationships between the deflected surface of the loaded membrane and the distribution of torsional stresses in a bar subjected to twisting moments. Figure 7.3 shows the membrane analogy behavior for rectangular as well as L-shaped forms.

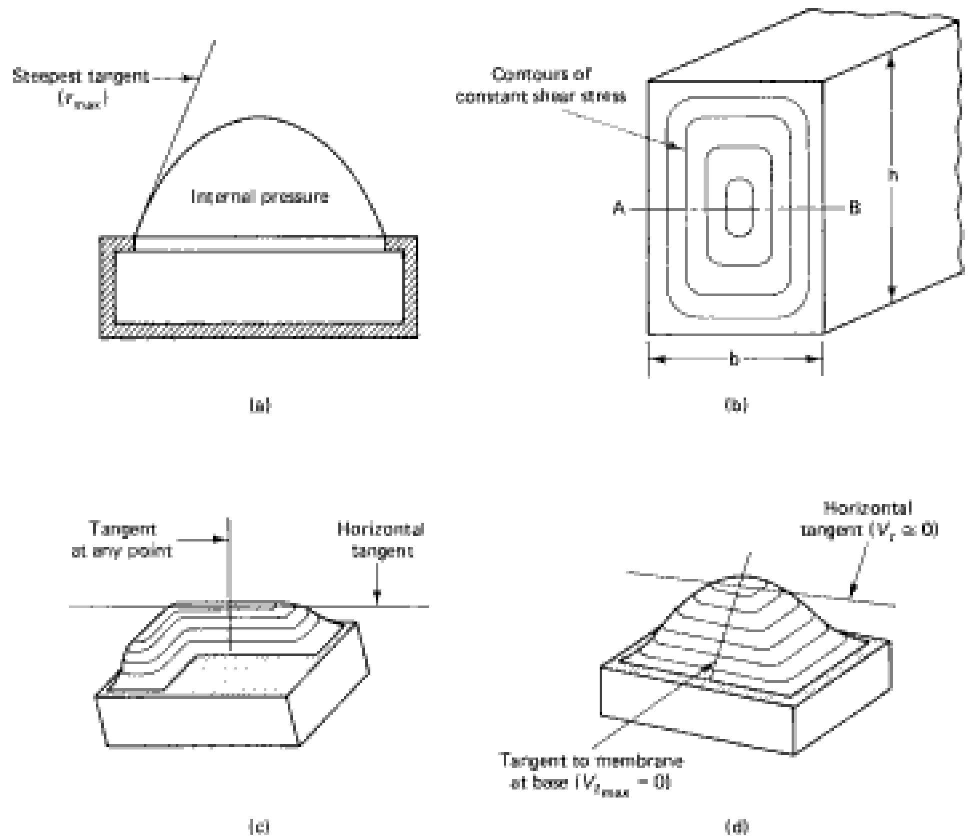


Figure 7.3 Membrane analogy in elastic pure torsion: (a) membrane under pressure; (b) contours in a real beam or in a membrane; (c) L-section; (d) rectangular section.

For small deformations, it can be proved that the differential equation of the deflected membrane surface has the same form as the equation that determines the stress distribution over the cross-section of the bar subjected to twisting moments. Similarly, it can be demonstrated that (1) the tangent to a contour line at any point of a deflected membrane gives the direction of the shearing stress at the corresponding cross-section of the actual member subjected to twist; (2) the maximum slope of the membrane at any point is proportional to the magnitude of shear stress τ at the corresponding point in the actual member; (3) the twisting moment to which the actual member is subjected is proportional to *twice* the volume under the deflected membrane.

It can be seen from Figures 7.2 and 7.3b that the torsional shearing stress is inversely proportional to the distance between the contour lines. The closer the lines are, the higher the stress, leading to the previously stated conclusion that the maximum torsional shearing stress occurs at the middle of the longer side of the rectangle. From the membrane analogy, this maximum stress has to be proportional to the steepest slope of the tangents at points A and B.

If δ = maximum displacement of the membrane from the tangent at point A, then from basic principles of mechanics and St. Venant's theory,

$$\delta = kb^2 G\theta \tag{7.1a}$$

where G is the shear modulus and θ is the angle of twist. But $v_{t(max)}$ is proportional to the slope of tangent; hence

$$v_{t(max)} = k_1 b G \theta \tag{7.1b}$$

where the k's are constants. The corresponding torsional moment T_e is proportional to *twice* the volume under the membrane, or

$$T_e \propto 2\left(\frac{2}{3}\delta bh\right) = k_2\,\delta bh$$

or

$$T_e = k_3 b^3 h G \theta \tag{7.1c}$$

From Eqs. 7.1b and 7.1c,

$$v_{t(max)} = \frac{T_e b}{kb^3 h} \simeq \frac{T_e b}{J_1} \tag{7.1d}$$

The denominator kb^3h in Eq. 7.1d represents the polar moment of inertia J_1 of the section. Comparing Eq. 7.1d to Eq. (a) for the circular section shows the similarity of the two expressions except that the factor k in the equation for the rectangular section takes into account the shear strains due to warping. Equation 7.1d can be further simplified to give

$$v_{t(max)} = \frac{T_e}{kb^2 h} \tag{7.2}$$

It can also be written to give the stress at planes inside the section, such as an inner concentric rectangle of dimensions x and y, where x is the shorter side, so that

$$v_{t(max)} = \frac{T_e}{kx^2 y} \tag{7.3}$$

It is important to note in using the membrane analogy approach that the torsional shear stress changes from one point to another along the same axis as AB in Fig. 7.3, because of the changing slope of the analogous membrane, rendering the torsional shear stress calculations lengthy.

7.2.2 Torsion in Plastic Materials

As indicated earlier, the plastic sand-heap analogy provides a better representation of the behavior of brittle elements such as concrete beams subjected to pure torsion. The torsional moment is also proportional to *twice* the volume under the heap, and the maximum torsional shearing stress is proportional to the slope of the sand heap. Figure 7.4 is a two- and three-dimensional illustration of the sand heap. The torsional moment T_p in Fig. 7.4d is proportional to twice the volume of the rectangular heap shown in parts (b) and (c). It can also be recognized that the slope of the sand-heap sides as a measure of the torsional shearing stress is *constant* in the sand-heap analogy approach, whereas it is continuously variable in the membrane analogy approach. This characteristic of the sand heap considerably simplifies the solutions.

7.2.3 Sand-heap Analogy Applied to L Beams

Most concrete elements subjected to torsion are flanged sections, most commonly L beams comprising the external wall beams of a structural floor. The L beam in Figure 7.5 is chosen in applying the plastic sand-heap approach to evaluate its torsional moment capacity and shear stresses to which it is subjected.

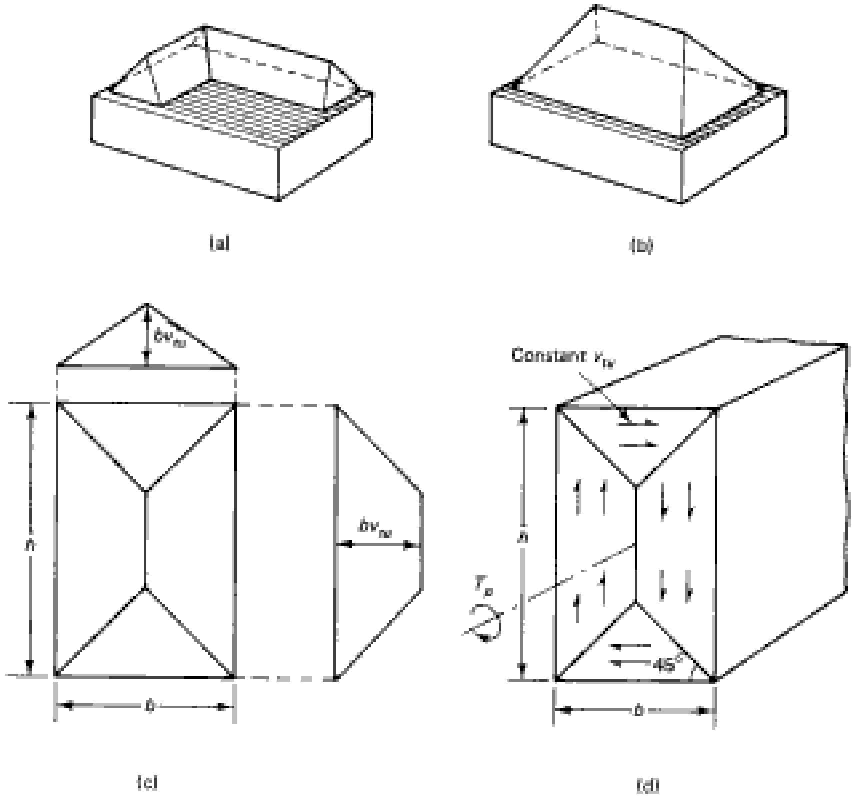


Figure 7.4 Sand-heap analogy in plastic pure torsion: (a) sand-heap L-section; (b) sand-heap rectangular section; (c) plan of rectangular section; (d) torsional shear stress.

The sand heap is broken into three volumes:

V'_1 = pyramid representing a square cross-sectional shape = $y_1 b^2_w/3$
V_2 = tent portion of the web representing a rectangular cross-sectional shape = $y_1 b_w (h - b_w)/2$
V_3 = tent representing the flange of the beam, transferring part PDI to NQM = $y_2 h_f(b - b_w)/2$

Torsional moment is proportional to twice the volume of the sand heaps; hence

$$T_p \simeq 2\left[\frac{y_1 b_w^2}{3} + \frac{y_1 b_w(h - b_w)}{2} + \frac{y_2 h_f(b - b_w)}{2}\right] \tag{7.4}$$

Also, torsional shear tress is proportional to the slope of the sand heaps; hence

$$y_1 = \frac{v_t b_w}{2} \tag{7.5a}$$

$$y_2 = \frac{v_t h_f}{2} \tag{7.5b}$$

Substituting y_1 and y_2 from Eqs. 7.5a and 7.5b into Eq. 7.4 gives us

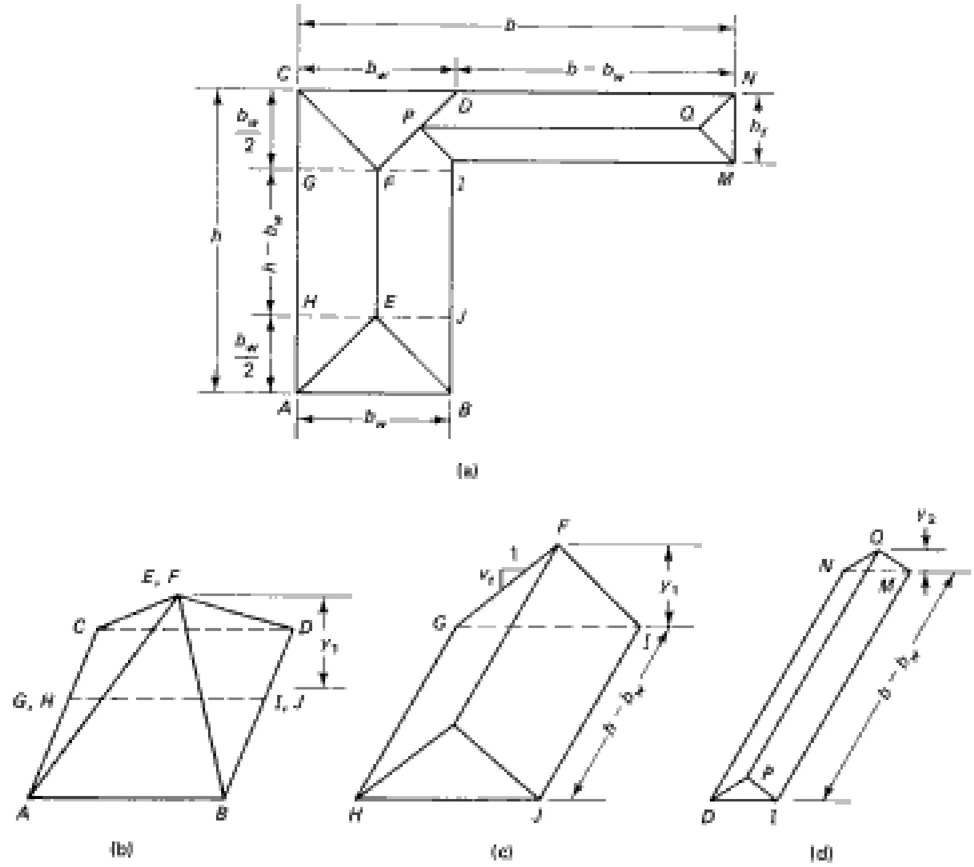


Figure 7.5 Sand-heap analogy of flanged section: (a) sand heap on L-shaped cross section; (b) composite pyramid from web (V_1); (c) tent segment from web (V_2); (d) transformed tent of beam flange (V_3).

$$v_{t(\max)} = \frac{T_p}{(b_w^2/6)(3h - b_w) + (h_f^2/2)(b - b_w)} \tag{7.6}$$

If both the numerator and denominator of Eq. 7.6 are divided by $(b_w h)^2$ and the terms rearranged, we have

$$v_{t(\max)} = \frac{T_p h/(b_w h)^2}{\left[\frac{1}{6}(3 - b_w/h)\right] + \left[\frac{1}{2}(h_f/b_w)2(b/h - b_w/h)\right]} \tag{7.7a}$$

If one assumes that C_t is the denominator in Eq. 7.7a and $J_E = C_t(b_w h)^2$, Eq. 7.7a becomes

$$v_{t(\max)} = \frac{T_p h}{J_E} \tag{7.7b}$$

where J_E is the equivalent polar moment of inertia and a function of the shape of the beam cross section. Note that Eq. 7.7b is similar in format to Eq. 7.1d from the membrane analogy except for the different values of the denominators J and J_E. Equation 7.7a can be readily applied to rectangular sections by setting $h_f = 0$.

It must also be recognized that concrete is not a perfectly plastic material; hence the actual torsional strength of the plain concrete section has a value lying between the membrane analogy and the sand-heap analogy values.

Equation 7.7b can be rewritten designating $T_p = T_c$ as the nominal torsional resistance of the plain concrete and $v_{t(max)} = v_{tc}$ using ACI terminology, so that

$$T_c = k_2 b^2 h v_{tc} \tag{7.8a}$$

$$T_c = k_2 x^2 y v_{tc} \tag{7.8b}$$

where x is the smaller dimension of the rectangular section.

Extensive work by Hsu, confirmed by others, has established that k_2 can be taken as $\frac{1}{3}$. This value originated from research in the skew-bending theory of plain concrete. It was also established that $6\sqrt{f'_c}$ can be considered as a limiting value of the pure torsional strength of a member without torsional reinforcement. Using a reduction factor of 2.5 for the first cracking torsional load $v_{tc} = 2.4\sqrt{f'_c}$ and using $k_2 = \frac{1}{3}$ in Eq. 7.8 results in

$$T_c = 0.8\sqrt{f'_c}\, x^2 y \tag{7.9a}$$

where x is the shorter side of the rectangular section. The high reduction factor of 2.5 is used to offset any effect of shear and bending moments that might be present.

If the cross section is a T or L section, the area can be broken into component rectangles as in Figure 7.6, such that

$$T_c = 0.8\sqrt{f'_c}\, \Sigma x^2 y \tag{7.9b}$$

7.2.4 Skew-bending Theory

This theory considers in detail the internal deformational behavior of the series of transverse warped surfaces along the beam. Initially proposed by Lessig, it had subsequent contributions from Collins, Hsu, Zia, Gesund, Mattock, and Elfgren among the several researchers in this field. T. T. C. Hsu made a major contribution experimentally to the development of the skew-bending theory as it presently stands. In his book (Ref. 7.13), Hsu details the development of the theory of torsion as applied to concrete structures and how the skew-bending theory formed the basis of the 1989 ACI Code provisions on torsion. The complexity of the torsional problem can thus permit in this textbook only the brief discussion that follows.

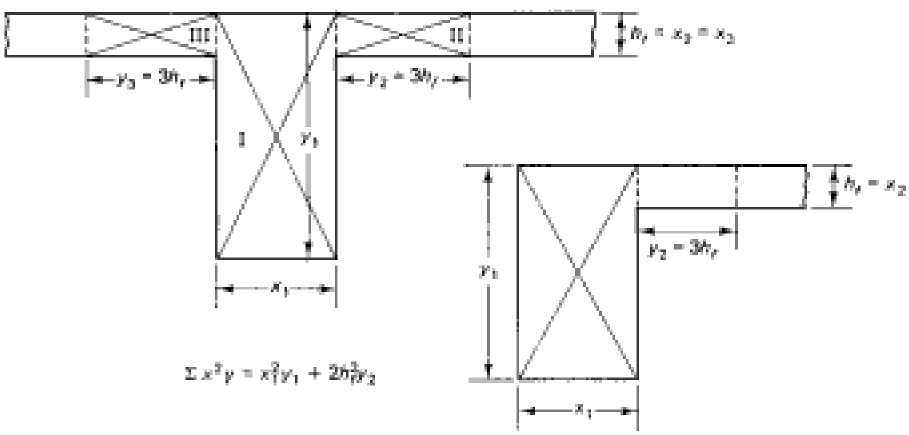


Figure 7.6 Component rectangles for T_c calculation.

The failure surface of the normal beam cross section subjected to bending moment M_u remains plane after bending, as in Fig. 7.7a. If a twisting moment T_u is also applied exceeding the capacity of the section, cracks develop on three sides of the beam cross-section and compressive stresses on portions of the fourth side along the beam. As torsional loading proceeds to the limit state at failure, a skewed failure surface results due to the combined torsional moment T_u and bending moment M_u. The neutral axis of the skewed surface and the shaded area in Figure 7.7b denoting the compression zone would no longer be straight but subtend a varying angle θ with the original plane cross-sections.

Prior to cracking, neither the longitudinal bars nor the closed stirrups make any appreciable contribution to the torsional stiffness of the section. At the post-cracking stage of loading, the stiffness of the section is reduced, but its torsional resistance is considerably increased, depending on the amount and distribution of *both* the longitudinal bars and the transverse *closed* ties. It has to be emphasized that little additional torsional strength can be achieved beyond the capacity of the plain concrete in the beam unless both longitudinal torsion bars and transverse ties are used.

The skew-bending theory idealizes the compression zone by considering it to be of uniform depth. It assumes the cracks on the remaining three faces of the cross section to be uniformly spread, with the steel ties (stirrups) at those faces carrying the tensile forces at the cracks and the longitudinal bars resisting shear through dowel action with the concrete. Figure 7.8a shows the forces acting on the skewly bent plane. The polygon in Figure 7.8b gives the shear resistance F_c of the concrete, the force T_l of the active longitudinal steel bars in the compression zone, and the normal compressive block force C_c.

The torsional moment T_c of the resisting shearing force F_c generated by the shaded compressive block area in Figure 7.8a is thus

$$T_c = \frac{F_c}{\cos 45^\circ} \times \text{its arm about forces } F_v \text{ in Fig. 7.8a}$$

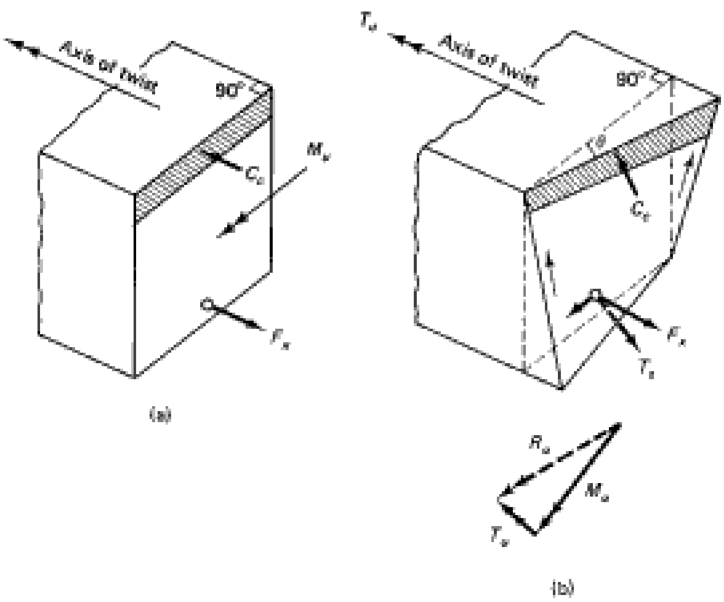


Figure 7.7 Skew bending due to torsion: (a) bending before twist; (b) bending and torsion.

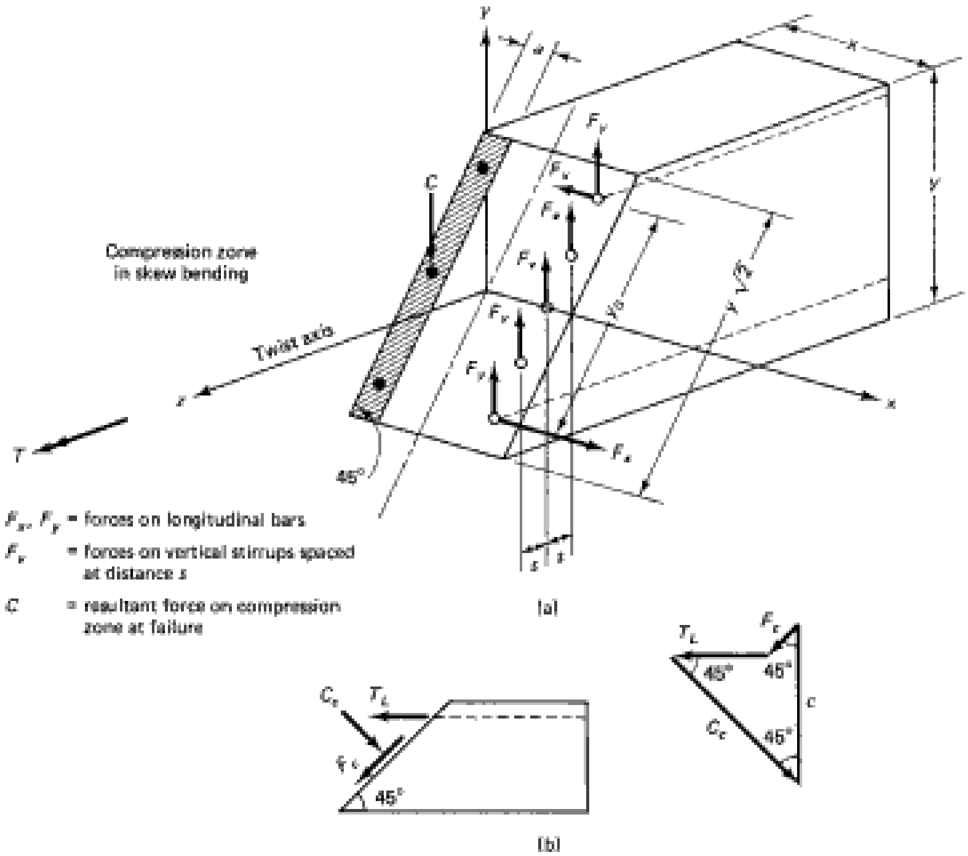


Figure 7.8 Forces on the skewly bent planes: (a) all forces acting on skew plane at failure; (b) vector forces on compression zone.

or

$$T_c = \sqrt{2}\, F_c(0.8x) \tag{7.10a}$$

where x is the shorter side of the beam. Extensive tests (Refs. 7.9 and 7.13) to evaluate F_c in terms of internal stress in concrete, $k_1\sqrt{f'_c}$, and the geometrical torsional constants of the section, k_2x^2y, led to the expression

$$T_c = \frac{2.4}{\sqrt{x}}\, x^2y\,\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{7.10b}$$

7.3 TORSION IN REINFORCED CONCRETE ELEMENTS

Torsion rarely occurs in concrete structures without being accompanied by bending and shear. The foregoing should give a sufficient background on the contribution of the plain concrete in the section toward resisting *part* of the combined stresses resulting from torsional, axial, shear, or flexural forces. The capacity of the plain concrete to resist torsion when in combination with other loads could, in many cases, be lower than when it resists the same factored external twisting moments alone. Consequently, torsional reinforcement has to be provided to resist the excess torque.

Inclusion of longitudinal and transverse reinforcement to resist part of the torsional moments introduces a new element in the set of forces and moments in the section. If

T_n = required total nominal torsional resistance of the section including the reinforcement
T_c = nominal torsional resistance of the plain concrete
T_s = torsional resistance of the reinforcement

then

$$T_n = T_c + T_s \tag{7.11}$$

T_c is assumed equal to zero for design simplification, and all the torsion is assumed to be borne by the longitudinal steel bars and the closed transverse stirrups. To study the contribution of the longitudinal steel bars and the closed stirrups, one has to analyze the system of forces acting on the warped cross-sections of the structural element at the limit state of failure.

A modified space truss analogy is presented comparable to the plane truss analogy used for the design of shear stirrups. In this theory, both the longitudinal reinforcement and the transverse stirrups (ties) are utilized as components of the space truss (see Sec. 7.3.2).

7.3.1 Space Truss Analogy Theory

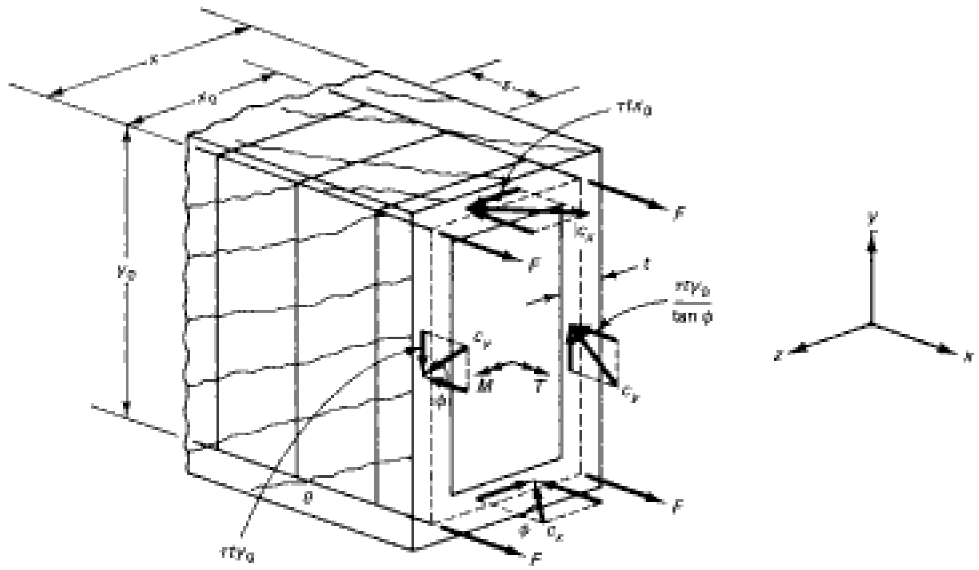
This theory was originally developed by Rausch and extended later by Lampert and Collins, with additional work by Hsu, Thurliman, Elfgren, and others. Further refinement was introduced by Collins and Mitchell (Ref. 7.12) as a compression field theory.

Hsu (Refs. 7.14, 7.15) proposed combining the equilibrium, compatibility, and the softened constitutive laws of concrete in a unified theory that can predict with reasonable accuracy the shear and torsional behavior of beams (the softened truss model). The shear flow concept is utilized in deriving the relevant expressions for shear equilibrium.

The space truss analogy is an extension of the model used in the design of the shear-resisting stirrups, in which the diagonal tension cracks, once they start to develop, are resisted by the stirrups. Because of the nonplanar shape of the cross-sections due to the twisting moment, a space truss composed of the stirrups is used as the diagonal tension members, and the idealized concrete strips at a variable angle between the cracks are used as the compression members, as shown in Figure 7.9.

It is assumed in this theory that the concrete beam behaves in torsion similar to a thin-walled box with a constant shear flow in the wall cross-section, producing a constant torsional moment. The use of hollow-walled sections rather than solid sections proved to give essentially the same ultimate torsional moment, provided that the walls are not too thin. Such a conclusion is borne out by tests, which have shown that the torsional strength of the solid sections is composed of the resistance of the closed stirrup cage, consisting of the longitudinal bars and transverse stirrups, and the idealized concrete inclined compression struts in the plane of the cage wall. The compression struts are the inclined concrete strips between the cracks in Figure 7.9.

The CEB–FIP code is based on the space truss model. In this code, the effective wall thickness of the hollow beam is taken as $\frac{1}{6}D_0$, where D_0 is the diameter of the circle inscribed in the rectangle connecting the corner longitudinal bars; that is, $D_0 = x_0$ in Figure 7.9. A rational method to derive the effective wall thickness was given by Hsu (Ref. 7.15). This nonlinear analysis takes into account the warping compatibility condition of the wall. In summary, the absence of the core does not affect the strength of such members in torsion; hence the acceptability of the space truss analogy approach based on hollow sections.



F = tensile force in each longitudinal bar
c_x = inclined compressive force on horizontal side
c_y = inclined compressive force on vertical side
τt = shear flow force per unit length of wall = q

Figure 7.9 Forces on hollow box concrete surface by truss analogy.

7.3.2 Equilibrium in Element Shear

A unit square membrane element of thickness h is subjected to shear flow q due to pure shear as in Figure 7.10 (Ref. 7.15). Reinforcement in both the longitudinal (E–W) direction ℓ and transverse (N–S) direction t is subjected to a unit stress f_ℓ/s_ℓ and f_v/s, respectively, such that the shear flow q can be defined by the equilibrium equations

$$q = (F_\ell)\tan\theta \tag{7.12a}$$

where unit $F_\ell = A_\ell f_\ell/s_\ell$ and

$$q = (F_t)\cot\theta \tag{7.12b}$$

where unit $F_t = A_t f_v/s$. A_t is the cross-sectional area of the reinforcement, and s_ℓ and s are the spacings in the l and t directions, respectively.

From the geometry of the triangles in Figure 7.10, the shear flow can also be defined as

$$q = (f_D t)\sin\theta\cos\theta \tag{7.12c}$$

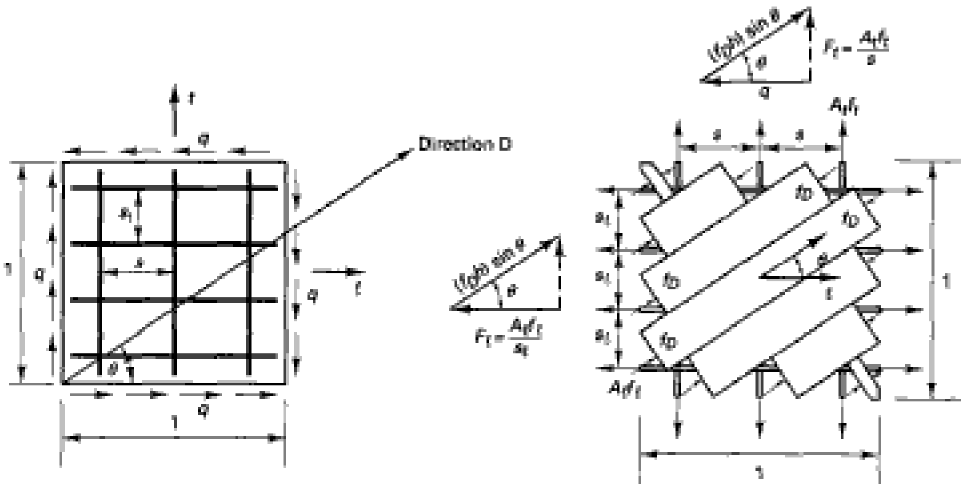
If the reinforcement in both directions is assumed to have yielded, Eqs. 7.12a and b give

$$\tan\theta = \sqrt{\frac{F_{ty}}{F_{\ell y}}} \tag{7.13a}$$

and

$$q_y = \sqrt{F_{\ell y}F_{ty}} \tag{7.13b}$$

where the subscript y denotes the yielding of reinforcement.



(a) Shear element (thickness h) (b) Truss model

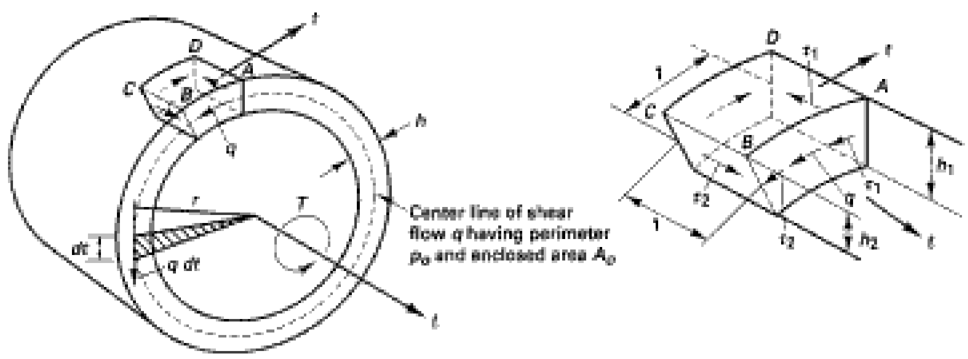
Figure 7.10 Equilibrium forces in element shear (Ref. 7.15).

7.3.3 Equilibrium in Element Torsion

The case of a hollow tube of any shape and variable thickness is considered (Figure 7.11). It is subjected to pure torsion. St. Venant's theory stipulates that the cross-sectional shape remains unchanged in elastic small deformations, and the warping deformation perpendicular to the cross-section would be the same along the member's axis. Hence it can be assumed that only shear stresses develop in the tube wall in the form of shear flow q in Figure 7.11a and that the in-plane normal stresses in the wall vanish. If an infinitesimal wall element $ABCD$ is isolated as in Fig. 7.11b, the shear flow in the ℓ direction has to be equal to the shear flow in the t direction or

$$\tau_\ell t_1 = \tau_t t_2 \tag{7.14}$$

On this basis, the shear flow q is considered constant throughout the cross-section (Ref. 7.15). The torsional force over an infinitesimal distance dt along the shear flow path is $q dt$



(a) (b)

Figure 7.11 Hollow tube equilibrium torsion forces: (a) section of tube subjected to torsion T; (b) unit shear element from tube wall of varying thickness h. *Note:* ℓ and t denote the longitudinal and transverse directions, respectively.

so that the torsional resistance to the external torsional moment T in Figure 7.11a becomes

$$T = q \int r\, dt \tag{7.15}$$

It can be seen from Figure 7.11a that $r\, dt$ in the integral is equal to *twice* the area of the shaded triangle formed by r and dt. A summation of the total area around the cross-section gives

$$\int r\, dt = 2A_0 \tag{7.16}$$

where A_0 = cross-sectional area bounded by the shear flow center line. Substituting $2A_0$ into Eq. 7.15 gives

$$q = \frac{T}{2A_0} \tag{7.17}$$

By neglecting warping, the shear element subjected to pure torsion in the tube wall of Figure 7.11a becomes identical to the membrane shear element in Figure 7.10a. Hence, substituting for the shear flow q from Eq. 7.17 into Eqs. 7.12a, b, and c, three equations of equilibrium for torsion result,

$$T = \frac{\overline{F}_\ell}{p_0}(2A_0)\tan\theta \tag{7.18a}$$

where $\overline{F}_\ell = F_\ell p_0$ and p_0 = perimeter of the shear flow path. $\overline{F}_\ell$ is the *total* longitudinal force due to torsion.

$$T = F_t(2A_0)\cot\theta \tag{7.18b}$$

$$T = (f_D t)(2A_0)\sin\theta\cos\theta \tag{7.18c}$$

Equation 7.18b can be written at yield as

$$T_n = \frac{2A_0 A_t f_{yt}}{s}\cot\theta \tag{7.19}$$

where T_n is the maximum torsional moment strength.

The required torsional reinforcements in the transverse and longitudinal directions become

$$A_t = \frac{T_n s}{2A_0 f_{yt}\cot\theta} \tag{7.20}$$

$$A_{\ell 1} = \frac{A_t}{s}\left(\frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}\right)(s_\ell \cot^2\theta) \tag{7.21a}$$

where $A_{\ell 1}$ is the area of one longitudinal bar.

If s_ℓ as the longitudinal reinforcement spacing represents the perimeter p_h of the center line of the outermost closed transverse torsional reinforcement, then

$$A_\ell = \frac{A_t}{s}p_h\frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}\cot^2\theta \tag{7.21b}$$

where A_ℓ = *total* area of all longitudinal torsional steel in the section.

The factored torsional moment strength, ϕT_n, must equal or exceed the external torsion, T_u, due to the factored loads. In the calculation of T_n (ACI 318–08, Ref. 7.18), all the torque is assumed to be resisted by the closed stirrups and longitudinal steel, with the torsional moment T_c resisted by the concrete compression struts assumed as zero. At the same time, the shear resisted by concrete, V_c, is assumed to be unchanged by the presence of torsion. This simplification eliminates the need for the rigor of the lengthy interaction expressions for V, T, and M used in the previous codes. In summary, the web reinforcement for shear is determined by the value of $V_s = V_n - V_c$, whereas the web reinforcement for torsion uses the T_n value alone.

7.4 SHEAR–TORSION–BENDING INTERACTION

Consider the rectangular boxes in Figures 7.9 and 7.12. The shear flow q will not be the same on the four walls of the box when subjected to combined shear and torsion, as shown in Figure 7.12c. Failure can precipitate in two distinct modes:

(a) Yielding of the longitudinal bottom tension steel and the transverse stirrups
(b) Yielding of the longitudinal top compression steel and the transverse stirrups

(a) Bottom tension steel yielding. If the failure mode is caused by yielding of the longitudinal bottom stringer (tensile steel) and the transverse stirrups due to combined shear and torsion, the following expression can be derived from equilibrium (Ref. 7.15):

$$\frac{M}{F_B y_0} + \left(\frac{V}{2y_0}\right)^2 \frac{y_0}{F_B} \frac{s}{A_t f_{yt}} + \left(\frac{T}{2A_0}\right)^2 \frac{y_0 + x_0}{F_B} \frac{s}{A_t f_{yt}} = 1 \tag{7.22}$$

If M_0, V_0, and T_0 are the moments and forces acting *alone*, they can be defined as follows:

$$M_0 = F_B y_0 \tag{7.23a}$$

$$V_0 = 2y_0 \sqrt{\left(\frac{F_T}{y_0}\right)\frac{A_t f_v}{s}} \qquad \text{for a two-web box} \tag{7.23b}$$

$$T_0 = 2A_0 \sqrt{\left(\frac{2F_T}{p_0}\right)\frac{A_t f_v}{s}} \tag{7.23c}$$

where $p_0 = 2(y_0 + x_0)$.

$$R = \frac{F_T}{F_B} \tag{7.23d}$$

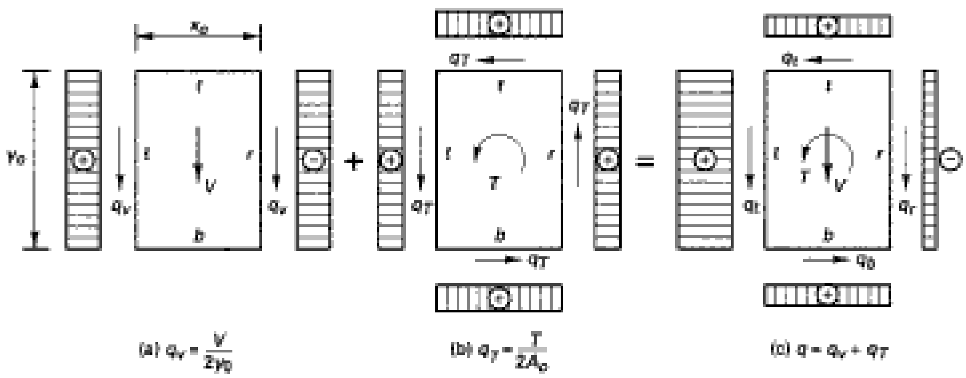


Figure 7.12 Box section shear flow due to combined shear and torsion.

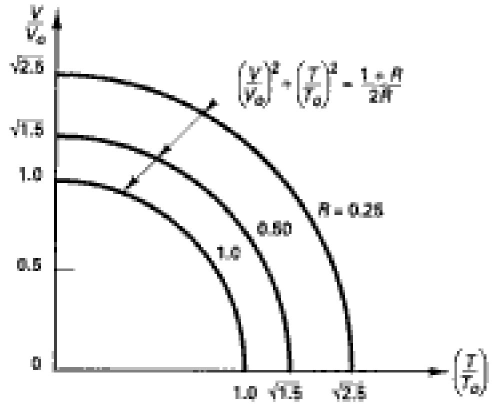


Figure 7.13 Shear-torsion interaction diagram.

A nondimensional interaction surface relationship can be obtained by introducing Eq. 7.23 into Eq. 7.22 such that

$$\frac{M}{M_0} + \left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 R + \left(\frac{T}{T_0}\right)^2 R = 1 \tag{7.24a}$$

(b) Top compression steel yielding. If the failure mode is caused by yielding of the longitudinal top chord (compression steel) and the transverse stirrups, Eq. 7.24a becomes

$$-\left(\frac{M}{M_0}\right)\frac{1}{R} + \left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T}{T_0}\right)^2 = 1 \tag{7.24b}$$

From both Eqs. 7.24 a and b, the interaction of V and T is *circular* for a constant bending moment M for both failure surfaces. The intersection of the two failure surfaces for these two failure modes forms a peak interaction curve between V and T such that Eqs. 7.24a and b give

$$\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T}{T_0}\right)^2 = \frac{1+R}{2R} \tag{7.25a}$$

Equation 7.25a for $R = 0.25$, 0.5, and 1.0 on the peak planes gives the circular plots shown in Figure 7.13.

A third mode of failure is caused by yielding in the top bar, in the bottom bar, and in the transverse reinforcement, all on the side where shear flows due to shear and torsion are additive, that is, the left wall (Ref. 7.15). A modified form of Eq. 7.25a results as follows:

$$\left(\frac{V}{V_0}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T}{T_0}\right)^2 + \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{VT}{V_0T_0}\right) = \frac{1+R}{2R} \tag{7.25b}$$

7.5 ACI DESIGN OF REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS SUBJECTED TO COMBINED TORSION, BENDING, AND SHEAR

7.5.1 Torsional Behavior of Structures

The torsional moment acting on a particular structural component such as a spandrel beam can be calculated using normal structural analysis procedures. Design of the particular component needs to be based on the limit state at failure. Therefore, the nonlinear behavior of a structural system after torsional cracking must be identified in one of the following two conditions: (1) no redistribution of torsional stresses to other members after cracking and (2) redistribution of torsional stresses and moments after cracking to effect deformation compatibility between intersecting members.

Stress resultants due to torsion in statically determinate beams can be evaluated from equilibrium conditions alone. Such conditions require a design for the full-factored external torsional moment, because no redistribution of torsional stresses is possible. This state is often termed *equilibrium torsion*. An edge beam supporting a cantilever canopy as in Figure 7.14 is such an example.

The edge beam has to be designed to resist the *total* external factored twisting moment due to the cantilever slab; otherwise, the structure will collapse. Failure would be caused by the beam not satisfying conditions of equilibrium of forces and moments resulting from the large external torque.

In statically indeterminate systems, stiffness assumptions, compatibility of strains at the joints, and redistribution of stresses may affect the stress resultants, leading to a reduction in the resulting torsional shearing stresses. A reduction is permitted in the value of the factored moment used in the design of the member if part of this moment can be redistributed to the intersecting members. The ACI Code permits a maximum factored torsional moment at the critical section d from the face of the supports for reinforced concrete members as follows:

$$T_u = \phi 4\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}} \tag{7.26}$$

where

A_{cp} = area enclosed by outside perimeter of concrete cross section
$= x_0 y_0$
p_{cp} = outside perimeter of concrete cross section A_{cp} in.
$= 2(x_0 + y_0)$

For prestressed concrete members at $\frac{1}{2}h$ from the face of the support

$$T_u = \phi 4\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}}\sqrt{1 + \frac{\bar{f}_c}{4\sqrt{f'_c}}} \tag{7.27}$$

where $\bar{f}_c$ = average compressive stress in the concrete at the centroidal axis due to effective prestress only after allowing for all losses ($\bar{f}_c$ in the ACI Code is denoted as f_{pc}).

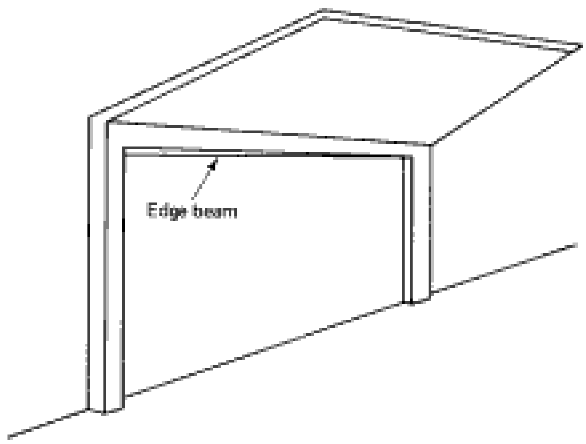
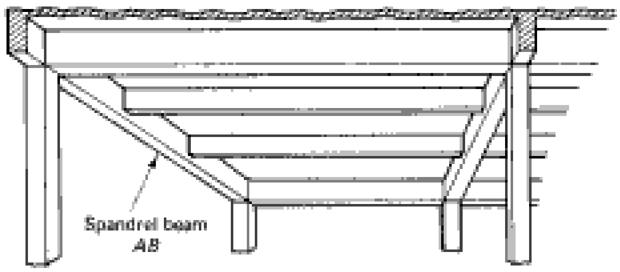


Figure 7.14 No redistribution torsion (equilibrium torsion).

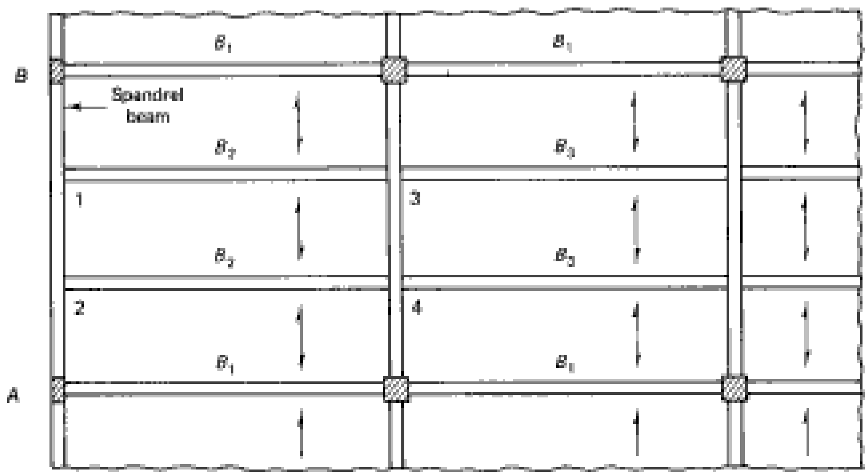
Neglect of the full effect of the total external torsional moment in this case does not, in effect, lead to failure of the structure but may result in excessive cracking if $\phi 4\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\,(A_{cp}^2/p_{cp})$ is considerably smaller in value than the actual factored torque. An example of compatibility torsion can be seen in Figure 7.15.

Beams B_2 apply twisting moments T_u at sections 1 and 2 of spandrel beam AB in Figure 7.15b. The magnitudes of relative stiffnesses of beam AB and transverse beams B_2 determine the magnitudes of rotation at intersecting joints 1 and 2. Because of the development of torsional plastic hinges near joints A and B, the end moments for beams B_2 at their intersections with spandrel beam AB will not be fully transferred as twisting moments to the column supports at A and B. They would be greatly reduced, because moment redistribution results in transfer for most of the end bending moments from ends 1 and 2 to ends 3 and 4, as well as the midspan of beams B_2. T_u at each spandrel beam supports A and B and at the critical section at distance d from these supports is determined from Eq. 7.26 for reinforced concrete and Eq. 7.27 for prestressed concrete.

If the actual factored torque due to beams B_2 is less than that given by Eqs. 7.26 or 7.27, the beam could be designed for the lesser torsional value. Torsional moments are neglected, however, if for reinforced concrete



(a)



(b)

Figure 7.15 Torsion redistribution (compatibility): (a) isometric view of one end panel; (b) plan of a typical end-span floor system.

$$T_u < \phi\sqrt{f'_c}\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}} \tag{7.28}$$

and for prestressed concrete

$$T_u < \phi\sqrt{f'_c}\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}}\sqrt{1+\frac{\bar{f}_c}{4\sqrt{f'_c}}} \tag{7.29}$$

7.5.2 Torsional Moment Strength

The size of a cross-section is chosen on the basis of reducing unsightly cracking and preventing the crushing of the surface concrete caused by the inclined compressive stresses due to shear and torsion defined by the left-hand side of the expressions in Eqs. 7.30a and b. The geometrical dimensions for torsional moment strength in both reinforced and prestressed members are limited by the following expressions:

(a) Solid sections

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2+\left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} \leq \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d}+8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right) \tag{7.30a}$$

(b) Hollow sections

$$\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)+\left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right) \leq \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d}+8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right) \tag{7.30b}$$

Photo 7.6 River City Apartment Complex Atrium and Galleries, Chicago, Illinois (Courtesy Bertrand Goldberg Associates, Architects and Engineers, Chicago, Illinois.)

Reinforced concrete:

$$V_c = 2\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d \tag{7.30c}$$

Prestressed concrete for $f_{pe} > 0.4 f_{pu}$:

$$V_c = \left(0.6\lambda \sqrt{f'_c} + 700 \frac{V_u d}{M_u}\right) b_w d, \qquad \frac{V_u d}{M_u} \leq 1.0 \tag{7.30d}$$
$$\geq 1.7\lambda b_w d \leq 5.0\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d$$

where A_{oh} = area enclosed by the center line of the outermost closed transverse torsional reinforcement, in.^{2}

p_h = perimeter of center line of outermost closed transverse torsional reinforcement, in.

The areas A_{oh} for different sections are given in Figure 7.16.

The sum of the stresses at the left-hand side of Eqs. 7.30a and b should not exceed the stresses causing shear cracking plus $8\sqrt{f'_c}$. This is similar to the limiting strength $V_s \leq 8\sqrt{f'_c}$ for shear without torsion. The upper limit of stress in terms of the nominal shear strength V_c of the plain concrete in the web permits applying the two expressions in both reinforced and prestressed concrete elements.

7.5.2.1 Hollow Sections Wall Thickness. The shear stresses due to shear and to torsion both develop in the walls of the hollow section, as seen in Figure 7.17a. Note that in a solid section the shear stresses due to torsion still concentrate in the outer zones of the section as in Figure 7.17b and as discussed in Section 7.3.1.

If the wall thickness in the hollow section varies around its perimeter, the section geometry has to be evaluated at such a location where the left-hand side of Eq. 7.30b has a maximum value. Also, if the wall thickness $t < A_{oh}/p_h$, the left-hand side of Eq. 7.30b should be taken as

$$\frac{V_u}{b_w d} + \frac{T_u}{1.7 A_{oh} t}$$

The wall thickness t is the thickness where stresses are being checked.

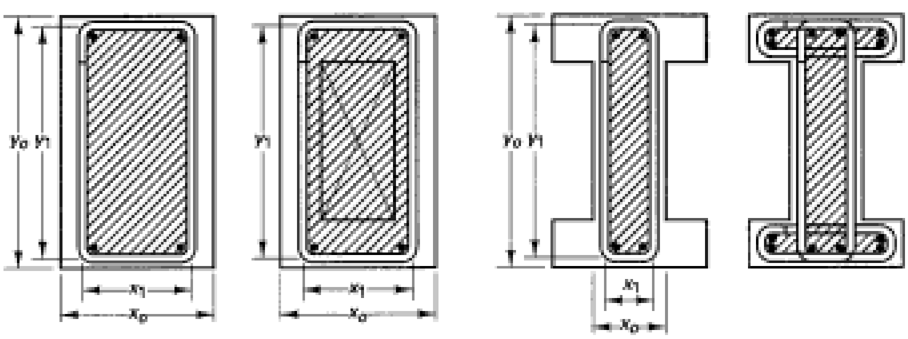


Figure 7.16 Torsional geometric parameters.

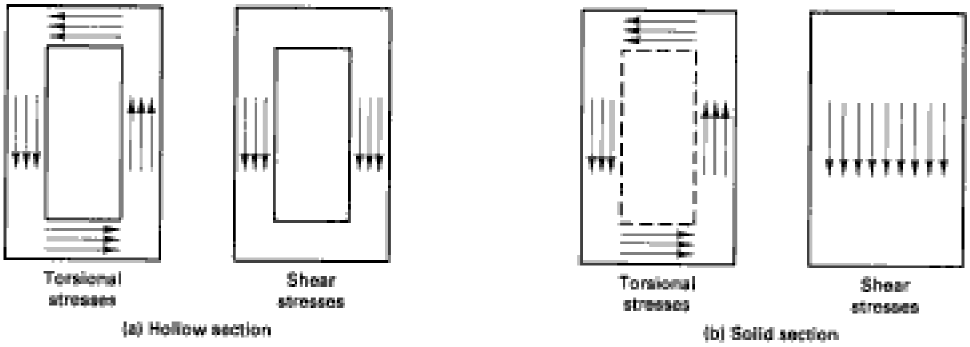


Figure 7.17 Superposition of torsional and shear stresses. Case (a): directly additive occurring in the left wall of the box (Eq. 7.30b). Case (b): torsion acts on "tubular" outer wall section while shear stress acts on the full width of solid section; stresses combined using square root of sum of squares (Eq. 7.30a).

7.5.3 Torsional Web Reinforcement

As indicated in Section 7.3.1, meaningful additional torsional strength due to the addition of torsional reinforcement can be achieved only by using both stirrups and longitudinal bars. Ideally, equal volumes of steel in both the closed stirrups and the longitudinal bars should be used so that both participate equally in resisting the twisting moments. This principle is the basis of the ACI expressions for proportioning the torsional web steel. If s is the spacing of the stirrups, A_ℓ is the total cross-sectional area of the longitudinal bars, and A_t is the cross-section of one stirrup leg, the transverse reinforcement for torsion has to be based on the full external torsional moment strength value T_n, namely, (T_u/ϕ), where

$$T_n = \frac{2A_0 A_t f_{yt}}{s} \cot\theta \qquad (7.31a)$$

(see the derivation of Eq. 7.19).

where A_0 = gross area enclosed by the shear flow path, in.^{2}
A_t = cross-sectional area of one leg of the transverse closed stirrups, in.^{2}
f_{yt} = yield strength of closed transverse torsional reinforcement not to exceed 60,000 psi
θ = angle of the compression diagonals (struts) in the space truss analogy for torsion (see Figure 7.9)

Transposing terms in Eq. 7.31a, the transverse reinforcement area becomes

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_{yt}} (\cot\theta)^{-1} \qquad (7.31b)$$

The area A_0 has to be determined by analysis (Refs. 7.14 and 7.15), except that the ACI 318 Code permits taking $A_0 = 0.85A_{oh}$ in lieu of the analysis.

As discussed in Sec. 7.3, the factored torsional resistance ϕT_n must equal or exceed the factored external torsional moment T_u. All the torsional moment is assumed in the ACI 318–08 code to be resisted by the closed stirrups and the longitudinal steel with the torsional resistance, T_c, of the concrete disregarded; that is, $T_c = 0$ on the assumption that the concrete compression struts between the inclined cracks have negligible resistance to torsion. The shear V_c resisted by the concrete is assumed to be unchanged by the presence of torsion.

The angle θ subtended by the concrete compression diagonals (struts) should not be taken smaller than 30° nor larger than 60°. It can be obtained by analysis as detailed in Refs. 7.13 and 7.15. According to Eq. 7.21b, the additional longitudinal reinforcement for torsion should not be less than

$$A_l = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \cot^2 \theta \tag{7.32}$$

where f_y = yield strength of the longitudinal torsional reinforcement, not to exceed 60,000 psi, and A_l = total area of longitudinal torsional steel in the cross section.

The same angle θ should be used in both equations 7.31 and 7.32. It should be noted that as θ gets smaller the amount of stirrups required by Eq. 7.31 decreases. At the same time the amount of longitudinal steel required by Eq. 7.32 increases.

In lieu of determining the angle θ by analysis (Ref. 7.15), the ACI Code allows a value of θ equal to:

(i) 45° for nonprestressed members or members with less prestress than in (ii)

(ii) 37.5° for prestressed members with an effective prestressing force larger than 40% of the tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement.

7.5.3.1 Minimum Torsional Reinforcement. It is necessary to provide a minimum area of torsional reinforcement in all regions where the factored torsional moment T_u exceeds the value given by Eqs. 7.28 and 7.29. In such a case, the minimum area of the transverse closed stirrups required should be

$$A_v + 2A_t \geq \frac{50 b_w s}{f_{yt}} \quad \text{or} \quad A_v = 0.75\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{b_w s}{f_{yt}} \tag{7.33}$$

whichever is larger.

The maximum spacing should not exceed the smaller of $p_h/8$ or 12 in.

The minimum total area of the additional longitudinal torsional reinforcement should be determined by

$$A_{l,\min} = \frac{5\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} A_{cp} - \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \tag{7.34}$$

where A_t/s should not be taken less than $25 b_w/f_{yt}$.

The additional longitudinal reinforcement required for torsion should be distributed around the perimeter of the closed stirrups with a maximum spacing of 12 in. The longitudinal bars or tendons should be placed inside the closed stirrups, with at least one longitudinal bar or tendon in each corner of the stirrup. The bar diameter should be at least *one-sixteenth* of the stirrup spacing, but not less than a No. 3 bar. Also, the torsional reinforcement should extend for a minimum distance of $b_t + d$ beyond the point theoretically required for torsion, because torsional diagonal cracks develop in a helical form extending beyond the cracks caused by shear and flexure. b_t is the width of that part of the cross-section containing the stirrups resisting torsion. The critical section in beams is at a distance d from the face of the support for reinforced concrete elements and at $h/2$ for prestressed concrete elements, d being the effective depth and h the total depth of the section.

7.5.4 Design Procedure for Combined Torsion and Shear

The following is a summary of the recommended sequence of design steps. A flowchart describing the sequence of operations in graphical form is shown in Figure 7.18.

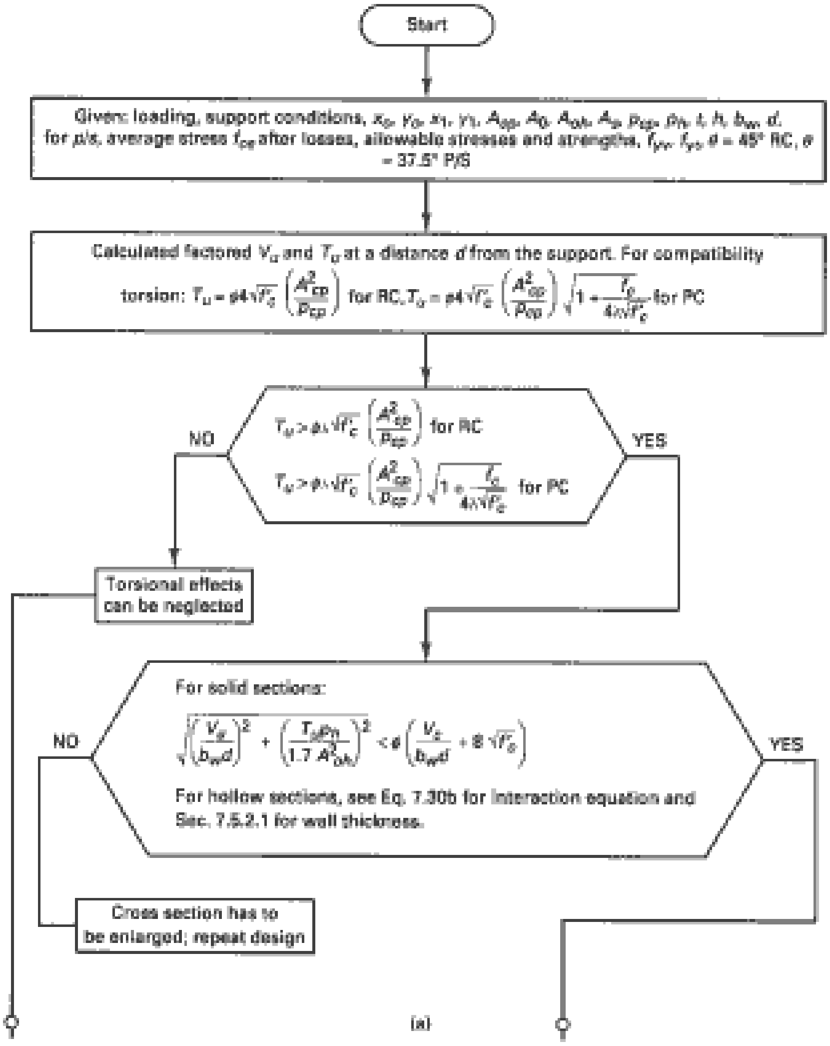
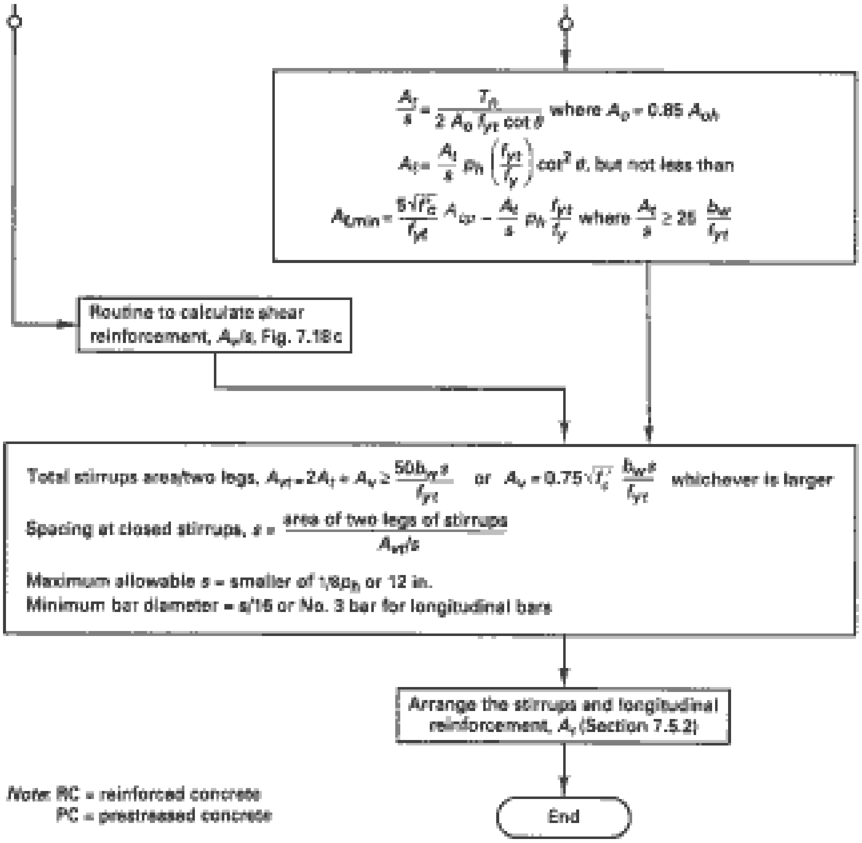


Figure 7.18 Flowchart for the design reinforcement for combined shear and torsion in solid sections: (a) torsional web steel; (b) shear web steel.

1. Classify whether the applied torsion is equilibrium or compatibility torsion. Determine the critical section and compute the factored torsional moment T_u. The critical section is taken as d from the face of the support in reinforced concrete beams and $h/2$ in prestressed concrete beams. If T_u is less than $\phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A^2_{cp}/p_{cp}$ for nonprestressed members or less than $\phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A^2_{cp}/p_{cp}\sqrt{1+\bar{f}_c/4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}$ for prestressed members, torsional effects are neglected ($\bar{f}_c$ in the ACI Code is denoted as f_{pc}).
2. Check whether the factored torsional moment T_u causes equilibrium or compatibility torsion. For compatibility torsion, limit the design torsional moment to the lesser of the actual moment T_u or $T_u = \phi 4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A^2_{cp}/p_{cp}$ for reinforced concrete members and $T_u = \phi 4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A^2_{cp}/p_{cp}\sqrt{1+\bar{f}_c/4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}$ for prestressed concrete members. The value of the design nominal strength T_n has to be at least equivalent to the factored T_u/ϕ, proportioning the section such that:



(b)

Figure 7.18 *Continued*

(a) for solid sections:

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} \leq \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right)$$

(b) For hollow sections:

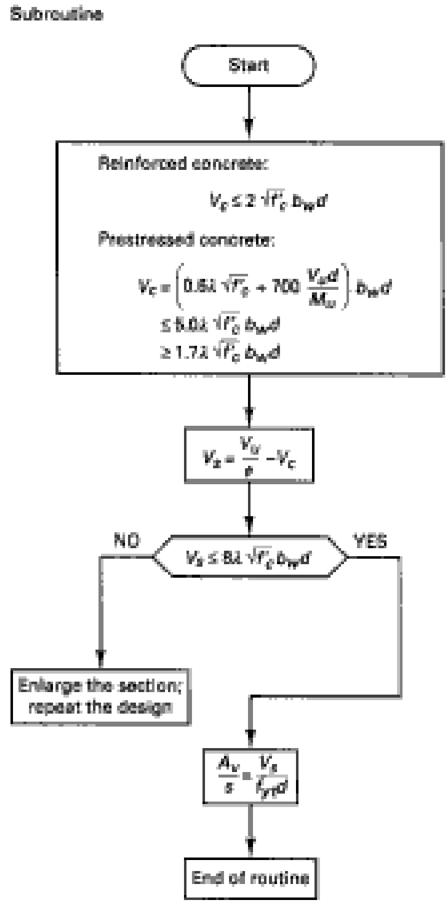
$$\frac{V_u}{b_w d} + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right) \leq \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right)$$

If the wall thickness is less than A_{oh}/p_h, the second term should be taken as $T_u/1.7A_{oh}t$.

3. Select the required *torsional* closed stirrups to be used as transverse reinforcement, using a maximum yield strength of 60,000 psi, such that

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_{yt}}(\cot\theta)^{-1}$$

Unless using A_0 and θ values obtained from analysis (Ref. 7.14), use $A_0 = 0.85A_{oh}$ and $\theta = 45°$ for nonprestressed members with an effective prestress not less than the tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement. The additional longitudinal reinforcement should be



(c)

Figure 7.18 *Continued*

$$A_l = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \cot^2 \theta$$

but not less than

$$A_{l,\min} = \frac{5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}A_{cp}}{f_y} - \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}$$

where A_t/s shall not be less than $25b_w/f_{yt}$. Maximum allowable spacing of transverse stirrups is the smaller of $\frac{1}{8}p_h$ or 12 in., and bars should have a diameter of at least one-sixteenth of the stirrup spacing, but not less than a No. 3 bar size.

4. Calculate the required *shear* reinforcement A_v per unit spacing in a transverse section. V_u is the factored external shear force at the critical section, V_c is the nominal shear resistance of the concrete in the web, and V_s is the shearing force to be resisted by the stirrups:

$$\frac{A_v}{s} = \frac{V_s}{f_{yt} d}$$

where $V_s = V_u/\phi - V_c$ and

$$V_c = 2\lambda \sqrt{f'_c} b_w d$$

for reinforced concrete.

$$V_c = \left(0.6\lambda \sqrt{f'_c} + \frac{700 V_u d}{M_u}\right) b_w d$$

for prestressed concrete if $f_{pe} > 0.4 f_{pu}$. Limits of V_c for prestressed beams are

$$V_c \geq 1.7\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d \leq 5.0\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d; \quad \frac{V_u d}{M_u} \leq 1.0$$

where λ = 1.0 for normal-weight concrete
= 0.85 for sand-lightweight concrete
= 0.75 for all-lightweight concrete

The value of V_n has to be at least equal to the factored V_u/ϕ.

5. Obtain the total A_{vt}, the area of the closed stirrups for torsion and shear, and design the stirrups such that

$$A_{vt} = 2A_t + A_v \geq \frac{50 b_w s}{f_{yt}}$$

Extend the stirrups a distance $b_t + d$ beyond the point theoretically no longer required, where b_t = width of the cross section containing the closed stirrup resisting torsion.

7.5.5 Example 7.1: Design of Web Reinforcement for Combined Torsion and Shear in a T-beam Section

A T-beam cross section has the geometrical dimensions shown in Figure 7.19. A factored external shear force acts at the critical section, having a value V_u = 40,000 lb (180 kN). It is subjected to the following torques: (a) equilibrium factored external torsional moment T_u = 450,000 in.-lb (51.4 kN-m); (b) compatibility factored T_u = 65,000 in.-lb (7.3 kN-m); (c) compatibility factored T_u = 265,000 in.-lb (29.9 kN-m). Given:

bending reinforcement A_s = 3.4 in.^{2} (2190 mm^2)
f'_c = 4000 (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete
$f_y = f_{yt}$ = 60,000 (414 MPa)

Design the web reinforcement needed for this section.

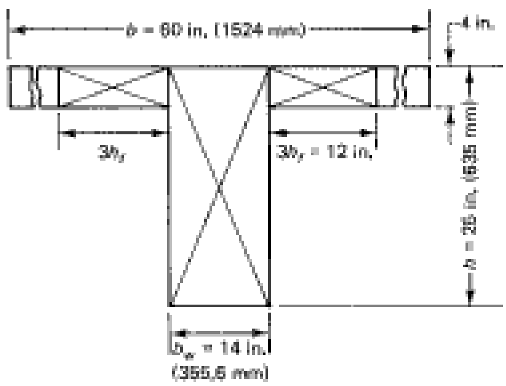


Figure 7.19 Component rectangles of the T-beam.

Solution: **(a)** Equilibrium torsion:

Factored torsional moment (Step 1)

Assume that the flanges are not confined with ties.

given equilibrium torsional moment = 450,000 in.-lb. (51.5 kN-m)

The total torsional moment must be provided for in the design.

$$\text{required } T_n = \frac{T_u}{\phi} = \frac{450{,}000}{0.75} = 600{,}000 \text{ in.-lb } (67.8 \text{ kN-m})$$

$$A_{cp} = 14 \times 25 = 350 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$p_{cp} = 2\,(x_0 + y_0) = 2(14 + 25) = 78 \text{ in.}$$

If the flanges were confined with closed ties,

$$A_{cp} = 14 \times 25 + 2(4 \times 12) = 446 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$p_{cp} = 2[(14 + 25) + 2\,(4 + 3 \times 4)] = 142 \text{ in.}$$

From Eq. 7.28, torsional moment for which torsion can be neglected is

$$T_u = \phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}} = 0.75\sqrt{4000}\,\frac{350^2}{78}$$

$$= 74{,}496 \text{ in.-lb} < 450{,}000$$

Hence design for full torsion.

Sectional properties (Step 2)

$A_0 = 0.85A_{oh}$, where A_{oh} is the area enclosed by the center line of the outermost closed stirrups. Assuming 1.5-in. clear cover and No. 4 stirrups, from Fig. 7.19,

$$x_1 = 14 - 2(1.5 + 0.25) = 10.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$y_1 = 25 - 2(1.5 + 0.25) = 21.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_{oh} = 10.5 \times 21.5 = 226 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_0 = 0.85\,(x_1 \times y_1) = 0.85(10.5 \times 21.5) = 192 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$d = 25 - (1.5 + 0.5 + 0.25) = 22.75, \text{ say } 22.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$p_h = 2(x_1 + y_1) = 2(10.5 + 21.5) = 64 \text{ in.}$$

Use $\theta = 45°$, $\cot\theta = 1.0$.

Check adequacy of section (Step 3)

For the section to be adequate, it should satisfy Eq. 7.30a:

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} \le \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right)$$

$$V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d = 2\sqrt{4000} \times 14 \times 22.5 = 39{,}845 \text{ lb.}$$

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{40{,}000}{14 \times 22.5}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{450{,}000 \times 64}{1.7(226)^2}\right)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{16{,}124 + 110{,}015} = 355 \text{ psi } (2.45 \text{ MPa})$$

$$\phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right) = 0.75\left(\frac{39{,}845}{14 \times 22.5} + 8\sqrt{4000}\right)$$

$$= 0.75(126.5 + 506.0) = 474 \text{ psi } (3.71 \text{ MPa}) > 355 \text{ psi}$$

Hence the section is adequate.

Torsional reinforcement (Step 4)

From Eq. 7.31,

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_{yt} \cot\theta} = \frac{600{,}000}{2 \times 192 \times 60{,}000 \times 1.0}$$

$$= 0.026 \text{ in.}^2/\text{in./one leg}$$

Shear reinforcement

$$V_c = 2\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 39{,}845$$

$$V_n = \frac{40{,}000}{0.75} = 53{,}333 \text{ lb} > V_c; \text{ also } > \frac{1}{2} V_c$$

for minimum shear web reinforcement. Hence, provide shear stirrups.

$$V_s = V_n - V_c = 53{,}333 - 39{,}845 = 13{,}488 \text{ lb}$$

$$\frac{A_v}{s} = \frac{V_s}{f_y d} = \frac{13{,}488}{60{,}000 \times 22.5} = 0.010 \text{ in.}^2/\text{in./two legs}$$

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = \frac{2A_t}{s} + \frac{A_v}{s} = 2 \times 0.026 + 0.010 = 0.062 \text{ in.}^2/\text{in./two legs}$$

Try No. 3 (9.5-mm diameter) closed stirrups. Area of two legs = 0.22 in.^{2}.

$$s = \frac{\text{area of stirrup cross section}}{\text{required } A_{vt}/s} = \frac{0.22}{0.062} = 3.55 \text{ in.}$$

Maximum allowable spacing s_{max} = smaller of $\frac{1}{8}p_h$ or 12 in., where $p_h = 2(x_1 + y_1) = 64$ in. From before $\frac{1}{8}p_h = \frac{64}{8} = 8$ in. > 3.55 in.

$$0.75\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} = 0.75\sqrt{4000} = 47 < 50 \text{ in Eq. 7.33.}$$

hence, from Eq. 7.33,

$$\text{controlling minimum } A_{vt} = \frac{50 b_w s}{f_{yt}} = \frac{50 \times 14 \times 3.5}{60{,}000} = 0.04 \text{ in.}^2$$

less than 0.22 in.^{2}; does not control. Hence use No. 3 closed stirrups at 3.5 in. center to center. If No. 4 closed stirrups are used, spacing can be increased to $6\frac{1}{2}$ in. c to c.

$$A_\ell = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \cot^2\theta$$

$$= 0.026 \times 64 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000} \times 1.0 = 1.66 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{minimum } A_\ell = \frac{5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, A_{cp}}{f_{yt}} - \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}$$

$$= \frac{5\sqrt{4000} \times 350}{60{,}000} - 0.026 \times 64 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000}$$

$$= 1.84 - 1.66 = 0.18 \text{ in.}^2 < 1.66 \text{ in.}^2$$

Hence $A_\ell = 1.66$ in.^{2} controls.

Distribution of torsion longitudinal steel

Torsional $A_\ell = 1.66$ in.^{2} Assume that $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ goes to the top corners and $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ goes to the bottom corners of the stirrups, to be added to the flexural bars. The balance, $\frac{1}{2}A_\ell$, would thus be distributed equally to the vertical faces of the beam web cross section at a spacing not to exceed 12 in. center to center.

$$\frac{A_\ell}{4} \ldots \frac{1.66}{4} + 3.4 = 3.81 \text{ in.}^2$$

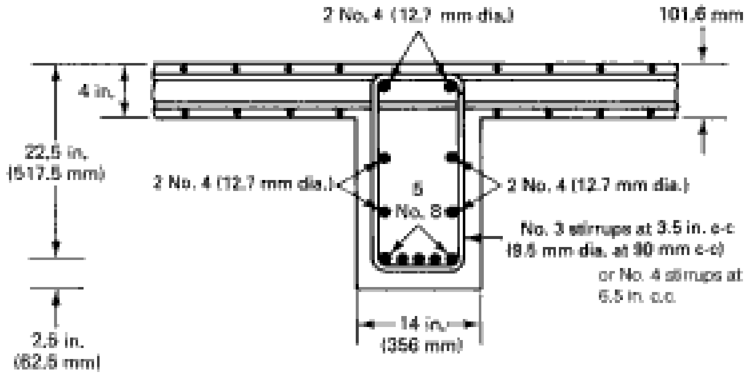


Figure 7.20 Web reinforcement details, Ex. 7.1(a).

Provide five No. 8 (25.4-mm-diameter) bars at the bottom. Provide two No. 4 (12.7-mm-diameter) bars with an area of 0.40 in.^{2} at the top. Provide two No. 4 (12.7-mm-diameter) bars on each vertical face. Figure 7.20 shows the geometry of the cross section.

(b) Compatibility Torsion

Factored torsional moment (Step 1)

Given $T_u = 65{,}000$ in.-lb. (7.3 kN-m) $< T_a = 74{,}496$ in.-lb. from part (a). Hence disregard torsion and provide stirrups for shear only.

From part (a),

$$\frac{A_v}{s} = 0.010; \text{ Min. } A_v = 0.04 \text{ in.}^2 < 0.22 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ for No. 3 stirrups, hence does not control.}$$

For No. 3 stirrups, $s = 0.22/0.010 = 20$ in. center to center.

$$\text{maximum } s = \frac{d}{2} = \frac{22.5}{2} = 11.25 \text{ in.}$$

Use No. 3 closed stirrups at 10 in. c-c at the critical section.

(c) Compatibility Torsion

Factored torsional moment (Step 1)

Since $T_u = 265{,}000$ in.-lb. (30.0 kN-m) is greater than 74,496 in.-lb from case (b); hence stirrups have to be provided. Because this is a compatibility torsion, the section can be designed by Eq. 7.26 for

$$T_u = \phi 4\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}} = 0.75 \times 4\sqrt{4000}\,\frac{350^2}{78}$$

$$= 4 \times 74{,}496 \text{ from case (a)} = 297{,}984 \text{ in.-lb}$$

This is >265,000; hence use $T_u = 265{,}000$ in.-lb for the torsional design of the section.

$$\text{required } T_n = \frac{T_u}{\phi} = \frac{265{,}000}{0.75} = 353{,}333 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Torsional reinforcement (Step 2)

From case (a) $A_0 = 192$ in.^{2}, $p_h = 64$ in.

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_{yv} \cot\theta} = \frac{353{,}333}{2 \times 192 \times 60{,}000 \times 1.0}$$

$$= 0.015 \text{ in.}^2/\text{in./one leg}$$

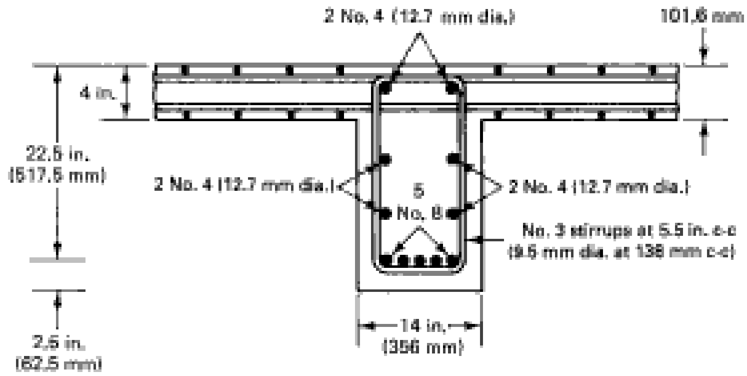


Figure 7.21 Web reinforcement details, Ex. 7.1(c).

From case (a),

$$\frac{A_v}{s} = 0.010 \text{ in.}^2/\text{in./two legs}$$

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = 2\frac{A_t}{s} + \frac{A_v}{s} = 2 \times 0.015 + 0.010 = 0.040 \text{ in.}^2/\text{in./two legs}$$

Using No. 3 stirrups, $s = 0.22/0.040 = 5.50$ in. This is less than $\frac{1}{8}p_h = 8$ in. or 12 in. Hence, use No. 3 closed stirrups at $5\frac{1}{2}$ in. c-c (9.5-mm diameter at 138 mm c-c) at the critical section.

$$A_\ell = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \cot^2\theta = 0.015 \times 64 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000} \times 1.0 = 0.96 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\min A_\ell = \frac{5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_{cp}}{f_y} - \left(\frac{A_t}{s}\right) p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}$$

$$= \frac{5\sqrt{4000} \times 350}{60{,}000} - 0.015 \times 64 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000}$$

$$= 1.84 - 0.96 = 0.88 \text{ in.}^2 < 0.96 \text{ in.}^2$$

$A_\ell = 0.96$ in.^{2} controls.

Distribution of torsion longitudinal bars

Torsional $A_\ell = 0.96$ in.^{2}, so $A_\ell/4 = 0.24$ in.^{2}. Using the same logic as that followed in case (a), provide five No. 8 (25.4-mm-diameter) bars at the bottom face. The area required, $A_s + A_\ell/4 = 3.64$ in.^{2}; the area provided $= 3.95$ in.^{2}. The required area at top corners and at each vertical face $= 0.24$ in.^{2}. Provide two No. 4 bars (12.7-mm diameter) at the top two corners and at each of the vertical sides, giving 0.40 in.^{2} in each area. Figures 7.20 and 7.21 show the geometry of the section reinforcement.

7.5.6 Example 7.2: Equilibrium Torsion Web Steel Design

A normal-weight 7-ft cantilever concrete canopy slab on continuous beams spans 24 ft (7.32 m) on several supports, as shown in Figure 7.22. It carries a uniform service live load of 30 psf (1.44 kPa) on the cantilever. Design the interior span spandrel beam $A1$–$A2$ for diagonal tension and torsion. Assume no wind or earthquake and neglect creep and shrinkage effects. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

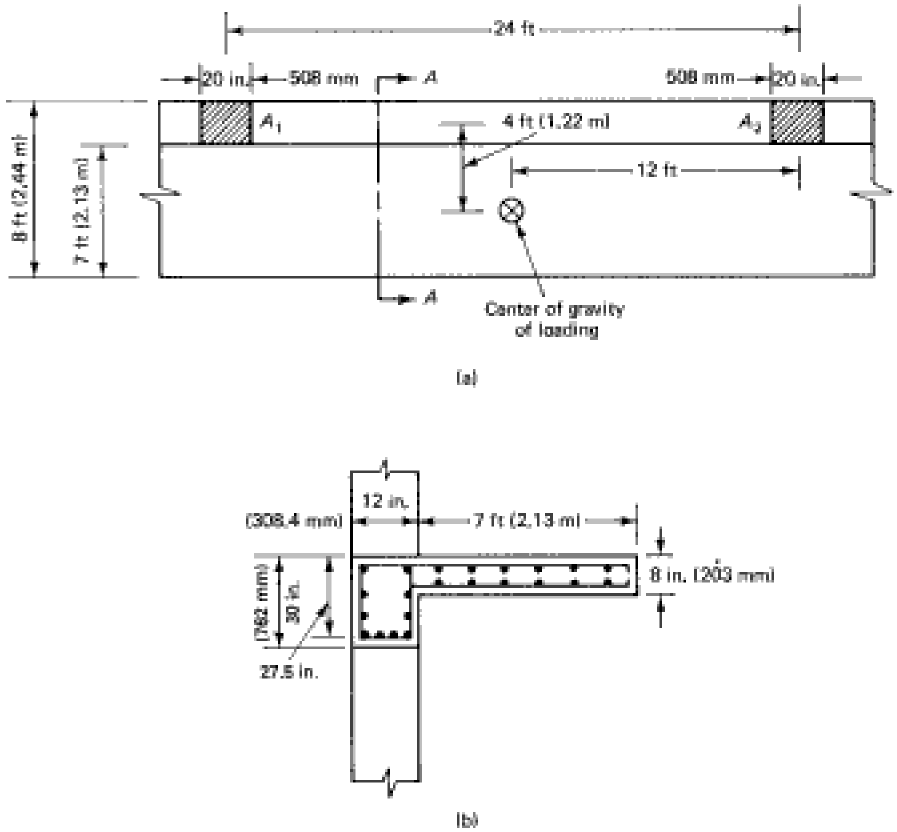


Figure 7.22 Plan and sectional elevation, Ex. 7.2: (a) plan; (b) section *A–A*.

$$\text{exterior columns} = 12 \text{ in.} \times 20 \text{ in.} \ (305 \times 508 \text{ mm})$$
$$\text{midspan } A_s = 1.50 \text{ in.}^2 \ (968 \text{ mm}^2)$$
$$\text{support } A_s = 2.4 \text{ in.}^2 \ (1548 \text{ mm}^2)$$
$$\text{support } A'_s = 0.8 \text{ in.}^2 \ (516 \text{ mm}^2)$$

Solution:

Factored torsional moment (Step 1)

Beam $A1$–$A2$ is a case of nonredistribution torsion because the torsional resistance of the beam is required to maintain equilibrium. Hence the section has to be designed to resist the total external factored torsional moment.

$$\text{service dead load of the cantilever slab} = \frac{8.0}{12} \times 150 = 100.0 \text{ psf } (5.08 \text{ kPa})$$
$$\text{service live load} = 30 \text{ psf } (1.44 \text{ kPa})$$
$$\text{factored load } U = 1.2 \times 100.0 + 1.6 \times 30 = 168 \text{ psf } (8.0 \text{ kPa})$$
$$\text{total load on the cantilever slab} = 168 \times 24 \times 7 = 28{,}224 \text{ lb } (127.0 \text{ kN})$$

This load acts at center of gravity of loading shown in Figure 7.22a, having a moment arm = 4.0 ft (1.22 m). Hence the maximum factored moment at the center line of the support = $\frac{1}{2} \times (28{,}224 \times 4) = 56{,}448$ ft-lb.

Note that the reaction at the supports is half of the total torque acting on the slab, as shown in Figure 7.22, because the center of gravity of the twisting moment is midway be-

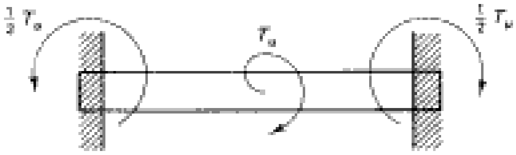


Figure 7.23 Distribution of torsional moment.

tween the supports. Since the load is uniformly distributed, the torsional moment variation will be linear along the span. Figure 7.24 shows the torsional envelope for this beam. The factored torsional moment at the critical section d (27.5 in.) from the face of the support is

$$T_u = 56{,}448\left(\frac{12 - \dfrac{10 + 27.5}{12}}{12}\right) = 41{,}748 \text{ ft-lb}$$
$$= 500{,}976 \text{ in.-lb } (70.5 \text{ kN-m})$$

$$\text{required } T_n = \frac{41{,}748}{0.75} = 55{,}664 \text{ ft-lb } (94 \text{ kN-m})$$
$$= 667{,}968 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Shear force distribution (Step 2)

Since the beam is to be designed for combined shear and torsion, the distribution of the shear force along the span needs to be determined.

$$\text{stem load} = \left(\frac{30 \times 12}{144} \times 150\right)1.2 = 450 \text{ lb/ft}$$

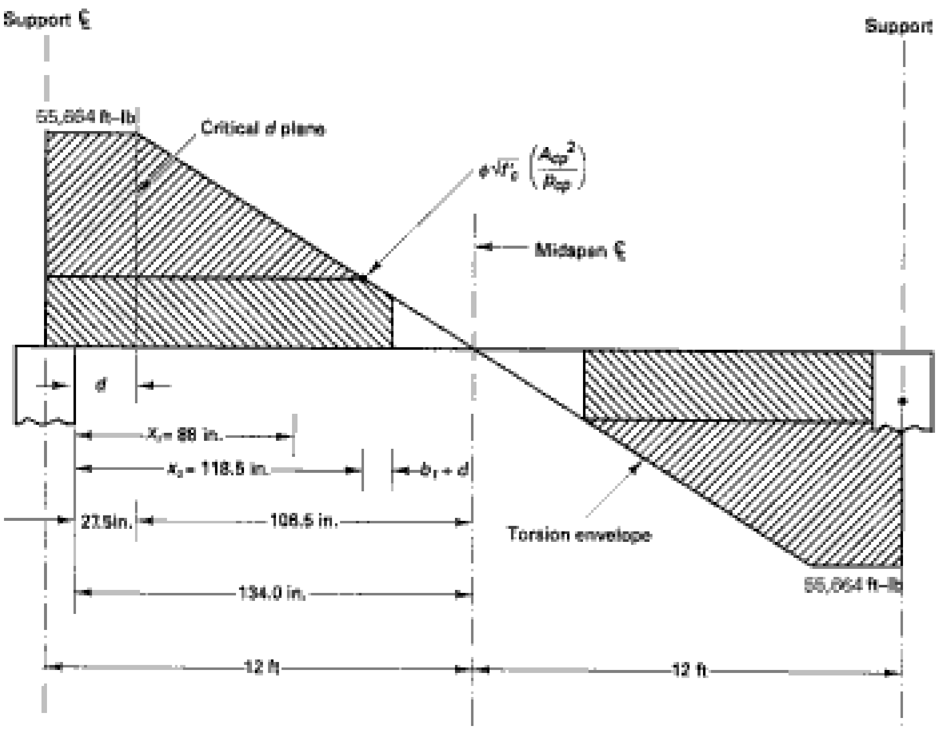


Figure 7.24 Torsion envelope for beam A_1–A_2, Ex. 7.2.

Total factored shear at face of support is

$$V_u = \frac{1}{2}(450 \times 24 + 28{,}224) = 19{,}512$$

V_u at distance of d from face of support

$$= 19{,}512\left[\frac{12 - \dfrac{10 + 27.5}{12}}{12}\right] = 14{,}431 \text{ lb}$$

$$V_n = \frac{14{,}431}{0.75} = 19{,}241 \text{ lb}$$

$$T_u = 500{,}976 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Section properties (Step 3)

From Figure 7.25, assuming 1.5-in. clear cover and No. 4 stirrups and that the flange is not confined with closed ties,

$$A_{cp} = 12 \times 30 = 360 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$p_{cp} = 2(x + y) = 2(12 + 30) = 84 \text{ in.}$$

If the flange was confined, a flange width = 3 × slab thickness would have been taken. In such a case,

$$A_{cp} = 12 \times 30 + 24 \times 8 = 552 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$p_{cp} = 2(12 + 30) + 2(24 + 8) = 148 \text{ in.}$$
$$x_1 = 12 - 2(1.5 + 0.25) = 8.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$y_1 = 30 - 2(1.5 + 0.25) = 26.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$p_h = 2(x_1 + y_1) = 2(8.5 + 26.5) = 70 \text{ in.}$$
$$d = 30 - (1.5 + 0.5 + 0.25) = 27.75, \text{ say } 27.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$A_{oh} = 8.5 \times 26.5 = 225 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$A_0 = 0.85A_{oh} = 191 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$\theta = 45°, \qquad \cot\theta = 1.0$$

Check if torsion has to be considered

From Eq. 7.28,

$$T_u = \phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}} = 0.75\sqrt{4000}\,\frac{360^2}{84}$$
$$= 73{,}184 \text{ in.-lb} < 500{,}796 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Hence, torsional moment has to be considered.

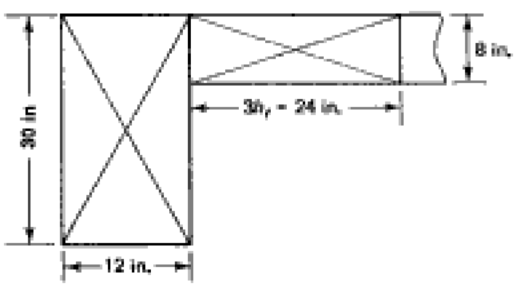


Figure 7.25 Component rectangles.

Section adequacy check (Step 3)

$$V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d = 2\sqrt{4000} \times 12 \times 27.5$$
$$= 41{,}740 \text{ lbs}$$

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{14{,}431}{12 \times 27.5}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{500{,}976 \times 70}{1.7\,(225)^2}\right)^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{1912 + 166{,}036} = 410 \text{ psi}$$

$$\phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right) = 0.75\left(\frac{41{,}740}{12 \times 27.5} + 8\sqrt{4000}\right) = 0.75(126 + 505)$$
$$= 473 \text{ psi} > 410 \text{ psi; hence section is adequate}$$

Since this is an equilibrium torsion, there is no need to evaluate the value of T_c that the section can sustain using Eq. 7.26.

Torsional reinforcement (Step 3)

From Eq. 7.31b,

$$T_n = \frac{500{,}976}{0.75}$$
$$= 667{,}968$$
$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_{yt}\cot\theta} = \frac{667{,}968}{2 \times 191 \times 60{,}000 \times 1.0}$$
$$= 0.03 \text{ in.}^2\text{/in./one leg}$$

Shear reinforcement (Step 4)

$V_c = 41{,}740$ lb from before. Required $V_n = 19{,}441$ lb. from before $< 41{,}740$ lb. Also $< \frac{1}{2}V_c$; hence no minimum shear reinforcement needed.

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = \frac{2A_t}{s} + \frac{A_v}{s} = 2 \times 0.03 + 0 = 0.06 \text{ in.}^2\text{/in./two legs}$$
$$0.75\sqrt{f'_c} = 0.75\sqrt{4000} = 47 < 50; \text{ hence from Eq. 7.33:}$$
$$\min\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = \frac{50b_w}{f_{yt}} = \frac{50 \times 12}{60{,}000} = 0.01 < 0.06, \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Try No. 3 closed stirrups $= 2 \times 0.11 = 0.22$ in.^{2} (bar size has the larger of at least No. 3 bar or $s/16$).

$$s = \frac{\text{area of the cross section}}{\text{required } A_{vt}/s} = \frac{0.22}{0.06} = 3.67 \text{ in.c-c}$$

Maximum allowable s = lesser of $p_h/8$ or 12 in.

$$\frac{p_h}{8} = \frac{70}{8} = 8.75 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, provide No. 3 (9.5-mm diameter) closed stirrups at 3.5 in. center to center (89 mm c-c) at the critical section up to the face of the support. Since the maximum spacing is 8.75 in. and V_c is larger than the factored V_u/ϕ, the increase in spacing along the span toward midspan is determined only with respect to the decrease in T_u along the span. Assume that the stirrups start being spaced at $s = 8.5$ in. at a plane x_1 distance from face of the support, having a torsional moment T_{n1}.

For $s = 8.5$,

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = \frac{0.22}{8.5} = 0.026$$

$$T_{n1} = \frac{0.026}{2 \times 0.03} \times 55{,}664 = 24{,}121 \text{ ft-lb}$$

From similar triangles in Fig. 7.24,

$$x_1 = 27.5 + \left(106.5 - \frac{24{,}121}{55{,}664} \times 106.5\right) = 88 \text{ in.}$$

Torsion is disregarded at T_{u2} if

$$T_u < \phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}}$$

$$T_{u2} = \sqrt{4000}\,\frac{360^2}{84} = 97{,}579 \text{ in.-lb} = 8132 \text{ ft-lb}$$

$$x_2 = 27.5 + \left(106.5 - \frac{8132}{55{,}664} \times 106.5\right) = 118.5 \text{ in.}$$

Extend closed stirrups a distance $b_t + d$ beyond x_2, that is, 118.5 + 12 + 27.5 = 158 in.; thus use closed stirrups throughout the span. Figure 7.26 shows schematically the spacing of the closed No. 3 stirrups.

Longitudinal torsional reinforcement

From Eq. 7.32,

$$A_\ell = \frac{A_t}{s}\,p_h\,\frac{f_{yv}}{f_{yl}}\cot^2\theta = 0.03 \times 70 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000} \times 1.0 = 2.1 \text{ in.}^2$$

From Eq. 7.34,

$$A_{\ell,\min} = \frac{5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_{cp}}{f_y} - \frac{A_t}{s}\,p_h\,\frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}$$

$$= \frac{5\sqrt{4000}\,(360)}{60{,}000} - 0.03 \times 70 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000} = 0$$

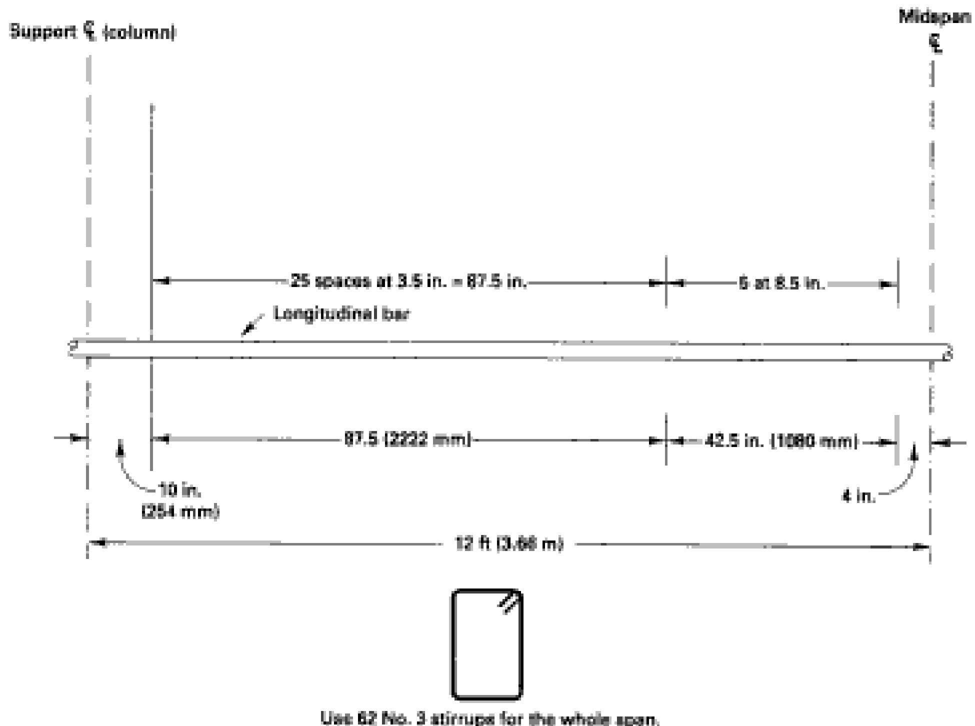
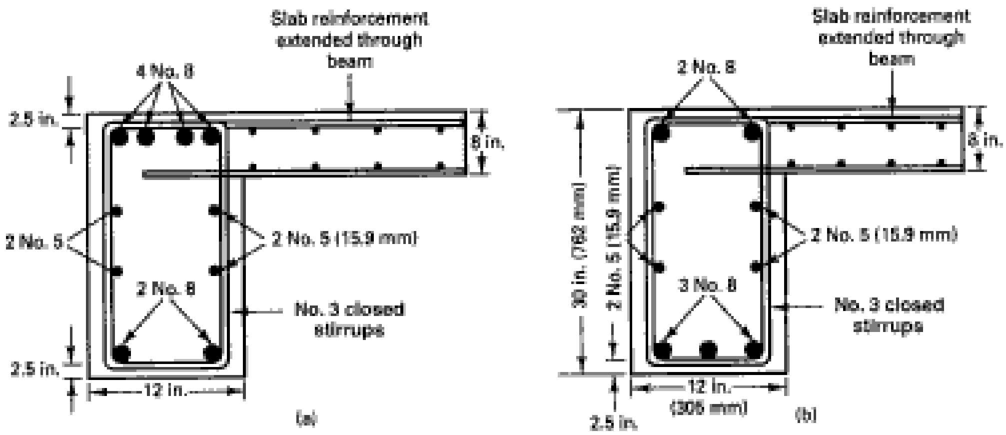


Figure 7.26 Closed stirrup arrangement for Ex. 7.2.



Not to scale

Figure 7.27 Web reinforcement details: (a) support section; (b) midspan section.

Use $A_\ell = 2.1$ in.^{2} (1355 mm^2). To distribute A_ℓ evenly on all four faces of the beam, use $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ at each vertical faced with $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ at the top two corners and $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ at the bottom two corners or tension side to be added to the flexural reinforcement. $A_\ell/4 = 2.1/4 = 0.53$. Use two No. 5 bars = 0.62 in.^{2} (12.7-mm diameter) on each vertical side for both the support and midspan sections.

Support section:

$$\Sigma A_s = \frac{A_\ell}{4} + A_s = 0.53 + 2.4 = 2.93 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use four No. 8 bars = 3.16 in.^{2} (25.4-mm diameter).

$$\Sigma A'_s = \frac{A_\ell}{4} + A'_s = 0.53 + 0.8 = 1.33 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use two No. 8 bars = 1.58 in.^{2}

Midspan section:

$$\Sigma A_s = \frac{A_\ell}{4} + A_s = 0.53 + 1.50 = 2.03 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use three No. 8 bars = 2.37 in.^{2} at bottom.

Since the torque decreases as the midspan is approached, two of the top No. 8 longitudinal bars can be cut off prior to reaching the midspan section. Figure 7.27a and b give the reinforcing details of the beam at the support and midspan sections, respectively.

7.5.7 Example 7.3: Compatibility Torsion Web Steel Design

A parking-garage floor system of one-way slabs on beams is shown in Figure 7.28. Typical panel dimensions are 12 ft 6 in. × 50 ft (3.81 m × 15.24 m) on centers. Design the exterior spandrel beam $A_1 - B_1$ for combined torsion and shear, assuming that the sections are adequately designed for bending. Given:

service live load = 50 psf (2.4 kPa)

slab thickness = 5 in. (127 mm)

f'_c = 4000 psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete

$f_y = f_{yt}$ = 60,000 psi (413.7 MPa)

height floor to floor = 10 ft

exterior columns = 14 in. × 24 in. (356 mm × 610 mm)

interior columns = 24 in. × 24 in. (610 mm × 610 mm)

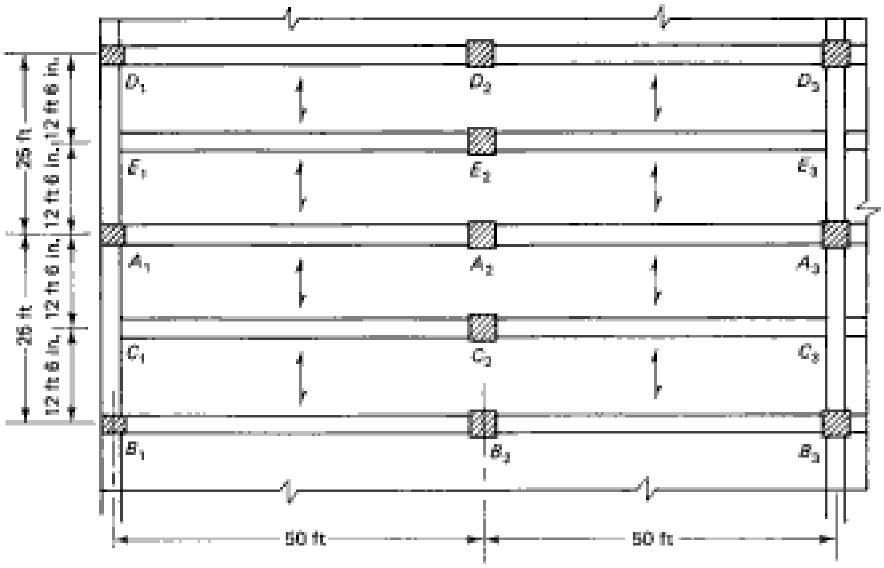


Figure 7.28 Plan of floor systems.

$$\text{all beams} = 14 \text{ in.} \times 30 \text{ in.} \ (356 \text{ mm} \times 762 \text{ mm})$$

required flexural reinforcement for beam $A_1 - B_1$:

$$\text{midspan } A_s = 1.69 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{support } A_s = 2.16 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{support } A_s' = 0.90 \text{ in.}^2$$

Solution: Beam $A_1 - B_1$ is a case of compatibility torsion because it is part of a continuous floor system where redistribution of moments takes place. The torsional moment due to $C_2 - C_1$ at intersection C_1 is redistributed in directions $C_1 - C_2$ due to the flexibility and rotation of the beam section at C_1 compared to its rigidity at A_1 and B_1. Hence the maximum factored torsional value to be applied to the section at each of the two ends (Figure 7.29a) is to be the lesser value of the actual T_u or that obtained from Eq. 7.26.

Section properties (Step 1)

From Figure 7.29, assuming 1.5-in. cover and No. 4 closed stirrups, x_0 and y_0 are the smaller and larger dimensions, respectively, of the section, and x_1 and y_1 are the inner dimensions to the center of the stirrups. The flange is not confined with torsional closed ties.

$$A_{cp} = 14 \times 30 = 420 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$p_{cp} = 2(x + y) = 2(14 + 30) = 88 \text{ in.}$$

$$x_1 = 14 - 2(1.5 + 0.25) = 10.5$$

$$y_1 = 30 - 2(1.5 + 0.25) = 26.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$p_h = 2(x_1 + y_1) = 2(10.5 + 26.5) = 74 \text{ in.}$$

$$d = 30 - (1.5 + 0.5 + 0.25) \simeq 27.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_{oh} = 10.5 \times 26.5 = 278 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_0 = 0.85 A_{oh} = 236 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\theta = 45^\circ, \ \cot\theta = 1.0$$

1. Factored torsional moments (Steps 2,3)

The maximum factored torsional value to be applied to the section at each of the two ends (Figure 7.29a), a compatibility torsional moment, is from Eq. 7.26 for compatibility torsion

$$T_u = \phi 4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}}$$

$$= 0.75 \times 4\sqrt{4000}\,\frac{420^2}{88} = 380{,}336 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$= 31{,}695 \text{ ft-lb } (43.0 \text{ kN-m})$$

$$T_n = \frac{31{,}695 \times 12}{0.75} = 507{,}120 \text{ in.-lb } (57.3 \text{ kN-m})$$

2. Fixed end moments in beam $C_1 - C_2$:

$$\text{service dead load} = \left[\frac{5.0}{12} \times 12.5 + \frac{(30-5)\times 14}{144}\right] 150 = 1146 \text{ lb/ft } (16.7 \text{ kN/m})$$

$$\text{service live load} = 50 \times 12.5 = 625 \text{ lb/ft } (9.1 \text{ kN/m})$$

$$\text{factored load } U = 1.2 \times 1146 + 1.6 \times 625 = 2375 \text{ lb/ft } (34.6 \text{ kN/m})$$

$$\text{fixed end moment} = \frac{w_u\ell^2}{12} = \frac{2375\,(50)^2}{12} = 494{,}792 \text{ ft-lb}$$

The factored torque in compatibility torsion that beam $C_2 - C_1$ applies at connection C_1 is

$$T_u = 2 \times 31{,}695 = 63{,}390$$

This value is less than the factored end moment $w_u\ell^2/12$ at end C_1. Hence the torsional moment to be used at midspan of $A_1 - B_1$ is $T_u = 63{,}390$ ft-lb. Perform the moment distribution shown in Figure 7.29b to determine the reaction R_{c1} and R_{c2}.

3. Beam reaction at C_1 and the resulting shear in beam $A_1 - B_1$:

$$\Sigma M_{c2} = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad 50\,R_{c1} + 710{,}493 - 63{,}390 - \frac{2375(50)^2}{2} = 0$$

$$R_{c1} = \frac{-710{,}493 + 63{,}390 + 2{,}968{,}750}{50} = 46{,}433 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{factored self-weight of } A_1 - B_1 = 1.2\,\frac{14 \times 30}{144}\,150 = 525 \text{ lb/ft}$$

Distance of critical section in $A_1 - B_1$ from column center line $= d + 14/2 = (30 - 2.5) + 14/2 = 34.5$ in.

$$V_u = \frac{46{,}433}{2} + 525\left(12.5 - \frac{34.5}{12}\right) = 28{,}270 \text{ lb}$$

Beams $A_1 - B_1$ would be subjected to the torsion and shear envelopes shown in Figure 7.30.

Section adequacy check (Step 4)

$$V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d = 2\sqrt{4000} \times 14 \times 27.5$$

$$= 48{,}700 \text{ lb}$$

From Eq. 7.30a,

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7 A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{28{,}270}{14 \times 27.5}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{380{,}336 \times 74}{1.7\,(278)^2}\right)^2}$$

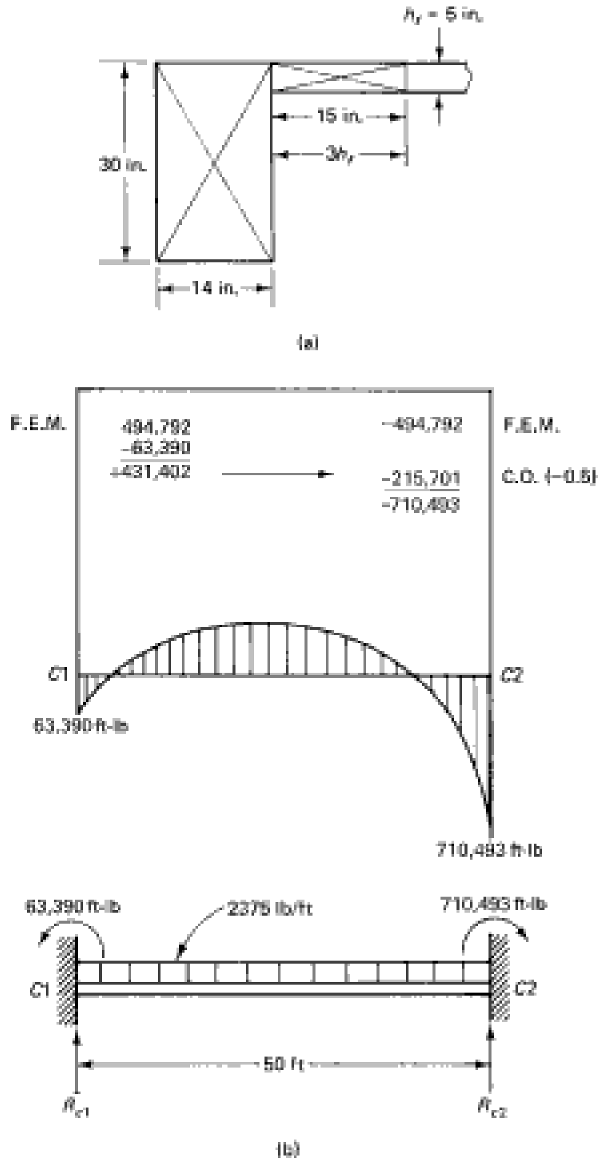


Figure 7.29 (a) Component rectangles; (b) bending moments for beam $C_1 - C_2$.

$$= \sqrt{5392 + 45{,}890} = 226 \text{ psi}$$

$$\phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\right) = 0.75\left(\frac{48{,}700}{14 \times 27.5} + 8\sqrt{4000}\right)$$

$$= 474 \text{ psi} > 226 \text{ psi; hence section is adequate.}$$

Torsional reinforcement (Step 5)

From Eq. 7.31b,

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_{yv} \cot\theta} = \frac{507{,}120}{2 \times 236 \times 60{,}000 \times 1.0}$$

= [illegible]

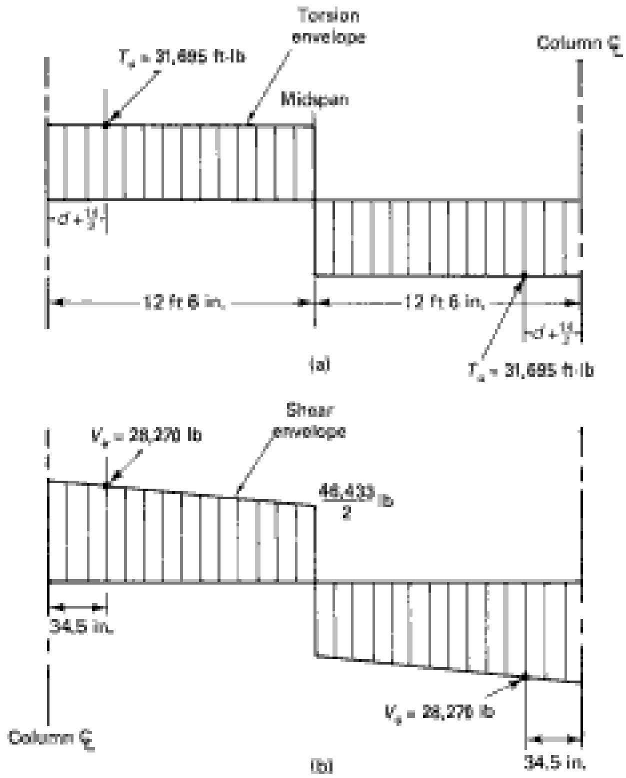


Figure 7.30 (a) Torsion and (b) shear factored force envelopes for beam $A_1 - B_1$, Ex. 7.3.

Shear reinforcement (Step 6)

V_c = 48,700 lb and V_u = 28,270 from before.

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{28{,}270}{0.75} = 37{,}693 \text{ lb} < V_c$$

but larger than $\frac{1}{2}V_c$ = 24,350 lb; hence minimum shear reinforcement needed.

$$0.75\sqrt{f_c'} = 0.75\sqrt{4000} = 47 < 50;$$

hence, from Eq. 7.33, minimum web steel is

$$\frac{A_v}{s} = \frac{50b_w}{f_{yt}} = \frac{50 \times 14}{60{,}000} = 0.012 \text{ in.}^2\text{/in./two legs}$$

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = \frac{2A_t}{s} + \frac{A_v}{s} = 2 \times 0.017 + 0.012 = 0.046 \text{ in.}^2\text{/in./two legs}$$

Try No. 3 closed stirrups = $2 \times 0.11 = 0.22$ in.^{2} (bar size has to be the larger of at least No. 3 or s/16 for longitudinal bars).

$$s = \frac{\text{area of cross section}}{\text{required } A_{vt}/s} = \frac{0.22}{0.046} = 4.78 \text{ in. c-c}$$

Maximum allowable s = lesser of $p_h/8$ or 12 in.; $p_h/8 = 74/8 = 9.25$ in. Due to constant torsion imposed by beam $C_2 - C_1$ at midspan (Figure 7.28), use same spacing of the closed No. 3 stirrups throughout the span. Space the stirrups at 4.75 in. center to center.

Longitudinal torsional reinforcement

From Eq. 7.32,

$$A_\ell = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \cot^2\theta = 0.017 \times 74 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000} \times 1.0 = 1.26 \text{ in.}^2$$

From Eq. 7.34,

$$A_{\ell,\min} = \frac{5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}A_{cp}}{f_{yt}} - \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}$$

$$= \frac{5\sqrt{4000} \times 420}{60{,}000} = 0.017 \times 74 \times \frac{60{,}000}{60{,}000} = 0.95 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use $A_\ell = 1.26$ (813 mm²).

To distribute A_ℓ evenly on all four faces of the beam, use $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ at each vertical face with $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ at the top two corners and $\frac{1}{4}A_\ell$ at the bottom two corners or tension side to be added to the flexural reinforcement. $A_\ell/4 = 1.26/4 = 0.32$ in.². Use three No. 4 bars = 0.60 in.² (12.7-mm diameter) on each vertical face for both the support and midspan sections. (Three No. 3 bars could be used, but are less rigid in handling.)

Support section:

$$\Sigma A_s = \frac{A_\ell}{4} + A_s = 0.32 + 2.16 = 2.38 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use six No. 6 bars = 2.64 in.² (six bars, 19.1-mm diameter) at top.

$$\Sigma A'_s = 0.32 + 0.90 = 1.22 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use three No. 6 bars = 1.32 in.² at bottom.

Midspan section:

$$\Sigma A_s = 0.32 + 1.69 = 2.01 \text{ in.}$$

Use five No. 6 bars = 2.30 in.² at bottom, with three of these bars to continue up to the support (five bars, 19.1-mm diameter).

Figures 7.31 a and b give details of the combined torsion–shear reinforcement in the spandrel beam.

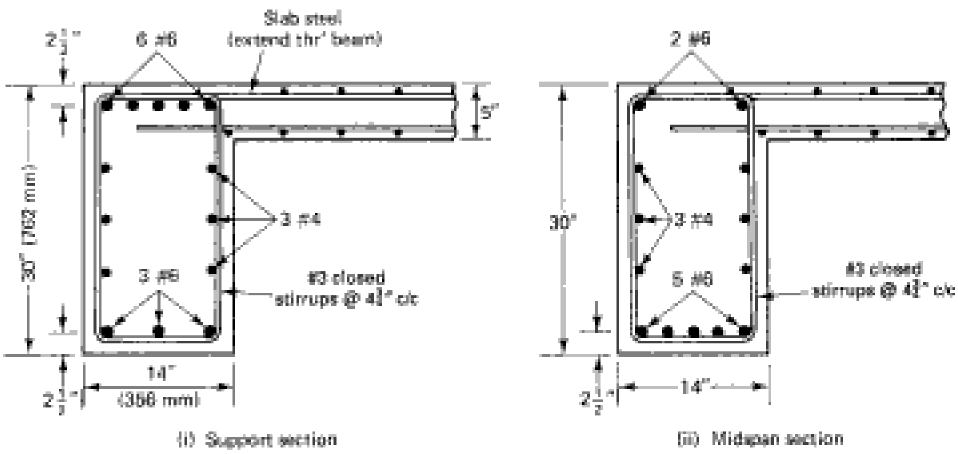


Figure 7.31 (a) Reinforcement details: (i) support section; (ii) midspan section.

7.6 SI METRIC TORSION EXPRESSIONS AND EXAMPLE FOR TORSION DESIGN

In order to design for combined torsion and shear using the SI (System International) method, the following equations replace the corresponding expressions in the PI (pound-inch) method:

Equation 7.26: $$T_n \leq \frac{\phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{3} \frac{A^2_{cp}}{p_{cp}}$$

Equation 7.27: $$T_n \leq \frac{\phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{3} \frac{A^2_{cp}}{p_{cp}} \sqrt{1 + \frac{3\bar{f}_c}{\sqrt{f'_c}}}$$

Equation 7.28: $$T_n \leq \frac{\phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12} \frac{A^2_{cp}}{p_{cp}}$$

Equation 7.29: $$T_n \leq \frac{\phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12} \frac{A^2_{cp}}{p_{cp}} \sqrt{1 + \frac{3\bar{f}_c}{f'_c}}$$

Equation 7.30a: $$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A^2_{oh}}\right)^2} \leq \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + \frac{8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12}\right)$$

Equation 7.30b: $$\frac{V_u}{b_w d} + \frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A^2_{oh}} \leq \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + \frac{8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12}\right)$$

Equation 7.30c (reinforced): $$V_c = \lambda \frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{6} b_w d$$

Equation 7.30d, (prestressed): $$V_c = \left(\frac{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{20} + \frac{5V_u d}{M_u}\right) b_w d$$
$$\geq (\lambda\sqrt{f'_c})\, b_w d$$
$$\leq (0.4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c})\, b_w d \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{V_u d}{M_u} \leq 1.0$$

Equation 7.31a: $$T_n = \frac{2A_0 A_t f_{yt}}{s} \cot\theta$$

where f_{yv} is in MPa, s in mm, A_0 and A_t in mm^2, and T_n in kN-m.

Equation 7.31b: $$A_t = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_y \cot\theta}$$

Equation 7.32: $$A_\ell = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \cot^2\theta$$

where f_{yv} and $f_{y\ell}$ are in MPa, p_h and s in mm, and A_ℓ and, A_t in mm^2.

Equation 7.33: $$A_v + 2A_t \geq \frac{0.35 b_w s}{f_{yt}} \quad \text{or} \quad (A_v + 2A_t) = \frac{1}{16}\sqrt{f'_c}\frac{b_w s}{f_{yt}} \quad \text{whichever is larger}$$

Equation 7.34: $$A_{\ell_{min}} = \frac{5\sqrt{f'_c}A_{cp}}{12 f_y} - \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}$$

where A_t/s should not be taken less than $0.175 b_w/f_{yv}$.

Maximum allowable spacing of transverse stirrups is the smaller of $\frac{1}{8}p_h$ or 300 mm, and bars should have a diameter of at least $\frac{1}{16}$ of the stirrups spacing, but not less than No. 10 M bar size. Maximum f_{yv} or f_y should not exceed 400 MPa.

7.6.1 Example 7.4: SI Torsion Design

Solve Ex. 7.1 using SI units.

Data

$f'_c = 27.6$ Mpa (MPa = N/mm^2)

$f_y = f_{yt} = 414$ MPa

$V_u = 180$ kN

(a) equilibrium $T_u = 51.4$ kN-m

(b) compatibility $T_u = 7.3$ kN-m

(c) compatibility $T_u = 30.3$ kN-m

$$b_w = 356 \text{ mm}, \qquad A_s = 2190 \text{ mm}^2$$
$$d = 570 \text{ mm}$$
$$h = 635 \text{ mm}$$
$$h_f = 101 \text{ mm}$$

Solution: (a) Equilibrium torsion, $T_u = 51.4$ kN-m
(No confining ties in the flanges; hence disregarded when computing A_{cp}. Same applies to p_{cp}).

$$A_{cp} = 356 \times 635 = 226{,}060 \text{ mm}^2$$
$$p_{cp} = 2(x + y) = 2(356 + 635) = 1982 \text{ mm}$$

From Eq. 7.28, torsional moment for which torsion can be neglected is

$$T_u = \frac{\phi\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12}\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}} = \frac{0.75\sqrt{27.6}}{12}\frac{226{,}060^2}{1982}$$
$$= 8.5 \times 10^6 \text{ N-mm} = 8.5 \text{ kN-m} < 51.4 \text{ kN-m}$$

in case (a); hence design for torsion.

$$T_n = \frac{T_u = 51.4}{\phi = 0.75} = 68.5 \text{ kN-m}$$

Sectional properties

$$A_0 = 0.85A_{oh}$$

where A_{oh} is the area enclosed by the center line of the outermost closed stirrups. Assume 40-mm clear cover and No. 10 M bars (diameter = 11.3 mm, $A_s = 100$ mm^2).

$$x_1 = 356 - 2\left(40 + \frac{11.3}{2}\right) = 264 \text{ mm}$$

$$y_1 = 635 - 2\left(40 + \frac{11.3}{2}\right) = 543 \text{ mm}$$

$$A_{oh} = x_1y_1 = 264 \times 543 = 143{,}400 \text{ mm}^2$$
$$A_0 = 0.85A_{oh} \simeq 122{,}000 \text{ mm}^2$$
$$d = 635 - \left(40 + 11.3 + \frac{11.3}{2}\right) = 578; \quad \text{use } d = 570 \text{ mm}$$
$$p_h = 2(x_1 + y_1) = 2(264 + 544) = 1616 \text{ mm}$$

Use $\theta = 45°$; cot θ = 1.0

Check adequacy of section

For the section to be adequate, it should satisfy Eq. 7.30a:

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} \le \phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + \frac{8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12}\right)$$

$$V_c = \lambda\frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{6}b_w d = \frac{1.0\sqrt{27.6}}{6} \times 356 \times 570$$

$$= 177{,}800 \text{ N} = 177.8 \text{ kN}$$

$$\sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{b_w d}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_u p_h}{1.7A_{oh}^2}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{180 \times 10^3}{356 \times 570}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{51.4 \times 10^6 \times 1616}{1.7(143{,}400)^2}\right)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(0.79)^2 + (2.38)^2}$$

$$= 1.78 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\phi\left(\frac{V_c}{b_w d} + \frac{8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12}\right) = 0.75\left(\frac{177.8 \times 10^3}{356 \times 570} + \frac{8\sqrt{27.6}}{12}\right)$$

$$= 0.75(0.88 + 3.50)$$

$$= 3.27 \text{ MPa} > 1.78 \text{ MPa}$$

Hence, the section is adequate.

Torsional reinforcement (Step 3)

$$T_u = 68.5 \text{ kN-m} = 68.5 \times 10^6 \text{ N-mm}$$

From Eq. 7.31 b,

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_u}{2A_0 f_{yt}\cot\theta} = \frac{68.5 \times 10^6}{2 \times 122{,}000 \times 414 \times 1.0}$$

$$= 0.666 \text{ mm}^2\text{/mm/one leg}$$

Shear reinforcement

$$V_c = \lambda\frac{\sqrt{f'_c}}{6}b_w d = 178 \text{ kN}$$

From before, required $V_n = 180/0.75 = 240$ kN > V_c > $\frac{1}{2}V_c$ for minimum shear web reinforcement. Provide closed stirrups.

$$V_s = V_n - V_c = 240 - 178 = 62 \text{ kN}$$

$$\frac{A_v}{s} = \frac{V_s}{f_y d} = \frac{62 \times 10^3}{414 \times 570} = 0.26 \text{ mm}^2\text{/mm/two legs}$$

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = \frac{2A_t}{s} + \frac{A_v}{s} = 2 \times 0.666 + 0.26 = 1.6 \text{ mm}^2\text{/mm/two legs}$$

Try No. 10 M closed stirrups (11.3-mm diameter, $A_s = 100$ mm^2). Area of two legs = 2 × 100 = 200 mm^2.

$$s = \frac{\text{area stirrups cross section}}{\text{required } A_{vt}/s} = \frac{200}{1.6} = 125 \text{ mm}$$

Maximum allowable spacing, s_{max} = smaller of 125 mm or $\frac{1}{8}p_h = 2(x_1 + y_1) = 1616$ mm from before; $\frac{1}{8}p_h = 1616/8 = 202$ mm > 125 mm. From Eq. 7.33,

$$\frac{1}{16}\sqrt{f'_c} = \frac{1}{16}\sqrt{27.6} = 0.33 < 0.35, \text{ hence}$$

$$A_{vt} = \frac{0.35 b_w s}{f_{yt}} = \frac{0.35 \times 356 \times 125}{414} = 37 \text{ mm}^2$$

Hence, use No. 10 M closed stirrups at 125 mm center to center.

From Eq. 7.32,

$$A_l = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y} \cot^2 \theta$$

$$= 0.666 \times 1616 = 1076 \text{ mm}^2$$

From Eq. 7.34,

$$A_{l\,\min} = \frac{5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}A_{cp}}{12 f_y} - \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yt}}{f_y}$$

$$= \frac{5\sqrt{27.6} \times 226{,}060}{12 \times 414} - 0.666 \times 1616$$

$$= 1195 - 1076 = 119 \text{ mm}^2$$

where

$$\frac{A_t}{s} \geq \frac{0.175 b_w}{f_{yt}} = \frac{0.175 \times 356}{414} = 0.15$$

$$< 0.666 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Hence, $A_l = 1076$ mm² controls.

Assume that $\frac{1}{4} A_l$ goes to the top corners and $\frac{1}{4} A_l$ goes to the bottom of the stirrups to be added to the flexural bars. The balance, $\frac{1}{2} A_l$, would thus be distributed equally on the vertical faces of the beam web cross section at a spacing not to exceed 300 mm c-c.

$$\text{midspan } \Sigma A_s = \frac{A_l}{4} + A_s = \frac{1076}{4} + 2190 = 2460 \text{ mm}^2$$

From Fig. B.2b, provide five No. 25 M longitudinal bars, $A_s = 2500$ mm² at the bottom. Provide two No. 15 M bars at the top corners of the stirrups (400 mm²) and two No. 15 M bars at each vertical face of the web.

(b) Compatibility torsion, $T_u = 7.3$ kN-m (Step 4)

From part (a), T_u value for torsion to be neglected = 7.3 kN-m < 8.5 kN-m.
Hence disregard torsion and provide stirrups for shear only.

From part (a), $A_v/s = 0.26$ mm²/mm/two legs.

For No. 10 mm stirrups, $s = 200/0.26 = 770$ mm.

Maximum $s = d/2 = 570/2 = 285$ mm.

Use No. 10 M closed stirrups at 220 mm center to center at critical section.

(c) Compatibility Torsion, $T_u = 30.3$ kN-m

$T_u = 30.3 > 8.5$ kN-m from part (a); hence, closed stirrups have to be provided. Since this is a compatibility torsion, the section can be designed from Eq. 7.26 for

$$T_u = \frac{\phi\sqrt{f'_c}}{3}\frac{A_{cp}^2}{p_{cp}} = 4 \times 8.5 \text{ from part (a)}$$

$$= 34 \text{ kN-m} > 30.3 \text{ kN-m}$$

Hence, use $T_u = 30.3$ kN-m for the torsional design of the section.

$$\text{required } T_n = \frac{T_u}{\phi} = \frac{30.3}{0.75} = 40.4 \text{ kN-m}$$

Torsional reinforcement (Step 3)

From part (a), $A_o = 122{,}000$ mm^2, $p_h = 1616$ mm.

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_n}{2A_0 f_{yt} \cot\theta} = \frac{40.4 \times 10^6 \text{ N-mm}}{2 \times 122{,}000 \times 414} = 0.40 \text{ mm}^2/\text{mm/one leg}$$

$$A_v/s = 0.26 \text{ mm}^2/\text{mm/two legs}$$

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = 2\frac{A_t}{s} + \frac{A_v}{s} = 2 \times 0.40 + 0.26 = 1.06 \text{ mm}^2/\text{mm/two legs}$$

Using No. 10 M closed stirrups,

$$s = \frac{2 \times 100}{1.06} = 189 \text{ mm, say } 180 \text{ mm}$$

This is less than $\frac{1}{8}p_h$ or 300 mm. Hence, use No. 10 M closed stirrups at 180 mm c-c (diameter of 11.3 mm) at the critical section.

$$A_\ell = \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yv}}{f_{y\ell}} \cot^2\theta = 0.40 \times 1616 = 646 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$A_{\ell,min} = \frac{5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}A_{cp}}{f_y} - \frac{A_t}{s} p_h \frac{f_{yv}}{f_y}$$

$$= 1195 \text{ (from before)} - (0.40 \times 1616) = 549 \text{ mm}^2\text{, controls}$$

Use $A_\ell = 646$ mm^2.

Distribution of torsion longitudinal bars

$$\text{torsional } A_\ell = 646 \text{ mm}^2, \qquad \frac{A_\ell}{4} = 162 \text{ mm}^2$$

Using the same logic as that followed in part (a), provide at bottom an area $A_s = 2190 + 162 = 2350$ mm^2, that is, five No. 25 M bars ($A_s = 2500$ mm^2) and two No. 15 M (400 mm^2) bars at top corners and each of the two vertical faces of the web.

SELECTED REFERENCES

7.1. Timoshenko, S., *Strength of Materials*, Part II, *Advanced Theory*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1952, 501 pp.

7.2. Nadai, A., *Plasticity: A Mechanics of the Plastic State of Matter*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1931, 349 pp.

7.3. Cowan, H. J., "Design of Beams Subject to Torsion Related to the New Australian Code," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 56, Farmington Hills, MI, January 1960, pp. 591–618.

7.4. Gesund, H., Schnette, F. J., Buchanan, G. R., and Gray, G. A., "Ultimate Strength in Combined Bending and Torsion of Concrete Beams Containing Both Longitudinal and Transverse Reinforcement," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 61, Farmington Hills, MI, December 1964, pp. 1509–1521.

7.5. Lessig, N. N., "Determination of Carrying Capacity of Reinforced Concrete Elements with Rectangular Cross-Section Subjected to Flexure with Torsion," *Zhelezonbeton*, 1959, pp. 5–28.

7.6. Zia, P., *Tension Theories for Concrete Members*, Special Publication SP 18-4, American Concrete institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1968, pp. 103–132.

7.7. Hsu, T. T. C., "Ultimate Torque of Reinforced Concrete Members," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE*, Vol. 94, No. ST2, February 1968, pp. 485–510.

7.8. Rangan, B. V., and Hall, A. J., "Strength of Rectangular Prestressed Concrete Beams in Combined Torsion, Bending and Shear," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 70, Farmington Hills, MI, April 1973, pp. 270–279.

7.9. Thurliman, B., *Torsional Strength of Reinforced and Prestressed Concrete Beams—CEB Approach, U.S. and European Practices*, Special Publication, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1979, pp. 117–143.

7.10. Rabbat, B. G., and Collins, M. P., *A Variable Angle Space Truss Model for Structural Concrete Members Subjected to Complex Loading*, Special Publication SP 55-22, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1978, pp. 547–587.

7.11. Collins, M. P., and Mitchell D., "Shear and Torsion Design of Prestressed and Nonprestressed Concrete Beams," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 25, No. 5, September–October 1980, pp. 32–100.

7.12. Hsu, T. T. C., *Torsion of Reinforced Concrete*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1983, 510 pp.

7.13. Hsu, T. T. C., "Shear Flow Zone in Torsion of Reinforced Concrete," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE*, Vol. 116, No. 11, New York, November 1990, pp. 3206–3225.

7.14. Hsu, T. T. C., *Unified Theory of Reinforced Concrete*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL., 1993, 313 pp.

7.15. Nawy, E. G., *High Performance Concrete*, 2nd ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 2000, 550 pp.

7.16. Nawy, E. G., ed., *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL., 2008, 1560 pp.

7.17. American Concrete Institute, *Building Code Requirements for Concrete (ACI 318–08) and Commentary (ACI 318R–08)*, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2008, 465 pp.

7.18. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2005, 968 pp.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

7.1. Calculate the maximum allowable torsional capacity T_u for the sections shown in Figure 7.32 for compatibility torsion.

#3 closed ties in all webs

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

clear cover = $1\frac{1}{2}$ in.

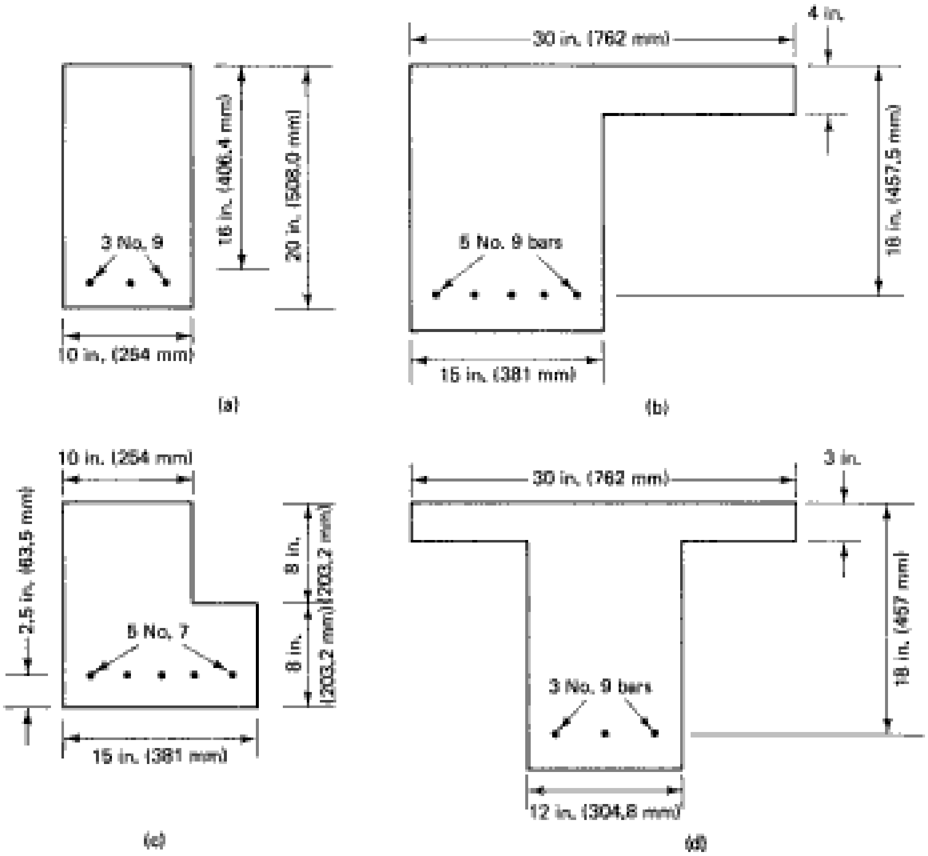


Figure 7.32 Cross sections for Problem 7.1.

7.2. A cantilever beam is subjected to a concentrated service live load of 20,000 lb (90 kN) acting at a distance of 3 ft 6 in. (1.07 m) from the wall support. In addition, the beam has to resist an equilibrium factored torsion T_u = 300,000 in.-lb (33.9 kN–m). The beam cross section is 12 in. × 25 in. (305 mm × 635 mm) with an effective depth of 22.5 in. (571.5 mm). Design the stirrups and the additional longitudinal steel needed.
Given:

$$f'_c = 3500 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$A_s = 4.0 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (2580.64 mm}^2\text{)}$$

7.3. The first interior span of a four-span continuous beam has a clear span l_n = 18 ft (5.49 m). The beam is subjected to a uniform external service dead load w_D = 1700 plf (24 kN/m) and a service live load w_L = 2200 plf (32.1 kN/m). Design the section for flexure, diagonal tension, and torsion. Select the size and spacing of the closed stirrups and extra longitudinal steel that might be needed for torsion. Assume that the beam width $b_w = 15$ in. (381.0 mm) and that redistribution of torsional stresses is possible such that the external torque T_u can be assumed as $\phi(4\sqrt{f'_c}\, A_{cp}^2/p_{cp})$. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi (34.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

7.4. A continuous beam has the shear and torsion envelopes shown in Figure 7.33. The beam dimensions are $b_w = 14$ in. (355.6 mm) and $d = 25$ in. (635 mm). It is subjected to factored shear forces $V_{u1} = 75{,}000$ lb (333.6 kN), $V_{u2} = 60{,}000$ lb, and $V_{u3} = 45{,}000$ lb. Design the beam for torsion and shear and detail the web reinforcement. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), lightweight concrete}$$

$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

The required reinforcement is as follows:

$$\text{midspan } A_s = 3.0 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{support } A_s = 3.6 \text{ in.}^2,\ A'_s = 0.7 \text{ in.}^2$$

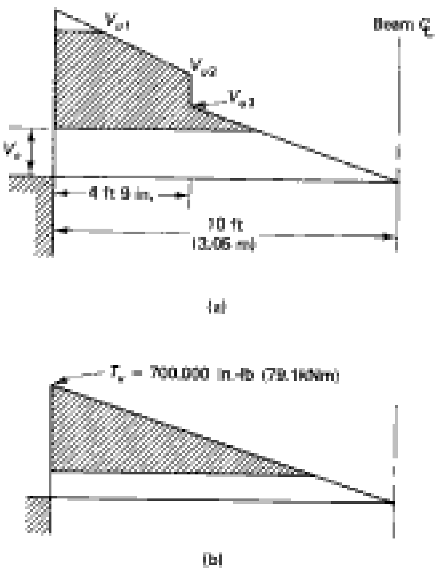


Figure 7.33 (a) Shear and (b) torsion envelopes.

7.5. Design the rectangular beam shown in Figure 7.34 for bending, shear, and torsion. Assume that the beam width $b = 12$ in. (305 mm). Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.8 MPa)}$$

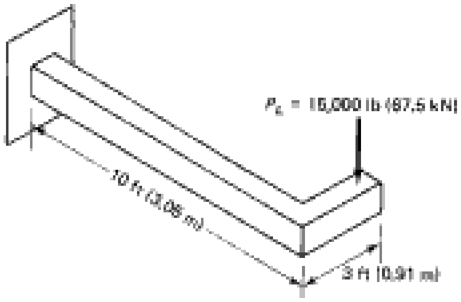


Figure 7.34

7.6. An exterior spandrel beam A_1–B_1, part of the monolithic floor system shown in Figure 7.35, has a center-to-center span of 36 ft and a slab thickness $h_f = 6$ in. (153 mm) on beams 15 in. × 36 in. in cross section. It is subject to a service live load = 50 psf (2.4 kPa). Design the shear and torsion reinforcement necessary to resist the external factored loads. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal–weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

Assume that the required flexural reinforcement for beam A_1–B_1 is

$$\text{midspan } A_s = 2.09 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$\text{support } A_s = 3.0 \text{ in.}^2, \qquad A'_s = 1.6 \text{ in.}^2$$

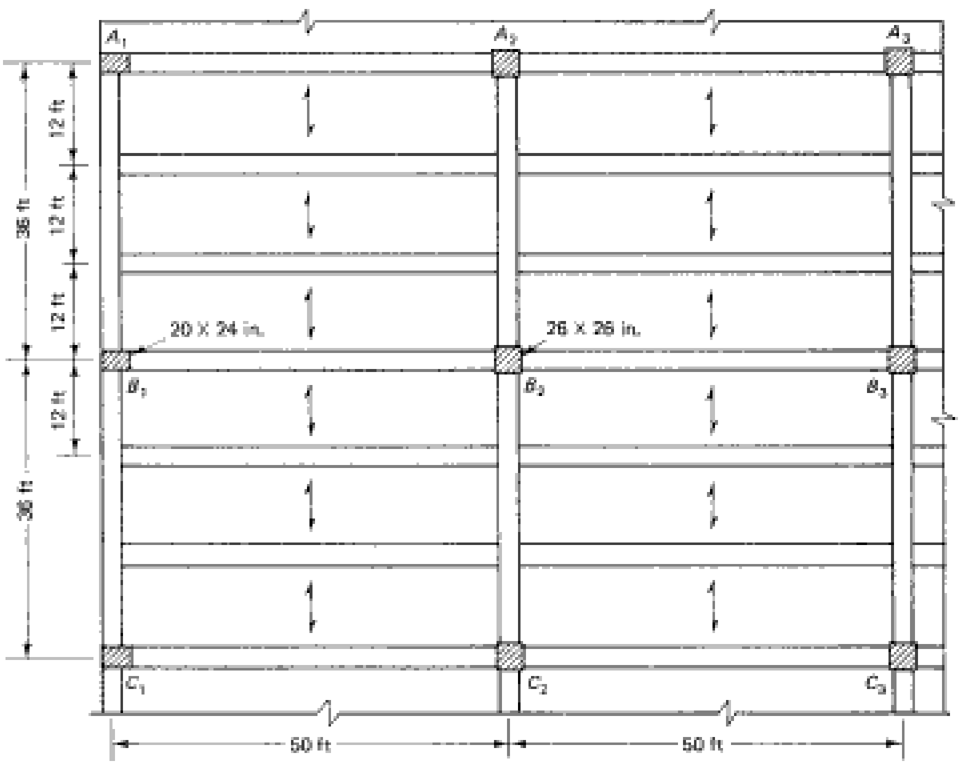


Figure 7.35

8

SERVICEABILITY OF BEAMS AND ONE-WAY SLABS

8.1 INTRODUCTION

Serviceability of a structure is determined by its deflection, cracking, extent of corrosion of its reinforcement, and surface deterioration of its concrete. Surface deterioration can be minimized by proper control of mixing, placing, and curing of the concrete. If the surface is exposed to potentially damaging chemicals, such as in a chemical factory or a sewage plant, a special type of cement with appropriate additives should be used in the concrete mix. Use of adequate cover as recommended in Chapters 4 and 5, proper quality control of the materials, and the application of proper crack control and deflection control criteria to the design can minimize and in most cases eliminate these problems.

This chapter deals with the evaluation of deflection and cracking behavior of beams and one-way slabs in some detail. It is intended to give the designer adequate basic background on the effect of cracking on the stiffness of the member, the short- and long-term deflection performance, and the manner in which the cracked concrete beam element can still perform adequately and esthetically without loss of reliability in its performance. Deflection of two-way action slabs and plates is given in Chapter 11 with numerical examples of deflection calculations for both short- and long-term loading.

Photo 8.1 Kennedy International airport TWA terminal, New York. (Courtesy of Ammann & Whitney.)

8.2 SIGNIFICANCE OF DEFLECTION OBSERVATION

The working stress method of design and analysis used prior to the 1970s limited the stress in concrete to about 45% of its compressive strength and the stress in the steel to less than 50% of its yield strength. Elastic analysis was applied to the design of structural frames as well as reinforced concrete sections. The structural elements were proportioned to carry the highest service-level moment along the span of the member, with redistribution of moment effect often largely neglected. As a result, heavier sections with higher reserve strength resulted as compared to those obtained by the current ultimate strength approach.

Higher-strength concretes having f'_c values in excess of 12,000 psi (83 MPa) and higher-strength steels are being used in strength design, and expanding knowledge of the properties of the materials has resulted in lower values of load factors and reduced reserve strength. Hence more slender and efficient members are specified, with deflection becoming a more pronounced controlling criterion.

Beams and slabs are rarely built as isolated members, but a monolithic part of an integrated system. Excessive deflection of a floor slab may cause dislocations in the partitions it supports. Excessive deflection of a beam can damage a partition below, and excessive deflection of a lintel beam above a window opening could crack the glass panels. In the case of open floors and roofs such as top garage floors, ponding of water can result. For these reasons, deflection control criteria are necessary, such as those given in Table 11.3.

8.3 DEFLECTION BEHAVIOR OF BEAMS

The load–deflection relationship of a reinforced concrete beam is basically trilinear, as idealized in Figure 8.1. It is composed of three regions prior to rupture:

Region I: precracking stage, where a structural member is crack-free (Figure 8.2)

Region II: postcracking stage, where the structural member develops acceptable controlled cracking both in distribution and width

Region III: postserviceability cracking stage, where the stress in the tension reinforcement reaches the limit state of yielding

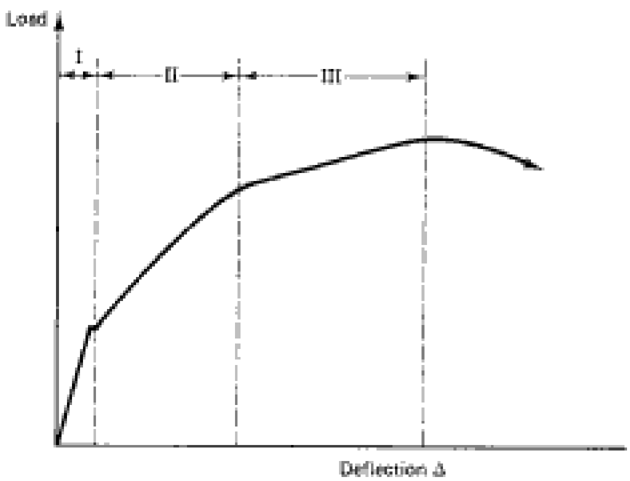


Figure 8.1 Beam load–deflection relationship. Region I, precracking stage; region II, postcracking stage; region III, postserviceability stage (steel yields).

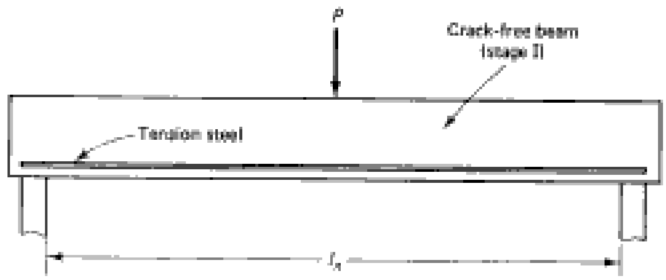


Figure 8.2 Centrally loaded beam at the precracking stage.

8.3.1 Precracking Stage: Region I

The precracking segment of the load–deflection curve is essentially a straight line defining full elastic behavior. The maximum tensile stress in the beam in this region is less than its tensile strength in flexure, that is, less than the modulus of rupture f_r of concrete. The flexural stiffness EI of the beam can be estimated using Young's modulus E_c of concrete and the moment of inertia of the uncracked reinforced concrete cross-section. The load–deflection behavior depends on the stress–strain relationship of the concrete as a significant factor. A typical stress–strain diagram for concrete is shown in Figure 8.3.

The value of E_c can be estimated using the ACI empirical expression given in Chapter 3:

$$E_c = 33w_c^{1.5}\sqrt{f'_c}$$

or

$$E_c = 57{,}000\sqrt{f'_c} \qquad \text{for normal-weight concrete}$$

An accurate estimation of the moment of inertia I necessitates consideration of the contribution of the steel reinforcement A_s. This can be done by replacing the steel area by an equivalent concrete area $(E_s/E_c)A_s$ since the value of Young's modulus E_s of the reinforcement is higher than E_c. One can transform the steel area to an equivalent concrete area, calculate the center of gravity of the transformed section, and obtain the transformed moment of inertia I_{gt}.

Example 8.1 presents a typical calculation of I_{gt} for a transformed rectangular section. Most designers, however, use a gross moment of inertia I_g based on the uncracked

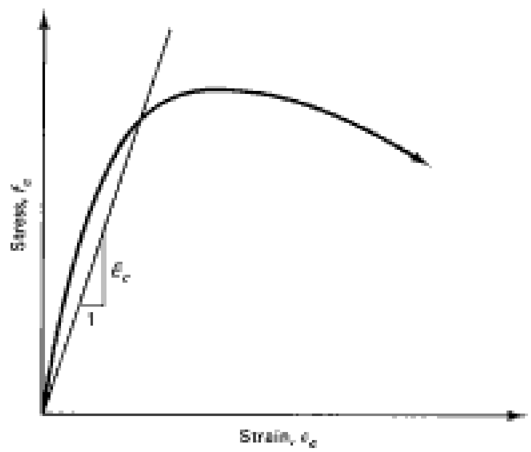


Figure 8.3 Stress–strain diagram of concrete.

concrete section, disregarding the additional stiffness contributed by the steel reinforcement as insignificant.

The precracking region stops at the initiation of the first flexural crack when the concrete stress reaches its modulus of rupture strength f_r. Similarly to the direct tensile splitting strength, the modulus of rupture of concrete is proportional to the square root of its compressive strength. For design purposes, the value of the modulus for normal-weight concrete may be taken as

$$f_r = 7.5\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{8.1}$$

If lightweight concrete is used, the value of f_r from Eq. 8.1 is multiplied by 0.75 for all lightweight concrete and by 0.85 for sand-lightweight concrete.

If the distance of the extreme tension fiber from the center of gravity of the section is y_t and the cracking moment is M_{cr},

$$M_{cr} = \frac{I_g f_r}{y_t} \tag{8.2}$$

For a rectangular section

$$y_t = \frac{h}{2} \tag{8.3}$$

where h is the total thickness of the beam. Equation 8.2 is derived from the classical bending equation $\sigma = Mc/I$ for elastic and homogeneous materials.

Calculations of deflection for this region are not important since very few reinforced concrete beams remain uncracked under actual loading. However, mathematical knowledge of the variation in stiffness properties is important since segments of the beam along the span in the actual structure can remain uncracked.

8.3.1.1 Example 8.1: Alternative Methods of Cracking Moment Evaluation.

Calculate the cracking moment M_{cr} for the beam cross-section shown in Figure 8.4, using both (a) transformed and (b) gross cross-section alternatives in the solution. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$
$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (200{,}000 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$

Reinforcement: four No. 9 bars (four bars, 28.6-mm diameter) placed in two bundles.

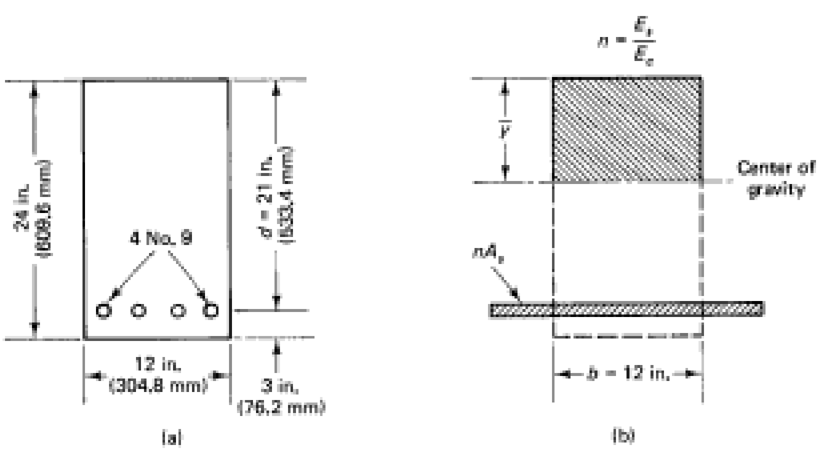


Figure 8.4 Cross-section transformation in Ex. 8.1: (a) midspan section; (b) transformed section.

Solution: (a) *Transformed section solution:* Depth of center-of-gravity axis, $\bar{y}$, can be obtained using the first moment of area:

$$\left[bh + \left(\frac{E_s}{E_c} - 1\right)A_s\right]\bar{y} = bh\frac{h}{2} + \left(\frac{E_s}{E_c} - 1\right)A_s d$$

Note that $(E_s/E_c) - 1$ is used instead of E_s/E_c to account for the concrete displaced by the reinforcing bars.

It is customary to denote $n = E_s/E_c$ as the modular ratio. Taking moments about the top extreme fibers of the section,

$$\bar{y} = \frac{(bh^2/2) + (n-1)A_s d}{bh + (n-1)A_s}$$

For normal-weight 4000-psi concrete,

$$E_c = 57{,}000\sqrt{4000}$$
$$= 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (24.8 \times 10^3 \text{ MPa})$$
$$n = \frac{29 \times 10^6}{3.6 \times 10^6} = 8.1$$
$$\bar{y} = \frac{\dfrac{12 \times (24)^2}{2} + (8.1 - 1)4.0 \times 21}{12 \times 24 + (8.1 - 1)4.0} = 12.8 \text{ in. } (325 \text{ mm})$$

If the moment of inertia of steel reinforcement about its own axis is neglected as insignificant,

$$\text{transformed section } I_{gt} = \frac{bh^3}{12} + bh(12.8 - 12.0)^2 + (n-1)A_s(d - \bar{y})^2$$

or

$$I_{gt} = \frac{12 \times 24^3}{12} + 12 \times 24 \times 0.8^2 + 7.1 \times 4.0(21 - 12.8)^2$$
$$= 15{,}918 \text{ in.}^4 \ (66.22 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4)$$

The distance of the center of gravity of the transformed section from the lower extreme fibers is

$$y_t = 24 - 12.8 = 11.2 \text{ in. } (285 \text{ mm})$$
$$f_r = 7.5\sqrt{4000} = 474.3 \text{ psi } (3.27 \text{ MPa})$$
$$M_{cr} = \frac{I_g f_r}{y_t} = \frac{15{,}918 \times 474.3}{11.2} = 674{,}100 \text{ in.-lb } (76.2 \text{ kN-m})$$

(b) Gross section solution

$$\bar{y} = \frac{h}{2} = 12 \text{ in.}$$
$$\text{gross section } I_g = \frac{bh^3}{12} = \frac{12 \times 24^3}{12} = 13{,}824 \text{ in.}^4$$
$$y_t = 12 \text{ in. } (305 \text{ mm})$$
$$f_r = 474 \text{ psi}$$
$$M_{cr} = \frac{13{,}824 \times 474.3}{12} = 546{,}394 \text{ in.-lb } (61.7 \text{ kN-m})$$

There is a difference of about 15% in the value of I_g and 19% in the value of M_{cr}. Even though this pe... the I_g and M_{cr} obtained by the two methods seems somewhat high, such a difference in the deflection calculation values is not of real significance and in most cases does not justify using the transformed-section method for evaluating M_{cr}.

8.3.2 Postcracking Service Load Stage: Region II

The precracking region ends at the initiation of the first crack and moves into region II of the load–deflection diagram in Figure 8.1. Most beams lie in this region at service loads. A beam undergoes varying degrees of cracking along the span corresponding to the stress and deflection levels at each section. Hence cracks are wider and deeper at midspan, whereas only narrow minor cracks develop near the supports in a simple beam.

When flexural cracking develops, the contribution of the concrete in the tension zone reduces substantially. Hence the flexural rigidity of the section is reduced, making the load–deflection curve less steep in this region than in the precracking stage segment. As the magnitude of cracking increases, stiffness continues to decrease, reaching a lower-bound value corresponding to the reduced moment of inertia of the cracked section. At this limit state of service load cracking, the contribution of tension-zone concrete to the stiffness is neglected. The moment of inertia of the cracked section designated as I_{cr} can be calculated from the basic principles of mechanics.

Strain and stress distributions across the depth of a typical cracked rectangular concrete section are shown in Figure 8.5. The following assumptions are made with respect to deflection computation based on extensive testing verification: (1) the strain distribution across the depth is assumed to be linear; (2) concrete does not resist any tension; (3) both concrete and steel are within the elastic limit; and (4) strain distribution is similar to that assumed for strength design, but the magnitudes of strains, stresses, and stress distribution are different.

To calculate the moment of inertia, the value of the neutral axis depth, c, should be determined from horizontal force equilibrium.

$$A_s f_s = bc\frac{f_c}{2} \tag{8.4a}$$

Since the steel stress $f_s = E_s\epsilon_s$ and concrete stress $f_c = E_c\epsilon_c$, Eq. 8.4a can be rewritten as

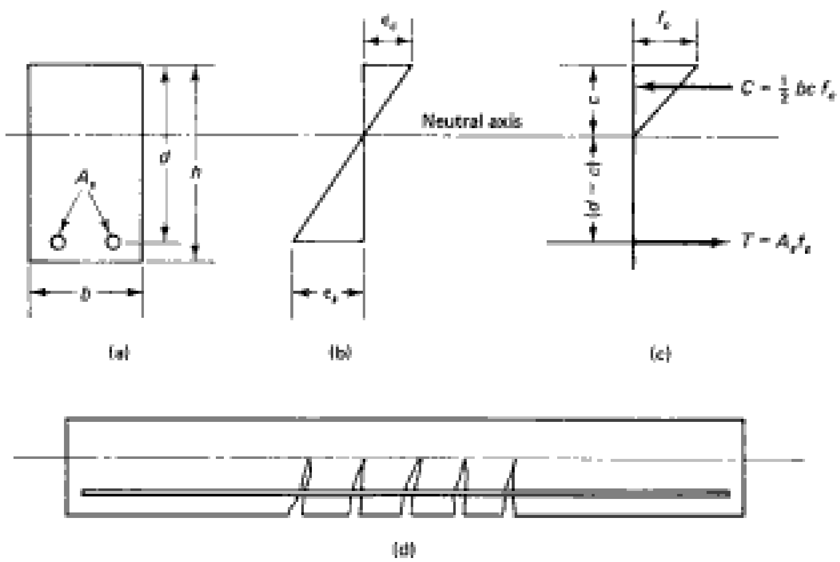


Figure 8.5 Elastic strain and stress distributions across a cracked reinforced concrete section: (a) cross section; (b) strain; (c) elastic stress and force; (d) cracked beam prior to failure in flexure.

$$A_s E_s \epsilon_s = \frac{bc}{2} E_c \epsilon_c \tag{8.4b}$$

From similar triangles in Figure 8.5b,

$$\frac{\epsilon_c}{c} = \frac{\epsilon_s}{d - c} \tag{8.5a}$$

or

$$\epsilon_s = \epsilon_c \left(\frac{d}{c} - 1 \right) \tag{8.5b}$$

From Eqs. 8.4b and 8.5b,

$$A_s E_s \epsilon_c \left(\frac{d}{c} - 1 \right) = \frac{bc}{2} E_c \epsilon_c \tag{8.6a}$$

or

$$\frac{A_s E_s}{E_c} \left(\frac{d}{c} - 1 \right) = \frac{bc}{2} \tag{8.6b}$$

Replacing the modular ratio E_s/E_c by n, Eq. 8.6b can be rewritten as

$$\frac{bc^2}{2} + nA_s c - nA_s d = 0 \tag{8.6c}$$

The value of c can be obtained by solving the quadratic equation, 8.6c. The moment of inertia I_{cr} can be obtained from

$$I_{cr} = \frac{bc^3}{3} + nA_s(d - c)^2 \tag{8.7}$$

where the term $bc^3/3$ in Eq. 8.7 denotes the moment of inertia of the *compressive* area bc about the neutral axis, that is, the base of the compression rectangle, neglecting the section area in tension below the neutral axis. The reinforcing area is multiplied by n to transform it to its equivalent in concrete for contribution to the section stiffness. The moment of inertia of the steel about its own axis is disregarded as negligible.

Only part of the beam cross-section is cracked in the case under discussion. As seen from Figure 8.5d, the uncracked segments below the neutral axis along the beam span possess some degree of stiffness, which contributes to the overall beam rigidity. The actual stiffness of the beam lies between $E_c I_g$ and $E_c I_{cr}$, depending on such other factors as (1) extent of cracking, (2) distribution of loading, and (3) contribution of the concrete, as seen in Figure 8.5d between the cracks. Generally, as the load approaches the steel yield load level, the stiffness value approaches $E_c I_{cr}$.

Branson developed simplified expressions for calculating the effective stiffness $E_c I_e$ for design. The Branson equation, verified as applicable to most cases of reinforced and prestressed beams and universally adopted for deflection calculations, defines the effective moment of inertia as

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} \right)^3 I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} \right)^3 \right] I_{cr} \le I_g \tag{8.8a}$$

Equation 8.8a is also written in the form

$$I_e = I_{cr} + \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} \right)^3 (I_g - I_{cr}) \le I_g \tag{8.8b}$$

The effective moment of inertia I_e as shown in Eq. 8.8b depends on the maximum moment M_a along the span in relation to the cracking moment capacity M_{cr} of the section.

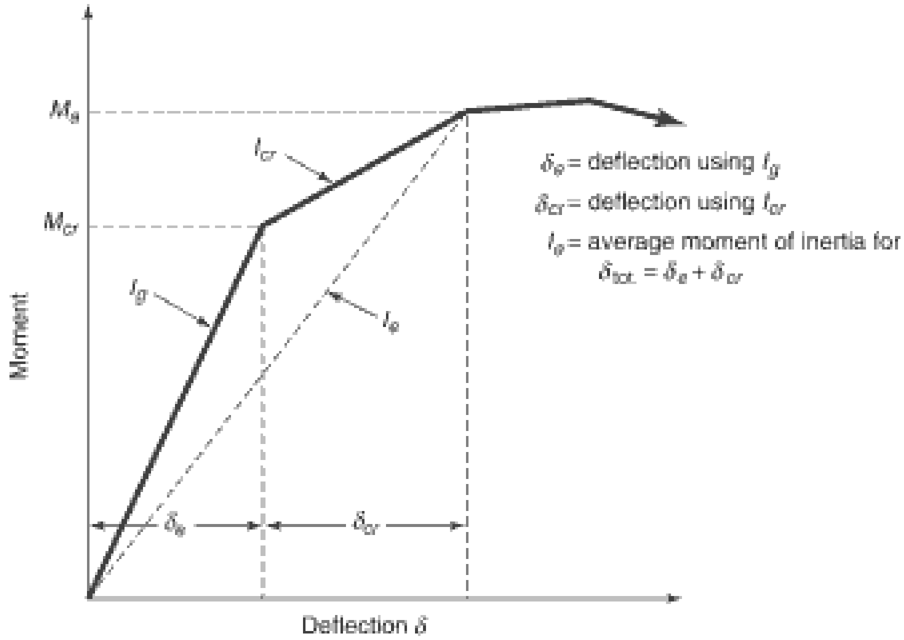


Figure 8.6 Moment-deflection relationship.

Figure 8.6 shows the bilinear moment—deflection relationship defined in Eq. 8.8(a) and (b).

8.3.2.1 Example 8.2: Effective Moment of Inertia of Cracked Beam Sections

Calculate the moment of inertia I_{cr} and the effective moment of inertia I_e of the beam cross-section in Ex. 8.1 if the external maximum service load moment is 2,000,000 in.-lb (226 kN-m), given (Ex. 8.1):

$$
\begin{aligned}
b &= 12 \text{ in. } (305 \text{ mm})\\
d &= 21 \text{ in. } (533 \text{ mm})\\
h &= 24 \text{ in. } (610 \text{ mm})\\
A_s &= 4.0 \text{ in.}^2 \ (2580 \text{ mm}^2)\\
f'_c &= 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})\\
f_y &= 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})\\
E_s &= 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (200 \times 10^3 \text{ MPa})\\
E_c &= 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (24.8 \times 10^3 \text{ MPa})\\
n &= 8.1
\end{aligned}
$$

Solution: From Eq. 8.6c,

$$\frac{12c^2}{2} + 8.1 \times 4.0c - 8.1 \times 4.0 \times 21 = 0$$

Hence neutral axis depth $c = 8.3$ in. (210.8 mm). From Eq. 8.7,

$$I_{cr} = \frac{12.0 \times 8.3^3}{3} + 8.1 \times 4.0(21.0 - 8.3)^2 = 7513 \text{ in.}^4 \ (31.25 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4)$$

Using the I_g and M_{cr} values of Ex. 8.1, which include the effect of the transformed steel area,

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_e &= 7513 + \left(\frac{674{,}100}{2{,}000{,}000}\right)^3 (15{,}918 - 7513)\\
&= 7835 \text{ in.}^4 \ (32.59 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4) < I_g \text{ as expected}
\end{aligned}
$$

If the gross cross-section values for I_g and M_{cr} are used without including the effect of transformed A_s, the effective moment of inertia becomes

$$I_e = 7513 + \left(\frac{546{,}394}{2{,}000{,}000}\right)^3 (13{,}824 - 7513)$$

$$= 7642 \text{ in.}^4 (31.79 \times 10^6 \text{ mm}^4) < I_g$$

Comparison of the two values of effective I_e calculated by the two methods (7835 in.^{4} versus 7642 in.^{4}) shows an insignificant difference. Hence, use of the cross-section properties in Eq. 8.8 is, in most cases, adequate, particularly when one considers the variability in the loads and the randomness in the properties of concrete.

8.3.3 Postserviceability Cracking Stage and Limit State of Deflection Behavior at Failure: Region III

The load–deflection diagram of Figure 8.1 is considerably flatter in region III than in the preceding regions. This is due to substantial loss in stiffness of the section because of extensive cracking and considerable widening of the stabilized cracks throughout the span. As the load continues to increase, the strain ϵ_s in the steel bars at the tension side continues to increase beyond the yield strain ϵ_y with no additional stress. The beam is considered at this stage to have structurally failed by initial yielding of the tension steel. It continues to deflect without additional loading, the cracks continue to open, and the neutral axis continues to rise toward the outer compression fibers. Finally, a secondary compression failure develops, leading to total crushing of the concrete in the maximum moment region, followed by rupture.

The increase in the beam load level between first yielding of the tension reinforcement in a simple beam and the rupture load level varies between 4% and 10%. The deflection value before rupture, however, can be several times that at the steel yield level, depending on the beam span/depth ratio, the steel percentage, the type of loading, and the degree of confinement of the beam section. An ultimate deflection value 8 to 12 times the first yield deflection has frequently been observed in tests.

Postyield deflection and limit deflection at failure are not of major significance in design and hence are not being discussed in any detail in this text. It is important, how-

Photo 8.2 Deflected simply supported beam prior to failure. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

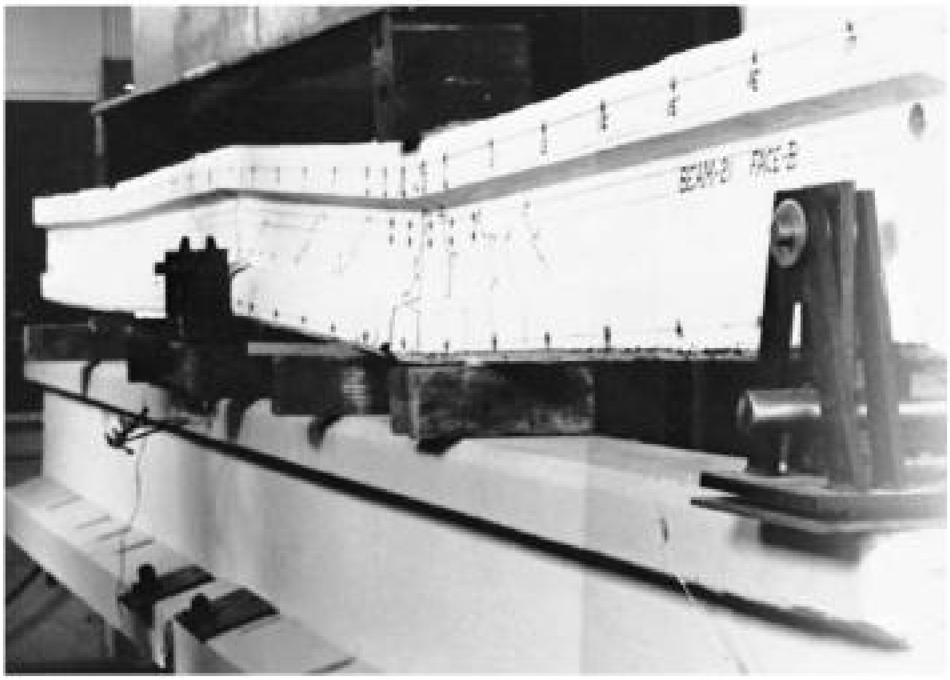


Photo 8.3 Deflected continuous prestressed beam prior to failure. (Tests by Nawy, Potyondy, et al.)

ever, to recognize the reserve deflection capacity as a measure of ductility in structures in earthquake zones and in other areas where the probability of overload is high.

8.4 LONG-TERM DEFLECTION

Time-dependent factors magnify the magnitude of deflection with time. Consequently, the design engineer has to evaluate immediate as well as long-term deflection in order to ensure that their values satisfy the maximum permissible criteria for the particular structure and its particular use.

Time-dependent effects are caused by the superimposed creep, shrinkage, and temperature strains. These additional strains induce a change in the distribution of stresses in the concrete and the steel, resulting in an increase in the curvature of the structural element for the same external load.

The calculation of creep and shrinkage strains at a given time is a complex process, as discussed in Chapter 3. One has to consider how these time-dependent concrete strains affect the stress in the steel and the curvature of the concrete element. In addition, consideration has to be given to the effect of progressive cracking on the change in stiffness factors, considerably complicating the analysis and design process. Consequently, an empirical approach to evaluate deflection under sustained loading is, in many cases, more practical.

The additional deflection under sustained loading and long-term shrinkage in accordance with the ACI procedure can be calculated using a multiplying factor:

$$\lambda = \frac{T}{1 + 50\rho'} \tag{8.9}$$

where ρ' is the compression reinforcement ratio calculated at midspan for simple and continuous beams and T is a factor that is taken as 1.0 for loading time duration of 3 months, 1.2 for 6 months, 1.4 for 12 months, and 2.0 for 5 years or more.

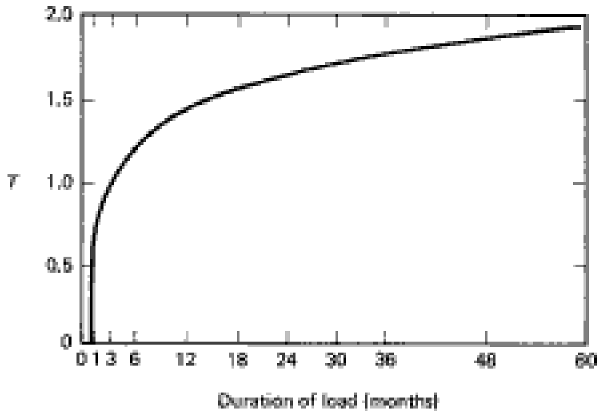


Figure 8.7 Multipliers for long-term deflection.

If the instantaneous deflection is Δ_i, the additional time-dependent deflection becomes $\lambda\Delta_i$, and the total long-term deflection would be $(1 + \lambda)\Delta_i$. Since live loads are not present at all times, only part of the live load in addition to the more permanent dead load is considered as the sustained load. Figure 8.7 gives the relationship between the load duration in months and the multiplier T in Eq. 8.6. It is seen from this plot that the maximum multiplier value $T = 2.0$ represents a nominal limiting time-dependent factor for 5 years' duration of loading. In effect, the expression for the long-term factor λ in Eq. 8.9 has similar characteristics as the stiffness EI of a section in that it is a function of the material property T and the section property $(1 + 50\rho')$.

The toal long-term deflection is

$$\Delta_{LT} = \Delta_L + \lambda_\infty \Delta_D + \lambda_t \Delta_{LS} \tag{8.10}$$

where Δ_L = initial live-load deflection
Δ_D = initial dead-load deflection
Δ_{LS} = initial sustained live-load deflection (a percentage of the immediate Δ_L determined by expected duration of sustained load)
λ_∞ = time-dependent multiplier for infinite duration of sustained load
λ_t = time-dependent multiplier for limited load duration

The value of the multiplier λ is the same for normal-weight or lightweight concrete.

8.5 PERMISSIBLE DEFLECTIONS IN BEAMS AND ONE-WAY SLABS

Permissible deflections in a structural system are governed primarily by the amount that can be sustained by the interacting components of a structure without loss of esthetic appearance and without detriment to the deflecting member. The level of acceptability of deflection values is a function of such factors as the type of building, the use or nonuse of partitions, the presence of plastered ceilings, or the sensitivity of equipment or vehicular systems that are being supported by the floor. Since deflection limitations have to be placed at service load levels, structures designed conservatively for low concrete and steel stresses would normally have no deflection problems. Present-day structures, however, are designed by ultimate load procedures efficiently utilizing high-strength concretes and steels. More slender members resulting from such designs would have to be better controlled for serviceability deflection performance both immediate and long term.

Table 8.1 Minimum Thickness of Beams and One-Way Slabs Unless Deflections are Computed[a]

	Minimum Thickness, h			
Member[b]	**Simply Supported**	**One End Continuous**	**Both Ends Continuous**	**Cantilever**
Solid one-way slabs	$l/20$	$l/24$	$l/28$	$l/10$
Beams or ribbed one-way slabs	$l/16$	$l/18.5$	$l/21$	$l/8$

[a]Clear span length l is in inches. Values given should be used directly for members with normal-weight concrete ($w_c = 145$ pcf) and grade-60 reinforcement. For other conditions, the values should be modified as follows: (1) For structural lightweight concrete having unit weights in the range from 90 to 120 lb/ft^3, the values should be multiplied by $(1.65 - 0.005w_c)$, but not less than 1.09, where w_c is the unit weight in lb/ft^3. (2) For f_y other than 60,000 psi, the values should be multiplied by $(0.4 + f_y/100{,}000)$.

[b]Members not supporting or attached to partitions or other construction likely to be damaged by large deflections.

8.5.1 Empirical Method of Minimum Thickness Evaluation for Deflection Control

The ACI Code recommends in Table 8.1 minimum thickness for beams as a function of the span length, where no deflection computations are necessary if the member is not supporting or attached to construction likely to be damaged by large deflections. Other deflections would have to be calculated and controlled as in Table 8.2. If the total beam

Table 8.2 Minimum Permissible Ratios of Span (l) to Deflection (Δ) (l = longer span)

Type of Member	Deflection, Δ, to be Considered	$(l/\Delta)_{min}$
Flat roofs not supporting and not attached to nonstructural elements likely to be damaged by large deflections	Immediate deflection due to live load L	180[a]
Floors not supporting and not attached to nonstructural elements likely to be damaged by large deflections	Immediate deflection due to live load L	360
Roof or floor construction supporting or attached to nonstructural elements likely to be damaged by large deflections	That part of total deflection occurring after attachment of nonstructural elements: sum of long-term deflection due to all sustained loads (dead load plus any sustained portion of live load) and immediate deflection due to any additional live load[b]	480[c]
Roof or floor construction supporting or attached to nonstructural elements not likely to be damaged by large deflections		240[c]

[a]Limit not intended to safeguard against ponding. Ponding should be checked by suitable calculations of deflection, including added deflections due to ponded water, and considering long-term effects of all sustained loads, camber, construction tolerances, and reliability of provisions for drainage.

[b]Long-term deflection has to be determined, but may be reduced by the amount of deflection calculated to occur before attachment of nonstructural elements. This reduction is made on the basis of accepted engineering data relating to time–deflection characteristics of members similar to those being considered.

[c]Ratio limit may be lower if adequate measures are taken to prevent damage to supported or attached elements, but should not be lower than tolerance of nonstructural elements.

thickness is less than required by the table, the designer should verify the deflection serviceability performance of the beam through detailed computations of the immediate and long-term deflections.

8.5.2 Permissible Limits of Calculated Deflection

The ACI Code requires that the calculated deflection for a beam or one-way slab has to satisfy the serviceability requirement of minimum permissible deflection for the various structural conditions listed in Table 8.2 of Section 8.5.1 if Table 8.1 is *not* used. However, long-term effects cause measurable increases in deflection with time and result sometimes in excessive overstress in the steel and concrete. Hence it is always advisable to calculate the total time-dependent deflection Δ_{LT} in Eq. 8.10 and design the beam size based on the permissible span/deflection ratios of Table 8.2.

8.6 COMPUTATION OF DEFLECTIONS

Deflection of structural members is a function of the span length, support, or end conditions, such as simple support or restraint due to continuity, the type of loading, such as concentrated or distributed load, and the flexural stiffness EI of the member.

The general expression for the maximum deflection Δ_{max} in an elastic member can be expressed from basic principles of mechanics as

$$\Delta_{max} = K \frac{W l_n^3}{48\, E I_c} \tag{8.11}$$

where W = total load on the span
l_n = clear span length
E = modulus of concrete
I_c = moment of inertia of the section
K = a factor depending on the degree of fixity of the support

Equation 8.11 can also be written in terms of moment such that the deflection at any point in a beam is

$$\Delta = k \frac{M L^2}{E_c I_e} \tag{8.12}$$

where k = a factor depending on support fixity and load conditions
M = moment acting on the section
I_e = effective moment of inertia

Table 8.3 gives the maximum elastic deflection values in terms of the gravity load for typical beams loaded with uniform or concentrated load.

8.6.1 Example 8.3: Deflection Behavior of a Uniformly Loaded Simple Span Beam

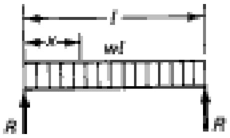
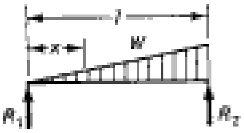
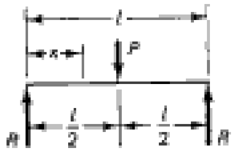
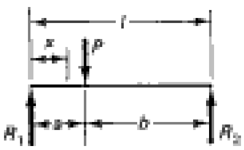
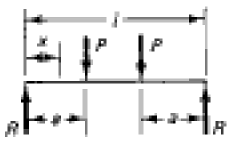
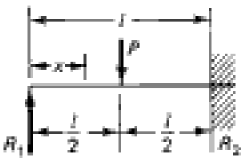
A simply supported uniformly loaded beam has a clear span l_n = 27 ft (8.23 m), a width b = 10 in. (254 mm), and a total depth h = 16 in. (406 mm), d = 13.0 in. (330 mm), and A_s = 1.32 in.^{2} (852 mm^2). It is subjected to a service dead-load moment M_D = 215,000 in.-lb (24.3 kN-m), and a service live-load moment M_L = 250,000 in.-lb (28.3 kN-m). Determine if the beam satisfies the various deflection criteria for short- and long-term loading. Assume that 60% of the live load is continuously applied for 24 months. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi (34.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$

where w = unit weight of reinforced concrete = 150 lb/ft^3

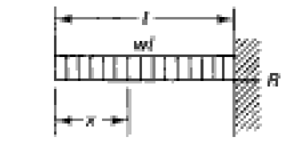
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

Table 8.3 Maximum Deflection Expressions for Most Common Load and Support Conditions

	M_x Δ_{max} (at center)	$= \frac{wx}{2}(l-x)$ $= \frac{5wl^4}{384EI}$
	$\Delta_{max}\left(\text{at } x = l\sqrt{1-\sqrt{\frac{8}{15}}} = 0.5193l\right)$ Δx	$= 0.01304\,\frac{Wl^3}{EI}$ $= \frac{Wx}{180EI\,l^2}(3x^4 - 10l^2x^2 + 7l^4)$
	Δ_{max} (at point of load) $\Delta x\left(\text{when } x < \frac{l}{2}\right)$	$= \frac{Pl^3}{48EI}$ $= \frac{Px}{48EI}(3l^2 - 4x^2)$
	$\Delta_{max}\left(\text{at } x = \sqrt{\frac{a(a+2b)}{3}} \text{ when } a > b\right)$ Δa (at point of load) Δx (when $x < a$)	$= \frac{Pab(a+2b)\sqrt{3a(a+2b)}}{27EI\,l}$ $= \frac{Pa^2b^2}{3EI\,l}$ $= \frac{Pbx}{6EI\,l}(l^2 - b^2 - x^2)$
	Δ_{max} (at center) Δx (when $x < a$) Δx (when $x > a$ and $< (l-a)$)	$= \frac{Pa}{24EI}(3l^2 - 4a^2)$ $= \frac{Px}{6EI}(3la - 3a^2 - x^2)$ $= \frac{Pa}{6EI}(3lx - 3x^2 - a^2)$
	$\Delta_{max}\left(\text{at } x = l\sqrt{\frac{1}{5}} = 0.4472l\right)$ Δx (at point of load) $\Delta x\left(\text{when } x < \frac{l}{2}\right)$ $\Delta x\left(\text{when } x > \frac{l}{2}\right)$	$= \frac{Pl^3}{48EI\sqrt{5}} = 0.009317\,\frac{Pl^3}{EI}$ $= \frac{7Pl^3}{768EI}$ $= \frac{Px}{96EI}(3l^2 - 5x^2)$ $= \frac{P}{96EI}(x-l)^2(11x - 2l)$

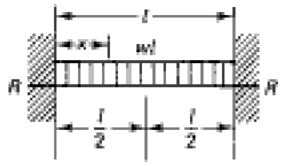
(*cont.*)

Table 8.3 *Continued*



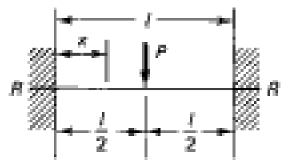
Δ_{max} (at free end) $= \dfrac{wl^4}{8EI}$

$\Delta x = \dfrac{w}{24EI}(x^4 - 4l^3x + 3l^4)$



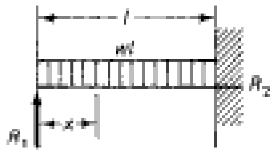
Δ_{max} (at center) $= \dfrac{wl^4}{384EI}$

$\Delta x = \dfrac{wx^2}{24EI}(l - x)^2$



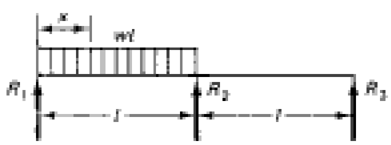
Δ_{max} (at center) $= \dfrac{Pl^3}{192EI}$

$\Delta x \left(\text{when } x < \dfrac{l}{2}\right) = \dfrac{Px^2}{48EI}(3l - 4x)$

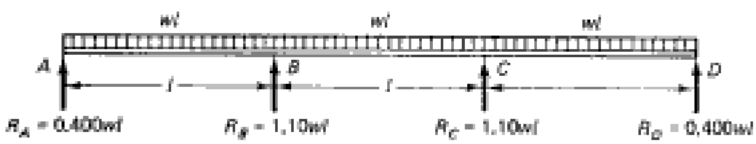


$\Delta_{max}\left(\text{at } x = \dfrac{l}{16}(1 + \sqrt{33}) = 0.4215l\right) = \dfrac{wl^4}{185EI}$

$\Delta x = \dfrac{wx}{48EI}(l^3 - 3lx^2 + 2x^3)$

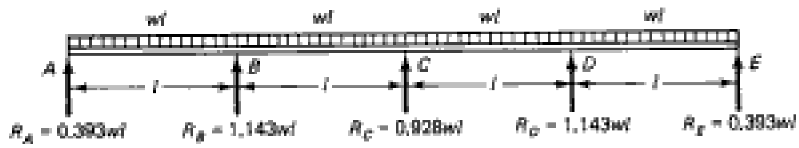


Δ_{max} ($0.472l$ from R_1) $= \dfrac{0.0092wl^4}{EI}$



Δ_{max} ($0.446l$ from A or D) $= \dfrac{0.0069wl^4}{EI}$

Table 8.3 *Continued*



Δ_{max} (0.440l from A or E) $= \dfrac{0.0065wl^4}{EI}$

Solution:

$$E_c = 33w^{1.5}\sqrt{5000} = 4.29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (29{,}700 \text{ MPa})$$

$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (200{,}000 \text{ MPa})$$

$$\text{modular ratio } n = \frac{E_s}{E_c} = \frac{29.0 \times 10^6}{4.29 \times 10^6} = 6.76$$

$$f_r = 7.5\sqrt{f'_c} = 7.5\sqrt{5000} = 530 \text{ psi } (3.66 \text{ MPa})$$

Minimum required depth

From Table 8.1,

$$h_{min} = \frac{l_n}{16} = \frac{27.0 \times 12}{16} = 20 \text{ in. } (508 \text{ mm}) > \text{ actual } h = 16.0 \text{ in.}$$

Hence deflection calculations have to be made.

Effective moment of inertia I_e

$$I_g = \frac{bh^3}{12} = \frac{10(16)^3}{12} = 3410 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$y_t = \frac{16.0}{2} = 8.0 \text{ in.}$$

$$M_{cr} = \frac{f_r I_g}{y_t} = \frac{530 \times 3410}{8.0} = 225{,}900 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Depth of neutral axis c

$$d = 16.0 - 3.0 = 13.0 \text{ in.} \qquad A_s = 1.32 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\frac{10c^2}{2} = nA_s(d - c)$$

or $5c^2 = 6.76 \times 1.32(13.0 - c)$, to get $c = 4.03$ in.

$$I_{cr} = \frac{10c^3}{3} + 6.76 \times 1.32(13.0 - c)^2 = \frac{10(4.03)^3}{3} + 8.923(13.0 - 4.03)^2$$
$$= 940 \text{ in.}^4$$

Dead load

$$\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} = \frac{225{,}900}{215{,}000} = 1.05 > 1.0$$

Use $M_{cr} = M_a$ and $I_e = I_g$ since the dead-load moment is smaller than the cracking moment (the beam will not crack at the dead-load level).

Dead load + 60% live load

$$\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} = \frac{225{,}900}{215{,}000 + 0.6 \times 250{,}000} = 0.62$$

Dead load + live load

$$\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} = \frac{225{,}900}{215{,}000 + 250{,}000} = 0.49$$

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3\right] I_{cr}$$

Dead load

$$I_e = 3410 \text{ in.}^4$$

Dead load + 0.6 live load

$$I_e = 0.24 \times 3410 + 0.76 \times 940 = 1530 \text{ in.}^4$$

Dead load + live load

$$I_e = 0.12 \times 3410 + 0.88 \times 940 = 1230 \text{ in.}^4$$

Short-term deflection

$$\Delta = \frac{5wl^4}{384EI} = \frac{5Ml_n^2}{48EI} = \frac{5(27.0 \times 12)^2 M}{48 \times 4.29 \times 10^6 I} = 0.0025\,\frac{M}{I} \text{ in.}$$

Initial live-load deflection

$$\Delta_L = \frac{0.0025(215{,}000 + 250{,}000)}{1230} - \frac{0.0025(215{,}000)}{3410}$$

$$= 0.943 - 0.158 \simeq 0.8 \text{ in.}$$

Initial dead-load deflection

$$\Delta_D = \frac{0.0025 \times 215{,}000}{3410} = 0.16 \text{ in.}$$

Initial 60% sustained live-load deflection

$$\Delta_{LS} = 0.0025\left(\frac{215{,}000 + 250{,}000 \times 0.6}{1530} - \frac{215{,}000}{3410}\right)$$

$$= 0.60 - 0.16 = 0.44 \text{ in.}$$

Long-term deflection

From Eq. 8.10,

$$\Delta_{LT} = \Delta_L + \lambda_\infty \Delta_D + \lambda_t \Delta_{LS}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{T}{1 + 50\rho'}, \qquad \text{where } \rho' = 0 \text{ for singly reinforced beam}$$

$$T \text{ for 5 years or more} = 2.0 \qquad \lambda_\infty = \frac{2.0}{1 + 0} = 2.0$$

$$T \text{ for 24 months} = 1.65 \qquad \lambda_t = \frac{1.65}{1} = 1.65$$

$$\Delta_{LT} = 0.8 + 2.0 \times 0.16 + 1.65 \times 0.44 = 1.9 \text{ in.}$$

Deflection requirements (Table 8.2)

$$\frac{l_n}{180} = \frac{27 \times 12}{180} = 1.80 \text{ in.} > \Delta_L = 0.80$$

$$\frac{l_n}{360} = 0.90 \text{ in.} > \Delta_L = 0.80$$

$$\frac{l_n}{480} = 0.68 \text{ in.} < \Delta_{LT} = 1.90$$

$$\frac{l_n}{240} = 1.35 \text{ in.} < \Delta_{LT} = 1.90$$

Hence the use of this beam is limited to floors or roofs not supporting or attached to nonstructural elements such as partitions.

8.7 DEFLECTION OF CONTINUOUS BEAMS

As discussed in Chapter 5, a continuous reinforced concrete beam would have a flanged section at midspan, and sometimes a doubly reinforced section at the support if the reinforcement at the bottom fibers of the support section are adequately tied and anchored. Consequently, it is necessary to be able to find the effective moment of inertia I_e of T-sections and of doubly reinforced sections. A simple procedure is to use the weighted-average section properties as required by previous ACI code provisions:

1. Beams with both ends continuous:

$$\text{average } I_e = 0.70 I_m + 0.15(I_{e1} + I_{e2}) \tag{8.13}$$

2. Beams with one end continuous

$$\text{average } I_e = 0.85 I_m + 0.15(I_{ec}) \tag{8.14}$$

where I_m = midspan section I_e
I_{e1}, I_{e2} = I_e for the respective beam ends
I_{ec} = I_e of continuous end

It is seen from Eqs. 8.13 and 8.14 that the controlling moment of inertia for deflection evaluation is the midspan-section effective moment of inertia. Present code provisions permit using I_e of the midspan section as an approximation.

Moment envelopes have to be used to calculate the positive and negative values of I_e. If the continuous beam is subjected to a single heavy concentrated load, only the midspan effective moment of inertia I_e is to be used.

8.7.1 Deflection of T Beams

The most common nonrectangular sections are the flanged T and L beams. The same principles used for deflection computations of rectangular sections can be applied to the nonrectangular ones. The contribution of the compressive resisting force can be obtained using the appropriate concrete area, as explained below.

As in the case of rectangular beams, the contribution of steel to the moment of inertia of the uncracked section is disregarded. The cross section of the beam in Figure 8.8a is divided into two areas for the purpose of calculating I_g.

$$\text{depth of center of gravity } \bar{y} = \frac{A_1 y_1 + A_2 y_2}{A_1 + A_2} \tag{8.15a}$$

$$y_t = h - \bar{y} \tag{8.15b}$$

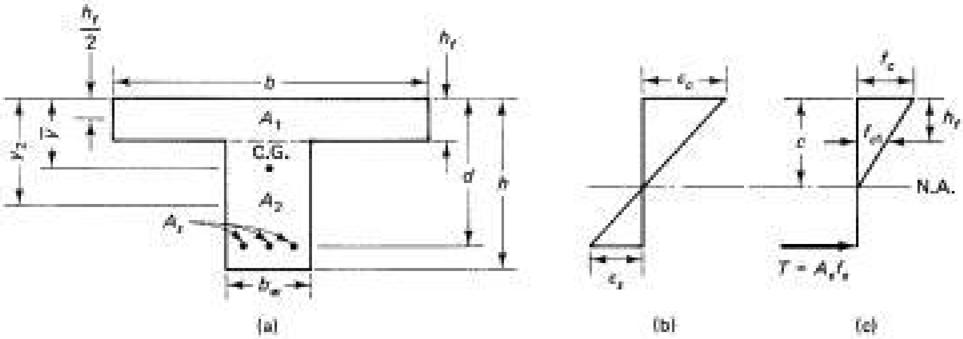


Figure 8.8 Stress and strain distribution across depth of flanged sections: (a) geometry; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

The gross moment of inertia, I_g, for the two rectangles is

$$I_g = \frac{bh_f^3}{12} + bh_f\left(\bar{y} - \frac{h_f}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{b_w(h - h_f)^3}{12} + b_w(h - h_f)\left(y_t - \frac{h - h_f}{2}\right)^2 \tag{8.16}$$

For the cracked section, the depth c of the neutral axis is calculated from the horizontal force equilibrium, as in Figure 8.8b and c. If the depth of neutral axis falls within the flange thickness, the beam behaves as a rectangular section having a width b of the flange and an effective depth d.

When the depth c of neutral axis falls below the flange thickness h_f, the appropriate areas of concrete in the flange and the web of the section and corresponding stresses are applied in the calculation of the compression force. The average stress in the flange area bh_f would be $(f_c + f_{c1})/2$, where f_{c1} is the stress at the bottom of the flange. Using similar triangles yields

$$f_{c1} = f_c\frac{c - h_f}{c} \tag{8.17}$$

The average stress in compression for the web area, $b_w(c - h_f)$, would be $f_{c1}/2$ based on the triangular distribution of stress. Hence the force equilibrium equation can be written as

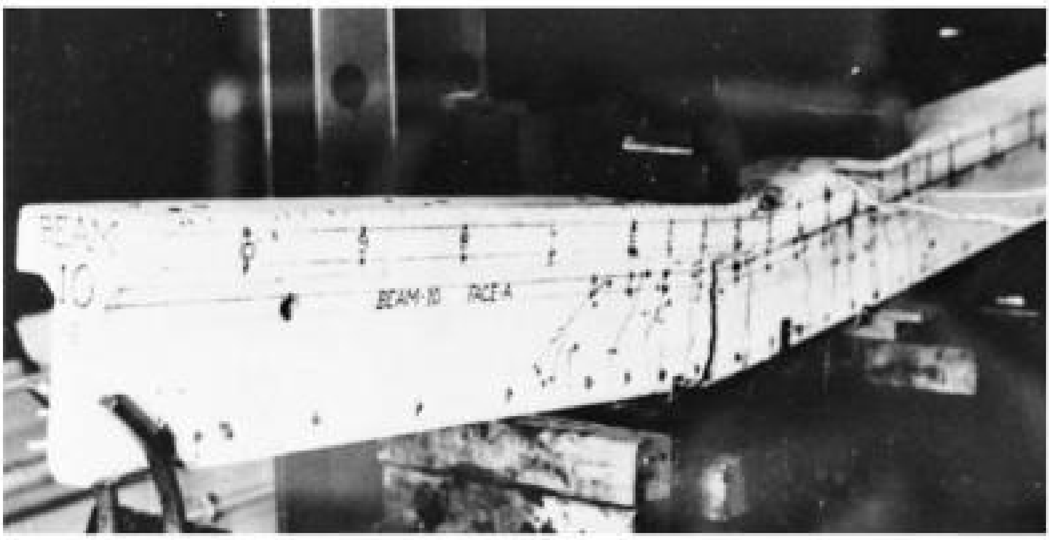


Photo 8.4 Deflected simply supported beam at failure. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

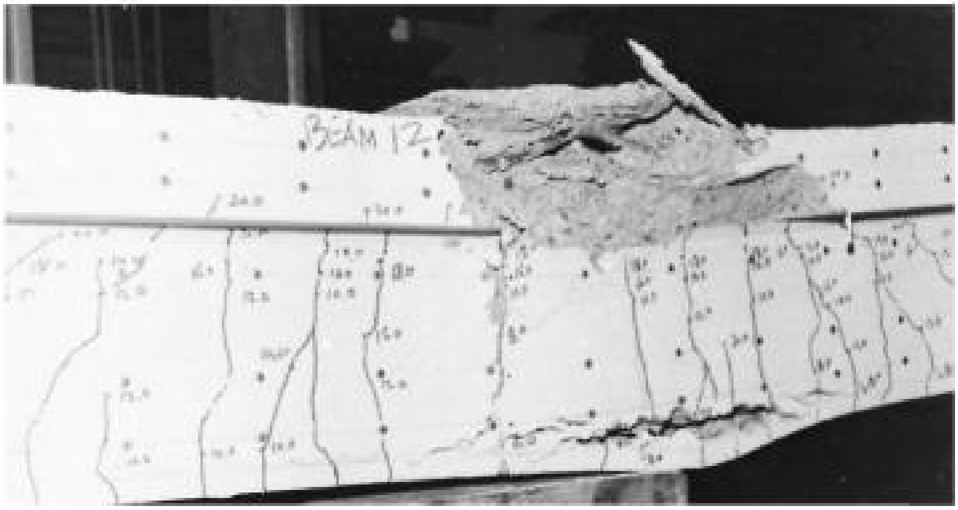


Photo 8.5 Flexural stabilized cracks at failure. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

$$A_s f_s = bh_f \frac{f_c + f_{c1}}{2} + b_w(c - h_f)\frac{f_{c1}}{2} \tag{8.18a}$$

Using Eqs. 8.17 and 8.18a,

$$2A_s E_s \epsilon_s = bh_f E_c \epsilon_c \left(1 + \frac{c - h_f}{c}\right) + b_w(c - h_f)E_c \epsilon_c \frac{c - h_f}{c} \tag{8.18b}$$

Expressing ϵ_s in terms of ϵ_c and using modular ratio n gives us

$$2nA_s \frac{d - c}{c} = bh_f \frac{2c - h_f}{c} + b_w(c - h_f)\frac{c - h_f}{c} \tag{8.18c}$$

or

$$b_w(c - h_f)^2 - 2nA_s(d - c) + bh_f(2c - h_f) = 0 \tag{8.18d}$$

The quadratic equation 8.18d has to be solved to obtain c. Once c is known, the moment of inertia I_{cr} of the cracked section can be calculated using the following expression:

$$I_{cr} = \frac{1}{3} b_w(c - h_f)^3 + \frac{1}{12} bh_f^3 + bh_f\left(c - \frac{h_f}{2}\right)^2 + nA_s(d - c)^2 \tag{8.19}$$

The effective moment of inertia I_e and deflection Δ can be computed as in the case of rectangular sections using Eqs. 8.8a and 8.8b. In the case of L sections, expressions for I_{cr} such as those of Eq. 8.19 can be developed in a similar manner as for T sections.

8.7.2 Deflection of Beams with Compression Steel

Beams with compression reinforcement as in Figure 8.9 can be treated similarly to singly reinforced sections except that the contribution of the compression reinforcement to the stiffness of the beam should be considered because of its high stiffening effect. For the moment of inertia of the uncracked section, I_g can be used with sufficient accuracy. The contribution of the compression steel A'_s to the cracked moment of inertia I_{cr} has to be included. Also, Eq. 8.6c has to be modified for calculating the neutral-axis depth c of the beam. If the compressive force $A'_s f'_s$ of the steel is added to the compressive force of the concrete, Eq. 8.4a as seen from Figure 8.8 becomes

$$\ldots \frac{f_c}{2} \ldots \frac{c - d'}{c} + A'_s f'_s \tag{8.20a}$$

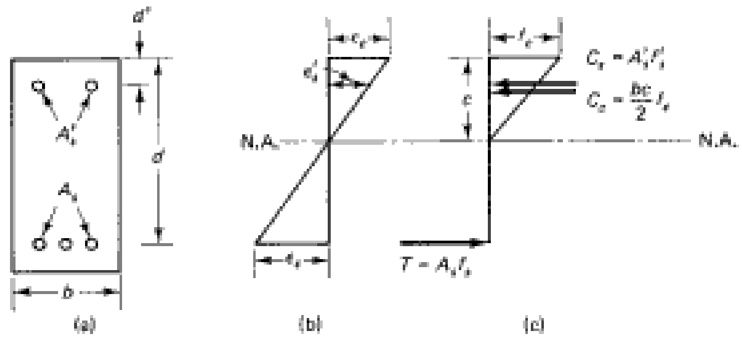


Figure 8.9 Stress and strain distribution at service load in doubly reinforced beam: (a) geometry; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

where d' is the effective cover of compression reinforcement.

As in the case of singly reinforced concrete beams (Eqs. 8.4 to 8.6), Eq. 8.20a can be written in the form

$$\frac{bc^2}{2} + [nA_s + (n-1)A'_s]c - nA_s d - (n-1)A'_s d' = 0 \tag{8.20b}$$

The moment of inertia I_{cr} of the cracked section can therefore be expressed as

$$I_{cr} = \frac{bc^3}{3} + nA_s(d-c)^2 + (n-1)A'_s(c-d')^2 \tag{8.21}$$

The procedure for calculating the effective moment of inertia I_e, and the deflection Δ is the same as in the case of singly reinforced beams.

8.7.3 Bending Moment Deflections in Continuous Beams

The flexural moment envelope has to be constructed for the total continuous beam span in order to evaluate the effective moment of inertia I_e. The usual methods of structural analysis are followed in finding the continuity moments at supports and the positive midspan moments for the various spans. Once these moments are determined, the immediate central postelastic (i.e., postcracking) deflection can be evaluated.

As in the case of simply supported beams, the deflection Δ can be written either in terms of load as in Eq. 8.11 or in terms of moment as in Eq. 8.12. If an interior span AB subjected to a uniform load is isolated as in Figure 8.10, the midspan deflection Δc is

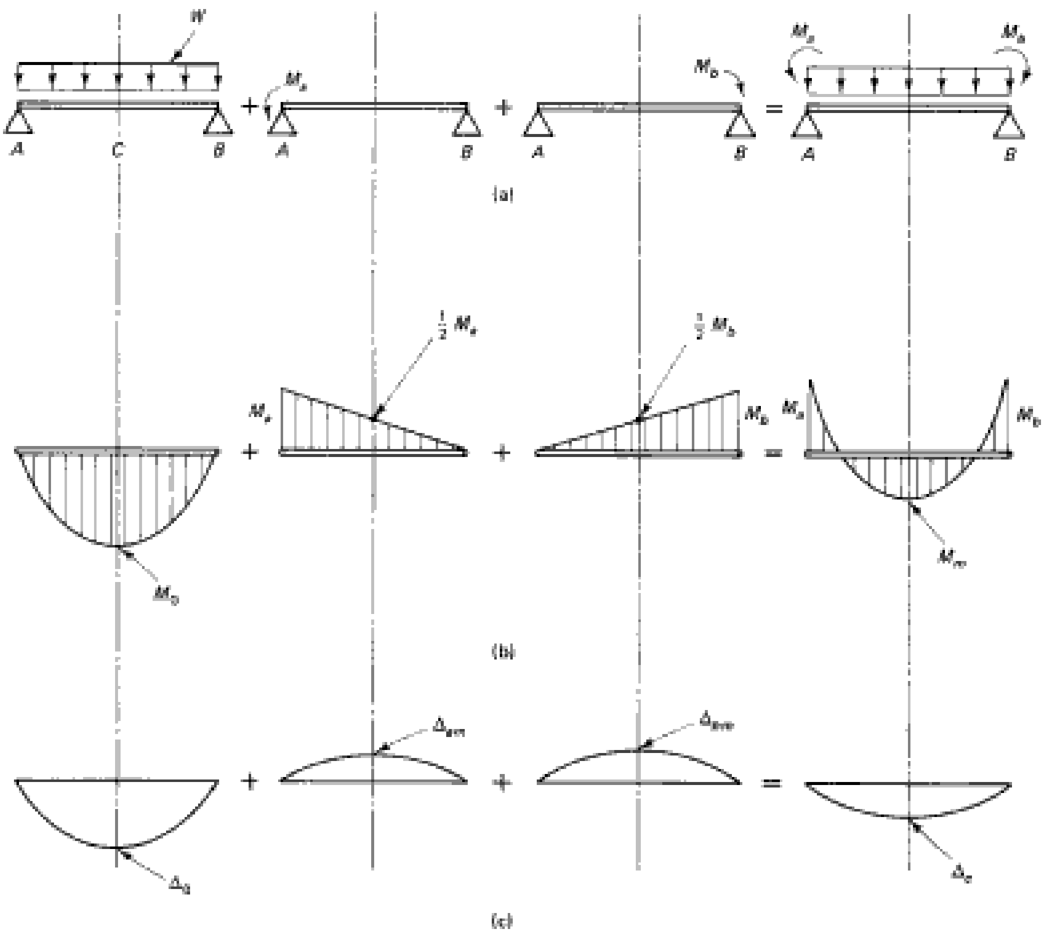
$$\Delta_c = \frac{5l^2}{48EI}[M_m + 0.1(M_a + M_b)] \tag{8.22}$$

where M_a, M_b = negative service load bending moments
M_0 = simple span service load static moment
M_m = midspan moment

Use the correct algebraic sign for the moments in Eq. 8.22, with M_a and M_b due to the *same* loading generally negative. As the exterior span is subjected to the largest positive and negative moments, deflection calculations control for this span in most cases.

8.7.4 Example 8.4: Deflection of a Continuous Four-span Beam

A reinforced concrete beam supporting a 4-in. (102-mm) slab is continuous over four equal spans l = 36 ft (11 m) as shown in Figure 8.11. It is subjected to a uniformly distributed load w_D = 700 lb/ft (10.2 kN/m) including its self-weight and a service live load w_L = 1200 lb/ft



$$\Delta_c = 5M_0 l^2/(48EI) + 3M_a l^2/(48EI) + 3M_b l^2/(48EI)$$

$$= \frac{5l^2}{48EI}\,[M_m + 0.1\,(M_a + M_b)]$$ where M_m is positive and M_a and M_b generally negative

Figure 8.10 Bending moment deflections in continuous beams: (a) loads; (b) moments; (c) deflections, using superposition.

(17.52 kN/m). The beam has the dimensions $b = 14$ in. (356 mm), $d = 18.25$ in. (464 mm) at midspan, and a total thickness $h = 21.0$ in. (533 mm). The first interior span is reinforced with four No. 9 bars at midspan (28.6 mm diameter) at the bottom fibers and six No. 9 bars at the top fibers of the support section.

Calculate the maximum deflection of the continuous beam and determine what code deflection criteria it meets and what limitations, if any, have to be placed on its use. Given:

$f'_c = 4000$ psi (27.8 MPa), normal-weight concrete

$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

50% of the live load is sustained 36 months on the structure

Solution:

Minimum depth requirement

From Table 8.1,

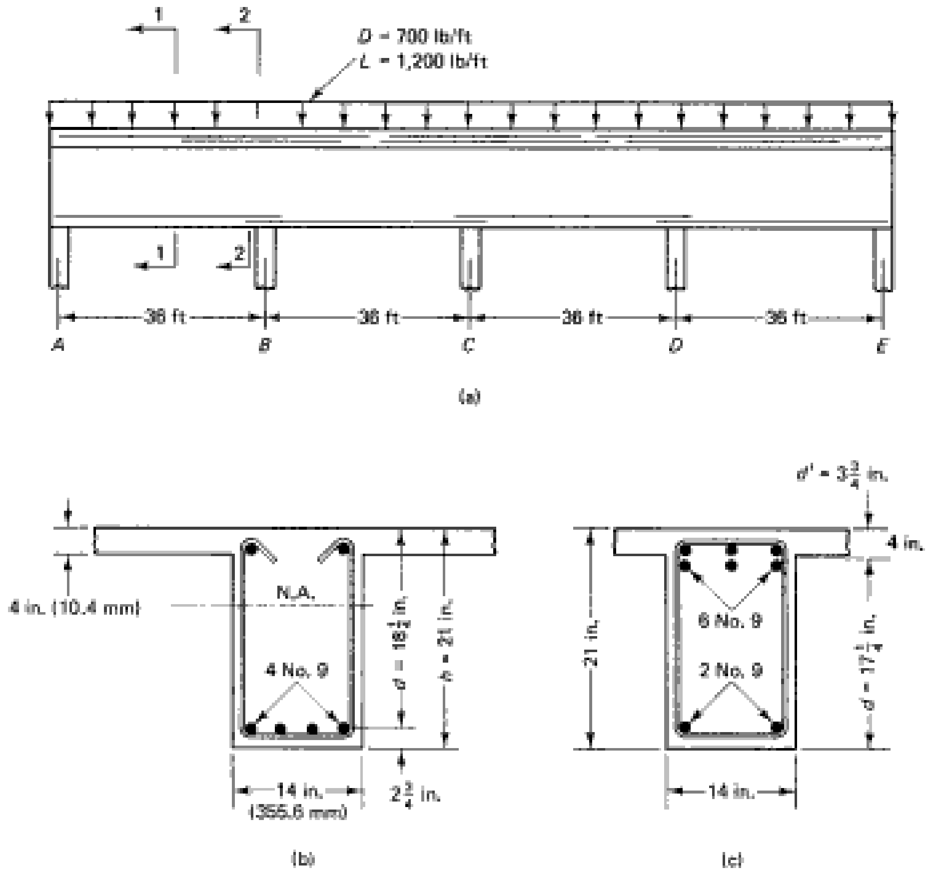


Figure 8.11 Details of continuous beam in Ex. 8.4: (a) beam elevation; (b) section 1–1; (c) section 2–2.

$$\text{minimum } h = \frac{l}{18.5} = \frac{36.0 \times 12}{18.5} = 23.35 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{actual } h = 21.0 \text{ in.} < 23.35 \text{ in.}$$

Deflection calculations have to be made.

Material properties and bending moment envelope

$$E_c = 57{,}000\sqrt{f'_c} = 57{,}000\sqrt{4000} = 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ psi (24,822 MPa)}$$

$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi (200,000 MPa)}$$

$$\text{modular ratio } n = \frac{E_s}{E_c} = \frac{29 \times 10^6}{3.6 \times 10^6} = 8.1$$

$$\text{modulus of rupture } f_r = 7.5\sqrt{f'_c} = 7.5\sqrt{4000} = 474.3 \text{ psi (3.27 MPa)}$$

From bending moment analysis, the bending moment diagram for the beam is shown in Figure 8.12. For deflection, the largest moments are in end spans AB and ED.

$$\text{positive moment} = 0.0772wl^2$$

$$+M_D = 0.0772 \times 700(36.0)^2 \times 12 = 840{,}430 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$+M_L = 0.0772 \times 1200(36.0)^2 \times 12 = 1{,}440{,}737 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$+(M_D + M_L) = 0.0772 \times 1900(36.0)^2 \times 12 = 2{,}281{,}167 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{negative moment} = 0.1071wl^2$$

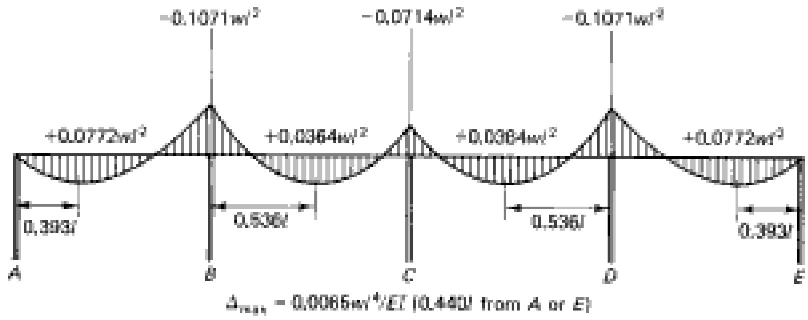


Figure 8.12 Bending moment envelope.

$$-M_D = 0.1071 \times 700(36.0)^2 \times 12 = 1{,}165{,}933 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$-M_L = 0.1071 \times 1200(36.0)^2 \times 12 = 1{,}998{,}743 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$-(M_D + M_L) = 0.1071 \times 1900(36.0)^2 \times 12 = 3{,}164{,}676 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Effective moment of inertia I_e

Figure 8.13 shows the theoretical midspan and support cross-sections to be used for calculations of the gross moment of inertia I_g.

1. Midspan section

width of T-beam flange $= b_w + 16h_f = 14.0 + 16 \times 4.0 = 78$ in. (1981 mm)

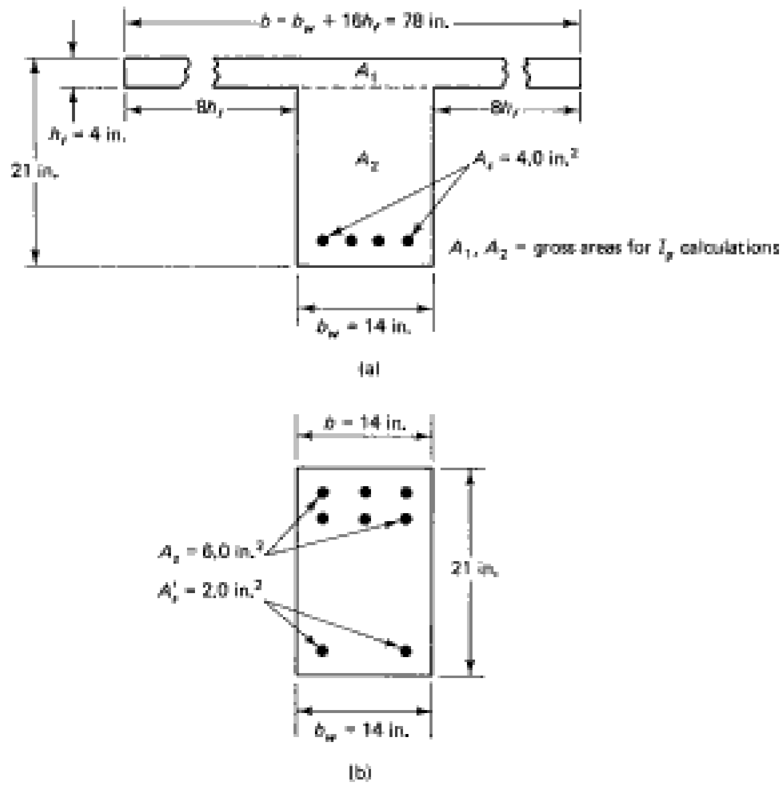


Figure 8.13 Gross moment of inertia I_g cross sections in Ex. 8.4: (a) midspan section; (b) support section.

Depth from compression flange to the elastic centroid from Eq. 8.15a:

$$\bar{y} = \frac{A_1 y_1 + A_2 y_2}{A_1 + A_2}$$

$$= \frac{78(4 \times 2) + 14 \times (21 - 4) \times 12.5}{78 \times 4 + 14 \times 17} = 6.54 \text{ in.}$$

$$y_t = h - \bar{y} = 21.0 - 6.54 = 14.46 \text{ in}$$

From Eq. 8.16,

$$I_g = \frac{78(4)^3}{12} + 78 \times 4\left(6.54 - \frac{4}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{14(21-4)^3}{12} + 14(21-4)\left(14.46 - \frac{21-4}{2}\right)^2$$

$$= 21{,}033 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$M_{cr} = \frac{f_r I_g}{y_t} = \frac{474.3 \times 21{,}033}{14.46} = 689{,}900 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Depth of neutral axis

$$A_s = \text{four No. 9 bars} = 4.0 \text{ in.}^2$$

From Eq. 8.18d,

$$14(c - 4.0)^2 - 2 \times 8.1 \times 4.0(18.25 - c) + 78 \times 4(2c - 4.0) = 0$$

or $c^2 + 41.17c - 157.0 = 0$ to give $c = 3.5$ in. Hence the neutral axis is inside the flange and the section is analyzed as a rectangular section.

From Eq. 8.6c, for rectangular sections

$$\frac{78c^2}{2} + 8.1 \times 4 \times c - 8.1 \times 4 \times 18.25 = 0$$

Therefore, $c = 3.5$ in.

$$I_{cr} = \frac{78.0(3.5)^3}{3} + 8.1 \times 4(18.25 - 3.5)^2 = 8163.8 \text{ in.}^4$$

Ratio M_{cr}/M_a

$$D \text{ ratio} = \frac{689{,}900}{840{,}430} = 0.821$$

$$D + 50\%\ L \text{ ratio} = \frac{689{,}900}{840{,}430 + 0.5 \times 1{,}440{,}737} = 0.442$$

$$D + L \text{ ratio} = \frac{689{,}900}{2{,}281{,}167} = 0.302$$

Effective moment of inertia for midspan section

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3\right] I_{cr}$$

$$I_e \text{ for dead load} = 0.5534 \times 21{,}033 + 0.4466 \times 8163.8 = 15{,}286 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$I_e \text{ for } D + 0.5L = 0.0864 \times 21{,}033 + 0.9136 \times 8163.8 = 9276 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$I_e \text{ for } D + L = 0.0275 \times 21{,}033 + 0.9725 \times 8163.8 = 8518 \text{ in.}^4$$

2. Support section

$$I_g = \frac{bh^3}{12} = \frac{14(21)^3}{12} = 10{,}804.5 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$y_t = \frac{21.0}{2} = 10.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$M_{cr} = \frac{f_r I_g}{y_t} = \frac{474.3 \times 10{,}804.5}{10.5} = 488{,}055 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Depth of neutral axis

$$A_s = \text{six No. 9} = 6.0 \text{ in.}^2 \ (3870 \text{ mm}^2)$$
$$A'_s = \text{two No. 9} = 2.0 \text{ in.}^2 \ (1290 \text{ mm}^2)$$
$$d = 21.0 - 3.75 = 17.25 \text{ in.} \ (438.2 \text{ mm})$$

From Eq. 8.20b,

$$\frac{14c^2}{2} + [8.1 \times 6.0 + (8.1 - 1)2.0]c - 8.1 \times 6.0 \times 17.25 - (8.1 - 1) \times 2.0 \times 3.75 = 0$$

or $c^2 + 8.97c - 125.34 = 0$, to give $c = 7.58$ in.

From Eq. 8.21, the cracking moment of inertia is

$$I_{cr} = \frac{bc^3}{3} + nA_s(d - c)^2 + (n - 1)A'_s(c - d')^2$$
$$= \frac{14(7.58)^3}{3} + 8.1 \times 6.0(17.25 - 7.58)^2 + (8.1 - 1)2.0(7.58 - 3.75)^2$$
$$= 6908.2 \text{ in.}^4$$

Ratio M_{cr}/M_a

$$D \text{ ratio} = \frac{488{,}055}{1{,}165{,}933} = 0.42$$

$$D + 50\% \ L \text{ ratio} = \frac{488{,}055}{1{,}165{,}933 + 0.5 \times 1{,}998{,}743} = 0.225$$

$$D + L = \frac{488{,}055}{3{,}164{,}676} = 0.15$$

Effective moment of inertia for support section

$$I_e \text{ for dead load} = 0.0741 \times 10{,}804.5 + 0.9259 \times 6908.2 = 7196.9 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$I_e \text{ for } D + 0.5L = 0.0122 \times 10{,}804.5 + 0.9878 \times 6908.2 = 6955.7 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$I_e \text{ for } D + L = 0.0034 \times 10{,}845.5 + 0.9966 \times 6908.2 \text{ in.}^4 = 6921.6 \text{ in.}^4$$

Average effective I_e for continuous span

From Eq. 8.14,

$$\text{average } I_e = 0.85 I_m + 0.15 I_{ec}$$

$$\text{dead load: } I_e = 0.85 \times 15{,}286 + 0.15 \times 7196.9 = 14{,}073 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$D + 0.5L\text{: } I_e = 0.85 \times 9276 + 0.15 \times 6955.7 = 8928 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$D + L\text{: } I_e = 0.85 \times 8518 + 0.15 \times 6921.6 = 8278 \text{ in.}^4$$

Short-term deflection

From Table 8.3, the maximum deflection for span AB or DE is

$$\Delta = \frac{0.0065wl^4}{EI}$$

$$I \text{ assumed} = I_e \text{ for all practical purposes}$$

$$\Delta = \frac{0.0065(36.0 \times 12)^4}{3.6 \times 10^6} \times \frac{w}{I_e} \times \frac{1}{12} = 5.240 \frac{w}{I_e} \text{ in.}$$

(A more accurate result can be obtained from Eq. 8.22.)

Initial live-load deflection

$$\Delta_L = \Delta_{i,L+D} - \Delta_{i,D}$$

$$\Delta_L = \frac{5.240(1900)}{8278} - \frac{5.240(700)}{14{,}073} = 1.20 - 0.26 = 0.94 \text{ in.}$$

Initial dead-load deflection

$$\Delta_D = \frac{5.240(700)}{14{,}073} = 0.26 \text{ in.}$$

Initial 50% sustained live-load deflection

$$\Delta_{LS} = \frac{5.240(1300)}{8928} - \frac{5.240(700)}{14{,}073} = 0.76 - 0.26 = 0.50 \text{ in.}$$

Long-term deflection

$$\rho' = \frac{A'_s}{bd} = 0 \qquad \text{at midspan in this case}$$

From Eq. 8.9,

$$\text{multiplier } \lambda = \frac{T}{1 + 50\rho'}$$

From Figure 8.6,

$$T = 1.75 \text{ for 36-month sustained load}$$
$$T = 2.0 \text{ for 5-year loading}$$

Therefore,

$$\lambda_\infty = 2.0 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_t = 1.75$$

From Eq. 8.10, the total sustained load deflection is

$$\Delta_{LT} = \Delta_L + \lambda_\infty \Delta_D + \lambda_t \Delta_{LS}$$

or

$$\Delta_{LT} = 0.94 + 2.0 \times 0.26 + 1.75 \times 0.50 = 2.35 \text{ in. (60 mm)}$$

Deflection requirements (Table 8.2)

$$\frac{l}{180} = \frac{36 \times 12}{180} = 2.4 \text{ in.} > \Delta_L$$

$$\frac{l}{360} = 1.2 \text{ in.} > \Delta_L$$

$$\frac{l}{480} = 0.9 \text{ in.} < \Delta_{LT}$$

$$\frac{l}{240} = 1.8 \text{ in.} < \Delta_{LT}$$

Hence the continuous beam is limited to floors or roofs not supporting or attached to nonstructural elements such as partitions.

8.8 OPERATIONAL DEFLECTION CALCULATION PROCEDURE AND FLOWCHART

Deflection of structures affects their esthetic appearance as well as their long-term serviceability. The following step-by-step procedure should be followed after the structural member is designed for flexure.

1. Compare the total design depth of the member with the minimum allowable value obtained from Table 8.1. If it is less than the allowable, proceed to perform a detailed calculation of short- and long-term deflection. It is, however, always advisable to perform the detailed calculations regardless of the comparison with Table 8.1.
2. The detailed calculations should establish as a first step:
   (a) The gross moment of inertia I_g
   (b) The cracking moment M_{cr}, which is a function of the modulus of rupture of concrete
3. Calculate the depth c of the neutral axis of the *transformed* section. Find the cracking moment of inertia I_{cr}.
4. Find the effective moment of inertia I_e as follows:

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3\right] I_{cr} \leq I_g$$

or

$$I_e = I_{cr} + \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 (I_g - I_{cr}) \leq I_g$$

The effective I_e has to be calculated for the following service load-level combinations:
   (a) Dead load (D)
   (b) Dead load + sustained portion of live load ($D + \alpha L$, where α is less than 1.0)
   (c) Dead load + live load ($D + L$)
5. Calculate the immediate deflection based on I_e of the three combinations in step 4, using the elastic deflection expression in Table 8.3. If the beam is continuous over more than two supports, find the average I_e as follows:

$$\text{Both ends continuous: average } I_e = 0.70 I_m + 0.15(I_{e1} + I_{e2})$$

$$\text{One end continuous: average } I_e = 0.85 I_m + 0.15 I_{ec}$$

6. Calculate the long-term deflection, finding first the time-dependent multiplier $\lambda = T/(1 + 50\rho')$ from values in Figure 8.6. The total long-term deflection is

$$\Delta_{LT} = \Delta_L = \lambda_\infty \Delta_D + \lambda_t \Delta_{LS}$$

7. If Δ_{LT} < maximum permissible Δ in Table 8.2, limit the use of the structure to particular loading types or conditions, or enlarge the section. Figure 8.14 gives a flowchart of the operational sequence of deflection control checks that the designer engineer should use when deflection computations are necessary.

8.9 DEFLECTION CONTROL IN ONE-WAY SLABS

One-way slabs can be treated as rectangular beams of 12-in. (304.8-mm) width. Because floor loads are specified as load intensity per unit area, such intensity on a one-way slab over a 1-ft width becomes pounds per linear foot. Reinforcement is chosen in terms of bar spacing instead of number of bars, and the area of steel for a 12-in. width of slab can be easily calculated for the total number of bars in a 12-in.-wide strip.

8.9.1 Example 8.5: Deflection Calculations for a Simply Supported One-way Slab

A 5-in.-thick (h = 127 mm) one-way slab has a span of 12 ft (3.66 m.). It is subjected to a live load of 60 psf (2.88 kPa) in addition to its self-weight. Calculate the immediate and long-term deflections of this slab, assuming that 45% of the live load is sustained over a 24-month period. Determine what type of elements it should support. Given:

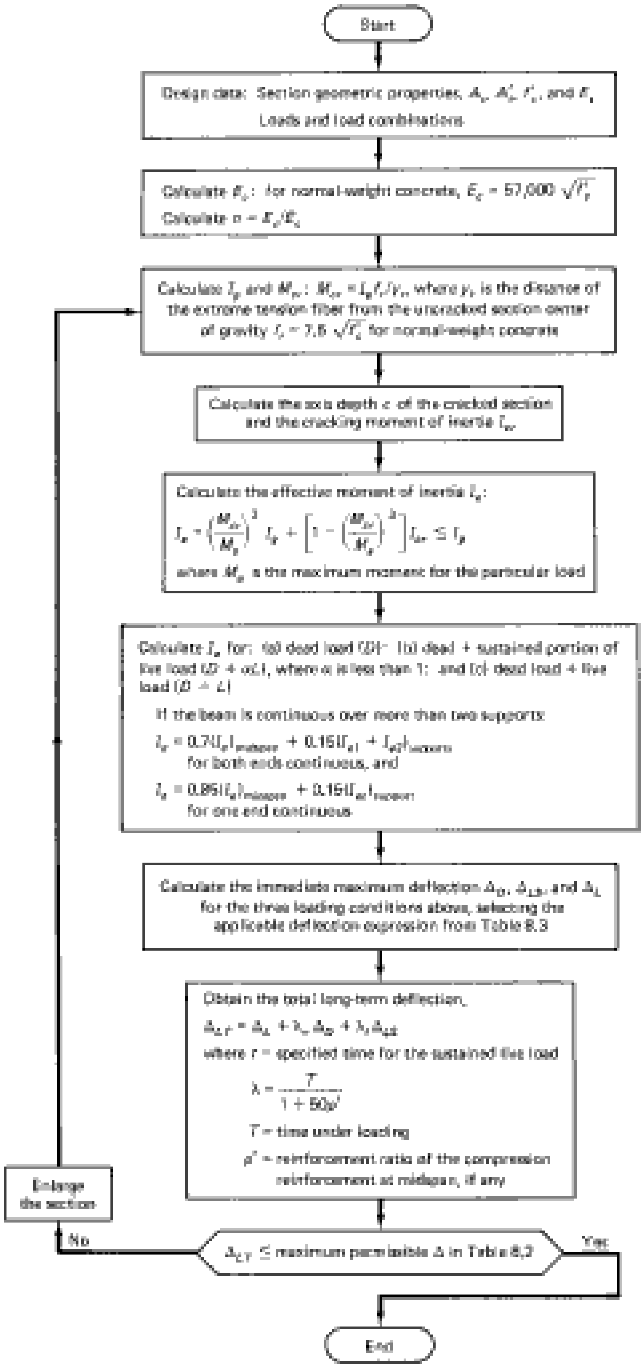


Figure 8.14 Deflection evaluation flowchart.

$$f'_c = 3500 \text{ psi } (24.1 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (200{,}000 \text{ MPa})$$

Steel reinforcement: No. 4 bars at 6 in. center-to-center spacing (12.7-mm diameter at 152 mm center to center)

Solution:

Minimum depth requirement

From Table 8.1,

$$\text{minimum } h = \frac{l}{20} = \frac{12 \times 12}{20} = 7.20 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{actual } h = 5 \text{ in.} < 7.20 \text{ in.}$$

Deflection calculations have to be made.

Material properties and bending moments

$$E_c = 57{,}000\sqrt{f'_c} = 57{,}000\sqrt{3500} = 3.37 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (23{,}256 \text{ MPa})$$

$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (200{,}000 \text{ MPa})$$

$$\text{modular ratio } n = \frac{E_s}{E_c} = \frac{29 \times 10^6}{3.37 \times 10^6} = 8.61$$

$$\text{modulus of rupture } f_r = 7.5\sqrt{f'_c} = 7.5\sqrt{3500} = 443.7 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{gross moment of inertia } I_g = \frac{bh^3}{12} = \frac{12(5.0)^3}{12} = 125.0 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\text{cracking moment } M_{cr} = \frac{f_r I_g}{y_t} = \frac{443.7 \times 125.0}{2.5} = 22{,}185 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{service load bending moment} = \frac{w l_n^2}{8} = \frac{w(12.0)^2}{8} \times 12 \text{ in.-lb} = 216w \text{ in.-lb}$$

Neutral-axis depth of transformed section

If c is the depth from the compression fibers to the neutral axis of the transformed section,

$$A_s = \text{No. 4 at 6 in.} = 0.40 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ per 12-in.-wide strip}$$

$$d = h - 0.75 - \frac{d_b}{2} = 5.0 - 0.75 - 0.25 = 4.0 \text{ in.}$$

From Eq. 8.6(c) for rectangular sections,

$$\frac{bc^2}{2} + nA_s c - nA_s d = 0$$

$$\frac{12c^2}{2} + 8.61 \times 0.40c - 8.61 \times 0.40 \times 4.0 = 0$$

or $c^2 + 0.574c - 2.296 = 0$, giving $c = 1.255$ in.

Effective moment of inertia

Dead load

$$w_D = \text{self-weight of slab} = \frac{5}{12} \times 150 \text{ pcf} = 62.5 \text{ psf}$$

$$M_a = 216w_D = 216 \times 62.5 = 13{,}500 \text{ in.-lb} < M_{cr}$$

Hence the slab will not crack under dead load and $I_e = I_g = 125.0$ in.^{4}

Dead load + 45% live load:

$$M_a = 216(62.5 + 0.45 \times 60) = 19{,}332 \text{ in.-lb} < M_{cr}$$

Hence the slab will not crack under dead load and 45% sustained live load and $I_e = I_g = 125.0$ in.^{4}

Dead + live load

$$M_a = 216(62.5 + 60.0) = 26{,}460 \text{ in.-lb} > M_{cr}$$

This section is cracked.

$$I_{cr} = \frac{bc^3}{3} + nA_s(d - c)^2 \qquad \text{from Eq. 8.7}$$

or

$$I_{cr} = \frac{12(1.255)^3}{3} + 8.61 \times 0.40(4.0 - 1.255)^2 = 33.86 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} = \frac{22{,}185}{26{,}460} = 0.838$$

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3\right] I_{cr} = 0.59 \times 125.0 + 0.41 \times 33.86 = 87.63 \text{ in.}^4$$

Short-term deflection

From Table 8.3,

$$\Delta = \frac{5wl_n^4}{384E_cI_e} = \frac{5w(12.0 \times 12)^4}{384 \times 3.37 \times 10^6 I_e} \times \frac{1}{12} = \frac{0.1384}{I_e} w \text{ in.}$$

Initial live-load deflection

$$\Delta_L = \frac{0.1384(62.5 + 60.0)}{87.63} - \frac{0.1384(62.5)}{125.0} = 0.194 - 0.069 = 0.125 \text{ in. (3.2 mm)}$$

Initial dead-load deflection

$$\Delta_D = \frac{0.1384(62.5)}{125.0} = 0.069 \text{ in. (1.8 mm)}$$

Initial 45% sustained LL deflection

$$\Delta_{LS} = \frac{0.1384(62.5 + 0.45 \times 60)}{125.0} - \frac{0.1384\,(62.5)}{125.0}$$

$$= 0.099 - 0.069 = 0.030 \text{ in. (0.8 mm)}$$

Long-term deflection

From Eq. 8.9, multiplier $\lambda = T/(1 + 50\rho')$. From Figure 8.6, $T = 1.65$ for 24-month sustained load. Therefore,

$$\lambda_\infty = 2.0 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_t = 1.65$$

From Eq. 8.10, the total sustained load deflection is

$$\Delta_{LT} = \Delta_L + \lambda_\infty \Delta_D + \lambda_t \Delta_{LS}$$

or

$$\Delta_{LT} = 0.125 + 2.0 \times 0.069 + 1.65 \times 0.030 = 0.313 \text{ in. (8 mm)}$$

Deflection requirements (Table 8.2)

$$\frac{l}{180} = \frac{12 \times 12}{180} = 0.80 \text{ in.} > \Delta_L$$

$$\frac{l}{360} = 0.40 \text{ in.} > \Delta_L$$

$$\frac{l}{480} = 0.30 \text{ in.} \simeq \Delta_{LT}$$

$$\frac{l}{240} = 0.60 \text{ in.} > \Delta_{LT}$$

Therefore, the slab can support sensitive attached nonstructural elements that are otherwise damaged by large deflections.

It should be noted that actual deflections can vary by as much as 20%–30% depending on several factors, such as concrete constituents and environmental effects. Hence all calculated values should be rounded to the nearest quarter-inch.

8.10 FLEXURAL CRACKING IN BEAMS AND ONE-WAY SLABS

8.10.1 Fundamental Behavior

Concrete cracks at an early stage of its loading history because it is weak in tension. Consequently, it is necessary to study its cracking behavior and control the width of the flexural cracks. Cracking contributes to the corrosion of the reinforcement, surface deterioration, and its long-term detrimental effects.

Increased use of high-strength reinforcing steels having 60,000- to 100,000-psi (413.7- to 551.6-MPa) yield strength and with high stresses occurring at low load levels is becoming prevalent. Also, higher-strength concrete in excess of 9000- to 20,000-psi strength in compression (62 to 138 MPa) and optimal utilization of the material in the strength theories of analysis and design are possible today. Hence prediction and control of cracking and crack widths are essential for reliable serviceability performance under long-term loading.

Two types of stresses act on the tensile stretched zones of the concrete surrounding the tension reinforcement shown in Figure 8.15a. They are longitudinal and lateral sets of stresses. As the longitudinal bending stress acts, the tensile zone undergoes a lateral contraction before cracking, resulting in lateral compression between the concrete and the reinforcing bars or wires. At the moment that a flexural crack starts to develop, this biaxial lateral compression has to disappear at the crack because the longitudinal tension in the concrete becomes zero at the crack location.

The longitudinal bond stress gradually reaches its peak at the crack. This causes the tensile stress f_t in the concrete at that location suddenly to reach its maximum value. The concrete can no longer withstand any tension because of the high stress concentration at the moment of incipient fracture, and it splits, as seen in Figure 8.15a.

The stress in the concrete is dynamically transferred to the reinforcing steel (Figure 8.15d). At the transfer of stress, the tensile stress in the concrete at the cracked section is relieved, becoming zero at the crack (Figure 8.15c). Laterally, the neutral-axis position rises at the cracked section in order to maintain equilibrium at that section.

The distance a_c between two adjacent cracks is the stabilized crack spacing, that is, the distance between two cracks when they continue to widen under load as principal cracks while other previously formed cracks between them close due to redistribution of stress. In other words, cracks stabilize when no new cracks form in the structural member. A schematic plot of the crack width versus crack spacing is given in Figure 8.16. It

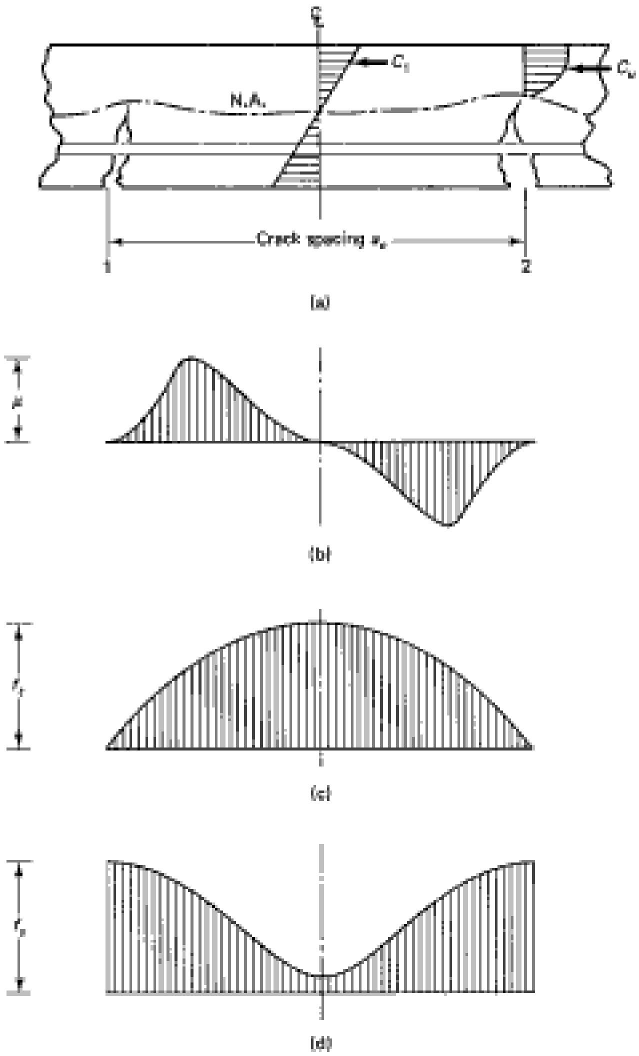


Figure 8.15 Longitudinal stress distribution between two adjacent cracks when cracks are fully developed: (a) crack development geometry; (b) ultimate bond stress μ; (c) longitudinal tensile stress f_t in the concrete; (d) longitudinal tensile stress f_s in the steel.

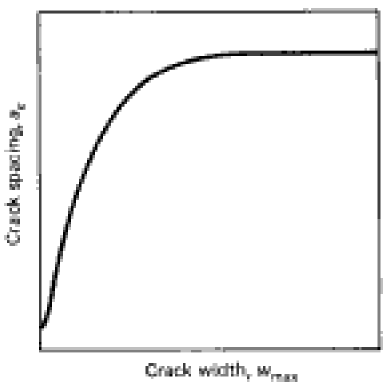


Figure 8.16 Schematic variation of crack width versus crack spacing.

illustrates in the almost horizontal plateau of the diagram the load at which the crack spacing becomes stabilized.

The width of each of the two cracks would essentially be a function of the difference in elongation between the reinforcing bars and the surrounding stretched concrete over a length a_c. From a practical viewpoint, the elongation of the concrete and the shrinkage strain can be neglected as insignificant. Hence

$$\text{crack width } w = \alpha a_c^{\beta} \epsilon_s^{\gamma} \tag{8.23}$$

The value of γ partly depends on whether the reinforced concrete member is one- or two-dimensional, while α and β are experimental nonlinearity constants.

It has been proved that a_c varies with $(1/k_1\mu')$, k_2f_t', and d_b/k_3, ρ_t, where μ is the bond stress, f_t' is the tensile strength of the concrete, d_b is the diameter of the steel bar, $\rho_t = A_s/A_t$ is the ratio of the steel area at the tension side of the section, and A_t is the area of concrete in tension; k_1, k_2, and k_3 are constants.

8.10.2 Crack-width Evaluation

While Eq. 8.23 is the basic mathematical model for the evaluation of the maximum crack width, the large number of variables involved, the randomness of cracking behavior, and the large degree of scatter require extensive idealization and simplification. One simplification based on a statistical study of test data of several investigators is the Gergely–Lutz expression.

$$w_{max} = 0.076\beta f_s \sqrt[3]{d_c A} \tag{8.24}$$

where w_{max} = crack width in units of 0.001 in. (0.0254 mm)
$\beta = (h - c)/(d - c)$ = depth factor; average value = 1.20
d_c = thickness of cover to the center of the first layer of bars (in.)
f_s = maximum stress (ksi) in the steel at service load level with $0.6f_y$ to be used if no computations are available
A = area of concrete in tension divided by the number of bars (in.^{2}) = bt/γ_{bc}, where γ_{bc} is defined as the number of bars at the tension side

Note that allowance of $f_s = 0.6f_y$ in lieu of actual steel stress computations is applicable only to normal structures. Special precautions have to be taken for structures exposed to very aggressive climates, such as chemical factories or offshore structures. Additionally, the depth of the concrete area in tension in reinforced concrete is determined by having the center of gravity of the bars as the centroid of the concrete area in tension. Hence, for a single layer of bars, the depth t of the concrete area in tension equals $2d_c$. The shaded area in Figure 8.17 gives the total concrete area in tension.

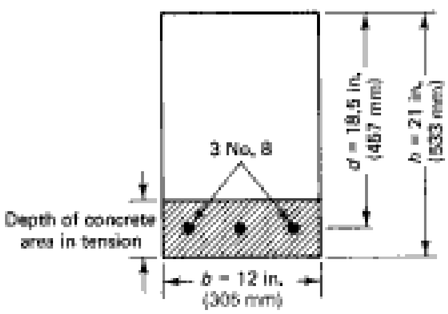


Figure 8.17 Beam geometry.

As the number of bars affect the magnitude of A, it is evident that a *larger* number of *smaller* diameter bars are better controllers of the crack width provided that the total area of all the bars at the tension side of the section satisfies the flexural requirement of the design.

8.10.3 Example 8.6: Maximum Crack Width in a Reinforced Concrete Beam

Calculate the maximum crack width for a rectangular simply supported beam that has the cross section shown in Figure 8.17. The beam span is 30 ft (9.14 m). It carries a working uniform load of 1000 lb/ft, including its own weight (14.6 kN/m). Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi, normal-weight concrete (34 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi (200,000 MPa)}$$

Solution:

Alternative using the actual steel stress

$$\text{gross moment of inertia } I_g = \frac{bh^3}{12} = \frac{12(21)^3}{12} = 9261.0 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\text{modulus of rupture } f_r = 7.5\sqrt{f'_c} = 7.5\sqrt{5000} = 530.3 \text{ psi (2.66 MPa)}$$

$$\text{cracking moment } M_{cr} = \frac{I_g}{y_t} f_r = \frac{9261.0 \times 530.3}{10.5} = 467{,}725 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{maximum beam moment } M_a = \frac{wl_n^2}{8} = \frac{1000(30.0)^2}{8} = 112{,}500 \text{ lb-ft}$$

$$= 1{,}350{,}000 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\frac{bc^2}{2} + nA_s c - nA_s d = 0$$

$$A_s = 2.37 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (1529 mm}^2\text{)}$$

$$E_c = 57{,}000\sqrt{5000} = 4.03 \times 10^6 \text{ psi (27,797 MPa)}$$

$$n = \frac{E_s}{E_c} = \frac{29 \times 10^6}{4.03 \times 10^6} = 7.20$$

$$6c^2 + 7.2 \times 2.37c - 7.2 \times 2.37 \times 18.5 = 0 \qquad \text{to give } c = 5.97 \text{ in. (149 mm)}$$

From Eq. 8.7, the cracked moment of inertia is

$$I_{cr} = \frac{bc^3}{3} + nA_s(d - c)^2$$

$$= \frac{12(5.97)^3}{3} + 7.2 \times 2.37(18.5 - 5.97)^2 = 3530 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\text{steel stress } f_s = \frac{M_a}{I_{cr}}(d - c)n$$

$$= \frac{1{,}350{,}000}{3530}(18.5 - 5.97) \times 7.2$$

$$= 34{,}500 \text{ psi (238 MPa)} < 36{,}000 \text{ psi} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$\text{steel stress } f_s = 34.5 \text{ ksi} \qquad \text{to be used in Eq. 8.24}$$

$$\frac{h - c}{d - c} = \frac{21.0 - 5.97}{18.5 - 5.97} = 1.20$$

$$A = \frac{bt}{\text{no. of bars}} = \frac{b(2d_c)}{\gamma_{bc}} = \frac{12.0(2 \times 2.5)}{3} = 20 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$w_{max} = 0.076\beta f_s \sqrt[3]{d_c A} \times 10^{-3}$$

$$= 0.076 \times 1.20 \times 34.5 \sqrt[3]{2.5 \times 20.0} \times 10^{-3}$$

$$= 0.0116 \text{ in. } (0.29 \text{ mm})$$

Alternative using $f_s = 0.6f_y$

$$\beta = 1.20 \qquad \text{for beams}$$

$$f_s = 0.6f_y = 0.6 \times 60.0 = 36.0 \text{ ksi}$$

$$w_{max} = 0.076 \times 1.20 \times 36.0 \sqrt[3]{2.5 \times 20} \times 10^{-3} = 0.0137 \text{ in. } (\simeq 0.35 \text{ mm})$$

The previous alternative solution is usually unnecessary due to its length and rigor. It is presented to illustrate the computation of the actual value of the stress in the main longitudinal steel at service load levels. Such computations might be necessary for crack-width evaluation where low service-stress levels have to be used in such flexural designs as in the case of water-retaining and sanitary engineering structures. The stress $f_s \le 0.6f_y$ gives a load factor of 1.67 for the limit state at failure.

8.10.4 Crack-Width Evaluation for Beams Reinforced with Bundled Bars

The bond stress between the reinforcing bars and the surrounding concrete is a major parameter affecting flexural crack spacing and hence crack width. The contact area of bundled bars is less than that of the isolated bars if they act independently. Using the perimetric reduction factor deduced from Figure 8.18, the cracking equation becomes

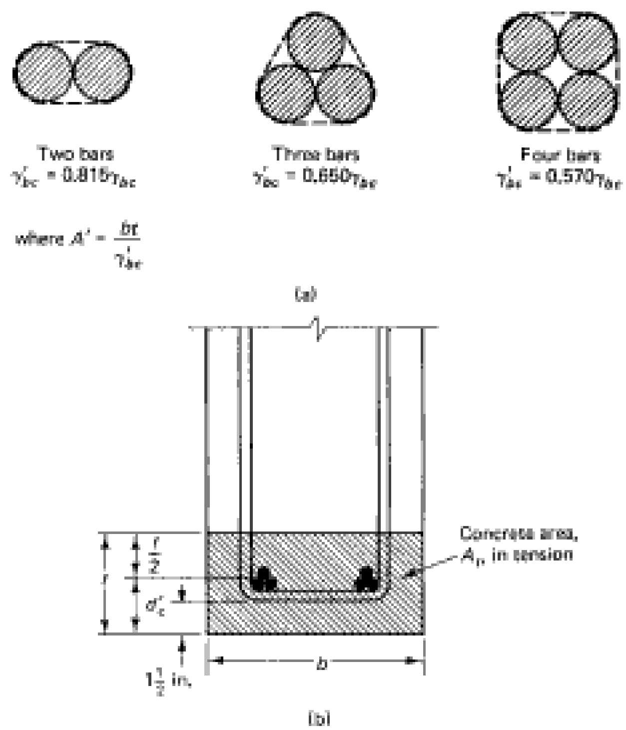


Figure 8.18 Perimetric reduction factor for beams with bundled bars: (a) perimetric factors; (b) section geometry of the concrete area in tension.

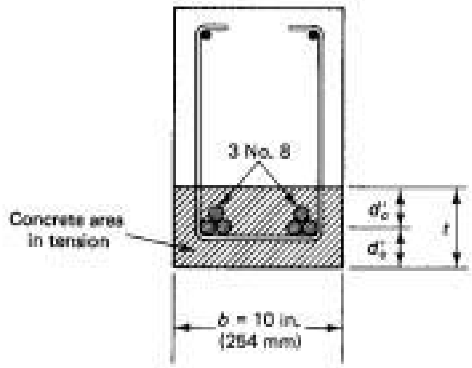


Figure 8.19 Beam geometry.

$$w_{max} = 0.076\beta f_s \sqrt[3]{d_c' A'} \qquad (8.25)$$

where w_{max} is the crack width in units of 0.001 in., and $A' = bt/\gamma_{bc}'$ with the factor for γ_{bc} shown in Figure 8.18a. d_c' is the depth of cover to the center of gravity of the bundle. The steps for calculation of w_{max} are identical to those for beams reinforced with nonbundled bars.

8.10.5 Example 8.7: Maximum Crack Width in a Beam Reinforced with Bundled Bars

Find the maximum flexural crack width for a reinforced concrete beam that has the cross-sectional geometry shown in Figure 8.19. Given:

f_y = 60,000 psi

$f_s = 0.6f_y$ = 36,000 psi

A_s = two bundles of three No. 8 bars each (25.4-mm diameter)

size of stirrups = No. 4 (12.7-mm diameter)

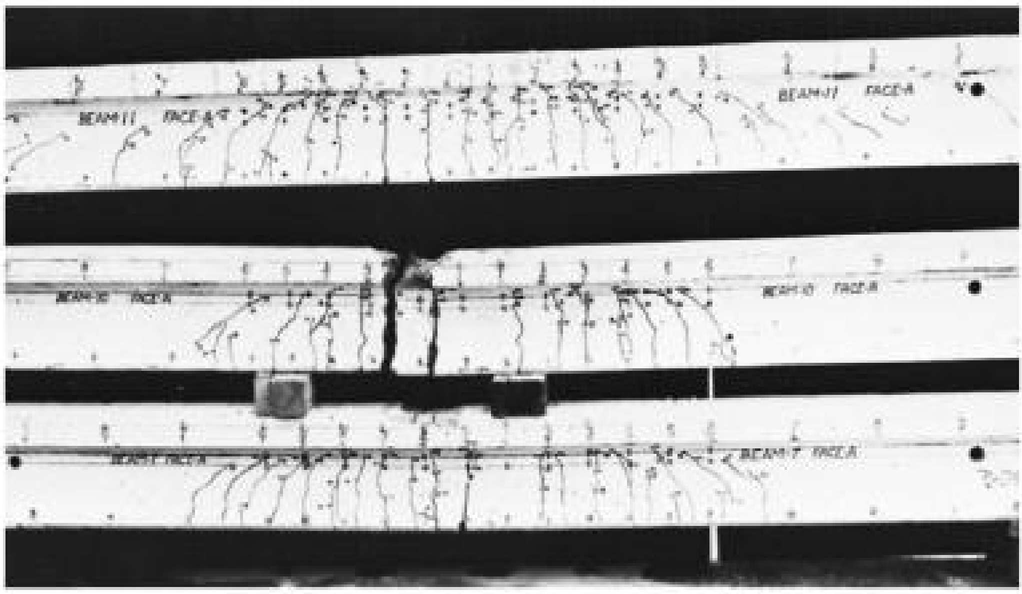


Photo 8.6 Typical flexural crack formation in beams. (Nawy et al.)

Solution:

$$d'_c = \text{center of gravity of the three bars from the outer tension fibers}$$

$$= (1.5 + 0.5) + \frac{2 \times 0.5 + 1 \times 1.5}{3} = 2.83 \text{ in.}$$

$$t = \text{depth of the concrete area in tension}$$

$$= 2 \times 2.83 = 5.66 \text{ in.}$$

γ_{bc} = number of bars if all are of the same diameter, or the total steel area divided by the area of the largest bar if more than one size is used

$= 6$ in this case

$$\gamma'_{bc} = 0.650\gamma_{bc} = 0.650 \times 6 = 3.9$$

$$A' = \frac{bt}{\gamma'_{bc}} = \frac{10 \times 5.66}{3.9} = 14.51 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$w_{max} = 0.076 \times 1.20 \times 36.0 \sqrt[3]{2.83 \times 14.51} \times 10^{-3} = 0.011 \text{ in. } (0.3 \text{ mm})$$

8.11 TOLERABLE CRACK WIDTHS

The maximum crack width that a structural element should be permitted to develop depends on the particular function of the element and the environmental conditions to which the structure is liable to be subjected. Table 8.4 from the ACI Committee 224 report on cracking serves as a reasonable guide on tolerable crack widths in concrete structures under the various environmental conditions encountered. Engineering judgment has to be exercised in determining the maximum crack width that can be tolerated. When the computed crack width exceeds the value in Table 8.4, the designer can use a larger number of smaller diameter bars. Otherwise, increase of the size of bars required by flexure becomes necessary.

8.12 ACI 318 CODE PROVISIONS FOR CONTROL OF FLEXURAL CRACKING

As indicated in Section 8.10 and also in the author's extensive work reported in Section 11.9, the spacing of the reinforcement is a major parameter in limiting the crack width. As the spacing is decreased through the use of larger number of bars, the area of the

Table 8.4 Tolerable Crack Widths

Exposure Condition	*Tolerable Crack Width* in.	mm
Dry air or protective membrane	0.016	0.41
Humidity, moist air, soil	0.012	0.30
Deicing chemicals	0.007	0.18
Seawater and seawater spray; wetting and drying	0.006	0.15
Water-retaining structures (excluding nonpressure pipes)	0.004	0.10

concrete envelopes surrounding the reinforcement increases. This leads to a larger number of narrower cracks. As the crack width becomes narrow enough within the values given in Table 8.4, corrosion effects on the reinforcement are considerably reduced.

The new ACI provisions on crack control through reinforcement distribution limits the spacing in reinforced concrete beams and one-way slabs to the values obtained from the following expression:

$$s = 15(40{,}000/f_s) - 2.5\,c_c \tag{8.26}$$

But not greater than $12(40{,}000/f_s)$,
where,

f_s = calculated stress in reinforcement at service load = unfactored moment divided by the steel area and the internal arm moment. Alternatively, f_r can be taken as (2/3) f_y.
c_c = clear cover of reinforcement, in. If in special sections there is one bar or wire nearest to the extreme tension face, the spacing, s, used in Eq. 8.26 or 8.27 is considered the width of the extreme tension face.
s = center-to-center spacing of flexural tension reinforcement, inches, closest to the tension face of the section.

For 60k reinforcement, $f_s = \frac{2}{3} \times 60{,}000 = 40{,}000$ psi.

From these provisions, the maximum spacing for 60,000 psi (414 MPa) reinforcement = 12 [40,000 / 40,000] = 12 in. (305 mm). The maximum spacing of 12 in. is in conformity with the extensive tests by the author of in excess of 100 two-way action slabs discussed in Sec. 11.9. Hence this limitation on the distribution of flexural reinforcement in one-way slabs and wide-web reinforced concrete beams is appropriate. However, in beams of normal web width in normal buildings, these provisions might not be as workable as controlling the crack width through the process presented in Secs. 8.10 and 8.11.

The SI expression for the value of reinforcement spacing in Eq. 8.26 and f_r in MPa units is,

$$s(\text{mm}) = 380(280/f_s) - 2.5\,c_c \tag{8.27}$$

but not to exceed $300(280/f_s)$. For the usual case of beams with grade-420 reinforcement and 50-mm clear cover to the main reinforcement, with $f_s = 252$ MPa, the maximum bar spacing is 250 mm.

It should be stressed that these provisions are applicable to reinforced concrete beams and one-way slabs in structures subject to normal environmental conditions. For other types of structures subject to aggressive environment such as sanitary structures, the recommendations in Secs. 8.10 and 8.11 are more appropriate (see commentary at end of Example 8.8).

Skin Reinforcement for Deep Beams: In order to control cracking in the web of deep beams or joists, some reinforcement has to be placed near the vertical faces of the tension zone. Without such auxiliary steel, the width of the crack in the web may exceed the crack width at the level of the flexural tension reinforcement. Hence, for beams or joists whose depth h exceeds 36 in., longitudinal skin reinforcement has to be uniformly distributed along both side faces of the member for a distance h/2 from the tension face. The maximum spacing between longitudinal bars or wires of skin reinforcement should not exceed the value obtained from Eqs. 8.26 or 8.27, nor should it exceed 12 in., where c_c is the least distance from the surface of the reinforcement to the side of the face of the concrete section.

8.12.1 Example 8.8 Reinforcement Spacing Limitation in Beams as Required in the ACI 318 Code

Verify if the reinforcement in Ex. 8.6 satisfies the ACI 318 requirements for crack control through reinforcement distribution.

Solution: Crack width, $w = 0.0137$ in. ($\cong 0.35$ mm)

$$f'_c = 5{,}000 \text{ psi, normal-weight concrete (34 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

$$b = 12 \text{ in. (305 mm)}$$

$$d = 18.5 \text{ in. (457 mm)}$$

$$h = 21 \text{ in. (510 mm)}$$

$$c_c = 21.0 - 18.5 - 0.5 = 2 \text{ in. (5.1 mm)}$$

$$0.6 f_y = 60{,}000 \times 0.6 = 36{,}000 \text{ psi} = 36 \text{ ksi}$$

From Eq. 8.26, the maximum allowable bar spacing,

$$s = 15(40{,}000 / f_s - 2.5\, c_c$$

$$= 15(40{,}000/40{,}000) - 2.5 \times 2 = 10 \text{ in. (254 mm)}$$

But not to exceed $12\,(40{,}000/f_s) = 12\,(40{,}000/40{,}000) = 12$ in. > 10 in.

Hence max. $s = 10$ in. controls.

$$\text{Actual } s = (12 - 2 \times 2.0 \text{ side cover})/2 \text{ spaces}$$

$$= 8/2 = 4 \text{ in.} < 10 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Therefore, the reinforcement distribution in this beam satisfies the ACI 318 code provisions.

Commentary:

If this beam was a structural member in severe environmental conditions where a crack width of 0.0137 in. is not tolerable, satisfying the ACI 318 new provisions is not adequate for sustaining the long-term structural integrity of the beam.

8.13 SI CONVERSION EXPRESSIONS AND EXAMPLE OF DEFLECTION EVALUATION

1. $E_c = w^{1.5}{}_c\, 0.043\sqrt{f'_c}$ MPa, where $w_c = 1500$ to 2500 kg/m^3 (90 to 155 lb/ft^3). For standard, normal-weight concrete, $w_c = 2400$ kg/m^3 to give $E_c = 29{,}700$ MPa.
2. $E_s = 200{,}000$ MPa
3. Modulus of rupture $f_r = 0.7\sqrt{f'_c}$
4. For rectangular sections, $I_g = bh^3/12$, and $I_{cr} = bc^3/3 + nA_s(d-c)^2$, where $n = E_s/E_c$
5. $M_{cr} = f_r I_g / y_t$, where y_t is the distance from the neutral axis to the tensile extreme fibers $= \frac{1}{2}h$ for rectangular sections
6. $I_e = M_{cr}/M_a\, I_g + [1 - (M_{cr}/M_a)^3]\, I_{cr}$
7. Long-term deflection multiplier $\lambda = T/1 + 50\,\rho'$

8.13.1 SI Example on Deflection

Solve Ex. 8.3 using SI units.

Solution:

$$
\begin{aligned}
f'_c &= 34.5 \text{ MPa, normal weight} \quad A_s = 852 \text{ mm}^2 \\
f_y &= 414 \text{ MPa (MPa} = \text{N/mm}^2) \\
\ell_n &= 8.23 \text{ m} \\
b &= 254 \text{ mm} \\
h &= 406 \text{ mm} \\
d &= 330 \text{ mm} \\
\text{service } M_D &= 24.3 \text{ kN/m} \\
M_L &= 28.3 \text{ kN/m}
\end{aligned}
$$

Assume 60% live load sustained for 24 months.

$$E_c = w_c^{1.5}\, 0.043 \sqrt{f'_c} \quad \text{(MPa)}$$

where $w_c = 1500$ to 2500 kg/m^3 (90 to 155 lb/ft^3). For standard normal-weight concrete, $w_c = 2400$ kg/m^3.

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_c &= 2400^{1.5} \times 0.043 \sqrt{34.5} = 29{,}700 \text{ MPa} \\
E_s &= 200{,}000 \text{ MPa} \\
\text{modular ratio } n &= \frac{E_s}{E_c} = \frac{200{,}000}{29{,}700} = 6.7 \\
f_r &= 0.7\sqrt{f'_c} = 0.7\sqrt{34.5} = 4.1 \text{ MPa}
\end{aligned}
$$

From Table 8.1,

$$h_{min} = \frac{\ell_n}{16} = \frac{8230}{16} = 520 \text{ mm} > \text{actual } h = 406 \text{ mm}$$

Hence, deflection calculations have to be made.

Effective moment of inertia

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_g &= \frac{bh^3}{12} = \frac{254(406)^3}{12} = 14.2 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4 \\
y_t &= \frac{h}{2} = \frac{406}{2} = 203 \text{ mm} \\
M_{cr} &= \frac{f_r I_g}{y_t} = \frac{4.1 \times 14.2 \times 10^8}{203} = 28.7 \times 10^6 \text{ N-mm} \\
&= 28.7 \text{ kN-m}
\end{aligned}
$$

Depth of neutral axis c

$$d = 30 \text{ mm} \qquad A_s = 852 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$\frac{254c^2}{2} = nA_s(d - c)$$

or

$$127c^2 = 6.7 \times 852(330 - c) \quad \text{to get } c = 102 \text{ mm}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{cr} &= \frac{bc^3}{3} + nA_s(d - c)^2 \\
&= \frac{254(102)^3}{3} + 6.7 \times 852(330 - 102)^2 \\
&= 89.8 \times 10^6 + 296.7 \times 10^6 = 3.86 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4
\end{aligned}
$$

Dead load

$$M_a = 24.3 \text{ kN-m} \quad \text{(given)}$$

$$\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} = \frac{28.7}{24.3} = 1.18 > 1.0$$

Use $M_{cr} = M_a$ and $I_e = I_g$ since the dead-load moment is smaller than the cracking moment (the beam will not crack at dead-load level).

Dead load + 60% live load

$$\left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 = \left(\frac{28.7}{24.3 + 0.6 \times 28.3}\right)^3 = 0.30$$

Dead load + live load

$$\left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 = \left(\frac{28.7}{24.3 + 28.3}\right)^3 = 0.16$$

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3\right] I_{cr}$$

Dead load

$$I_e = 14.2 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4$$

Dead load + 0.6 live load

$$I_e = 0.3 \times 14.2 \times 10^8 + 0.7 \times 3.86 \times 10^8 = 7.0 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4$$

Dead load + live load

$$I_e = 0.16 \times 14.2 \times 10^8 + 0.84 \times 3.86 \times 10^8 = 5.5 \times 10^8 \text{ mm}^4$$

Short-term deflection

$$\Delta = \frac{5w\ell^4}{384EI} = \frac{5M\ell_n^2}{48EI}$$

$$= \frac{5(8230)^2 M}{48 \times 29{,}700\, I} = 238\,\frac{M}{I} \text{ mm}$$

Initial live-load deflection

$$\Delta_L = \frac{238(24.3 + 28.3) \times 10^6}{5.5 \times 10^8} - \frac{238(24.3) \times 10^6}{14.2 \times 10^8}$$

$$= 23 - 4 = 19 \text{ mm}, \quad \text{say } 20 \text{ mm } (0.8 \text{ in.})$$

Initial dead-load deflection

$$\Delta_D = \frac{238(24.3) \times 10^6}{14.2 \times 10^8} = 4 \text{ mm}$$

Initial 60% sustained live-load deflection

$$\Delta_{LS} = 238\left[\frac{(24.3 + 0.6 \times 28.3) \times 10^6}{7.0 \times 10^8} - \frac{24.3 \times 10^6}{14.2 \times 10^8}\right]$$

$$= 14 - 4 = 10 \text{ mm}$$

Long-term deflection

From Eq. 8.10,

$$\Delta_{LT} = \Delta_L + \lambda_\infty \Delta_D + \lambda_t \Delta_{LS}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{T}{1 + 50\rho'}$$

where $\rho' = 0$ for singly reinforced beam.

T for 5 years or more = 2.0, $\lambda_\infty = 2.0$

T for 24 months = 1.65, $\lambda_t = 1.65$

$\Delta_a = 20 + 2.0 \times 4 + 1.65 \times 10 = 45$ mm

Deflection requirements (Table 8.2)

$$\frac{\ell_n}{180} = \frac{8230}{180} = 46 \text{ mm} > \Delta_L$$

$$\frac{\ell_n}{360} = \frac{8230}{360} = 23 \text{ mm} > \Delta_L$$

$$\frac{\ell_n}{480} = \frac{8230}{480} = 17 \text{ mm} < \Delta_{LT}$$

$$\frac{\ell_n}{240} = \frac{8230}{240} = 34 \text{ mm} < \Delta_{LT}$$

Hence, the use of the beam is limited to floors or roofs not supporting or attached to non-structural elements such as partitions.

SELECTED REFERENCES

8.1. ACI Committee 435, "Control of Deflection in Concrete Structures," ACI Committee Report, E. G. Nawy, chairman, Farmington Hills, MI, 1995, 77 pp.

8.2. Branson, D. E., "Design Procedures for Computing Deflections," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 65, Farmington Hills, MI, September 1968, pp. 730–742.

8.3. ACI Committee 435, "Variability of Deflections of Simply Supported Reinforced Concrete Beams," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 69, January 1972, pp. 29–35.

8.4. Branson, D. E., *Deformation of Concrete Structures*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1977.

8.5. Nawy, E. G., "Crack Control in Reinforced Concrete Structures," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 65, Farmington Hills, MI, October 1968, pp. 825–838.

8.6. Gergely, P., and Lutz, L. A., *Maximum Crack Width in Reinforced Concrete Flexural Members*, Special Publication SP-20, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1968.

8.7. Nawy, E. G., "Crack Control in Beams Reinforced with Bundled Bars," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 69, Farmington Hills, MI, October 1972, pp. 637–640.

8.8. ACI Committee 224, "Control of Cracking in Concrete Structures," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Farmington Hills, MI, Original Report V. 69, Dec. 1972, pp. 717–753; Revised, 2001, 88 pp.

8.9. Nawy, E. G., and Blair, K. W., "Further Studies on Flexural Crack Control in Structural Slab Systems"; "Discussion" by ACI Code Committee 318; and "Authors' Closure," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 70, Farmington Hills, MI, January 1973, pp. 61–63.

8.10. Nawy, E. G., *Fundamentals of High Performance Concrete*, 2nd ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 2001, 470 pp.

8.11. Nawy, E. G., Ed.-in-chief, *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

8.12. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2005, 944 pp.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

8.1. Calculate I_g and I_{cr} for cross sections (a) through (f) in Figure 8.20. Given:

$f'_c = 4000$ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete

$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

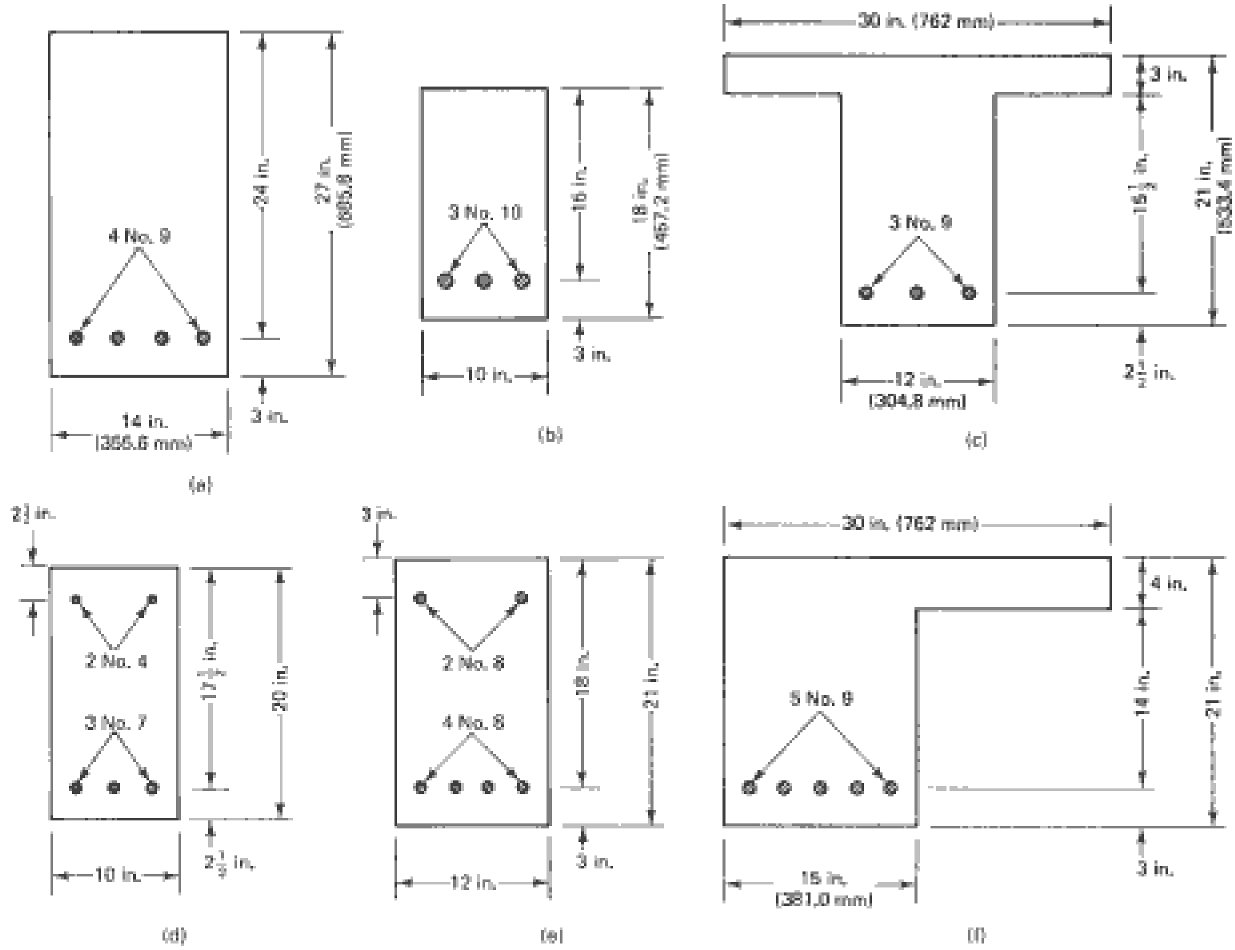


Figure 8.20 Beam cross sections for deflection calculations.

8.2. Calculate the maximum immediate and long-term deflection for a 6-in.-thick slab on simple supports spanning over 13 ft. The service dead and live loads are 70 psf (33.5 kPa) and 120 psf (57.46 kPa), respectively. The reinforcement consists of No. 5 bars (16-mm diameter) at 6 in. center to center (154 mm center to center). Also check which limitations, if any, need to be placed on its usage. Assume that 60% of the live load is sustained over a 30-month period. Given:

$$f'_c = 4500 \text{ psi } (31 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$
$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (200{,}000 \text{ MPa})$$

8.3. Calculate the deflection due to dead load and dead load plus live load for the following cases in Problem 8.1: cross-sections (a), (d), and (e). Use for service-load levels $0.2M_n$ as maximum dead-load moment and $0.35\ M_n$ as maximum live-load moment. Assume that all beams are simply supported and have a span of 22 ft (6.71 m).

8.4. Repeat Problem 8.2 assuming the slab to be continuous over four supports. The top tension reinforcement at the support consists of No. 5 bars at 4-in. center-to-center, and the compression reinforcement consists of No. 5 bars at 12-in. centers.

8.5. A beam supporting a 4-in. slab is continuous over four supports. The center-to-center spans are 26 ft with the end span resting on an outer wall. It has a web width b_w = 12 in. and a total thickness h = 18 in. and carries a service live load W_L = 6000 lb/ft and a service dead load W_D = 1800 lb/ft, including its self-weight. The tensile reinforcement consists of A_s = four No. 8 bars

(28.6 mm), and the support reinforcement is comprised of A_s = six No. 10 bars (32.3 mm) and A_s' = three No. 8 bars. Calculate the maximum immediate and long-term deflections of this beam assuming that 55% of the sustained live load acts over a 24-month period. Also check what deflection serviceability criteria this beam satisfies and whether it can support attached partitions and other elements that can be damaged by large deflections.
Given:

$$f_c' = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$
$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (200{,}000 \text{ MPa})$$

8.6. Calculate the maximum expected flexural crack width in the beam of Problem 8.5 and verify if it satisfies the serviceability criteria for crack control if it is subjected to (a) interior exposure and (b) freeze–thaw and deicing cycles.

8.7. A rectangular beam under simple bending has the dimensions shown in Fig. 8.21. It is subjected to an aggressive chemical environment. Calculate the maximum expected flexural crack width and whether the beam satisfies the serviceability criteria for crack control. Given:

$$f_c' = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$
$$\text{minimum clear cover} = 1\tfrac{1}{2} \text{ in. } (38.1 \text{ mm})$$

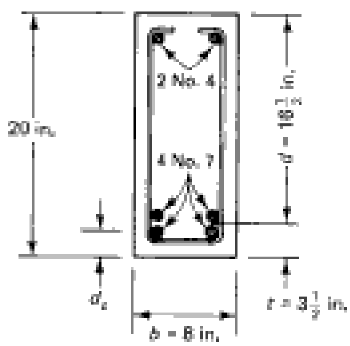
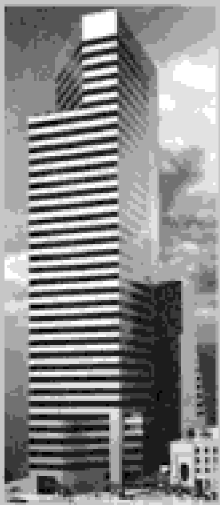


Figure 8.21 Beam geometry.

8.8. Check Problem 8.7 using the ACI bar spacing provisions and determine if it satisfies the serviceability criteria for crack control if it is subjected to severe exposure conditions.

8.9. Find the maximum web of a beam reinforced with bundled bars to satisfy the crack-control criteria for interior exposure conditions. Given:

f_c' = 4000 psi (27.6 MPa)
f_y = 60,000 psi (414 MPa)
A_s = two bundles of three No. 9 bars each (three bars of 28.6-mm diameter each in a bundle)
No. 4 stirrups used (13-mm diameter)



9

COMBINED COMPRESSION AND BENDING: COLUMNS

9.1 INTRODUCTION

Columns are vertical compression members of a structural frame intended to support the load-carrying beams and slabs. They transmit loads from the upper floors to the lower levels and then to the soil through the foundations. Since columns are compression elements, failure of one column in a critical location can cause the progressive collapse of the adjoining floors and the ultimate total collapse of the entire structure.

Structural column failure is of major significance in terms of economic as well as human loss. Thus extreme care needs to be taken in column design, with a higher reserve strength than in the case of beams and other horizontal structural elements, particularly since compression failure provides little visual warning.

As will be seen in subsequent sections, the ACI Code requires a considerably lower strength reduction factor ϕ in the design of compression members than the ϕ factors in flexure, shear, or torsion. The discussion presented in Chapter 4 on the probability of failure and reliability of performance explains and justifies in more detail the reasons for the additional reserve strength needed in proportioning compression members.

Photo 9.1 High-strength concrete high-rise building at 535 Madison Avenue, New York. (Courtesy of Construction Industry Board, New York.)

The principles of stress and strain compatibility used in the analysis (design) of beams discussed in Chapter 5 are equally applicable to columns. A new factor is introduced, however: the addition of an external axial force to the bending moments acting on the critical section. Consequently, an adjustment becomes necessary to the force and moment equilibrium equations developed for beams to account for combined compression and bending.

The amount of reinforcement in the case of beams was controlled so as to have ductile failure behavior. In the case of columns, the axial load will occasionally dominate; hence compression failure behavior in cases of a large axial load/bending moment ratio cannot be avoided.

As the load on a column continues to increase, cracking becomes more intense along the height of the column at the transverse tie locations. At the limit state of failure, the concrete cover in tied columns or the shell of concrete outside the spirals of spirally confined columns spalls and the longitudinal bars become exposed. Additional load leads to failure and local buckling of the individual longitudinal bars at the unsupported length between the ties. It is noted that at the limit state of failure, the concrete cover to the reinforcement spalls first after the bond is destroyed.

As in the case of beams, the strength of columns is evaluated on the basis of the following principles:

1. A linear strain distribution exists across the thickness of the column.
2. There is no slippage between the concrete and the steel (i.e., the strain in steel and in the adjoining concrete is the same).
3. The maximum allowable concrete strain at failure for the purpose of strength calculations = 0.003 in./in.
4. The tensile resistance of the concrete is negligible and is disregarded in computations.

9.2 TYPES OF COLUMNS

Columns can be classified on the basis of the form and arrangement of reinforcement, the position of the load on the cross-section, and the length of the column in relation to its lateral dimensions.

The form and arrangement of the reinforcement identify three types of columns, as shown in Figure 9.1:

1. Rectangular or square columns reinforced with longitudinal bars and lateral ties (Figure 9.1a).
2. Circular columns reinforced with longitudinal reinforcement and spiral reinforcement, or lateral ties (Figure 9.1b).
3. Composite columns where steel structural shapes are encased in concrete. The structural shapes could be placed inside the reinforcement cage, as shown in Figure 9.1c.

Although tied columns are the most commonly used because of lower construction costs, spirally bound rectangular or circular columns are also used where increased ductility is needed, such as in earthquake zones. The ability of the spiral column to sustain the maximum load at excessive deformations prevents the complete collapse of the structure before total redistribution of moments and stresses is complete. Figure 9.2 shows the large increase in ductility (toughness) due to the effect of spiral binding.

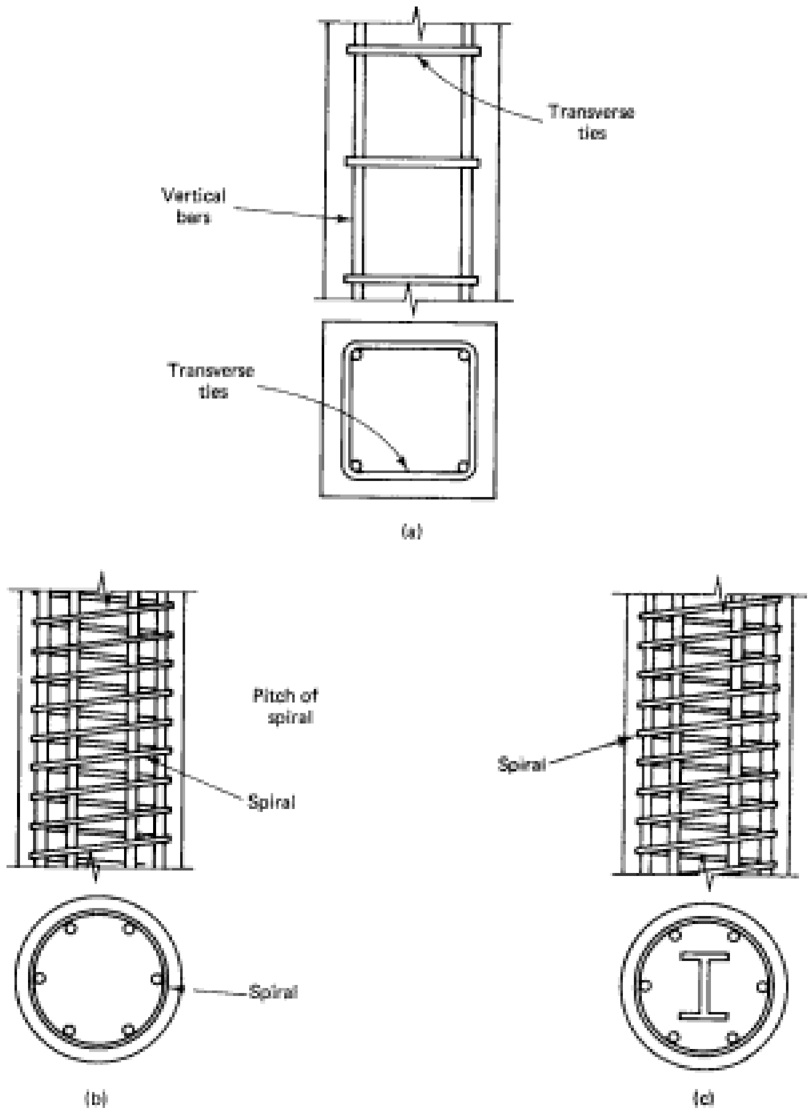


Figure 9.1 Types of columns based on the form and type of reinforcement: (a) tied column; (b) spiral column; (c) composite column.

Based on the position of the load on the cross section, columns can be classified as concentrically or eccentrically loaded, as shown in Figure 9.3. Concentrically loaded columns (Figure 9.3a) carry no moment. In practice, however, all columns have to be designed for some unforeseen or accidential eccentricity due to such causes as imperfections in the vertical alignment of formwork.

Eccentrically loaded columns (Figure 9.3b and c) are subjected to moment in addition to the axial force. The moment can be converted to a load P and an eccentricity e, as shown in Figure 9.3b and c. The moment can be uniaxial, as in the case of an exterior column in a multistory building frame or when two adjacent panels are not similarly loaded, such as columns A and B in Figure 9.4. A column is considered biaxially loaded when bending occurs about both the X and Y axes, such as in the case of corner column C of Figure 9.4b.

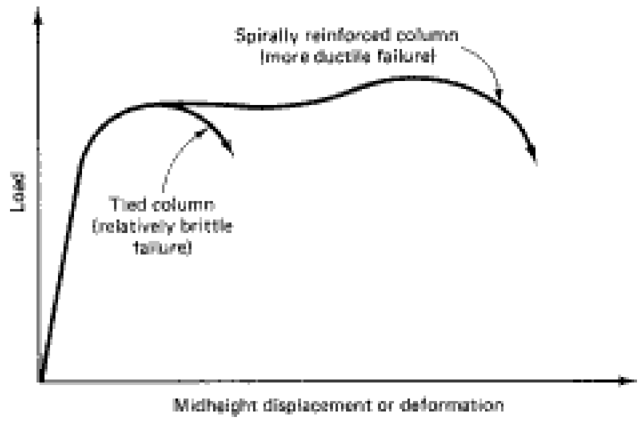


Figure 9.2 Comparison of load-deformation behavior of tied and spirally bound columns.

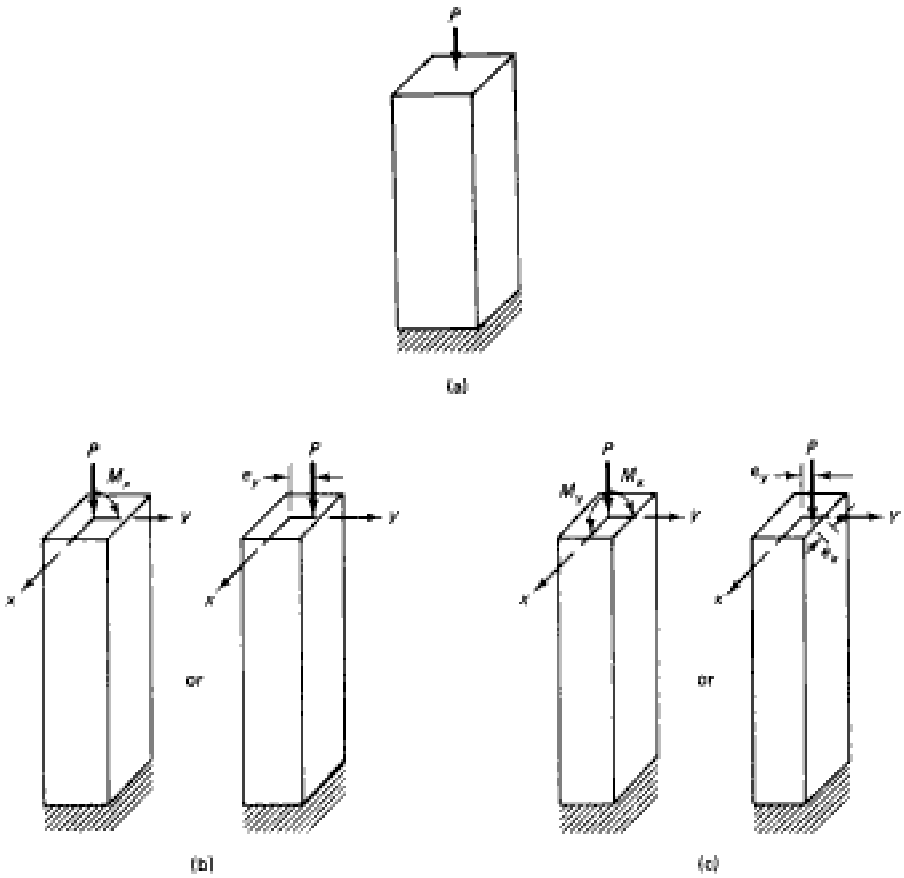
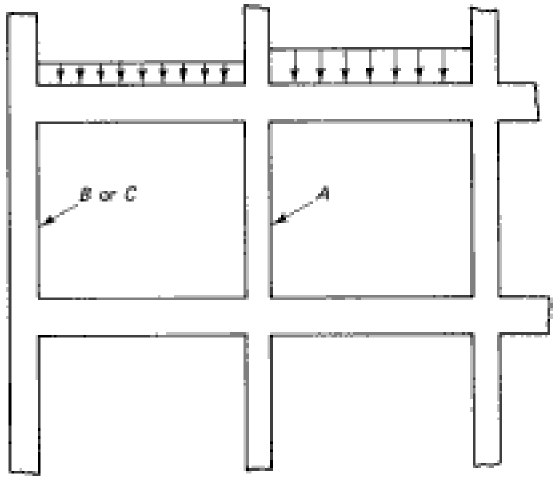


Figure 9.3 Types of columns based on the position of the load on the cross section: (a) concentrically loaded column; (b) axial load plus uniaxial moment; (c) axial load plus biaxial moment.



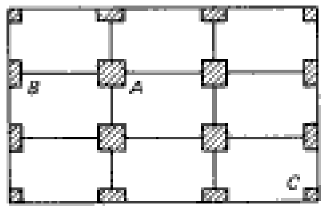


Figure 9.4 Bending of columns: (a) frame elevation; (b) framing plan. *A*, interior column under nonsymmetrical load-uniaxial bending; *B*, exterior column, uniaxial bending; *C*, exterior corner column, biaxial bending.

Failure of columns could occur as a result of material failure by initial yielding of the steel at the tension face or initial crushing of the concrete at the compression face, or by loss of lateral structural stability (i.e., through buckling).

If a column fails due to initial material failure, it is classified as a *short or nonslender column*. As the length of the column increases, the probability that failure will occur by buckling also increases. Therefore, the transition from the short column (material failure) to the long column (failure due to buckling) is defined by using the ratio of the effective length kl_u to the radius of gyration r. The height, l_u, is the unsupported length of the column, and k is a factor that depends on end conditions of the column and whether it is braced or unbraced. For example, in the case of unbraced columns, if kl_u/r is less than or equal to 22, such a column is classified as a short column, in accordance with the ACI load criteria. Otherwise, it is defined as a long or a slender column. The ratio kl_u/r is called the *slenderness ratio*.

9.3 STRENGTH OF NONSLENDER CONCENTRICALLY LOADED COLUMNS

Consider a column of gross cross-sectional area A_g with width b and total depth h, reinforced with a total area of steel A_{st} on all faces of the column. The net cross-sectional area of the concrete is $A_g - A_{st}$.

Figure 9.5 presents the stress history in the concrete and the steel as the column load is increased. Both the steel and the concrete behave elastically at first. At a strain of

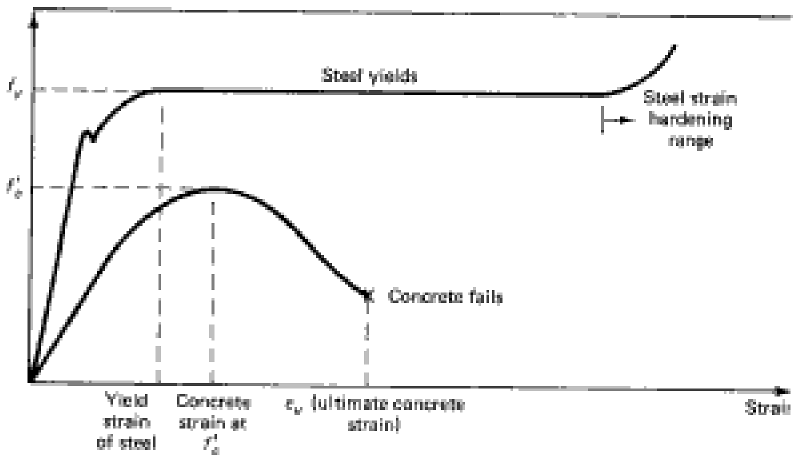


Figure 9.5 Stress–strain behavior of concrete and steel (concentric load).

approximately 0.002 in./in. to 0.003 in./in., the concrete reaches its maximum strength f'_c. Theoretically, the maximum load that the column can take occurs when the stress in the concrete reaches f'_c. Further increase is possible if strain hardening occurs in the steel at about 0.003-in./in. strain levels.

Therefore, the maximum concentric load capacity of the column can be obtained by adding the contribution of the concrete, which is $(A_g - A_{st})0.85f'_c$, and the contribution of the steel, which is $A_{st}f_y$, where A_g is the total gross area of the concrete section and A_{st} is the total steel area $= A_s + A'_s$. The value of $0.85f'_c$ instead of f'_c is used in the calculation since it is found that the maximum attainable strength in the actual structure approximates $0.85f'_c$. Thus the nominal concentric load capacity, P_0, can be expressed as

$$P_0 = 0.85f'_c(A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st}f_y \tag{9.1}$$

It should be noted that concentric load causes uniform compression throughout the cross section. Consequently, at failure the strain and stress will be uniform across the cross section, as shown in Figure 9.6.

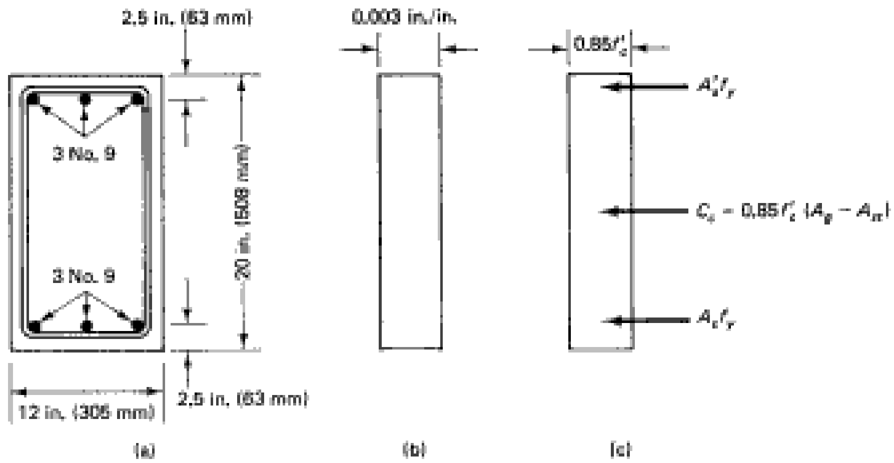


Figure 9.6 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (concentric load): (a) cross section; (b) strain; (c) stress (forces).

It is highly improbable to attain zero eccentricity in actual structures. Eccentricities could easily develop because of factors such as slight inaccuracies in the layout of columns and unsymmetric loading due to the difference in thickness of the slabs in adjacent spans or imperfections in the alignment, as indicated earlier. Hence a minimum eccentricity of 10% of the thickness of the column in the direction perpendicular to its axis of bending is considered as an acceptable assumption for reduction of column load in columns with ties and 5% for the load in spirally reinforced columns.

To reduce the calculations necessary for analysis and design for minimum eccentricity, the ACI Code specifies a reduction of 20% in the axial load for tied columns and a 15% reduction for spiral columns. Using these factors, the maximum nominal axial load capacity of columns cannot be taken greater than

$$P_{n(\max)} = 0.8[0.85f'_c(A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st}f_y] \tag{9.2a}$$

for tied reinforced columns and

$$P_{n(\max)} = 0.85[0.85f'_c(A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st}f_y] \tag{9.2b}$$

for spirally reinforced columns.

Equations 9.2(a) and 9.2(b), respectively, give $A_g = P_n/(0.68\ f'_c + 0.8\ \rho_t\ f_y)$ and $A_g = P_n/(0.78\ f'_c + 0.85\ \rho_t f_y)$. For a *first* trial section, with appreciable eccentricity, the designer can try equations 9.3(a) and (b) for assuming the gross section area A_g.

$$A_g \geq \frac{P_n}{0.45(f'_c + f_y\rho_t)} \tag{9.3a}$$

for tied columns, where ρ_t = total reinforcement percentage, and

$$A_g \geq \frac{P_n}{0.55(f'_c + f_y\rho_t)} \tag{9.3b}$$

for spirally reinforced columns.

These nominal loads should be reduced further using strength reduction factors ϕ, as explained in later sections. Normally, for design purposes, $(A_g - A_{st})$ can be assumed to be equal to A_g without great loss in accuracy.

9.3.1 Example 9.1: Analysis of an Axially Loaded Nonslender Rectangular Tied Column

A nonslender tied column is subjected to axial load only. It has the geometry shown in Figure 9.6a and is reinforced with three No. 9 bars (28.6-mm diameter) on each of the two faces parallel to the x axis of bending. Calculate the maximum nominal axial load strength $P_{n(\max)}$. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

Solution: $A_s = A'_s = 3$ in.^{2} Therefore, $A_{st} = 6$ in.^{2} Using Eq. 9.2 yields

$$P_{n(\max)} = 0.8\{0.85 \times 4000[(12 \times 20) - 6] + 6 \times 60{,}000\}$$
$$= 924{,}480 \text{ lb } (4110 \text{ kN})$$

If $A_g - A_{st}$ is taken as equal to A_g, it results in

$$P_{n(\max)} = 0.8(0.85 \times 4000 \times 12 \times 20 + 6 \times 60{,}000)$$
$$= 940{,}800 \text{ lb } (4180 \text{ kN})$$

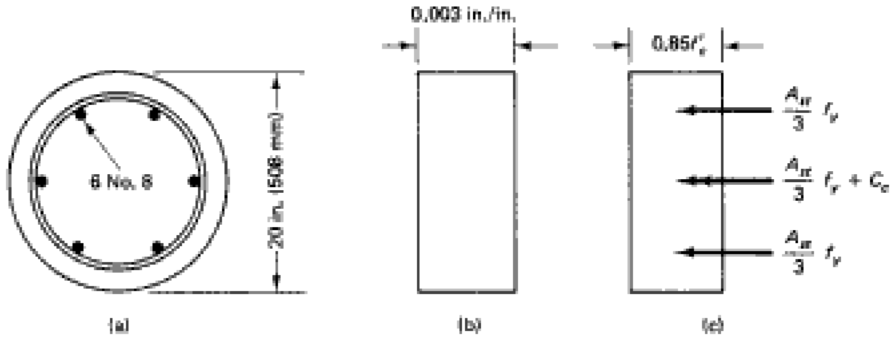


Figure 9.7 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (concentric load): (a) cross-section; (b) concrete strain; (c) stress (forces).

Note from Figure 9.6*b* and *c* that the entire concrete cross-section is subjected to a uniform stress of $0.85f'_c$ and a uniform strain of 0.003 in./in.

9.3.2 Example 9.2: Analysis of an Axially Loaded Nonslender Circular Column

A 20-in.-diameter, nonslender, spirally reinforced circular column is symmetrically reinforced with six No. 8 bars, as shown in Figure 9.7. Calculate the strength $P_{n(max)}$ of this column if subjected to axial load only. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

Solution:

$$A_{st} = 4.74 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$A_g = \frac{\pi}{4}(20)^2 = 314 \text{ in.}^2$$

Using Eq. 9.3 yields

$$P_{n(max)} = 0.85[0.85 \times 4000(314 - 4.74) + 4.74 \times 60{,}000]$$
$$= 1{,}135{,}501 \text{ lb } (5065 \text{ kN})$$

or, assuming that $A_g - A_{st} = A_g$,

$$P_{n(max)} = 0.85[0.85 \times 4000 \times 314 + 4.74 \times 60{,}000]$$
$$= 1{,}149{,}200 \text{ lb } (5062 \text{ kN})$$

9.4 STRENGTH OF ECCENTRICALLY LOADED COLUMNS: AXIAL LOAD AND BENDING

9.4.1 Behavior of Eccentrically Loaded Nonslender Columns

The same principles concerning the stress distribution and the equivalent rectangular stress block applied to beams are equally applicable to columns. Figure 9.8 shows a typical rectangular column cross-section with strain, stress, and force distribution diagrams. The diagram differs from Figure 5.13 in the introduction of an additional longitudinal nominal force P_n at the limit failure state acting at an eccentricity e from the plastic (geometric) centroid of the section. The depth of neutral axis primarily determines the strength of the column.

The equilibrium expressions for forces and moments from Figure 9.8 can be expressed as follows for nonslender columns:

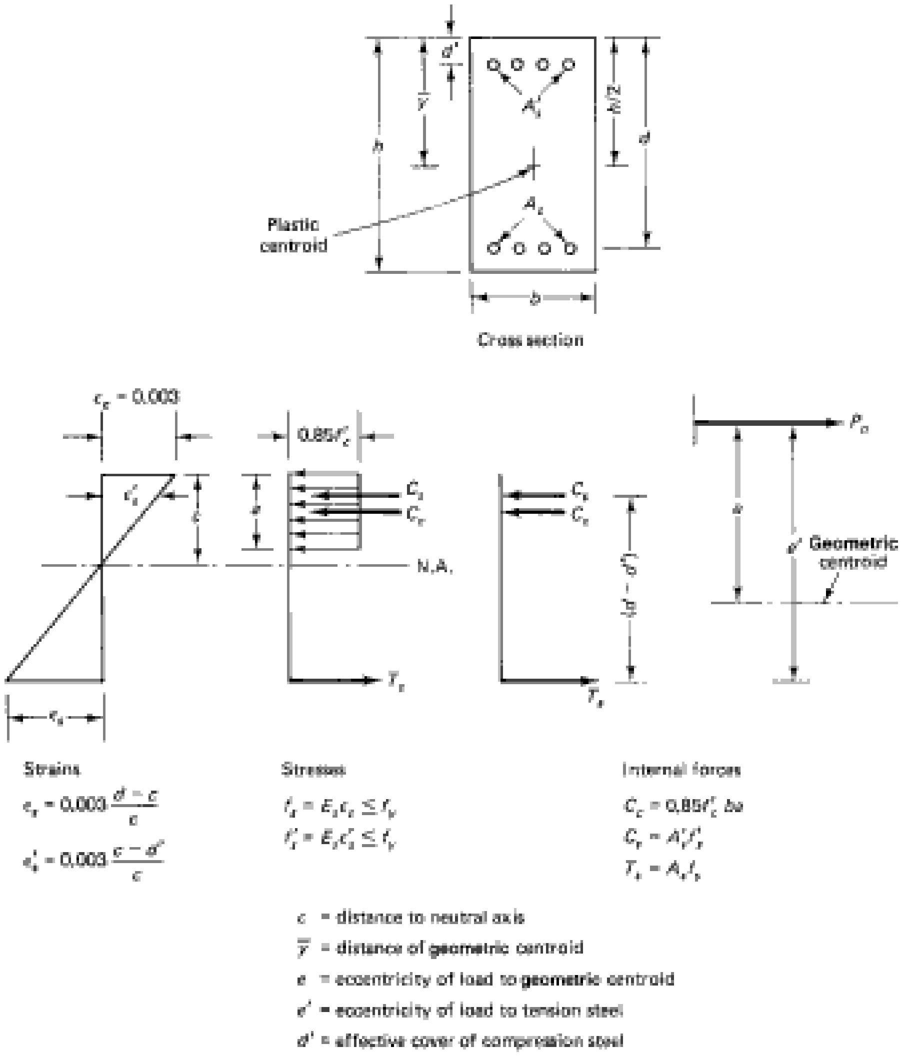


Figure 9.8 Stresses and forces in columns.

$$\text{nominal axial resisting force } P_n \text{ at failure} = C_c + C_s - T_s \tag{9.4}$$

Nominal resisting moment M_n, which is equal to $P_n e$, can be obtained by writing the moment equilibrium equation about the plastic centroid. For columns with symmetrical reinforcement, the plastic centroid is the same as the geometric centroid.

$$M_n = P_n e = C_c\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s(\bar{y} - d') + T_s(d - \bar{y}) \tag{9.5}$$

Since

$$C_c = 0.85f'_c ba$$

$$C_s = A'_s f'_s$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s$$

Eqs. 9.4 and 9.5 can be rewritten as

$$P_n = 0.85f'_c ba + A'_s f'_s - A_s f_s \tag{9.6}$$

$$M_n = P_n e = 0.85f'_c ba\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s(\bar{y} - d') + A_s f_s(d - \bar{y}) \tag{9.7}$$

where $\bar{y}$ for rectangular sections = $h/2$

In Eqs. 9.6, the depth of the neutral axis c is assumed to be less than the effective depth d of the section, and the steel at the tension face is in actual tension. Such a condition changes if the eccentricity e of the axial force P_n is very small. For such small eccentricities, where the total cross-section is in compression, contribution of the tension steel should be added to the contribution of concrete and compression steel. The term $A_s f_s$ in Eqs. 9.6 and 9.7 in such a case would have a reverse sign since all the steel is in compression. It is also assumed that $ba - A'_s = ba$; that is, the volume of concrete displaced by compression steel is negligible.

Symmetrical reinforcement is usually used such that $A'_s = A_s$ in order to prevent the possible interchange of the compression reinforcement with the tension reinforcement during bar cage placement. Symmetry of reinforcement is also often necessary where the possibility exists of stress reversal due to change in wind direction.

If the compression steel is assumed to have yielded and $A_s = A'_s$, Eqs. 9.6 and 9.7 can be rewritten as

$$P_n = 0.85f'_c ba \tag{9.8a}$$

$$M_n = P_n e = 0.85f'_c ba\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f_y(\bar{y} - d') + A_s f_y(d - \bar{y}) \tag{9.8b}$$

or

$$M_n = P_n e' = 0.85f'_c ba\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f_y(d - d') \tag{9.8c}$$

If only one layer of reinforcement at the tension side, d becomes equal to d_t.

In Eq. 9.8(c), the geometric centroid is replaced by $h/2$ for symmetrical reinforcement and A'_s is replaced by A_s.

Additionally, Eqs. 9.8(a) and 9.8(c) can be combined to obtain a single equation for P_n. Replacing $0.85f'_c ba$ in Eq. 9.8(b) by Eq. 9.8(a) gives

$$P_n e' = P_n\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f_y(d - d') \tag{9.8d}$$

Also, from Eq. 9.6,

$$a = \beta_1 c = \frac{A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s + P_n}{0.85\, f'_c\, b} \tag{9.8e}$$

It should be noted that the axial force P_n cannot exceed the maximum axial load strength $P_{n(max)}$, calculated using Eq. 9.2. Depending on the magnitude of the eccentricity e, the compression steel A'_s or the tension steel A_s will reach the yield strength f_y. Stress f'_s reaches f_y when failure occurs by crushing of the concrete. If failure develops by yielding of the tension steel, f_s should be replaced by f_y. When the magnitude of f'_s or f_s is less than f_y, the actual stresses can be calculated using the following equations obtained from similar triangles in the strain distribution across the depth of the section (Figure 9.8).

$$f'_s = E_s\epsilon'_s = E_s\frac{0.003(c - d')}{c} \le f_y \tag{9.9a}$$

or

$$f'_s = \epsilon'_s E_s = 0.003E_s\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) \le f_y \tag{9.9b}$$

$$f_s = E_s \epsilon_s = E_s \frac{0.003(d_t - c)}{c} \le f_y \tag{9.10a}$$

or

$$f_s = \epsilon_s E_s = 0.003\, E_s \left(\frac{d_t}{c} - 1 \right) \le f_y \tag{9.10b}$$

9.4.2 Basic Column Equations 9.6 and 9.7 and Trial-and-Adjustment Procedure for Analysis (Design) of Columns

Equations 9.6 and 9.7 determine the nominal axial load P_n that can be safely applied at an eccentricity e for any eccentrically loaded column. If we examine these two expressions, the following unknowns can be identified:

1. Depth of the equivalent stress block, a
2. Stress in compression steel, f'_s
3. Stress in tension steel, f_s
4. P_n for the given e, or vice versa

The stresses f'_s and f_s can be expressed in terms of the depth of neutral axis c as in Eqs. 9.9 and 9.10 and thus in terms of a. The two remaining unknowns, a and P_n, can be solved using Eqs. 9.6 and 9.7. However, combining Eqs. 9.6 and 9.7 to 9.8 leads to a cubical equation in terms of the neutral-axis depth c. We also must check whether the steel stresses are less than the yield strength f_y. Hence the following trial-and-adjustment procedure is suggested for a general case of analysis (design).

For a given section geometry and eccentricity e, assume a value for the distance c down to the neutral axis. This value is a measure of the compression block depth a since $a = \beta_1 c$. Using the assumed value of c, calculate the axial load P_n using Eq. 9.6 and $a = \beta_1 c$. Calculate the stresses f'_s and f_s in compression and tension steel, respectively, using Eqs. 9.9 and 9.10. Also, calculate the eccentricity corresponding to the calculated load P_n using Eq. 9.7. This calculated eccentricity should *match* the given eccentricity e. If not, repeat the steps until a convergence is accomplished. If the calculated eccentricity is larger than the given eccentricity, this indicates that the assumed value for c and the corresponding depth a of the compression block are less than the actual depth. In such a case, try another cycle, assuming a larger value of c. This process ensures *strain-compatibility* across the depth of the section as discussed in Sec. 5.7.

This trial-and-adjustment process converges rapidly and becomes exceedingly simpler if a computer program is used. This discussion pertains to a general case. Simplifying assumptions can be made in most cases to shorten the iteration process.

9.5 STRAIN LIMITS METHOD TO ESTABLISH RELIABILITY FACTOR ϕ AND ANALYSIS AND DESIGN OF COMPRESSION MEMBERS

9.5.1 Strain Limits Zones

As discussed in Chapter 5, Section 5.3, the strain limits for compression-controlled sections can be represented by the following strain distributions across the depth of the cross section, with $\epsilon_y = 0.002$ for Grade 60 steel, or generally $\epsilon_y = f_y/E_s$.

Figure 5.5 is reproduced here as Fig. 9.10 to illustrate the behavior limits presented in Fig. 9.9, where d_t is the column section depth to the center of the first layer of the tensile reinforcement.

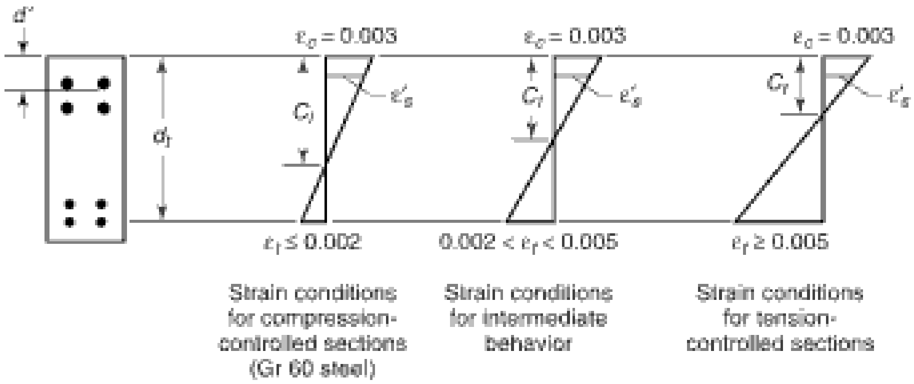


Figure 9.9 Strain distribution and behavior limits.

9.5.2 Stress Limits

(1) ***Tension-controlled limit case ($\epsilon_t > 0.005$)***
As presented in Equations 9.8 and 9.9

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{\epsilon_c}{\epsilon_c + \epsilon_t} = \frac{0.003}{0.003 + 0.005} = 0.375 \tag{9.11a}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.375\,\beta_1 d_t \tag{9.11b}$$

From similar triangles

$$\epsilon'_s = 0.003\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(1 - 2.67\,\frac{d'}{d_t}\right) \tag{9.12a}$$

Hence, for 60 ksi reinforcement,

$$f'_s = \epsilon'_s E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - 2.67\,\frac{d'}{d_t}\right) \leq f_y \tag{9.12b}$$

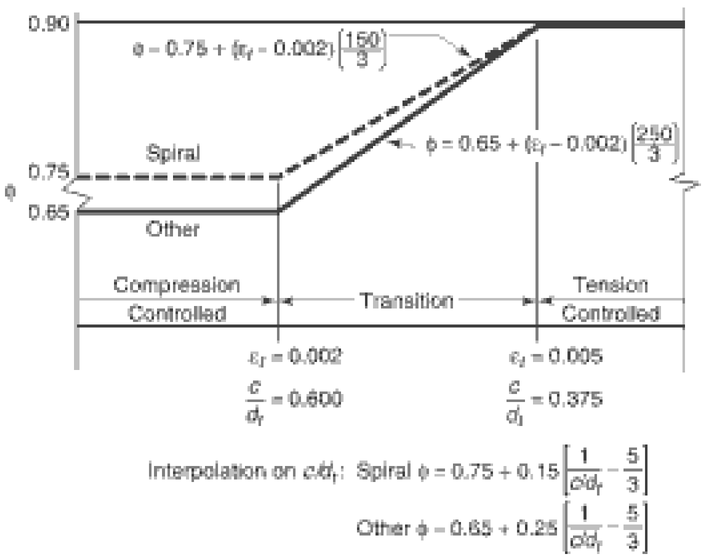


Figure 9.10 Strain limit zones and variation of strength reduction factor ϕ with the net tensile strain ϵ_t for Grade 60 reinforcement.

(2) *Compression-controlled limit case ($\epsilon_t = 0.002$)*
The limit strain in the tensile reinforcement in this case, namely, f_y/E_s, represents the *balanced strain state*, where the tensile reinforcement yields simultaneously with the crushing of the concrete at the concrete extreme compression fibers. As the neutral axis depth, c, increases beyond this state, the strain ϵ_t in the tensile reinforcement would decrease in value below the yield strain. As a result, the stress in the tensile reinforcement becomes smaller than the yield strength f_y.

For 60 ksi steel reinforcement, yield strain is

$$\epsilon_t = \frac{f_y}{E_s} = \frac{60{,}000}{29 \times 10^6} = 0.002 \text{ in./in.}$$

This corresponds to ultimate design strain $\epsilon_c = 0.003$ in./in. in the concrete extreme compression fibers, by the ACI-318 Code. Other codes allow higher design compressive strains, such as 0.0035 and 0.0038 (CEB and EuroCode 2).

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{\epsilon_c}{\epsilon_c + \epsilon_t} = \frac{.003}{.003 + f_y/E_s} = \frac{0.003}{0.003 + 0.002} = 0.60 \tag{9.13a}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.60\, \beta_1 d_t \tag{9.13b}$$

From similar triangles,

$$\frac{c}{(c - d')} = \frac{\epsilon_c}{\epsilon_s'} = \frac{0.003}{\epsilon_s'}$$

giving $\epsilon_s' = 0.003\left(1 - \dfrac{d'}{c}\right)$

or

$$\epsilon_s' = 0.003\left(1 - \frac{d'}{0.60\, d_t}\right) \tag{9.14a}$$

Hence,

$$f_s' = \epsilon_s' E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - 1.67\frac{d'}{d_t}\right) \le f_y \tag{9.14b}$$

(3) *Transition zone for limit strain with intermediate behavior*
This characterizes compression members in which the tensile reinforcement A_s has yielded but the compressive reinforcement A_s' has a stress level $f_s' \le f_y$ depending on the geometry of the section. Intermediate ϕ values change linearly with ϵ_t from $\phi = 0.90$ when $\epsilon_t > 0.005$ to $\phi = 0.65$ for tied columns, or $\phi = 0.75$ for spiral columns when $\epsilon_t \le 0.002$. It should be noted that for nonprestressed flexural members and for nonprestressed members with factored axial load less than $0.10\, f_c' A_g$, the net tensile strain ε_t should not be less than 0.004. Hence, in the transition zone of Fig. 9.10, the minimum strain value for determining the ϕ value in such flexural members of such low value of axial load is 0.004. This limit is necessitated, as a ϕ value can otherwise become so low that additional reinforcement, which could be excessive, would be needed to give the required nominal moment strength.

9.5.3 Summary: Modes of Failure in Columns

Based on the magnitude of strain in the tension face reinforcement (Figure 9.8) the section is subjected to one of the following three conditions:

1. Tension-controlled state, by initial yielding of the reinforcement at the tension side, and strain ϵ_t greater than 0.005.
2. Transition state, denoted by initial yielding of the reinforcement at the tension side, but with strain ϵ_t less than 0.005 but greater than the strain balancing state $\epsilon_t = 0.002$ for Grade 60 steel, or $\epsilon_t = f_y/E_s$.

3. Compression-controlled case by initial crushing of the concrete at the compression face. As previously stated, the *balanced strain state* occurs when failure develops simultaneously in tension and in compression. This condition is defined by the limit strain state $\epsilon_t = \epsilon_y$ at the tension side with the strain $\epsilon_y = 0.002$ for 60 Grade steel.

Accordingly, in analysis and design, the following eccentricity limits correspond to the strain limits presented:

$$e_t \geq \text{limit } e_{0.005} \ (c = 0.375\, d_t)\text{: tension-controlled} \tag{9.15a}$$

$$e_u \leq e_{0.005-0.002} \ (c = 0.375 d_t - 0.60\, d_t)\text{: intermediate transition} \tag{9.15b}$$

$$e_c = \ \leq \text{limit } e_{0.002} \ (c \geq 0.60\, d_t)\text{: compression-controlled} \tag{9.15c}$$

If P_{nb} is the axial load corresponding to the *balanced* limit strain condition, namely, when concrete at the compression face crushes simultaneously with the yielding of the extreme reinforcement at the tension face, then the modes of failure at ultimate load can also be defined as follows, where e_b is the eccentricity of the load at the balanced strain condition:

$P_n < P_{nb}$: tension failure ($e > e_b$)
$P_n = P_{nb}$: balanced failure ($e = e_b$)
$P_n > P_{nb}$: compression failure ($e < e_b$).

The load and moment expressions for the balanced strain condition become

$$P_{nb} = 0.85 f'_c b a_b + A'_s f'_s - A_s f_y$$

$$M_{nb} = P_{nb} e_b = 0.85 f'_c b a_b\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a_b}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s(\bar{y} - d') + A_s f_y (d - \bar{y})$$

In all those cases, the strain-compatibility relationship must be maintained at all times through the computation of the strain ϵ'_s in the compression reinforcement on the basis of linearity of distribution of strain across the concrete section depth. It should be noted that for each limit strain case, there is a unique value of nominal thrust P_n and nominal moment M_n. Consequently, a unique eccentricity $e = M_n / P_n$ can be determined for each case.

9.5.4 Initial Tension Failure in Rectangular Concrete Compression Members

For initial yielding of the tensile reinforcement, the limit strain $\epsilon_t = 0.005$ in./in., or higher. The analysis (design) procedure requires applying the basic equilibrium Eqs. 9.4 through 9.7, using the trial and adjustment procedure and performing *strain compatibility checks* at all loading stages. This procedure is summarized in Section 9.4.2. The limit strain in this mode of failure is defined by Equations 9.11a and 9.11b for the depth of the compressive block having a value of $a = 0.375\,\beta_1\, d_t$ at the limit strain of 0.005 in./in. in the tension-controlled zone and lower in the transition zone illustrated in Fig. 9.10. The strain in the reinforcement at the tension side is equal or higher than the yield strain, and the stress $f_s = f_y$. The column eccentricity $e_t \geq e_{0.005}$ for tension-controlled and $e_u \leq e_{0.005-0.002}$ for intermediate cases. It should be noted that if $P_n = 0.10\, f'_c\, A_g$ or less, the column essentially behaves as a flexural beam because of the low magnitude of the axial force, resulting in a large eccentricity and a strain greater than 0.004. The following examples illustrate the use of the trial and adjustment procedure for the analysis and design of tension-controlled and intermediate compression members.

9.5.5 Example 9.3: Analysis of a Column Subjected to Limit Strain in Compression and in Tension

Calculate the nominal axial load, P_n, in Example 9.1 for the compression- and tension-controlled strain limits, if the column shown in Figure 9.11 is subjected to combined axial load and bending. Given:

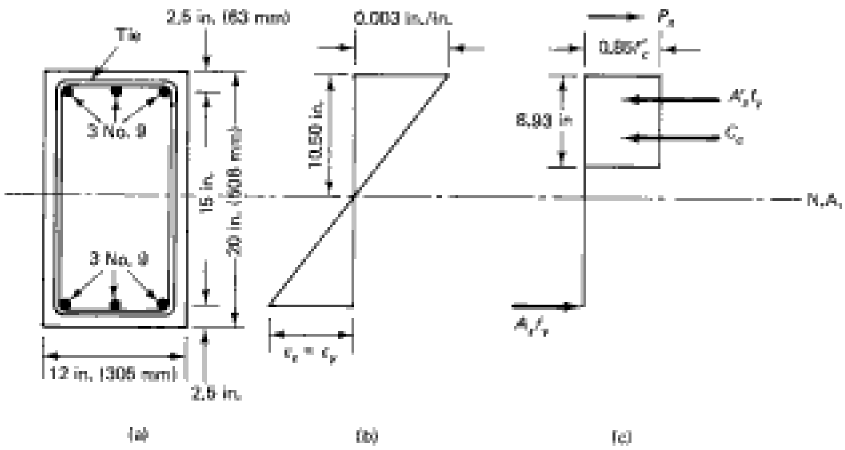


Figure 9.11 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (balanced failure): (a) cross-section; (b) balanced strains; (c) stress.

$$b = 12 \text{ in.} \qquad A_s = A'_s = 3.0 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$d = 17.5 \text{ in.} \qquad f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$h = 20 \text{ in.} \qquad f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi}$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$

Solution:

(a) ***Limit compression-controlled case***

This is the balanced strain condition where the steel reinforcement yields simultaneously with the crushing of the concrete at the extreme compression fibers.

$$\text{Yield strain } \epsilon_y = \frac{f_y}{E_s} = \frac{60{,}000}{29 \times 10^6} = 0.002 \text{ in./in.}$$

From Equation 9.14b,

$$f'_s = \epsilon'_s E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - 1.67\frac{d'}{d_t}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{1.67 \times 2.5}{17.5}\right) = 66{,}224 \, psi > f_y$$

Therefore, $f'_s = f_y = 60{,}000$ psi

$\dfrac{c}{d_t} = 0.60$ for limit strain in compression ($\epsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in.)

From Equation 9.13b,

$$a = 0.60\,\beta_1\, d_t = 0.60 \times 0.85 \times 17.5 = 8.93 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.6,

$P_n = 0.85\, f'_c\, b\, a + A'_s f'_s - A_s f_s$ where, $f_s = f_y$ for the transition zone limit of $\epsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in.

$$P_n = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 8.93 + 3.0 \times 60{,}000 - 3.0 \times 60{,}000 = 364{,}340 \text{ lb.}$$

This is consistent with the balanced condition ρ_b used in ACI-318, Appendix B. From Equation 9.7, for retangular sections, the geometric centroid $\bar{y} = h/2$. Hence

$$M_n = P_n e_c = 0.85\, f'_c\, b\, a\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'\right) + A_s f_s\left(d - \frac{h}{2}\right)$$
$$= 364{,}340\left(\frac{20}{2} - \frac{8.93}{2}\right) + 3.0 \times 60{,}000\left(\frac{20}{2} - 2.5\right) + 3.0 \times 60{,}000\left(17.5 - \frac{20}{2}\right)$$
$$= 364{,}340 \times 5.54 + 180{,}000 \times 7.5 + 180{,}000 \times 7.5 = 4{,}718{,}444 \text{ in.-lb}$$

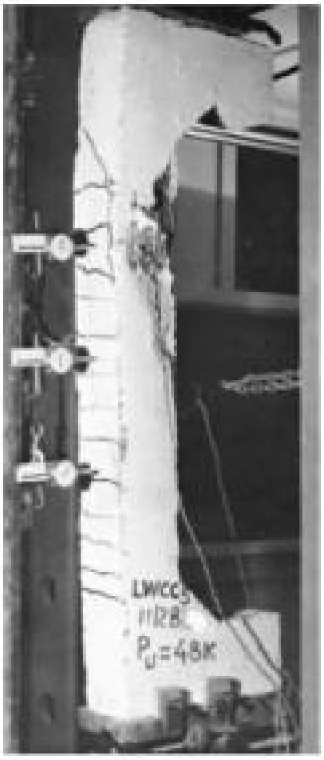


Photo 9.2 Eccentrically loaded column at limit state of failure. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

Eccentricity $e_c = \dfrac{4{,}718{,}444}{364{,}340} = 13.0$ in. (330 mm)

(b) ***Limit tension-controlled case***

Yield strain $\epsilon_t = 0.005$ in./in.

From Equation 9.12b,

$$f'_s = \epsilon'_s E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - 2.67\frac{d'}{d_t}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.67 \times 2.5}{17.5}\right) = 53{,}816 \text{ psi} < f_y$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.375 \text{ for limit strain in tension } (\epsilon_t = 0.005 \text{ in./in.})$$

From Equation 9.11b,

$$a = 0.375\,\beta_1\,d_t = 0.375 \times 0.85 \times 17.5 = 5.58 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.6,

$$\begin{aligned} P_n &= 0.85\,f'_c\,b\,a + A'_s\,f'_s - A_s\,f_s \\ &= 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 5.58 + 3.0 \times 53{,}816 - 3.0 \times 60{,}000 \\ &= 227{,}664 + 161{,}448 - 180{,}000 = 209{,}112 \text{ lb.} \end{aligned}$$

From Equation 9.7,

$$\begin{aligned} M_n = P_n e_t &= 0.85\,f'_c\,b\,a\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f'_s\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'\right) + A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{h}{2}\right) \\ &= 227{,}664\left(\frac{20}{2} - \frac{5.58}{2}\right) + 161{,}448\left(\frac{20}{2} - 2.50\right) + 180{,}000\left(17.5 - \frac{20}{2}\right) \\ &= 227{,}664 \times 7.21 + 161{,}448 \times 7.5 + 180{,}000 \times 7.5 = 4{,}202{,}317 \text{ in.-lb} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Eccentricity } e_t = \frac{4{,}202{,}317}{209{,}112} = 20.1 \text{ in.} \quad (510 \text{ mm})$$

Note that as the column strains move toward the tension-controlled zone, the eccentricity *increases*, resulting in a tensile mode of failure.

9.5.6 Example 9.4: Analysis of a Column Controlled by Initial Tension Failure; Stress in Compression Steel Near Yield Strength

Calculate the nominal axial load strength P_n of the section in Ex. 9.1 (see Figure 9.12) if the load acts at an eccentricity $e = 16$ in. (406 mm). Given:

$$b = 12 \text{ in.}$$
$$d = 17.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$h = 20 \text{ in.}$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$A_s = A'_s = 3 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

Solution:
Required $e = 16$ in. $\quad d_t = d = 17.5$ in.
From Example 9.3, limit $e_c = 13.0$ in. and $e_t = 20.1$ in.
Hence, the strain in the column is in the transition zone of Figure 9.10.
At the tension side, $f_s = f_y = 60{,}000$ psi.

First trial
Assume for the first trial and adjustment procedure that $c/d_t = 0.44$ to be subsequently verified by demonstrating that the resulting eccentricity is equal to the required eccentricity.

$c = 0.44 \times 17.5 = 7.70$ in.; hence, $a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 7.70 = 6.55$ in.

$\epsilon_t = 0.003\left(\frac{d_t}{c} - 1\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{17.5}{7.70} - 1\right) = 0.00382$, hence this case is in the transition zone, with the tension face steel yielding.

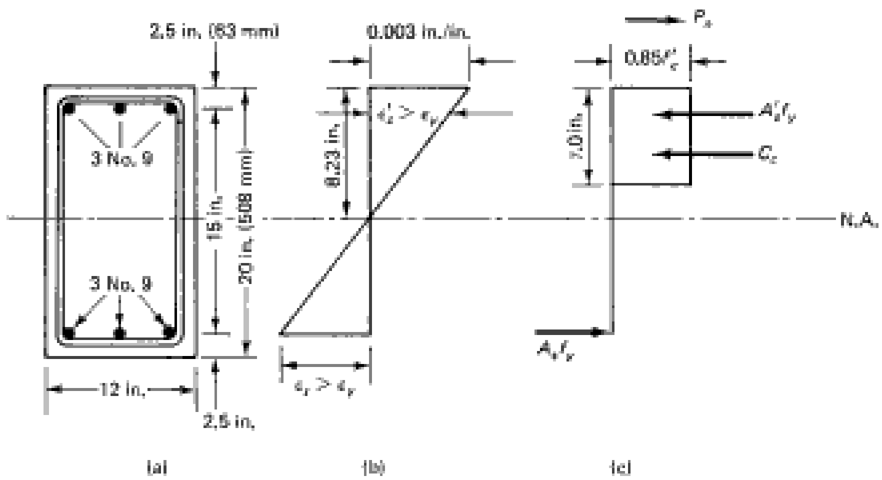


Figure 9.12 Column geometry, strain and stress diagrams (tension failure): (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

From Equation 9.12a,

$$f_s' = \epsilon_s' E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{7.7}\right) = 58{,}753 \text{ psi} < f_y$$

Also, from Figure 9.8,

$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' ba = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 6.55 = 267{,}240 \text{ lb.}$$
$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 3.0 \times 58{,}753 = 176{,}259 \text{ lb.}$$
$$T_s = A_s f_y = 3.0 \times 60{,}000 = 180{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

From Equation 9.4,

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 267{,}240 + 176{,}259 - 180{,}000 = 263{,}499 \text{ lb.}$$

From Equation 9.5,

$$M_n = C_c\left(y - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s(y - d') + T_s(d - y), \text{ where } y = \frac{h}{2} = \frac{20}{2} = 10 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore,

$$M_n = 267{,}240\left(10 - \frac{6.55}{2}\right) + 176{,}259(10 - 2.5) + 180{,}000\,(17.5 - 10) = 4{,}469{,}132 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

$$e = \frac{4{,}469{,}132}{263{,}449} = 17.0 \text{ in.} > e = 16 \text{ in.}$$

Hence revise solution, assuming a larger c/d_t value for a second cycle, to increase the compression area in the section, hence, a lower eccentricity.

Second trial

Assume $\dfrac{c}{d_t} = 0.47$

$$c = 0.47 \times 17.5 = 8.23 \text{ in.; hence, } a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 8.23 = 7.0 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.12a,

$$f_s' = \epsilon_s' E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{8.23}\right) = 60{,}572 \text{ psi} > f_y$$

Hence $f_s' = f_y = 60{,}000$ psi

$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' ba = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 7.0 = 285{,}600 \text{ lb.}$$
$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = C_c \text{ since } C_s - T_s = 0$$
$$P_n = 285{,}600 \text{ lb.}$$
$$M_n = 285{,}600\left(10 - \frac{7.0}{2}\right) + 180{,}000\,(10 - 2.5) + 180{,}000\,(17.5 - 10) = 4{,}556{,}400 \text{ in.-lb.}$$
$$e = \frac{4{,}556{,}400}{285{,}600} = 15.95 \text{ in.} \cong e = 16 \text{ in. O.K.}$$

e is $< e_{min} > e_{comp}$ since $c > 0.375\, d_t$, hence tension-controlled (transition zone). Compatibility of strain is satisfied, using the applicable f_s' in the compression reinforcement.

Therefore, the nominal axial load for this column is $P_n = 285{,}600$ lb. (1270 kN).

9.5.7 Example 9.5: Analysis of a Column Controlled by Initial Tension Failure; Stress in Compression Steel Less Than Yield Strength

A nonslender, rectangular, reinforced concrete column is 12 in. × 15 in. (305 mm × 381 mm), as shown in Figure 9.13, and is subjected to a load eccentricity $e = 10$ in. (254 mm). Calculate the safe nominal load strength P_n and the nominal moment strength M_n of the column section. Given:

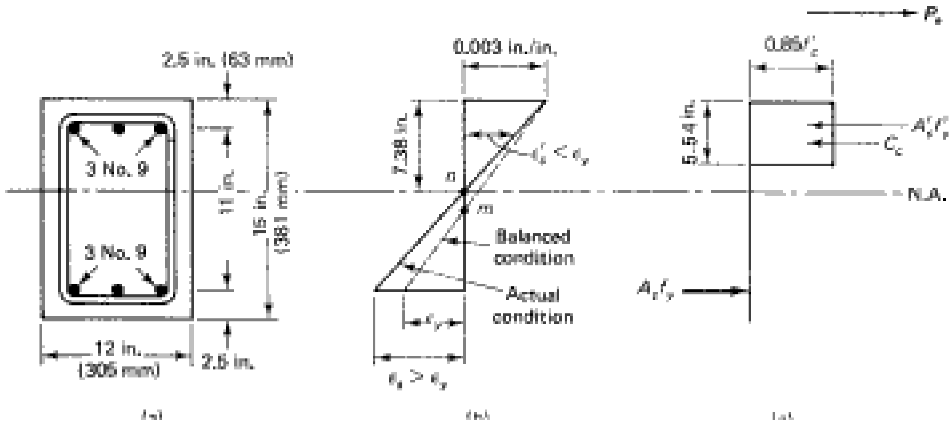


Figure 9.13 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (tension failure $f_s' < f_y$): (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) stresses (Example 9.5).

$f_c' = 6000$ psi (41.4 MPa), normal-weight concrete

$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

three No. 9 bars (28.7 mm diameter) for each of the compression and tension reinforcements

Solution:
Required $e = 10$ in. $\quad d_t = d = 12.5$ in.

First trial
Assume for the first trial and adjustment procedure that $c/d_t = 0.50 < 0.60 > 0.375$, hence the column is in the transition zone, with the stress in the tensile reinforcement is hence $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi.

$$c = 0.50 \times 12.5 = 6.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$\beta_1 = 0.85 - 0.05\left(\frac{6{,}000 - 4{,}000}{1{,}000}\right) = 0.75$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.75 \times 6.25 = 4.69 \text{ in. to be subsequently verified.}$$

From Equation 9.12a,

$$f_s' = \epsilon_s' E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{6.25}\right) = 52{,}200 \text{ psi} < f_y$$

From Figure 9.8,

$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' b\, a = 0.85 \times 6{,}000 \times 12 \times 4.69 = 287{,}028 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 3.0 \times 52{,}200 = 156{,}600 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s = 3.0 \times 60{,}000 = 180{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

From Equation 9.4,

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 287{,}028 + 156{,}600 - 180{,}000 = 263{,}628 \text{ lb.}$$

$$\bar{y} = \frac{h}{2} = \frac{15}{2} = 7.5 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.5,

$$M_n = C_c\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s(\bar{y} - d') + T_s(d - \bar{y})$$

$$= 287{,}028\left(7.5 - \frac{4.69}{2}\right) + 156{,}600\,(7.5 - 2.5) + 180{,}000\,(12.5 - 7.5)$$

$$= 287{,}028 \times 5.16 + 156{,}600 \times 5.0 + 180{,}000 \times 5.0 = 3{,}164{,}064 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

$$e = \frac{3{,}164{,}064}{263{,}628} = 12 \text{ in.} > e = 10 \text{ in.}$$, hence, increase the depth of the compressive block in order to reduce the eccentricity.

Second trial

Assume $c/d_t = 0.59$, hence column is in the tension-controlled transition zone, with the tensile reinforcement stress $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi.

$$c = 0.59 \times 12.5 = 7.38 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = \beta_1\, c = 0.75 \times 7.38 = 5.54 \text{ in. to be subsequently verified.}$$

$$f_s' = \epsilon_s'\, E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{7.38}\right) = 57{,}528 \text{ psi} < f_y$$

$$C_c = 0.85\, f_c'\, b\, a = 0.85 \times 6000 \times 12 \times 5.54 = 339{,}048 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = A_s'\, f_s' = 3.0 \times 57{,}528 = 172{,}924 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s\, f_y = 3.0 \times 60{,}000 = 180{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 339{,}048 + 172{,}924 - 180{,}000 = 331{,}642 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = C_c\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s\,(\bar{y} - d') + T_s\,(d - \bar{y})$$

$$= 339{,}048\left(7.5 - \frac{5.54}{2}\right) + 172{,}924\,(7.5 - 2.5) + 180{,}000\,(12.5 - 7.5)$$

$$= 339{,}048 \times 4.73 + 172{,}924 \times 5.0 + 180{,}000 \times 5.0 = 3{,}366{,}667 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$e = \frac{3{,}366{,}667}{331{,}642} = 10.1 \text{ in.} \simeq \text{required } e = 10.0 \text{ in.}$$

Note that the eccentricity of the axial load as defined in Eq. 9.15 is less than $e_{0.002}$ but larger than $e_{0.005}$, since the depth of the neutral axis is *smaller* than $0.60\, d_t$, hence this is a *transition zone* case with initial yield of the tension face steel. Strain-compatibility is satisfied, using the stress value f_s' of the compression reinforcement compatible with the depth c of the neutral axis. Therefore, nominal axial load $P_n = 331{,}642$ lb (1474 kN), and nominal moment $M_n = 3{,}366{,}667$ in.-lb ($381\ kN - m$).

9.5.8 Initial Compression Failure in Rectangular Concrete Compression Members

For initial crushing of the concrete, the limit strain in the tensile reinforcement has to be $\epsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in., or lower. This results in a stress in the tensile reinforcement to be below the yield strength, namely, $f_s \leq f_y$. The analysis (design) process necessitates applying the basic equilibrium Eqs. 9.4 through 9.7, using the trial and adjustment procedure and ensuring *strain compatibility checks* at all loading stages. The procedure is summarized in Section 9.4.2. The limit strain in this mode of failure is defined by Eq. 9.12a and 9.12b for the depth of the compressive block for a minimum value of $a = 0.60\, \beta_1\, d_t$. For larger values of a, the strain in the tensile reinforcement becomes less than the yield strain, and the stress $f_s < f_y$. The stress f_s for the first trial is obtained from Eq. 9.10b, where

$$f_s = E_s\, \epsilon_s = 0.003\, E_s\left(\frac{d}{c} - 1\right) \leq f_y.$$

If only one layer of tension reinforcement is used, d becomes equal to d_t for strain in the extreme tension reinforcement. The following examples illustrate the use of the trial and adjustment procedure for the analysis and design of compression-controlled compression members.

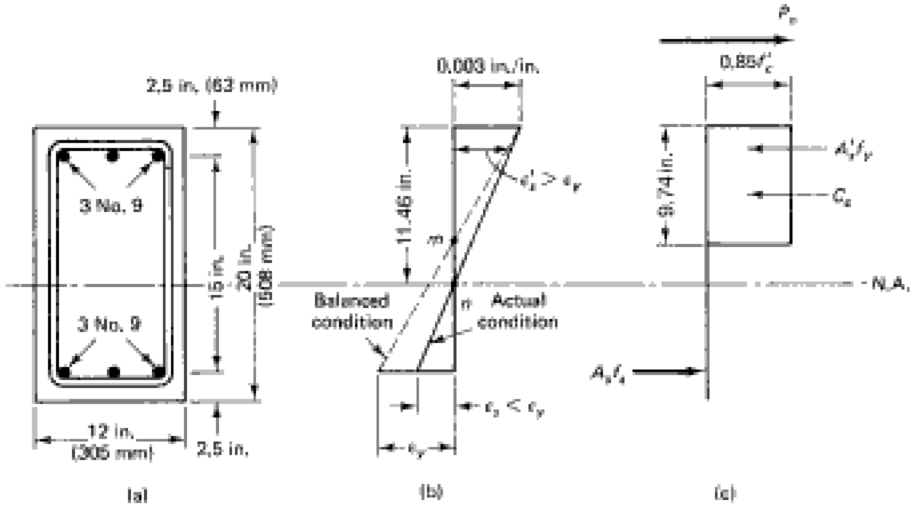


Figure 9.14 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (compression failure): (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) stresses (Example 9.6).

9.5.9 Example 9.6: Analysis of a Column Controlled by Compression Failure; Trial-and-Adjustment Procedure

Calculate the nominal load P_n of the section in Ex. 9.1 (see Figure 9.14) if the column is subjected to a load eccentricity $e = 10$ in. (254 mm). Given:

$$b = 12 \text{ in. (305 mm)}$$
$$d = 17.5 \text{ in. (445 mm)}$$
$$h = 20 \text{ in. (508 mm)}$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$A_s = A_s' = 3.0 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (1940 mm}^2\text{)}$$
$$f_c' = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa)}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Solution: Using the results of Ex. 9.3, eccentricity for the limit compression-controlled behavior, is larger than the given eccentricity of 10 in. Therefore, failure will occur by initial crushing of concrete at the compression face, as the depth c of the neutral axis has to be larger than 0.60 d_t.

First trial
Assume $c/d_t = 0.66$

$$c = 0.66 \times 17.5 = 11.55 \text{ in.}$$
$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 11.55 = 9.82 \text{ in. to be subsequently verified.}$$

From Equation 9.14b

$$f_s' = \epsilon_s' E_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - 1.67\frac{d'}{d_t}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{1.67 \times 2.5}{17.5}\right) = 66{,}244 \text{ psi} > f_y$$

Therefore $f_s' = f_y = 60{,}000$ psi

Since the behavior is compression-controlled the strain in the tension reinforcement is *below* yield strain.

Use Eq. 9.10b for strain-compatibility to find f_s in the tensile reinforcement.

$$f_s = E_s\epsilon_s = 0.003E_s\left(\frac{d}{c} - 1\right) = 0.003 \times 29 \times 10^6\left(\frac{17.5}{11.5} - 1\right) = 45{,}391 \text{ psi}$$

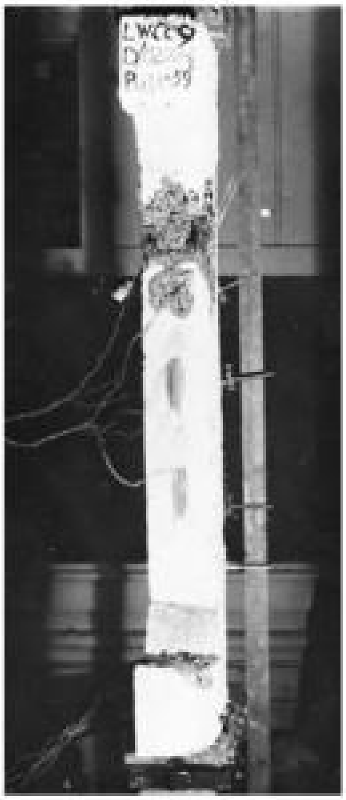


Photo 9.3 Compression side of eccentrically loaded column at failure. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

$$P_n = 0.85\, f'_c\, b\, a + A'_s\, f'_s - A_s\, f_s$$
$$= 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 9.82 + 3.0 \times 60{,}000 - 3.0 \times 45{,}391$$
$$= 400{,}656 + 180{,}000 - 136{,}173 = 444{,}483 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = P_n\, e_c = 0.85\, f'_c\, b\, a\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s\, f'_s\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'\right) + A_s f_s\left(d - \frac{h}{2}\right)$$

$$= 400{,}656\left(\frac{20}{2} - \frac{9.82}{2}\right) + 180{,}000\left(\frac{20}{2} - 2.5\right) + 136{,}173\left(17.5 - \frac{20}{2}\right) = 4{,}410{,}637 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

Eccentricity $e = 4{,}410{,}637/444{,}483 = 9.92$ in. $<$ required $e = 10$ in. Hence decrease the neutral axis depth in order to increase the eccentricity, through *decreasing* the volume of the concrete compressive block.

Second trial

Assume $c/d_t = 0.655$

$$c = 0.655 \times 17.5 = 11.46 \text{ in.}$$
$$a = \beta_1\, c = 0.85 \times 11.46 = 9.74 \text{ in.}$$
$$f'_s = 60{,}000 \text{ psi from trial 1.}$$
$$f_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{d}{c} - 1\right) = 87{,}000\left(\frac{17.5}{11.46} - 1\right) = 45{,}853 \text{ psi}$$

$$P_n = 0.85\, f'_c\, b\, a + A'_s\, f'_s - A_s\, f_s$$
$$= 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 9.74 + 3.0 \times 60{,}000 - 3.0 \times 45{,}853$$
$$= 397{,}392 + 180{,}000 - 137{,}559 = 439{,}833 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = 397{,}392\left(\frac{20}{2} - \frac{9.74}{2}\right) + 180{,}000\left(\frac{20}{2} - 2.5\right) + 137{,}559\left(17.5 - \frac{20}{2}\right) = 4{,}420{,}313 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Eccentricity } e = \frac{4{,}420{,}313}{439{,}833} = 10.05 \text{ in.} \cong e = 10 \text{ in., O.K.}$$

9.5.10 General Case of Columns Reinforced on All Faces: Exact Solution

In cases where columns are reinforced with bars on all faces and those where the reinforcement in the parallel faces is nonsymmetrical, solutions have to be based on using first principles. Eqs. 9.6 and 9.7 have to be adjusted for this purpose and the trial-and-adjustment procedure adhered to. *Strain-compatibility checks* for strain in each reinforcing bar layer have to be performed at all load levels.

Figure 9.15 illustrates the case of a column reinforced on all four faces. Assume that

G_{sc} = center of gravity of the steel compressing force

G_{st} = center of gravity of the steel tensile force

F_{sc} = resultant steel compressive force = $\Sigma A'_s f_{sc}$

F_{st} = resultant steel tensile force = $\Sigma A_s f_{st}$

Equilibrium of the internal and external forces and moments requires that

$$P_n = 0.85 f'_c b\, \beta_1 c + F_{sc} - F_{st} \tag{9.16a}$$

$$P_n e = 0.85 f'_c b\, \beta_1 c\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\beta_1 c\right) + F_{sc} y_{sc} + F_{st} y_{st} \tag{9.16b}$$

for moments about the geometric centroid.

Trial and adjustment is applied assuming a neutral-axis depth c and consequently a depth a of the equivalent rectangular block. The strain values in each bar layer are determined by the linear strain distribution in Figure 9.15b to ensure strain compatibility. The stress in each reinforcing bar is obtained using the expression

$$f_{si} = E_s \epsilon_{si} = E_s \epsilon_c \frac{s_i}{c} = 87{,}000 \frac{s_i}{c} \tag{9.16c}$$

where f_{si} has to be $\leq f_y$.

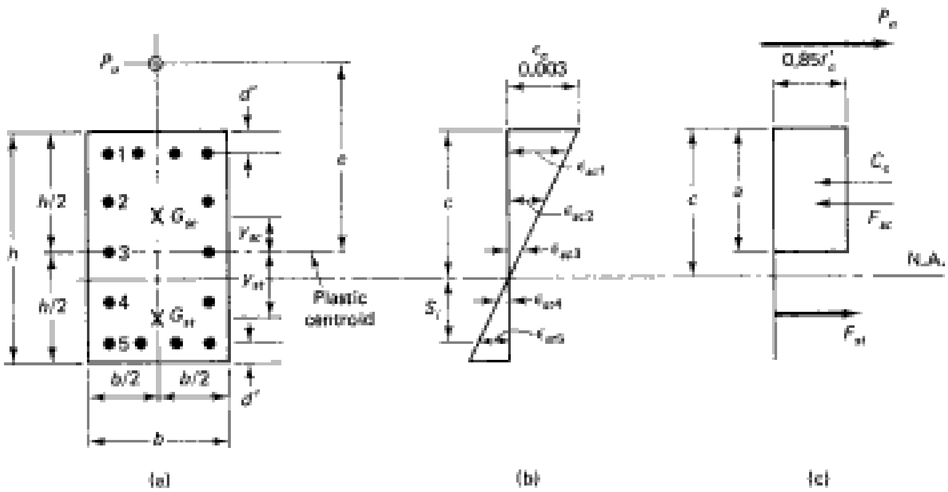


Figure 9.15 Column reinforced with steel on all faces: (a) cross-section; (b) strain; (c) forces.

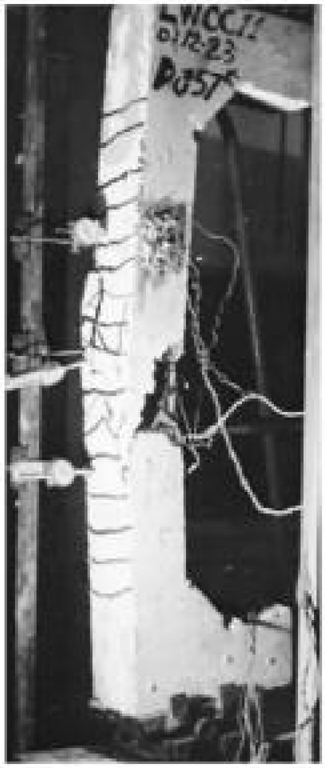


Photo 9.4 Tension side of eccentrically loaded column at rupture and cover spalling. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

Find P_n corresponding to the assumed c in Eq. 9.16a. Substitute into Eq. 9.16b the P_n value thus obtained with the parameter c as the unknown. If the resulting c is not close to the assumed value, proceed to another trial. The nominal resisting load P_n of the section would be the one corresponding to the trial depth c of the last trial cycle.

It is advisable in many instances also to add steel to the column faces that are perpendicular to the axis of bending such that their area does not exceed 25% of the area of the main steel.

9.5.11 Circular Columns

The angle θ subtended by the compressive block chord shown in Figure 9.16(b) is

Case 1:

$$a \le \frac{h}{2}, \ \theta < 90^\circ$$

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{h/2 - a}{h/2}\right) \tag{9.17a}$$

Case 2:

$$a > \frac{h}{2}, \ \theta > 90^\circ$$

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{h/2 - a}{h/2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \phi = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{a - h/2}{h/2}\right) \tag{9.17b}$$

The area of the compressive segment of the circular column in Figure 9.16(b) is

$$\overline{A}_c = h^2\left(\frac{\theta_{rad} - \sin\theta\cos\theta}{4}\right) \tag{9.18a}$$

where θ is in radians (1 radian = $180/\pi = 57.3^\circ$)

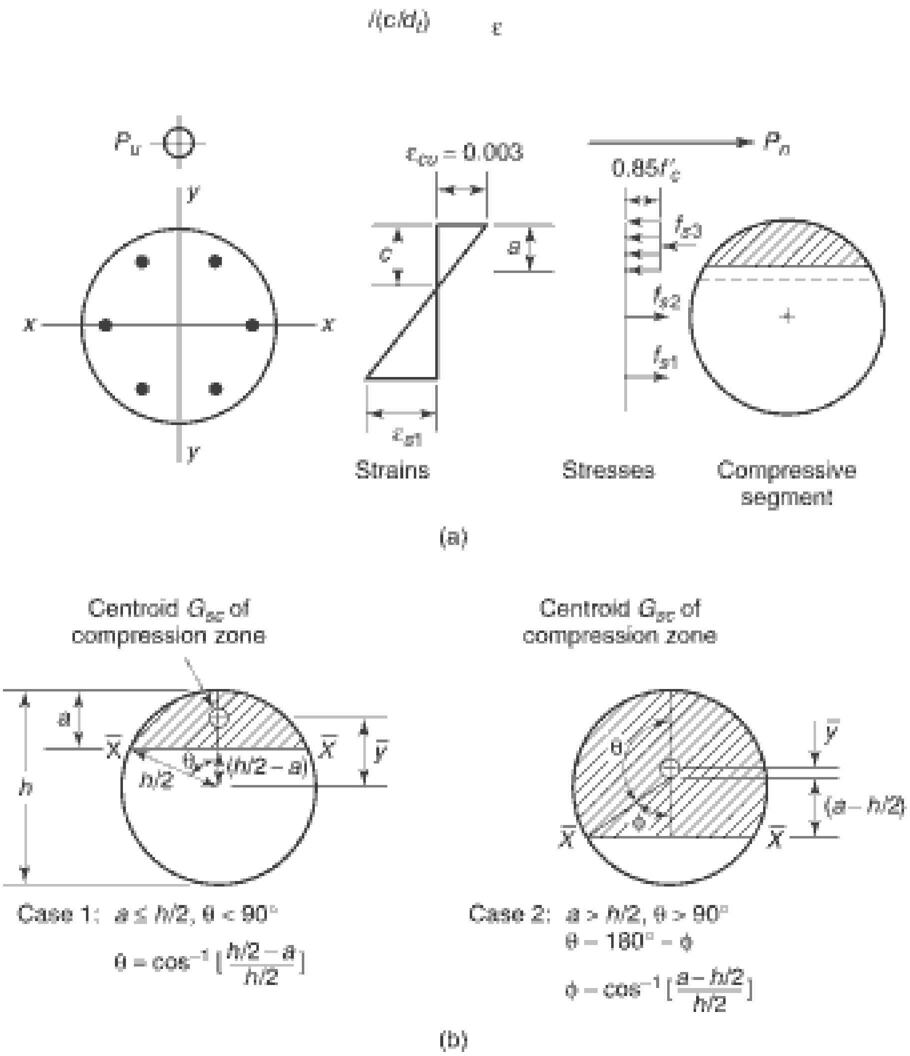


Figure 9.16 Circular columns (a) strain, stress, and compression block segment; (b) compression segment chord x–x geometry

The moment of area of the compressive segment about the center of the column is

$$\overline{A_c}\,\overline{y} = h^3\left(\frac{\sin^3\theta}{12}\right) \tag{9.18b}$$

where $\overline{y}$ = distance of the centroid of the compressive block to the section centroid

$$d_i = \frac{h}{2} - \frac{\gamma\, h_i}{2}(\cos\theta_{\text{bar}}) \tag{9.19a}$$

where $\gamma = (h - 2d')/h$

$$f'_{si} = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d_i}{c}\right) \le f_y \tag{9.19b}$$

where f'_{si} = stress in bars within the compressive zone

$$f_{si} = 87{,}000\left(\frac{d_i}{c} - 1\right) \le f_y \tag{9.19c}$$

where f_{si} = stress in bars within the tension zone below the neutral axis

$$P_n = 0.85\, f'_c\, \overline{A_c} + \Sigma f_{si}\, A_{si} \tag{9.20a}$$

$$M_n = 0.85\, f'_c\, \overline{A_c}\, \overline{y} + \Sigma f_{si}\, A_{si}\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'_i\right) \tag{9.20b}$$

(moment taken about the circular column center).

The ACI-318 code requires that at least six bars be used in spiral columns. A useful model for any even number of bars in circular column sections can be derived with six basic locations of bars, 60° apart, as seen in the ensuing design example.

Note that in order to simplify the strain-compatibility computations, and the equilibrium of forces and moments, in both the rectangular sections with bars on all faces and the circular sections, the individual stress, force and moment for each bar has to be computed separately and tabulated (see Example 9.9).

9.6 WHITNEY'S APPROXIMATE SOLUTION IN LIEU OF EXACT SOLUTIONS

Empirical expressions proposed by Whitney can be used for rapidity in order to have a first trial section quickly and then apply the ACI limit strains procedures. This section is also presented as a historical treatment of the evolution of the analysis methods for compression members.

9.6.1 Rectangular Concrete Columns

These expressions are presented particularly for circular columns, to give a rapid check trial for choice of a section.

Whitney's solution is based on the following assumptions.

1. Reinforcement is symmetrically placed in single layers parallel to the axis of bending in rectangular sections.
2. Compression steel has yielded.
3. Concrete displaced by the compression steel is negligible compared to the total concrete area in compression; hence no correction is made for the concrete displaced by the compression steel.
4. For the purpose of calculating the contribution C_c of the concrete, the depth of the stress block is assumed to be $0.54d$, corresponding to an average value of a for balanced conditions in rectangular sections.
5. The interaction curve in the compression zone is a straight line.

For most cases, Whitney's method leads to a conservative solution, except when the factored load P_u has a value higher than but close to the balanced case denoted by the limit strain for tension-controlled states, as in Ex. 9.7(b), and the external eccentricity e is very small. Otherwise, the method leads to a nonconservative solution.

Essentially, the Whitney Approach is presented here for its intrinsic classical value and for the choice of a first trial section before proceeding with an exact analysis.

If compression controls, the equation for rectangular sections can be written as

$$P_n = \frac{A'_s f_y}{[e/(d - d')] + 0.5} + \frac{bhf'_c}{(3he/d^2) + 1.18} \tag{9.21}$$

The following example illustrates the use of this Whitney equation.

9.6.2 Example 9.7: Analysis of a Rectangular Column Controlled by Compression Failure; Whitney's Equation

Calculate the nominal strength load P_n for the section in Ex. 9.6 using Whitney's equation if the load eccentricity is (a) $e = 6$ in. (152.4 mm); (b) $e = 10$ in. (254 mm).

Solution: (a) $e = 6$ in.

$$P_n = \frac{3 \times 60{,}000}{[6/(17.5 - 2.5)] + 0.5} + \frac{12 \times 20 \times 4000}{[(3 \times 20 \times 6)/17.5^2] + 1.18}$$

$$= 607{,}555 \text{ lb } (2734 \text{ kN})$$

Exact solution, using trial and adjustment and including the displaced concrete gives $P_n = 608{,}458$ lb (2738.0 kN). The approximate solution is conservative.

(b) $e = 10$ in. Using Eq. 9.21,

$$P_n = \frac{3 \times 60{,}000}{[10/(17.5 - 2.5)] + 0.5} + \frac{12 \times 20 \times 4000}{[(3 \times 20 \times 10)/17.5^2] + 1.18}$$

$$= 460{,}098 \text{ lb } (2070.4 \text{ kN})$$

The exact solution, using the trial-and-adjustment procedure and including the effect of the displaced concrete, gives $P_n = 433{,}138$ lb (1960 kN), showing that the approximate solution is not always conservative, as discussed above.

9.6.3 Circular Concrete Columns

As in the case of rectangular columns, force and moment equilibrium equations can be used to solve for the unknown nominal axial load P_n for any given eccentricity. The equilibrium equations are similar to Eqs. 9.6 and 9.7 except that (1) the shape of the area under compressive stress will be a segment of a circle, and (2) reinforcing bars are not grouped together parallel to the compression and tension sides. Therefore, the force and stress in each bar should be considered separately. The area and the center of gravity of the segment of a circle in compression should be calculated using the appropriate mathematical expressions. This accurate approach can be easily adopted if we choose to use hand-held or desktop computers. The following simplified empirical Whitney's approach can be used for longhand calculations, as a first trial.

9.6.4 Empirical Method of Analysis of Circular Columns

When applying the classical Whitney approximate approach, the circular column is transferred to an idealized equivalent rectangular column as shown in Ex. 9.8 and Figure 9.17. For compression failure, the equivalent rectangular column would have (1) the thickness in the direction of bending equal to $0.8h$, where h is the outside diameter of the circular column (Figure 9.17(b)); (2) the width of the idealized rectangular column to be obtained from the same gross area A_g of the circular column such that $b = A_g/0.8h$; and (3) the total area of reinforcement A_{st} to be equally divided in two parallel layers and placed at a distance of $2D_s/3$ in the direction of bending, where D_s is the diameter of the cage measured center to center of the outer vertical bars. For tension failure, use the actual column for evaluating C_c, but place 40% of the steel A_{st} in parallel at a distance of $0.75D_s$, as shown in Fig. 9.17. The equivalent column method provides satisfactory results for most cases.

Once the dimensions of the equivalent rectangular column are established, the analysis (design) can be made as for rectangular columns by the Whitney approach.

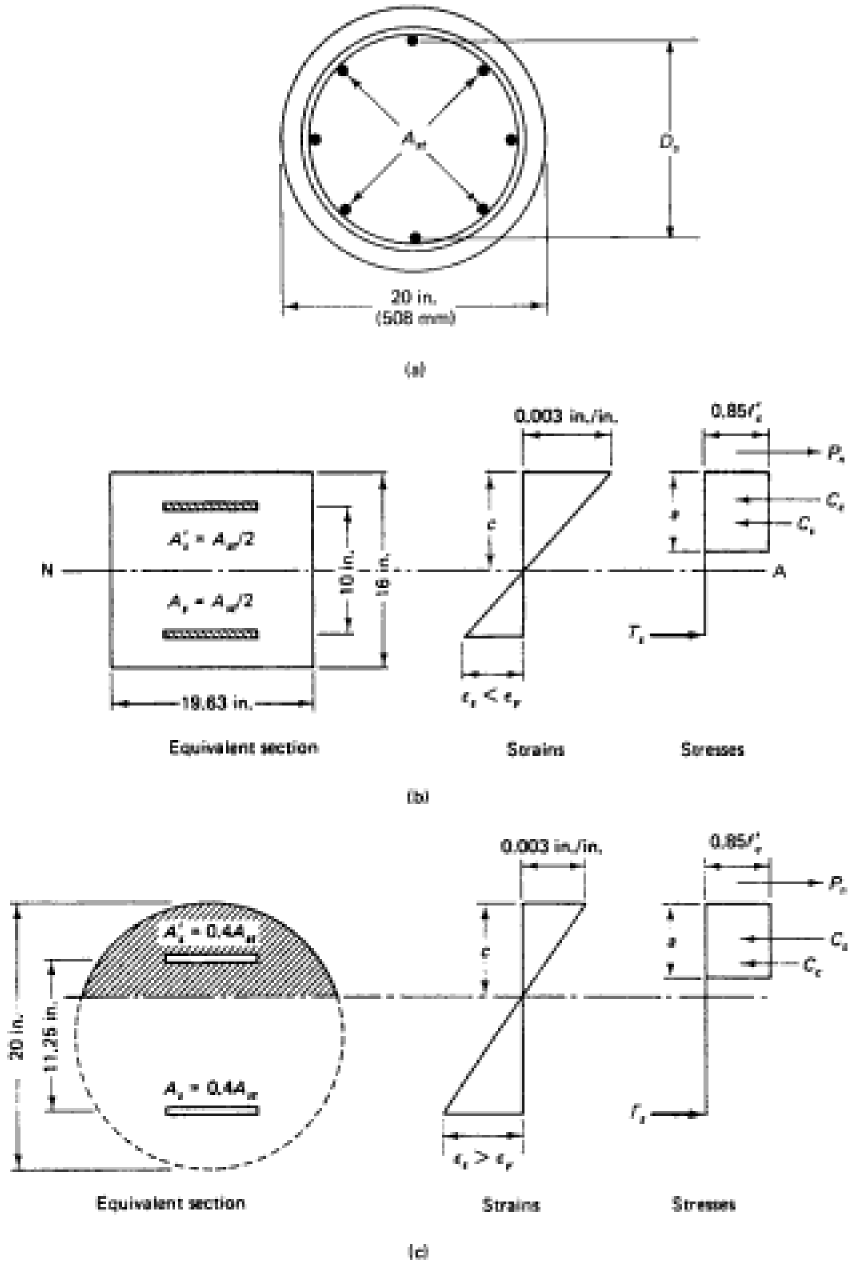


Figure 9.17 Equivalent column section: (a) given circular section (A_{st}, total reinforcement area); (b) equivalent rectangular section (compression failure); (c) equivalent column (tension failure).

The equations for tension and compression failure can also be expressed in terms of the dimensions of the circular column, as follows:

For tension failure,

$$P_n = 0.85 f'_c h^2 \left[\sqrt{\left(\frac{0.85e}{h} - 0.38\right)^2 + \frac{\rho_g m D_s}{2.5h}} - \left(\frac{0.85e}{h} - 0.38\right)\right] \tag{9.22}$$

For compression failure,

$$P_n = \frac{A_{st} f_y}{(3e/D_s) + 1.00} + \frac{A_g f'_c}{[9.6he/(0.8h + 0.67D_s)^2] + 1.18} \tag{9.23}$$

where h = diameter of section

D_s = diameter of the reinforcement cage center to center of the outer vertical bars

e = eccentricity to the plastic centroid of section

$$\rho_g = \frac{A_{st}}{A_g} = \frac{\text{gross steel area}}{\text{gross concrete area}}$$

$$m = \frac{f_y}{0.85 f'_c}$$

9.6.5 Example 9.8: Calculation for Equivalent Rectangular Cross Section for a Circular Column

Obtain an equivalent rectangular cross section for the circular column shown in Figure 9.17(a). Assume that $D_s = 15$ in.

Solution:

$$\text{thickness of the rectangular section} = 0.8 \times 20 = 16 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{width of the rectangular section} = \frac{\pi}{4} \frac{(20)^2}{16} = 19.63 \text{ in.}$$

$$d - d' = \frac{2}{3} \times 15 = 10 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_s = A'_s = \frac{A_{st}}{2}$$

9.6.6 Example 9.9: Analysis of a Circular Column and Comparison to the ACI Strain Compatibility Approach

A concrete circular column 20 in. (508 mm) in diameter is reinforced with six No. 8 equally spaced bars, as shown in Figures 9.18 and 9.19. Compute using the Whitney approach the nominal axial load P_n for (a) eccentricity $e = 16.0$ in. (406 mm) and (b) eccentricity $e = 5.0$ in. (127 mm). Additionally, solve as part (c) of this example, the nominal axial load P_n for part (a) using the ACI Code limit strains compatibility method, and compare the resulting design axial load with the value obtained from the Whitney solution.

$$\text{Given: } \begin{aligned} f'_c &= 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa)} \\ f_y &= 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)} \end{aligned}$$

Solution:

(a) *Whitney solution: large eccentricity*

$e = 16$ in. with axial load 6 in. outside the circular section.

It can be assumed that the section is tension-controlled, because of the large eccentricity in comparison to the section depth, to be subsequently verified as in part (c) of the solution

$$D_s = 20 - 2 \times 2.5 = 15 \text{ in.}$$

$$\rho_g = \frac{A_{st}}{A_g} = \frac{2 \times 2.37}{\pi h^2/4} = \frac{4.74}{314} = 0.015$$

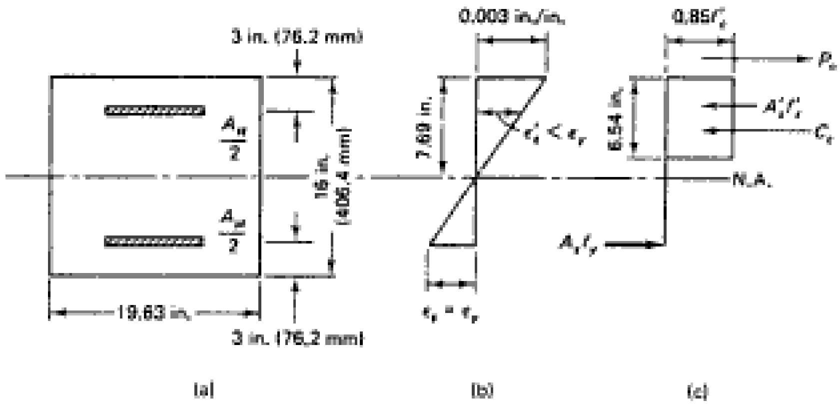


Figure 9.18 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (balanced failure): (a) equivalent section; (b) strains; (c) stresses (Example 9.9).

Using Equation 9.22

$$m = \frac{f_y}{0.85f_c'} = \frac{60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4000} = 17.65$$

$$P_u = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 400 \left[\sqrt{\left(\frac{0.85 \times 16}{20} - 0.38\right)^2 + \frac{0.015 \times 17.65 \times 15}{2.5 \times 20}} - \left(\frac{0.85 \times 16}{20} - 0.38\right) \right]$$

$$= 151{,}793 \text{ lb } (675 \text{ kN})$$

(b) *Whitney solution: small eccentricity*

For $e = 5.0$ in. $< e_b$, compression failure controls since the axial load is within the section (e_b = eccentricity for balanced strain, namely, $c/d_t = 0.60$, or $\epsilon_t = 0.002$). Using Eq. 9.23, we have

$$\text{total steel area } A_{st} = A_s + A_s' = 2 \times 2.37 = 4.74 \text{ in.}^2 \ (3057 \text{ mm}^2)$$

$$\text{gross concrete area } A_g = \frac{\pi(20.0)^2}{4} = 314.2 \text{ in.}^2 \ (2025 \text{ mm}^2)$$

$$P_n = \frac{4.74 \times 60{,}000}{\dfrac{3 \times 5.0}{15} + 1} + \frac{314.2 \times 4000}{\dfrac{9.6 \times 20 \times 5}{(0.8 \times 20 + 0.67 \times 15)^2} + 1.18}$$

$$= 626{,}577 \text{ lb } (2780 \text{ kN})$$

(Using strain compatibility $P_n = 621{,}653$ lb, indicating that the Whitney solution is in this case *not* conservative.)

(c) *ACI Code exact strain-compatibility analysis*

Column diameter $h = 20$ in.

Cover to center of the bars centerline, $d' = 2.5$ in.

$$A_s = A_s' = 3 \text{ No. 8 bars} = 2.37 \text{ in.}^2$$

Since six bars are used equally spaced in the circular section, the angle subtended by each bar is

$$\text{bar is } \phi = \frac{360}{6 \text{ spaces}} = 60°$$

Trial and adjustment is applied to determine the correct neutral axis depth and develop the strain-compatibility solution.

First trial
Assuming $c = 7.4$ in. resulted in $P_n = 217{,}006$ lb.,

$$M_n = 2{,}842{,}693 \text{ in.-lb}, \qquad e = 13.10 \text{ in.} < \text{required } e = 16.0 \text{ in.}$$

In order to get a larger eccentricity, the compressive block area has to be reduced by assuming a smaller neutral axis depth c.

Second trial
Assuming $c = 6.9$ in.

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 6.9 = 5.865 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.17a,

$$\begin{aligned}\theta &= \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{h/2 - a}{h/2}\right) \\ &= \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{10 - 5.865}{10}\right) = \cos^{-1} 0.4135 = 65.58° \\ &= \frac{65.58}{57.3} = 1.144 \text{ radians.}\end{aligned}$$

From Equation 9.18a,

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{A_c} &= h^2\left(\frac{\theta_{rad} - \sin\theta\cos\theta}{4}\right) \\ &= (20)^2\left(\frac{1.144 - 0.376}{4}\right) = 76.8 \text{ in.}^2\end{aligned}$$

From Equation 9.18b,

$$\overline{A_c}\,\overline{y} = h^3\left(\frac{\sin^3\theta}{12}\right) = \frac{(20)^3 \times 0.7549}{12} = 503.3 \text{ in.}^3$$

Bar No.	d_i' (in.)	$(h/2 - d_i')$ (in.)	f_{si} (psi)	ΣF_{si} (lb)	ΣM_{si} (in.-lb)
1 + 2	3.5	6.5	42,870	+67,735	439,628
3 + 4	10.0	0	39,087	−61,758	0
5 + 6	16.5	6.5	60,000	−94,800	616,200
			$\Sigma =$	−88,823	1,055,828

From Equation 9.20(a),

$$\begin{aligned}P_n &= 0.85 f_c' \overline{A_c} + \Sigma f_{si} A_{si} \\ &= 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 76.8 - 88{,}823 = 172{,}297 \text{ lb.}\end{aligned}$$

From Equation 9.20(b),

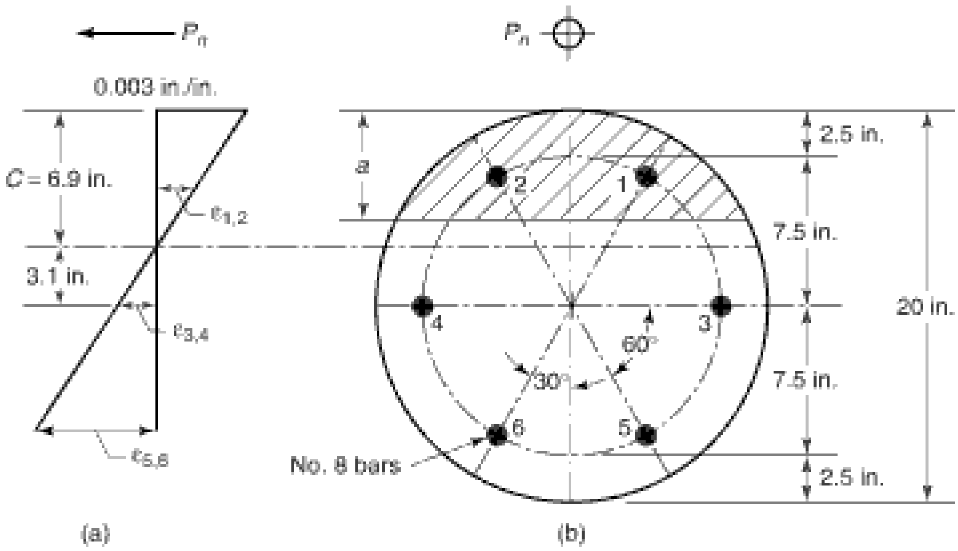


Figure 9.19 Column geometry in Example 9.9 (a) strain distributions; (b) column cross section.

$$M_n = 0.85 f'_c\, \overline{A_c\, y} + \Sigma f_n A_n\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'_i\right)$$

$$= 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 503.3 + 1{,}055{,}828 = 2{,}767{,}048 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$e = \frac{M_n}{P_n} = \frac{2{,}767{,}048}{172{,}297} = 16.06 \text{ in.} \doteq \text{required } e = 16.0 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, strain-compatibility is satisfied.
Adopt $P_n = 172{,}297$ lb (766 kN).

Design Load P_u

Actual $\dfrac{c}{d_t} = \dfrac{6.9}{16.5} = 0.418 >$ limit tension-controlled $\dfrac{c}{d_t} = 0.375 <$ limit compression-controlled $\dfrac{c}{d_t} = 0.60.$

Hence, section is in the transition zone of Figure 9.10.
From Equation 9.25a,

$$\text{Spiral } \phi = 0.75 + 0.15\left[\frac{1}{(c/d_t)} - \frac{5}{3}\right]$$

$$= 0.75 + 0.15\left[\frac{1}{0.418} - \frac{5}{3}\right] = 0.859$$

Design $P_u = 0.859 \times 172{,}297 = 148{,}003$ lb.
Whitney P_u from part (a) of the solution $= 0.859 \times 151{,}793 = 130{,}390$ lb, which is usually more conservative if tension-controlled. Comparison of the strain-compatibility solution with the solution of the column in Example 9.14 using the $P_n - M_n$ interaction plots in the Appendix A shows the closeness of the P_n values in both solutions, and the closeness in the estimate of the strength reduction factor ϕ estimated from the $P_n - M_n$ interaction diagram.

Rectangular sections with reinforcement on all faces: The same strain compatibility trial and adjustment procedure can be used, and a similar operations table developed in order to get the nominal moment strength and the nominal axial load.

9.7 COLUMN STRENGTH REDUCTION FACTOR ϕ

For members subject to flexure and relatively small axial loads, failure is initiated by yielding of the tension reinforcement and takes place in an increasingly ductile manner. Hence for small axial loads, it is reasonable to permit an increase in the ϕ factor from that required for pure compression members. When the axial load vanishes, the member is subjected to pure flexure, and the strength-reduction factor ϕ becomes 0.90. Figure 9.10 shows the zone in which the value of ϕ can be increased from 0.65 to 0.9 for tied columns and 0.75 to 0.9 for spiral columns.

A compression value of $0.10 f'_c A_g$ can be mostly considered as the design axial load value ϕP_n below which the ϕ factor could safely be increased to 0.9 for most compression members.

The strength reduction factor, ϕ, from Figure 9.10 can be linearly interpolated between the compression-controlled state and the tension-controlled states, either as a function of the strain ε_t of the tension reinforcement, or as a function of the neutral axis depth ratio c/d_t.

As shown in Fig. 9.10 the transition expressions in terms of strain ε_t are

$$\text{Spiral} \qquad \phi = 0.75 + (\varepsilon_t - 0.002)\left(\frac{150}{3}\right) \qquad (9.24a)$$

$$\text{Tied} \qquad \phi = 0.65 + (\varepsilon_t - 0.002)\left(\frac{250}{3}\right) \qquad (9.24b)$$

The transition expressions in terms of the neutral axis depth ratio are

$$\text{Spiral} \qquad \phi = 0.75 + 0.15\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right] \qquad (9.25a)$$

$$\text{Tied} \qquad \text{Other: } \phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right] \qquad (9.25b)$$

9.7.1 Example 9.10 Calculation of the Design Load Strength P_u from the Nominal Resisting Load P_n

Calculate the design loads P_u in Examples 9.2 to 9.7 and 9.9 using the appropriate ϕ strength reduction factors.

Solution:

Example 9.2

P_n = 1,135,501 lb spirally reinforced column in axial compression.

Therefore, $\phi = 0.75$

$P_u = 0.75 \times 1{,}135{,}501 = 851{,}625$ lb.

Example 9.3

Tied rectangular columns:

(a) Compression limit strain case: $\phi = 0.65$

$P_n = 364{,}340$ lb

$P_u = 0.65 \times 364{,}340 = 236{,}821$ lb

(b) Limit tension-controlled strain case: $\phi = 0.90$

$P_n = 209{,}112$ lb

$P_u = 0.90 \times 209{,}112 = 188{,}200$ lb

Example 9.4
Transition controlled strain case, $e = 16$ in.

$$P_n = 285{,}600 \text{ lb}, \qquad \frac{c}{d_t} = 0.47$$

From Eq. 9.25(b), with with $P_n > 0.10 f'_c A_g$, no strain check for computing ϕ is needed.

$$\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left[\frac{1}{c/d_t} - \frac{5}{3}\right]$$

$$= 0.65 + 0.25\left[\frac{1}{0.47} - \frac{5}{3}\right]$$

$$= 0.765$$

Hence, $P_u = \phi\, P_n = 0.765 \times 285{,}600 = 218{,}484$ lb

Example 9.5
Tension-controlled rectangular tied column in the transition zone, $e = 10$ in.,

$$P_n = 331{,}642 \text{ lb}, \qquad \frac{c}{d_t} = 0.59$$

From Eq. 9.25(b),

$$\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left(\frac{1}{0.59} - \frac{5}{3}\right)$$

$$= 0.657$$

Hence, $P_u = \phi\, P_n = 0.657 \times 331{,}642 = 217{,}889$ lb

Example 9.6
Compression-controlled rectangular tied column, $e = 10$ in.

$$P_n = 439{,}833 \text{ lb}, \qquad \frac{c}{d_t} = 0.655$$

From Equation 9.25(b),

$$P_u = 0.65 \times 439{,}833 = 285{,}891 \text{ lb}$$

Example 9.7
Compression-controlled rectangular tied column

(a) $e = 6$ in. $\quad P_n = 607{,}555$ lb $\quad \phi = 0.65$

Hence, $P_u = 0.65 \times 607{,}555 = 394{,}911$ lb

(b) $e = 10$ in. $\quad P_n = 460{,}098$ lb $\quad \phi = 0.65$

$$P_u = 0.65 \times 460{,}098 = 299{,}064 \text{ lb}$$

Example 9.9
(a) Transition zone state, Whitney circular column solution

The Whitney transformed column section is here analyzed by the strain limits compatibility approach.

$c = 6.11$ in.; $d_t = 13.0$ in. (Fig. 9.16); hence, the equivalent rectangular column is in the transition zone, with ε_t being less than 0.005 and greater than 0.002.

$\dfrac{c}{d_t} = \dfrac{6.11}{13.0} = 0.47$, and $P_n = 187{,}153$ lb by strain compatibility.

From Equation 9.25(b), for the equivalent tied rectangular section,

$$\text{Tied } \phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left(\frac{1}{0.47} - \frac{5}{3}\right) = 0.765$$

$P_u = 0.765 \times 187{,}153 = 143{,}172$ lb as compared to the Whitney approximate solution that gives $P_u = 151{,}793$ lb.

(b) Compression-controlled state, circular column
$\phi = 0.75$ for circular columns in compression, having a small eccentricity of 5 in., namely, that the axial load is inside the section close to its geometrical centroid.
Whitney's $P_n = 626{,}577$ lb, giving

$$P_u = 0.75 \times 626{,}577 = 469{,}933 \text{ lb.}$$

(c) Transition zone state, circular column (Strain Limits approach)
ϕ can range between 0.70 to 0.90. As shown in the solution of Example 9.9, the section is in the transition zone of Figure 9.10, with the tension face steel in initial yielding.
Strain-compatibility exact solution gave $P_n = 172{,}297$ lb.
$\phi = 0.845$ from before, giving

$$P_u = 0.859 \times 172{,}297 = 148{,}003 \text{ lb.}$$

9.8 LOAD–MOMENT STRENGTH INTERACTION DIAGRAMS (*P–M* DIAGRAMS) FOR COLUMNS CONTROLLED BY MATERIAL FAILURE

From the discussion in Sections 9.3 and 9.4 and the numerical examples presented, we can postulate that the capacity of reinforced concrete sections to resist combined axial and bending loads can be expressed by *P–M* interaction diagrams to relate the axial load to the bending moment in compression members.

Each point on the curve represents one combination of nominal load strength P_n and nominal moment strength M_n corresponding to a particular neutral-axis location. The interaction diagram is separated into the tension control region and the compression control region by the balanced condition. The following example illustrates the construction of the *P–M* diagram for a typical rectangular section.

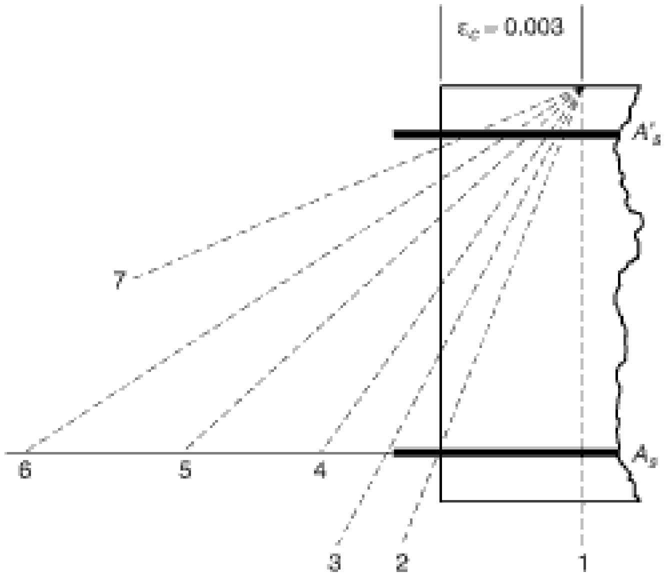
9.8.1 Construction of *P–M* Interaction Diagrams

Controlling coordinates for major points on the interaction diagram are determined by the strain level in the tension reinforcement. The strain level is set by the position of the neutral axis depth, c, for the strain and stress states shown in Figure 9.20. Seven states for depth c are indicated, as an example, in Figure 9.20. The neutral axis depth, c_b, in case 4 denotes the balanced strain condition, namely, when the tensile reinforcement yields simultaneously with the crushing of the concrete at the extreme compression fibers. This state represents the coordinates P_b and M_b in Figure 9.21.

9.8.2 Example 9.11: Load-Moment Interaction Diagram for Rectangular Columns

Construct a *P–M* diagram for the rectangular column shown in Figure 9.22, having the geometry: width $b = 12$ in. (305 mm); thickness $h = 14$ in. (356 mm); steel reinforcement = 4 No. 11 bars (35.8 mm diameter), for the following conditions, given $f_c' = 6000$ psi (414 MPa), $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa), $d' = 3.0$ in. (76 mm):

(i) Concentrated load,
(ii) Limit compression-controlled strain state (balanced strain condition),
(iii) Limit tension-controlled strain state,
(iv) Axial load $P_n = 0.10 f_c' A_g$,
(v) $c = 10$ in.,
(vi) Pure bending, M_n



1. $c = \infty$ — $P_n = 0.85f'_c bh + (A'_s + A_s)(f_y - 0.85f'_c)$, No steel in tension
2. $c_1 = d$ — $\varepsilon_t = 0$ (strain in compression)
3. $c_2 = 87d/(87 + f_y/2)$ — $\varepsilon_t = f_y/2E_s$
4. $c_b = 87d/(87 + f_y)$ — $\varepsilon_t = f_y/E_s$
5. $c_3 = 174d/(470 + f_y)$ — $\varepsilon_t = ½(\varepsilon_y + 0.005)$
6. $c_4 = 3d/8$ — $\varepsilon_t = 0.005$
7. $c_5 = 0.3d$ — $\varepsilon_t > 0.005$

(ε_t = strain in tensile reinforcement)

Figure 9.20 Strain distribution across section depth for controlling neutral axis positions on the $P - M$ interaction diagram.

Solution:

(i) *Concentrated load*

$c = \alpha$, hence $\phi = 0.65$. Also $\beta_1 = 0.75$ for $f'_c = 6000$ psi.

$A'_s = A_s = 3.12$

$$P_{n\,(\max)} = 0.80(0.85\, f'_c A_g + A_{st} f_y)$$
$$= 0.80\,(0.85 \times 6000 \times 14 \times 12 + 2 \times 3.12 \times 60{,}000) = 984{,}960 \text{ lb.}$$

$$\phi\, P_{n\,(\max)} = 0.65\,(P_{n\,(\max)}) = 640{,}224 \text{ lb.}$$

(ii) *Limit compression-controlled strain state*

This is the balanced strain condition, with the tensile reinforcement yielding simultaneously with the concrete crushing at the extreme compression fibers ($f_s = 60{,}000$ psi).

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.60 \qquad \varepsilon_c = 0.003 \text{ in./in.} \qquad \varepsilon_s = 0.002 \text{ in./in.}$$

$$d = 14.0 - 3.0 = 11.0 \text{ in.} \qquad d' = 3.0 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = 0.60 \times 11.0 = 6.60 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = 0.75 \times 6.60 = 4.95 \text{ in.}$$

$$\varepsilon'_s = 0.003\left(\frac{c - d'}{c}\right) = 0.003\left(\frac{6.60 - 3.0}{6.60}\right) = 0.0016 \text{ in./in.}$$

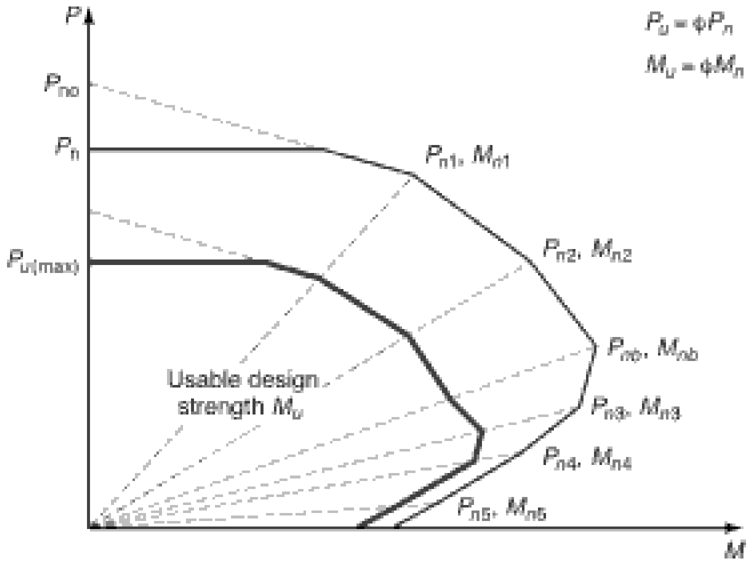


Figure 9.21 Typical load-moment P–M interaction diagram in compression members (Ref. 9.9).

$$f_s' = \varepsilon_s' E_s = 0.0016 \times 29 \times 10^6 = 46{,}400 \text{ psi } \le f_y$$
$$f_s = f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi.}$$
$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' b\, a = 0.85 \times 6{,}000 \times 12 \times 4.95 = 302{,}940 \text{ lb.}$$
$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 3.12 \times 46{,}400 = 144{,}768 \text{ lb.}$$
$$T_s = A_s f_y = 3.12 \times 60{,}000 = 187{,}200 \text{ lb.}$$

From Equation 9.4,

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 302{,}940 + 144{,}768 - 187{,}200 = 260{,}508 \text{ lb.}$$

From Equation 9.5,

$$M_n = C_c\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'\right) + T_s\left(d - \frac{h}{2}\right)$$
$$= 302{,}940\left(\frac{14}{2} - \frac{4.95}{2}\right) + 144{,}768\left(\frac{14}{2} - 3.0\right) + 187{,}200\left(11 - \frac{14}{2}\right) = 2{,}698{,}676 \text{ in.-lb.}$$
$$e_c = \frac{2{,}698{,}676}{260{,}508} = 10.36 \text{ in.}$$

Design $P_u = \phi\, P_n = 0.65 \times 260{,}508 = 169{,}330$ lb

Design $M_u = \phi\, M_n = 0.65 \times 2{,}698{,}676 = 1{,}754{,}139$ in.-lb

(iii) ***Limit tension-controlled strain state***

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.375 \qquad \varepsilon_t = 0.005 \text{ in./in.}$$
$$c = 0.375 \times 11.0 = 4.125 \text{ in.}$$
$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.75 \times 4.125 = 3.09 \text{ in.}$$
$$f_s' = 87{,}000\left(\frac{4.125 - 3.0}{4.125}\right) = 23{,}727 \textit{ psi.} \quad \le f_y$$
$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' b\, a = 0.85 \times 6{,}000 \times 12 \times 3.09 = 189{,}108 \text{ lb.}$$

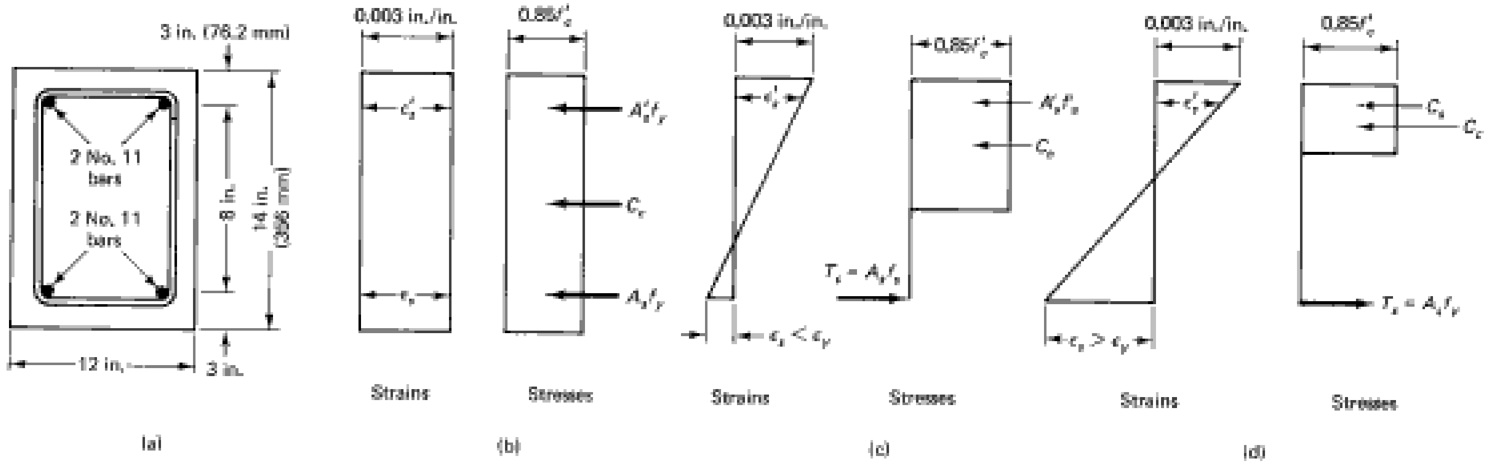


Figure 9.22 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams for Ex. 9.11: (a) cross section; (b) concentric load (compression failure); (c) compression failure; (d) tension failure.

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 3.12 \times 23{,}727 = 74{,}028 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_y = 3.12 \times 60{,}000 = 187{,}200 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 189{,}108 + 74{,}028 - 187{,}200 = 75{,}936 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = 189{,}108\left(\frac{14}{2} - \frac{3.09}{2}\right) + 74{,}028\left(\frac{14}{2} - 3.0\right) + 187{,}200\left(11 - \frac{14}{2}\right) = 2{,}076{,}496 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

$$e_t = \frac{2{,}076{,}496}{75{,}936} = 27.3 \text{ in.}$$

From Figure 9.10, $\phi_{0.005} = 0.90$, therefore.

Design $P_u = \phi\ P_n = 0.90 \times 75{,}936 = 68{,}342$ lb

Design $M_u = \phi\ M_n = 0.90 \times 2{,}076{,}496 = 1{,}868{,}846$ in.-lb

(iv) $\phi P_n = 0.10 f_c' A_g$ case:

$$\phi\ P_u = 0.10 \times 6000 \times 12 \times 14 = 100{,}800 \text{ lb.}$$

By trial and adjustment, assume $c = 4.64$

$$a = 0.75 \times 4.64 = 3.48 \text{ in.}$$

$$f_s' = 87{,}000\left(\frac{4.64 - 3.0}{4.64}\right) = 30{,}750 \text{ psi} < f_y$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' b\, a = 0.85 \times 6{,}000 \times 12 \times 3.48 = 212{,}976 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 3.12 \times 30{,}750 = 95{,}940 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_y = 3.12 \times 60{,}000 = 187{,}200 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 212{,}976 + 95{,}940 - 187{,}200 = 121{,}716 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = 212{,}976\left(7.0 - \frac{3.48}{2}\right) + 95{,}940\,(7.0 - 3.0) + 187{,}200\,(11.0 - 7.0) = 2{,}252{,}814 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

$$e_n = \frac{2{,}252{,}814}{121{,}716} = 18.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{4.64}{11.0} = 0.422 > 0.375 < 0.60$$

Hence, the section is in the transition stage of Fig. 9.10. From Eq. 9.25(b) for tied columns,

$$\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left(\frac{1}{0.422} - \frac{5}{3}\right) = 0.826$$

Therefore, $P_u = 0.826 \times 121{,}716 = 100{,}051$ lb $\doteq 100{,}537$ lb; hence assumed $c = 4.64$ is valid.

$$M_u = \phi\ M_n = 0.826 \times 2{,}252{,}814 = 1{,}860{,}224 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Comparing this load case with the limit tensile-controlled case shows that the $P_n - M_n$ intercept below the $P_u = 0.10 f_c'\ A_g / \phi$ load level is expected to be in the transitional zone of the interaction diagram, where ε_t is less than 0.005 and the tension face steel yielded.

(v) c = 10 in. case:

$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{10}{11} = 0.91 > 0.60$, hence, from Figure 9.10, strength reduction factor $\phi = 0.65$.

From Equation 9.9(b)

$$f_s' = 0.003\ E_s\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{3.0}{10.0}\right) = 60{,}900 > f_y$$

Use $f_s' = 60{,}000$ psi.
From Equation 9.10(b),

$$f_s = 0.003\,E_s\left(\frac{d}{c} - 1\right) = 0.003 \times 29 \times 10^6\left(\frac{11}{10} - 1\right) = 8{,}700 \text{ psi}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.75 \times 10.0 = 7.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' \, b\, a = 0.85 \times 6{,}000 \times 12 \times 7.5 = 459{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 3.12 \times 60{,}000 = 187{,}200 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s = 3.12 \times 8{,}700 = 27{,}144 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 459{,}000 + 187{,}200 - 27{,}144 = 619{,}056 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = C_c\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s(\bar{y} - d') + T_s(d - \bar{y})$$

$$= 459{,}000\left(7.0 - \frac{7.5}{2}\right) + 187{,}200(7.0 - 3.0) + 27{,}144(11.0 - 7.0) = 2{,}349{,}126 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

$$e_t = \frac{M_n}{P_n} = \frac{2{,}349{,}126}{619{,}056} = 3.79 \text{ in.}$$

$$P_u = \phi\, P_n = 0.65 \times 619{,}056 = 402{,}386 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_u = \phi\, M_n = 0.65 \times 2{,}349{,}126 = 1{,}526{,}932 \text{ in.-lb}$$

(vi) ***Pure bending*** M_{no}:
Neglect A_s' when $P_u = 0$ as sufficiently accurate when $A_s = A_s'$ as is the case in most columns. Otherwise a negative value of f_s' or a negligible value could result.

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f_c' \, b} = \frac{3.12 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 6{,}000 \times 12} = \frac{187{,}200}{61{,}200} = 3.06 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{3.06}{0.75} = 4.08 \text{ in.}$$

(For this neutral axis depth, $f_s' = 22{,}910$ psi.)

$$P_{no} = 0, \qquad e_t = 0, \qquad \phi = 0.90$$

$$M_{no} = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 187{,}200\left(11.0 - \frac{3.06}{2}\right) = 1{,}772{,}784 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

$$M_{uo} = \phi\, M_{no} = 0.90 \times 1{,}772{,}784 = 1{,}595{,}506 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

Construct the $P_n - M_n$ and $P_u - M_u$ interaction diagrams as shown in Figure 9.23 for the following neutral axis depth, c (in.):

$c = \infty$ – Compression-controlled

$c = 10.0$ in. – Compression-controlled

$c = 6.60$ in. – Limit compression-controlled strain case

$c = 4.64$ in. – $0.10 f_c' A_g$ load level

$c = 4.13$ in. – Limit tension-controlled strain case

$c = 4.08$ in. – Pure bending case, M_o

A systematic selection of coordinates for plotting the $P_n - M_n$ interaction diagram for the various loading stages is given in Figs. 9.20, 9.21 through the selection of neutral axis depth, c, and such interaction diagram coordinates as to cover the complete range of behavior. Typical charts from [illegible] are shown in Fig. 9.24. Example 9.14, to follow, demonstrates the use of the charts for rapid proportioning of compression members.

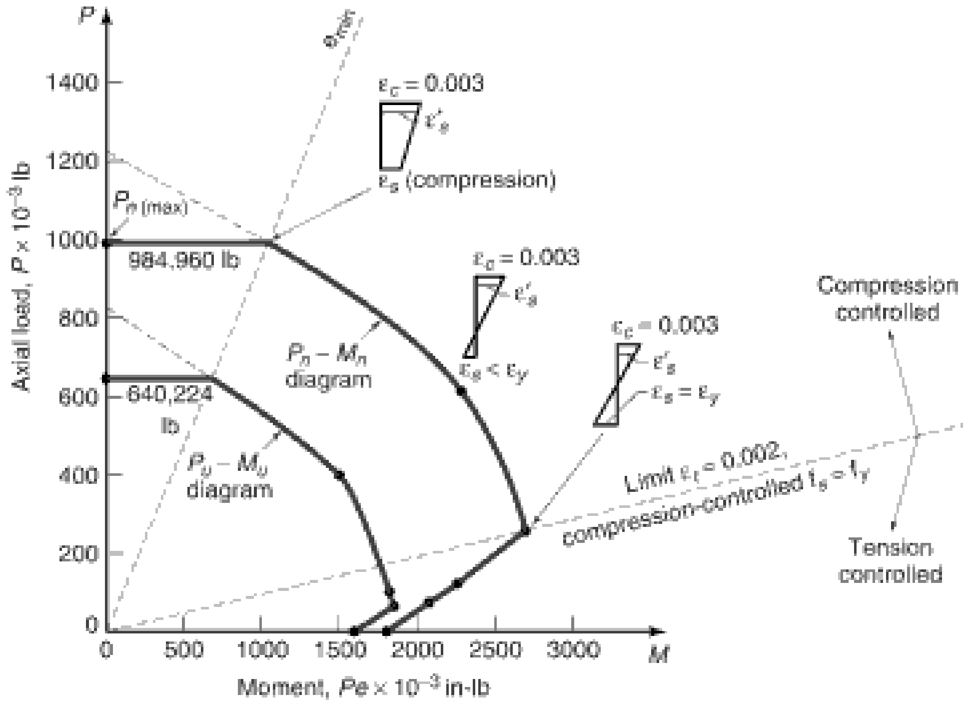


Figure 9.23 *P–M* interaction diagram for Ex. 9.11.

9.9 PRACTICAL DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

The following guidelines should be followed in the design and arrangement of reinforcement to arrive at a practical design.

9.9.1 Longitudinal or Main Reinforcement

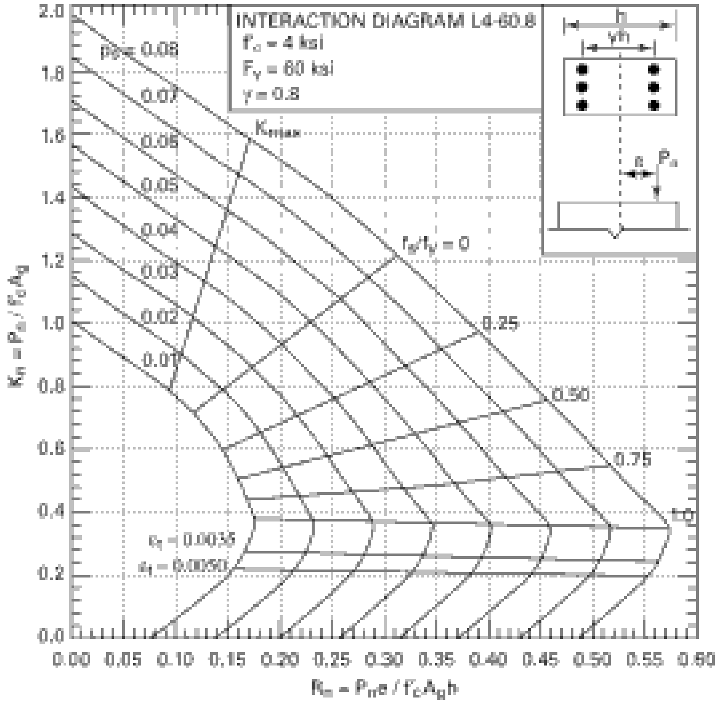
Most columns are subjected to bending moment in addition to axial force. For this reason and to ensure some ductility, a minimum of 1% reinforcement should be provided in the columns. A reasonable reinforcement ratio is between 1.5% and 3.0%. Occasionally, in high-rise buildings where column loads are very large, 4% reinforcement is not unreasonable. Even though the code allows a maximum of 8% for longitudinal reinforcement in columns, it is not advisable to use more than 4% in order to avoid reinforcement congestion, especially at beam–column junctions.

A minimum of four longitudinal bars should be used in the case of tied columns. For spiral columns, at least six longitudinal bars should be used to provide hoop action in the spirals; see the ACI Code for further discussion.

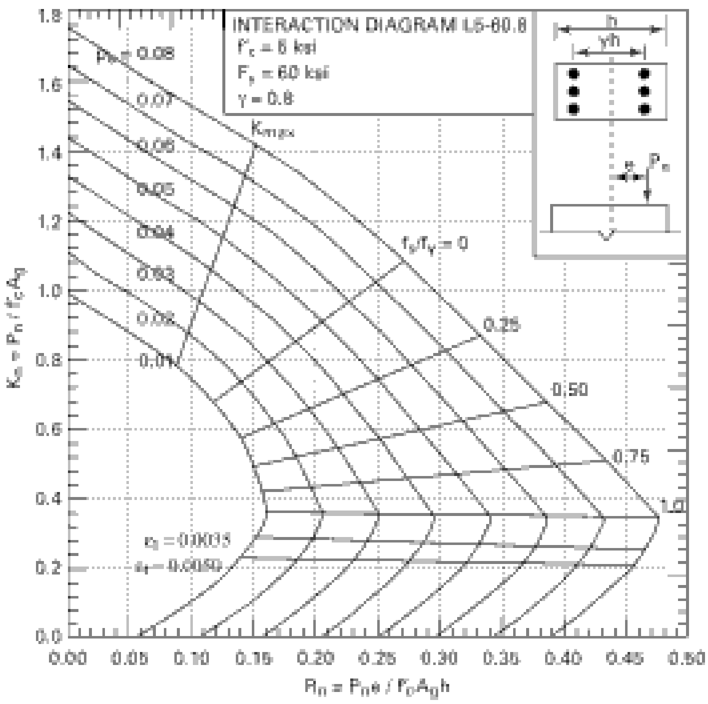
9.9.2 Lateral Reinforcement for Columns

9.9.2.1 Lateral Ties. Lateral reinforcement is required to prevent spalling of the concrete cover or local buckling of the longitudinal bars. The lateral reinforcement could be in the form of ties evenly distributed along the height of the column at specified intervals. Longitudinal bars spaced more than 6 in. apart should be supported by lateral ties, as shown in Figure 9.25.

The following guidelines are to be followed for the selection of the size and spacing of ties, except in the case of earthquake design (see Chapter 16).



(a)



(b)

Figure 9.24 Typical nondimensional column interaction charts:(a) for $f_c' = 4{,}000$ psi; (b) for $f_c' = 5{,}000$ psi (Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

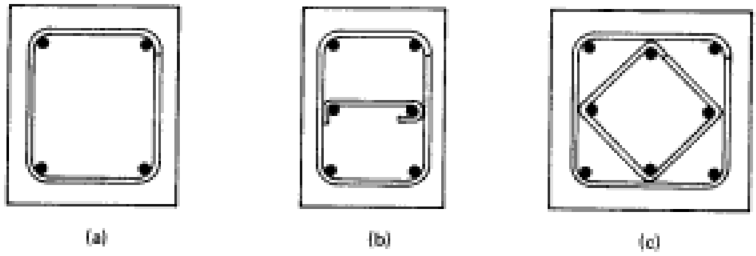


Figure 9.25 Typical ties arrangement for four, six, and eight longitudinal bars in a column: (a) one tie; (b) two ties; (c) two ties.

1. The size of the tie should not be less than a No. 3 (9.5-mm) bar. If the longitudinal bar size is larger than No. 10 (32 mm), then No. 4 (12-mm) bars at least should be used as ties.
2. The vertical spacing of the ties must not exceed:
   (a) Forty-eight times the diameter of the tie
   (b) Sixteen times the diameter of the longitudinal bar
   (c) Least lateral dimension of the column

Figure 9.25 shows a typical arrangement of ties for four, six, and eight longitudinal bars in a column cross-section.

9.9.2.2 Spirals. The other type of lateral reinforcement is spirals or helical lateral reinforcement, as shown in Figure 9.26. They are particularly useful in increasing ductility or member toughness and hence are mandatory in high-earthquake-risk regions. Normally, concrete outside the confined core of the spirally reinforced column can totally spall under unusual and sudden lateral forces such as earthquake-induced forces. The columns have to be able to sustain most of the load even after the spalling of the cover in order to prevent the collapse of the building. Hence the spacing and size of spirals are designed to maintain most of the load-carrying capacity of the column, even under such severe load conditions.

Closely spaced spiral reinforcement increases the ultimate load capacity of columns. The spacing or pitch of the spiral is so chosen that the load capacity due to the confining spiral action compensates for the loss due to spalling of the concrete cover.

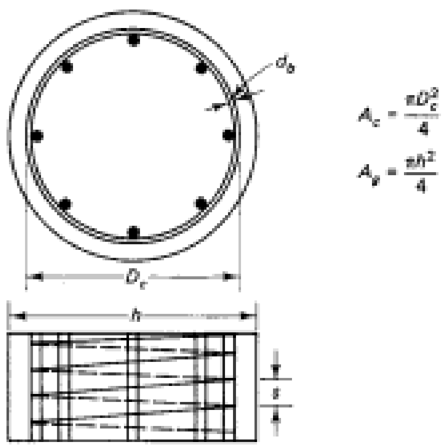


Figure 9.26 Helical or spiral reinforcement for columns.

Equating the increase in strength due to confinement and the loss of capacity in spalling and incorporating a safety factor of 1.2, the following minimum spiral reinforcement ratio ρ_s is obtained:

$$\rho_s = 0.45\left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1\right)\frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}} \tag{9.26}$$

$$\text{where } \rho_s = \frac{\text{volume of the spiral steel in one revolution}}{\text{volume of concrete core contained in one revolution}}$$

$$A_c = \frac{\pi D_c^2}{4}$$

$$A_g = \frac{\pi h^2}{4} \tag{9.27a}$$

h = diameter of the column (9.27b)

a_s = cross-sectional area of the spiral

d_b = nominal diameter of the spiral wire

D_c = diameter of the concrete core out-to-out of the spiral

f_{sy} = yield strength of the spiral reinforcement

To determine the pitch s of the spiral, calculate ρ_s using Eq. 9.26, choose a bar diameter d_b for the spiral, and calculate a_s; then obtain pitch s using Eq. 9.29(b).

The spiral reinforcement ratio ρ_s can be written as

$$\rho_s = \frac{a_s\pi(D_c - d_b)}{(\pi/4)D_c^2 s} \tag{9.28}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{pitch } s = \frac{a_s\pi(D_c - d_b)}{(\pi/4)D_c^2\rho_s} \tag{9.29a}$$

or

$$s = \frac{4a_s(D_c - d_b)}{D_c^2\rho_s} \tag{9.29b}$$

The spacing or pitch of spirals is limited to a range of 1 to 3 in. (25.4 to 76.2 mm), and the diameter should be at least $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.53 mm). The spirals should be well anchored by providing at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ extra turns when splicing of spirals rather than welding is used.

9.10 OPERATIONAL PROCEDURE FOR THE DESIGN OF NONSLENDER COLUMNS

The following steps can be used for the design of nonslender (short) columns where the behavior is controlled by material failure.

1. Check whether the column is nonslender. A nonslender column satisfies a height ratio value (l_u/h) less than 12 (Furlong, Ref. 9.17).
2. Evaluate the factored external axial load P_u and factored moment M_u. Calculate the eccentricity $e = M_u/P_u$.

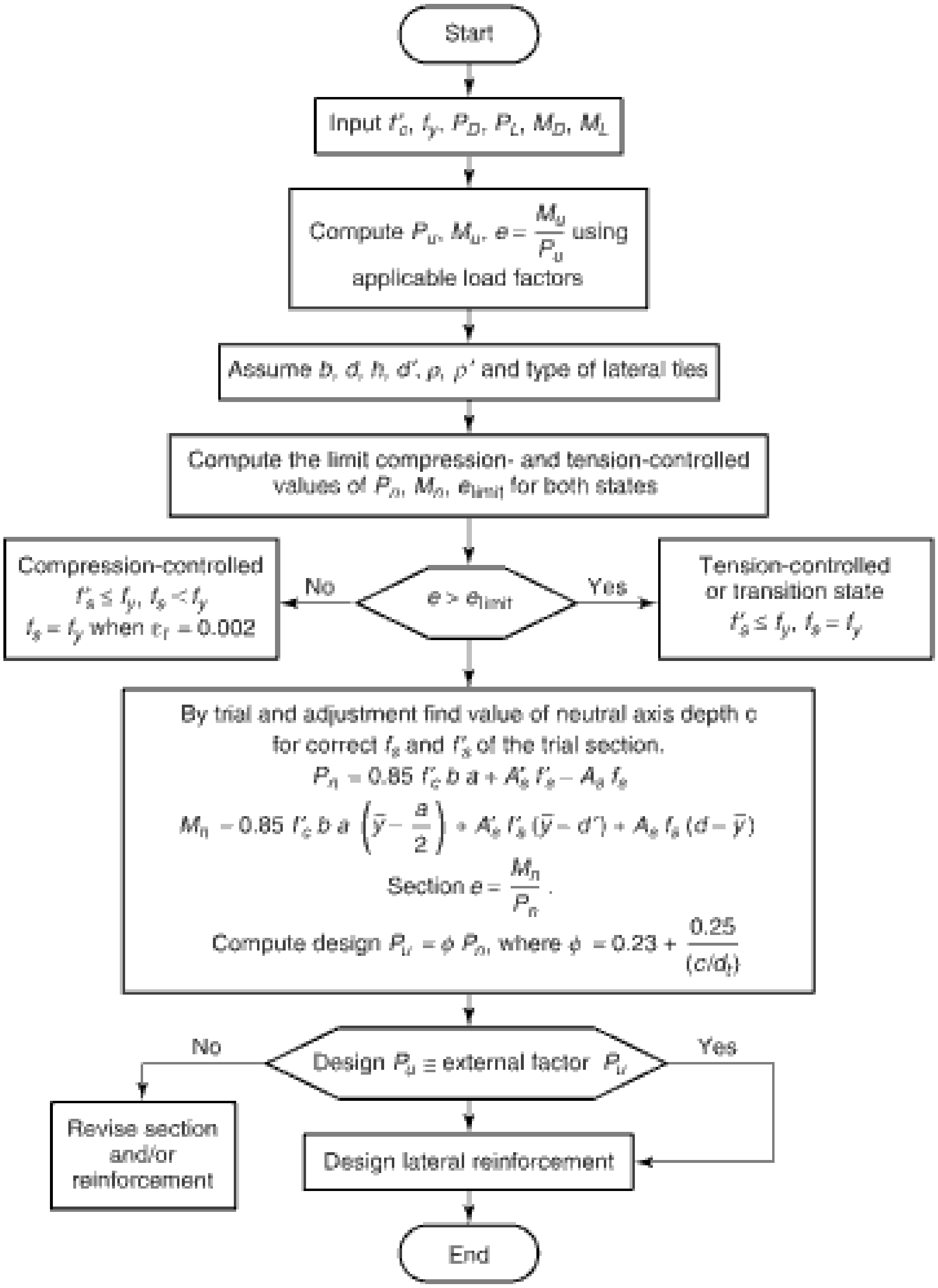


Figure 9.27 Flowchart for design of nonslender rectangular columns with bars on two faces only.

3. Assume a cross-section and the type of vertical reinforcement to be used. Fractional dimensions are to be avoided in selecting column sizes.
4. Assume a reinforcement ratio ρ between 1 and 4% and obtain the reinforcement area.
5. Assume by a trail and adjustment a neutral axis depth ratio c/d_t for a limit compression-controlled state or transition state as described in the limit-strain hypothesis.

6. Check for the adequacy of the assumed section. If the section cannot support the factored load or it is oversized, hence uneconomical, revise the cross-section and (or) the reinforcement and repeat steps 4 and 5.
7. Design the lateral reinforcement.

Figure 9.27 presents a flowchart for the sequence of calculations.

9.11 NUMERICAL EXAMPLES FOR ANALYSIS AND DESIGN OF NONSLENDER COLUMNS

9.11.1 Example 9.12: Design of a Column with Large Eccentricity; Initial Tension Failure

The tied reinforced concrete column in Figure 9.28 is subjected to a service axial force due to dead load = 85,000 lb (378 kN) and a service axial force due to live load = 160,000 lb (556 kN). Eccentricity to the geometric centroid is $e = 16$ in. (406 mm).

Design the longitudinal and lateral reinforcement for this column, assuming a nonslender column with a total reinforcement ratio between 2 and 3%. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Solution: *Calculate the factored external load and moment (step 1)*

$$P_u = 1.2D + 1.6L = 1.2 \times 85{,}000 + 1.6 \times 160{,}000 = 358{,}000 \text{ lb (1595 kN)}$$
$$P_u e = 358{,}000 \times 16 = 5{,}728{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (648 kN-m)}$$

Assume a section 20 in. × 20 in. and a total reinforcement ratio of 3% (steps 2 and 3)

$$\text{Assume that } \rho = \rho' = A_s/bd = 0.015 \text{ and } d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$A_s = A'_s = 0.015 \times 20\,(20 - 2.5) = 5.25 \text{ in.}^2$$

Try five No. 9 bars, 5.00 in.^{2} on each face (3225 mm^2) parallel to the axis of bending.

$$\rho = \frac{5.00}{20 \times 17.5} = 0.0143 \text{ on each face}$$

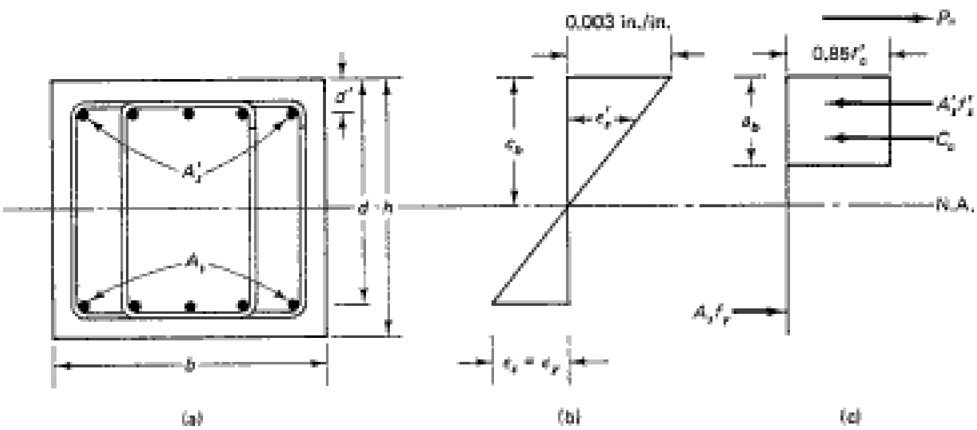


Figure 9.28 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams in Ex. 9.12 (balanced strain state): (a) cross-section; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

Limit compression-controlled state (Step 4)

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.60 \qquad \varepsilon_t = 0.002 \text{ in./in.} \qquad d_t = 17.5 \text{ in.} \qquad d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = 0.60 \times 17.5 = 10.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 10.5 = 8.925 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.9(b)

$$f'_s = \varepsilon'_c E_s\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{10.5}\right) = 66{,}286 > f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi.}$$

Hence, $f'_s = 60{,}000$ psi

$$f_s = \varepsilon_s E_s = 0.002 \times 29 \times 10^6 = 60{,}000 \text{ psi for the limit case}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f'_c\, b\, a = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 20 \times 8.925 = 606{,}900 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = A'_s f'_s = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = 606{,}900 \text{ lb. as } A'_s f'_s = A_s f_y$$

From Equation 9.8(b)

$$M_n = P_n e_c = C_c\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s(\bar{y} - d') + T_s(d - \bar{y})$$

$$= 606{,}900\left(10 - \frac{8.925}{2}\right) + 300{,}000(10 - 2.5) + 300{,}000(17.5 - 10) = 7{,}860{,}709 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

Limit $e_c = \dfrac{M_n}{P_n} = \dfrac{7{,}860{,}709}{606{,}900} = 12.95$ in. < actual $e = 16$ in.

Therefore, this column is either in the tensile-controlled zone or in the transition zone, with $f_s = 60{,}000$ psi.

Limit tension-controlled state (Step 4)

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.375 \qquad \varepsilon_t = 0.005 \text{ in./in.} \qquad d_t = 17.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = 0.375 \times 17.5 = 6.563 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 6.563 = 5.57 \text{ in.}$$

$$f'_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{6.563}\right) = 53{,}860 \text{ psi.}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f'_c\, b\, a = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 20 \times 5.57 = 378{,}760 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = A'_s f'_s = 5.0 \times 53{,}860 = 269{,}300 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_y = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = 378{,}760 + 269{,}300 - 300{,}000 = 348{,}060 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = P_n e_t = C_c\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s(\bar{y} - d') + T_s(d - \bar{y})$$

$$= 378{,}760\left(10 - \frac{5.57}{2}\right) + 269{,}300(10 - 2.5) + 300{,}000(17.5 - 10) = 7{,}002{,}503 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

Limit $e_t = \dfrac{M_n}{P_n} = \dfrac{7{,}002{,}503}{348{,}060} = 20.1$ in. > actual $e = 16$ in., hence assume larger neutral axis depth value in order to decrease the eccentricity.

Analysis of assumed section (Step 5)
The column is within the transition zone of Figure 9.10. By trial and adjustment, assume a larger value of $c = 8.20$ in., giving

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{8.20}{17.5} = 0.469 < 0.60.$$

Thus, $\varepsilon_t > 0.002$, with the tension face steel $f_s = f_y = 60{,}000$ psi.

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 8.20 = 6.97 \text{ in.}$$

$$f_s' = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{8.20}\right) = 60{,}476 \text{ psi.} > f_y, \text{ thus } 60{,}000 \text{ psi.}$$

$$C_c = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 20 \times 6.97 = 473{,}960 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 473{,}960 \text{ lb. (2108 kN) since } C_s = T_s$$

$$M_n = 473{,}960\left(10 - \frac{6.97}{2}\right) + 300{,}000\,(10 - 2.5) + 300{,}000\,(17.5 - 10) = 7{,}587{,}850 \text{ in.-lb.}$$

$e_t = \dfrac{M_n}{P_n} = \dfrac{7{,}587{,}850}{473{,}960} = 16.00$ in. = actual $e = 16$ in., hence, compatibility is validated and the section can be adopted after checking with the factored P_u.

$P_n = 473{,}960 > 0.10 f_c' A_g$, hence no limitation on strain ε_t in the transition zone.

From Equation 9.25(b) for tied columns,

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{8.20}{17.5} = 0.469$$

$$\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left(\frac{1}{0.469} - \frac{5}{3}\right) = 0.766$$

Design axial load $P_d = \phi P_n = 0.766 \times 473{,}960 = 363{,}053 >$ Required $P_u = 358{,}000$ lb.

Therefore, adopt the 20×20 in. section with 5 No. 9 reinforcing bars in one layer at each of the faces parallel to the bending axis.

9.11.2 Example 9.13: Design of a Column with Small Eccentricity; Initial Compression Failure

The nonslender column shown in Figure 9.29 is subjected to a factored $P_u = 365{,}000$ lb (1620 kN) and a factored $M_u = 1{,}640{,}000$ in.-lb (185 kNm). Assume that the gross reinforcement ratio $\rho_g = 1.5$ to 2% and that the effective cover to the center of the longitudinal steel is $d' = 2\frac{1}{2}$ in. (63.5 mm). Design the column section and the necessary longitudinal and transverse reinforcement. Given:

$$f_c' = 4500 \text{ psi (31.0 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Solution: *Calculation of factored design loads (step 1)*

$$P_u = 365{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$e = \frac{1{,}640{,}000}{365{,}000} = 4.5 \text{ in. (114 mm)}$$

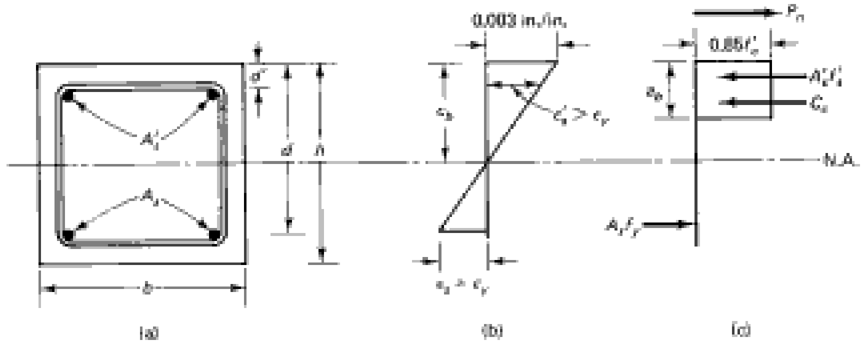


Figure 9.29 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams in Ex. 9.13: (a) cross section; (b) strains (balanced case); (c) stresses.

Assume a 15 in. × 15 in. (d = 12.5 in.) section (steps 2 and 3)

Assume that the reinforcement ratio $\rho = \rho' = 0.01$.

$$A_s = A'_s = 0.01 \times 15 \times 12.5 = 1.875 \text{ in.}^2$$

Provide two No. 9 bars on each side.

$$A_s = A'_s = 2.0 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (1290 mm}^2\text{)}$$

The eccentricity is relatively small, hence, the section is in all probability compression-controlled.

Limit compression-controlled state (Step 4)

$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.} \qquad d_t = 15 - 2.5 = 12.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.60, \text{ hence } c = 0.60 \times 12.5 = 7.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$\beta_1 = 0.85 - 0.05\frac{(4500 - 4000)}{1000} = 0.825$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.825 \times 7.5 = 6.19 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.9(b),

$$f'_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) \le f_y$$

$$= 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{7.5}\right) = 58{,}000 \text{ psi.}$$

$$f_s = \epsilon_s E_s = 0.002 \times 29 \times 10^6 = 60{,}000 \text{ psi for this limit case in tension}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f'_c\, b\, a = 0.85 \times 4500 \times 15 \times 6.19 = 355{,}151 \text{ lb.}$$

$$C_s = A'_s f'_s = 2.0 \times 58{,}000 = 116{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s = 2.0 \times 60{,}000 = 120{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

$$P_n = 355{,}151 + 116{,}000 - 120{,}000 = 351{,}151 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = C_c\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s(\bar{y} - d') + T_s(d - \bar{y})$$

$$= 355{,}151\left(7.5 - \frac{6.19}{2}\right) + 116{,}000\,(7.5 - 2.5) + 120{,}000\,(12.5 - 7.5) = 2{,}744{,}440 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Limit } e_c = \frac{M_n}{P_c} = \frac{2{,}744{,}440}{351{,}151} = 7.82 \text{ in.} > \text{actual } e = 4.5 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, increase the neutral axis depth, c, in order to enlarge the volume of the compressive block.

Trial and adjustment analysis of column section (Step 5)

Assume $c = 9.9$ in.

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.825 \times 9.9 = 8.168 \text{ in.}$$

$$f_s' = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{9.9}\right) = 65{,}030 \text{ psi.} > f_y, \text{ use } f_s' = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$f_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{12.5}{9.9} - 1\right) = 22{,}848 \text{ psi}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' \, b \, a = 0.85 \times 4500 \times 15 \times 8.168 = 468{,}639 \text{ lb}$$

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 2.0 \times 60{,}000 = 120{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s = 2.0 \times 22{,}848 = 45{,}696 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = 468{,}639 + 120{,}000 - 45{,}696 = 542{,}943 \text{ lb}$$

$$M_n = 468{,}639\left(7.5 - \frac{8.168}{2}\right) + 120{,}000\,(7.5 - 2.5) + 45{,}696\,(12.5 - 7.5) = 2{,}429{,}351 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$e = \frac{M_n}{P_n} = \frac{2{,}429{,}351}{542{,}943} = 4.47 \text{ in.} \doteq \text{actual } e = 4.5 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, strain-compatibility analysis is validated. There is no need to compute the limit tension-controlled eccentricity. By inspection, the small value of the actual eccentricity, $e = 4.5$ in., indicates that the axial load is close to the centroid of the column cross section, and that it is not possible to develop tensile failure or transitional failure.

$P_n = 542{,}943 > 0.10 f_c' A_g$, hence no limitation on strain ε_t in the transition zone.

From Equation 9.25(b) for tied columns,

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = \frac{9.9}{12.5} = 0.79 > 0.60, \text{ compression controlled}$$

If the transition term is used,

$$\phi = 0.65 + 0.25\left(\frac{1}{0.79} - \frac{5}{3}\right) = 0.549 < 0.65, \qquad \text{use } \phi = 0.65$$

Design $P_u = \phi P_n = 0.65 \times 542{,}943 = 352{,}913$ lb < Required $P_u = 365{,}000$ lb., but close to it. In a second cycle, a section 16 in. × 16 in. gives the required design P_u capacity for the same amount of reinforcement.

Therefore, adopt the 16 × 16 in. rectangular section with 2 No. 9 reinforcing bars on each of the two faces parallel to the axis of bending.

Design of column ties (Step 6)

Use No. 3 ties at the least of the following spacings,

(1) $16 \times \frac{9}{8} = 18$ in.

(2) $48 \times \frac{3}{8} = 18$ in.

(3) Least dimension = 16 in.

Therefore, provide No.3 ties at 16 in. spacing (9.53-mm diameter at 406-mm spacing).

9.11.3 Example 9.14: Design of a Circular Spirally Reinforced Column

A spirally reinforced circular column is subjected to an external factored load $P_u = 145{,}000$ lb (645 kN) acting at an eccentricity to the geometric centroid of magnitude $e = 16$ in. (406 mm). Design the column cross-section and the longitudinal and spiral reinforcement necessary, assuming a nonsl[illegible] ment ratio of about $1\frac{1}{2}$%. Use the P–M interaction charts A23 and A24 in Appendix A. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_{fy} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

Solution: *Calculation of factored external loads (step 1)*

Given: $P_u = 145{,}000$ lb. $f'_c = 4{,}000$ psi

$e = 16$ in. $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi

$d' = 2.5$ in.

First Trial (Step 1)

Assume a column diameter = 18 in. Because eccentricity is large, with the axial load even falling outside the section, the column would be either tension-controlled or is transitional (see Figure 9.10). Spiral ϕ for compression-controlled = 0.75. Spiral ϕ for tension-controlled = 0.90. Try at this stage using $\phi = 0.85$.

$$P_n = \frac{P_u}{\phi} = \frac{145{,}000}{0.85} = 170{,}588 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_n = e\,P_n = 16 \times 170{,}588 = 2{,}729{,}400 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\gamma = \frac{h - 2d'}{h} = \frac{18 - 2 \times 2.5}{18} = 0.72$$

$$A_g = \pi\left(\frac{h}{2}\right)^2 = 3.14\left(\frac{18}{2}\right)^2 = 253 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$K_n = \frac{P_n}{f'_c A_g} = \frac{170{,}588}{4{,}000 \times 253} = 0.169$$

$$R_n = \frac{M_n}{f'_c A_g h} = \frac{2{,}729{,}400}{4{,}000 \times 253 \times 18} = 0.150$$

From Appendix A Interaction chart No. A23,

$\rho_g = 0.025 > 0.015$ required in the problem statement.

Hence, enlarge the section to $h = 20$ in.

$$\gamma = \frac{h - 2d'}{h} = \frac{20 - 2 \times 2.5}{20} = 0.75$$

$$A_g = \pi\left(\frac{h}{2}\right)^2 = \pi\left(\frac{20}{2}\right)^2 = 314 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$K_n = \frac{P_n}{f'_c A_g} = \frac{170{,}588}{4{,}000 \times 314} = 0.136$$

$$R_n = \frac{M_n}{f'_c A_g h} = \frac{2{,}729{,}400}{4{,}000 \times 314 \times 20} = 0.109$$

Interpolating from Interaction charts A23 and A24, $\rho_g = 0.015$

$$A_s = 0.015 \times 314 = 4.71 \text{ in.}^2$$

For No. 8 bars, $n = \dfrac{4.71}{0.79} = 5.96$ bars.

Use 6 No. 8 bars equally spaced, $A_s = 4.74$ in.^{2}

Check ϕ (Step 4)

$0.10\, f'_c Ag = 0.10 \times 4000 \times 253 = 101{,}200$ lb

$< P_u = 145{,}000$ lb. Hence the 0.004 in/in. minimum value is not applicable [see Sec. 9.5.2(3)]

From the chart, $\epsilon_t = 0.0045$ in./in.

From Equation 9.24(a)

$$\text{Spiral } \phi = 0.75 + (\varepsilon_t - 0.002)\left(\frac{150}{3}\right)$$

$$= 0.70 + (0.0043 - 0.002)\left(\frac{150}{3}\right) = 0.865$$

$P_u = \phi P_n = 0.865 \times 170{,}588 = 147{,}559$ lb. > required $P_u = 145{,}000$ lb. (645 kN).

Therefore, adopt the 20-in. (508-mm) diameter section with 6 No. 8 bars equally spaced.

Design the spiral reinforcement (Step 6)

Using Eq. 9.26,

$$\text{required } \rho_s = 0.45\left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1\right)\frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$$

Using No. 3 spirals with a yield strength $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi:

$$\text{clear concrete cover } d_c = 1.5 \text{ in. (38 mm)}$$

$$f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$D_c = h - 2d_c = 20.0 - 2 \times 1.5 = 17.0 \text{ in. (432 mm)}$$

$$A_{ch} = \frac{\pi(17.0)^2}{4} = 226.98 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_g = 314.0 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\rho_s = 0.45\left(\frac{314}{226.98} - 1\right)\frac{4000}{60{,}000} = 0.011$$

For No. 3 spirals, $a_s = 0.11$ in.^{2} Using Eq. 9.29(b),

$$\text{pitch } s = \frac{4a_s(D_c - d_b)}{D_c^2\rho_s} = \frac{4 \times 0.11(17.0 - 0.375)}{(17.0)^2 \times 0.0115} = 2.20 \text{ in. (56 mm)}$$

Provide No. 3 spirals at $2\frac{1}{4}$-in. pitch (9.53-mm-diameter spiral at 54-mm pitch).

9.12 LIMIT STATE AT BUCKLING FAILURE (SLENDER OR LONG COLUMNS)

9.12.1 Basic Principles and Effective Length Factor *k*

Considerable literature exists on the behavior of columns subjected to stability considerations. If the column slenderness ratio exceeds the limits for short columns, the compression member will buckle prior to reaching its limit state of material failure. The strain in the compression face of the concrete at buckling load will be less than the 0.003 in./in. shown in Figure 9.8. Such a column would be a slender member subjected to combined axial load and bending, deforming laterally and developing additional moment due to the P–Δ effect, where P is the axial load and Δ is the deflection of the column's buckled shape at the section being considered, as seen in Figure 9.30.

k is the column length factor, as shown in Figure 9.31. M_1 and M_2 are the moments at the opposite ends of the compression member. M_2 is always larger than M_1, and the ratio M_1/M_2 is taken as positive for single curvature and negative for double curvature, as shown in Figure 9.32(a).

The effective length kl_u is used as the modified length of the column to account for end restraints other than pinned. kl_u represents the length of an auxiliary pin-ended column, which has an Euler buckling load equal to that of the column under consideration. Alternatively, it is the distance between the points of contraflexure of the member in its buckled form.

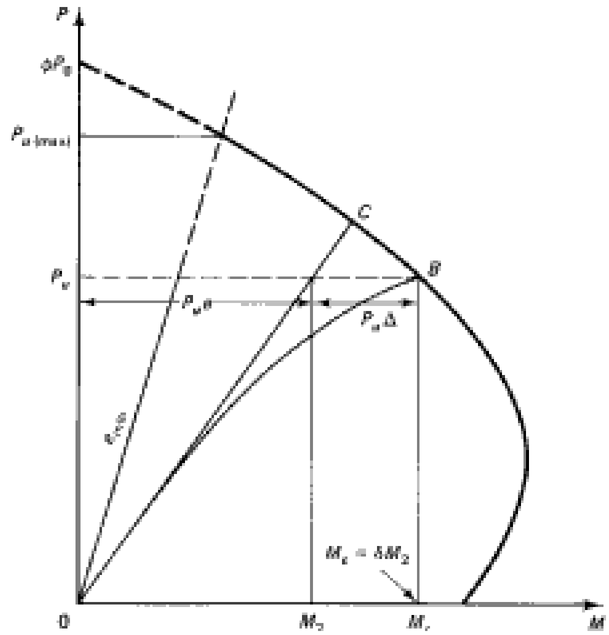


Figure 9.30 Loading moment (*P*–*M*) magnification interaction diagram.

The value of the end restraint effective length factor k varies between 0.5 and 2.0.

Both column ends fixed	$k = 0.5$
Both column ends fixed, lateral motion exists	$k = 1.0$
Both column ends pinned, no lateral motion	$k = 1.0$
One end fixed, other end free	$k = 2.0$

Typical cases illustrating the buckled shape of the column for several end conditions and the corresponding length factors k are shown in Figure 9.31.

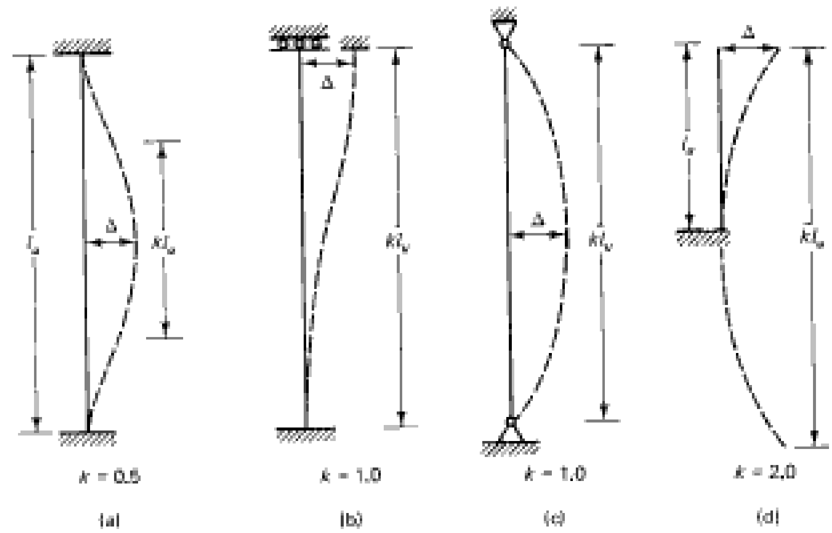


Figure 9.31 Values of column length factor k for typical end conditions: (a) fixed–fixed; (b) fixed–fixed with lateral motion; (c) pinned; (d) fixed–free.

For members in a structural frame, the end restraint lies between the hinged and fixed conditions. The actual k value can be estimated from the Jackson and Moreland alignment charts in Figure 9.32. They allow the determination of k for a column of constant cross section in multibay frames. The effective length factor for compression members considering braced behavior ranges between 0.5 and 1.0. If lower values are used, the calculation of k should be based on analysis of the frame using E_c and I values tabulated in Section 9.13.

9.12.2 Rational Analysis of Buckling Considerations

Consider a slender column subjected to axial load P_u at an eccentricity e in Figure 9.32. The buckling effect produces an additional moment $P_u\Delta$, where Δ is the maximum lateral displacement of the compression member between its two ends from the vertical plumb position. This additional moment reduces the load capacity from point C to point B in the interaction diagram (Figure 9.30). The total moment $P_u e + P_u\Delta$ is represented by point B in the diagram, and the column should be designed for a larger magnified moment M_c as a nonslender column by the usual *first-order analysis.*

In such an analysis, the moments and axial forces in a frame are obtained by the classical elastic procedures. These procedures do not consider the effects of the lateral displacement Δ on the axial force P_u and the bending moment M_c. Consequently, the resulting load–deflection and load–moment relationships are linear. If the P–Δ effect is taken into account, a second-order analysis becomes necessary with a resulting nonlinear relationship of the load to the lateral displacement (deflection) and the moment. Frames that do not have lateral bracing such as shear walls, diaphragms, or diagonal coupling beams are more flexible than those that are braced laterally. Lateral flexibility can cause the mass of a structure to sufficiently displace horizontally above the foundations so that significant additional overturning moments can result leading to loss of stability of the structure. This behavior is particularly critical when nonslender columns support the floors.

The ACI 318 Code stipulates three methods for determining the forces on slender columns and members in frames that resist lateral forces in addition to the vertical gravity loads. However, for gravity loading *without* side-sway, a first-order analysis using moment magnification factors, δ_{ns}, is adequate. For combined gravity and sidesway forces causing the P–Δ effect, the three code methods are:

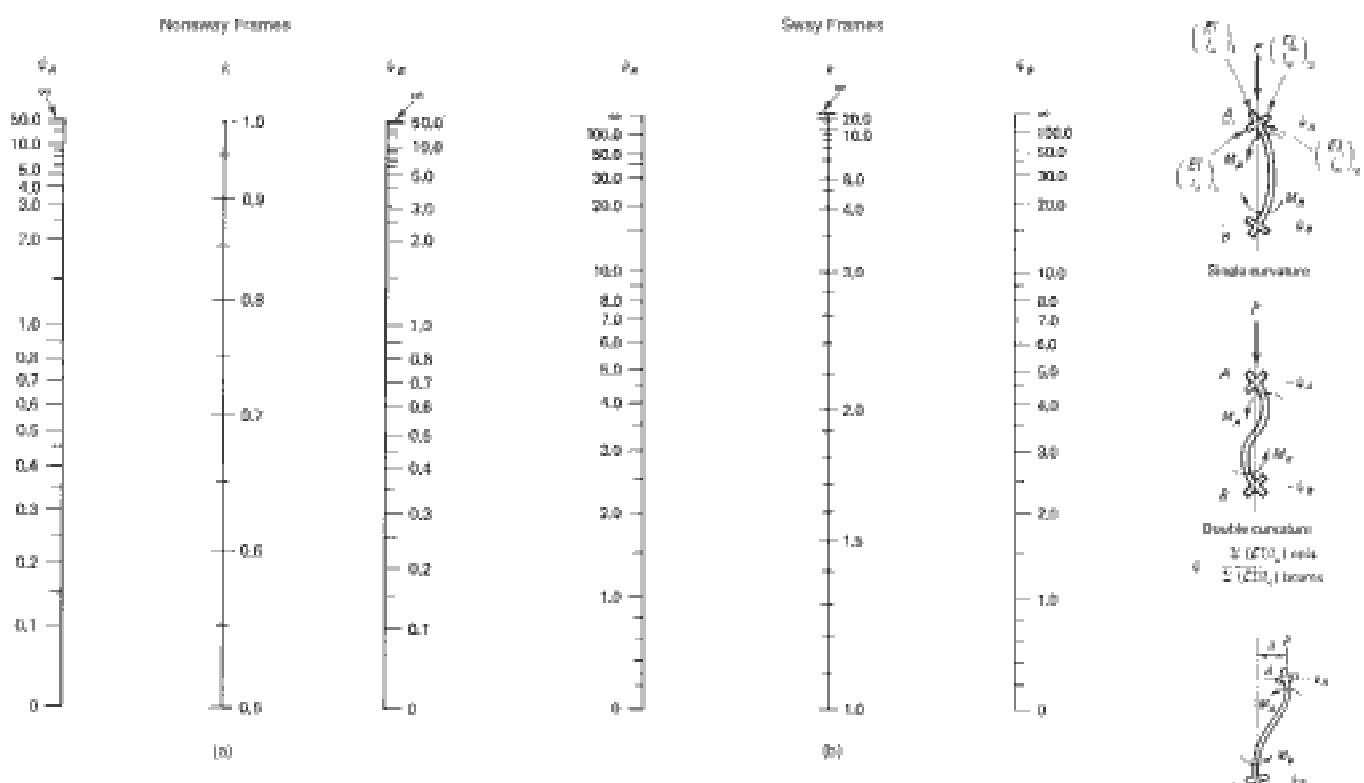
(a) Computer programs using a second-order analysis that determines iteratively the magnitudes of the additional overturning moments in a frame, giving more accurate evaluation of the second-order effects. But second-order effects should not exceed the first-order effects by more than 40%, as explained later. Computer programs such as PCA Frame, STAAD, RCPCDH, CSI, RISA, etc. are available for such analyses.

(b) Moment magnification factor δ_s computed on the basis of a first-order lateral displacements and the mass above each level as in Section 9.13.2.

(c) Moment magnification relationship similar in form to those required for computing the no-sway magnifier, δ_{ns}, for columns in nonbraced frames using a stability index, Q.

9.12.3 Slenderness Effects in Compression Members

As stated in the previous section, the effective length factor k can be taken as 1.0 as a first approximation unless prior analysis gives a lower value. In such a case the k value is calculated on the basis of ψ values from the expressions in the monograms of Figure 9.32.



ψ = ratio of $\Sigma(EI/l_c)$ of compression members to $\Sigma(EI/l)$ of flexural members in a plane at one end of a compression member

l = span length of flexural member measured center to center of joints

Figure 9.32 Jackson and Moreland effective length factor k for (a) Nonsway (braced) frames and (b) Sway (unbraced) frames.

The slenderness effect is allowed to be neglected in the following two cases:

1. Compression braced members not braced against sidesway when

$$\frac{k\,l_u}{r} \le 22 \tag{9.30a}$$

2. Compression members braced against sidesway when

$$\frac{k\,l_u}{r} \le 34 - 12\left(\frac{M_1}{M_2}\right) \le 40 \tag{9.30b}$$

where M_1/M_2 is considered positive if the column is bent in single curvature and negative if bent in double curvature.

The ACI Code permits considering the compression member as braced against sidesway when bracing elements have a total thickness resisting lateral movements of that story of at least *twelve* times the gross stiffness of the columns within the story. The unsupported column length l_u is to be taken as the clear distance between floor slabs, beams, or other members capable of providing lateral support in the bending direction. In cases where column capitals or haunches are present, l_u is measured to the lower extremity of the capital.

It should be noted that the maximum value of moment in a column at a joint occurs with live loads placed only on the beams supported on the same side or face of the column, both on the levels below and above the column. Such placement of live load forces the column into a reverse curvature deformation mode (*double curvature*) with $M_1/M_2 < 0$. If live load placed on the level above a column were on the opposite face at the lower level, $M_1/M_2 > 0$, and the column would deform in *single curvature* mode, as seen in Figure 9.32. Rarely can the magnified amount of single curvature be as large as the initial reverse curvature, hence usually not controlling (Furlong, Ref. 9.17).

$k\ell_u$ = effective length between points of inflection, and M_1/M_2 is not taken less than -0.5. Since $r = \sqrt{I_g/A_g} = 0.3h$, this means that slenderness effect can be disregarded for $M_1/M_2 \le -0.5$ if $k\ell_u/h \le 12.0$. The term M_1/M_2 is *positive* if the column is bent in a single curvature so that the two terms subtract in Eq. 9.30(b) and is *negative* in double curvature so that the two terms add (see Fig. 9.32a).

9.13 SECOND-ORDER FRAME ANALYSIS AND THE P–Δ EFFECT

9.13.1 Introduction

A second-order analysis is a frame analysis that includes the internal force effects resulting from lateral displacement (deflection) of a column. When such an analysis is performed in order to evaluate $\delta_s M_s$ in a nonbraced frame, the deflections must be computed on the basis of *fully cracked sections* with reduced EI stiffness values. Approximations such as the use of several first-order analysis cycles and idealizations of nonprismatic sections can be made in the analysis. But the analysis should verify that the predicted strength of the compression members of a structural frame are in good agreement within a 15% range with results of frame analysis for columns in indeterminate reinforced concrete structures. The structure being analyzed should result in geometry of members similar to the geometry of the sections to be built. If the members in the final structure have cross-sectional dimensions differing by more than 10% from those assumed in the analysis, a new computation cycle has to be performed.

A second-order analysis is an iterative procedure of the P–Δ effects on the slender column, including [illegible] it is reasonable to expect that canned computer programs have to be used rather than long-hand computations in the design of the slender columns of a frame structure. An attempt will be made here to illustrate the iteration procedure involved in the use of several cycles of lateral load increments to the P–Δ values. It must be stated, however, that the large majority of columns in concrete building frames do not necessitate such an analysis since the $K\ell_u/r$ ratio is in most cases below 100.

Consider the column between the two floors i–1 and i in the frame shown in Figure 9.33. Assume that the maximum lateral displacement or drift at the upper end of the top column in the frame is x_{max} and that the total height of the building is h_s. A large drift or lateral displacement of the building upper floors results in cracking of the masonry and interior finishes. Unless precautions are taken to permit movement of interior partitions without damage, the maximum lateral deflection limitation should be $h_s/500$. Hence a good assumption is to choose x_{max} in the range of $h_s/350$ to $h_s/500$, considering that a *fully braced* frame has normally a ratio of maximum drift x_{max} to frame height h_s less than 1/1500.

If x_i is the drift at floor level i, and h_i is the height of the column between floors $i-1$ and i in Figure 9.33(a), it can be assumed that the proportional horizontal drift for a particular floor is directly proportional to the square of the ratio of the height h_i of the floor and the total height h_s of the entire frame. Hence

$$x_i = x_{max}\left(\frac{h_i}{h_s}\right)^2 \tag{9.31}$$

The procedure can be summarized as follows:

1. Choose geometrical sections of the frame and its columns and their stiffness EI by approximate procedures.
2. Calculate the drifts, that is, the lateral deflections Δ_i, and the corresponding ultimate loads $P_{u,i}$ at joints $i = 1, \ldots, n$ (Figure 9.33).
3. Find the equivalent horizontal forces H_i from $H_i = P_i\Delta_i/h_i$ (Figure 9.33b).
4. Add the values obtained in step 3 to the actual lateral loads acting on the frame.
5. Perform a frame analysis using the appropriate computer program.

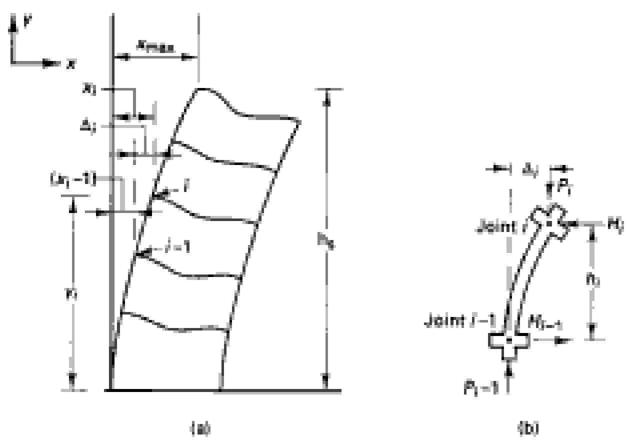


Figure 9.33 Second-order frame parameters: (a) Δ–P drift of frame; (b) idealized column between i and i–1 floors.

6. The iterative computer program, using the stiffnesses, EI, chosen for the input data gives Δ_i results that have to be compared with the x_i values allowed.
7. If all Δ_i values are $\leq$ all the x_i values, accept the solution and the design as a second-order solution. If not, run additional computer cycles with modified stiffnesses until the desired results are achieved.

Any of several computer programs can be utilized to account for the P–Δ effects in frame sidesways. Strudel, PCA Frame, STAAD PRO, SAP2007, RISA, etc., are an example of such general-purpose programs.

9.13.2 Second-Order Analysis Provisions: P–Δ Effect

A second-order analysis is a frame analysis that takes into consideration the horizontal force effects on progressive lateral displacements, normally termed the P–Δ effect. It involves an iterative increase in lateral deflections or displacement of a column or an entire story or building in high-rise frames caused by lateral loads due to wind or earthquake. Second-order computations have to consider the section properties determined, taking into account the influence of axial loads, the presence of cracked regions along the length of the compression member, and the effect of the duration of the loads. The reason is that the stiffness EI values used in the analysis for strength design should, as stated in the ACI 318 Commentary, be taken from the stiffness of the members immediately prior to failure. The stiffness EI values should not be based totally on the moment–curvature relationship of the most highly loaded section along the length of the member, but the moment–end rotation relationship for the complete compression member.

Based on the results of frame tests and analyses with an allowance for variability of computed deflections, the ACI 318 Code permits using the following average values of properties for members in a structure for frame analysis.

1. Modulus of elasticity $E_c = 33w_c^{1.5}\sqrt{f'_c}$ and for concrete strength $f'_c > 5000$ psi $< 12{,}000$ psi.

$$E_c = (40{,}000\sqrt{f'_c} + 1 \times 10^6)\left(\frac{w_c}{145}\right)^{1.5}$$

2. Moment of inertia

Beams	$0.35I_g$
Columns	$0.70I_g$
Walls: uncracked	$0.70I_g$
cracked	$0.35I_g$
Flat plates and flat slabs	$0.25I_g$

3. Alternatively, the moment of inertia of compression and flexural members can be computed as follows:

(a) Compression members

$$I = \left(0.80 + 25\frac{A_{st}}{A_g}\right)\left(1 - \frac{M_u}{P_u h} - 0.5\frac{P_u}{P_o}\right)I_g \leq 0.875I_g \geq 0.35I_g \qquad (9.32)$$

where P_u and M_u should be taken from the particular load combination under consideration or the combination of P_u and M_u resulting in the smallest value of I.

(b) Flexural members

$$I = (0.10 + 25\rho)\left(1.2 - 0.2\frac{b_w}{d}\right)I_g \leq 0.50\,I_g \geq 0.25\,I_g \qquad (9.33)$$

For continuous flexural members, I is permitted by the ACI Code to be taken as the average of values obtained from Equation 9.33 for the critical positive and negative moment sections, but not less than 0.25 I_g.

The cross-sectional dimensions and reinforcement ratio in equations 9.32 and 9.33 should be within 10% of the dimensions and reinforcement ratio shown on the design drawings, otherwise, the ACI 318 Code stipulates that the stiffness evaluation has to be repeated.

Additionally, the value of I for compression **sway** members has to be divided by $(1 + \beta_{ds})$ when sustained lateral loads are present. The factor β_{ds} can account for the reduction in stiffness due to the sustained lateral loads.

$$\beta_{ds} = \frac{\textit{Max. factored sustained lateral load (shear) within a story}}{\textit{Max. factored lateral load (shear) within a story}} \leq 1.0$$

4. Cross-sectional area: 1.0 A_g
5. Radius of gyration $r = 0.30h$ for rectangular members, where h is the direction in which stability is considered, or $r = 0.25D$ for circular members, where D is the diameter of the compression member.

It should be noted that second-order effects in compression members, restrained beams, or other structural members, as stated in the ACI 318 Code, should not exceed first-order effects by more than 40%. This stipulation in the code is the result of research indicating that structural instability can develop if the secondary-to-primary moments ratio approaches a value of 1.33. Hence, an upper limit of 1.4 is chosen (Refs. 9.20, 9.21).

9.14 MOMENT MAGNIFICATION: FIRST-ORDER ANALYSIS

The columns and stories in the concrete structure are designated as nonsway or sway columns or stories depending on the bracing condition. The design of columns in nonsway frames or stories is stipulated in Section 9.14.1, while for sway frames or stories it is presented in Section 9.14.2. The ACI Code permits considering a column in a structure as nonsway if the increase in column end moments due to second-order effects, namely, the P–Δ effect of progressive lateral displacement does not exceed 5% of the first order end moments.

It is permitted by the Code to assume a story within a structure to be nonsway if a Stability Index Q as defined in Equation 9.34 is limited to a maximum value of 0.05 in the following expression:

$$Q = \frac{\sum P_u \Delta_o}{V_{us}\, l_c} \leq 0.05 \tag{9.34}$$

where

$\sum P_u$ = total factored vertical load in the entire story
V_{us} = factored total horizontal story shear in a story
Δ_o = first order relative lateral deflection between top and bottom of that story due to V_{us}
l_c = length of compression member

The column load is assumed to act at an eccentricity $(e + \Delta)$ in Figure 9.30 to produce a moment M_2. The ratio M_c/M_2 is termed as the magnification factor, δ, giving the magnified moment M_c for which the column section is to be designed. The factored axial force P_u and the factored bending moments M_1 and M_2 are resisted by analytically chosen sectional properties taking into account the cracked regions along the member's length or height and the load duration. The ACI 318-08 Code allows using the average values of the sectional properties presented in Section 9.13.2.

The degree of magnification depends on the slenderness ratio, kl_u/r, where k is the effective length factor for compression members, a function of the relative stiffness at the joint of each end of the member. The magnification factor is controlled by the type of magnified moments δM_2 and δM_1 active at the respective ends 2 and 1 of a column, that is, whether sidesway of the structural frame occurs or not. Note in the case of compression members subjected to bending moments about both principal axes that the moment about each axis should be *separately* considered based on the restraint condition corresponding to that axis. For sidesway analysis the magnification method is somewhat approximate and second order analysis is preferable.

9.14.1 Moment Magnification in Nonsway Frames

In the case of compression members in a nonsway frames, that is, braced frames, the effective length factor k can be taken as 1.0 unless analysis gives a lower value. The slenderness effects can be disregarded if the slenderness ratio does not exceed 40 in Equation 9.30 (b) given in Section 9.12.2, namely,

$$\frac{k\,l_u}{r} \le \left(34 - 12\,\frac{M_1}{M_2}\right) \le 40 \tag{9.35}$$

The compression member is designed for the factored axial load P_u and the maximum moment M_2 amplified for the effect of the moment curature, namely,

$$M_c = \delta_{ns}\,M_2$$

using the total magnified end moment M_c of the compression member at the frame joint in the design of the copression member.
where

$$\delta_{ns} = \frac{C_m}{1 - (P_u/0.75P_c)} \ge 1.0 \tag{9.36a}$$

$$P_c = \frac{\pi^2 EI}{(k\ell_u)^2} \tag{9.36b}$$

where P_c is the Euler buckling load for pin-ended columns.

Stiffness EI is to be taken as

$$EI = \frac{0.2E_cI_g + E_sI_{se}}{1 + \beta_{dns}} \tag{9.36c}$$

or conservatively as

$$EI = \frac{0.4\,E_cI_g}{1 + \beta_{dns}} \tag{9.36d}$$

Alternatively, the ACI Code permits using EI values obtained from Equations 9.32 and 9.33 divided by $(1 + \beta_{dns})$ where due to sustained nonsway load the term β_{dns} is defined as

$$\beta_{dns} = \frac{\textit{Max. factored axial sustained load}}{\textit{Max. factored axial load associated with same load combination}} \le 1.0 \tag{9.36e}$$

C_m = a factor relating the actual moment diagram to an equivalent uniform moment diagram. For members without transverse loads, that is, subjected to end loads only,

$$C_m = 0.6 + 0.4\frac{M_1}{M_2} \geq 0.4 \tag{9.37}$$

where $M_2 \geq M_1$ and $M_1/M_2 > 0$ if no inflection point exists between the column ends [Figure 9.32a (single curvature)]. For other conditions, such as members with transverse loads between supports, $C_m = 1.0$.

For members in which $M_{2,\min}$ exceeds M_2, the value of C_m in Eq. 9.37 should either be taken as 1.0 or based on the ratio of the computed moments M_1/M_2.

The minimum allowed value of M_2 to be taken about each axis separately is

$$M_{2,\min} = P_u(0.6 + 0.03h) \tag{9.38}$$

where h is in inches.

In SI units $M_{2,\min} = P_u(15 + 0.03h)$, where h is in millimeters. In other words, the minimum eccentricity in the slender columns is $e_{\min} = 0.6 + 0.03h$. If $M_{2,\min}$ exceeded the applied moment M_2, the value of C_m in Eq. 9.37 should either be taken as 1.0 or be based on the actual computed end moments M_1 and M_2.

A slender rectangular column for which the design is based on reverse curvature moment M_2 about the major axis must be analyzed also for possible slenderness effects from unintended or minimum eccentricity of load about the minor axis of the section. The minor axis bending from minimum eccentricity ought to be considered as a single curvature condition with $M_1 = M_2 = P_u e_{\min}$. Since such a column is restrained from rotation at its ends, an effective length for single curvature slenderness can be assumed to be 80% of the clear height of the column, unless effective length factors, Ψ, are evaluated (Furlong, Ref. 9.17).

Frames braced against sidesway or braced with shear walls would normally have a lateral deflection less than total height $h_t/1500$. Once this ratio is exceeded, appropriate measures have to be taken to minimize the additional moments caused by sidesway and hence to reduce lateral drift of the frame and its constituent columns.

9.14.2 Moment Magnification in Sway Frames

Compression members in unbraced frames are subject to sway due to the horizontal forces caused by wind or earthquake. Consquently, their slenderness effect has to be considered in the design. However, if the slenderness ratio limit is not exceeded, the member is proportioned for material failure only. The limit of the slenderness ratio value allowed for being disregarded is as in the expression previously given in Section 9.12.3,

$$\left(\frac{k\,l_u}{r}\right) \leq 22 \tag{9.39}$$

In sway frames all flexural members have to be designed for the total magnified end moments of the compression members at the joint. The moments of inertia of the compression and flexural members are permitted by the ACI 318 Code to be computed from Equations 9.32 and 9.33. The cross-sectional dimensions and reinforcement in these two equations would have, according to the code, to be within 10% of the dimensions and reinforcement ratio shown on the design drawings as previously stated. Otherwise the stiffness evaluation process would have to be repeated to arrive at the stipulated level of accuracy.

The sway moments M_{1s} and M_{2s} at the ends of an individual compression member have to be magnified as follows:

$$M_1 = M_{1ns} + \delta_s M_{1s} \tag{9.40}$$

$$M_2 = M_{2ns} + \delta_s M_{2s} \tag{9.41}$$

The magnified sway moments in frames not braced against sidesway are to be calculated from either of the two following expressions:

1. *Stability index magnification approach*

$$\delta_s M_s = \left(\frac{M_s}{1 - Q}\right) \geq M_s \tag{9.42}$$

or

2. *Direct moment magnification approach*

$$\delta_s M_s = \frac{M_s}{1 - \dfrac{\Sigma P_u}{0.75\ \Sigma P_c}} \geq M_s \tag{9.43}$$

where ΣP_u is the summation of all the factored vertical loads in a story and ΣP_c is the summation of all the Euler buckling loads from Equation 9.37, the slenderness k factor and the E_c values are computed from Section 9.13.2.

The magnification factor for sway frames in Equation 9.42 can therefore be expressed as

$$\delta_s = \frac{1}{1 - Q} \geq 1.0 \tag{9.44}$$

Note in section 9.14 that the 318 ACI Code allows to consider the sway frame as non-sway if the stability index Q defined in Equation 9.34 does not exceed the limit of 0.05. If it does, then a second-order analysis becomes necessary for the evaluation of the column capacity to resist the axial loads and the P–Δ effects of lateral load displacements, as previously stated in Section 9.14.

It should be emphasized that δ_{ns} factors apply for each column individually, but δ_{sb} factors apply to all columns at the same level, and that the moment $(\delta_s - 1)\ M_2$ must be applied to the beams at the column joint.

It is important to summarize that the moment magnification method, originally developed for prismatic columns, should work well for columns of slenderness ratio $k\ell_u/r$ less than 100, particularly if the frame is braced. In the case of unbraced frames of comparable slenderness ratios, taking into account the P–Δ effect on the moments and deflections through a second-order analysis can give more comprehensive results. Such an analysis can be either of the following as indicated in Section 9.12.

1. Execute several applications of the first-order analysis where the lateral load (h_i in Figure 9.33) is incremented by $\Sigma\ P_u\Delta_i$ in each cycle, and consider the final result a second-order result.
2. Use a real second-order analysis computer program in which the reduction in the relative sidesway resistance is used in a global stiffness matrix for the elements involved.

It should be emphasized in summary that in the majority of cases, first-order solutions normally suffice since the majority of columns in a large number of structures have a slenderness ratio of less than 40. As stated in the ACI 318 Commentary R 10.10.1, the second-order effects are [illegible]ible and the slenderness effects need not be considered in these cases. The compression member can thus be designed on the bases of forces and moments that can be determined from a first-order analysis. The slenderness ratio $k\ l_u/r$ of the compression member in both braced and unbraced systems would determine whether slenderness effects have to be considered. But for braced systems, moments need only be used on the basis of the first-order analysis procedure presented in Section 9.14.

9.15 OPERATIONAL PROCEDURE AND FLOWCHART FOR THE DESIGN OF SLENDER COLUMNS

1. Determine whether the frame has an appreciable sidesway. If it does, use the magnification factors δ_{ns} and δ_s. If the sidesway is negligible, assume that $\delta_s = 0$. Assume a cross-section. Calculate the eccentricity using the greater of the end moments and check whether it is more than the minimum allowable eccentricity; that is,

$$\frac{M_2}{P_u} \geq (0.6 + 0.03h)\ \text{in.} \tag{9.45}$$

If the given eccentricity is less than the specified minimum, use the minimum value.
2. Calculate ψ_A and ψ_B using Eq. 9.31. Obtain k using Figure 9.32 or Eqs. 9.30a and b. Calculate $k\ell_u/r$ and determine whether the column is a short or long column. If the column is slender and $k\ell_u/r$ is less than 100, calculate the magnified moment M_c. Using the M_c value obtained, calculate the equivalent eccentricity to be used if the column is to be designed as a short column. If $k\ell_u/r$ is greater than 100, perform a second-order analysis.
3. Design the equivalent nonslender column. The flowchart (Figure 9.34) presents the sequence of calculations. The necessary equations are provided in Section 9.11 and in the flowchart.

9.15.1 Example 9.15: Design of a Slender (Long), Column

A rectangular tied column is part of a 5 × 3 bays frame building subjected to uniaxial bending. Its clear height is ℓ_u = 18 ft (5.55 m) and it is not braced against sidesway. The factored external load P_u = 726,000 lb (3229 kN). The factored end moments are M_1 = 550,000 in.-lb (203.9 kN-m) and M_2 = 1,525,000 in.-lb (172.3 kN-m). The dead load and moment due to gravity are 40% of the total load and moment. Design the column section and the reinforcement necessary for the following two cases:

Case 1. Consider gravity loads only, assuming lateral sidesway due to wind as negligible.
Case 2. Consider sidesway wind effects to cause an unfactored P_u = 90,000 lb (400.3 kN) and an unfactored M_w = 575,000 in.-lb. (65 kN-m). Check stability of the columns using both the stability Q index approach and the direct moment magnification approach.

Loads per floor of all columns at that level are

$$\Sigma P_u = 15.5 \times 10^6\ \text{lb}\ (68{,}944\ \text{kN})$$

$$\Sigma P_c = 32.0 \times 10^6\ \text{lb}\ (142{,}336\ \text{kN})$$

$$V_{us} = 145{,}000\ \text{lb/floor}\ (644\ \text{kN})$$

$$\Delta_0 = 1.4\ \text{in.}\ (36\ \text{mm})$$

Given: $\beta_d = 0.5, \quad \Psi_A = 2.0, \quad \Psi_B = 3.0$

$$f'_c = 5000\ \text{psi}\ (34.5\ \text{MPa}),\ \text{normal concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000\ \text{psi}\ (413.7\ \text{MPa})$$

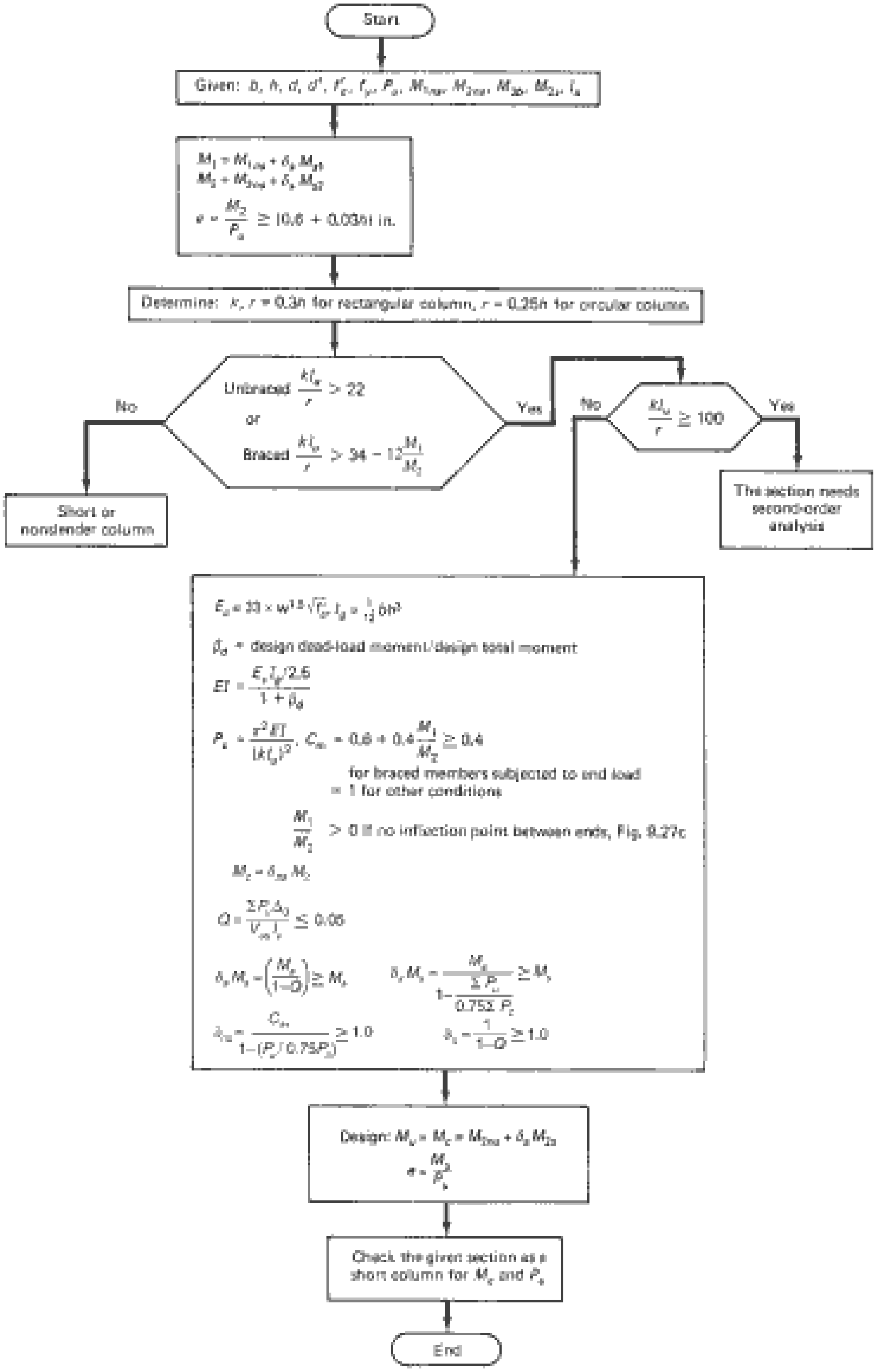


Figure 9.34 Flowchart for design of slender columns.

Solution for Case 1: Gravity Loading Only (sideway negligible)

Check for sidesway and minimum eccentricity (step 1)

Since the frame has no appreciable sidesway, the entire moment M_2 is taken as M_{2ns} and magnification factor δ_s is taken as equal to zero. By trial and adjustment, a column section is assumed and analyzed. Try a section 21 in. × 21 in. (533 mm × 533 mm) as shown in Figure 9.35(a).

$$\text{actual eccentricity} = \frac{M_{2ns}}{P_u} = \frac{1{,}525{,}000}{726{,}000} = 2.1 \text{ in. (52 mm)}$$

$$\text{minimum allowable eccentricity} = 0.6 + 0.03 \times 21 = 1.23 \text{ in.} < 2.1 \text{ in.}$$

Use $M_{2ns} = 1{,}525{,}000$ in.-lb (172.26 kN-m).

Calculate the eccentricity to be used for equivalent short column (step 2)

From the chart in Fig. 9.32b, $k = 1.7$.

$$\text{actual slenderness ratio } \frac{k\ell_u}{r} = \frac{1.7 \times 18 \times 12}{0.3 \times 21} = 58.29$$

$$\text{allowable slenderness ratio } \frac{k\ell_u}{r} \text{ for unbraced column} = 22$$

As 58.29 is > 22 and < 100, use the direct moment magnification method.

$$E_c = 33w^{1.5}\sqrt{f'_c} = 33 \times 150^{1.5}\sqrt{5000}$$

$$= 4.29 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (29.6 \times 10^6 \text{ kPa})$$

$$I_g = \frac{21(21)^3}{12} = 16{,}207 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$EI = \frac{0.4\,E_c I_g}{1 + \beta_d} = \frac{0.40\,(4.29) \times 10^6 \times 16{,}207}{1 + 0.5}$$

$$= 18.54 \times 10^9 \text{ lb-in.}^2$$

$$(k\ell_u)^2 = (1.7 \times 18 \times 12)^2 = 134.8 \times 10^3 \text{ in.}^2$$

Hence

$$P_c = \text{Euler buckling load} = \frac{\pi^2 EI}{(k\ell_u)^2}$$

$$= \frac{\pi^2 \times 18.54 \times 10^9}{134.8 \times 10^3} = 1.356 \times 10^6 \text{ lb} = 1356 \text{ kips (6032 kN)}$$

$$C_m = 1.0 \text{ for nonbraced column}$$

$$\text{moment magnifier } \delta_{ns} = \frac{C_m}{1 - P_u/0.75P_c} = \frac{1.0}{1 - \dfrac{726}{0.75 \times 1356}} = 3.495$$

$$\text{design moment } M_c = \delta_{ns} M_{2ns} = 3.495 \times 1{,}525{,}000$$

$$= 5{,}329{,}875 \text{ in.-lb (561 kN-m)}$$

Assume that the reduction factor $\phi = 0.65$ for the compression-controlled state.

$$\text{required } P_n = \frac{P_u}{\phi} = \frac{726{,}000}{0.65} = 1{,}116{,}923 \text{ lb (4968 kN)}$$

$$\text{required } M_n = \frac{5{,}329{,}875}{0.65} = 8{,}199{,}808 \text{ in.-lb (1732 kN-m)}$$

Hence design a nonslender column section for an axial load strength $P_n = 1{,}116{,}923$ lb and a moment strength $M_n = 8{,}199{,}808$ in.-lb.

$$e = \frac{8{,}119{,}808}{1{,}116{,}923} = 7.34 \text{ in. (186 mm)}$$

Design of an equivalent nonslender column (step 3)

Analyze the assumed 21 in. × 21 in. square section. Assume that $\rho = \rho' = 1.25\%$.

$$A_s = A'_s = 0.0125(21 \times 18.5) = 4.86 \text{ in.}^2$$

Provide five No. 9 bars (five of 28-mm diameter) on each face; $A_s = A'_s = 5.0$ in.^{2} (3226 mm^2).

Limit strain compression-controlled state (Step 4)

For the design of an equivalent nonslender column (Step 4)

$$d_t = 21.0 - 2.5 = 18.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.60$$

$$c = 0.60 d_t = 0.60 \times 18.5 = 11.1 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.80 \times 11.1 = 8.88 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.9(b),

$$f'_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{11.1}\right) = 67{,}405 \text{ psi} > f_y$$

Use $f'_s = 60{,}000$ psi

$$f_s = f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f'_c\, b\, a = 0.85 \times 5{,}000 \times 21 \times 8.88 = 792{,}540 \text{ lb}$$

$$C_s = A'_s f'_s = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_y = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s = 792{,}540 + 300{,}000 - 300{,}000 = 792{,}540 \text{ lb}$$

$$M_n = C_c\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'\right) + T_s\left(d - \frac{h}{2}\right)$$

$$= 792{,}540\left(\frac{21}{2} - \frac{8.88}{2}\right) + 300{,}000\left(\frac{21}{2} - 2.5\right) + 300{,}000\left(18.5 - \frac{21}{2}\right) = 9{,}602{,}792 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Limit $e_c = \dfrac{9{,}602{,}792}{792{,}540} = 12.11$ in. > actual $e = 7.34$ in.

Hence, column is compression-controlled.

Trial and adjustment analysis of the section (Step 5)

By trial and adjustment, try a larger value of neutral axis depth, c, in order to increase the volume of the compressive block, thereby increasing the axial load P_n.

Assume $c = 13.92$ in.

$$a = 0.80 \times 13.92 = 11.136 \text{ in.}$$

$$f'_s = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{13.92}\right) = 71{,}375 \text{ psi.} > f_y, \text{ use } f'_s = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$f_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{18.5}{13.92} ...\right)$$

$$P_s = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85\, f_c'\, b\, a = 0.85 \times 5000 \times 21 \times 11.136 = 993{,}888 \text{ lb}$$

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 300{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s = 5.0 \times 28{,}625 = 143{,}125 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_s = 993{,}888 + 300{,}000 - 143{,}125 = 1{,}150{,}763 \text{ lb}$$

$$M_s = 993{,}888\left(10.5 - \frac{11.136}{2}\right) + 300{,}000(10.5 - 2.5) + 143{,}125(18.5 - 10.5) = 8{,}446{,}856 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$e_c = \frac{M_n}{P_n} = \frac{8{,}446{,}856}{1{,}150{,}763} = 7.34 \text{ in.} = \text{actual } e = 7.34 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, compatibility analysis is verified, and the assumed section geometry for the slender column is O.K.
Since the actual $c = 13.92$ in. > limit $c = 11.10$ in.
ϕ for tied columns = 0.65

$$P_u = \phi\, P_n = 0.65 \times 1{,}150{,}763 = 747{,}996 \text{ lb.} > \text{actual } P_u = 726{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

Adopt the 21 × 21 in. column section with 5 No. 9 bars on each of the two faces parallel to the axis of bending, as shown in Figure 9.35.

Design of ties (Step 6)
Try No. 3 ties (9.52 mm diameter). The spacing must be the least of

16 diameter No. 9 bar $= 16 \times \dfrac{9}{8} = 18$ in. (457 mm)

48 diameter No. 3 ties $= 48 \times \dfrac{3}{8} = 18$ in. (457 mm)

Least dimension $h = 21$ in. (533 mm)
Therefore, use No. 3 closed ties at 18 in. center-to-center (9.52-mm diameter at 457 mm spacing).

Solution for Case 2: Gravity and Wind Loading (Sidesway)

From Equation 4.6(d), $U = 1.2D + 0.5L + 1.6W$

Hence, proportion the live load and moment of the gravity load by the ratio 0.5/1.6.

Factored gravity $P_D = 0.40 \times 726{,}000 = 290{,}400$ lb

Factored gravity $P_L = 726{,}000 - 290{,}400 = 435{,}600$ lb

Service live $P = 435{,}600/1.6 = 272{,}250$ lb

$P_U = 290{,}400 + 0.5 \times 272{,}250 + 1.6 \times 90{,}000 = 570{,}525$ lb

Factored gravity $M_D = 0.40 \times 1{,}525{,}000 = 610{,}000$ in.-lb

Factored gravity $M_L = 1{,}525{,}000 - 610{,}000 = 915{,}000$ in.-lb

$M_{n2r} = 610{,}000 + (0.5/1.6) \times 915{,}000 = 895{,}938$ in.-lb

$M_{2s} = 1.6 \times 575{,}000 = 920{,}000$ in.-lb.

(a) Direct moment magnification approach

$$\delta_s = \frac{1.0}{1 - \dfrac{\Sigma P_u}{0.75\Sigma P_c}} = \frac{1.0}{1 - \dfrac{15.5 \times 10^6}{0.75 \times 32.0 \times 10^6}} = 2.82 > 2.5; \text{ use } 2.5.$$

hence $\delta_s M_s > M_s$ O.K.

$$M_c = 895{,}938 + 2.5 \times 920{,}000 = 3{,}195{,}938 \text{ in.-lb}$$

required $P_n = \dfrac{570{,}525}{0.65}$ [illegible]

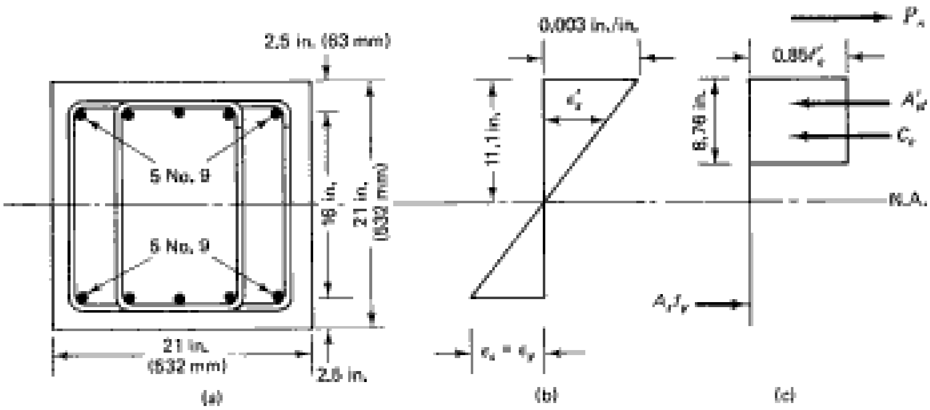


Figure 9.35 Column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (balanced failure): (a) cross section; (b) balanced strain state; (c) stresses.

$$\text{required } M_n = \frac{3,195,938}{0.65} = 4,916,828 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{eccentricity } e = \frac{4,916,828}{877,731} = 5.60 \text{ in.} < \text{limit } e = 12.11 \text{ in.}$$

Hence failure will be in compression, and $\phi = 0.65$ as assumed.

(b) Stability index Q magnification approach

$$\Sigma P_u = 15.5 \times 10^6 \text{ lb} \qquad V_u = 1.45 \times 10^5 \text{ lb}$$

$$l_c = 18.0 + 1.0 = 19 \text{ ft} = 228 \text{ in.} \qquad \Delta_0 = 1.4 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.43(a),

$$Q = \frac{\Sigma P_u \Delta_0}{V_u l_c} = \frac{15.5 \times 10^6 \times 1.4}{1.45 \times 10^5 \times 228} = 0.66 > 0.5,$$

thus, one cannot consider the story column as a nonsway member.
From Equation 9.43(b),

$$\delta_s = \frac{1}{1 - Q} = \frac{1}{1 - 0.66} = 2.94 \geq 1.0 \qquad \text{Use } \delta_s = 2.94.$$

$$M_c = 895,933 + 2.94 \times 920,000 = 3,600,738 \text{ in.-lb. to give an eccentricity}$$

$$e = 3,600,738/(0.65 \times 877731) = 6.31 \text{ in.} < \text{limit } e = 12.11 \text{ in.}$$

Hence, compression failure, with $\phi = 0.65$ as determined in case 1 of this problem. Consequently, the nonsway gravity load case controls since the failure mode has not changed and the eccentricity associated with it is larger than that of the sway case.

Therefore, adopt the same section 21 in. × 21 in. with five No. 9 reinforcing bars on each of the two faces parallel to the neutral axis.

9.16 COMPRESSION MEMBERS IN BIAXIAL BENDING

9.16.1 Exact Method of Analysis

Columns in corners of buildings are compression members subjected to biaxial bending about both the x and the y axes, as shown in Figure 9.36. Also, biaxial bending occurs due to imbalance of loads in adjacent spans and almost always in bridge piers. Such columns

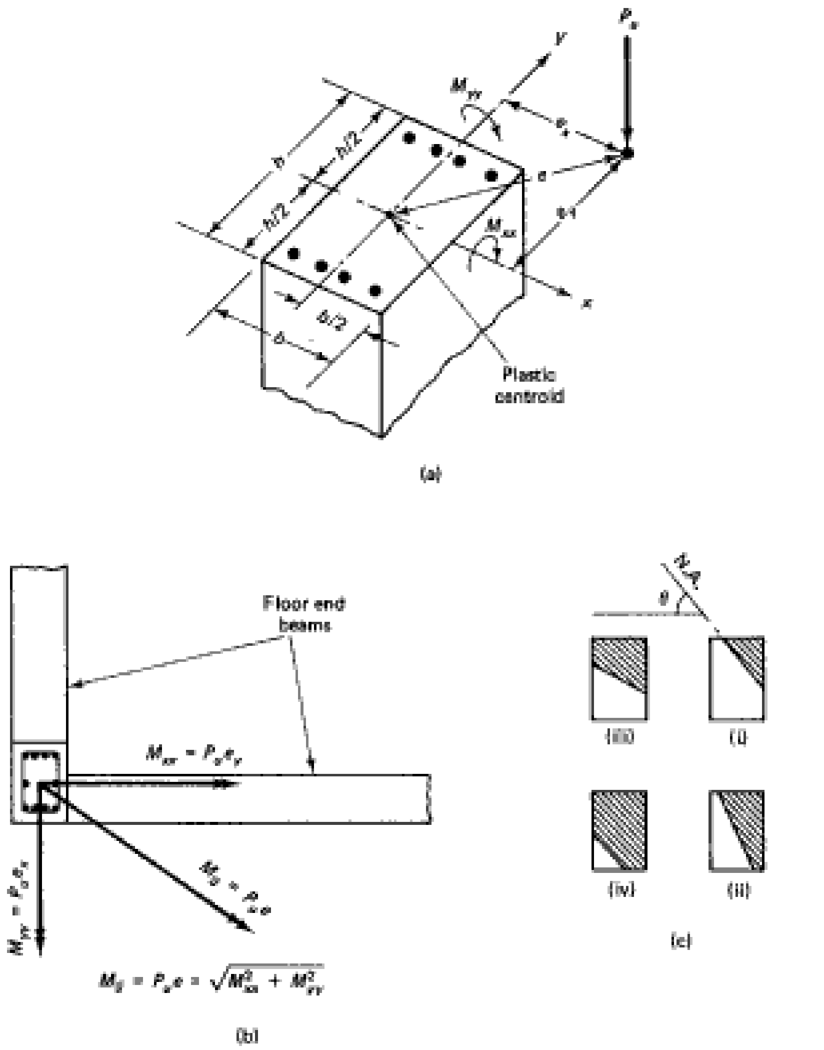


Figure 9.36 Corner column subjected to axial load: (a) biaxially stressed column cross section; (b) vector moments M_{xx} and M_{yy} in column plan; (c) neutral axis inclinations.

are subjected to moments M_{xx} about the x axis, creating a load eccentricity e_y, and a moment M_{yy} about the y axis, creating a load eccentricity e_x. Thus the neutral axis is inclined at an angle θ to the horizontal.

The angle θ depends on the interaction of the bending moments about both axes and the magnitude of the load P_u. The compressive area in the column section can have one of the alternative shapes shown in Figure 9.36(c). Since such a column has to be designed from first principles, the trial-and-adjustment procedure has to be followed where compatibility of strain has to be maintained at all levels of the reinforcing bars. The process is similar to the one briefly outlined in Section 9.5.8 for columns with reinforcing bars on all faces. Additional computational effort is needed because of the position of the inclined neutral-axis plane and the four different possible forms of the concrete compression area.

Figure 9.37 shows the strain distribution and forces on a biaxially loaded rectangular column cross section. C is the center of gravity of the concrete compression area

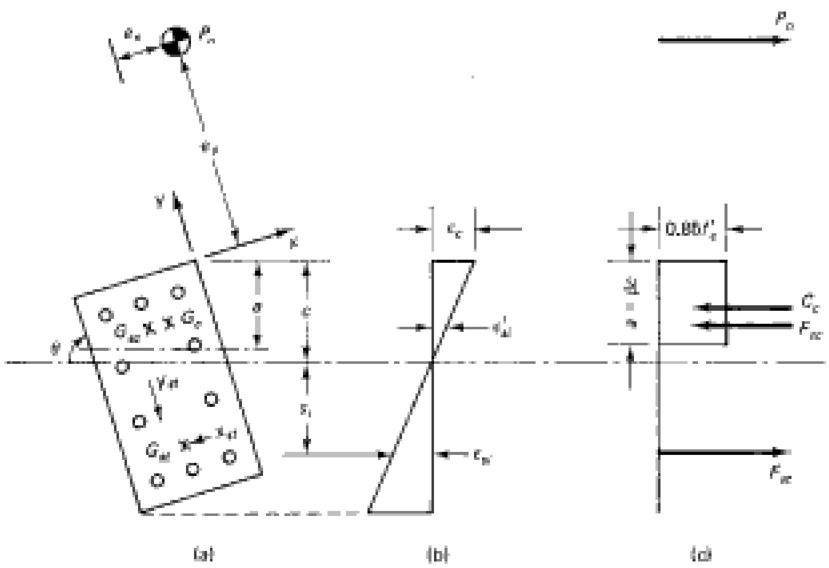


Figure 9.37 Strain-compatibility and forces in biaxially loaded rectangular columns: (a) cross section; (b) strain; (c) forces.

having coordinates x_c and y_c from the neutral axis in the directions x and y, respectively. G_{sc} is the resultant position of steel forces in the compression area having coordinates x_{sc} and y_{sc} from the neutral axis in the directions x and y, respectively. G_{st} is the resultant position of steel forces in the tension area having coordinates x_{st} and y_{st} from the neutral axis in directions x and y, respectively. From equilibrium of internal and external forces,

$$P_n = 0.85f'_c A_c + F_{sc} - F_{st} \tag{9.46}$$

where A_c = area of the compression zone covered by the rectangular stress block
F_{sc} = resultant steel compressive forces ($\Sigma A'_s f_{sc}$)
F_{st} = resultant steel tensile force ($\Sigma A_s f_{st}$)

From equilibrium of internal and external moments,

$$P_n e_x = 0.85f'_c A_c x_c + F_{sc} x_{sc} + F_{st} x_{st} \tag{9.47a}$$

$$P_n e_y = 0.85f'_c A_c y_c + F_{sc} y_{sc} + F_{st} y_{st} \tag{9.47b}$$

The position of the neutral axis has to be assumed in each trial and the stress calculated in *each* bar using

$$f_{si} = E_s \varepsilon_{si} = E_s \varepsilon_c \frac{s_i}{c} < f_y \tag{9.48}$$

9.16.2 Load Contour Method

One method that gives a rapid solution is to design the column for the vector sum of M_{xx} and M_{yy} and use a circular reinforcing cage in a square section for the corner column. However, such a procedure cannot be economically justified in most cases. Another design approach well proven by experimental verification is to transform the biaxial moments into an equivalent uniaxial moment and an equivalent uniaxial eccentricity. The section can then be designed for uniaxial bending, as previously discussed in this chapter, to resist the actual factored biaxial bending moments.

Such a method considers a failure surface instead of failure planes and is generally termed the *Bresler–Parme contour method* (Ref. 9.14, 9.15). This method involves cutting the three-dimensional failure surfaces in Figure 9.38 at a constant value P_u to give an interaction plane relating M_{nx} and M_{ny}. In other words, the contour surface S can be viewed as a curvilinear surface that includes a family of curves, termed the *load contours*.

The general nondimensional equation for the load contour at a constant load P_n may be expressed as follows:

$$\left(\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{ox}}\right)^{\alpha 1} + \left(\frac{M_{ny}}{M_{oy}}\right)^{\alpha 2} = 1.0 \tag{9.49}$$

where $M_{nx} = P_n e_y$ and $M_{ny} = P_n e_x$

$M_{ox} = M_{nx}$ at such an axial load P_n where M_{ny} or $e_x = 0$

$M_{oy} = M_{ny}$ at such an axial load P_n when M_{nx} or $e_y = 0$

The moments M_{ox} and M_{oy} are the *required* equivalent resisting moment strengths about the x and y axes, respectively.

α_1, α_2 = exponents depending on the cross-section geometry, steel percentage, and its location and material stresses f'_c and f_y

Equation 9.49 can be simplified using a common exponent and introducing a factor β for one particular axial load value P_n such that the M_{nx}/M_{ny} ratio would have the same value as the M_{ox}/M_{oy} as detailed by Parme and associates. Such simplification leads to

$$\left(\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{ox}}\right)^{\alpha} + \left(\frac{M_{ny}}{M_{oy}}\right)^{\alpha} = 1.0 \tag{9.50}$$

where α would have a value of (log 0.5/log β). Figure 9.39 gives a contour plot ABC from Eq. 9.50.

For design purposes, the contour is approximated by two straight lines BA and BC, and Eq. 9.50 can be simplified to two conditions:

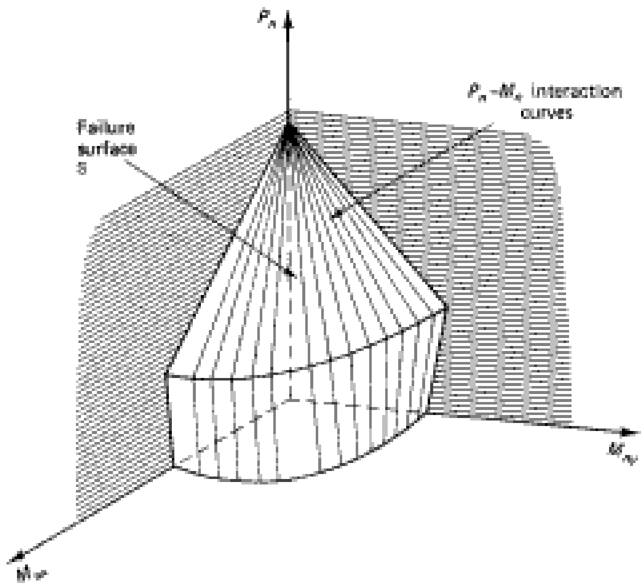


Figure 9.38 Failure interaction surface for biaxial column bending.

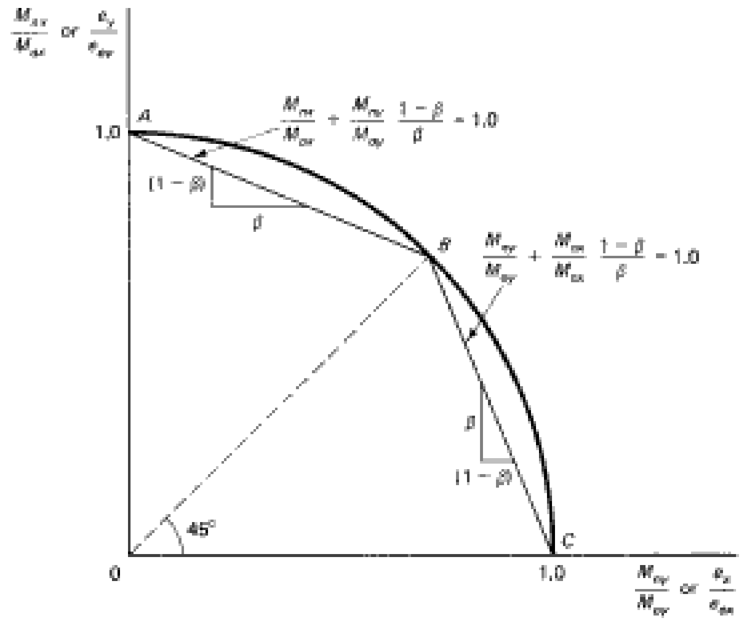


Figure 9.39 Modified interaction contour plot of constant P_n for biaxially loaded column.

1. For AB when $M_{ny}/M_{oy} < M_{nx}/M_{ox}$,

$$\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{ox}} + \frac{M_{ny}}{M_{oy}}\left[\frac{1-\beta}{\beta}\right] = 1.0 \tag{9.51a}$$

2. For BC when $M_{ny}/M_{oy} > M_{nx}/M_{ox}$

$$\frac{M_{ny}}{M_{oy}} + \frac{M_{nx}}{M_{ox}}\left[\frac{1-\beta}{\beta}\right] = 1.0 \tag{9.51b}$$

In both Eqs. 9.51 a and b, the *actual* controlling equivalent uniaxial moment strength M_{oxn} or M_{oyn} should be at least equivalent to the *required* controlling moment strength M_{ox} or M_{oy} of the chosen column section.

For rectangular sections where the reinforcement is evenly distributed along all the column faces, the ratio M_{oy}/M_{ox} can be approximately taken as equal to b/h. Hence Eqs. 9.56a and b can be modified as follows:

1. For $M_{ny}/M_{nx} > b/h$,

$$M_{ny} + M_{nx}\frac{b}{h}\frac{1-\beta}{\beta} \simeq M_{oy} \tag{9.52a}$$

2. For $M_{ny}/M_{nx} \leq b/h$,

$$M_{nx} + M_{ny}\frac{h}{b}\frac{1-\beta}{\beta} \simeq M_{ox} \tag{9.52b}$$

The controlling required moment strength M_{ox} or M_{oy} for designing the section is the larger of the two values as determined from Eq. 9.57(a) and (b).

Plots of Figure 9.36 are used in the selection of β in the analysis and design of such columns. A modified load contour method (Ref. 9.16) can alternatively give a more rapid

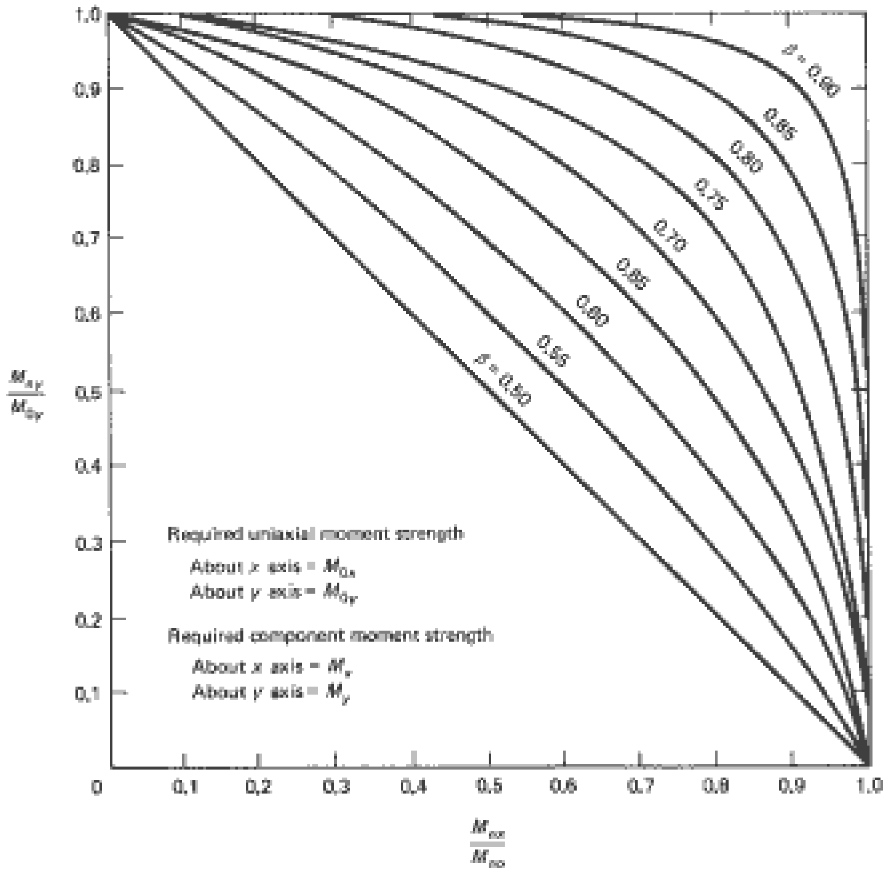


Figure 9.40 Contour β-factor chart for rectangular columns in biaxial bending.

solution for biaxially loaded columns summarized as in Eq. 9.55 for finding an equivalent required moment strength M_{ox} and M_{oy} for designing the columns as if they were uniaxially loaded.

9.16.3 Step-by-Step Operational Procedure for the Design of Biaxially Loaded Columns by the Load Contour Method

The following steps can be used as a guideline for the design of columns subjected to bending in both the x and y directions. The procedure assumes an equal area of reinforcement on all four faces.

1. Calculate the uniaxial bending moments assuming an equal number of bars on each column face. Assume a value of an interaction contour β factor between 0.50 and 0.70. Assume a ratio of h/b. This ratio can be approximated to M_{ux}/M_{uy}. Using Eqs. 52(a) and 52(b), determine the equivalent required uniaxial moment M_{ox} or M_{oy}. If M_{nx} is larger than M_{ny}, use M_{ox} for the design, and vice versa.
2. Assume a cross-section for the column and a reinforcement ratio $\rho = \rho' = 0.01$ to 0.02 on each of the two faces parallel to the axis of bending of the larger equivalent moment. Make a preliminary selection of the steel bars. Verify the capacity P_n of the assumed column cross-section. In the completed design, the same amount of longitudinal steel should be used on all four faces.

3. Calculate the *actual* nominal moment strength M_{oxn} for equivalent uniaxial bending about the x axis when $M_{oy} = 0$. Its value has to be at least equivalent to the *required* moment strength M_{ox}.
4. Calculate the actual nominal moment strength M_{oyn} for the equivalent uniaxial bending moment about the y axis when $M_{ox} = 0$.
5. Find M_{ny} by entering M_{nx}/M_{oxn} and the trial β value into the β factor contour plots of Figure 9.40.
6. Make a second trial and adjustment, increasing the assumed β value if the M_{ny} value obtained from entering the chart is less than the required M_{ny}. Repeat this step until the two values of M_{ny} converge either through changing β or changing the section.
7. Design the lateral ties and detail the section.

9.16.4 Example 9.16: Design of a Biaxially Loaded Column by the Load Contour Method

A nonslender corner column is subjected to a factored compressive axial load $P_u = 195{,}000$ lb (878 kN), a factored bending moment $M_{ux} = 1{,}560{,}000$ in.-lb (176 kN-m) about the x axis, and a factored bending moment $M_{uy} = 910{,}000$ in.-lb (103 kN-m) about the y axis, as shown in Figure 9.41. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Design a rectangular tied column section to resist the biaxial bending moments resulting from the given eccentric compressive load.

Solution: *Calculate the equivalent uniaxial bending moments assuming equal numbers of bars on all faces (step 1)*

Assume that $\phi = 0.65$ for tied columns.

$$\text{required nominal } P_n = \frac{195{,}000}{0.65} = 300{,}000 \text{ lb (1350 kN)}$$

$$\text{required nominal } M_{nx} = \frac{1{,}560{,}000}{0.65} = 2{,}400{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (271 kN-m)}$$

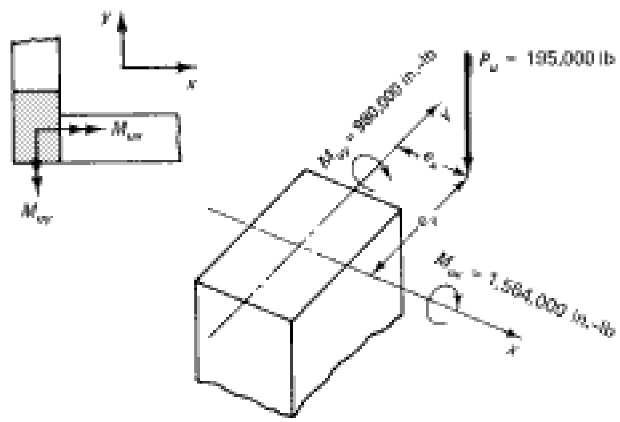


Figure 9.41 Compression and biaxial bending on corner column in Ex. 9.16.

$$\text{required nominal } M_{ny} = \frac{910{,}000}{0.65} = 1{,}400{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (158 kN-m)}$$

$$e_y = \frac{2{,}400{,}000}{300{,}000} = 8.00 \text{ in.}$$

$$e_x = \frac{1{,}400{,}000}{300{,}000} = 4.67 \text{ in.}$$

Analyze for equivalent moment and equivalent eccentricity about the x axis since the larger of the two biaxial moments is $M_{nx} = 2{,}400{,}000$ in.-lb about the x axis.

$$\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{ny}} = \frac{2{,}400{,}000}{1{,}400{,}000} = 1.71$$

Assume the section depth $h = 20$ in. (Figure 9.42)

Since the column dimensions are proportional to the applied moments, assume that $h/b = 1.71$ or $b = 12$ in. and $h = 20$ in. to give $h/b = 1.67$. Assume that the interaction contour factor $\beta = 0.61$.

$$\text{equivalent } M_{ox} = M_{nx} + M_{ny}\frac{h}{b}\frac{1-\beta}{\beta}$$

or

$$M_{ox} = 2{,}400{,}000 + 1{,}400{,}000(1.67)\frac{1-0.61}{0.61} = 3{,}894{,}787 \text{ in.-lb (440 kN-m)}$$

Verify capacity P_u of the assumed column section (step 2)

From step 1, $b = 12$ in. (305 mm) and $h = 20$ in. (508 mm). Assume that the steel ratio $\rho = \rho' = 0.012$ and $d' = 2.5$ in. (64 mm). $d = 20.0 - 2.5 = 17.5$ in. (446 mm).

$$A_s = A_s' = 0.012 \times 12(20.0 - 2.5) = 2.52 \text{ in.}^2$$

Try 3 no. 8 bars, $A_s = A_s' = 2.37$ in.^{2} (1529 mm^2) on each of the two 12-in. faces parallel to the x axis of bending in Figure 9.42.

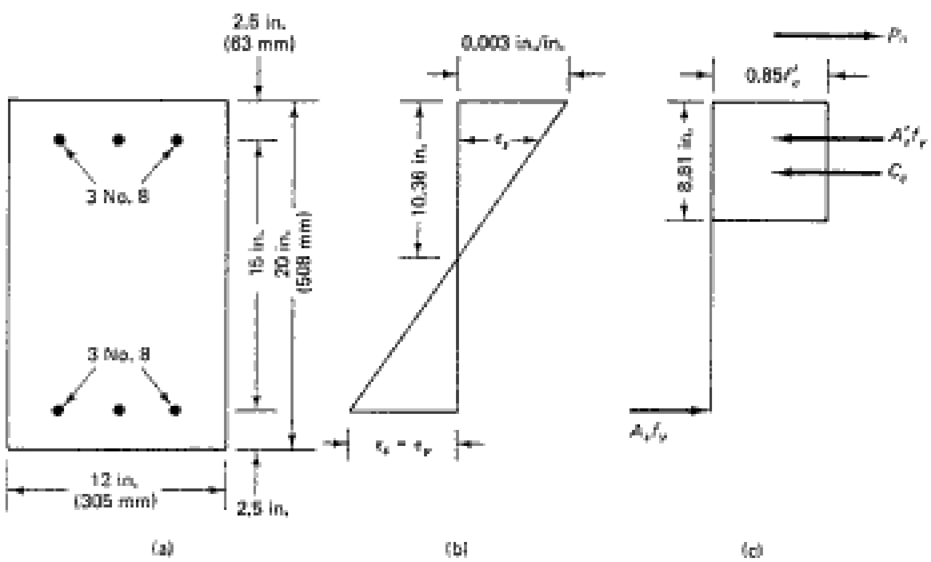


Figure 9.42 Equivalent column geometry: strain and stress diagrams (balanced failure): (a) cross section; (b) strains; (c) stresses.

Another way of trying a section is to select dimensions in the first trial using an approximation for equivalent uniaxial moment from

$$M_u = 1.1\sqrt{(M_{ux})^2 + (M_{uy}\,h/b)^2} \tag{9.53}$$

Limit compression-controlled state (Step 3)

$$\frac{c}{d_t} = 0.60 \qquad d_t = 17.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = 0.60 \times 17.5 = 10.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 10.5 = 8.925 \text{ in.}$$

From Equation 9.9(b),

$$f_s' = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{d'}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{10.5}\right) = 66{,}286 \text{ in.} > f_y$$

Use $f_s' = 60{,}000$ psi

$$f_s = f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85\,f_c'\,b\,a = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 12 \times 8.925 = 364{,}140 \text{ lb}$$

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 2.37 \times 60{,}000 = 142{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_y = 2.37 \times 60{,}000 = 142{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Limit } P_{nx} = C_c + C_s - T_s = 364{,}140 + 142{,}200 - 142{,}200 = 364{,}140 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Limit } M_{nx} = C_c\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + C_s\left(\frac{h}{2} - d'\right) + T_s\left(d - \frac{h}{2}\right)$$

$$= 364{,}140\left(\frac{20}{2} - \frac{8.925}{2}\right) + 142{,}200\left(\frac{20}{2} - 2.5\right) + 142{,}200\left(17.5 - \frac{20}{2}\right) = 4{,}149{,}425 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Limit } e_{cy} = \frac{4{,}149{,}425}{364{,}140} = 11.4 \text{ in.}$$

Trial and adjustment analysis of section for bending about the x-axis (Step 4)

Since actual $e_y = 8.0$ in. < limit $e_{cy} = 11.4$ in., try a neutral axis depth, c, larger than limit-state neutral axis depth for this compression-controlled state.

Assume $c = 12.1$ in.

$$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 12.1 = 10.21 \text{ in.}$$

$$f_s' = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{12.1}\right) = 69{,}025 \text{ psi } > f_y, \text{ use } f_s' = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$f_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{17.5}{12.1} - 1\right) = 38{,}826 \text{ psi}$$

$$P_n = C_c + C_s - T_s$$

$$C_c = 0.85\,f_c'\,b\,a = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 12 \times 10.21 = 416{,}568 \text{ lb}$$

$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 2.37 \times 60{,}000 = 142{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

$$T_s = A_s f_s = 2.37 \times 39{,}875 = 92{,}018 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_{nx} = 416{,}568 + 142{,}200 - 92{,}018 = 466{,}750 \text{ lb}$$

$$M_{nx} = 416{,}568\left(10 - \frac{10.2}{2}\right) + 142{,}200\,(10 - 2.5) + 92{,}018\,(17.5 - 10) = 3{,}795{,}735 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$e_y = \frac{M_{nx}}{P_{nx}} = \frac{3{,}795{,}735}{466{,}750} = 8.1 \doteq \text{actual } e = 8.0 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, compatibility analysis is satisfied in bending about the x-axis.

Calculate the actual nominal resisting moment M_{oxn} for equivalent uniaxial bending about the x axis when $M_{ny} = 0$ (step 3).

Required $P_u = 300{,}000$ lb. Assuming that the compression steel has yielded (to be verified later), $f'_s = 60{,}000$ and $A_s f'_s - A_s f_y = 0$. Hence $P_n = 0.85 f'_c ba$,
or

$$a = \frac{P_u}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{300{,}000}{0.85 \times 4000 \times 12} = 7.35 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{7.35}{0.85} = 8.65 \text{ in.}$$

$$f'_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{8.65 - 2.5}{8.65}\right) = 61{,}855 \text{ psi} > 60{,}000 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$f_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{d}{c} - 1\right) = 87{,}000\left(\frac{17.5}{8.65} - 1\right) = 89{,}052 \text{ psi} > f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi},$$

hence $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi

$$M_{oxn} = P_n e = 0.85 f'_c ba\left(\bar{y} - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f_y (\bar{y} - d') + A_s f_s (d - \bar{y})$$

or

$$M_{oxn} = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 12 \times 7.35\left(\frac{20}{2} - \frac{7.35}{2}\right) + 2.37 \times 60{,}000\left(\frac{20}{2} - 2.5\right)$$

$$+ 2.37 \times 60{,}000\left(17.5 - \frac{20}{2}\right)$$

$$= 4{,}029{,}741 \text{ in.-lb (455 kN-m)} > M_{ox}(3{,}894{,}787 \text{ in.-lb}) \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

If this calculation showed that $M_{oxn} < M_{ox}$ obtained in step 1, revise the assumed cross section by increasing the steel area or enlarging the section, or both.

Calculate the actual nominal resisting moment M_{oyn} for the equivalent uniaxial bending about the y axis when $M_{nx} = 0$ (step 4).

In this condition, $b = 20$ in., $h = 12$ in. $d = 9.5$ in., and $A_s = A'_s = 2.37$ in.[2]. By trial and adjustment, choose compressive block depth a such that the calculated P_u approximates the required P_u.

At the third trial, $a = 4.8$ in. and $c = 4.8/0.85 = 5.65$ in.

$$f'_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{5.65 - 2.5}{5.65}\right) = 48{,}504 \text{ psi}$$

$$f_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{d - c}{c}\right) = 87{,}000\left(\frac{9.5 - 5.65}{5.65}\right) = 59{,}283 \text{ psi}$$

$$P_u = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 20 \times 4.8 + 2.37 \times 48{,}504 - 2.37 \times 59{,}283$$

$$= 300{,}854 \doteq \text{required } P_u = 300{,}000 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Hence use $a = 4$[illegible]

$$M_{oyn} = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 20 \times 4.8\left(\frac{12}{2} - \frac{4.8}{2}\right) + 2.37 \times 48{,}504\left(\frac{12}{2} - 2.5\right)$$
$$+ 2.37 \times 59{,}283\left(9.5 - \frac{12}{2}\right) = 2{,}069{,}133 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Find M_{ny} by entering M_{nx}/M_{oxn} and trial β value into the β-factor contour plots in Fig. 9.40 (step 5).

First trial $\beta = 0.61$. From step 3, $M_{oxn} = 4{,}029{,}741$ in.-lb

$$\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{oxn}} = \frac{2{,}400{,}000}{4{,}029{,}741} = 0.596$$

Enter into Figure 9.40 the values of $\beta = 0.61$ and $M_{nx}/M_{oxn} = 0.596$ to get

$$\frac{M_{ny}}{M_{oyn}} = 0.62$$

But M_{oyn} from step 4 = 2,069,133 in.-lb, or

$$\frac{M_{ny}}{2{,}069{,}133} = 0.62$$

Hence

$$M_{ny} = 0.62 \times 2{,}069{,}133 = 1{,}282{,}862 \text{ in.-lb}$$
$$< \text{required } M_{ny} = 1{,}400{,}000 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Revise the solution assuming a higher β value. If adjusting β does not give the actual M_{ny} at least equal to the required M_{ny}, increase the reinforcement area or enlarge the section.

Second trial and adjustment (step 6)

Assume the same section but assume that $\beta = 0.63$

$$M_{ox} = 2{,}400{,}000 + 1{,}400{,}000 \times 1.67 \times \frac{1 - 0.63}{0.63} = 3{,}773{,}111 \text{ in.-lb}$$
$$M_{ox} = 3{,}773{,}111 \simeq M_{ox} = 3{,}795{,}735 \text{ in.-lb, hence} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Trial and adjustment analysis of section for bending about the y-axis (Step 6)

Actual $e_y = 4.67$ in.
Assume $c = 15.6$ in.

$a = \beta_1 c = 0.85 \times 15.6 = 13.26$ in. Use 12 in. for computing P_{ny} since a would otherwise be outside the section.

$$f_s' = 87{,}000\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{15.6}\right) = 73{,}057 \text{ psi} > f_y, \text{ use } f_s' = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$f_s = 87{,}000\left(\frac{17.5}{15.6} - 1\right) = 10{,}596 \text{ psi}$$

$$C_c = 0.85 f_c' \, b \, a = 0.85 \times 4{,}000 \times 20 \times 12.0 = 816{,}000 \text{ lb}$$
$$C_s = A_s' f_s' = 2.37 \times 60{,}000 = 142{,}200 \text{ lb}$$
$$T_s = A_s f_s = 2.37 \times 10{,}596 = 25{,}113 \text{ lb}$$
$$P_{ny} = C_c + C_s - T_s = 816{,}000 + 142{,}200 - 25{,}113 = 933{,}087 \text{ lb}$$
$$M_{ny} = 816{,}000\left(10 - \frac{12.0}{2}\right) + 142{,}200\,(10 - 2.5) + 25{,}113\,(17.5 - 10) = 4{,}518{,}848$$

$$e_y = \frac{M_{ny}}{P_{ny}} = \frac{4{,}518{,}848}{933{,}087} = 4.84 \text{ in.} \simeq \text{actual } e_y = 4.67 \text{ in.,} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Therefore, compatibility analysis for bending about the y-axis is satisfied.

From step 3, $M_{oxn} = 4{,}029{,}741$ in.-lb since this value does not change as long as the section and its reinforcement remain the same. $M_{ux}/M_{oxn} = 0.596$ from before and $\beta = 0.63$.

From contour plots in Fig. 9.40, $M_{uy}/M_{oyn} = 0.68$. From step 4, $M_{oyn} = 2{,}069{,}133$.

$$M_{ny} = 0.68 \times 2{,}069{,}133 = 1{,}407{,}010 \text{ in.-lb} > \text{required } M_{ny} = 1{,}400{,}000$$

Adopt the design.

The use of hand-held or desk computers, or charts in steps 2 to 6 reduces the calculation effort for biaxially loaded columns almost to that for the design of uniaxially loaded columns.

Select the longitudinal and lateral reinforcement (step 7)

Longitudinal bars: Provide three No. 8 bars (25.4-mm diameter) on each of the two 12-in.-wide faces. Provide one No. 8 bar at the center of the 20-in.-wide face so that each face of this column would have an *equal* number of reinforcing bars.

Lateral ties: Try No. 3 bar lateral ties. The spacing s should be the minimum of

$$16 \times \text{longitudinal bar diameter} = 16 \times \frac{8}{8} = 16 \text{ in.}$$

$$48 \times \text{lateral tie diameter} = 48 \times \frac{3}{8} = 18 \text{ in.}$$

The minimum lateral dimension = 12 in. Therefore, provide No. 3 (9.53-mm diameter) lateral ties at 12 in. (305 mm) center to center. Reinforcing details are shown in Figure 9.43.

9.16.5 Reciprocal Load Method

This method developed by Bresler relates the desired axial force P_u value to three other values on a reciprocal of the failure surface (Ref. 9.11). Assume S_1 denotes the coordinates on the failure surface in Figure 9.38 such that the values of the load and eccentricities as P_u, e_x, and e_y. If S_2 is a point on the compatible reciprocal surface to that in Figure 9.38, then $S2$ would define the coordinates of that point as $1/P_u$, e_x, and e_y, where $P_u = \phi P_n$, which is the factored (design) load.

If the desired axial load P_u under biaxial loading about the x and y axes is related to the P_u values denoted by P_{uy}, P_{ux}, and P_{uo}, then

$$\frac{1}{P_n} = \frac{1}{P_{nx}} + \frac{1}{P_{ny}} - \frac{1}{P_o} \tag{9.54a}$$

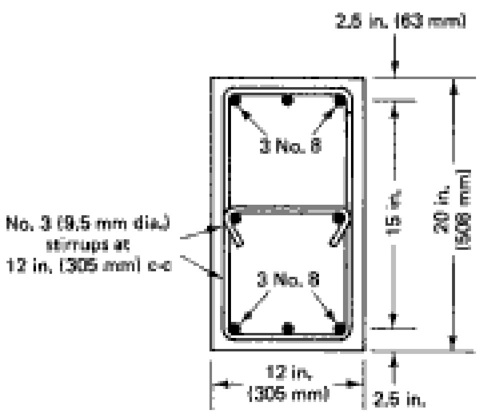


Figure 9.43 Biaxially loaded column section.

or

$$\frac{P_o}{P_n} = \frac{P_o}{P_{nx}} + \frac{P_o}{P_{ny}} - 1 \tag{9.54b}$$

P_{nx} = nominal axial load at eccentricity e_y along the x-axis; $e_x = 0$

P_{ny} = nominal axial load at eccentricity e_x along the y-axis; $e_y = 0$

P_o = nominal axial load, namely $e_y = e_x = 0$

M_{nx} = moment about the x-axis = $P_n e_y$

M_{ny} = moment about the y-axis = $P_n e_x$

e_x = eccentricity measured parallel to the x-axis as in Figure 9.36a, namely, $e_x = M_{ny}/P_{ny}$

e_y = eccentricity measured parallel to the y-axis = M_{nx}/P_{nx}

x = column cross-section dimension parallel to the x-axis

y = column cross-section dimension parallel to the y-axis

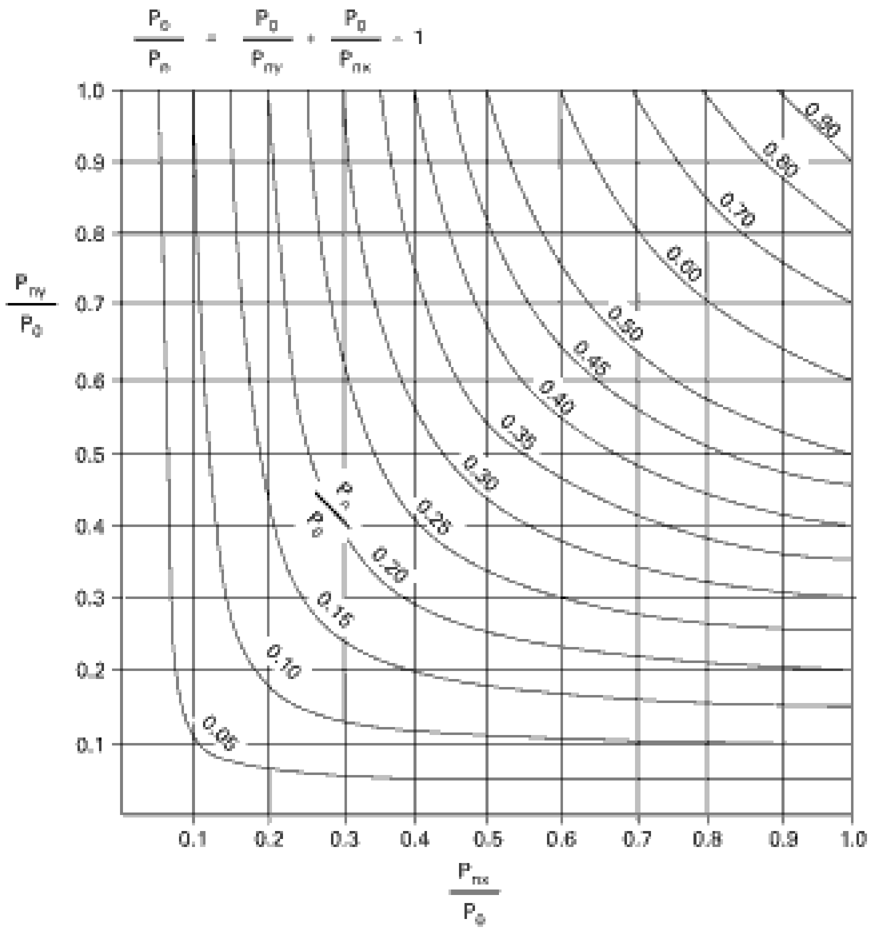


Figure 9.44 Biaxial-bending reciprocal load solution (Ref. 9.8).

The step-by-step operational procedure essentially follows the logic in the steps presented in Sec. 9.16.3.

The set of plots in Figure 9.44 enable obtaining a rapid solution for the axial load P_n of a biaxially loaded compression member.

9.16.6 Modified Load Contour Method

In lieu of Equation 9.54, Hsu in Ref. 9.16 proposed a modified expression which can represent both the strength interaction diagram and the failure surface of a reinforced concrete biaxially loaded columns as in Figure 9.45 modifying the approach presented in Sec. 9.16.2. This method as well as the reciprocal load method seems to demand less computational rigor as can be seen from the two design examples to follow.

The interaction expression for the load and bending moments about the two axes is

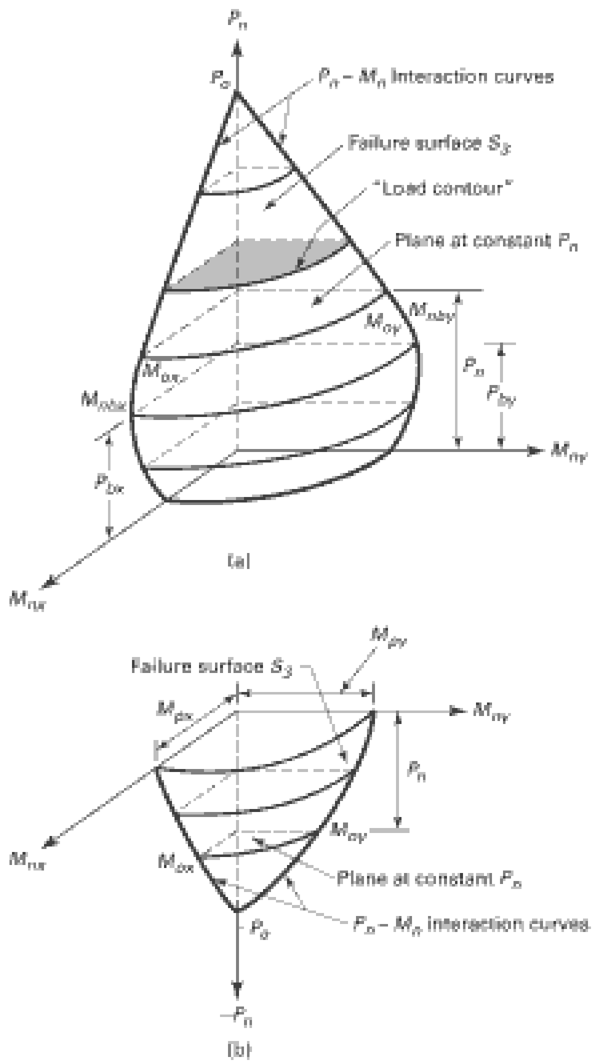


Figure 9.45 Failure surface interaction diagram (Ref. 9.13) (a) biaxial bending and compression, (b) biaxial bending and tension.

$$\left(\frac{P_u - P_{nb}}{P_{no} - P_{nb}}\right) + \left(\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{nbx}}\right)^{1.5} + \left(\frac{M_{ny}}{M_{nby}}\right)^{1.5} = 1.0 \tag{9.55}$$

where

P_u = nominal axial compression (positive), or tension (negative)
M_{nx}, M_{ny} = nominal bending moments about the x- and y-axis respectively
P_{no} = maximum nominal axial compression (positive) or axial tension (negative)
$= 0.85 f'_c (A_g - A_{st}) + f_y A_{st}$
P_{nb} = nominal axial compression at the limit strain state ($\varepsilon_t = 0.002$)
M_{nbx}, M_{nby} = nominal bending moments about the x- and y-axis respectively, at the limit strain state ($\varepsilon_t = 0.002$)

The value of P_{nb} and M_{nb} can be obtained from:

$$P_{nb} = 0.85 f'_c \beta_1 c_b b + A'_s f'_s - A_s f_s \tag{9.56a}$$

and

$$M_{nb} = P_{nb}\, e_b = C_c\left(d - \frac{a}{2} - d''\right) + C_s\,(d - d' - d'') + Td'' \tag{9.56b}$$

where a = depth of the equivalent block $= \beta_1 c_b$

$$c_b = \left(\frac{0.003}{f_y/E_s + 0.003}\right) d = \left(\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 + f_y}\right) d$$

f'_s = stress in the compressive reinforcement closest to the load
$= f_y$ if $f'_s \geq f_y$
T_s = Force in the tensile side reinforcement

The step-by-step operational procedure for the design of biaxially loaded columns essentially follows the procedure of Sec. 9.16.3.

9.16.7 Example 9.17: Design of a Biaxially Loaded Column by the Reciprocal Load Method

Design the reinforced concrete rectangular nonslender column of Example 9.16 by the reciprocal load method.

Solution:

$P_u = 195{,}000$ lb (878 kN)
$M_{ux} = P_u e_y = 1{,}560{,}000$ in.-lb (176 kN-m) about the x-axis
$M_{uy} = P_u e_x = 910{,}000$ in.-lb (103 kN-m) about the y-axis
$f'_c = 4000$ psi (27.6 MPa), normal weight
$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

Hence:

$$e_y = \frac{M_{ux}}{P_u} = \frac{1{,}560{,}000}{195{,}000} = 8.0 \text{ in.}$$

$$e_x = \frac{M_{uy}}{P_u} = \frac{910{,}000}{195{,}000} = 4.7 \text{ in.}$$

x: axis parallel to the shorter side b

y: axis parallel to the longer side h

(a) *Preliminary choice of column section*

Assume a total reinforcement percentage of 2.5%. Use a section with reinforcing bars on all faces.

$$P_n = \frac{P_u}{\phi} = \frac{195{,}000}{0.65} = 300{,}000 \text{ lb.}$$

From Equation 9.3(a), the estimated preliminary gross area of the column section if axially loaded is

$$A_g > \frac{P_n}{0.45(f'_c + f_y\rho_t)}$$

$$> \frac{300{,}000}{0.45(4000 + 60{,}000 \times 0.025)}$$

$$> 121.2 \text{ in.}^2$$

Since the column is biaxially loaded with eccentricities $e_x = 8.0$ in. and $e_y = 4.67$ in., assume that A_g is *twice* the value obtained from Eq. 9.3(a) for axial loading with zero eccentricity.

For a first trail assume a section $- 2(121.2) \cong 242$ in.^{2}

$$\text{Ratio } \frac{M_{ny}}{M_{nx}} = \frac{910{,}000}{1{,}560{,}000} = 0.58 \simeq \frac{b}{h}$$

$$A_g = bh = 0.58h^2 \cong 242 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$h = 20.4 \text{ in.} \qquad b = 11.9 \text{ in.}$$

Try a section 12 in. × 20 in., $A_g = 240$ in.^{2}

(b) *Bending about the x-axis*

$$A_g = 12 \times 20 = 240 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$P_{nx} = 466{,}750 \text{ lb (from step 4, Ex. 9.16)}$$

$$P_{ny} = 658{,}095 \text{ lb (from step 6, Ex. 9.16)}$$

$$A_{st} = 8 \text{ No. 8 bars} = 8 \times 0.79 = 6.32 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\rho_g = \frac{6.32}{12 \times 20} = 0.026$$

$$P_{no} = 0.85 f'_c (A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st} f_y$$

$$= 0.85 \times 4{,}000 (240 - 6.32) + 6.32 \times 60{,}000 = 1{,}173{,}712 \text{ lb}$$

$$\frac{1}{P_n} = \frac{1}{P_{nx}} + \frac{1}{P_{ny}} - \frac{1}{P_{no}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{466{,}750} + \frac{1}{658{,}095} - \frac{1}{1{,}173{,}712} = 2.81 \times 10^{-6}$$

$$P_n = \frac{1}{2.81 \times 10^{-6}} = 355{,}872 \text{ lb.} > 300{,}000 \text{ lb,} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Note that the reciprocal method tends to be usually conservative.

Adopt the section and the reinforcement as shown in Fig. 9.43 of Ex. 9.16

Alternate Graphical Solution Using the Chart in Fig. 9.44

$$\rho_g = \frac{6.32}{12 \times 20} = 0.026$$

$$P_o = 0.85 f'_c(A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st} f_y$$
$$= 0.85 \times 4000\,(240 - 6.32) + 6.32 \times 60{,}000 = 1{,}173{,}712 \text{ in.-lb}$$
$$P_{nx} = 466{,}750 \text{ lb (from Step 4, Ex. 9.16)}$$
$$P_{ny} = 658{,}095 \text{ lb (from Step 6, Ex. 9.16)}$$
$$\frac{P_{nx}}{P_o} = \frac{466{,}750}{1{,}173{,}712} = 0.40$$
$$\frac{P_{ny}}{P_o} = \frac{658{,}095}{1{,}173{,}712} = 0.56$$

From the chart in Fig. 9.44, $\dfrac{P_n}{P_o} = 0.3$

Hence, $P_n = 0.3 \times 1{,}173{,}712 = 352{,}114$ lb > Required $P_n = 300{,}000$ lb, O.K.

9.16.8 Example 9.18: Design of a Biaxially Loaded Column by the Modified Load Contour Method

Design the reinforced concrete rectangular nonslender column of Example 9.17 by the modified load contour method.

Solution:

$$p_u = 195{,}000 \text{ lb (878 kN)}$$
$$M_{ux} = P_u e_y = 1{,}560{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (176 kN-m) about the } x\text{-axis}$$
$$M_{uy} = P_u e_x = 910{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (103 kN-m) about the } y\text{-axis}$$
$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal weight}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Hence:

$$e_y = \frac{M_{ux}}{P_u} = \frac{1{,}560{,}000}{195{,}000} = 8.0 \text{ in.}$$
$$e_x = \frac{M_{uy}}{P_u} = \frac{910{,}000}{195{,}000} = 4.7 \text{ in.}$$

x : axis parallel to the shorter side b

y : axis parallel to the longer side h

The expression for interaction surface of biaxially loaded columns from equation 9.59 is:

$$\left(\frac{P_n - P_{nb}}{P_{no} - P_{nb}}\right) + \left(\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{nbx}}\right)^{1.5} + \left(\frac{M_{ny}}{M_{nby}}\right)^{1.5} = 1.0$$

Assume a column section based on the same assumptions as in part (a) of Ex. 9.17,

$b = 12$ in. $\quad h = 20$ in. $\quad d' = 2.5$ in.

A_s = (eight No. 8 bars) = 6.32 in. using three bars at each of the 12-in. faces of the section

From example 9.16, $\phi = 0.65$, Limit $a = 8.925$ in. (227 mm),

$f'_s = 66{,}286 > f_y$, hence compression steel yielded

$$P_n = \frac{195{,}000}{0.65} = 300{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

Limit $P_{nb} = 368{,}880$ lb, from Ex. 9.16

Since three No. 8 bars are at each of the two faces and two bars at the neutral axis, use equation 9.13 in lieu of Eq. 9.59.

From Ex. 9.16, Limit M_{nbx} = 4,113,875 in.-lb

$$e_{by} = \frac{M_{nbx}}{P_n} = \frac{4{,}113{,}875}{368{,}880} = 11.15 \text{ in.}$$

$e_{by} > e_y$ = 8.0 in., hence compression failure and $\phi = 0.65$

$$a_{nby} = \beta_1 c_{nby} = \beta_1\left(\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 + f_y}\right)d$$

$$= 0.85\left(\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 + 60{,}000}\right)(12 - 2.5) = 4.78 \text{ in. (121 mm)}$$

$$\text{Limit } P_{nbx} = 0.85 f'_c ba = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 20 \times 4.78$$

$$= 325{,}000 \text{ lb} < P_{nby},$$

$$M_{nby} = 0.85 \times 4000 \times 20 \times 4.78\left(\frac{12}{2} - \frac{4.78}{2}\right) + 3 \times 0.79 \times 60{,}000\,(12 - 2.5)$$

$$+ 3 \times 0.79 \times 60{,}000\left(9.5 - \frac{12}{2}\right)$$

$$= 2{,}006{,}270 \text{ in.-lb (227 kN-m)}$$

$$P_{no} = 0.85 f'_c (A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st} f_y$$

$$= 0.85 \times 4000\,(240 - 6.32) + 6.32 \times 60{,}000$$

$$= 794{,}500 + 379{,}200 = 1{,}173{,}700 \text{ lb.}$$

$$M_{nx} = \frac{1{,}560{,}000}{0.65} = 2{,}400{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (271 kN-m)}$$

$$M_{ny} = \frac{910{,}000}{0.65} = 1{,}400{,}000 \text{ in.-lb (158 kN-m)}$$

Using the interaction surface expression for biaxial bending in Equation 9.55,

$$\left(\frac{P_c - P_{nb}}{P_{no} - P_{nb}}\right) + \left(\frac{M_{nx}}{M_{nbx}}\right)^{1.5} + \left(\frac{M_{ny}}{M_{nby}}\right)^{1.5}$$

$$= \frac{300{,}000 - 325{,}000}{1{,}173{,}700 - 325{,}000} + \left(\frac{2{,}400{,}000}{4{,}113{,}875}\right)^{1.5} + \left(\frac{1{,}400{,}000}{2{,}006{,}270}\right)^{1.5}$$

$$= -0.030 + 0.446 + 0.583 = 0.956 \simeq 1.0$$

Hence, accept the design, namely,

b = 12 in., h = 20 in. d = 17.5 in.

A_s = eight No. 8 bars distributed as in Figure 9.43.

9.17 SI EXPRESSIONS AND EXAMPLE FOR THE DESIGN OF COMPRESSION MEMBERS

1. Limit $c = \dfrac{600}{600 + f_y} d$
2. $f'_s = 0.003 E_s \dfrac{c - d'}{c} \le f_y$
3. $E_c = w_c^{1.5}\, 0.043\sqrt{f'_c}$ MPa where w_c = 1500 to 2500 kg/m^3 (90 to 1554 lb/ft^3). For standard normal-weight concrete, w_c = 2400 kg/m^3 to give E_c = 29,700 MPa.
4. Modulus of rupture $f_r = 0.7\sqrt{f'_c}$
5. E_s = 200,000 MPa

6. $\phi P_{n(max)} = 0.80\phi[0.85\, f'_c(A_g - A_{st}) + f_y A_{st}]$, where $\phi = 0.80$ for tied columns and 0.85 for spirally reinforced columns

7. Ratio of spiral reinforcement should not be less than the value

$\rho_s = 0.45\left(\dfrac{A_g}{A_c} - 1\right)\dfrac{f'_c}{f_y}$ where f_y is the specified yield strength of the spirals, but not to exceed 400 MPa.

8. $\dfrac{k\ell_u}{r} \leq \left(34 - 12\dfrac{M_1}{M_2}\right)$

9. $EI = \dfrac{0.2\, E_c I_g + E_s I_{se}}{1 + \beta_d}$ or $EI = \dfrac{0.4\, E_c I_g}{1 + \beta_d}$

10. For compression members without transverse loads

$c_m = 0.6 + 0.4\dfrac{M_1}{M_2} \geq 0.4$

where M_1/M_2 is positive for single curvature. For members with transverse loads between supports, $c_m = 1.0$.

11. $M_{2,min} = P_u(15 + 0.03h)$ about each axis separately, where 15 and h are in millimeters.

12. $M_1 = M_{1ns} + \delta_s M_{1s}$ and $M_2 = M_{2ns} + \delta_s M_{2s}$

13. $\delta_s M_s = \dfrac{M_s}{1 - \Sigma P_u/(0.75\,\Sigma P_c)} \geq M_s$, where $\Sigma P_c = \Sigma\dfrac{\pi^2 E}{\ell r^2}$ as the Euler buckling load.

9.17.1 SI Example on Column Design

Solve Ex. 9.5 using SI units.

Data

$$f'_c = 27.6 \text{ MPa} \qquad (\text{MPa} = \text{N/mm}^2)$$
$$f_y = 414 \text{ MPa}$$
$$e = 305 \text{ mm}$$
$$b = 305 \text{ mm}$$
$$h = 381 \text{ mm}$$
$$A_s = A'_s = \text{three No. 9 bars (28.7-mm diameter)} = 1936 \text{ mm}^2$$

Use in this solution $A_s = A'_s =$ four No. 25 M = 2000 mm^2

Assume $d' = 66$ mm to give $d = 381 - 66 = 315$ mm

Solution:

Trial and adjustment procedure

Assume that $c = 180$ mm to give $a = 153$ mm. From similar triangles,

$$f'_s = 0.003E_s\left(\frac{c - d'}{c}\right) = 0.003 \times 200{,}000\left(\frac{180 - 66}{180}\right)$$
$$= 380 \text{ MPa}$$
$$P_n = 0.85 \times 27.6 \times 305 \times 158 + 2000 \times 387 - 2000 \times 414$$

= [illegible] $\times 10^6$ N

$$M_n = 0.85 \times 27.6 \times 305 \times 153\left(190.5 - \frac{153}{2}\right) + 2000 \times 380(190.5 - 66)$$
$$+ 2000 \times 414(315 - 190.5) = 322 \times 10^6 \text{ N-mm}$$
$$e = \frac{322 \times 10^6}{1.03 \times 10^6} = 312 \text{ mm} > \text{actual } e = 305 \text{ mm}$$

Proceed to second cycle; assume that $c = 186$ mm to give $a = 158$ mm.

$$f'_s = 0.003 \times 200{,}000\left(\frac{186 - 66}{186}\right) = 387 \text{ MPa}$$
$$P_n = 0.85 \times 27.6 \times 305 \times 158 + 2000 \times 387 - 2000 \times 414$$
$$= 1.07 \times 10^6 \text{ N}$$
$$M_n = 0.85 \times 27.6 \times 305 \times 158\left(190.5 - \frac{158}{2}\right) + 2000 \times 387(190.5 - 66)$$
$$+ 2000 \times 414(315 - 190.5) = 326 \times 10^6 \text{ N-mm}$$
$$e = \frac{326 \times 10^6}{1.07 \times 10^6} = 304 \text{ mm} \simeq \text{actual } e = 305 \text{ mm}$$

Hence, column capacity $P_n = 1070$ kN.

Check Limit States of Neutral Axis Depth c:
From Equation 9.12 (b),
Limit tension-controlled state neutral axis ratio $c/d_t = 0.375$

$$\text{limit } c = 118 \text{ mm} < \text{actual } c = 180 \text{ mm}$$

Limit compression-controlled state $c/d_t = 0.60$

$$\text{limit } c = 0.60 \times 315 = 189 \text{ mm} \doteq \text{actual } c = 180 \text{ mm}$$

Adopt the solution giving $P_n = 1070$ kN.

SELECTED REFERENCES

9.1. ACI Committee 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete* (ACI 318-08) and *Commentary* (ACI 318R-08) American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2008, 445 pp.

9.2. Hognestad, E., *A Study of Combined Bending and Axial Load in Reinforced Concrete Members*, Bulletin 399, University of Illinois, Urbana, Ill., November 1951.

9.3. ACI Committee 105, "Reinforced Concrete Column Investigation," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Vol. 26, April 1930, pp. 601–612. Also see Vol. 27, pp. 675–676; Vol. 28, pp. 157–158; Vol. 29, pp. 53–56 and 272–284; Vol. 30, pp. 78–90 and 153–156, Farmington Hills, MI.

9.4. Richart, F. E., Draffin, J. O., Olson, T. A., and Heitman, R. H., *The Effect of Eccentric Loading, Protective Shells, Slenderness Ratios, and Other Variables in Reinforced Concrete Columns*, Bulletin 368, Engineering Experiment Station, University of Illinois, Urbana, Ill., 1947, 130 pp.

9.5. Whitney, C. S., "Plastic Theory of Reinforced Concrete Design," *Transactions of the ASCE*, Vol. 107, 1942, pp. 251–326.

9.6. American Institute of Steel Construction, *Specifications for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings and the Commentary on Their Specifications*, AISC, New York, 1969, and November 1978, 166 pp.

9.7. Johnston, B. G. (ed.), *Structural Stability Research Council Guide to Stability Design Criteria for Metal Structures*, Wiley, New York, 1966, 217 pp.

9.8. American Concrete Institute, *Design Handbook in Accordance with the Strength Design Method*, Publication SP-17(97

9.9. Furlong, R. W., "Columns Interaction Diagrams," Private Communication, 2001.

9.10. Everard, N. J., "Ultimate Design of Reinforced Concrete Columns," ACI SP-7, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1964, pp.152–182.

9.11. Issa, M. A., "Column Design Charts For Nominal Loads," Private Communication, 2001.

9.12. Broms, B., and Viest, I. M., "Long Reinforced Concrete Columns," *Symposium Proceedings*, ASCE Transactions Paper 3155, January 1958, pp. 309–400.

9.13. Timoshenko, S. P., and Gere, J. M., *Theory of Elastic Stability*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1961, 541 pp.

9.14. Bresler, B., "Design Criteria for Reinforced Concrete Columns under Axial Load and Biaxial Bending," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 57, Farmington Hills, MI, November 1960, pp. 481–490.

9.15. Parme, A. L., Nieves, J. M., and Gouens, A., "Capacity of Reinforced Rectangular Columns Subjected to Biaxial Bending," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 63, No. 9, Farmington Hills, MI, September 1966, pp. 911–921.

9.16. Hsu, C. T. T., "Analysis and Design of Square and Rectangular Columns by Equation of Failure Surface," ACI Structural Journal, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, March-April 1988, pp. 167–179.

9.17. Furlong, R. W., "Slenderness of Columns in Braced Frames," V. 119, No. 11, *ASCE J.* Structural Engineering, American Society of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA, November 1993, pp. 9406–9415.

9.18. Nawy, E. G., *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, Publ. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1998, 1250 pp.

9.19. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 944 pp.

9.20. McGregor, J. G. and Hage, S. E., "Stability Analysis and Design of Concrete," *Proceedings*, ASCE V 103, No. ST 10, American Society of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA, October 1977.

9.21. ASCE, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and other Structures—ASCE 7-05," American ociety of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA, 2005.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

9.1. Calculate the axial load strength P_n for columns having the cross-sections shown in Figure 9.46. Assume zero eccentricity for all cases. Cases (a), (b), (c), and (d) are tied columns; case (e) is spirally reinforced.

9.2. Calculate P_u and e in Figure 9.46a and c of Problem 9.1. Assume that the stresses in the tension steel are zero.

9.3. For the cross section shown in Figure 9.46a of Problem 9.1, determine the safe eccentricity e if $P_u = 200{,}000$ lb and the safe P_u if $e = 15$ in., satisfying compatibility of strains.

9.4. For the cross section shown in Figure 9.46c of Problem 9.1, determine the safe eccentricity e if $P_u = 900{,}000$ lb. Use the trial-and-adjustment method satisfying the compatibility of strains.

9.5. Repeat Problem 9.4 using Whitney's approximate procedure. Compare the results.

9.6. Construct the load-moment interaction diagram for the cross-sections shown in Figure 9.46a and c of Problem 9.1.

9.7. For the cross section shown in Figure 9.46d of Problem 9.1, calculate the design load P_u if $e = 6$ in. Repeat the calculation for $e = 20$ in. Use the strain-compatibility trial and adjustment procedure.

9.8. Design the reinforcement for a nonslender 15 in. × 20 in. column to carry the following loading. The factored ultimate axial force $P_u = 300{,}000$ lb. The eccentricity e to geometric centroid = 6 in. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

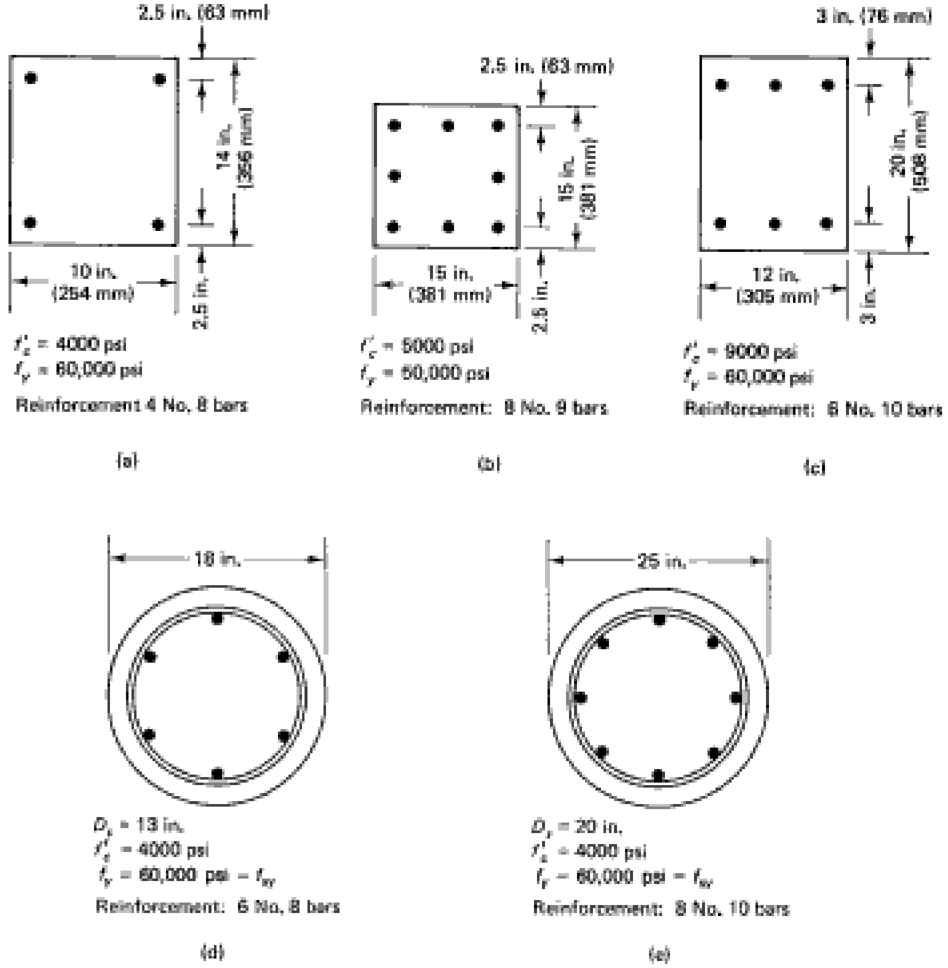


Figure 9.46 Column sections.

9.9. Design a nonslender column to support the following service loads and moments. P_L = 100 kips, P_D = 50 kips, M_L = 1900 in.-kips, and M_D = 500 in.-kips. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

9.10. Design a nonslender circular column to support a factored ultimate load P_u = 250,000 lb and a factored moment $M_u = 5 \times 10^6$ in.-lb. Given:

f'_c = 6000 psi, normal-weight concrete
f_y = 60,000 psi
d' = 2.50 in.

9.11. Design the reinforcement for a 16 in. × 22 in. braced rectangular reinforced concrete column that can support a factored axial load P_u = 500,000 lb and a factored moment M_u = 3,500,000 in.-lb. The unsupported length, l_u, of the column is 10 ft. Assume that the end moments M_1 and M_2 are equal. Given:

f'_c = 4000 psi, sand-lightweight concrete
f_y = 60,000 psi
d' = 2.5 in.

9.12. A rectangular braced column of a multistory frame building has a floor height $l_u = 25$ ft. It is subjected to service dead-load moments $M_2 = 3{,}500{,}000$ on top and $M_1 = 2{,}500{,}000$ in.-lb at the bottom. The service live-load moments are 80% of the dead-load moments. The column carries a service axial dead load $P_D = 200{,}000$ lb and a service live load $P_L = 350{,}000$. Design the cross-section size and reinforcement for this column. Given:

$$f'_c = 7000 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$\Psi_A = 1.3, \qquad \Psi_B = 0.9$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$

9.13. A rectangular unbraced exterior column of a multibay, multifloor frame system is subjected to $P_u = 500{,}000$ lb, factored end moments $M_1 = 2{,}500{,}000$ in.-lb, and $M_2 = 3{,}500{,}000$ in.-lb. The unbraced length, l_u, of the column = 18 ft. Design this column if

(a) it is subjected to gravity loads with sidesway considered as negligible.

(b) it is subjected to wind load resulting in a sidesway factored moment $M_s = 2{,}100{,}000$ in.-lb. Assume the total loading of all interior and exterior columns in a single floor is $\Sigma P_u = 20 \times 10^6$ lb and $\Sigma P_c = 44 \times 10^6$ lb. Given:

$$f'_c = 6500 \text{ psi, normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$\Psi_A = 2, \qquad \Psi_B = 1.2$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$

9.14. Design the column in Problem 9.13 using a circular cross section.

9.15. The columns of the first floor in a nine-story 7 × 3 bays office building have a clear height of 18 ft (5.49 m). They are not braced against sidesway, and the clear height above the first floor is 11 ft (3.35 m). Assume in your solution that the exterior columns have the same section as the interior columns. Design a typical interior column in that floor. Given:

$$\Sigma P_c = 38 \times 10^6 \text{ lb}, \qquad \Sigma P_u = 16 \times 10^6 \text{ lb}$$

$$\frac{EI}{l} \text{ for the connecting beams} = 450 \times 10^6 \text{ in.}^2\text{-lb/ft } (50{,}850 \text{ kN-m})$$

Service loads for *interior columns* (lb) are

$$D = 360{,}000, \qquad L = 130{,}000, \qquad W = 7000$$

Service loads for *exterior columns* (lb) are

$$D = 80{,}000, \qquad L = 65{,}000, \qquad W = 5000$$

Service moments for the *interior columns* (in.-lb) are

Top:	$D = 200{,}000$,	$L = 160{,}000$,	$W = 600{,}000$
Bottom:	$D = 500{,}000$,	$L = 400{,}000$,	$W = 600{,}000$

Service moments for *exterior columns* (in.-lb) are

Top:	$D = 400{,}000$,	$L = 240{,}000$,	$W = 300{,}000$
Bottom:	$D = 700{,}000$,	$L = 360{,}000$,	$W = 300{,}000$

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$

Check also by the Q index method. Assume $V_u = 150{,}000$ lb/floor

$$\Delta_0 = 1.5 \text{ in.}$$

9.16. A nonslender square corner column is subjected to biaxial bending about its x and y axes. It supports a factored load $P_u = 200{,}000$ lb acting at eccentricities $e_x = e_y = 7$ in. Design the column size and reinforcement needed to resist the applied stresses. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$\text{gross reinforcement percentage } \rho_g = 0.03$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$

Solve by using all the three methods.

9.17. Design a nonslender rectangular corner column to support a factored load $P_u = 200{,}000$ lb acting at eccentricities $e_x = 9.0$ in. and $e_y = 6.0$ in. Try a section with a total gross reinforcement percentage not less than $\rho_g = 0.025$. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi, normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$d' = 2.5 \text{ in.}$$

Solve by using all the three methods.

10 BOND DEVELOPMENT OF REINFORCING BARS

10.1 INTRODUCTION

Reinforcement for concrete to develop the strength of a section in tension depends on the compatibility of the two materials to act together in resisting the external load. The reinforcing element, such as a reinforcing bar, has to undergo the same strain or deformation as the surrounding concrete in order to prevent the discontinuity or separation of the two materials under load. The modulus of elasticity, the ductility, and the yield or rupture strength of the reinforcement must also be considerably higher than those of the concrete in order to raise the capacity of the reinforced concrete section to a meaningful level. Consequently, materials such as brass, aluminum, rubber, or bamboo are not suitable for developing the bond or adhesion necessary between the reinforcement and the concrete. Steel and fiberglass do possess the principal factors necessary: yield strength, ductility, and bond value.

Bond strength results from a combination of several parameters, such as the mutual adhesion between the concrete and steel interfaces and the pressure of the hardened concrete against the steel bar or wire due to the drying shrinkage of the concrete. Additionally, friction interlock between the bar surface deformations or projections and the

Photo 10.1 Ladd Canyon overpass, Oregon. (Courtesy of Portland Cement Association.)

Photo 10.2 Coronado High School, Scottsdale, Arizona. (Courtesy Portland Cement Association.)

concrete caused by the micro movements of the tensioned bar results in increased resistance to slippage. The total effect of this is known as *bond*. In summary, bond strength is controlled by the following major factors:

1. Adhesion between the concrete and the reinforcing elements
2. Gripping effect resulting from the drying shrinkage of the surrounding concrete and the shear interlock between the bar deformations and the surrounding concrete
3. Frictional resistance to sliding and interlock as the reinforcing element is subjected to tensile stress
4. Effect of concrete quality and strength in tension and compression
5. Mechanical anchorage effect of the ends of bars through development length, splicing, hooks, and crossbars
6. Diameter, shape, and spacing of reinforcement as they affect crack development

The individual contributions of these factors are difficult to separate or quantify. Shear interlock, shrinking confining effect, and the quality of the concrete can be considered as major factors.

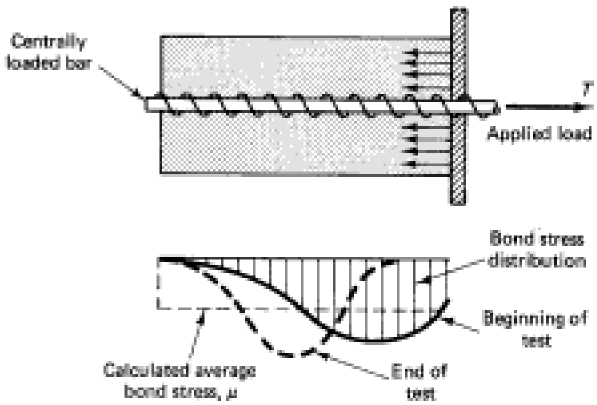
10.2 BOND STRESS DEVELOPMENT

Bond stress is primarily the result of the shear interlock between the reinforcing element and the enveloping concrete caused by the various factors previously enumerated. It can be described as a local shearing stress per unit area of the bar surface. This direct stress is transferred from the concrete to the bar interface so as to change the tensile stress in the reinforcing bar along its length.

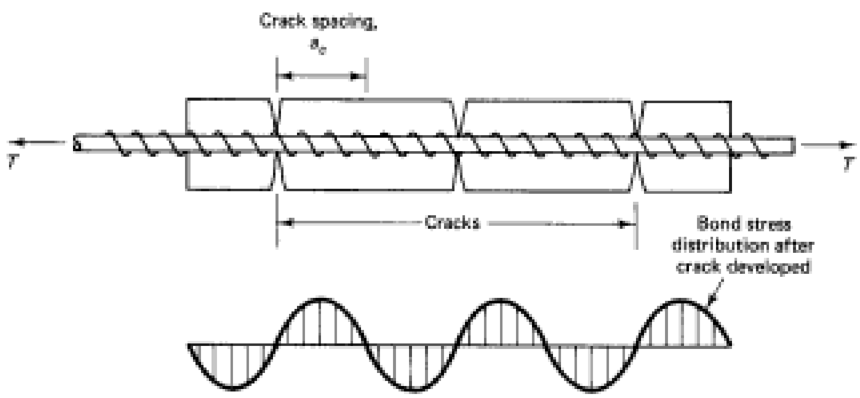
Three types of tests can determine the bond quality of the reinforcing element: the pull-out test, the embedded-rod test, and the beam test. Figure 10.1 shows the first two types of test. The pull-out test can give a good comparison of the bond efficiency of the various types of bar surfaces and the corresponding embedment lengths. It does not, however, truly represent the bond stress development in a structural beam. The concrete is subjected to compression and the reinforcing bar acts in tension in this test, whereas both the bar and the surrounding concrete in the beam are subjected to the same stress.

In the embedded-rod test (Figure 10.1b), the number of cracks, their widths, and their spacing at the various loading levels are a measure of the bond stress development and bond strength. The process resembles more closely the behavior in beams as the progressive increase in crack widths ultimately leads to bar slippage and beam failure.

The progressive slippage of the reinforcing bar in a beam and the redistribution of stresses is represented schematically in Figure 10.2. As the resistance to slippage over length l_1 becomes larger than the tensile strength of concrete, a new crack forms in that area and a new stress distribution develops around the newly formed crack. The bond stress peak in Figure 10.2a continues to progress to the right from position A to position B, passing the center line between the two potential cracks until a second crack forms at a distance a_c from crack 1.



(a)



(b)

Figure 10.1 Bond stress development: (a) pull-out bond test; (b) embedded-rod test.

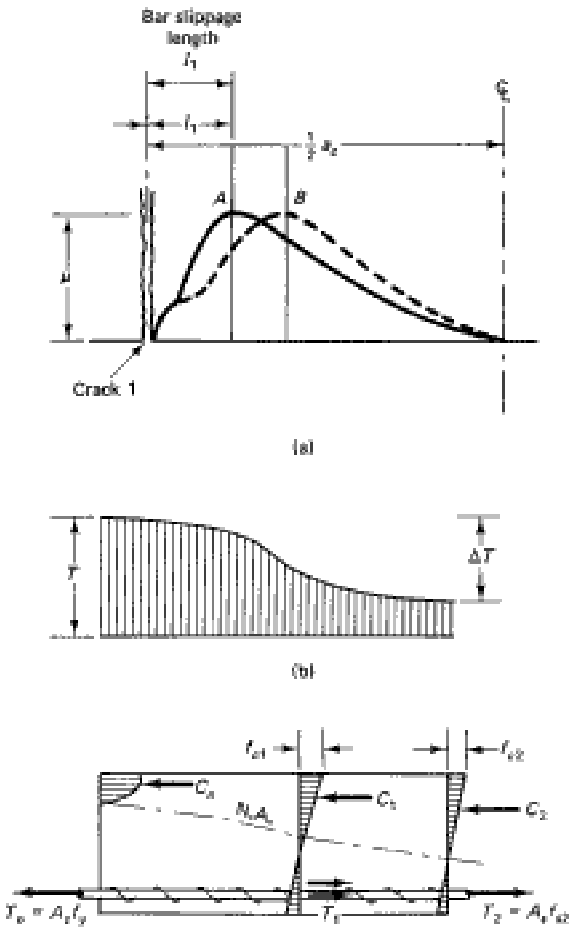


Figure 10.2 Stress redistribution with reinforcement slippage: (a) bond stress propagation; (b) reinforcement force or stress; (c) bending stress distribution.

Consequently, it is important to choose the appropriate length of the reinforcing bars that can minimize cracking and bond slippage. As a result, the reinforcement can attain its full strength in tension, that is, its yield strength within the structural element without bond failure.

10.2.1 Anchorage Bond

Assume l_d in Figure 10.3a to be the length of the bar embedded in the concrete subjected to a net pulling force dT. If d_b is the diameter of the bar, μ is the average bond stress, and f_s is the stress in the reinforcing bar due to direct pull or bending stresses in a beam, the anchorage pulling force dT would be $\mu \pi d_b l_d$ and equal to the tensile force dT on the bar cross section; that is,

$$dT = \frac{\pi d_b^2}{4} f_s$$

Hence

$$\mu \pi d_b l_d = \frac{\pi d_b^2}{4} f_s$$

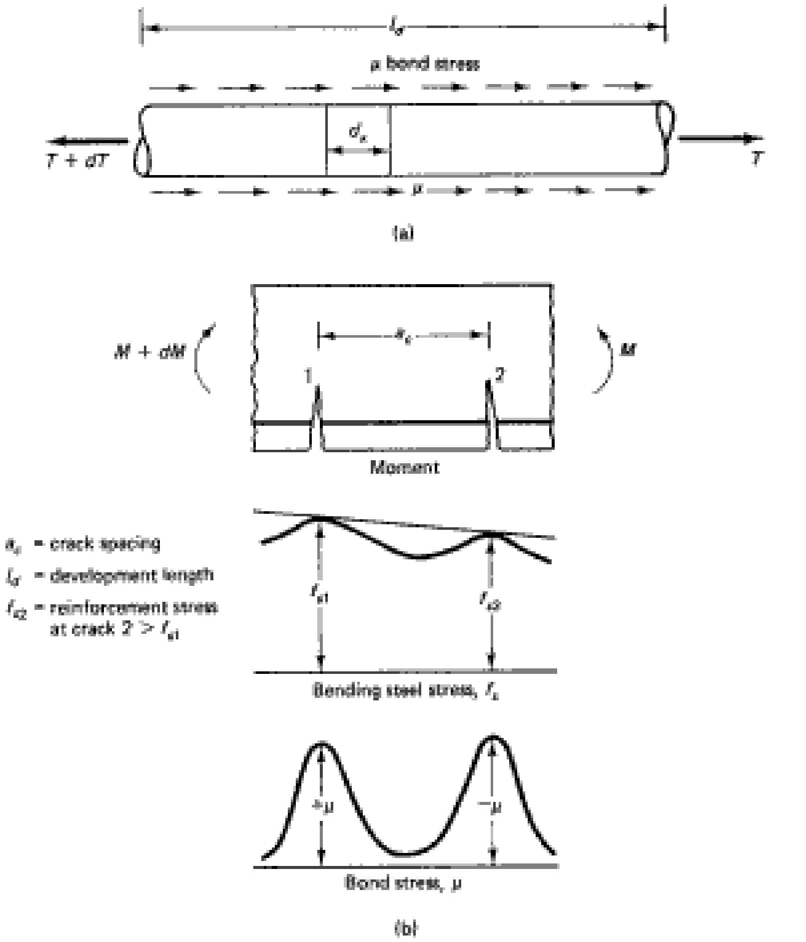


Figure 10.3 Bond stress across a reinforcing bar: (a) pull-out anchorage bond in a bar; (b) flexural bond.

from which the average bond stress

$$\mu = \frac{f_s d_b}{4 l_d} \tag{10.1a}$$

and the development length

$$l_d = \frac{f_s}{4\mu} d_b \tag{10.1b}$$

10.2.2 Flexural Bond

The change in stress along the length of a bar in a beam due to the variation of moment along the span is shown schematically in Figure 10.3b. If jd is the lever arm of the couple T due to moment M, and $T = M/jd$, the incremental tensile force in terms of the moment difference between cracked sections 1 and 2 is

$$dT = \frac{dM}{jd} \tag{10.2a}$$

Also,

$$dT = \mu\, dx \sum o \tag{10.2b}$$

Photo 10.3 Bond failure at support of simply supported beam. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

where $\Sigma\, o$ is the total circumference of all the reinforcement subjected to the bond stress pull, to get $dM/dx = \mu\, \Sigma\, ojd$; since $dM/dx =$ shear V,

$$\mu = \frac{V}{\Sigma\, ojd} \tag{10.2c}$$

Equation 10.2c is primarily of academic importance since it is indirectly accounted for in the development length approach given in Eq. 10.1b and the expressions to follow.

10.3 BASIC DEVELOPMENT LENGTH

From the discussion in the preceding section, it can be concluded that the development length l_d as a function of the size and yield strength of the reinforcement determines the resistance of the bars to slippage and hence the magnitude of the beam's failure capacity. It has been verified by tests that the bond strength μ is a function of the compressive strength of concrete such that

$$\mu = k\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{10.3a}$$

where k is a constant. If the bond strength equals or exceeds the yield strength of a bar of cross-sectional area $A_b = \pi d_b^2/4$, then

$$\pi d_b l_d \mu \geq A_b f_y \tag{10.3b}$$

From Eqs. 10.1b, 10.3a, and 10.3b and considering l_{db} as the basic development length,

$$l_{db} = k_1 \frac{A_b f_y}{\sqrt{f'_c}} \tag{10.4}$$

or

$$\frac{l_{db}}{d_b} = k_2 \frac{d_b f_y}{\sqrt{f'_c}} \tag{10.5}$$

where k_2 is a function of the geometrical property of the reinforcing element and the relationship between bond strength and compressive strength of concrete.

Equation 10.5 is consequently the basic model for defining the minimum development length of bars in structural elements with the factor k_2 being the experimental con-

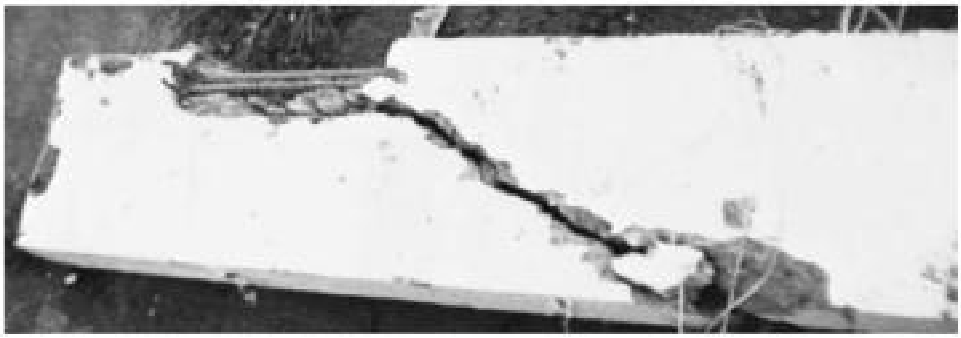


Photo 10.4 Bond failure and destruction of concrete cover at rupture load. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

stant that covers the various factors affecting the development length. These factors include bar size, bar spacing, concrete cover, type of concrete, spacing and amount of transverse reinforcement, effect of use of excess main reinforcement, whether bars are coated, and the effect of bar splicing. These factors have been extensively investigated over the past 30 years, particularly by the group at the University of Texas at Austin.

10.3.1 Development of Deformed Bars in Tension

Equation 10.5 is transformed in the ACI 318 Code by replacing the coefficient $k_3 d_b$ by multipliers that reflect the effects of spacing of bars, cover, confinement by transverse reinforcement, type of concrete, and whether the reinforcement is coated.

The full development length ℓ_d for deformed bars or wires obtained by applying these multipliers to the basic development length ℓ_{db} in Eq. 10.5 in terms of the bar diameter d_b is

$$\frac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \frac{3}{40} \frac{f_y}{\sqrt{f'_c}} \frac{\psi_t \psi_e \psi_s}{\left(\dfrac{c_b + K_{tr}}{d_b}\right)} \tag{10.6}$$

Photo 10.5 Bond failure in reinforced concrete beam. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

where the term $(c + K_{tr})/d_b$ should not exceed a value of 2.5, but not less than 1.5 for usual structures and $\sqrt{f'_c}$ shall not exceed 100 psi (≤6.9 MPa).

10.3.2 Modifying Multipliers of Development Length for Bars in Tension

ψ_t = *bar location factor*

For horizontal reinforcement so placed that more than 12 in. of fresh concrete is below the development length or splice (top reinforcement)	1.3
Other reinforcements	1.0

ψ_e = *coating factor*

Epoxy-coated bars or wires with cover less than $3d_b$ or clear spacing less than $6d_b$	1.5
All other epoxy-coated bars or wires	1.2
Uncoated reinforcement	1.0

However, the product of $\psi_t\psi_e$ should not exceed 1.7
ψ_s = *bar size factor*

No 6 and smaller bars and deformed wires (No. 20 and smaller, SI)	0.8
No. 7 and larger bars (No. 25 and larger, SI)	1.0
λ = concrete aggregate factor:	
lightweight concrete	0.75
other concrete	1.0

c = *spacing or cover dimension, in.*
Use the smaller of either the distance from the center of the bar to the nearest concrete surface or one-half center-to-center spacing of the bars being developed.

K_{tr} = *transverse reinforcement index* = 40 A_{tr}/sn, where constant 1500 carries units of psi

A_{tr} = total cross-sectional area of all transverse reinforcement that is within the spacing s and that crosses the potential plane of splitting through to the reinforcement being developed, in.^{2} (mm^2)

f_{yt} = specified yield strength of transverse reinforcement, psi (MPa); used as 60,000 psi for K_{tr} = 40 A_{tr}/sn

s = maximum spacing of transverse reinforcement within ℓ_d, center to center, in. (mm)

n = number of bars or wires being developed along the plane of splitting

The ACI Code permits using $K_{tr} = 0$ as a conservative design simplification even if transverse reinforcement is present.

λ = *lightweight aggregate concrete factor*
When lightweight aggregate concrete is used: $\lambda = 0.75$ as in Eq. 10.7(a)
However, when f_{ct} is specified, use $\lambda = 6.7(\sqrt{f'_c})/f_{ct}$ but not less than 1.0.
When normal-weight concrete is used: $\lambda = 1.0$
The minimum development length in all cases is 12 in.
λ_s = *excess reinforcement factor*

The ACI Code permits the reduction of ℓ_d if the longitudinal flexural reinforcement is in excess of that required by analysis except where anchorage or development for f_y is specifically required or the reinforcement is designed for seismic effects.

Reduction multiplier $\lambda_r = A_s$ required/A_s provided and $\lambda_{v2} = f_y/60{,}000$ for cases where $f_y > 60{,}000$ psi. In lieu of using a refined computation of the development length of Eq. 10.6, Table 10.1 can be utilized for typical construction practices using a value of $(c + K_{tr})/d_b = 1.5$ in such cases and $f'_c = 4000$ psi.

Table 10.2 is a general table for usual construction conditions giving the required development length for deformed bars of sizes Nos. 3 to 18.

Table 10.3 gives minimum beam width (inches) to satisfy two bar-diameter clear spacing, while Table 10.4 satisfies one-bar-diameter or 1-in. clear spacing. In these two tables, the following assumptions are made:

Side cover is 1.5 in on each side.

No. 3 stirrups for bars No. 11 or smaller.

No. 4 stirrups for bars No. 14 or No. 18.

Stirrups are bent around four bar diameters. Hence the distance from the centroid of the bar nearest the side face of the beam to the inside face of the No. 3 stirrup is taken as 0.75 in. for bars No. 11 or smaller and equal to the longitudinal bar radius for No. 14 and No. 18 bars.

10.3.3 Development of Deformed Bars in Compression and the Modifying Multipliers

Bars in compression require shorter development length than bars in tension. This is due to the absence of the weakening effect of the tensile cracks. Hence the expression for the basic development length is

$$l_{db} = 0.02\lambda \frac{d_b f_y}{\sqrt{f'_c}} \tag{10.7a}$$

and

$$l_{dc} \geq 0.0003 d_b f_y \tag{10.7b}$$

where the constant 0.0003 carries the unit of in.^{2}/lb.

Table 10.1 Simplified Development Length ℓ_d Equations

	No. 6 and Smaller Bars and Deformed Wires (1)	No. 7 and Larger Bars (2)
Clear spacing of bars being developed or spliced not less than d_b, clear cover not less than d_b, and stirrups or ties throughout ℓ_d not less than the Code minimum	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{f_y \psi_t \psi_e}{25\sqrt{f'_c}}$	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{f_y \psi_t \psi_e}{20\sqrt{f'_c}}$
or	*when $f'_c = 4000$ psi ψ_t or $\psi_e = 1.0$ $\psi_s = 0.8$	*when $f'_c = 4000$ psi ψ_t, ψ_e, ψ_s, λ, or $\gamma = 1.0$
Clear spacing of bars being developed or spliced not less than $2d_b$ and clear cover not less than d_b	$\ell_d = 38d_b$	$\ell_d = (38/0.8)d_b$ $= 47d_b$
Other cases	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{3f_y \psi_t \psi_e \psi_s}{50\sqrt{f'_c}}$ $^*\ell_d = 57d_b$	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{3f_y \psi_t \psi_e \psi_s}{40\sqrt{f'_c}}$ $^*\ell_d = 72d_b$

Table 10.2 Tension Reinforcement and Development Length (inches) for $f'_c = 4000$ psi Normal-weight Concrete, $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi Steel

Bar Size (1)	Cross-sectional Area (in.^{2}) (2)	Bar Diameter (in.) (3)	Development Length, $\ell_d^{c,d}$ (in.)	
			$s \ge 2d_b$ or d_b[b] and Clear Cover $\ge d_b$	Other
			$\le$ No. 6: $\ell_d = 38\ d_b$ $\ge$ No. 7: $\ell_d = 48\ d_b$ (4)	$\le$ No. 6: $\ell_d = 57\ d_b$ $\ge$ No. 7: $\ell_d = 72\ d_b$ (5)
3	0.11	0.375	15	21
4	0.20	0.500	19	29
5	0.31	0.625	24	36
6	0.44	0.750	29	43
7	0.60	0.875	42	63
8	0.79	1.000	48	72
9	1.00	1.128	54	81
10	1.27	1.270	61	92
11	1.56	1.410	68	102
14	2.25	1.693	82	122
18	4.00	2.257	108	163

ψ_t, ψ_e, $\lambda = 1.0$, $\psi_s = 0.8$ for No. 6 bars or smaller and $= 1.0$ for No. 7 bars and larger.

[a]For f'_c values different from 4000 psi, multiply table values by $\sqrt{4000/f'_c}$. For $f_y = 40{,}000$ psi, multiply by ⅔; $\sqrt{f'_c}$ should not exceed 100.

[b]Confined by stirrups.

[c]For compression development length, $\ell_d = \text{multiplier} \times \ell_{db}$, where $\ell_{db} = 0.02\, d_b f_y / \sqrt{f'_c} \ge 0.0003 d_b f_y$.

[d]Multiply table values by $\alpha = 1.3$ for top reinforcement; $\lambda = 1.3$ for lightweight aggregate; $\beta = 1.5$ for epoxy-coated bars with cover less than $3d_b$ or clear spacing less than $6d_b$ and $\beta = 1.2$ for other epoxy-coated bars.

Minimum ℓ_d for all cases = 12 in.

with the modifying multiplier for

1. Excess reinforcement: λ_s = required A_s/provided A_s.
2. Spirally enclosed reinforcement $\lambda_{sl} = 0.75$.

10.3.4 Development of Bundled Bars in Tension and Compression

If bundled bars are used in tension or compression, l_d has to be increased by 20% for three-bar bundles and 33% for four-bar bundles. $\sqrt{f'_c}$ should not be taken greater than 100 psi. A unit of bundled bars is treated as a single bar of a diameter derived from the equivalent total area for the purpose of determining the modifying factors. However, although splice and development lengths of bundled bars are based on the diameter of individual bars increased by 20 or 33% as applicable, it is necessary to use an equivalent diameter of the entire bundle derived from the equivalent total area of bars when determining the factors that consider cover and clear spacing and represent the tendency of concrete to split.

10.3.5 Flowchart for Reinforcement Development Length Computation

A flowchart for reinforcement development length computation is shown in Figure 10.4.

Table 10.3 Minimum Beam Width (in.) to Satisfy Two-bar-diameter Clear Spacing

Bar Size	*Number of Bars in Single Layer* 2	3	4	5	6	7	8
4	6.8	8.3	9.8	11.3	12.8	14.3	15.8
5	7.1	9.0	10.9	12.8	14.6	16.5	18.4
6	7.5	9.8	12.0	14.3	16.5	18.8	21.0
7	7.9	10.5	13.1	15.8	18.4	21.0	23.6
8	8.3	11.3	14.3	17.3	20.3	23.3	26.3
9	8.6	12.0	15.4	18.8	22.2	25.6	28.9
10	9.1	12.9	16.7	20.5	24.3	28.1	31.9
11	9.5	13.7	17.9	22.2	26.4	30.6	34.9
14	12.2	15.9	20.9	26.0	31.1	36.2	41.2
18	15.0	19.8	26.6	33.3	40.1	46.9	53.7

Table 10.4 Minimum Beam Width (in.) to Satisfy the Larger of One-bar-diameter or 1-Inch Clear Spacing

Bar Size	*Number of Bars in Single Layer* 2	3	4	5	6	7	8
4	6.8	8.3	9.8	11.3	12.8	14.3	15.8
5	6.9	8.5	10.1	11.8	13.4	15.0	16.6
6	7.0	8.8	10.5	12.3	14.0	15.8	17.5
7	7.1	9.0	10.9	12.8	14.6	16.5	18.4
8	7.3	9.3	11.3	13.3	15.3	17.3	19.3
9	7.5	9.8	12.0	14.3	16.5	18.8	21.0
10	7.8	10.3	12.9	15.4	18.0	20.5	23.0
11	8.1	10.9	13.7	16.5	19.3	22.2	25.0
14	9.1	12.5	15.9	19.2	22.6	26.0	29.4
18	10.8	15.3	19.8	24.3	28.8	33.3	37.9

Table 10.5 SI Development Length Simplified Expressions

	≤ No. M. 20 (1)	≥ No. M. 25 (2)
*main case	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{f_y \psi_t \psi_e}{2\sqrt{f'_c}}$	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{5 f_y \psi_t \psi_e}{8\sqrt{f'_c}}$
*other case	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{3 f_y \psi_t \psi_e \lambda}{4\sqrt{f'_c}}$	$\dfrac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \dfrac{15 f_y \psi_t \psi_e \lambda}{16\sqrt{f'_c}}$

*See Table 10.1

Start

1

$\sqrt{f'_c}$ should not be taken greater than 100.

A. *Tension reinforcement*

For normal construction practices

(i) For spacing $s \geq d_b$ (confined) or $s \geq 2d_b$

$$\leq \text{No. 6 bars:} \quad \ell_d = d_b \frac{f_y \psi_t \psi_e}{25\sqrt{f'_c}}$$

$$\geq \text{No. 7 bars:} \quad \ell_d = d_b \frac{f_y \psi_t \psi_e}{20\sqrt{f'_c}}$$

(ii) For other cases, multiply ℓ_d for the previous case by 1.5; $\psi_t \psi_e$ cannot exceed 1.7.

B. *Compression reinforcement*

$\ell_{dc} = 0.02\, d_b f_y / \sqrt{f'_c}$ but not less than

$\ell_{dc} = 0.0003\, d_b f_y$

$\ell_d = \lambda_s \ell_{db}$

If the bars are confined, use reduction factor 0.75.

2

Multiplication Factors for Tension Reinforcement

(i) *Bar location factor* ψ_t

Top reinforcement	1.3
Other	1.0

(ii) *Coating factor* ψ_e

Epoxy coated, $c < 3d_b$ or $s < 6d_b$	1.5
Other epoxy bars	1.2
Uncoated reinforcement	1.0

c_b = cover s = spacing

$\psi_t \psi_e$ cannot exceed a value of 1.7.

(iii) *Bar size factor* ψ_s

No. 6 and smaller bars and deformed wires	0.8
No. 7 and larger bars	1.0

(iv) *Lightweight aggregate concret factor* λ

$\lambda = 0.75$ unless f_{ct} is specified, in which case $\lambda = \dfrac{6.7\sqrt{f_{ct}}}{f_{ct}}$

but not less than 1.0. When normal weight concrete is used, $\lambda = 1.0$.

(v) *Excess reinforcement factor* λ_s

$\lambda_s = A_s$ required/A_s provided

(vi) *Spiral confinement factor* λ_{s1} for compression reinforcement

$\lambda_{s1} = 0.75$

(vii) $f_y > 60{,}000$ *psi, factor* λ_{s2}

$\lambda_{s2} = f_y/60{,}000$

3

Determine the full development length ℓ_d using the applicable multiplying factor in 2.

Check minimum length.

End

Figure 10.4 Flowchart for reinforcement development length computation.

10.3.6 SI Metric Conversion

$$K_{tr} = \frac{1.6\, A_{tr}}{sn}$$

where f_{yt} is in MPa.
Equation 10.6:

$$\frac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \frac{15 f_y \psi_t \psi_e \psi_s}{16\sqrt{f'_c}\left(\dfrac{c_b + K_{tr}}{d_b}\right)}$$

10.3.7 Example 10.1: Development Length of Deformed Bars

Calculate the required embedment length of the deformed bars in the following four cases: (a) No. 7 bars (22.2-mm diameter), top reinforcement in single layer in a beam with No. 3 stirrups. Given:

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal weight concrete}$$

$$\text{clear spacing between bars} = 2d_b$$

$$\text{clear side cover} = 1.5 \text{ in. on each side}$$

bars not spliced

(b) Same as part (a) except that clear spacing between bars = d_b or 1-in. minimum. The bars are epoxy coated.
(c) Same as part (a) except that clear spacing between bars = $3d_b$ and the bars are not top bars.
(d) Assume that the No. 7 bars in part (a) are in compression and the concrete is lightweight. Also assume that the provided A_s is 10% higher than the required A_s.

Solution: (a) Development length from Eq. 10.6 is

$$\ell_d = d_b\left[\frac{3}{40}\,\frac{f_y}{\sqrt{f'_c}}\,\frac{\psi_t\psi_e}{\left(\dfrac{c_b + K_{tr}}{d_b}\right)}\right]$$

$\psi_t = 1.3$ (top bar), $\psi_e = 1.0$, $\psi_s = 1.0$ for No. 7, $\lambda = 1.0$, $d_b = 0.875$ in., and c = smaller of distance from enter of bar to the nearest concrete surface or one-half center-to-center spacing of bars.

$$c = 1.5 + \frac{0.875}{2} = 1.94 \quad \text{(cover)}$$

or

$$c = \text{bar spacing} = \frac{1.0 + 0.875}{2} = 0.938 \text{ in.} \quad \text{controls}$$

K_{tr} can be assumed zero as a design simplification even if transverse reinforcement is present, but the term $(c + K_{tr})/d_b$ cannot be larger than 2.5 or less than 1.5. = 0.938/0.875 = 1.072. Assuming $K_{tr} = 0$, $(c + K_{tr})/d_b = 1.072 < 1.5$; use 1.5.

$$\sqrt{f'_c} = \sqrt{4000} = 64 < 100 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$\ell_d = d_b\left(\frac{3}{40} \times \frac{60{,}000}{\sqrt{4000}} \times \frac{1.3}{1.5}\right) = 61.7 d_b$$

$$= 54 \text{ in. (1370 mm)}$$

If $\ell_d = 48\alpha d_b$ from Table 10.1 is used with a value of $\dfrac{c_b + K_{tr}}{d_b} = 1.5$,

$\ell_d = 48\alpha d_b = 54$ in. (also from Table 10.2, $48 \times 0.875 \times 1.3 = 54$ in.).

(b) $\psi_t = 1.3$ (top bar), $\psi_e = 1.5$, $\psi_s = 1.0$, and $\lambda = 1.0$. Using Table 10.1, $\psi_t\psi_e = 1.95 > 1.7$. Use $\alpha\beta = 1.70$

$$\ell_d = 48\psi_t\psi_e d_b = 48 \times 1.70 \times 0.875$$
$$= 72 \text{ in. } (1830 \text{ mm})$$

(c) $\psi_t = 1.0$ (bottom bar), $\psi_e = 1.0$, $\psi_s = 1.0$, and $\lambda = 1.0$. From Table 10.1

$$\ell_d = 48d_b = 42 \text{ in. } (1070 \text{ mm})$$

(d) $\lambda = 0.75$ for lightweight aggregate concrete. For compression steel, from Eq. 10.7a,

$$\ell_{dc} = 0.02\frac{d_b f_y}{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}} = \frac{0.02 \times 0.875 \times 60{,}000}{0.75\sqrt{4000}}$$
$$= 16.6 \text{ in. } (422 \text{ mm})$$

From Eq. 10.7b,

$$\text{Min. } \ell_{dc} = 0.0003 d_b f_y = 0.0003 \times 0.875 \times 60{,}000$$
$$= 15.8 \text{ in.}$$
$$\ell_{dc} = 16.6 \quad \text{controls}$$
$$\lambda = 0.75$$

λ_s for excess reinforcement = 1/1.1. Hence $\ell_d = 16.6 \times 1/0.75 \times 1/1.1 = 20$ in. (508 mm).

10.3.8 SI Example on Development Length Evaluation

Solve Ex. 10.1 using SI units.

Data

$$f'_c = 27.6 \text{ MPa}, \qquad d_b = \frac{7}{8} \text{ in.} = 22.2 \text{ mm} \quad \text{(soft conversion)}$$
$$f_y = 414 \text{ MPa}$$

Solution: Use closest in millimeters to No. 7 bars in column 2 of Table 10.5.
(a)

$$\ell_d = d_b\left(\frac{5f_y\psi_t\psi_e\psi_s}{8\sqrt{f'_c}}\right)$$
$$f_y = 414 \text{ MPa}, \quad f'_c = 27.6 \text{ MPa}$$
$$\psi_t = 1.3 \quad \text{(top bar)}, \qquad \psi_e = \psi_s = 1.0$$
$$\ell_d = 22.2\left(\frac{5 \times 414 \times 1.3}{8\sqrt{27.6}}\right) = 1420 \text{ mm (55 in.)}$$

(b) $\psi_t = 1.3$, $\psi_e = 1.5$, $\psi_s = 1.0$

$$\ell_d = 1420 \times 1.5 = 2130 \text{ mm}$$

(c) $\psi_t = \psi_e = \psi_s$

$$\ell_d = \frac{1420}{1.3} = 1090 \text{ mm}$$

(d) $\lambda = 0.75$ for lightweight aggregate concrete; $\lambda_s = 1/1.1$. From before, $\ell_{dc} = 16.6$ in. = 422 mm.

$$\ell_d = 422 \times \frac{1}{0.75} \times \frac{1}{1.1} = 498 \text{ mm}$$

10.3.9 Mechanical Anchorage and Hooks

Hooks are used when space limitation in a concrete section does not permit the necessary straight embedment length. Hooks in structural members are placed relatively close to the free surface of a concrete element, where splitting forces proportional to the total bar force may determine the hook capacity. The standard hook does *not* develop the tension yield strength of the bar. If l_{dh} is the basic development length for the standard hook in tension, it has to be multiplied by the appropriate factors, but not less than $8d_b$ or 6 in., whichever is greater. l_{dh} length is shown in Figure 10.5. The length l_{hb} varies with the bar size, reinforcement yield strength, and compressive strength of concrete. For $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi steel,

$$l_{dh} = \frac{0.02\psi_e f_y}{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}\, d_b \tag{10.8}$$

where d_b is the diameter of the hook bar. $\lambda = 0.75$ for all lightweight concrete. For other cases ψ_e and λ are taken as 1.0.

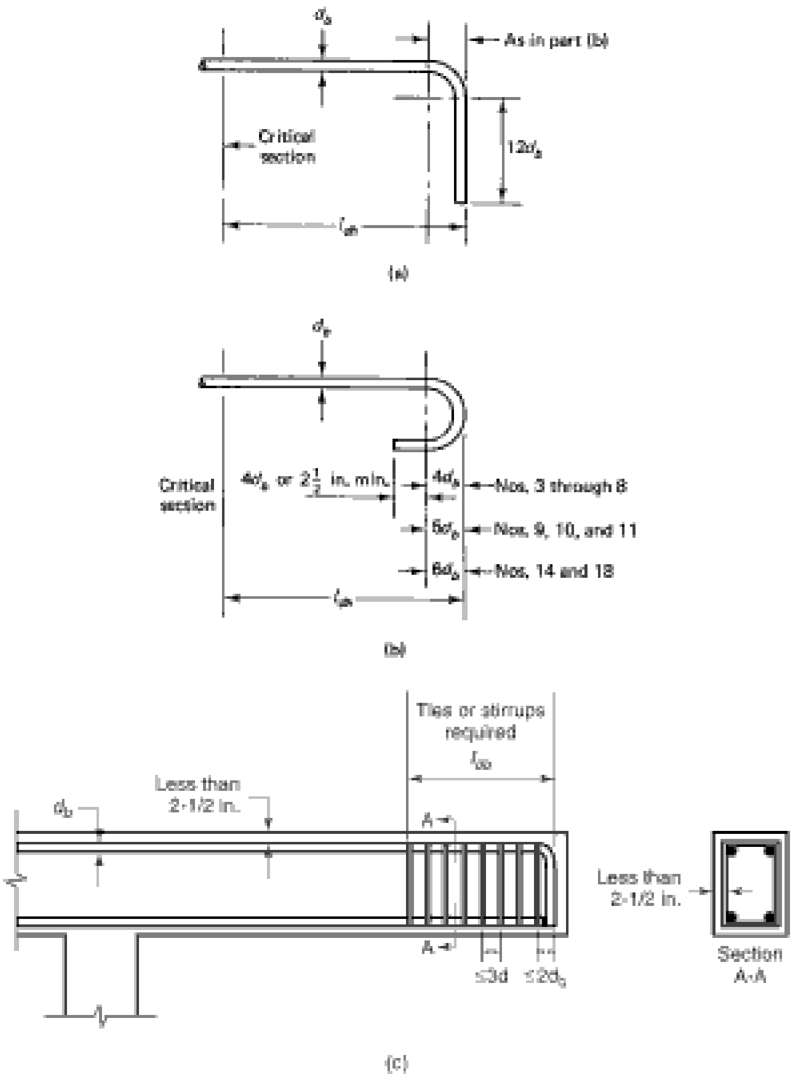


Figure 10.5 (a) Standard hook details: (a) 90° hook; (b) 180° hook; (c) hook in small concrete cover.

Modifying multipliers for hooks in tension

1. *Yield strength f_y effect:* for a yield-strength different than 60,000, $\lambda_{s2} = f_y/60{,}000$.
2. *Concrete cover effect:* for No. 11 bars and smaller, side cover normal to the plane of hook not less than $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. and for 90° hook with cover on bar extension beyond the hook not less than 2 in., $\lambda_{cl} = 0.7$ (see Figure 10.5c).
3. *Ties of stirrups:* for No. 11 bars and smaller, hook enclosed vertically or horizontally within ties or stirrup spaced not greater than $3d_b$, where d_b is diameter of hook bar, $\psi_s = 0.8$.
4. *Excess reinforcement:* where anchorage or development for f_y is not specifically required but the reinforcement area A_s used is in excess of A_s required for analysis,

$$\lambda_s = \frac{\text{required } A_s}{\text{provided } A_s}$$

5. *Bars developed by standard hooks at discontinuous ends:* If the concrete cover is less than $2\frac{1}{2}$ in., bars *should* be *enclosed* within ties or stirrups along the full development length l_{dh} spaced at no greater than $3d_b$; for this case $\lambda_{s2} = 0.8$ from item 3 above; modifying multiplier shall *not apply.*
6. *Lightweight concrete:* $\lambda = 0.75$. It should be noted that hooks cannot be considered effective in developing bars in compression. The total development or embedment length

$$l_d = l_{dh} \times \lambda \tag{10.9}$$

Figure 10.5a and b shows details of standard 90° and 180° hooks used in axial tension or bending tension, and Figure 10.5c gives details of bar hooks susceptible to concrete splitting when the cover is small, that is, less than $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. Confinement is enhanced through the use of closed ties or stirrups. No distinction is made between a top bar and a bottom bar if hooks are used.

10.3.10 Example 10.2: Embedment Length for a Standard 90° Hook

Compute the development length required for the top bars of a lightweight concrete beam extending into the column support shown in Figure 10.6 assuming No. 9 reinforcing bars (28.6-mm diameter) hooked at the end. The concrete clear cover is 2 in. (50.8 mm). Given:

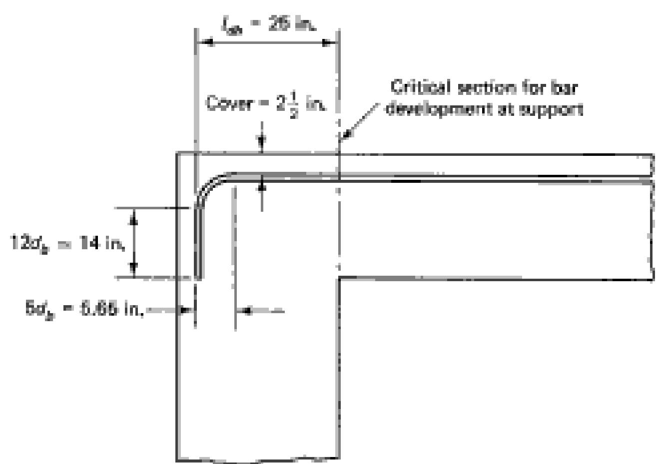


Figure 10.6 Hook embedment detail.

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.47 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$

Solution: Top bars for hooks behave similarly to bottom bars; hence no modifier is needed. For No. 9 bars, $d_b = 1.128$ in. (28.65 mm).

$$\text{basic development length } l_{dh} = \frac{0.02\psi_e f_y}{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}$$

or

$$l_{hb} = \frac{0.02 \times 1.0 \times 1.0 \times 60{,}000}{\sqrt{5000}} = 17.0 \text{ in.}$$

For lightweight concrete, $\lambda = 0.75$.

$$l_{dh} = \frac{1}{0.75} \times 17.0 = 22.1 \text{ in.} > 8d_b \quad \text{or} \quad 6 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Use a 90° hook with embedment length $l_{dh} = 24$ in. (610 mm) beyond the critical section (face of support). Figure 10.6 shows the geometrical details of the hook.

10.3.11 Development of Web Reinforcement

1. For No. 5 bars and D31 wire and smaller, and for No. 6, 7, and 8 bars with f_y = 40,000 psi or less, a standard hook has to be used around the longitudinal reinforcement.
2. For Nos. 6, 7, and 8 stirrups with f_y = greater than 40,000 psi, a standard stirrup hook around a longitudinal bar plus an embedment between midheight of the member and the outside end of the hook has to be used such that the length is equal to or greater than

$$0.014 d_b \frac{f_{yt}}{\sqrt{f'_c}}$$

10.3.12 Development of Welded Plain Wire in Tension Reinforcement

$$l_d = 0.27 \frac{A_w}{s}\left(\frac{f_y}{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}\right)$$

where A_w = area of individual bar or wire, in.;
s = spacing between wires to be developed, in.;
λ = aggregate concrete factor
= 0.75 for lightweight concrete
= 1.0 for other aggregate concrete

10.3.13 Development of Prestressing Strand

$$l_d = \left(\frac{f_{se}}{3000}\right) d_b + \left(\frac{f_{ps} - f_{se}}{1000}\right) d_b$$

The expressions in parentheses are used as constant without units.

10.4 DEVELOPMENT OF FLEXURAL REINFORCEMENT IN CONTINUOUS BEAMS

As discussed earlier, reinforcing bars should be adequately embedded in order to prevent serious bar slippage resulting in bond pull-out failure. The critical locations for bar discontinuance are points along the structural member where there is a rapid drop in the bending moment or stress, such as the inflection points in a bending-moment diagram of a continuous beam.

Tension reinforcement can be developed by bending the lower tension bars at a 45° inclination across the web of the beam and can be anchored or made continuous with the reinforcing bars on the top of the member. To ensure full development, reinforcement has to be extended beyond the point at which it is no longer required to resist flexure for a distance equal to the effective depth d or $12d_b$, whichever is greater, except for supports of simple span beams or at the free end of a cantilever. Figure 10.7 shows details of flexural reinforcement development in typical continuous beams for both the positive and the negative steel reinforcement.

The following are general guidelines for full development of the reinforcement and for ensuring continuity in the case of continuous beams.

1. At least *one-third* of the positive moment reinforcement in simple beams and *one-fourth* of the positive moment reinforcement in continuous beams should be extended at least 6 in. into the support without being bent.

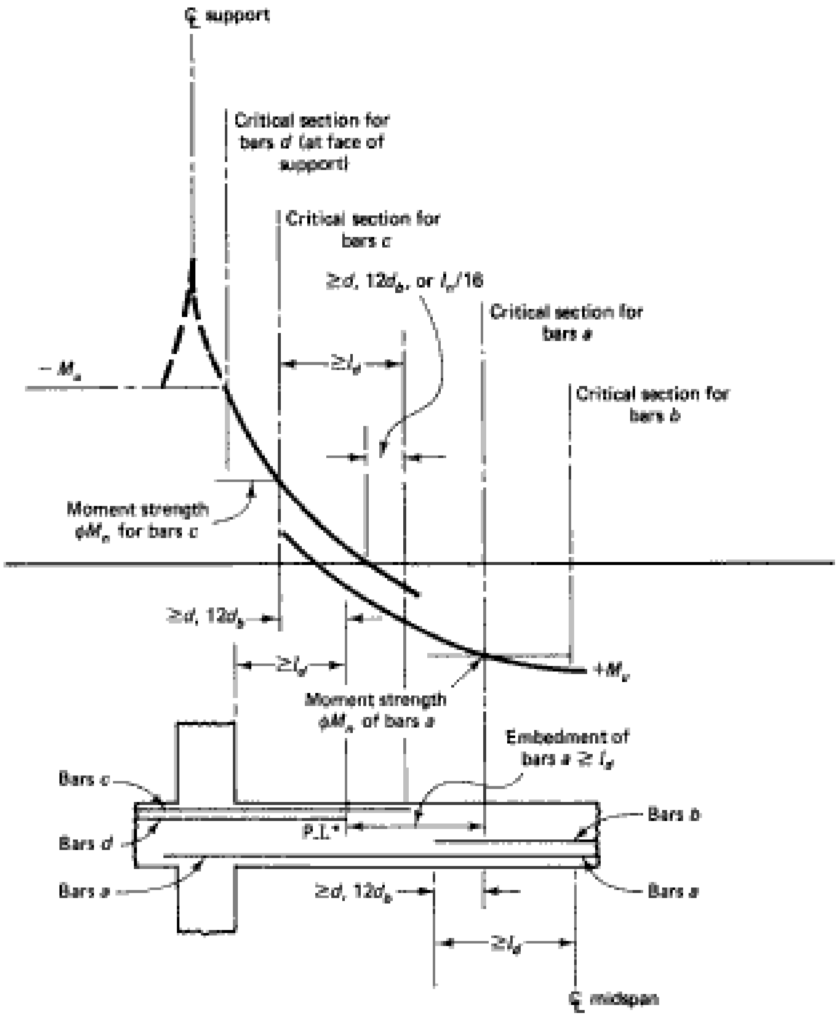


Figure 10.7 Development of reinforcement in continuous beams.

2. At simple supports without confinement by the reaction as in Figure 10.8a and at points of inflection as in Figure 10.8b, the positive moment reinforcement should be limited to such a diameter that the development length

$$l_d \leq \frac{M_n}{V_u} + l_a \tag{10.10}$$

where M_n = nominal moment strength where all the reinforcement is stressed to f_y
V_u = factored shear force at the section under consideration
inflection point l_a = effective depth d or $12d_b$, where d_b is the bar diameter, whichever is greater
end beam l_a = additional embedment length of support

Equation 10.10 imposes a design limitation on the flexural bond stress in areas of large shear and small moment in order to prevent splitting. Such a condition exists in short-span, heavily loaded simple beams. Thus the bar diameter for positive moment is so chosen that, even if length AC to the critical section in Figure 10.8a is larger than length AB, the bar size must be chosen such that $l_d \leq 1.3\, M_n/V_u + l_a$ where *for confining reactions* such as at simple supports, the value M_n/V_u in Eq. 10.10 is increased by 30%.

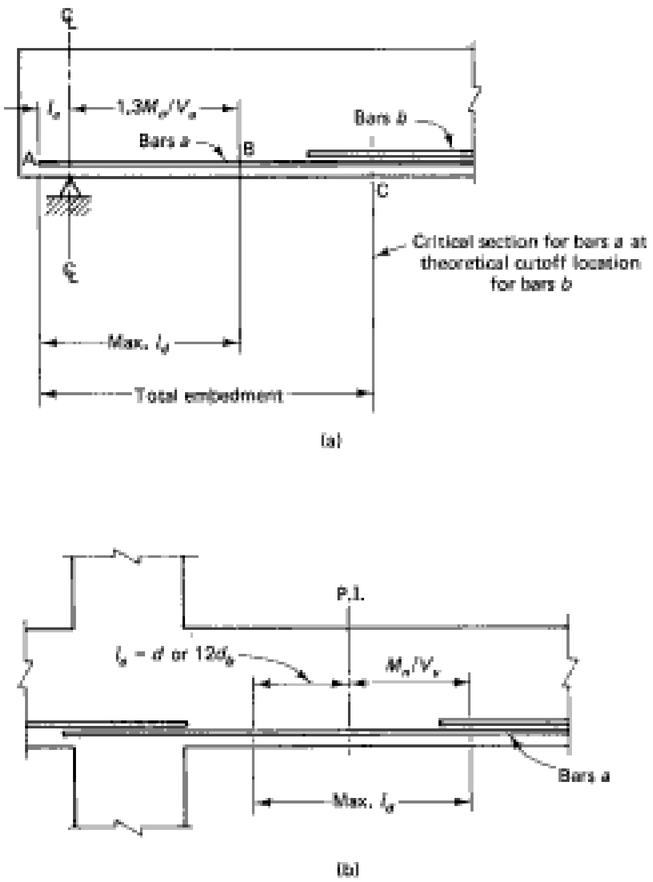


Figure 10.8 Cutoff points for reinforcement: (a) simply supported beams; (b) continuous beams.

3. At least *one-third* of the total tension reinforcement provided for negative bending moment at the support should extend beyond the inflection point not less than the effective depth d of the member, $12d_b$, or $\frac{1}{16}$ of the clear span, whichever has the largest value.
4. Web stirrups have to be carried as close to the compression and tension surfaces of the member as the minimum concrete cover requirements allow. The ends of the stirrups without hooks should have an embedment of at least $d/2$ above or below the compression side of the member for full development length l_d, but not less than 12 in. or 24 d_b. For stirrups with hook ends, the total embedment length should equal $0.5l_d$ plus the standard hook.

A typical detail of cutoff points for continuous one-way beam and joist construction from Ref. 10.6 is given in Figure 10.9. Typical cutoff points for one-way slabs are shown in Figure 10.10 and for beams with diagonal tension stirrups are given in Figure 10.11.

10.5 SPLICING OF REINFORCEMENT

Steel reinforcing bars are produced in standard lengths controlled by transportability and weight considerations. In general, 60-ft lengths are normally produced. But it is impractical in beams and slabs spanning over several supports to interweave bars of such lengths on site over several spans. Consequently, bars are cut to shorter lengths and lapped at the least critical bending moment locations for bar sizes No. 11 or smaller. A general rule of thumb for maximum bar length is about 40 ft for shipping purposes. The most effective means of continuity in reinforcement is to weld the cut pieces without reducing the mechanical or strength properties of the welded bar at the weld. However, cost considerations require alternatives. There are basically three types of splicing:

1. *Lap splicing:* depends on full bond development of the two lapping bars at the lap for bars of size not larger than No. 11.
2. *Welding by fusion of the two bars at the connection:* can be economically justifiable for bar sizes larger than No. 11 bars.
3. *Mechanical connecting:* can be achieved by mechanical sleeves threaded on the ends of the bars to be interconnected. Such connectors should have a yield strength at least 1.25 times the yield strength of the bars they interconnect. They are also more commonly used for large-diameter bars.

10.5.1 Lap Splicing

Figure 10.12a shows a bar lap splice and the force and stress distribution along the splice length l_s. Failure of the concrete at the splice region develops by a typical splitting mechanism as shown in Figure 10.12b. At failure, one bar slips relative to the other. The *idealized* tensile stress distribution in the bars along the splice length l_s has a maximum value f_y at the splice end and $\frac{1}{2}f_y$ at $l_s/2$. At failure, the expected magnitude of slip is approximately $(0.5f_y/E_s) \times$ half splice length l_s in Figure 10.12a.

10.5.2 Splices of Deformed Bars and Deformed Bars or Wires in Tension

Two classes of lap splices are specified by the ACI Code. The minimum length l_1 of lap for tension lap splice required for Class A or B splice, but not less than 12 in., is

Class A: $\geq 1.0l_d$
Class B: $\geq 1.3l_d$

where l_d is calculated as in Section 10.3.1, but without a 12 in. minimum and without the modification factor λ_d for excess reinforcement.

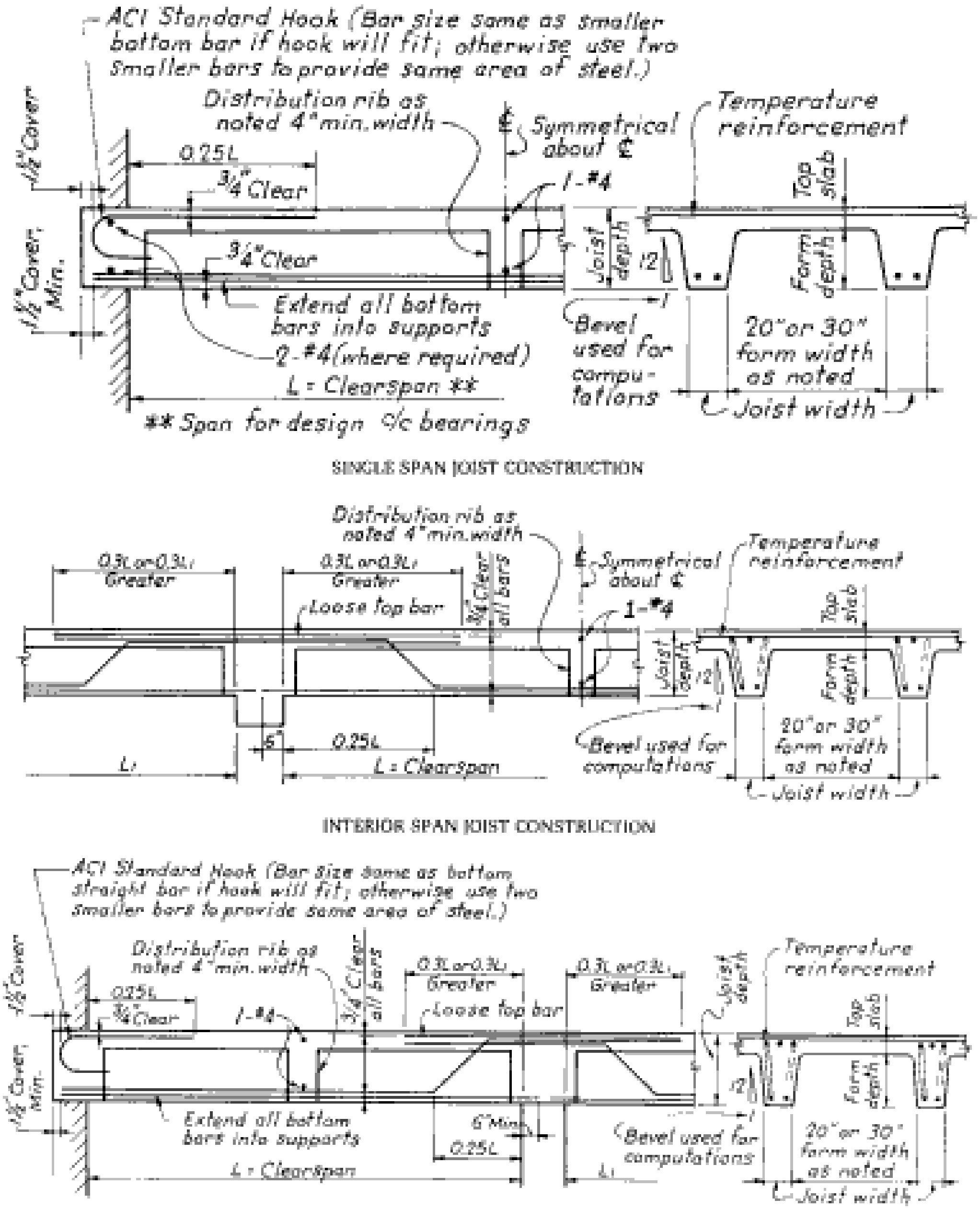


Figure 10.9 Cutoff point for one-way joist construction, Ref. 10.6. (*Note:* Continuing reinforcement shall have an embedment length not less than the required development length l_d beyond the point where bent or terminated tension reinforcement is no longer required to resist flexure.)

www.csc-unp.blogspot.com

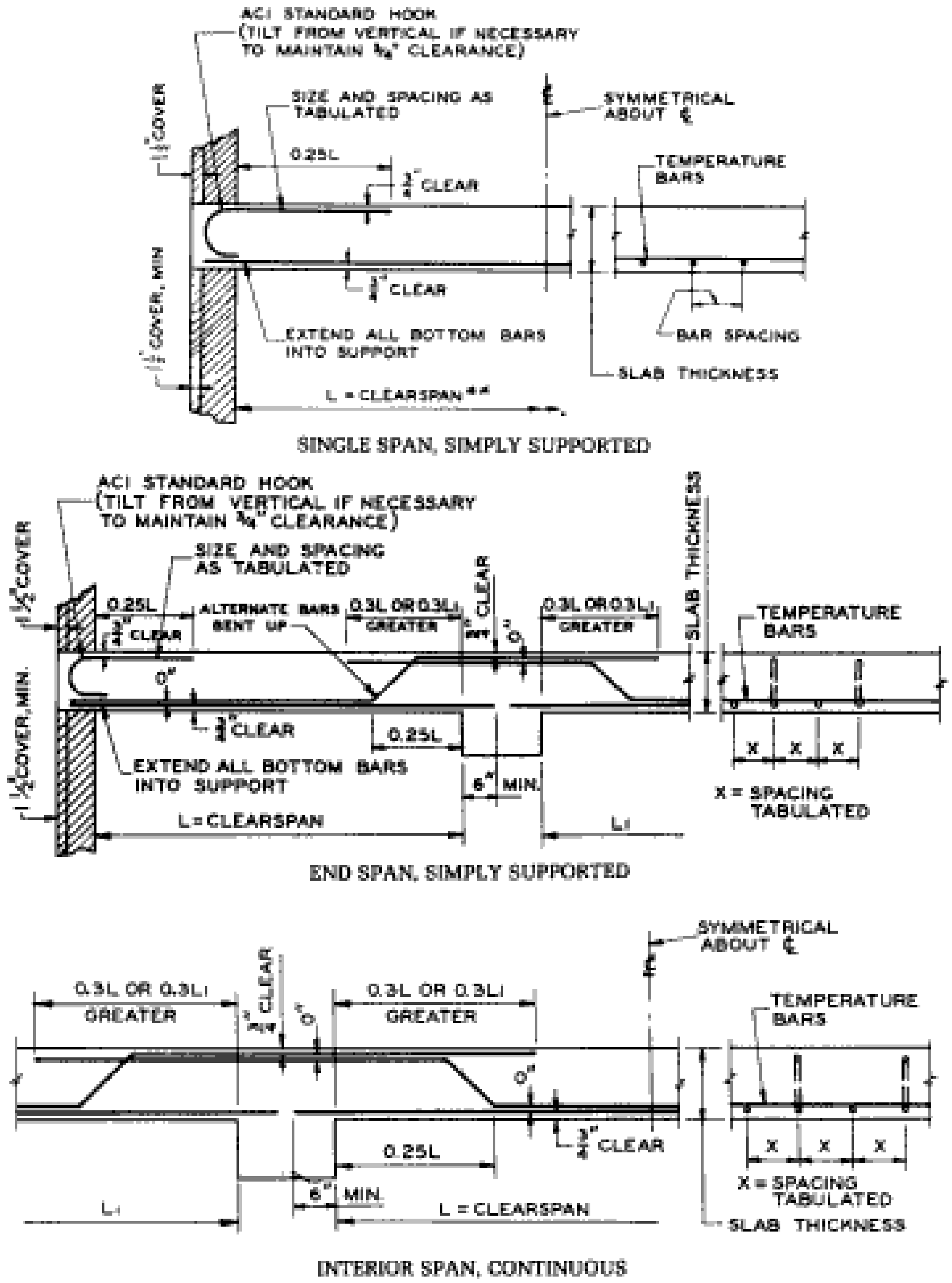


Figure 10.10 Cutoff points for one-way slabs, Ref. 10.6. (*Note:* Continuing reinforcement shall have an embedment length not less than the required development length l_d beyond the point where bent or terminated tension reinforcement is no longer required to resist flexure.)

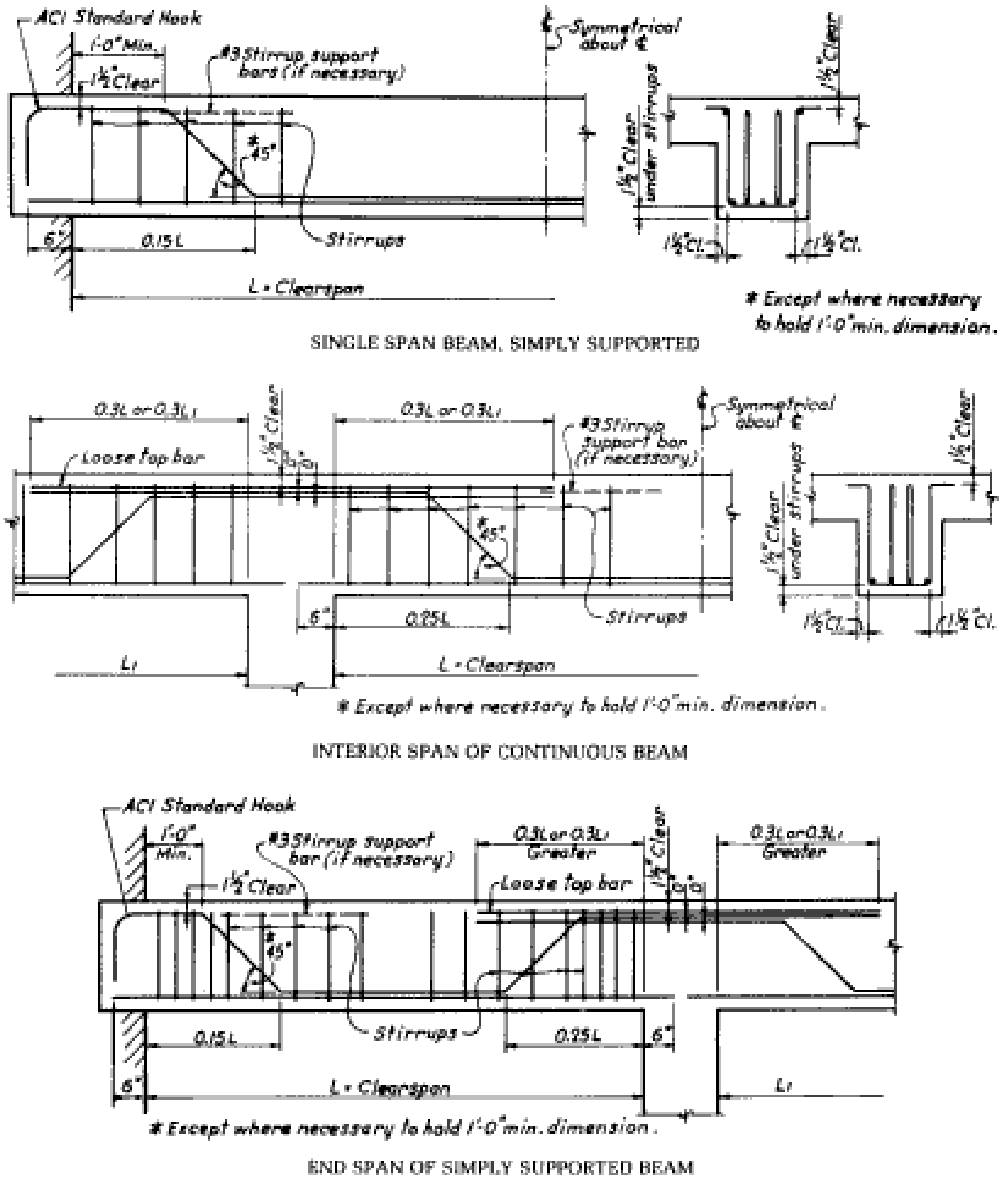


Figure 10.11 Reinforcing details for continuous beams with diagonal tension steel, Ref. 10.6. (*Note:* Continuing reinforcement shall have an embedment length not less than the required development length l_d beyond the point where bent or terminated tension reinforcement is no longer required to resist flexure.)

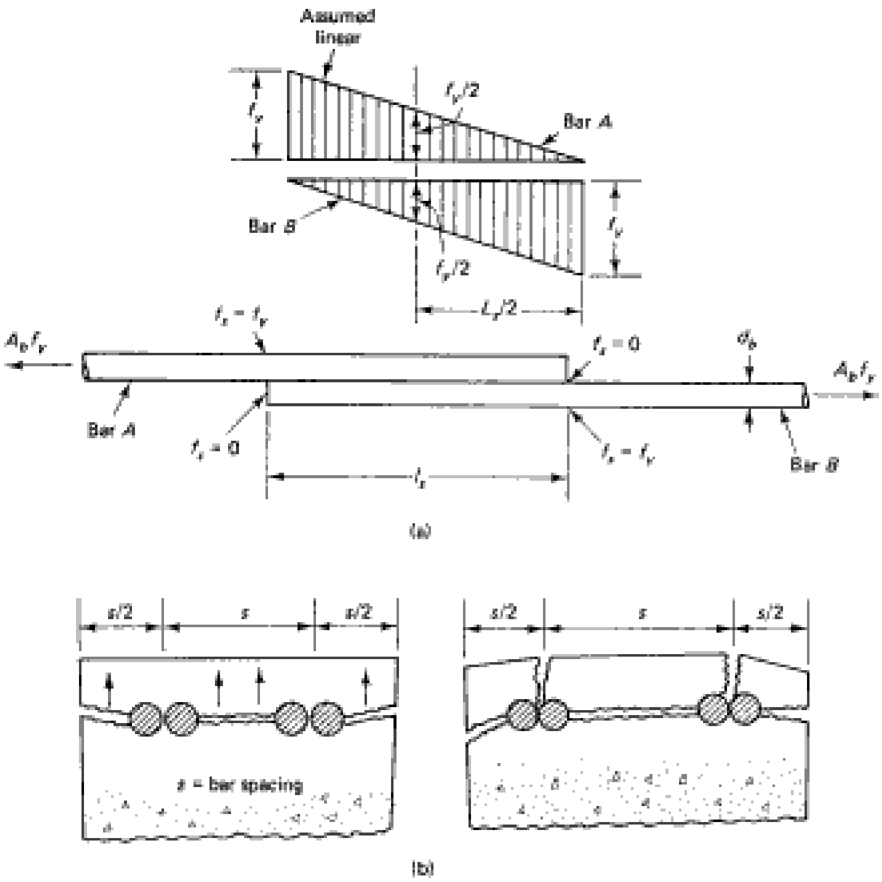


Figure 10.12 Reinforcing bars splicing: (a) lap splice idealized stress distribution; (b) splice-splitting failure.

Table 10.6 gives the maximum percentage of tensile steel area A_s to be spliced. Splicing should be avoided at maximum tensile stress if at all possible; splicing may be by simple lapping of bars either in contact or separated by concrete. However, every effort should be made to stagger the splice, rather than having all the bars spliced within the required lap length.

Table 10.6 Tension Lap Slices

A_s Provided[a] / A_s Required	Maximum Percent of A_s Splices within Required Lap Length: 50	100
Equal to or greater than 2	Class A	Class B
Less than 2	Class B	Class B

[a]Ratio of area of reinforcement provided to area of reinforcement required by analysis at splice location.

10.5.3 Splices of Deformed Bars in Compression

The lap length l_s should be equal to at least the development length in compression as given in Section 10.3.3 and Eqs. 10.7a and 10.7b and the modifiers. l_s should also satisfy the following, but not be less than 12 in.:

$$f_y \leq 60{,}000 \text{ psi} \quad l_s \geq 0.0005 f_y d_b \tag{10.11a}$$

$$f_y > 60{,}000 \text{ psi} \quad l_s \geq (0.0009 f_y - 24) d_b \tag{10.11b}$$

If the compressive strength f'_c of the concrete is less than 3000 psi, such as might occur in foundations, the splice length l_s has to be increased by one-third.

Modifying multipliers with values less than 1.0 are used in heavily reinforced tied compression members (0.83) and in spirally reinforced columns (0.75), but the lap length should not be less than 12 in.

10.5.4 Development of Welded Deformed Wire Fabric in Tension

The development length, ℓ_d, for deformed welded wire fabric should be taken as the ℓ_d value obtained from Eq. 10.6 or Table 10.1 multiplied by a fabric factor. The fabric factor, with at least one cross wire within the development length and not less than 2 in. from the point of the critical section, should be taken as the greater of the following two expressions:

$$\frac{f_y - 35{,}000}{f_y} \tag{10.12a}$$

or

$$\frac{5d_b}{s} \tag{10.12b}$$

but should not be taken greater than 1.0, where s = spacing of wire to be developed or spliced (in.).

For plain welded wire fabric,

$$l_d = 0.27 \frac{A_w}{s} \left(\frac{f_y}{\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}} \right) \tag{10.12c}$$

where A_w = cross-sectional area of one wire to be developed.

10.5.5 Splices in Deformed Welded Wire Fabric

The minimum lap length l_s measured between the ends of the two lapped fabric sheets of welded deformed wire has to be $\geq 1.3 l_d$ or 8 in. (204 mm), whichever is greater. Additionally, the overlap measured between the outermost cross wires of each fabric sheet should not be less than 2 in. (51 mm).

10.6 EXAMPLES OF EMBEDMENT LENGTH AND SPLICE DESIGN FOR BEAM REINFORCEMENT

10.6.1 Example 10.3: Embedment Length at Support of a Simply Supported Beam

Calculate the maximum development length that can be used for bars a at the support of the simply supported superstructure beam in Figure 10.13 if the distance AC from the theoretical cutoff point of bars b is 48 in. (1220 mm). The beam is integral with the support (nonconfining). Assume that the reinforcing bars used for moment strength are (a) No. 7 deformed (22.2 mm) and (b) No. 14 deformed (43.0 mm), if the beam was a raft foundation beam (a maximum No. [obscured] superstructure normal-size beams). Given:

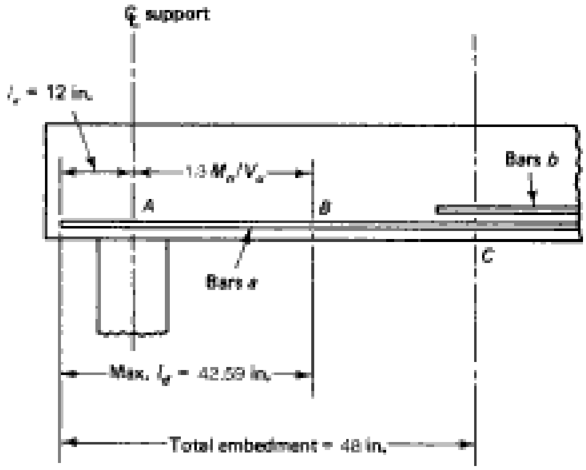


Figure 10.13 Embedment at end of simply supported beam.

$$s = \text{clear spacing between bars} = 3d_b$$
$$V_u = 100{,}000 \text{ lb } (444.8 \text{ kN})$$
$$M_n = 2{,}353{,}000 \text{ in.-lb } (25.6 \text{ kNm})$$
$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$
$$l_a = 12 \text{ in. } (305 \text{ mm})$$

Solution: $\psi_t = \psi_e = \psi_s = 1$.

(a) No. 7 bars: $d_b = 0.875$ in.

$$\sqrt{f'_c} = \sqrt{4000} = 63.2 < 100 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

From column 2 of Table 10.1, $\ell_d = 48\, d_b = 42$ in.
From Eq. 10.10, $l_d \le 1.3M_n/V_u + l_a$, where l_a = effective depth d or 12 d_b, whichever is greater, d_b being the bar diameter.

$$\frac{M_n}{V_u} = \frac{2{,}353{,}000}{100{,}000} = 23.53 \text{ in.}$$

$$l_a = \text{embedment length beyond support center} = 12 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{maximum } l_d = 1.3 \times 23.53 + 12 = 42.59 \text{ in.} \simeq 42 \text{ in.}, \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Hence, bar size is O.K. and max. $l_d = 42$ in.

(b) No. 14 bars:

$$\psi_t = \psi_e = \psi_s = 1.0 \qquad d_b = 1.693 \text{ in.}$$

From column 2 of Table 10.1,

$$\ell_d = 48\, d_b = 48 \times 1.693 = 82 \text{ in.}$$
$$> 1.3\frac{M_n}{V_u} + l_a$$

Hence, reduce bar size to No. 7 bars using a larger number of bars since the maximum $l_d = 42.59$ in.

10.6.2 Example 10.4: Embedment Length at Support of a Continuous Beam

A continuous reinforced concrete beam has clear spans l_{nr} = 36 ft (10.97 m) and l_{nl} = 22 ft (6.7 m) and the bending moment diagram segment at an interior support as shown in Figure 10.14. Calculate the cutoff lengths of the negative moment top reinforcement bars to satisfy the development length requirements at the cutoff points. The beam is singly reinforced and has the dimensions h = 27 in. (686 mm), d = 23.5 in. (597 mm), and b = 15 in. (381 mm). It is subjected to a factored negative bending at the center of the intermediate support.

$$-M_u = 6{,}127{,}000 \text{ in.-lb } (692.4 \text{ kNm})$$

Given:

$$s = \text{clear spacing between bars} = 3d_b$$
$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$
$$\text{Required } A_s = 5.62 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$\text{Provided } A_s = 6.00 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (six No. 9 bars)}$$

Solution:

$$\sqrt{f'_c} = \sqrt{4000} = 63.2 < 100 \qquad \text{O.K.} \qquad d_b = 1.128 \text{ in.}$$
$$\lambda_s = 1.0 \qquad \psi_t \text{ for top bars} = 1.3; \qquad \psi_e = \psi_s = \lambda = 1.0$$

From Table 10.1, column 2,

$$l_d = \psi_t 48 d_b = 1.3 \times 48 \times 1.128 = 70 \text{ in.}$$
$$l_d = \frac{\text{required } A_s}{\text{provided } A_s} \times 70 = \frac{5.62}{6.00} \times 70 = 66 \text{ in.}$$

Use l_d = 66 in. (1630 mm) for the six No. 9 bars.

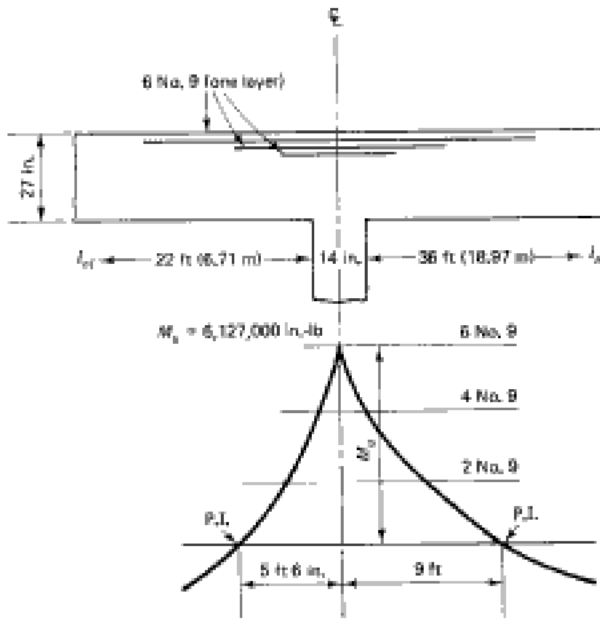


Figure 10.14 Continuous beam support moment.

Cutoff points

At least one-third of the bars have to extend beyond the point of inflection by the largest of $\frac{1}{16}$ (span l_n), d, or $12d_b$.

$$\frac{1}{3}A_s = \text{two No. 9 bars} \qquad 12d_b = 12 \times 1\frac{1}{8} = 13.5 \text{ in.}$$

1. Right span $l_{nr} = 36$ ft:

$$\frac{1}{16}l_{nr} = \frac{36}{16} \times 12 = 27.0 \text{ in.} \quad \text{controls}$$

2. Left span $l_{nl} = 22$ ft:

$$\frac{1}{16}l_{nl} = \frac{22}{16} \times 12 = 16.5 \text{ in.} \qquad d = 23.5 \text{ in.} \quad \text{controls} \qquad \text{say 24 in.}$$

As given in Figure 10.7, details of the development length dimensions at all cutoff points for this continuous beam are shown in Figure 10.15.

10.6.3 Example 10.5: Splice Design for Tension Reinforcement

Calculate the lap splice length for No. 7 tension bottom bars (22.2-mm diameter) spaced at $2d_b$, minimum spacing. The ratio of the provided A_s to the required A_s is (a) >2.0, (b) <2.0, and the maximum percentage of A_s spliced within the section is 75%. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi (34.5 MPa)}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$
$$s = \text{clear spacing between bars} = 2\tfrac{1}{2}d_b.$$

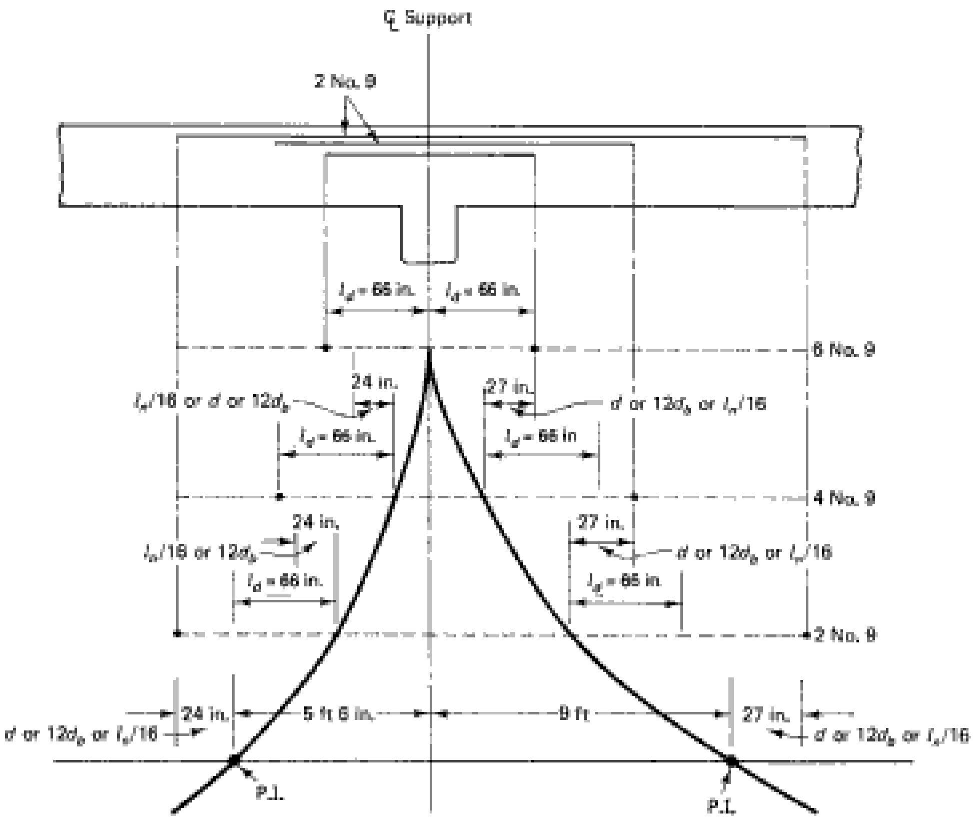


Figure 10.15 Bar development length of cutoff points.

Solution:

$$d_b = 0.875 \text{ in. for No. 7 bar}$$

$$\psi_t = \psi_e = \psi_s = \lambda = 1.0$$

$$\text{Check } \sqrt{5000} = 70.7 < 100 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

From Table 10.1, column 2, $l_d = 48\, d_b = 48 \times 0.875 = 42$ in.

(a) For provided A_s/required $A_s > 2.0$, class A splice: $l_s = 1 \times l_d = 42$ in.
(b) For provided A_s/required $A_s < 2.0$, class B splice:

$$\text{lap splice length } l_s = 1.3 l_d = 1.3 \times 42 = 55 \text{ (1400 mm)}$$

10.6.4 Example 10.6: Splice Design for Deformed Compression Reinforcement

Calculate the lap splice length for No. 9 compression deformed bars (28.7-mm diameter) in a normal-weight concrete beam at clear spacing $3d_b$. Given:

$$f'_c = 7000 \text{ psi (48.3 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = 80{,}000 \text{ psi (551.6 MPa)}$$

Solution:

$$d_b = 1.128 \text{ in. for No. 9 bar}$$

$$\sqrt{7000} = 83.7 < 100 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$\psi_t = \psi_e = \psi_s = 1.0$$

Splice length l_s: From Eq. 10.11b, for $f_y > 60{,}000$ psi,

$$l_s = (0.0009 f_y - 24) d_b = (0.0009 \times 80{,}000 - 24)1.128 = 54.14 \text{ in.}$$

Use lap splice length $l_s = 55$ in. (1400 mm).

10.7 TYPICAL DETAILING OF REINFORCEMENT AND BAR SCHEDULING

The design examples for bond development length, lap splicing, and spacing reinforcement are applied in Figures 10.16 to 10.20. Additional examples from the author's parking-garage working drawing details are given in Figures 10.21 to 10.25. These representative examples can serve as a good guideline for producing correct engineering working drawings. It should be recognized that successful execution of a designed system is directly dependent on the availability of clear and correct detailing and the avoidance of any congestion of the reinforcement. Such congestion can only lead to honeycombing in the concrete, resulting in possible cracking, capacity reduction, and even failure. Consequently, equal attention has to be given to detailing as to design if a constructed system is to perform the structural functions for which it is intended.

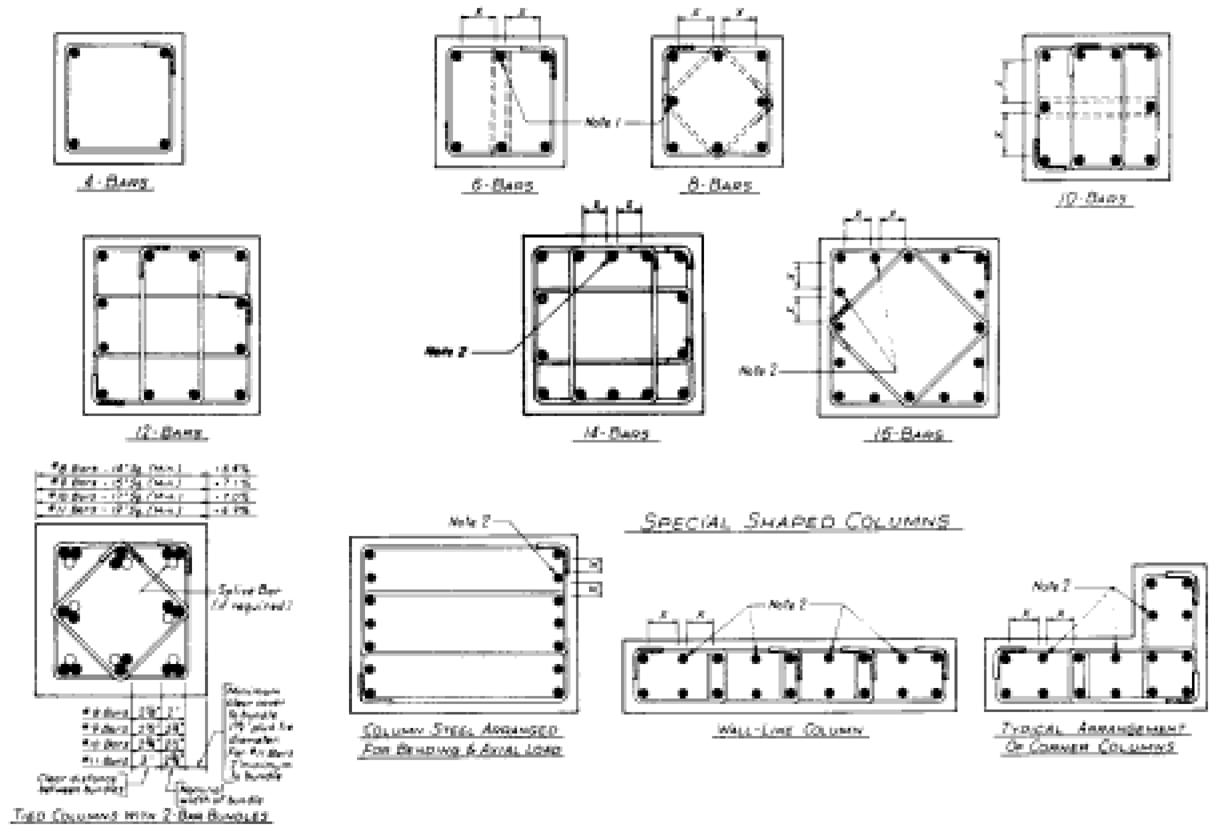


Figure 10.16 Column ties for preassembled lap-spliced cages (from Ref. 10.6).

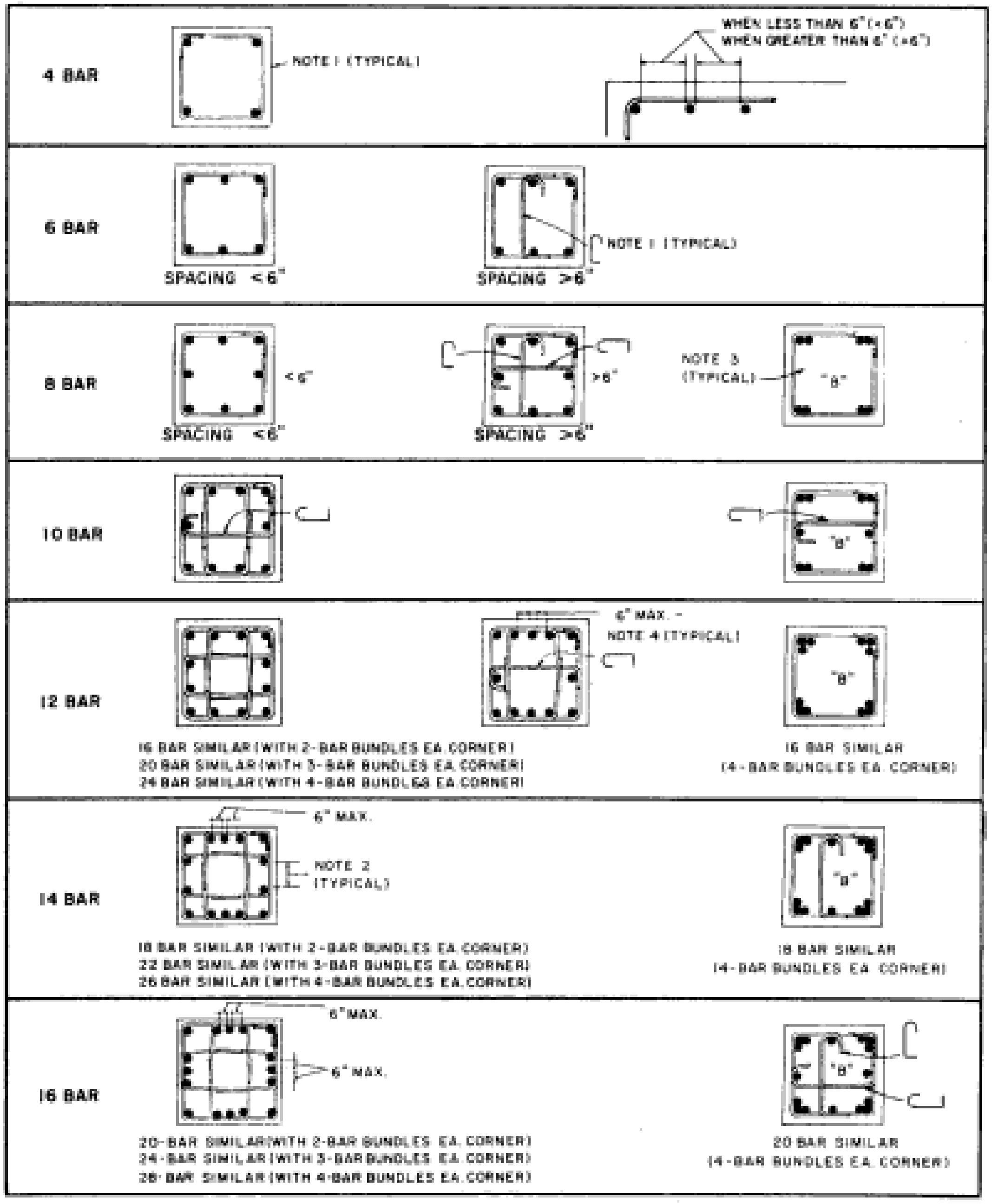


Figure 10.17 Column ties for standard columns (from Ref. 10.6).

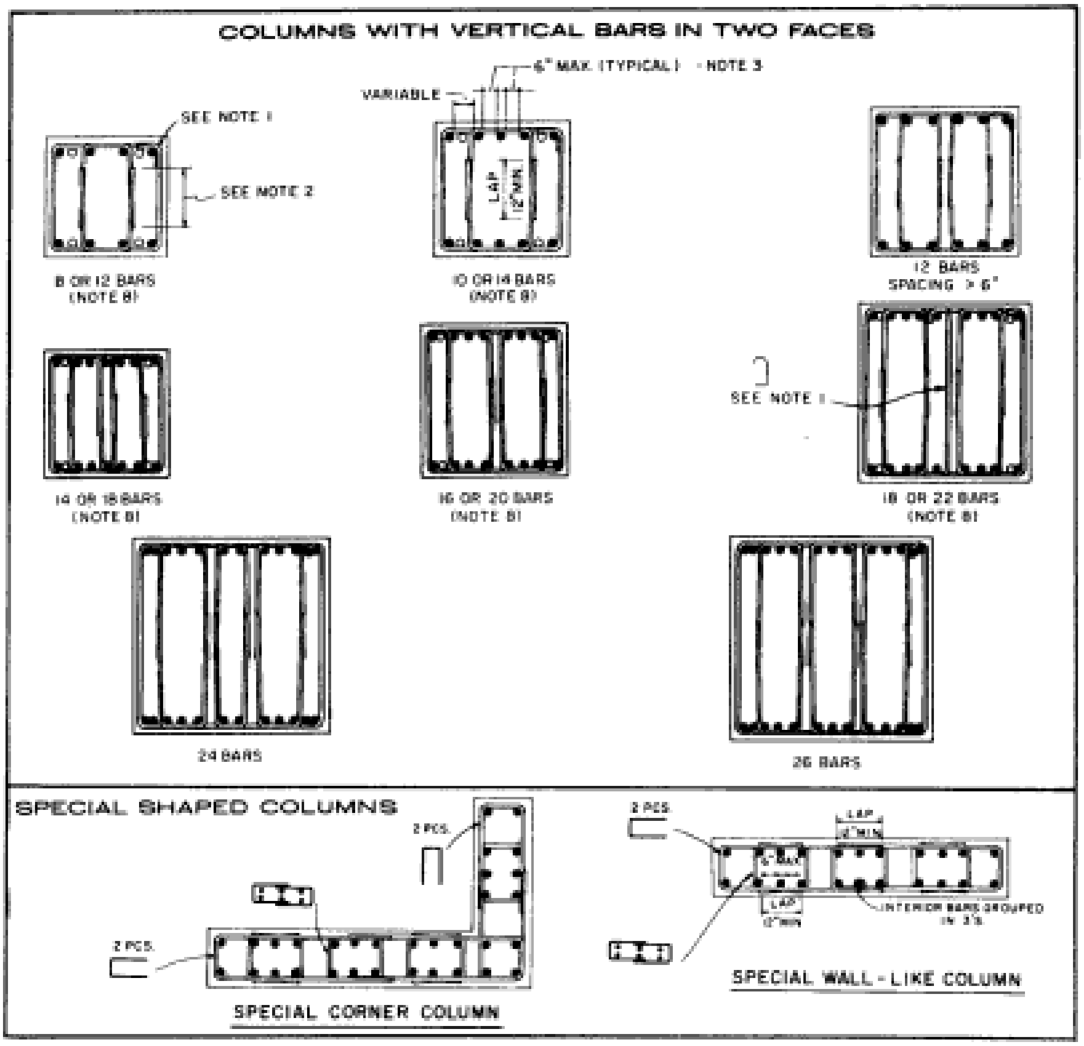


Figure 10.18 Ties for large and special columns (from Ref. 10.6).

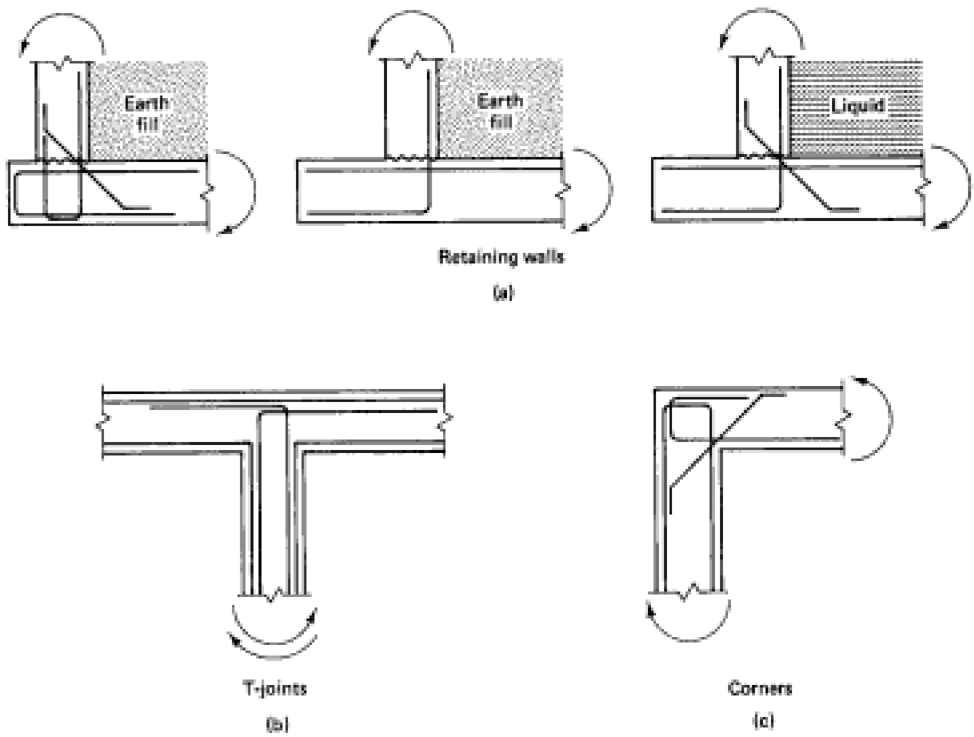


Figure 10.19 Corner and joint connection details: (a) retaining walls; (b) T joints; (c) corners (from Ref. 10.6).

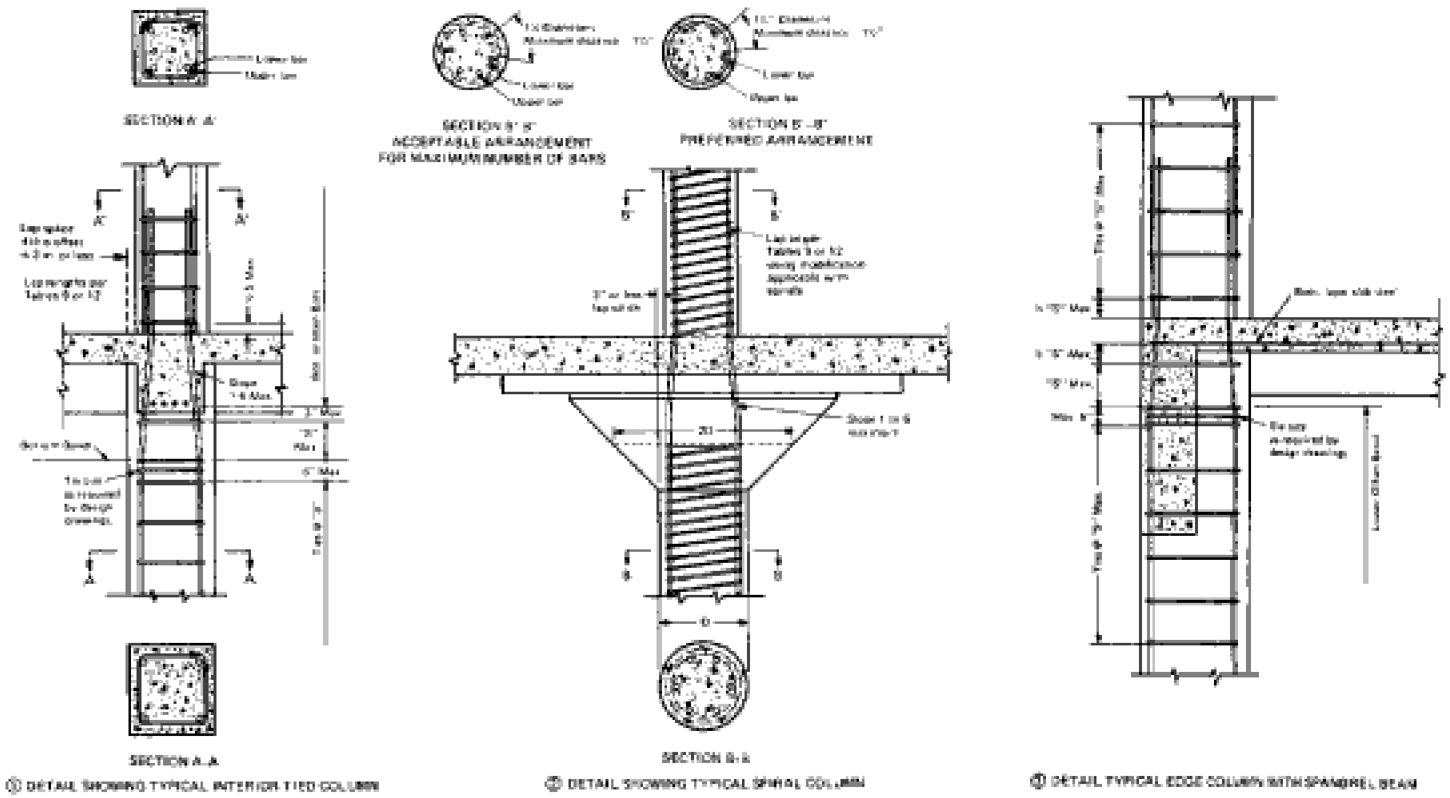


Figure 10.20 Column splice details (from Ref. 10.6).

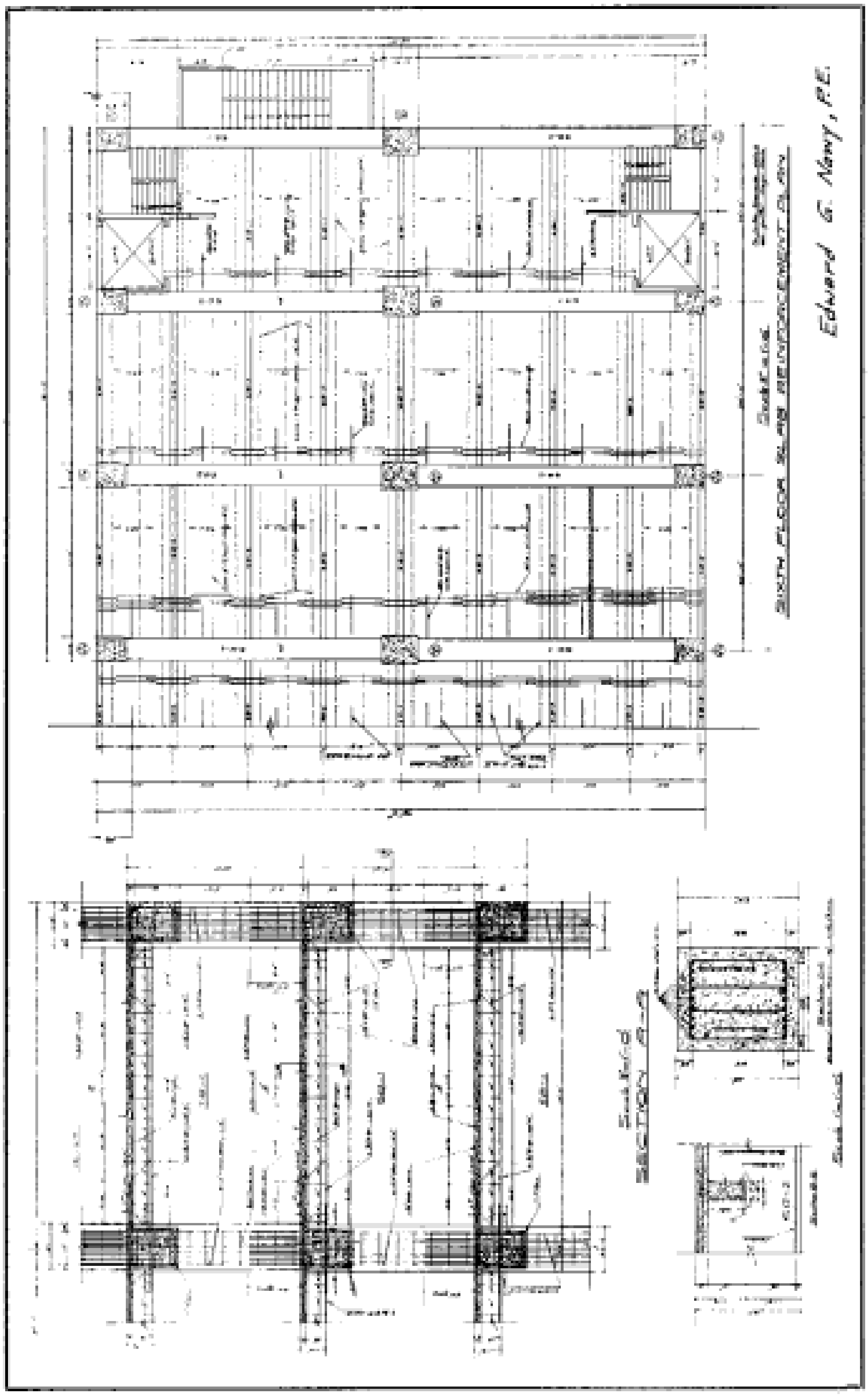


Figure 10.21 Typical beam and slab reinforcing working drawing. (Design by E. G. Nawy.)

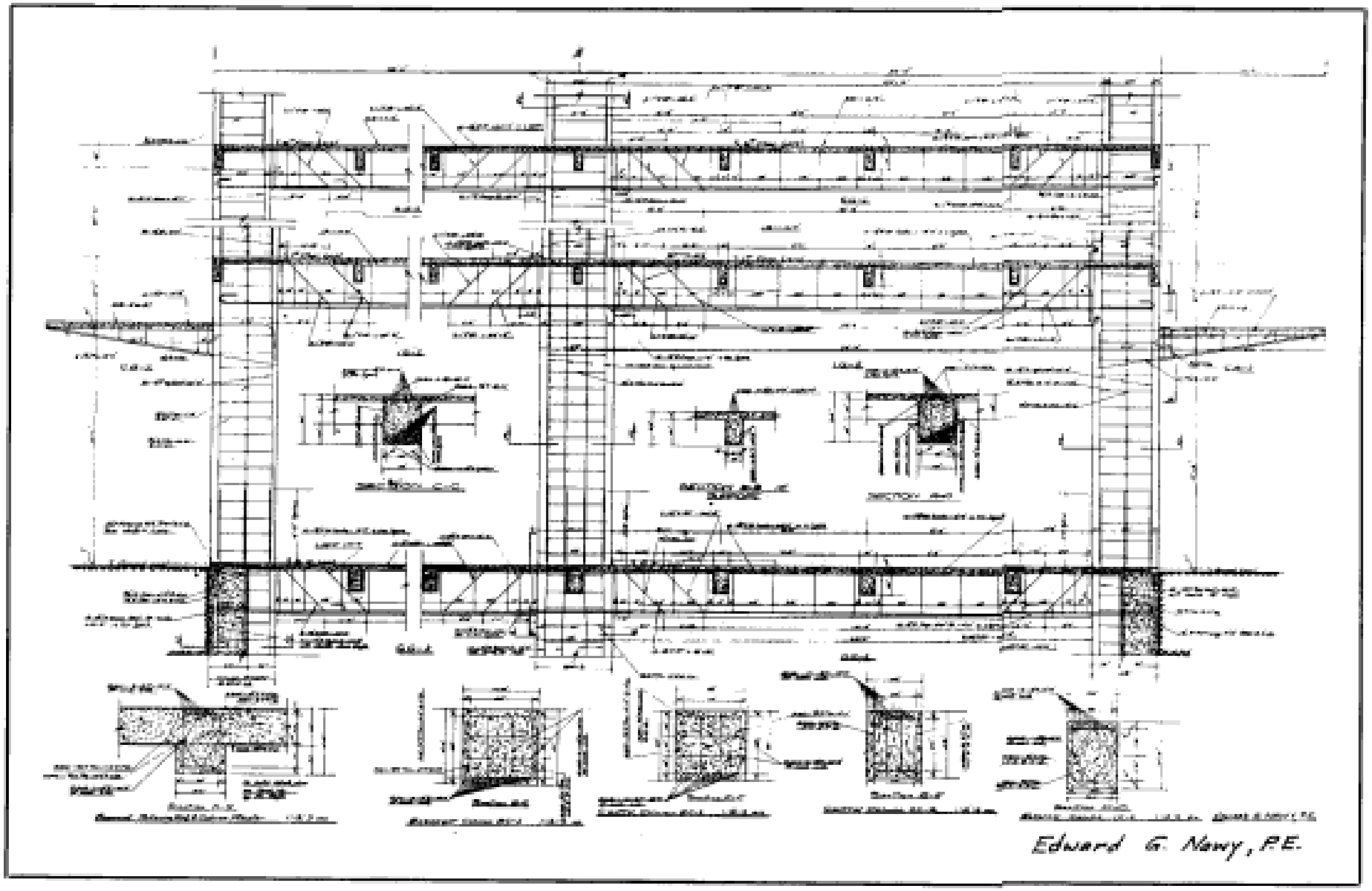


Figure 10.22 Typical working drawing of column reinforcement details. (Design by E. G. Nawy.)

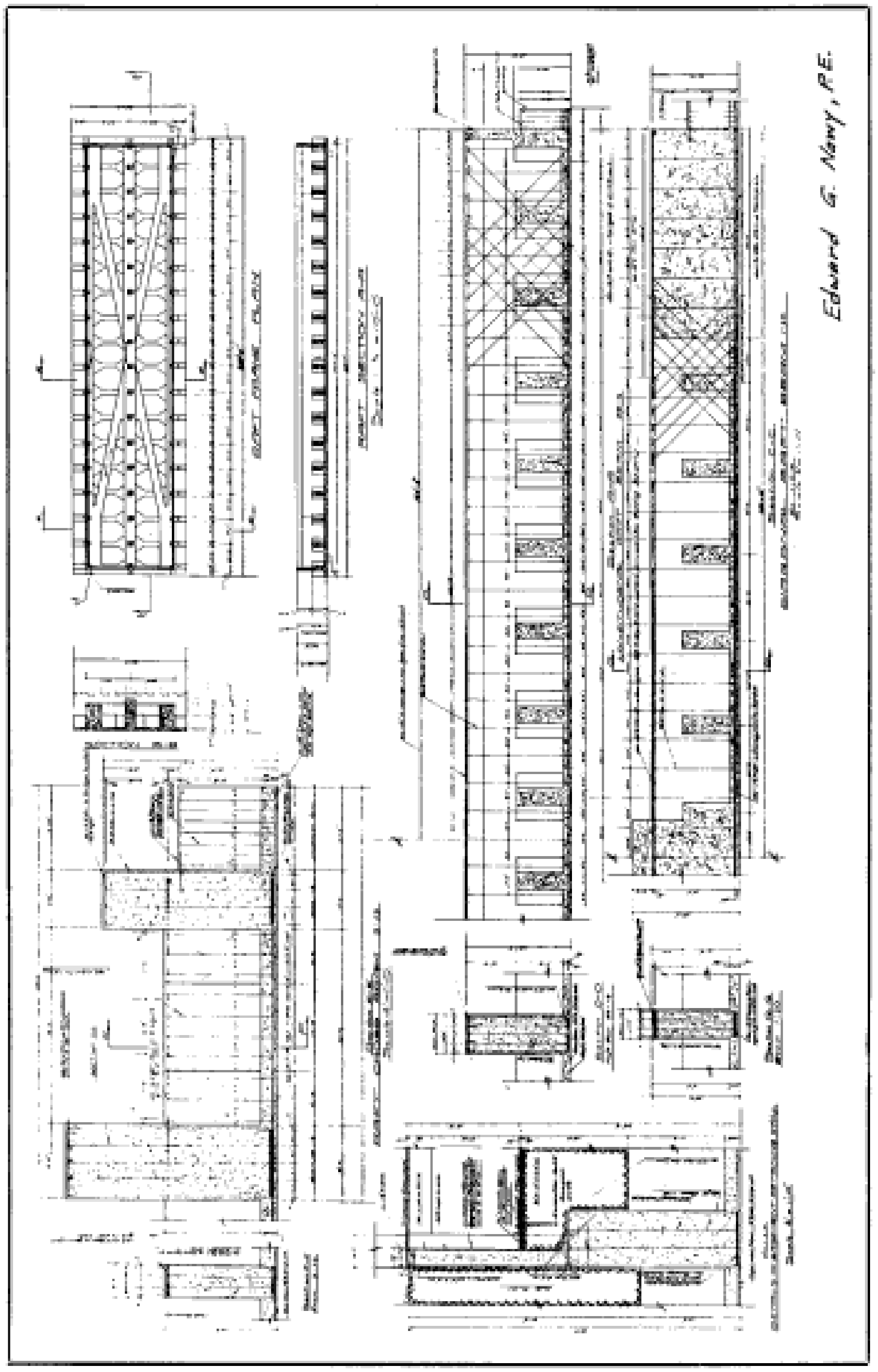


Figure 10.23 Raft foundation details. (Design by E. G. Nawy.)

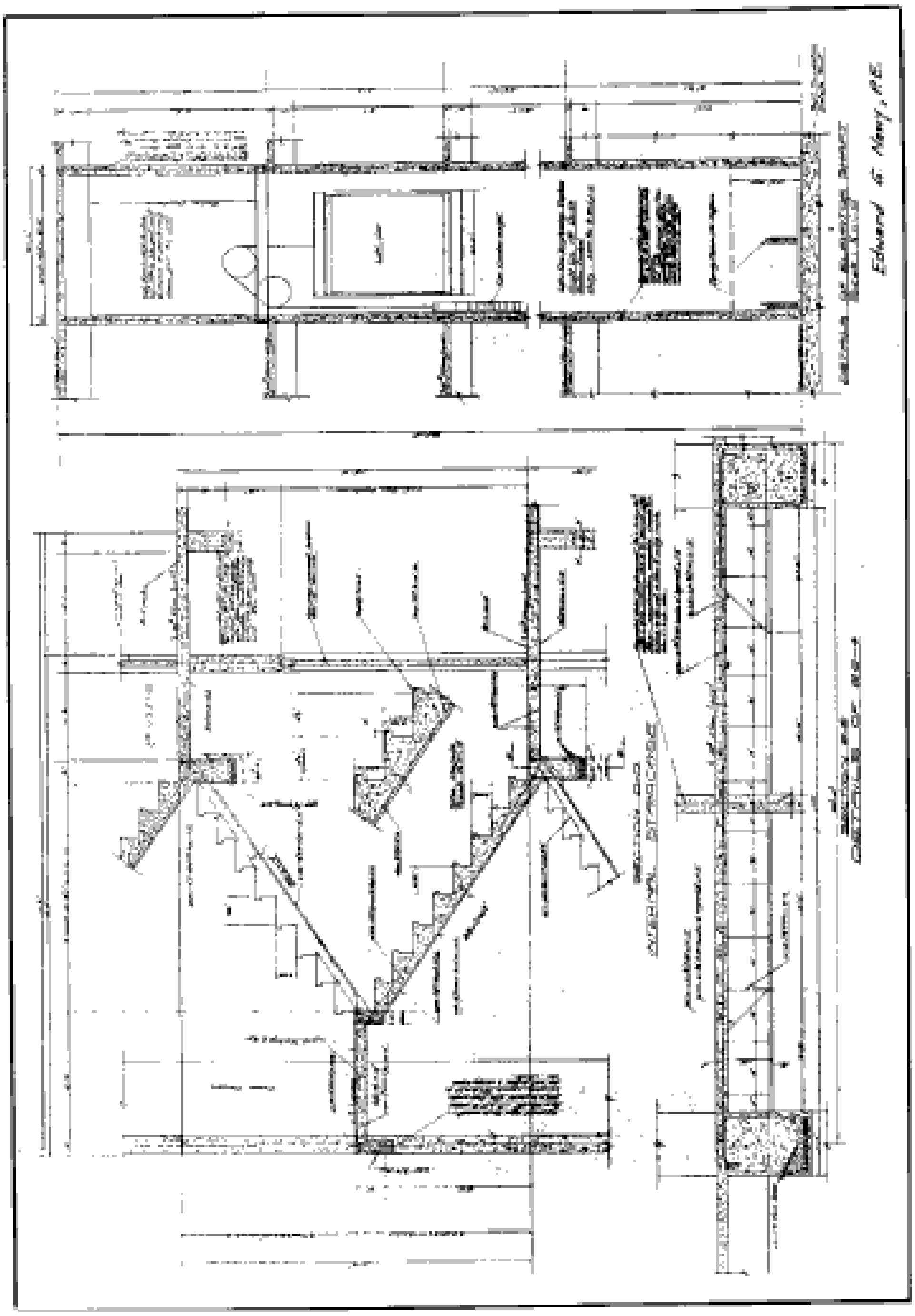


Figure 10.24 Elevator and stairwell details. (Design by E. G. Nawy.)

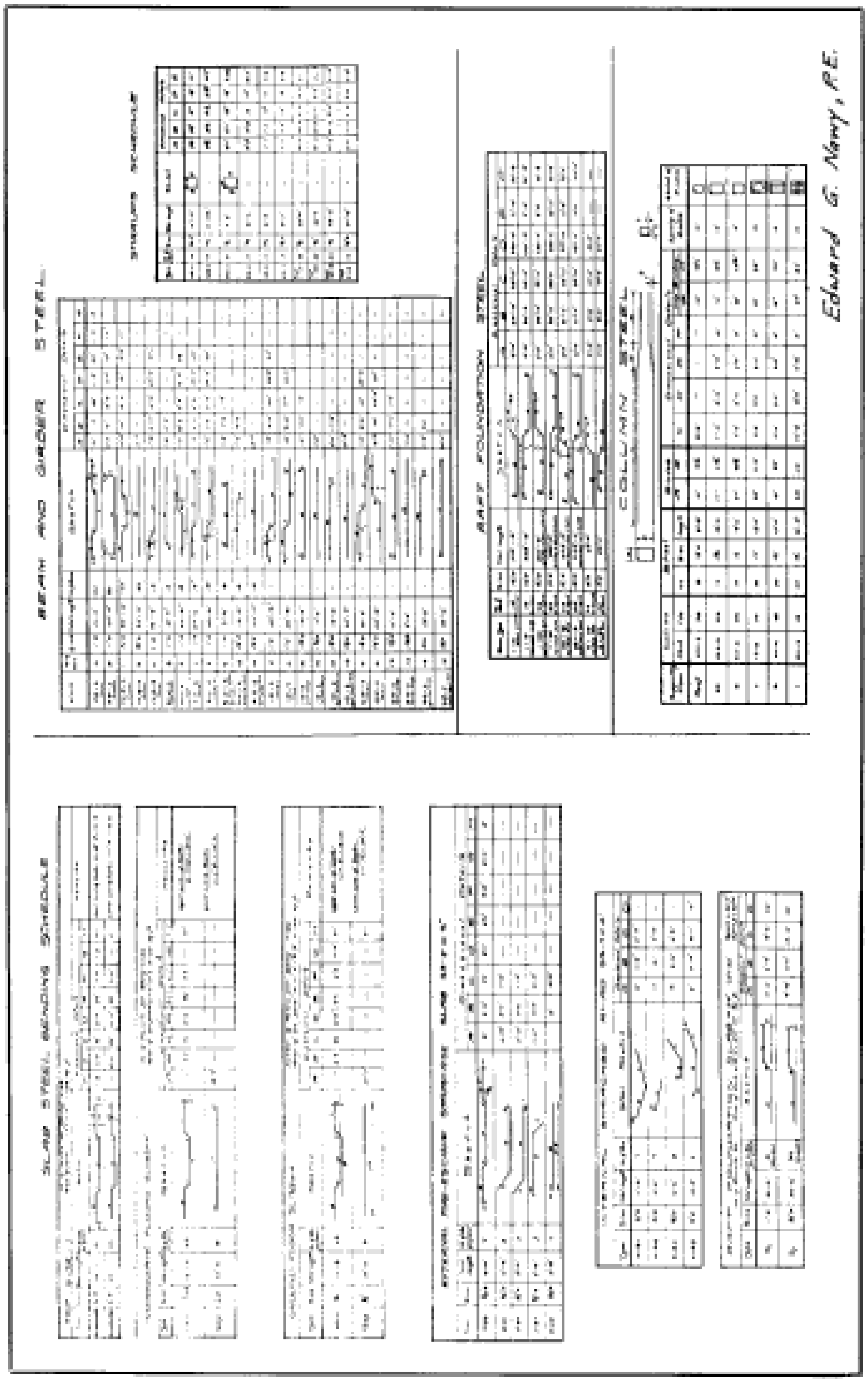


Figure 10.25 Typical reinforcement bar bending schedule. (Design by E. G. Nawy.)

SELECTED REFERENCES

10.1. Mathey, R. G., and Watstein, D., "Investigation of Bond in Beam Pull-out Specimens with High Yield Strength Deformed Bars," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 57, No. 9, Farmington Hills, MI, March 1961, pp. 1071–1090.

10.2. Jirsa, J. O., Lutz, L. A., and Gergely, P., "Rationale for Suggested Development, Splice and Standard Hook Provisions for Deformed Bars in Tension," *Concrete International: Design and Construction*, American Concrete Institute, Vol. 1, No. 7, Farmington Hills, MI, July 1979, pp. 47–61.

10.3. Ferguson, P. M., Breen, J. E., and Thompson, J. N., "Pullout Tests on High Strength Reinforcing Bars," Part 1, *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 62, No. 8, Farmington Hills, MI, August 1965, pp. 933–950.

10.4. Ferguson, P. M., and Breen, J. E., "Lapped Splices for High Strength Reinforcing Bars," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 62, No. 9, Farmington Hills, MI, September 1965, pp. 1063–1078.

10.5. ACI Committee 408, *Suggested Development, Splice, and Hook Provisions for Deformed Bars in Tension*, ACI 408-1 R-90, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1990, 3 pp.

10.6. ACI Committee 315, *ACI Detailing Manual—1980*, Special Publication SP-66, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1980, 206 pp.

10.7. Wire Reinforcement Institute, *Reinforcement Anchorages and Splices*, 3rd ed., WRI Publication, McLean, Va., 1979, 32 pp.

10.8. ACI Committee 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete* (ACI 318–08) and *Commentary* (ACI 318R–08), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2005, 466 pp.

10.9. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2005, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 944 pp.

10.10. Nawy, E. G., *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

10.1. Calculate the basic development lengths in tension for the following deformed bars embedded in normal-weight concrete.

(a) No. 5, No. 8. Given:

$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$

(b) No. 14, No. 18. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 80{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

10.2. Calculate the total embedment length for the bars in Problem 10.1 if they are used as compression reinforcement and the concrete is sand-lightweight.

10.3. Design the cutoff length for the continuous beam in Ex. 10.4 if eight No. 8 bars are used instead of six No. 9 bars.

10.4. Design the compression lap splice for a column section 16 in. × 16 in. (406 mm × 406 mm) reinforced with eight No. 9 bars (eight bars of diameter 28.7 mm) equally spaced around all faces.

(a) $f'_c = 5000$ psi (34.5 MPa)
$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

(b) $f'_c = 7000$ psi (48.3 MPa)
$f_y = 80{,}000$ psi (552 MPa)

10.5. An 18-ft (5.49-m) normal-weight concrete cantilever beam is subjected to a factored $M_u = 3{,}500{,}000$ in-lb (396 kN-m) and a factored shear $V_u = 32{,}400$ lb (144 kN) at the face of the support. Design the top reinforcement and the appropriate embedment of 90° hook into the concrete wall to sustain the external shear and moment. Given:

$$f'_c = 4500 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

10.6. Design the beam reinforcement in Problem 10.5 if it was simply supported having a span $l_n = 36$ ft (10.97 m) and subjected to the same factored M_u value at midspan and the shear V_u at the face of the support. Evaluate the required embedment length at the support to ensure that no bond failure due to slippage can develop. Assume (a) confining beam reaction and (b) beam not monolithic with its support.

11

DESIGN OF TWO-WAY SLABS AND PLATES

11.1 INTRODUCTION: REVIEW OF METHODS

Except for post-tensioned slabs, supported floor systems are usually constructed of reinforced concrete cast in place. Two-way slabs and plates are those panels in which the dimensional ratio of length to width is less than 2. The analysis and design of framed floor slab systems represented in Figure 11.1 encompasses more than one aspect. The present state of knowledge permits reasonable evaluation of (1) the moment capacity, (2) the slab–column shear capacity, and (3) serviceability behavior as determined by deflection control and crack control. Flat plates are slabs supported directly on columns without beams, as shown in Figure 11.1a, compared to Figure 11.1b for slabs on beams, or Figure 11.1c for waffle slab floors. Lift slabs are another form of construction but mostly in prestressed concrete.

The evolution of the state of knowledge in slab design in the last 70 years will be briefly reviewed. The analysis of slab behavior in flexure up to the 1940s and early 1950s followed the classical theory of elasticity, particularly in the United States. The small deflections theory of plates, assuming the material to be homogeneous and isotropic, formed the basis of ACI Code recommendations with moment coefficient tables. The work, principally by Westergaard, that empirically allowed limited moment redistribution

Photo 11.1 Sydney Opera House, Sydney, Australia. (Courtesy of Australian Information Service.)

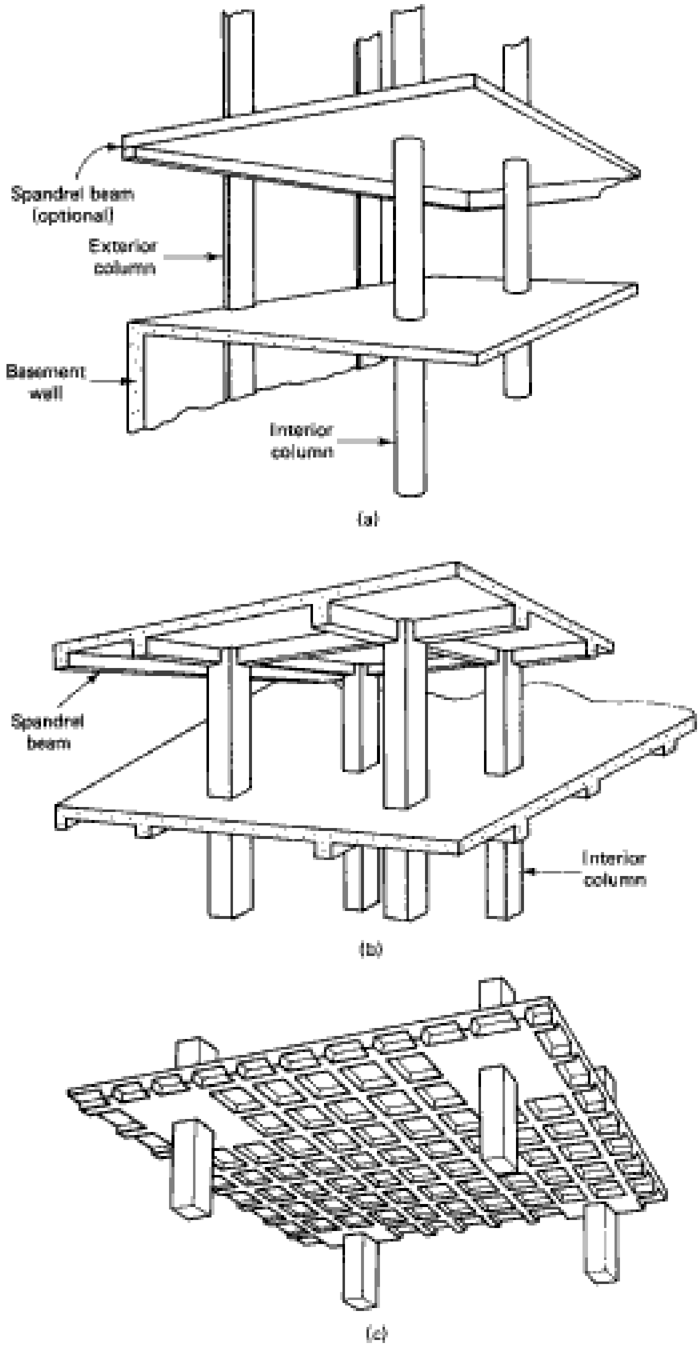


Figure 11.1 Two-way-action floor systems: (a) two-way flat-plate floor; (b) two-way slab floor on beams; (c) waffle slab floor.

guided the thinking of the code writers. Hence the elastic solutions, complicated even for simple shapes and boundary conditions when no computers were available, made it mandatory to idealize and sometimes empiricize conditions beyond economic bounds.

In 1943, Johansen presented his yield-line theory for evaluating the collapse capacity of slabs. Since that time, extensive research into the ultimate behavior of reinforced concrete slabs has been undertaken, notably by many investigators, such as those of Ockleston, Mansfield, Rzhanitsyn, Powell, Wood, Sawczuk, Gamble-Sozen-Siess, Park and the author contributed immensely to further understanding of the limit-state behavior of slabs and plates at failure as well as serviceable load levels.

The various methods that are used for the analysis (design) of two-way action slabs and plates are summarized in the following.

11.1.1 Semielastic ACI Code Approach

The ACI approach gives two alternatives for the analysis and design of a framed two-way action slab or plate system: the direct design method and the equivalent frame method. Both methods are discussed in more detail in Sections 11.3 and 11.6.

11.1.2 Yield-line Theory

Whereas the semielastic code approach applies to standard cases and shapes and has an inherent, excessively large safety factor with respect to capacity and the yield-line conditions, the yield line theory is a plastic theory that is easy to apply to irregular shapes and boundary conditions. Provided that serviceability constraints are applied, Johansen's yield-line theory is the simplest approach that the designer can use, representing the true behavior of reinforced concrete slabs and plates. It permits evaluation of the bending moments from an assumed collapse mechanism that is a function of the type of external load and the shape of the floor panel. This topic will be discussed in more detail in Section 11.9.

11.1.3 Limit Theory of Plates

The interest in developing a limit solution became necessary due to the possibility of finding a variation in the collapse field that can give a lower failure load. Hence an upper-bound solution requiring a valid mechanism when supplying the work equation was sought, as well as a lower-bound solution requiring that the stress field satisfies everywhere the differential equation of equilibrium; that is,

$$\frac{\partial^2 M_x}{\partial x^2} - 2\frac{\partial^2 M_{xy}}{\partial x\,\partial y} + \frac{\partial^2 M_y}{\partial y^2} = -w \tag{11.1}$$

where M_x, M_y, and M_{xy} are the bending moments and w is the unit intensity of load. Variable reinforcement permits the lower-bound solution still to be valid. Wood, Park, and other researchers have given more accurate semiexact predictions of the collapse load.

For limit-state solutions, the slab is assumed to be completely rigid until collapse. Further work at Rutgers by the author incorporated the deflection effect at high load levels as well as the compressive membrane force effects in predicting the collapse load.

11.1.4 Strip Method

This method was proposed by Hillerborg, attempting to fit the reinforcement to the strip fields. Since practical considerations require the reinforcement to be placed in orthogonal directions, Hillerborg set twisting moments equal to zero and transformed the slab into intersecting beam strips; hence the name strip method.

Except for Johansen's yield-line theory, most of the other solutions are lower bound. Johansen's upper-bound solution can give the highest collapse load as long as a valid failure mechanism is used in predicting the collapse load.

11.1.5 Summary

Both the direct design method (DDM) and the equivalent frame method (EFM) will be discussed with appropriate examples. Both methods are based on the concept of an equivalent frame, except that the DDM has several limitations, is less refined, and is suitable for gravity loads only. The EFM is more general, can be utilized for horizontal loading, and is adaptable for computer programming.

11.2 FLEXURAL BEHAVIOR OF TWO-WAY SLABS AND PLATES

11.2.1 Two-way Action

A single rectangular panel supported on all four sides by unyielding supports such as shear walls or stiff beams is first considered. The purpose is to visualize the physical behavior of the panel under gravity load. The panel will deflect in a dishlike form under the external load, and its corners will lift if it is not monolithically cast with the supports. The contours shown in Figure 11.2a indicate that the curvatures and consequently the moments at the central area C are more severe in the shorter direction y with its steep contours than in the longer direction x.

Evaluation of the division of moments in the x and y directions is extremely complex because the behavior is highly statically indeterminate. The discussion of the simple case of the panel in Figure 11.2a is expanded further by taking strips AB and DE at midspan as in Figure 11.2b such that the deflection of both strips at central point C is the same.

The deflection of a simply supported uniformly loaded beam is $5wl^4/384EI$; that is, $\Delta = kwl^4$, where k is a constant. If the thickness of the two strips is the same, the deflection of strip AB would be $kw_{AB}L^4$, and the deflection of strip DE would be $kw_{DE}S^4$, where w_{AB} and w_{DE} are the portions of the total load intensity w transferred to strips AB and DE, respectively; that is, $w = w_{AB} + w_{DE}$. Equating the deflections of the two strips at the central point C, we get

$$w_{AB} = \frac{wS^4}{L^4 + S^4} \tag{11.2a}$$

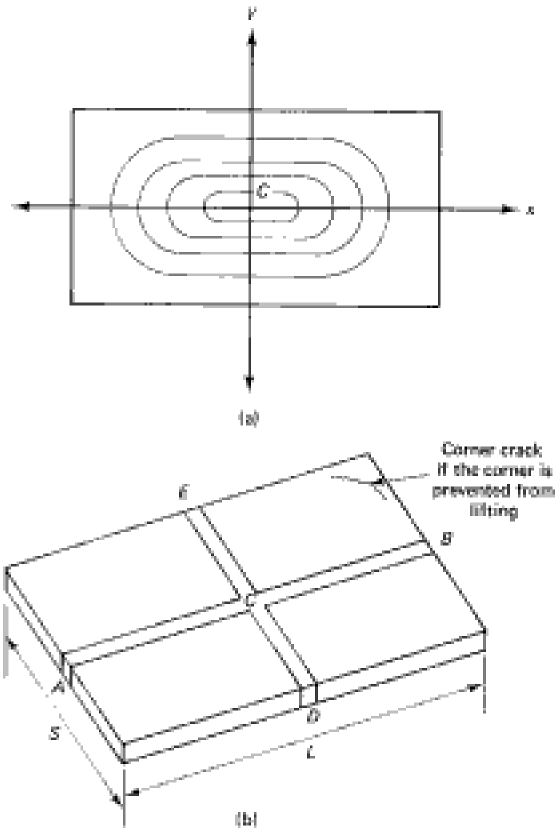


Figure 11.2 Deflection of panels and plates: (a) curvature and deflection contours in a floor panel; (b) central strips in a two-way slab panel.

Hidden page

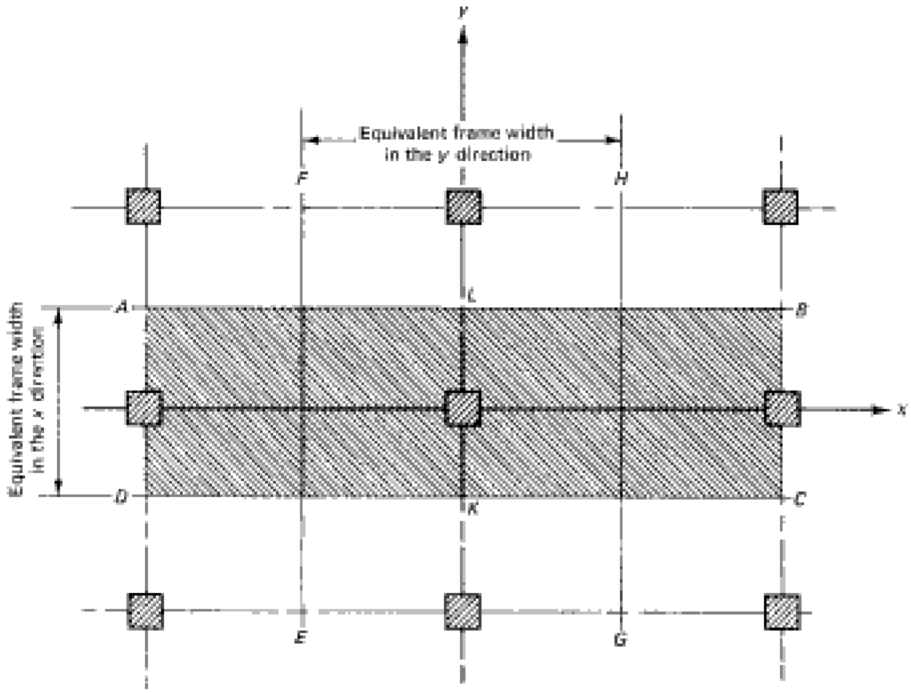


Figure 11.3 (a) Floor plan with equivalent frame (shaded area in x direction); (b) column and middle-strips of the equivalent frame (y direction).

11.3.1 Limitations of the Direct Design Method (DDM)

The following are the limitations of this method:

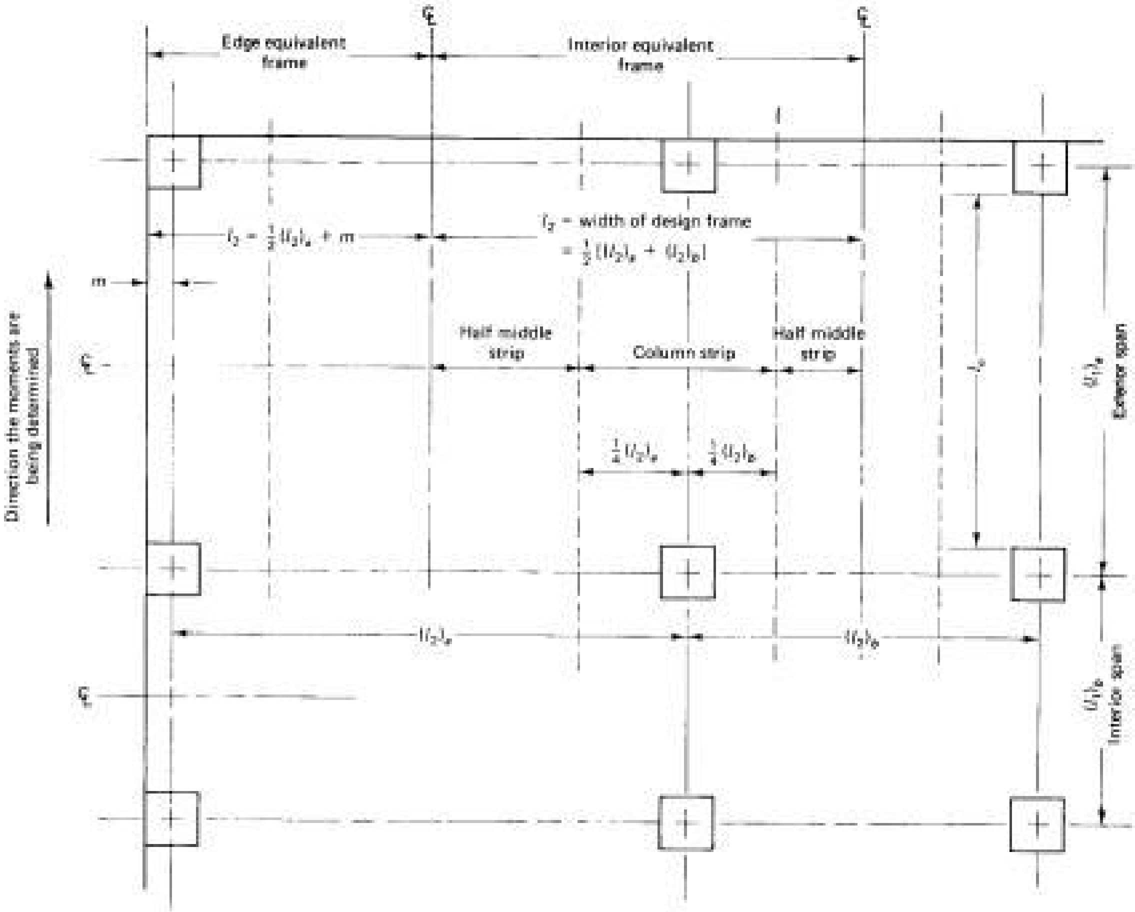
1. A minimum of three continuous spans are necessary in each direction.
2. The ratio of the longer to the shorter span within a panel should not exceed 2.0.
3. Successive span lengths in each direction should not differ by more than one-third of the longer span.
4. Columns may be offset a maximum of 10% of the span in the direction of the offset from either axis between center lines of successive columns.
5. All loads shall be due to gravity only and uniformly distributed over the entire panel. The live load shall not exceed two times the dead load.
6. If the panel is supported by beams on all sides, the relative stiffness of the beams in two perpendicular directions shall not be less than 0.2 nor greater than 5.0.
7. No moment redistribution in continuous panels is permitted in the direct design method.

It should be noted that the majority of normal floor systems satisfy these conditions.

11.3.2 Determination of the Factored Total Statical Moment M_0

There are basically four major steps in the design of the floor panels.

1. Determine the total factored statical moment in each of the two perpendicular directions.
2. Distribute the total factored design moment to the design of sections for negative and positive moment.



(b)

Figure 11.3 *Continued*

Photo 11.1 Sydney Opera House during construction.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Due to the actual existence of restraint at the supports, M_0 in the x direction would be distributed to the supports and midspan such that

$$M_0 = M_C + \frac{1}{2}(M_A + M_B) \tag{11.4}$$

The distribution would depend on the degree of stiffness of the support. In a similar manner, M_0 in the y direction would be the sum of the moments at midspan and the average of the moments at the supports in that direction.

The distribution of the statical factored moment M_0 to the column strip of the equivalent frame leads to the proportioning of the reinforcement in those strips.

11.4 DISTRIBUTED FACTORED MOMENTS AND SLAB REINFORCEMENT BY THE DIRECT DESIGN METHOD

11.4.1 Negative and Positive Factored Design Moments

From Figure 11.5a, the negative factored moment factor in interior spans is 0.65 and the positive factor is 0.35 of the total statical moment M_0. For end spans of flat-plate floor panels, the M_0 factors are given in Table 11.1.

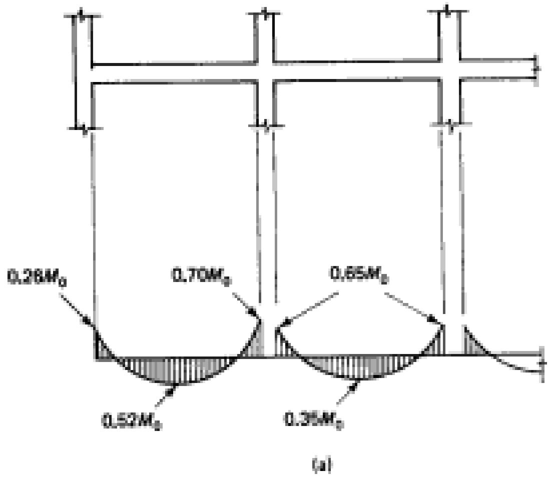
Table 11.1 Moment Factors for M_0 Distribution in Exterior Spans

	Exterior Edge Unrestrained	Slab with Beams between All Supports	*Slab without Beams between Interior Supports*		Exterior Edge Fully Restrained
			Without Edge Beam	With Edge Beam	
Interior negative factored moment	0.75	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.65
Positive factored moment	0.63	0.57	0.52	0.50	0.35
Exterior negative factored moment	0	0.16	0.26	0.30	0.65

11.4.2 Factored Moments in Column Strips

A column strip is a design strip with a width on each side of the column equal to $0.25l_2$ or $0.25l_1$, whichever is *less*, as shown in Figures 11.3b and 11.5. The strip includes beams, if any. The middle strip is a design strip bound by the two column strips of the panel being analyzed.

11.4.2.1 Interior panels. For interior negative moments, column strips have to be proportioned to resist the following portions in percent of the *interior* negative factored moments, with linear interpolation for intermediate values.



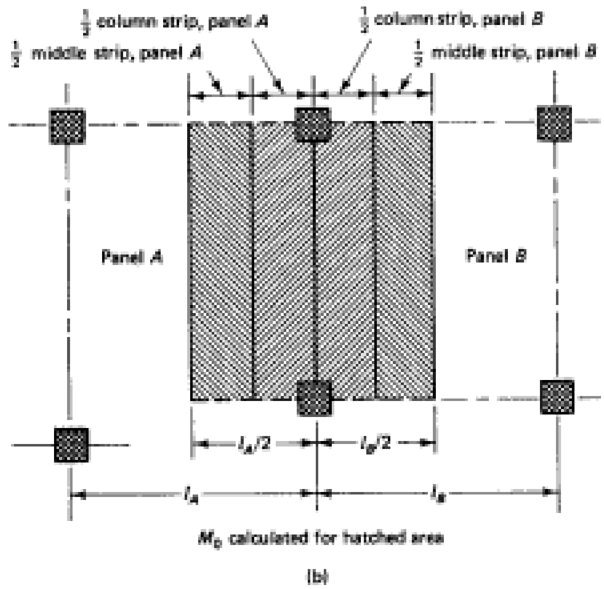


Figure 11.5 Distribution of the statical factored moments M_0 for slab without beams into negative and positive moments: (a) moment coefficients for multi-spans; (b) slab areas for which M_0 is calculated.

l_2/l_1	0.5	1.0	2.0
$\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1) = 0$	75	75	75
$\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1) \geq 1.0$	90	75	45

α_1 in these tables is α in the direction of span l_1 for cases of two-way slabs on beams and is equal to the ratio of flexural stiffness of the beam section to the flexural stiffness of a width of slab bound laterally by center lines of adjacent panels, if any, on each side of the beam $\alpha f_1 = E_{cb}I_b/E_{cs}I_s$, where E_{cb} and E_{cs} are the modulus values of concrete, and I_b and I_s are the moments of inertia of the beam and the slab, respectively. The factored moments in beams between supports have to be proportioned to resist 85% of the column strip moment when $\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1) \geq 1.0$. Linear interpolation between 85% and 0% needs to be made for cases where $\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1)$ varies between 1.0 and 0. αf_1 is in direction "1" and αf_2 is in direction "2."

11.4.2.2 Exterior panels. For exterior negative moments, the column strips should be proportioned to resist the following portions in percent of the *exterior* negative factored moments with linear interpolation made for the intermediate values, where β_t is the torsional stiffness ratio. β_t = ratio of torsional stiffness of the edge beam section to the flexural stiffness of a width of a slab equal to the span length of beam center to center of supports.

l_2/l_1		0.5	1.0	2.0
$\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1) = 0$	$\beta_t = 0$	100	100	100
	$\beta_t \geq 2.5$	75	75	75
$\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1) \geq 1.0$	$\beta_t = 0$	100	100	100
	$\beta_t \geq 2.5$	90	75	45

Torsional stiffness ratio β_t is calculated from $\beta_t = \dfrac{E_{cb}C}{2E_{cs}I_s}$, where $C = \Sigma(1 - 0.63\,x/y)\dfrac{x^3}{3}$.

11.4.2.3 Positive moments. For positive moments, the column strips have to be proportioned to resist the following portions in percent of the positive factored moments with linear interpolation being made for intermediate values.

l_2/l_1	0.5	1.0	2.0
$\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1) = 0$	60	60	60
$\alpha f_1(l_2/l_1) \geq 1.0$	90	75	45

For a panel with beams between supports on all sides, the relative stiffness of beams in two perpendicular directions should be within the range

$$0.2 \leq \frac{\alpha_{f1} l_2^2}{\alpha_{f2} l_1^2} \leq 5.0 \tag{11.5a}$$

The values of the stiffness ratios of α_{f1} and α_{f2} are calculateed in accordance with

$$\alpha_f = \frac{E_{cb}\,I_b}{E_{cs}\,I_s} \tag{11.5b}$$

11.4.3 Factored Moments in Middle Strips

That portion of the negative and positive factored moments not resisted by the column strips would have to be proportionately assigned to the corresponding half of the middle strips. Adjacent spans do not necessarily have to be equal so that the two halves of the column strip flanking a row of columns need not be equal in width. Hence each middle strip has to be proportioned to resist the sum of the moments assigned to its two half middle strips. A middle strip adjacent to and parallel with an edge supported by a wall must be proportioned to resist twice the moment assigned to the half middle strip corresponding to the first row of interior columns.

All negative and positive factored moments can be modified by 10% provided that the total static moment, M_o, of the panel in the direction considered is not less than that required by Equation 11.3 defining the total statical moment.

11.4.4 Pattern Loading Consideration

In the analysis of continuous members, pattern loading has to be considered. As a result, the maximum moments are obtained. Pattern loading can cause reversal of stress, as seen in Figure 11.6, as a function of the relative stiffness of the beams and columns intersecting at the joint. Pattern loading analysis is cumbersome. By limiting the applicability of

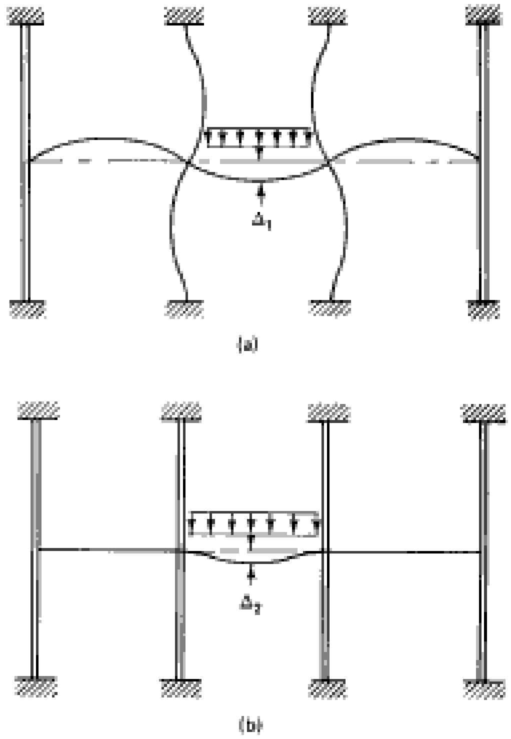


Figure 11.6 Pattern loading effect on deflection and cracking: (a) large deflection Δ_1 with more flexible columns; (b) small deflection Δ_2 with stiffer columns.

the Direct Design Method of slabs with "Live load not exceeding two times dead load," there is no longer a need to check for pattern load effects. Slab and column dimensions for virtually all practical cases will meet the values for α_{min} specified in Table 11.2.

11.4.5 Shear–Moment Transfer to Columns Supporting Flat Plates

11.4.5.1 Shear strength. The shear behavior of two-way slabs and plates is a three-dimensional stress problem. The critical shear failure plane follows the perimeter of the loaded area and is located at a distance that gives a minimum shear perimeter b_0. Based on extensive analytical and experimental verification, the shear plane should not be closer than a distance $d/2$ from the concentrated load or reaction area.

If no special shear reinforcement is provided, the maximum allowable nominal shear strength V_c of the section as required by the ACI is the smallest of the values from Eqs. 11.5:

$$V_c = \left(2 + \frac{4}{\beta}\right)\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_0 d \tag{11.6a}$$

where β is the ratio of the long side to the short side of the column, concentrated load, or reaction areas, and b_0 is the perimeter of the critical section:

$$V_c = \left(\frac{\alpha_s d}{b_0} + 2\right)\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_0 d \tag{11.6b}$$

where α_s is 40 for interior columns, 30 for edge columns, and 20 for corner columns and

$$V_c = 4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_0 d \tag{11.6c}$$

Table 11.2 Values of α_{min}*

β_a	Aspect Ratio, l_2/l_1	Relative Beam Stiffness, α: 0	0.5	1.0	2.0	4.0
2.0	0.5–2.0	0	0	0	0	0
1.0	0.5	0.6	0	0	0	0
	0.8	0.7	0	0	0	0
	1.0	0.7	0.1	0	0	0
	1.25	0.8	0.4	0	0	0
	2.0	1.2	0.5	0.2	0	0
0.5	0.5	1.3	0.3	0	0	0
	0.8	1.5	0.5	0.2	0	0
	1.0	1.6	0.6	0.2	0	0
	1.25	1.9	1.0	0.5	0	0
	2.0	1.9	1.6	0.8	0.3	0
0.33	0.5	1.8	0.5	0.1	0	0
	0.8	2.0	0.9	0.3	0	0
	1.0	2.3	0.9	0.4	0	0
	1.25	2.8	1.5	0.8	0.2	0
	2.0	3.0	2.6	1.2	0.5	0.3

*$\beta_a = \dfrac{\text{unfactored dead load per unit area}}{\text{unfactored live load per unit area}}$

$\alpha_c = \dfrac{\Sigma K_c}{\Sigma(K_b + K_s)}$

$= \dfrac{\text{sum of stiffness of columns above and below slab}}{\text{sum of stiffness of beams and slabs framing into the joint in the direction of the span for which the moments are being determined}}$

In columns of nonsway prestressed concrete slabs and footings the normal shear capacity at the critical section is

$$V_c = (\beta_p \lambda \sqrt{f'_c} + 0.3 f_{pc}) b_w d \tag{11.6d}$$

where β_p is the smaller of 3.5 and $(\alpha_s d/b_o + 1.5)$.

λ = modification factor for lightweight concrete as defined in Section 6.5.

Equations 11.6(a) and (b) are the results of tests that indicate that as the ratio b_0/d increases the available nominal shear strength V_c decreases so that in such situations Eq. 11.6(c) would not control because it becomes unsafe. It is clear from Eq. 11.6 that the shear strength provided by the plain concrete cannot exceed $4\sqrt{f'_c}$, which is almost double the shear strength allowed in one-way members such as beams and one-way slabs.

If special shear reinforcement is provided, the maximum nominal shear strength V_n cannot exceed $6\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_0 d$, provided that the value used for V_c in the term $V_s = V_n - V_c$ does not exceed $2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_0 d$.

11.4.5.2 Shear–moment transfer. The unbalanced moment at the column face support of a slab without beams is one of the more critical design considerations in proportioning a flat plate or a flat slab. To ensure adequate shear strength requires consideration of moment transfer to the column by flexure across the perimeter of the column and by eccentric shearing stress, [obscured by watermark] transferred by flexure and 40% by shear.

The fraction γ_v of the moment transferred by eccentricity of the shear stress decreases as the width of the face of the critical section resisting the moment increases such that

$$\gamma_v = 1 - \frac{1}{1 + \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{b_1/b_2}} \tag{11.7a}$$

where $b_2 = c_2 + d$ is the width of the face of the critical section resisting the moment and $b_1 = c_1 + d$ for interior columns and $b_1 = c_1 + d/2$ for edge columns and $b_1 = c_1 + d/2$ and $b_2 = c_2 + d/2$ for corner columns. Side b_1 is the width of the face at right angles to side b_2.

The remaining portion γ_f of the unbalanced moment transferred by flexure is given by

$$\gamma_f = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{b_1/b_2}} \quad \text{or} \quad \gamma_f = 1 - \gamma_v \tag{11.7b}$$

acting on an effective slab between lines that are $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the total slab thickness h on both sides of the column support.

The distribution of shear stresses around the column edges is as shown in Figure 11.8. It is considered to vary linearly about the centroid of the critical section. The factored shear force V_u and the unbalanced factored moment M_u, both assumed acting at the column face, have to be transferred to the centroidal axis c–c of the critical section. Thus the axis position has to be located, thereby obtaining the shear force arm g (distance from the column face to the centroidal axis plane) of the critical section c–c for the shear moment transfer.

11.4.5.3 Exterior edge and corner supports. Exterior column support is either end or corner column support. Choice of the correct unbalanced moment transfer shear factor γ_v and flexural factor γ_f values for shear-moment transfer at exterior support has a significant effect on the slab capacity to resist perimetric (punching) shear failure in supported floor slabs and plates as well as in foundation slab and other footing elements. The ACI 318-08 Code permits increasing the value of γ_f in Equation 11.7(b) as follows:

1. For ***edge column support*** with unbalanced moments about an axis ***parallel*** to the edge, γ_f can be increased to $\gamma_f = 1.0$, provided that the factored shear force V_u does not exceed $0.75\ \phi\ V_c$ for edge support and $0.50\ \phi\ V_c$ for corner support. In such a case a value of $\gamma_v = 0$ is allowed. The reason is that the portion of the moment transferred by eccentricity of the shear part $\gamma_v M_u$ may be reduced as certain tests indicated that there is no significant interaction between shear and balanced moment at exterior support in these cases, as stated in the Code commentary. Hence, $\gamma_v M_u$ is decreased and $\gamma_f M_u$ is increased.
2. For ***interior column support*** with unbalanced moment and for edge columns with unbalanced moment about an axis ***perpendicular*** to the edge, the ACI 318-08 Code allows that γ_f can be increased to as much as 1.25 times the value in Equation 11.7(b), but not more than $\gamma_f = 1.0$, provided that V_u at the support does not exceed $V_u = 0.40\ \phi\ V_c$. The tensile strain ε_t calculated for the effective slab width equivalent to column width, c, plus $1.5h$ on each side, namely $(c + 3h)$, should not exceed the strain value $\varepsilon_t = 0.010$. The controlling value of the nominal shear force V_c is computed from the expressions in Equations 11.6(a), (b) and (c).

   However, the level of adjustment allowing $\gamma_f = 1.0$ and $\gamma_v = 0$ might not be on the safe side as demonstrated by other recent tests (Refs. 11.30 and 11.31). These tests have shown that such reduction in the γ_v value can lead to perimetric shear failure (punching) when a slab-column connection is subjected to gravity loads

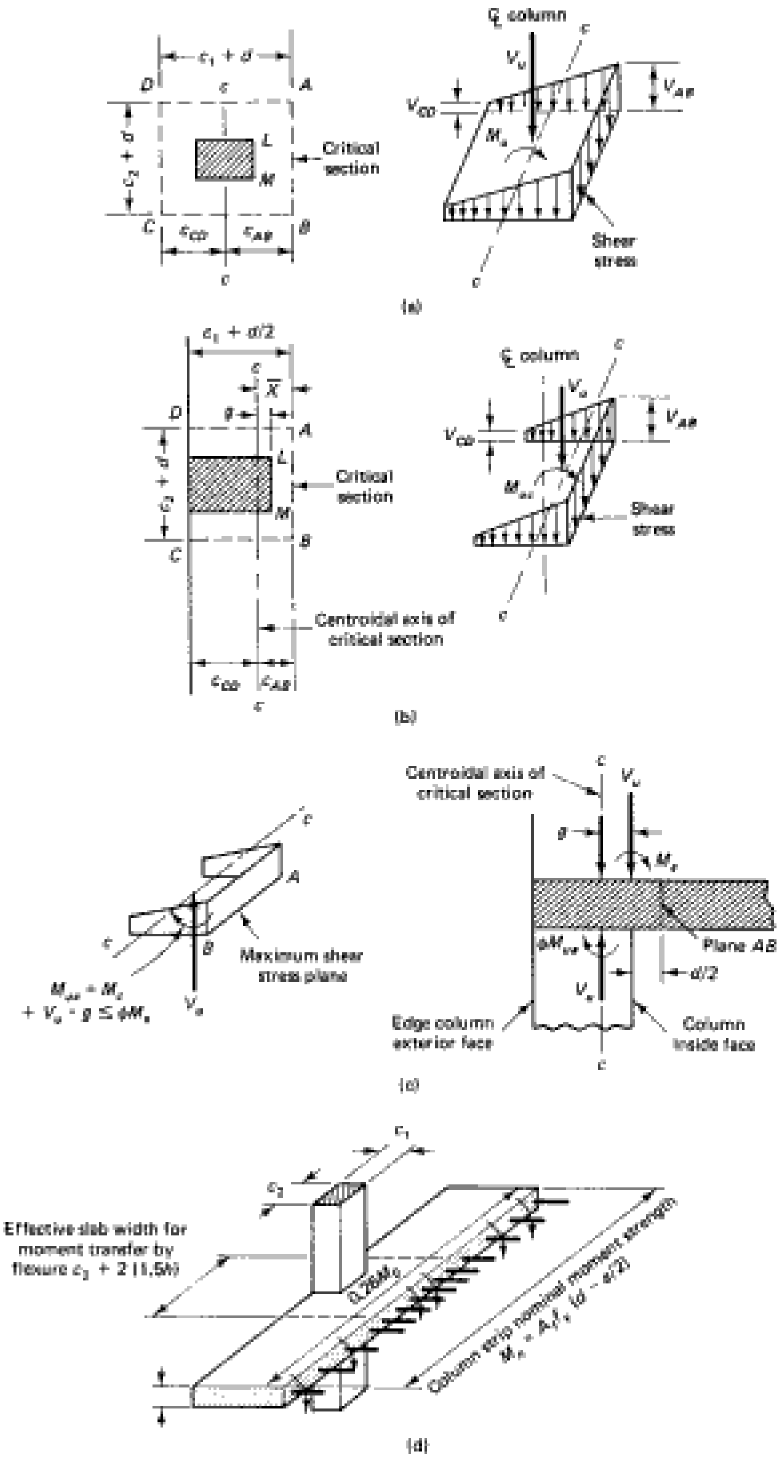


Figure 11.7 Shear stress distribution around column edges: (a) interior column; (b) end column; (c) critical surface; (d) transfer nominal moment strength M_n.

combined with wind, earthquake, or other lateral forces. These studies demonstrate that γ_v can be well above the zero value permitted by the Code. Therefore, it is prudent, particularly because shear failure is a fast brittle type of failure, that engineering judgment be exercised, using a reasonable value of γ_v and perhaps without appreciable reduction from the values obtained from Equation 11.7(a) of the text.

For calculating the maximum shear stress sustained by the plate in the edge column region, the ACI Code requires using the full nominal moment strength M_n provided by the column strip in Eqs. 11.8 as the unbalanced moment, multiplied by the transfer fraction factor γ_v. This unbalanced moment $M_n \geq M_{ue}/\phi$ is composed to two parts: the negative end panel moment $M_{ne} = M_e/\phi$ at the face of the column and the moment $(V_u/\phi)g$, due to the eccentric factored perimetric shear force V_u. The limiting value of the shear stress intensity is expressed as

$$\frac{v_{u(AB)}}{\phi} = \frac{V_u}{\phi A_c} + \frac{\gamma_v M_{ue} c_{AB}}{\phi J_c} \tag{11.8a}$$

$$\frac{v_{u(CD)}}{\phi} = \frac{V_u}{\phi A_c} - \frac{\gamma_v M_{ue} c_{CD}}{\phi J_c} \tag{11.8b}$$

where the nominal shear strength intensity is

$$v_n = \frac{v_u}{\phi} \tag{11.8c}$$

and where A_c = area of concrete of assumed critical section
$= 2d(c_1 + c_2 + 2d)$ for an interior column
J_c = property of assumed critical section analogous to polar moment of inertia

The value of J_c for an interior column is

$$J_c = \frac{d(c_1 + d)^3}{6} + \frac{d^3(c_1 + d)}{6} + \frac{d(c_2 + d)(c_1 + d)^2}{2} \tag{11.8d}$$

The value of J_c for an edge column with bending parallel to the edge is

$$J_c = \frac{(c_1 + d/2)(d)^3}{6} + \frac{2(d)}{3}(c^3_{AB} + c^3_{CD}) + (c_2 + d)(d)(c_{AB})^2 \tag{11.8e}$$

It can be recognized from basic principles of mechanics of materials that the shearing stress

$$v_u = \frac{V_u}{A_c} + \gamma_v \frac{Mc}{J}$$

where the second part of the term is the shearing stress resulting from the torsional moment at the column face.

If the nominal moment strength M_n of the shear moment transfer zone after the design of the reinforcement results in a larger value than M_{ue}/ϕ, the M_n value should be used in Eqs. 11.8a and b in lieu of M_{ue}/ϕ. In such a case, where the moment strength value $M_n = M_{ne} + (V_u/\phi)g$ is increased because of the use of flexural reinforcement in excess of what is needed to resist M_{ue}/ϕ, the slab stiffness is raised, thereby increasing the transferred shear stress v_u calculated from Eqs. 11.7a and b for development of full moment transfer. Consequently, it is advisable to maintain a design moment M_{ue} with a value close to the factored moment value M_{ue} if an increase in the shear stress due to additional moment transfer needs to be avoided and a possible resulting need for additional increase in the plate thickness is avoided.

Numerical Ex. 11.1 illustrates the procedure for calculating the limit perimeter shear stress in the plate at the edge column region.

A higher perimetric shearing stress v_u can occur than evaluated by Eq. 11.8a or b when adjoining spans are unequal or unequally loaded in the case of an interior column. The ACI Code stipulates in the slab section pertaining to factored moments in columns and walls that the supporting element, such as a column or a wall, has to resist an unbalanced moment M', such that

$$M' = 0.07[(w_{ud} + 0.5w_{ul})l_2(l_{n2})^2 - w'_{ud}l'_2(l'_n)^2] \tag{11.9a}$$

where w'_{ud}, and l'_n refer to the shorter span.

The columns at the column-slab monolithic joint would have to be designed to resist the unbalanced moment M' in direct proportion to their stiffnesses unless a general frame analysis is made. Thus, if the upper and lower columns at the joint have the same height and stiffness, the column is designed to carry one-half the unbalanced moment M' in combination with the axial load. In Eq. 11.9 a, the one-half live load intensity is applied on the longer span and the dead load only is applied to the shorter span.

Hence, an additional term is added to Eq. 11.8a or b in such cases so that

$$v_u = \frac{V_u}{A_c} + \frac{\gamma_v M_u c_{AB}}{J_c} + \frac{\gamma_v M' c}{J'_c} \tag{11.8b}$$

where J'_c is the polar moment of inertia with moment areas taken in a direction perpendicular to that used for J_c.

If the two adjacent spans are equal and equally loaded with live load, Eq. 11.9(a) for the unbalanced moment of the shear-moment transfer in the slab at the column joint becomes

$$M' = 0.07\,[0.5w_{ul}l_2(l_{n1})^2] \tag{11.9c}$$

11.4.6 Headed Shear Reinforcement

In order to control the thickness of slabs at critical shear stress areas as in column-slab junctions in supported slabs and in footings, headed shear reinforcement can be used for certain cases, particularly in the corner column areas. Headed stud assemblies are essentially off-the-shelf products that require correct choice of stud size and spacing that should be placed perpendicular to the plane of the slab or footing and have an overall height not less than the thickness of the slab ***less*** the ***sum*** of the following:

1. Concrete cover on top of the flexural member
2. Concrete cover on the base rail
3. One-half the bar diameter of the tension flexural reinforcement.

The maximum allowable stress at the critical section at a distance $d/2$ from the face of the support is

$$V_c \leq 3\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_o d \qquad 11.10(a)$$

$$V_n \leq 8\lambda\sqrt{fc'}\,b_o d \qquad 11.10(b)$$

Also, the area of the shear reinforcement to be used is

A_v = cross-sectional area of all the shear reinforcement on one peripheral line which is approximately parallel to the perimeter of the column section.

The spacing of the peripheral lines of headed shear stud reinforcement is as defined in the following expression:

$$\frac{A_v f_y}{b_o s} \leq 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} \qquad 11.10(c)$$

The spacing between the column face and the first peripheral line of shear reinforcement should not exceed $d/2$. The spacing between the peripheral reinforcement, measured in a direction perpendicular to any face of the column has to be ***constant*** and based on the value of the shear stress due to the factored shear force and the unbalanced moment at the critical section.

The spacing s, between the peripheral lines, should have the following maximum limits:

1. $0.75d$ where shear stresses due to factored loads are ***less*** than $6.0\,\varphi\sqrt{f'_c}$
2. $0.50d$ where shear stresses due to factored loads are ***greater*** than $6.0\,\varphi\sqrt{f'_c}$
3. For prestressed slabs and footings, $s \leq 0.75\,d$
4. Spacing, s, between adjacent reinforcing elements measured to the perimeter of the first peripheral line of shear reinforcement cannot exceed $2d$
5. Shear stress due to the factored shear force and moment cannot exceed $(2.0\,\lambda\varphi\sqrt{f'_c})$ at the critical section at $d/2$ outside the outermost peripheral line of shear reinforcement

A typical arrangement of headed shear steel reinforcement and critical sections outside the shear-reinforced zone are shown in Figure 11.8.

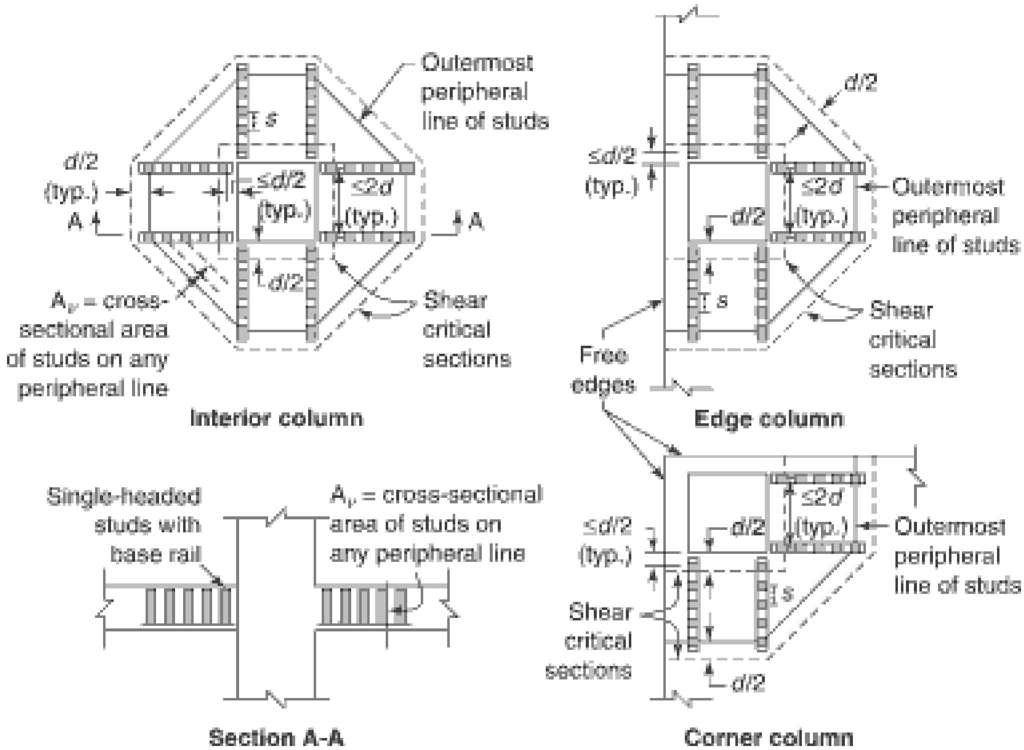


Figure 11.8 Typical Arrangement of Headed Shear Stud Reinforcement (Ref. 11.1).

11.4.7 Deflection Requirements for Minimum Thickness: An Indirect Approach

The serviceability of a floor system can be maintained through deflection control and crack control. Since deflection is a function of the stiffness of the slab as a measure of its thickness, a minimum thickness has to be provided irrespective of the flexural thickness requirement. Table 11.3 gives the minimum thickness of slabs without interior beams. This occurs when $\alpha_m \equiv 0$. Table 11.4 gives the maximum permissible computed deflections to safeguard against plaster cracking and to maintain esthetic appearance. Deflection computations for two-way-action slabs can be made using the analytical procedures described in Section 11.8 in order to determine whether the analysis gives long-term deflections within the limitations of Table 11.4.

Approximate empirical limitation on deflection through determination of the minimum thickness of the slab on beams or drop panels or bands can be obtained from Table 11.3 if the stiffness ratio $\alpha_{fm} < 0.2$.

For $\alpha_{fm} > 0.2$ but not greater than 2.0,

$$h = \frac{l_n\,(0.8 + f_y/200{,}000)}{36 + 5\beta(\alpha_{fm} - 0.2)} \tag{11.11a}$$

and need not be less than 5 in., where α_{fm} = average value of α_f for all beams on edge of panel.

For $\alpha_{fm} > 2.0$,

$$h = \frac{l_n\,(0.8 + f_y/200{,}000)}{36 + 9\,\beta} \tag{11.11b}$$

where l_n is the length of clear span in the long direction for deflection determination. For moment computation, l_n is the length of the clear span in the direction that moments are being computed.

For slabs without beams, but with drop panels having a width in each direction from center line of support a distance not less than one-sixth the span length in that direction measured center to center of supports and a projection below the slab at least one-fourth the slab thickness beyond the drop, the thickness required by Eq. 11.11a or 11.11b may be reduced by 10%. At discontinuous edges, an edge beam shall be provided

Table 11.3 Minimum Thickness of Slab Without Interior Beams

	Without Drop Panels[a]			*With Drop Panels*[a]		
	Exterior Panels			*Exterior Panels*		
Yield Stress, f_y, (psi)[b]	**Without Edge Beams**	**With Edge Beams**[c]	**Interior Panels**	**Without Edge Beams**	**With Edge Beams**[c]	**Interior Panels**
40,000	$\frac{l_n}{33}$	$\frac{l_n}{36}$	$\frac{l_n}{36}$	$\frac{l_n}{36}$	$\frac{l_n}{40}$	$\frac{l_n}{40}$
60,000	$\frac{l_n}{30}$	$\frac{l_n}{33}$	$\frac{l_n}{33}$	$\frac{l_n}{33}$	$\frac{l_n}{36}$	$\frac{l_n}{36}$
75,000	$\frac{l_n}{28}$	$\frac{l_n}{31}$	$\frac{l_n}{31}$	$\frac{l_n}{31}$	$\frac{l_n}{34}$	$\frac{l_n}{34}$

[a]Drop panel as defined by the ACI Code.

[b]For values of reinforcement yield stress between the values given in the table, minimum thickness shall be obtained by linear interpolation.

[c]Slabs with beams between columns along exterior edges. The value of α for the edge beam shall not be less than 0.8.

Table 11.4 Minimum Permissible Ratios of Span (l) to Deflection (a) (l = Longer Span)

Type of Member	Deflection, a, to Be Considered	$(l/a)_{min}$
Flat roofs not supporting and not attached to nonstructural elements likely to be damaged by large deflections	Immediate deflection due to live load L	180[a]
Floors not supporting and not attached to nonstructural elements likely to be damaged by large deflections	Immediate deflection due to live load L	360
Roof or floor construction supporting or attached to nonstructural elements likely to be damaged by large deflections	That part of total deflection occurring after attachment of nonstructural elements: sum of long-term deflection due to all sustained loads (dead load plus any sustained portion of live load) and immediate deflection due to any additional live load[b]	480[c]
Roof or floor construction supporting or attached to nonstructural elements not likely to be damaged by large deflections		240[c]

[a]Limit not intended to safeguard against ponding. Ponding should be checked by suitable calculations of deflection, including added deflections due to ponded water and considering long-term effects of all sustained loads, camber, construction tolerances, and reliability of provisions for drainage.

[b]Long-term deflection has to be determined, but may be reduced by the amount of deflection calculated to occur before attachment of nonstructural elements. This reduction is made on the basis of accepted engineering data relating to time–deflection characteristics of members similar to those being considered.

[c]Ratio limit may be lower if adequate measures are taken to prevent damage to supported or attached elements, but should not be lower than tolerance of nonstructural elements.

with a stiffness ratio α not less than 0.80; or the minimum thickness required by Eq. 11.11a or 11.11 shall be increased by at least 10% in the panel with a discontinuous edge.

Figure 11.9 gives a plot of the thickness ratio h/l_n to aspect ratio β for the two equations for various stiffness ratios α. Note from the plots that Eq. 11.11a is an upper-limit expression applicable to limited conditions when the stiffnesses of the panel beam supports are so low that the stiffness ratio α has a value close to 0.2, gradually approaching the condition of a flat plate. It is not applicable when $\alpha = 0$. If it is to be used in the latter condition, however, we can assume that part of the slab in the column region acts as a beam. Thickness h cannot be less than the following values:

Slabs without beams or drop panels	5 in.
Slabs without beams, but with drop panels	4 in.
Slabs with beams on all four edges with a value of α_{fm} at least equal to 2.0	3.5 in.

h also has to be increased by at least 10% for flat-plate floors if the end panels have no edge beams and by 45% for corner panels.

In addition, in the equations above,

α = ratio of flexural stiffness of beam section to flexural stiffness of a width of slab bounded laterally by the center line of the adjacent panel (if any) on each side of the beam

α_{fm} = average value of α for all beams on edges of a panel

β = ratio of clear spans in long-to-short direction of two-way slabs

Hidden page

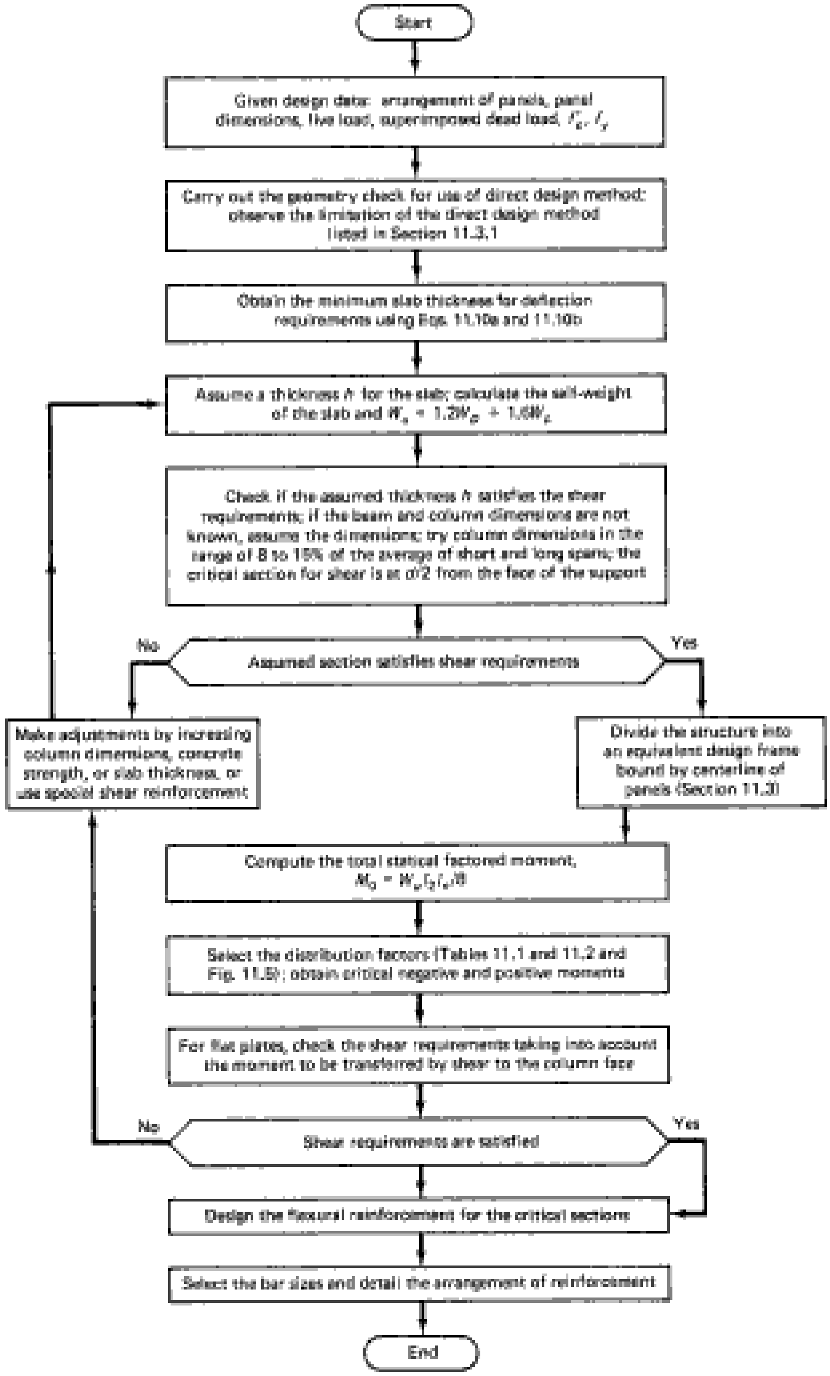


Figure 11.10 Flowchart for design sequence in two-way slabs and plates by the direct design method.

section is at a distance $d/2$ from the face of the support. If the thickness shown for deflection is not adequate to carry the shear, use one or more of the following:
(a) Increase the column dimension.
(b) Increase concrete strength.
(c) Increase slab thickness.
(d) Use special shear reinforcement.
(e) Use drop panels or column capitals to improve shear strength.

3. Divide the structure into equivalent design frames bound by center lines of panels on each side of a line of columns.

4. Compute the total statical factored moment $M_0 = (w_u l_2 l_n{}^2{}_1)/8$.

5. Select the distribution factors of the negative and positive moments to the exterior and interior columns and spans as in Figure 11.3b and Table 11.1 and calculate the respective factored moments.

6. Distribute the factored equivalent frame moments from step 5 to the column and middle strips.

7. Determine whether the trial slab thickness chosen is adequate for moment-shear transfer in the case of flat plates at the column junction computing that portion of the moment transferred by shear and the properties of the critical shear section at distance $d/2$ from column face.

8. Design the flexural reinforcement to resist the factored moments in step 6.

9. Select the size and spacing of the reinforcement to fulfill the requirements for crack control, bar development lengths, and shrinkage and temperature stresses.

11.5.2 Example 11.1: Design of Flat Plate without Beams by the Direct Design Method

A three-story building is four panels by four panels in plan. The clear height between the floors is 12 ft, and the floor system is a reinforced concrete flat-plate construction with no edge beams. The dimensions of the end panels as well as the size of the supporting columns are shown in Figure 11.11. Given:

$$\text{live load} = 70 \text{ psf } (3.35 \text{ kPa})$$

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

The building is not subject to earthquake; consider gravity loads only. Design the end panel and the size and spacing of the reinforcement needed. Consider flooring weight to be 10 psf in addition to the floor self-weight.

Solution: *Geometry check for use of direct design method (step 1)*

(a) Ratio longer span/shorter span = 24/18 = 1.33 < 2.0, hence two-way action
(b) More than three spans in each direction and successive spans in each direction the same and columns are not offset.
(c) Assume a thickness of 9 in. and flooring of 10 psf.

$$w_d = 10 + \frac{9}{12} \times 150 = 122.5 \text{ psf} \qquad 2w_d = 245 \text{ psf}$$

$$w_l = 70 \text{ psf} < 2w_d \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Hence the direct design method is applicable.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hence the floor thickness is adequate. Note that because the preliminary forgoing check for the shear V_c at this stage does not take into account the shear transferred by moment, it is prudent to recognize that the chosen trial slab thickness would have to be larger than what the gravity V_u requires. As a guideline, in the case of interior columns, a thickness based on about 1.2 V_n applies in the case of interior columns. For end columns, a recommended multiplier for V_n might have to be as high as 1.6–1.8, and for corner columns, a higher value is applicable. Often, shear heads or drop panels are necessitated for corner columns to overcome too large a required thickness of the slab. As the serviceability tabulated values in Table 11.3 for minimum thickness of slabs apply only to the interior column zones, to be augmented by 10–15% for end columns and almost 50% for corner columns, they indirectly take into account the above stipulations for choosing trial slab thickness based on augmenting V_c, as was done at the outset in basing the choice of the slab thickness on augmenting the Table 11.3 value by 10 percent.

Exterior column: Include weight of exterior wall, assuming its service weight to be 270 plf. Net factored perimetric shear force is

$$V_u = \left[18 \times \left(\frac{24}{2} + \frac{18}{2 \times 12}\right) - \frac{(18 + 4.50)(20 + 9.0)}{144}\right]274$$

$$+ \left(18 - \frac{20}{12}\right) \times 270 \times 1.2 = 66{,}933 \text{ lb} \qquad V_n = \frac{66{,}933}{0.75} = 89{,}244 \text{ lb}$$

Consider the line of action of V_u to be at the column face LM in Figure 11.13 for shear moment transfer to the centroidal plane c–c. This approximation is adequate since V_u acts *perimetrically* around the column faces and not along line AB only. From Figure 11.13,

$$A_c = d(2c_1 + c_2 + 2d) = 9.0(2 \times 18 + 20 + 18) = 9 \times 74$$
$$= 666 \text{ in.}^2 \ (429{,}700 \text{ mm}^2)$$

Available nominal shear V_c is the least of

$$V_c = \left(2 + \frac{4}{\beta}\right)\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}b_0 d = \left(2 + \frac{4}{20/18}\right)\sqrt{4000} \times 666 = 235{,}881 \text{ lb } (1.05 \times 10^3 \text{ kN})$$

or

$$V_c = \left(\frac{\alpha_s d}{b_0} + 2\right)\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}b_0 d = \left(\frac{30 \times 9}{74} + 2\right)\sqrt{4000} \times 666 = 237{,}930 \text{ lb } (1.06 \times 10^3 \text{ kN})$$

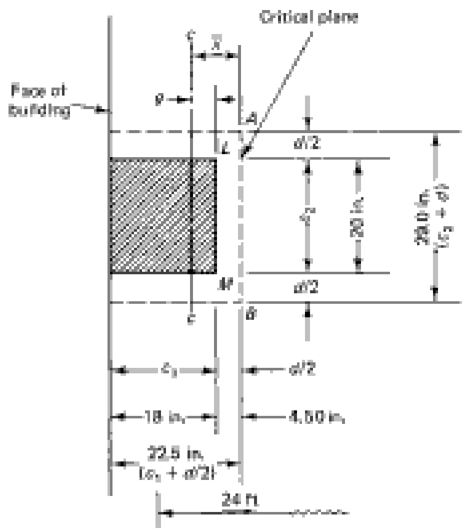


Figure 11.13 Centroidal axis for shear moment transfer in Ex. 11.1 end column (line A–A or 1–1, Fig. 11.11).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

2. *Summary of moments in middle strip (ft-lb)*

$$\text{interior column negative } M_n = \frac{54{,}230}{0.9} = 60{,}256$$

$$\text{midspan positive } M_n = \frac{64{,}457}{0.9} = 71{,}619$$

$$\text{exterior column negative } M_u = 0$$

3. *Design of reinforcement for column strip*

$$-M_n = 180{,}769 \text{ ft-lb acts on a strip width of } 2(0.25 \times 18) = 9.0 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{unit } -M_n \text{ per 12-in.-wide strip} = \frac{180{,}769 \times 12}{9.0} = 241{,}025 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{unit } +M_n = \frac{107{,}428 \times 12}{9.0} = 143{,}427 \text{ in.-lb/12-in.-wide strip}$$

minimum A_s for two-way plates using $f_y = 60{,}000$-psi steel $= 0.0018bh$

$$= 0.0018 \times 10 \times 12 = 0.216 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ per 12-in. strip}$$

Negative steel:

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad 241{,}025 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(9.0 - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

Assume that moment arm $d - a/2 = 0.9d$ for first trial and $d = h - \frac{3}{4}$ in. $- \frac{1}{2}$ diameter of bar $= 9.0$ in. for all practical purposes. Therefore,

$$A_s = \frac{241{,}025}{60{,}000 \times 0.9 \times 9.0} = 0.50 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{0.50 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4000 \times 12} = 0.74 \text{ in.}$$

For the second trial-and-adjustment cycle,

$$241{,}025 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(9.0 - \frac{0.74}{2}\right)$$

Therefore, required A_s per 12-in.-wide strip $= 0.47$ in.^{2} Try No. 5 bars (area per bar $= 0.305$ in.^{2}).

$$\text{spacing } s = \frac{\text{area of one bar}}{\text{required } A_s \text{ per 12-in. strip}}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{array}{c} s \text{ for negative moment} \\ \text{(No. 5 bars)} \end{array} = \frac{0.305}{0.47/12} = 7.79 \text{ in. c-c (194 mm)}$$

$$s \text{ for positive moment} = 7.79 \times \frac{241{,}025}{143{,}237} = 13.11 \text{ in. c-c (326 mm)}$$

The maximum allowable spacing $= 2h = 2 \times 10 = 20$ in. (508 mm). Try No. 4 bars for positive moment ($A_s = 0.20$ in.^{2}).

$$A_s = \frac{143{,}237}{241{,}025} \times 0.47 = 0.28 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ per 12-in. strip}$$

$$\text{minimum temperature reinforcement} = 0.0018\,bh = 0.0018 \times 12 \times 10$$

$$= 0.216 \text{ in.}^2\text{/ft} < 0.28 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$s = \frac{0.20}{0.28/12} = 8.57 \text{ in. c-c (218 mm)}$$

For an external negative moment, use No. 4 bars.

$$\text{Moment} = \frac{89{,}523 \times 12}{9.0} = 119{,}364 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$s = 8.57 \times \frac{143{,}237}{119{,}364} = 10.28 \text{ in. c-c}$$

Use 14 No. 5 bars at $7\frac{1}{2}$ in. center to center for negative moment at interior column side, 12 No. 4 bars at $8\frac{1}{2}$ in. center to center for positive moment; and 10 No. 4 bars at 10 in. center to center for the exterior negative moment M_u with 8 of these bars to be placed outside the shear moment transfer band width 50 in., as seen in Figure 11.14(b).

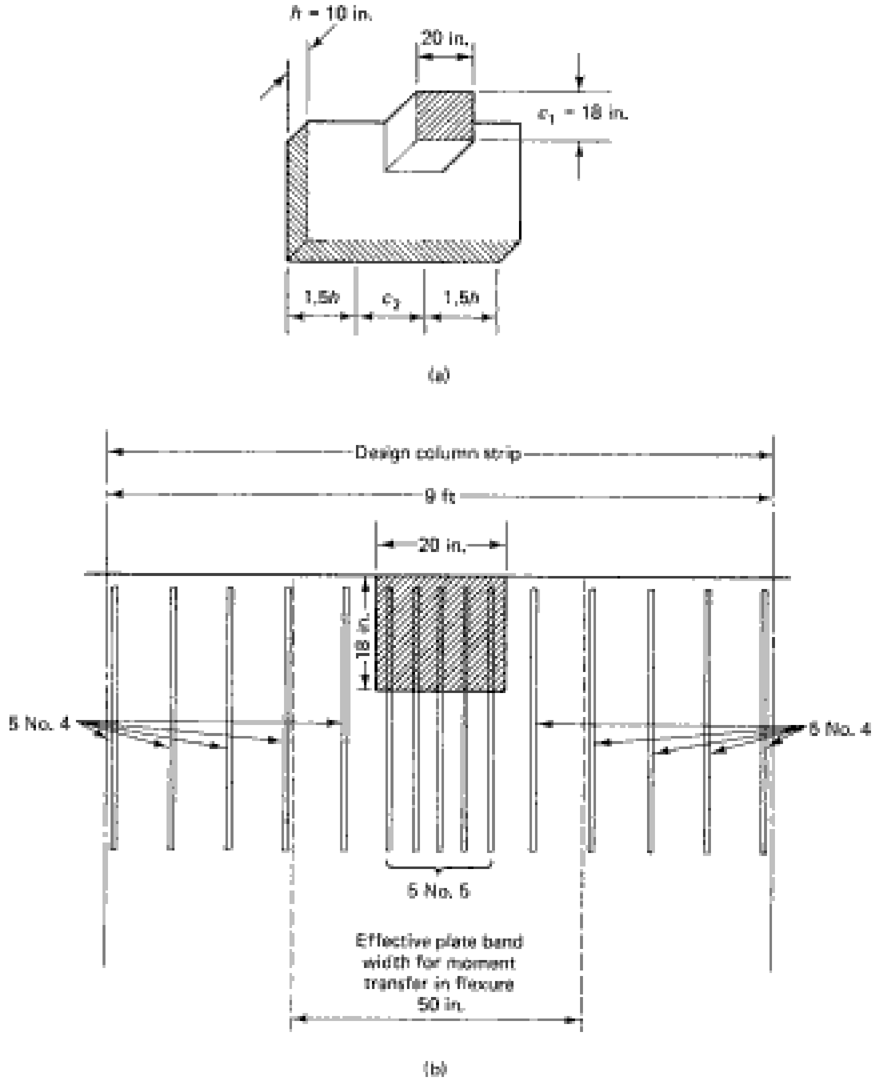


Figure 11.14 Shear moment transfer zone: (a) effective bandwidth; (b) reinforcing details.

4. *Design of reinforcement for middle strip*

$$\text{unit } -M_n = \frac{54{,}230}{0.9} = 60{,}256 \text{ acting on a strip width of } 18.0 - 9.0 = 9.0 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{unit } -M \text{ per 12-in.-width strip} = \frac{60{,}276 \times 12}{9} = 80{,}341 \text{ lb-in.}$$

$$80{,}341 = A_s \times 60{,}000(9.0 \times 0.9)$$

$$A_s = 0.17 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad a = \frac{0.17 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4000 \times 12} = 0.25 \text{ in.}$$

Second cycle:

$$80{,}341 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(9.0 - \frac{0.25}{2}\right)$$

$$A_s = 0.15 \text{ in.}^2/\text{12-in. strip} \qquad \text{minimum } A_s = 0.216$$

$$\text{use } A_s = 0.216 \text{ in.}^2/\text{12-in. strip}$$

Try No. 3 bars ($A_s = 0.11$ in.^{2} per bar).

$$\text{unit } +M = \frac{64{,}457 \times 12}{9 \times 0.9} = 95{,}492 \text{ in.-lb per 12-in. strip}$$

$$A_s = \frac{95{,}492}{60{,}000 \times 8.875} = 0.18 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad \text{use minimum } A_s = 0.216 \text{ in.}^2/\text{12 in.}$$

Hence use negative and positive steel spacing $s = 0.11/(0.216/12) = 6.11$ in. (No. 3 at 6 in. center to center). Use No. 3 bars at 6 in. center to center for both the negative moment and positive moments.

(b) N–S direction (short span): The same procedure has to be followed as for the E–W direction. The width of the column strip on one side of the column $= 0.25l_1 = 0.25 \times 24 = 6$ ft, which is greater than $0.25l_2 = 4.5$ ft; hence a width of 4.5 ft controls. The total width of the column strip in the N–S direction $= 2 \times 4.5 = 9.0$ ft. The width of the middle strip $= 24.0 - 9.0 = 15.0$ ft. Also, the effective depth d_2 would be smaller: $d_2 = (h - \frac{3}{4}\text{-in. cover} - 0.5 \text{ in.} - 0.5/2) = 8.5$ in. The moment values and the bar size and distribution for the panel in the N–S direction as well as the E–W directions are listed in Table 11.6. It is recommended for crack-control pur-

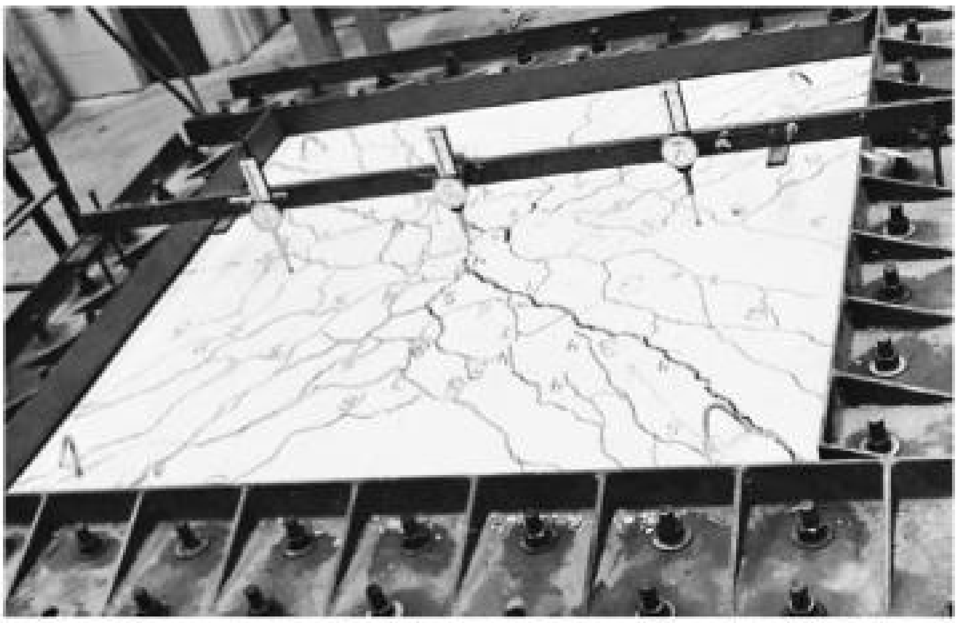


Photo 11.5 Flexural cracking in restrained one-panel reinforced concrete slab. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

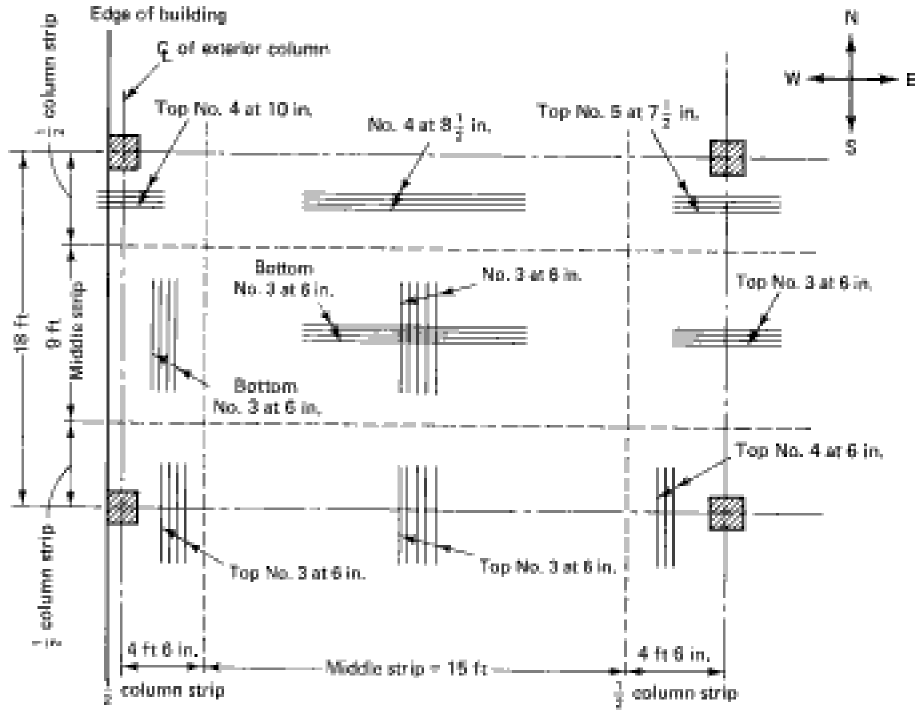


Figure 11.15 Schematic reinforcement distribution.

poses that a minimum of No. 3 bars at 12 in. center to center be used and that bar spacing not exceed 12 in. center to center. In this case, the minimum reinforcement required by the ACI Code for slabs reinforced with f_y = 60,000-psi steel = 0.0018 bh = No. 3 at 6½ in. on centers. Space at 6 in. on centers.

The choice of size and spacing of the reinforcement is a matter of engineering judgment. As an example, the designer could have chosen for the positive moment in the middle strip No. 4 bars at 12 in. center to center, instead of No. 3 bars at 6 in. center to center, as long as the maximum permissible spacing is not exceeded and practicable bar sizes are used for the middle strip.

The placing of the reinforcement is schematically shown in Figure 11.15. The minimum cutoff of reinforcement for bond requirements in flat-plate floors is given in Figure 11.16. The exterior panel negative steel at outer edges, if no edge beams are used, has to be bent into full hooks in order to ensure sufficient anchorage of the reinforcement. The floor reinforcement plan gives the E–W steel for panel AB23 and N–S steel for panel BC12 of Figure 11.11.

11.5.3 Example 11.2: Design of Two-way Slab on Beams by Direct Design Method (DDM)

A two-story factory building is three panels by three panels in plan, monolithically supported on beams. Each panel is 18 ft (5.49 m) center to center in the N–S direction and 24 ft (7.32 m) center to center in the E–W direction, as shown in Figure 11.17(a). The clear height between the floors is 16 ft. The dimensions of the supporting beams and columns are also shown in Fig. 11.16, and the building is subject to gravity loads only. Given:

$$\text{live load} = 135 \text{ psf } (6.40 \text{ kPa})$$
$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

Assume that β_t = 2.5

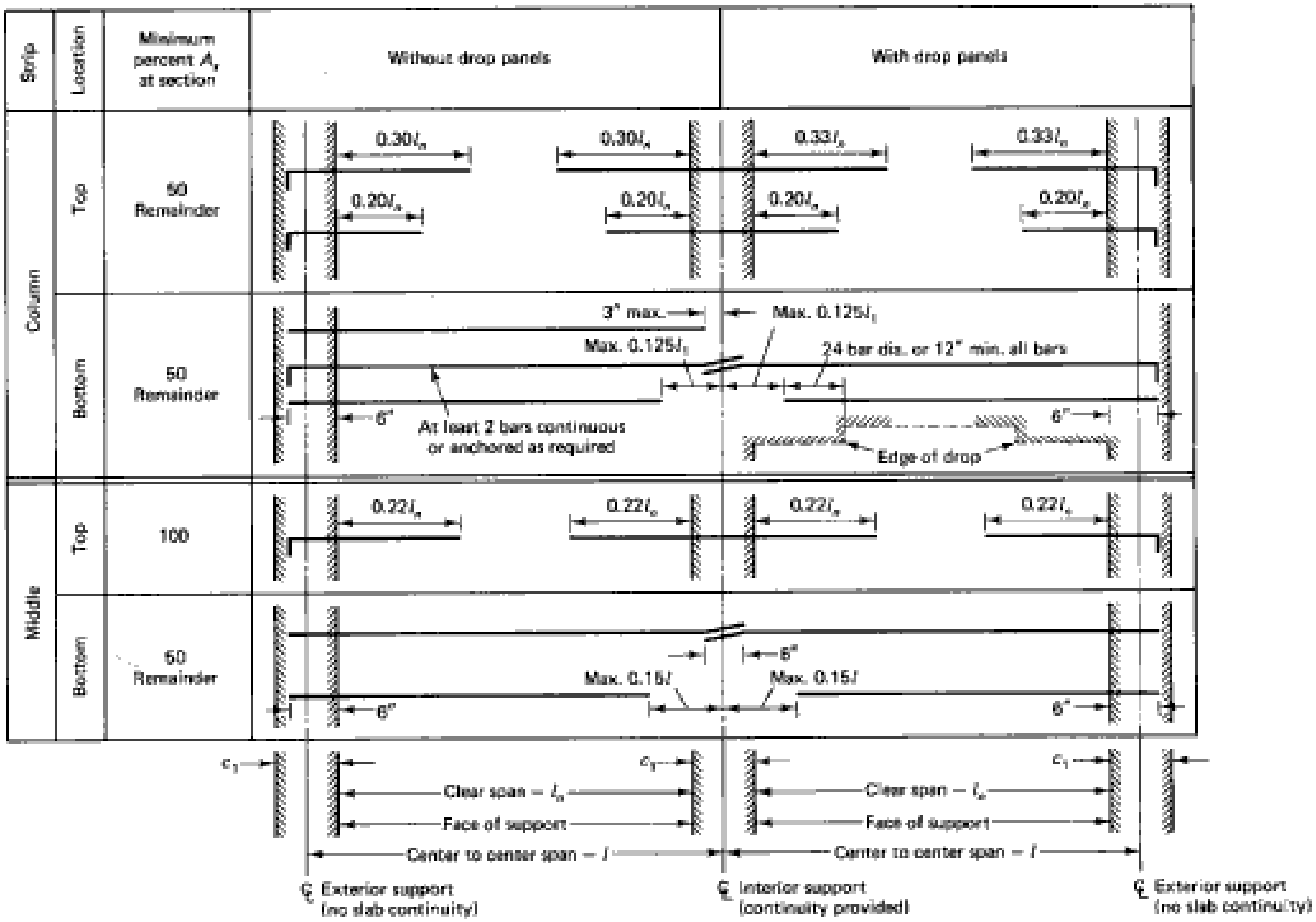


Figure 11.16 Minimum extensions for reinforcement in slabs without beams.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

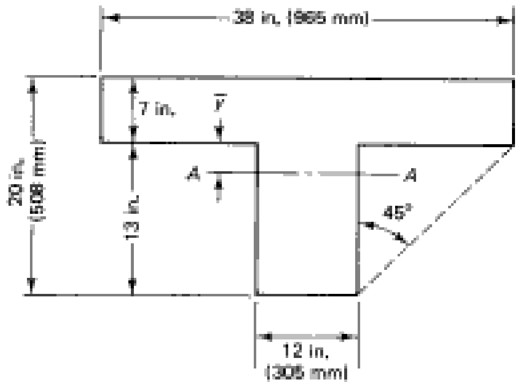


Figure 11.17(b) Effective flanged beam section.

To check h from Eq. 11.9, the stiffness ratio α_{m} is needed. Since this is an interior panel, the end and corner adjacent panel would necessitate larger thickness. Try $h = 7$ in.

To locate the beam centroid for the section in Figure 11.17(b),

$$(38 \times 7)(\bar{y} + 3.5) + \frac{12(\bar{y}^2)}{2} = \frac{12(13 - \bar{y})^2}{2}$$

$$\bar{y} = 0.20 \text{ in.}$$

$$I_b = \frac{1}{3} \times 12(0.20)^3 + \frac{1}{12} \times 38(7)^3 + 38 \times 7(0.20 + 3.5)^2 + \frac{1}{3} \times 12(13 - 0.20)^3 = 13{,}116.4 \text{ in.}^4$$

$I_s = h^3/12 \times$ width of slab bound laterally by the center line of the adjacent panel on each side of the beam section shown in Figure 11.17(a)

$$I_{s1}\,(\text{N–S}) = \frac{(7)^3}{12} \times 24 \times 12 = 8232 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$I_{s2}\,(\text{E–W}) = \frac{(7)^3}{12} \times 18 \times 12 = 6174 \text{ in.}^4$$

Therefore,

$$\alpha f_1 = \frac{13{,}116.4}{8232} = 1.59 \qquad \alpha_2 = \frac{13{,}116.4}{6174} = 2.12$$

$$\alpha f_m = \frac{1.59 \times 2 + 2.12 \times 2}{4} = 1.86$$

From Eq. 11.9,

$$h = \frac{l_n(0.8 + f_y/200{,}000)}{36 + 5\beta[\alpha_m - 0.2]}$$

$$= \frac{272(0.8 + 60{,}000/200{,}000)}{36 + 5 \times 1.35[1.86 - 0.2]} = 6.29 \text{ in. (16 cm)}$$

Minimum h in this case from Eq. 11.9 = 6.29 in. Therefore, for deflection, use $h = 7$ in. (17.8 cm) assumed in the design.

Statical moment computation (steps 3 to 5)

Given the flooring weighs 14 psf.

$$w_u = 1.2D + 1.6L$$

$$= 1.2\left(\frac{7}{12} \times 150 + 14\right) + 1.6 \times 135 = 338 \text{ psf}$$

$$\text{E–W } l_{n1} = 272 \text{ in.} = 22.7 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{N–S } l_{n2} = 200 \text{ in.} = 16.7 \text{ ft}$$

$$0.65l_1 = 15.6 \text{ ft} \qquad \text{use } l_{n1} = 22.7 \text{ ft}$$

$$0.65l_2 = 11.7 \text{ ft} \qquad \text{use } l_{n2} = 16.7 \text{ ft}$$

(a) *E–W direction*

$$M_0 = \frac{w_u l_2 l_{n1}^2}{8} = \frac{338 \times 18.0(22.7)^2}{8} = 391{,}878 \text{ lb-ft (532 kN-m)}$$

Moment distribution factors for interior panels from Fig. 11.5 are

$$-M_u = 0.65M_0 = 0.65 \times 391{,}878 = 254{,}720 \text{ lb-ft}$$
$$+M_u = 0.35M_0 = 0.35 \times 391{,}878 = 137{,}157 \text{ lb-ft}$$

(b) *N–S direction*

$$M_0 = \frac{w_u l_1 l_{n2}^2}{8} = \frac{338 \times 24.0(16.7)^2}{8} = 282{,}794 \text{ lb-ft (384 kN-m)}$$

Moment distribution factors for interior panel from Figure 11.5 or Table 11.1 are

$$-M_u = 0.65M_0 = 0.65 \times 282{,}794 = 183{,}816 \text{ lb-ft (249 kN-m)}$$

$$+M_u = 0.35M_0 = 0.35 \times 282{,}794 = 98{,}978 \text{ lb-ft (134 kN-m)}$$

Moment distribution in the column and middle strips (steps 5 to 7)

(a) *E–W stiffness ratio (long span)*

$$\alpha_f = \frac{E_{cb}I_{b2}}{E_{cs}I_{s2}} = \frac{13{,}116}{6174} = 2.12$$

$$\frac{l_2}{l_1} = \frac{18}{24} = 0.75 \qquad \alpha\frac{l_2}{l_1} = 1.59 > 1.0$$

Moment factors for the column strip for this panel from the factored moment coefficient for the column strip of an interior panel (Section 11.4.2, interior panels and positive moments) are linearly interpolated to give the following:

$$-M: \quad 0.75 + \frac{0.90 - 0.75}{2} = 0.83$$

$$+M: \quad 0.75 + \frac{0.90 - 0.75}{2} = 0.83$$

(b) *N–S stiffness ratio* α

$$\alpha_f = \frac{E_{cb}I_{b1}}{E_{cs}I_{s1}} = \frac{13{,}116.4}{8232} = 1.59$$

$$\frac{l_2}{l_1} = \frac{24}{18} = 1.33 \qquad \alpha\frac{l_2}{l_1} = 2.12 > 1.0$$

Hence moment factors are in this case using the same tables by linear interpolation.

$$-M: \quad 0.75 - (0.75 - 0.45)\frac{1}{3} = 0.65$$

$$+M: \quad 0.75 - (0.75 - 0.45)\frac{1}{3} = 0.65$$

The distributed moments are then evaluated using the interpolated factors above to produce a moment distribution operations table (Table 11.7). Note from this table that the stiffness ratio of the slab to the supporting beams for the span ratio in this example has resulted in middle strip moments in the N–S direction larger than the moments in the E–W direction.

Check slab thickness for shear capacity

$$\alpha f_1 \frac{l_2}{l_1} = 1.59 > 1.0$$

Hence shear will be transferred to the beams surrounding the slab according to a tributary area bound by 45° lines drawn from the corners of the panel and the center line of the panel parallel to the long side.

The largest part of the load has to be carried in the short direction with the largest value at the face of the first interior support. The factored shear on a 12-in.-wide strip spanning in the short direction can be approximated as

$$V_u = 1.15\frac{w_u l_{n2}}{2} = \frac{1.15 \times 338.0(16.7 \times 12)}{2 \times 12} = 3246 \text{ lb/ft width}$$

where the value 1.15 is the continuity factor.

$$\text{slab effective } d = 7 - 0.75 - 0.25 = 6.0 \text{ in. (152 mm)}$$

$$\phi V_c = \phi(2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,bd)$$

$$= 0.75 \times 2\sqrt{4000} \times 12 \times 6 = 6831 \text{ lb}$$

$$V_u < \phi V_c \qquad \text{hence safe}$$

Proportioning of the slab reinforcement (steps 7 and 8)

Minimum A_s using f_y = 60,000-psi steel is $0.0018bh$ or minimum $A_s = 0.0018 \times 12 \times 7 = 0.15$ in.^{2}/12-in. strip. For No. 3 steel, $s = 0.11/(0.15/12) = 8.8$ in. on centers; use No. 3 at $8\frac{1}{2}$ in.

Table 11.7 Moment Distribution Operations Table

Column Strip	E–W Direction l_2/l_1: 18/24 = 0.75; $\alpha_1(l_2/l_1)$: 2.12 × 0.75 = 1.59 — Negative Moment	Positive Moment	N–S Direction 24/18 = 1.33; 1.59 × 1.33 = 2.12 — Negative Moment	Positive Moment
M_u (ft-lb)	254,720	137,157	183,816	92,978
Distribution factor (%)	83	83	65	65
Total column strip design moment (ft-lb)	211,418	113,840	119,480	60,436
Beam moment, 85%	179,705	96,764	101,558	51,371
Column strip slab moment (ft-lb)	31,713	17,076	17,922	9,065
Total middle strip design moment (ft-lb)	254,720 × 0.17 = 43,403	137,157 × 0.17 = 23,317	183,816 × 0.35 = 64,336	92,978 × 0.35 = 32,542

center to center. As was done in Ex. 11.1, the moments per 12-in.-wide strip have to be evaluated.

(a) E–W direction

Column strip

$$-M_n = \frac{31{,}713}{\phi = 0.9} = 35{,}237$$

$$0.25 l_2 = 0.25 \times 18 \text{ ft} = 4.5 \text{ ft} < 0.25 \times 24 \text{ ft}$$

Hence the half column strip = 4.5 ft controls. The net width of the slab in the column strip on which moments act = 2 × 4.5 – 38 in./12 = 5.83 ft.

$$\text{required unit } - M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{35{,}237 \times 12}{5.83} = 75{,}529 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{required unit } + M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{17{,}076 \times 12}{0.9 \times 5.83} = 39{,}053 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Middle strip

$$\text{width of strip} = 18 - 9.0 = 9.0 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{required unit } - M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{43{,}403 \times 12}{0.9 \times 9.0} = 64{,}301 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{required unit } + M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{23{,}317 \times 12}{0.9 \times 9.0} = 35{,}544 \text{ in.-lb}$$

(b) N–S direction (short span): From before, the maximum allowable width of the half column strip = 4.5 ft.

Column strip

net width of slab in column strip on which moments act = 2 × 4.5 – 38/12 = 5.83 ft.

$$\text{required unit } - M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{17{,}922 \times 12}{0.9 \times 5.83} = 40{,}988 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{required unit } + M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{9065 \times 12}{0.9 \times 5.83} = 20{,}732 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Middle strip

$$\text{width of strip} = 24 - 9.0 = 15.0 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{required unit } - M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{64{,}336 \times 12}{0.9 \times 15.0} = 57{,}188 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{required unit } + M \text{ per 12-in. strip} = \frac{32{,}542 \times 12}{0.9 \times 15.0} = 28{,}926 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Selection of size and spacing of reinforcement (step 9)

The maximum unit moment in the negative moment region of the column strip in the E–W direction = 72,529 in.-lb per 12-in.-wide strip.

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2} \right)$$

Hence

$$72{,}529 = A_s \times 60{,}000 \, (= 0.9d)$$

$$A_s = \frac{72{,}529}{60{,}000 \times 0.9 \times 6.0} = 0.22 \text{ in.}^2$$

Table 11.8 Column and Middle Strip Calculations

	Column Strip				Middle Strip			
	Support		Midspan		Support		Midspan	
Direction	$\frac{A_s}{12\text{ in.}}$	Bar Size and Spacing (in. c-c)	$\frac{A_s}{12\text{ in.}}$	Bar Size and Spacing (in. c-c)[a]	$\frac{A_s}{12\text{ in.}}$	Bar Size and Spacing (in. c-c)	$\frac{A_s}{12\text{ in.}}$	Bar Size and Spacing (in. c-c)[a]
E–W ($d = 6.0$)	0.21	No. 4 at 11	0.11	No. 3 at $8\frac{1}{2}$	0.19	No. 4 at 12	0.10	No. 3 at $8\frac{1}{2}$
N–S ($d = 5.5$)	0.14	No. 3 at 9	0.06	No. 3 at $8\frac{1}{2}$	0.20	No. 4 at 12	0.11	No. 3 at $8\frac{1}{2}$

[a]Maximum spacing of bars should not exceed 12-in. center to center for crack control.

Adjustment trial

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{0.22 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 4000 \times 12} = 0.32 \text{ in.}$$

Hence

$$72{,}529 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(6.0 - \frac{0.32}{2}\right)$$

Therefore, required $A_s = 0.21$ in.^{2} per 12-in. strip. Try No. 4 bars (0.20 in.^{2}) (12.7-mm diameter)

$$s = \frac{\text{area of one bar}}{\text{required area per 12-in. strip}} = \frac{0.20}{0.21/12} = 11.43 \text{ in. c-c}$$

Hence, use No. 4 bars at 11 in. center to center (12.7-mm diameter at 280 mm center to center).

In the same manner, calculate the area of steel needed in each direction for both the column and middle strips (Table 11.8). Note that the effective depth d in the N–S direction would be $= 7.0 - (0.75 + 0.5 + 0.25) = 5.5$ in. since it is assumed in this design that the E–W grid of reinforcement is closest to the concrete surface.

Compare the reinforcement areas obtained in this example with those of Ex. 11.1 in conjunction with the discussion in Section 11.2.1 on two-way action and moment redistribution as a function of stiffness ratios. It should be noted that, when the slab or plate panel is either supported on flexible supports or on columns only, the moments are not necessarily more severe in the shorter direction.

Carry the reinforcement at the same spacing for each respective strip up to the webs of the supporting beams. Also, as the next step, design (analyze) the supporting beams in the usual manner as discussed in Chapter 5.

More refinements could have been obtained using the equivalent frame method for moment calculations. Also, for cases where limitations exist, such as horizontal loads and others discussed in Section 11.3.1, the equivalent frame method would have to be used for moment calculations.

11.6 EQUIVALENT FRAME METHOD FOR FLOOR SLAB DESIGN

11.6.1 Applicability

The equivalent frame method for the design of two-way slab and plate systems is a more rigorous form of the direct design method presented in Sections 11.3 and 11.4. It differs only in the means of determining the longitudinal variation of bending moments along the design frame such that it would be applicable to a wide range of applications. Its main features can be summarized in the following:

1. Moments are distributed to critical sections by an elastic analysis such as moment distribution, rather than by general factors. Pattern loadings have to be considered for the most critical loading conditions.
2. There are no limitations on dimensions or loadings.
3. Contrary to the simplifications in the direct design method, variations in the moment of inertia along the axes of members have to be considered, such as the effects of column capitals.
4. Effects of lateral loading can be accounted for in the analysis.
5. In contrast to the direct design method, use of a computer facilitates the analysis in this method through evaluation of the various stiffnesses.
6. Because of the refinement possible in its use, the total statical moment need not exceed the statical moment M_0 required by the direct design method.

11.6.2 Stiffness Coefficients

The structure, divided into continuous frames as shown in Figure 11.3 for frames in both orthogonal directions, would have the row of columns and a wide continuous beam (slab) *ABCD*. Each floor is analyzed separately whereby the columns are assumed fixed at the floors above and below. To satisfy statics and equilibrium, each equivalent frame must carry the total applied load. Alternate span loading has to be used for the worst live-load condition.

It is necessary to account for the rotational resistance of the column at the joint when running a moment relaxation or distribution except when the columns are very slender, with very low rigidity compared to the rigidity of the slab at the joint. In such cases, such as in lift slab construction, only a continuous beam is necessary. A schematic illustration of the constituent elements of the equivalent frame is given in Figure 11.18. The slab strips are assumed to be supported by transverse slabs. The column provides a resisting torque M_T equivalent to the applied torsional moment intensity m_t. The exterior ends of the slab strip rotate *more* than the central section because of the torsional deformation. To account for this rotation and deformation, the actual column and the transverse slab strip are replaced by an *equivalent* column, such that the flexibility of the equivalent column is *equal* to the *sum* of the flexibilities of the actual column and the slab strip. This assumption is represented as follows:

$$\frac{1}{K_{ec}} = \frac{1}{\Sigma K_c} + \frac{1}{K_t} \tag{11.12}$$

where K_{ec} = flexural stiffness of the equivalent column, moment per unit rotation
ΣK_c = sum of flexural stiffnesses of the upper and lower columns at the joint, moment per unit rotation
K_t = torsional stiffness of the torsional beam, moment per unit rotation

Alternatively, the flexibility equation 11.11 can be written as a stiffness equation

$$K_{ec} = \frac{\Sigma K_c}{1 + \Sigma K_c/K_t} \tag{11.13}$$

The column stiffness for an equivalent frame (Ref. 11.7) can be defined as

$$K_c = \frac{EI}{l}\left[1 + 3\left(\frac{t}{l}\right)^2\right] \tag{11.14a}$$

Hidden page

$$K_s = \frac{4E_{cs}I_s}{L_n - c_1/2} \tag{11.16}$$

As the effective stiffness K_{ec} of the column and the slab stiffness K_s are established, the analysis of the equivalent frame can be performed by any applicable methods, such as relaxation or moment distribution. The distribution factor for fixed-end moment (FEM) is

$$\mathrm{DF} = \frac{K_s}{\Sigma K} \tag{11.17}$$

where $\Sigma K = K_{ec} + K_{s(\text{left})} + K_{s(\text{right})}$.

For carry-over factors, $\text{COF} = \frac{1}{2}$ can be used without loss of accuracy since the non-prismatic section causes only very small effects on fixed-end moments and carry-over factors. The fixed-end moments for a uniformly distributed load are $w_u l_2 (l_n)^2/12$ at the supports, such that after moment redistribution the sum of the negative distributed moment at the support and the midspan would always be equal to the static moment $M_0 = w_u l_2 (l_n)^2/8$. A moment redistribution factor in continuous panels can be applied as in Figure 5.7 for the equivalent frame design, provided that it does not exceed the smaller of 20 percent or $(1000\,\varepsilon_t)$ percent.

11.6.3 Pattern Loading of Spans

Loading all spans simultaneously does not necessarily produce the maximum positive and negative flexural stresses. Consequently, it is advisable to analyze the multispan frame also using alternate span loading patterns for the *live* load. For a three-span frame, the suggested patterns for the live load are as shown in Figure 11.19. The ACI Code, however, permits the full factored live load to be used on the entire slab system if the live load is less than 75% of the dead load.

11.6.4 Operational Flowchart for the Design (Analysis) of Two-way Floor Slabs by the Equivalent Frame Method

The flowchart for this procedure is shown in Figure 11.20.

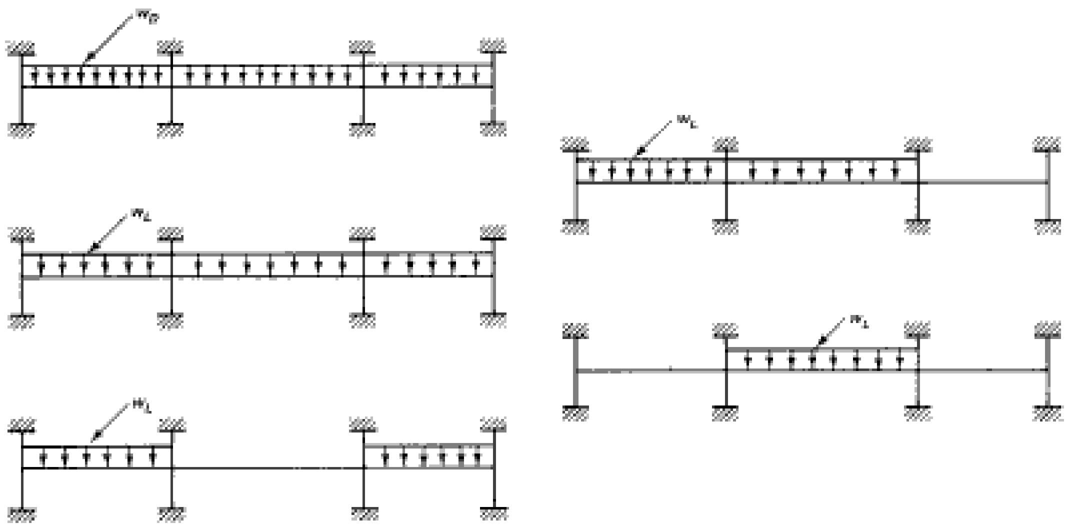


Figure 11.19 Loading patterns for live load.

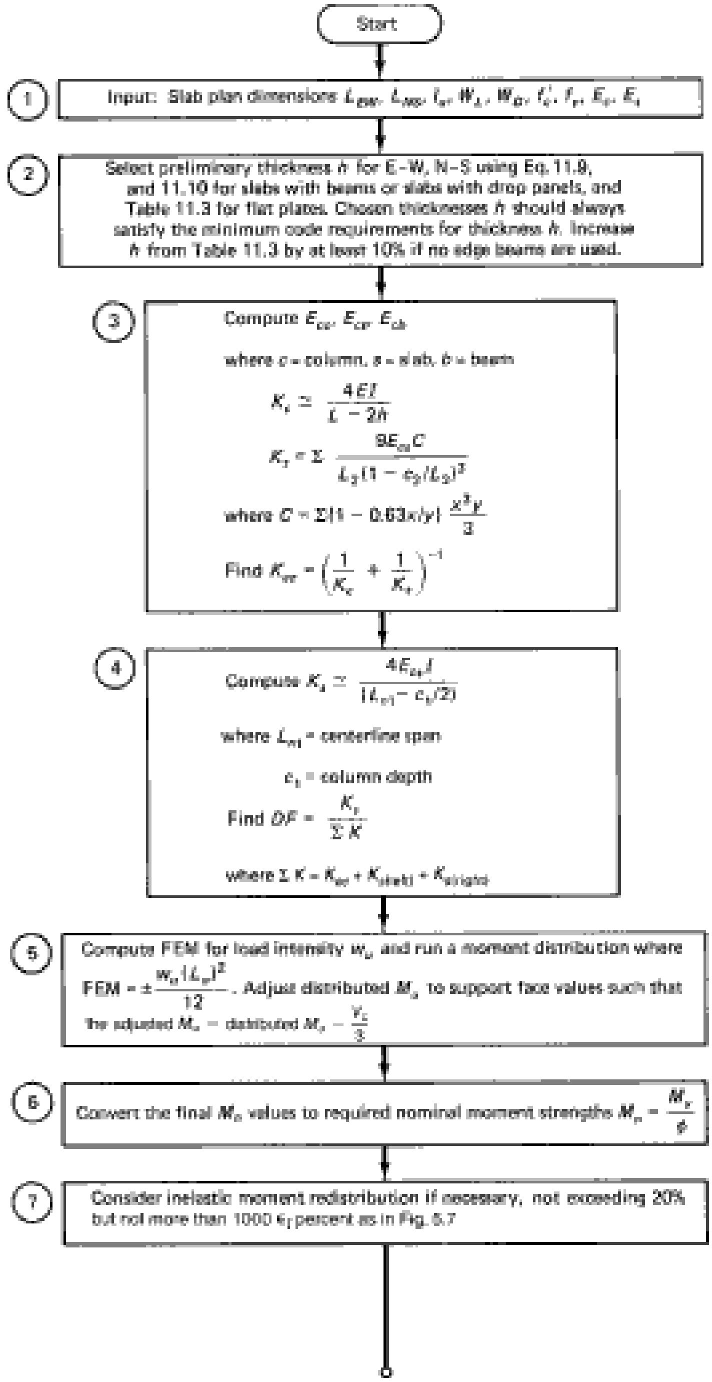


Figure 11.20 Flowchart for the design (analysis) of reinforced concrete two-way slabs and plates by the equivalent frame method.

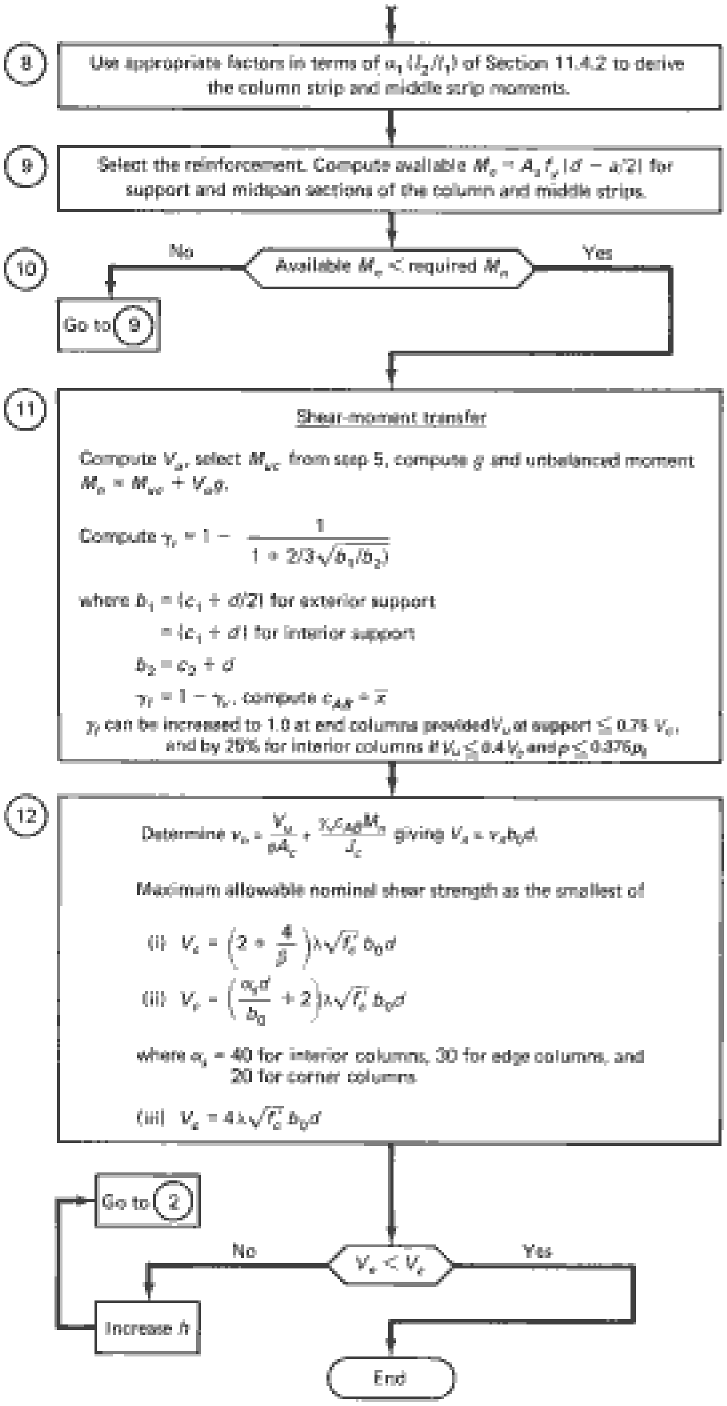


Figure 11.20 *Continued*

11.6.5 Example 11.3: Design of Flat Plate without End Beams by the Equivalent Frame Method (EFM)

A reinforced concrete flat-plate apartment floor system without end beams and without drop panels is shown in Figure 11.21. The end panel center-line dimensions are 17′-6″ × 20′-0″ (5.33 m × 6.10 m) and the interior panel dimensions are 24′-0″ × 20′-0″ (7.32 m × 6.10 m). The floor heights l_n of intermediate floors are typically 8′-9″ (2.67 m). Evaluate the required nominal moment strengths M_n for a typical floor panel in the north–south direction to withstand a working live load w_L = 60 psf (2.87 kPa) and a superimposed dead load w_D = 16 psf due to

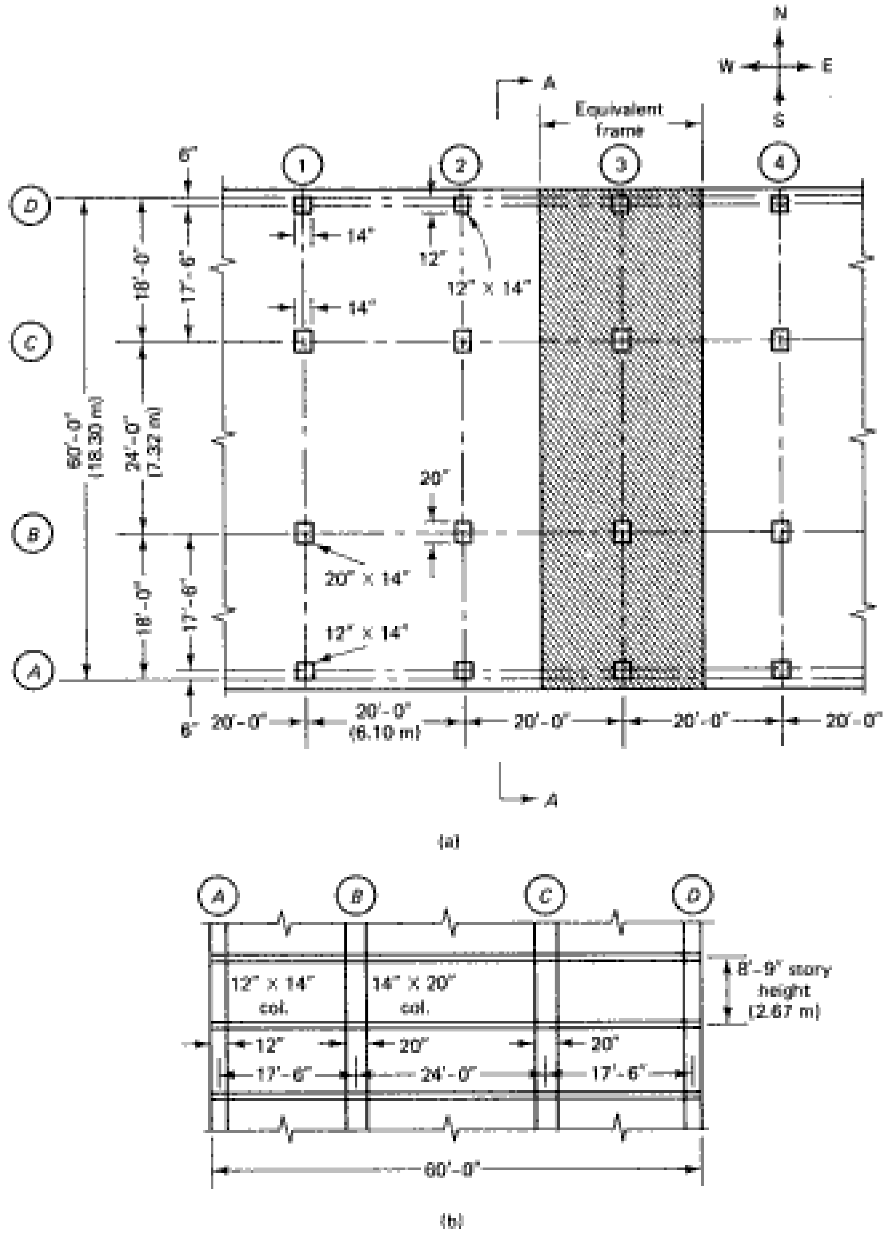


Figure 11.21 Flat-plate apartment structure (a) plan; (b) section A–A, N–S.

partitions and flooring. Assume that all panels are simultaneously loaded by the live load in your solution. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa) normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

Solution: *Equivalent frame characteristics*

Deflection thickness check: From Table 11.3, the minimum thickness h for interior panels using steel having $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi and without drop panels is

$$h = \frac{l_n}{33} \text{ for interior panels}$$

$$l_n = \text{clear span} = 24 \text{ ft less } 20 \text{ in.} = 22.33 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{required } h = \frac{22.33}{33} \times 12 = 8.12 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{say } 8.25 \text{ in. (21.0 cm)}$$

Thickness of exterior panel without edge beams $= l_n/30$ to be increased at discontinuous edges by at least 10%. Exterior panel $l_n = 20'\,0'' - 14$ in. $= 18.82$ ft. $h = 18.82/30 \times 12 \times 1.10 = 8.28$ in. Use $h = 8.25$ in. (21 cm) for all panels of the floor system.

Take the equivalent frame in the N–S direction whose plan is shown in the shaded portion in Figure 11.21.

$$w_u = 1.2\left(\frac{8.25}{12} \times 150 + 16\right) + 1.6 \times 60 = 240 \text{ psf}$$

Approximate flexural stiffness of column above and below the floor joint (moment per unit rotation), from Eq. 11.14, is

$$K_c = \frac{4E_cI_c}{L_u - 2h} \qquad \text{where column height } L = 8'\text{-}9'' = 105 \text{ in.}$$

(a) Exterior column (14 in. × 12 in.) stiffness

$$b = 14 \text{ in.} \qquad I_c = \frac{14(12)^3}{12} = 2016 \text{ in.}^4$$

Assume that $E_{col}/E_{slab} = E_{cc}/E_{cs} = 1.0$. Use $E_{cc} = E_{cr} = 1.0$ in the calculations as E_{cs} drops out in the equation for K_{ec}.

$$\text{total } K_c = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 2016}{105 - (2 \times 8.25)} \times 2 \text{ (for top and bottom columns)}$$

$$= 182.2 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cc}$$

Torsional constant C from Eq. 11.15 is

$$C = \Sigma\left(1 - 0.63\frac{x}{y}\right)\frac{x^3y}{3}$$

$$= \left(1 - 0.63 \times \frac{8.25}{12}\right)(8.25)^3 \times \frac{12}{3} = 1273$$

Torsional stiffness of the slab at the column line is

$$K_t = \Sigma\frac{9E_{cs}C}{L_2[1 - (c_2/L_2)]^3}$$

$$= \frac{9 \times 1 \times 1273}{20 \times 12\,[1 - 14/(12 \times 20)]^3}$$

$$= 57.1 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cr}$$

From Eq. 11.12, the equivalent column stiffness is

$$K_{ec} = \left(\frac{1}{K_c} + \frac{1}{K_t}\right)^{-1} = \left(\frac{1}{182.2} + \frac{1}{57.2}\right)^{-1} = 43.5 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

(b) Interior column (14 in. × 20 in.) stiffness

$$b = 14 \text{ in.} \qquad I = \frac{14(20)^3}{12} = 9333 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\text{total } K_c = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 9333}{105 - 2 \times 8.25} \times 2 = 843.7 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

$$C = (1 - 0.63 \times 8.25/20) \times (8.25)^3 \times 20/3 = 2770$$

$$K_t = \frac{9 \times 2770}{20 \times 12[1 - 14/(12 \times 20)]^3} + \frac{9 \times 2770}{20 \times 12[1 - 14/(12 \times 20)]^3}$$
$$= 248.8 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

$$K_{ec} = \left(\frac{1}{843.7} + \frac{1}{248.8}\right)^{-1} = 192.1 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

(c) Slab stiffness

$$h = 8.25 \text{ in.}$$

From Eq. 11.16,

$$K_s = \frac{4E_{cs}I_s}{L_n - c_1/2}$$

where L_n = center-line span
c_1 = column depth

Slab band width in E–W direction = 20/2 + 20/2 = 20 ft.

$$I_s = 20 \times \frac{12(8.25)^3}{12} = 11{,}230 \text{ in.}^4$$

Slab at right of exterior column *A*:

$$K_s = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 20(8.25)^3}{12 \times 17.5 - 12/2} = 220.2 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

Slab at left of interior column *B*:

$$K_s = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 20(8.25)^3}{12 \times 17.5 - 20/2} = 224.6 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

Slab at right of interior column *B*:

$$K_s = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 20(8.25)^3}{12 \times 24 - 20/2} = 161.6 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

From Eq. 11.17, slab distribution factor at joints: DF = $K_s/\Sigma K$, where

$$\Sigma K = K_{ec} + K_{s(\text{left})} + K_{s(\text{right})}$$

Outer joint *A* slab:

$$\text{DF} = \frac{220.2}{43.5 + 220.2} = 0.835$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

$$\text{required column face } M_u = 10{,}060 - \frac{1572.1 \times 12}{3}$$

$$= 10{,}060 - 6288 = 3772 \text{ in.-lb/ft } (1.40 \text{ kNm/m})$$

$$\text{required } -M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{3772}{0.9} = 4191 \text{ in.-lb/ft } (1.55 \text{ kNm/m})$$

Joint B (span BA) moment $-M_u$

$$\text{center line } M_u = 120{,}910 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$V_{BA} = 2100.0 + 527.9 = 2627.9 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$c = 20 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{required column face } M_u = 120{,}910 - \frac{2627.9 \times 20}{3}$$

$$= 120{,}910 - 17{,}519 = 103{,}391 \text{ in.-lb/ft } (38.3 \text{ kNm/m})$$

$$\text{required } -M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{103{,}391}{0.9} = 114{,}879 \text{ in.-lb/ft } (42.6 \text{ kNm/m})$$

Joint B (span BC) moment $-M_u$

$$\text{center line } M_u = 135{,}250 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$V_{BC} = \frac{240 \times 24}{2} = 2880 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$\text{required column face } -M_u = 135{,}250 - \frac{2880 \times 20}{3}$$

$$= 135{,}250 - 19{,}200 = 116{,}050 \text{ in.-lb/ft } (43.0 \text{ kNm/m})$$

$$\text{required } -M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{116{,}050}{0.9} = 128{,}944 \text{ in.-lb/ft } (47.8 \text{ kNm/m})$$

Span AB maximum positive moment $+M_u$: Assume that point of zero shear and maximum moment is x ft from face A.

$$x = \frac{V_{AB}}{w_u} = \frac{1572.1}{240} = 6.54 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{End } M_u \text{ at } A \text{ (Table 11.9)} = 10{,}060 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$\text{maximum } +M_u = V_{AB} \times x - \frac{w_u x^2}{2} - M_u$$

$$= 1572.1 \times 6.54 \times 12 - \frac{240(6.54)^2}{2} \times 12 - 10{,}600$$

$$= 123{,}245 - 61{,}591 - 10{,}060 = 51{,}594 \text{ at } 6.54 \text{ ft from } A$$

$$\text{required } +M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{51{,}594}{0.9} = 57{,}327 \text{ in.-lb/ft } (21.3 \text{ kNm/m})$$

Span BC maximum positive moment $+M_u$

V = 2880 lb/ft $\qquad x = \frac{L_n}{2} = \frac{24}{2} = 12$ ft

$$\text{simple span midspan moment } M = V_{BC} \times \frac{L_n}{2} - \left(w_u \times \frac{L}{2}\right)\left(\frac{L}{4}\right)$$

$$= 2880 \times \frac{24}{2} - \frac{240(24)^2}{8}$$

$$= 17{,}280 \text{ ft-lb/ft} = 207{,}360 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

Alternatively,

$$\text{simple span moment } M_0 = \frac{w_u L^2}{8} = \frac{240(24)^2}{8} \times 12$$

$$= 207{,}360 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$+M_u = M_0 - (-M_u)$$

$$M_u \text{ from Table 11.9} = -135{,}250 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$\text{required maximum } +M_u = 207{,}360 - 135{,}250$$

$$= 72{,}110 \text{ in.-lb/ft (15.93 kNm/m) at midspan}$$

$$\text{required } +M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{72{,}110}{0.9} = 80{,}122 \text{ in.-lb/ft (18.90 kNm/m)}$$

Figure 11.22 gives a plot of the required moment strengths M_u across the continuous spans at the column face.

For a complete design, a similar analysis has to be performed in the E–W direction. From there on, the nominal moment strength values are split into column strip moments and middle strip moments in both the N–S and E–W directions in a manner identical to the procedure in Ex. 11.1. An operations table is then developed similar to that of Table 11.5 of the

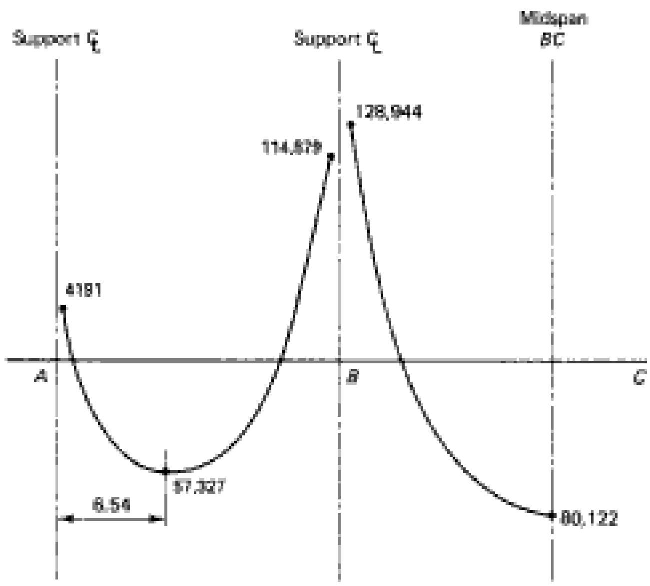


Figure 11.22 Required nominal moment strengths M_n (in.-lb/ft) by equivalent frame method in N–S direction.

direct design method. Shear–moment transfer check at the column faces also has to be made and shear–moment reinforcement designed following the same steps as in Ex. 11.1.

No congestion of reinforcement results from the flexural moments in this example (No. 5 at 12 in. center to center maximum). Hence no inelastic redistribution of flexural moments from support to midspan (up to 10%) was applied.

11.6.6 Coefficients Method of Ultimate Moment Evaluation for Slabs on Continuous Supports

For slabs continuous over some supports along some edges and discontinuous at others, Fig. 11.23 can be used for a rapid evaluation check of the support moment coefficients at ultimate load. A provision is made in the chart at the discontinuous edge for possible moment restraint of the slab as cast monolithically with the edge beams.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{short span:}\quad & \text{support } M_x = -\beta'_{x1} w_u l_x^2 \\ & \text{span } \quad M_x = +\beta_{x1} w_u l_x^2 \\ \text{long span:}\quad & \text{support } M_y = -\beta'_{y1} w_u l_y^2 \\ & \text{span } \quad M_y = +\beta_{y1} w_u l_y^2 \end{aligned}$$

where w_u is the unit intensity of factored load per unit area of the slab.

11.7 SI TWO-WAY SLAB DESIGN EXPRESSIONS AND EXAMPLE

1. *Material properties*

$$E_c = w_c^{1.5} 0.0043 \sqrt{f'_c} \text{ MPa}$$

$$E_s = 200{,}000 \text{ MPa}$$

$$c_b = \frac{600}{600 + f_y} d$$

$$\beta_1 = 0.85 - 0.008\,(f'_c - 30)$$

Minimum temperature steel = $0.0018bh$. The value of β_1 for strengths above 30 MPa should be reduced at the rate of 0.008 for each 1 MPa in excess of 30 MPa, but β_1 cannot be less than 0.65. Maximum spacing of reinforcement = 2 h.

2. *Deflection of two-way slab on beams:* For $\alpha_m \leq 0.2$, use Table 11.3. For $\alpha_m > 0.2$ < 2.0, as in Equation 11.9,

$$h = \frac{l_n\left(0.8 + \dfrac{f_y}{1500}\right)}{36 + 5\beta[\alpha f_m - 0.2]}$$

For $\alpha_m > 2.0$,

$$h = \frac{l\left(0.8 + \dfrac{f_y}{1500}\right)}{36 + 9\beta}$$

3. *Shear*

(a) Slabs on beams

$$V_c = \frac{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{6} b_0 d$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

(b) Flat plates: The smaller of

$$V_c = \left(2 + \frac{4}{\beta}\right)\frac{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12} b_0 d$$

$$V_c = \left(\frac{\alpha_s d}{b_0} + 2\right)\frac{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12} b_0 d$$

$$V_c = \frac{4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}{12} b_0 d$$

where b_0 = perimetric length of critical section in slabs and footings (at $d/2$ from column face in two-way action)
β = ratio of longer side to shorter side of the panel
α_s = 40 for interior columns
= 30 for edge columns
= 20 for corner columns

4. *Unbalanced moments*

$$\gamma_f = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{b_1/b_2}}$$

$$\gamma_v = 1 - \gamma_f$$

(a) Exterior supports: The value of γ_f can be increased up to 1.0 if V_u at support $< 0.75\,\phi\sqrt{f'_c}$.
(b) Interior supports: The value of γ_f can be increased by 25% if $V_u \le 0.4\,\phi V_c$ and $\rho < 0.375\rho_b$.

11.7.1 Example 11.4: SI Design of Two-way Slabs and Plates

Solve Ex. 11.1 using SI units.
Data

$$f'_c = 27.6 \text{ MPa} \qquad \text{MPa} = \text{N/mm}^2$$
$$f_y = 414 \text{ MPa} \qquad \text{Pa} = \text{N/m}^2$$
$$\text{live load } w_\ell = 3.40 \text{ kPa} \qquad 1 \text{ kg} = 9.81 \text{ N}$$
$$\text{unit weight of concrete} = 2400 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

Geometry from Fig. 11.11

$$l_{E\text{-}W} = 7.32 \text{ m}$$
$$l_{N\text{-}S} = 5.49 \text{ m}$$
$$\text{additional flooring } w_D = 0.5 \text{ kPa}$$

Solution: *Geometry check for use of the direct design method (step 1)*

(a) Ratio longer span/shorter span = 7.32/5.49 = < 2.0; hence, two-way action.
(b) More than three spans in each direction and successive spans in each direction are the same, with columns not offset.
(c) Assume a thickness of 230 mm, flooring of 500 N/m².

$$w_d = 500 + \frac{230}{1000}(\text{m}) \times 2400 \text{ kg/m}^3 \times \frac{9.81 \text{ N}}{\text{kg}}$$
$$\simeq 6000 \text{ N/m}^2 = 6.0 \text{ kN/m}^2$$
$$2w_d = 12.0 \text{ kN/m}^2 > w_\ell = 3.4 \text{ kN/m}^2 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

From the above, the DDM is applicable.

Hidden page

Hidden page

Moment distribution in the column and middle strips (steps 6 and 7)

Check the shear–moment transfer capacity at the exterior column supports:

$$-M_e \text{ at interior column 2-B} = 302 \text{ kN-m}$$

$$-M_e \text{ at exterior column 2-A} = 112 \text{ kN-m}$$

$$V_u = 310 \text{ kN acting at the face of the column}$$

Factored shear force at the edge column adjusted for the interior moment is

$$V_u = 310 - \frac{302 - 112}{7.32 - 0.483} = 282 \text{ kN}$$

$$V_n = \frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{282}{0.75} = 376 \text{ kN}$$

Assuming that the design M_u has the same value as the factored M_n,

$$A_c \text{ from before} = 0.433 \text{ m2}$$

From Figures 11.7c and 11.13, taking the moment of area of the critical plane about axis AB,

$$d(2c_1 + c_2 + 2d)\,\bar{x} = d\left(c_1 + \frac{d}{2}\right)^2$$

where $\bar{x}$ is the distance to the centroid of the critical section, or

$$(2 \times 0.457 + 0.508 + 0.457)\,\bar{x} = \left(0.457 + \frac{0.23}{2}\right)^2$$

$$\bar{x} = 0.174 \text{ m}$$

$g = 0.174 - 0.23/2 = 0.059$ m = 59 mm, where g is the distance from the column face to the centroidal axis of the section.

The total external factored moment is

$$M_{ue} = 112 + 282 \times 0.059 = 129 \text{ kN-m}$$

Total required minimum unbalanced moment strength is

$$M_n = \frac{M_{ue}}{\phi} = \frac{129}{0.9} = 143 \text{ kN-m}$$

The fraction of nominal moment strength M_n to be transferred by shear is

$$\gamma_v = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{b_1/b_2}} = 0.37$$

$$\text{where } b_1 = c_1 + d/2 = 0.457 + 0.23/2 = 0.572 \text{ m}$$

$$b_2 = c_2 + d = 0.508 + 0.23 = 0.738 \text{ m}$$

Moment of inertia of sides parallel to the moment direction about N–S axis is

$$I_1 = \left(\frac{bh^3}{12} + Ad^2 + \frac{hb^3}{12}\right)2 \quad \text{for all faces}$$

$$= \left[\frac{0.23 \times (0.572)^3}{12} + 0.23 \times 0.572 \times \left(\frac{0.572}{2} - 0.174\right)^2 + \frac{0.572(0.23)^3}{12}\right]2$$

$$= [358{,}702 + 165{,}029 + 57{,}996]2 = 1{,}163{,}450 \text{ cm}^4$$

Moment of inertia of sides perpendicular to the moment direction about N–S axis is

$$I_2 = A(x)^2$$

$$= [(50.8 + 23)23](17.4)^2 = 513{,}900 \text{ cm}^4$$

Therefore, the torsional moment of inertia is

$$J_c = 1{,}163{,}450 + 513{,}900 = 1{,}677{,}350 \text{ cm}^4$$

Shearing stress due to perimeter shear effect on M_u is

$$\begin{aligned} v_u &= \frac{V_u}{\phi A_c} + \frac{\gamma_v C_{AB} M_u}{J_c} \\ &= \frac{282}{0.75 \times 0.433} + \frac{0.37 \times 0.174 \times 143}{1{,}677{,}350 \times 10^{-8}} = 868 \text{ kPa} + 550 \text{ kPa} \\ &= 1.42 \text{ MPa} \end{aligned}$$

From before, maximum allowable $v_c = 1.74$ MPa: > 1.42 MPa

$$v_u < v_c \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Therefore, accept plate thickness.

Design of reinforcement in the slab area at column face for the unbalanced moment transferred to the column by flexure

From Eq. 11.6b,

$$\gamma_f = 1 - \gamma_v = 1 - 0.37 = 0.63$$

$$M_{uf} = \gamma_f M_u = 0.63 \times 143 = 90.1 \text{ kN-m}$$

This moment has to be transferred within 1.5 h on each side of the column as in Figure 11.7d.

$$\text{transfer width} = (1.5 \times 0.254) \times 2 + 0.508 = 1.27 \text{ m}$$

$$M_{nf} = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right), \quad \text{assume that} \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 0.9d$$

or

$$90.1 \times 10^6 = A_s \times 414 \times 0.9 \times 230$$

$$A_s = 1050 \text{ mm}^2 \text{ over strip width } = 1300 \text{ mm}$$

Verify A_s.

$$a = \frac{1050 \times 414}{0.85 \times 27.6 \times 1300} = 14.3 \text{ mm}$$

Therefore,

$$90.1 \times 10^6 = A_s \times 414\left(230 - \frac{14.3}{2}\right)$$

$$A_s = 1000 \text{ mm}^2$$

Use five No. 15 M bars (1000 mm^2) at 100 mm c–c to be used in the 510-mm column width at the top and anchor into the column as required for bond length development.

Proportioning of the plate reinforcement (steps 8 and 9)

(a) *E–W direction (long span)*

1. *Summary of moments in column strip*

$$\text{interior column negative } M_n = \frac{0.75 \times 302}{\phi = 0.9} = 252 \text{ kN-m}$$

$$\text{midspan } M_n = \frac{0.6 \times 225}{0.9} = 150 \text{ kN-m}$$

$$\text{exterior column negative } M_{ne} = \frac{1 \times 112}{0.9} = 124 \text{ kN-m}$$

2. *Summary of moment in middle strip*

$$\text{interior column negative } M_n = \frac{302 - 0.75 \times 302}{0.9} = 84 \text{ kN-m}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

By the requirement of statics, the applied load must be accounted for in each of the two perpendicular (orthogonal) directions. In order to account for the torsional deformations of the support beams, an *equivalent* column is used whose flexibility is the *sum* of the flexibilities of the actual column and the torsional flexibility of the transverse beam or slab strips (stiffness is the inverse of flexibility). In other words,

$$\frac{1}{K_{ec}} = \frac{1}{\Sigma K_c} + \frac{1}{K_t} \tag{11.18}$$

where K_{ec} = flexural stiffness of the equivalent column; bending moment per unit rotation

ΣK_c = sum of flexural stiffnesses of upper and lower columns; bending moment per unit rotation

K_t = torsional stiffness of the transverse beam or slab strip; torsional moment per unit rotation

The value of K_{ec} would thus have to be known in order to calculate the deflection by this procedure.

The slab–beam strips are considered to be supported *not* on the columns but on *transverse* slab–beam strips on the column center lines. Figure 11.24a illustrates this point. Deformation of a typical panel is considered in *one direction at a time*. Thereafter, the contribution in each of the two directions, x and y, is added to obtain the total deflection at any point in the slab or plate.

First, the deflection due to bending in the x direction is computed (Figure 11.24b). Then the deflection due to bending in the y direction is found. The midpanel deflection can now be obtained as the sum of the center-span deflections of the column strip in one direction and that of the middle strip in the orthogonal direction (Figure 11.24c).

The deflection of each panel can be considered as the sum of three components:

1. Basic midspan deflection of the panel, assumed fixed at both ends, given by

$$\delta' = \frac{wl^4}{384E_c I_{\text{frame}}}$$

This has to be proportioned to separate deflection δ_c of the column strip and δ_s of the middle strip, such that

$$\delta_c = \delta' \frac{M_{\text{col strip}}}{M_{\text{frame}}} \frac{E_c I_{cs}}{E_c I_c}$$

$$\delta_s = \delta' \frac{M_{\text{slab strip}}}{M_{\text{frame}}} \frac{E_c I_{cs}}{E_c I_s}$$

where I_{cs} is the moment of inertia of the total frame, I_c the moment of inertia of the column strip, and I_s the moment of inertia of the middle slab strip.

2. Center deflection, $\delta''_{\theta L} = \frac{1}{8}\theta L$, due to rotation at the left end while the right end is considered fixed, where θ_L = left M_{net}/K_{ec} and K_{ec} is the flexural stiffness of equivalent column (moment per unit rotation).
3. Center deflection, $\delta''_{\theta R} = \frac{1}{8}\theta L$ due to rotation at the right end while the left end is considered fixed, where θ_R = right M_{net}/K_{ec}. Hence

$$\delta_{cx} \quad \text{or} \quad \delta_{cy} = \delta_c + \delta''_{\theta L} + \delta''_{\theta R} \tag{11.19a}$$

$$\delta_{sx} \quad \text{or} \quad \delta_{sy} = \delta_s + \delta''_{\theta L} + \delta''_{\theta R} \tag{11.19b}$$

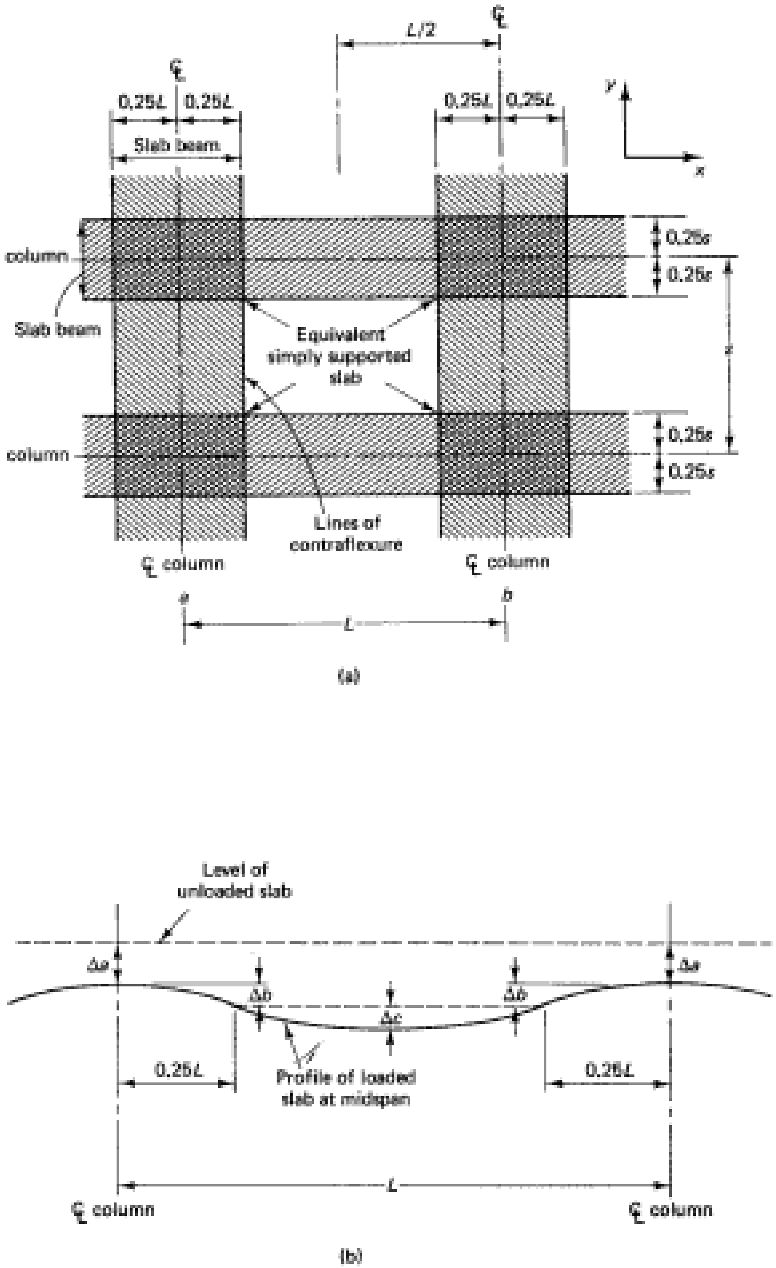
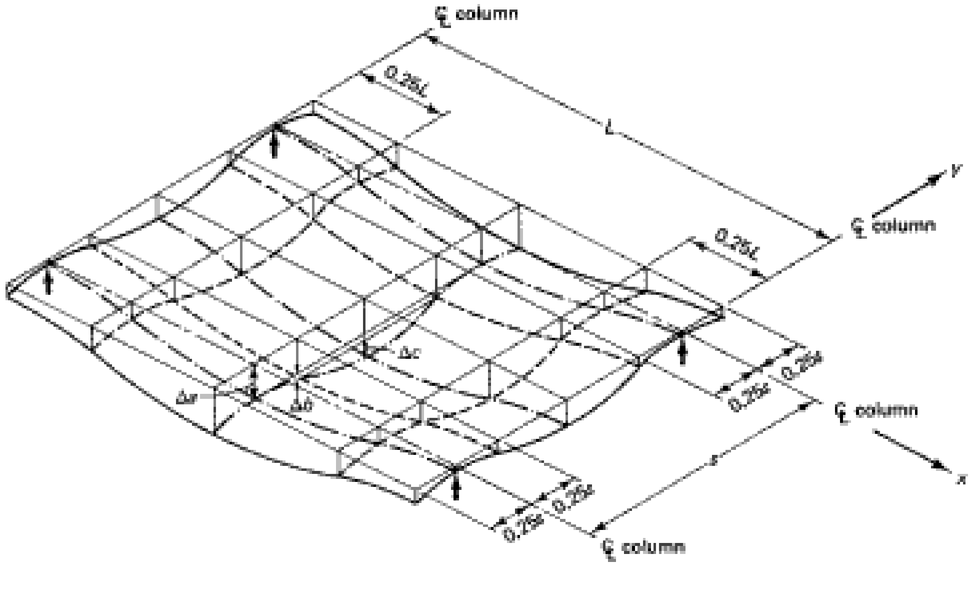


Figure 11.24 Equivalent frame method for deflection analysis: (a) plate panel transferred into equivalent frames; (b) profile of deflected shape at center line; (c) deflected shape of panel.



(c)

Figure 11.24 *Continued*

(Use in Eqs. 11.19a and 11.19b the values of δ_c, δ''_{0L}, and δ''_{0R} that correspond to the applicable span directions.) From Figure 11.24b and c, the total deflection is

$$\Delta = \delta_{cx} + \delta_{ry} = \delta_{ry} + \delta_{cx} \tag{11.20}$$

11.8.2 Example 11.5: Central Deflection Calculations of a Slab Panel on Beams

A 7-in. (177.8-mm) slab of a five-panel by five-panel floor system spanning 25 ft in the E–W direction (7.62 m) and 20 ft in the N–S direction (6.10 m) is shown in Figure 11.25a. The panel is monolithically supported by beams 15 in. × 27 in. in the E–W direction (381 mm × 686 mm) and 15 in. × 24 in. in the N–S direction (381 mm × 610 mm). The floor is subjected to a time-dependent deflection due to an equivalent uniform working load intensity w = 450 psf (21.5 kPa). Material properties of the floor are

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

$$E_c = 3.6 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (24.8 \times 10 \text{ kPa})$$

Assume the following:

1. Net moment M_n from adjacent spans (ft-lb):

E–W		N–S	
Support 1:	20×10^3	Support 1:	40×10^3
Support 2:	5×10^3	Support 4:	20×10^3

2. Equivalent column stiffness K_{ec} = 400 E_c lb-in. per radian in both directions. Find the maximum central deflection of the panel due to the long-term loading and determine if its magnitude is acceptable if the floor supports sensitive equipment that can be damaged by large deflections.
3. Cracked moment of inertia.

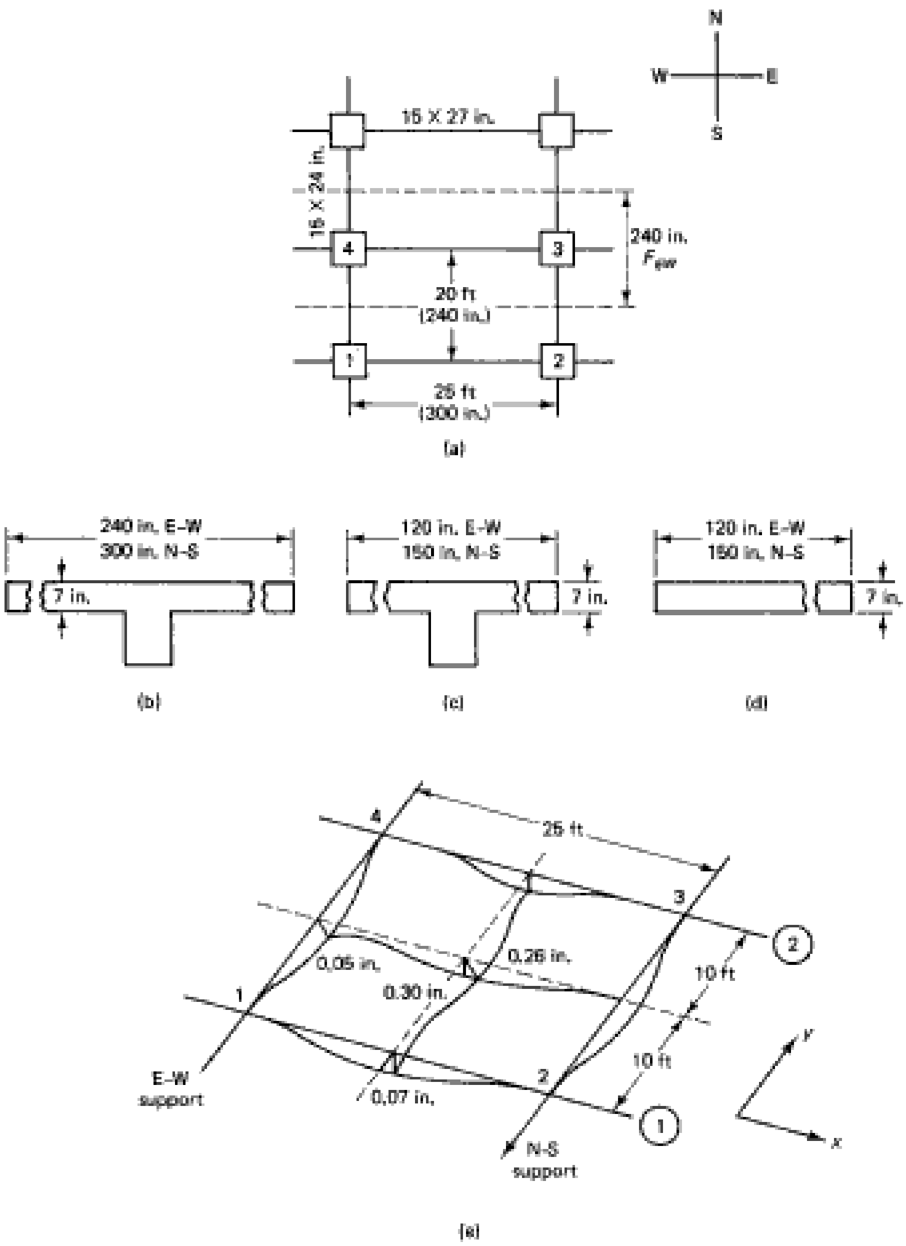


Figure 11.25 Example on equivalent frame deflection evaluation.

$$\text{E–W:}\quad I_{cr} = 45{,}500\ \text{in.}^4$$
$$\text{N–S:}\quad I_{cr} = 32{,}500\ \text{in.}^4$$

Solution: Calculate the gross moments of inertia (in.^{4}) of the sections in Figure 11.25: the total equivalent frame I_{cr} in part (b), the column strip beam I_c in part (c), and the middle strip slab I_s in part (d). These values are

	I_{cs}	I_c	I_s
E–W	63,600	53,700	3430
N–S	[illegible]	[illegible],000	4288

Next, calculate factors $\alpha_1 l_2/l_1$ and $\alpha_2 l_1/l_2$ as in Ex. 11.2. In both cases they are greater than 1.0. Hence the factored moments coefficients (percent) obtained from the tables in Section 11.4.2 are as follows:

	Column Strip (+ and −)	Middle Strip (+ and −)
E–W	81.0	19.0
N–S	67.5	32.5

E–W direction deflections (span = 25 ft)

$$\text{long-term } w_u = 450 \text{ psf}$$

$$\delta'_{25} = \frac{450 \times 20(25)^4 \times 1728}{384 \times 3.6 \times 10^6 \times 63{,}600} = 0.0691 \text{ in.}$$

$$\delta_c = 0.0691 \times 0.81 \times \frac{63{,}600}{53{,}700} = 0.0663 \text{ in.}$$

$$\delta_s = 0.0691 \times 0.19 \times \frac{63{,}600}{3{,}430} = 0.243 \text{ in.}$$

Rotation at end 1 is

$$\theta_1 = \frac{M_1}{K_{ec}} = \frac{20 \times 10^3 \times 12}{400 \times 3.6 \times 10^6} = 1.67 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad}$$

and rotation at end 2 is

$$\theta_2 = \frac{M_2}{K_{ec}} = \frac{5 \times 10^3 \times 12}{400 \times 3.6 \times 10^6} = 0.42 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad}$$

where θ is the rotation at one end if the other end is fixed.

$$\delta^* = \text{deflection adjustment due to rotation at supports 1 and 2} = \frac{\theta l}{8}$$

$$\delta^* = \frac{(1.67 + 0.42) \times 10^{-4} \times 300}{8} = 0.0078 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{net } \delta_{cs} = 0.0663 + 0.0078 = 0.0741 \quad \text{say } 0.07 \text{ in.}$$
$$\text{net } \delta_{sc} = 0.243 + 0.0078 = 0.2508 \quad \text{say } 0.25 \text{ in.}$$

N–S direction deflections (span = 20 ft)

$$\delta'_{20} = \frac{450 \times 25(20)^4 \times 1728}{384 \times 3.6 \times 10^6 \times 47{,}000} = 0.0479 \text{ in.}$$

$$\delta_c = 0.0479 \times 0.675 \times \frac{47{,}000}{40{,}000} = 0.038 \text{ in.}$$

$$\delta_s = 0.0479 \times 0.325 \times \frac{47{,}000}{4288} = 0.171 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{rotation } \theta_3 = \frac{M_3}{K_{ec}} = \frac{40 \times 10^3 \times 12}{400 \times 3.6 \times 10^6} = 3.3 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad}$$

$$\text{rotation } \theta_4 = \frac{M_4}{K_{ec}} = \frac{20 \times 10^3 \times 12}{400 \times 3.6 \times 10^6} = 1.67 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad}$$

$$\delta'' = \frac{\theta l_2}{8} = \frac{(3.3 + 1.67)10^{-4} \times 240}{8} = 0.0149 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{net } \delta_{cy} = 0.038 + 0.0149 = 0.0529 \quad \text{say } 0.05 \text{ in.}$$
$$\delta_{ry} = 0.171 + 0.0149 = 0.1859 \quad \text{say } 0.19 \text{ in.}$$
$$\text{total central deflection } \Delta = \delta_{sl} + \delta_{cy} + \delta_{cl}$$
$$\Delta_{E\text{-}W} = \delta_{cx} + \delta_{cy} = 0.25 + 0.05 = 0.30 \text{ in.}$$
$$\Delta_{N\text{-}S} = \delta_{ry} + \delta_{cx} = 0.19 + 0.07 = 0.26 \text{ in.}$$

Hence the average deflection at the center of the interior panel is

$$\frac{1}{2}(\Delta_{E\text{-}W} + \Delta_{N\text{-}S}) = 0.28 \text{ in. } (7.1 \text{ mm})$$

Adjustment for cracked section: Use Branson's effective moment of inertia equation.

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3\right] I_{cr}$$

as discussed in Chapter 8. Calculation of ratio M_{cr}/M_a:

$$M_{cr} = \frac{f_r I_g}{y_t}$$

where f_r = modulus of rupture of concrete
y_t = distance of center of gravity of section from outer tension fibers

$$\text{E–W (240-in. flange width):} \quad y_t = 21.54 \text{ in.}$$
$$\text{N–S (300-in. flange width):} \quad y_t = 19.20 \text{ in.}$$
$$f_r = 7.5\,\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} = 7.5\sqrt{4000} = 474 \text{ psi}$$

Hence

$$M_{cr} \quad (\text{E–W}) = \frac{474 \times 63{,}600}{21.54} \times \frac{1}{12} = 1.17 \times 10^5 \text{ ft-lb}$$

$$M_{cr} \quad (\text{N–S}) = \frac{474 \times 47{,}000}{19.20} \times \frac{1}{12} = 0.97 \times 10^5 \text{ ft-lb}$$

$$\text{interior panel } M_a = \frac{w_a l^2}{16} = \frac{20 \times 450(25)^2}{16} \quad \text{for E–W}$$
$$= 3.52 \times 10^5 \text{ ft-lb}$$
$$= \frac{25 \times 450(20)^2}{16} \quad \text{for N–S}$$
$$= 2.81 \times 10^5 \text{ ft-lb}$$

Note that the moment factor 1/16 is used to be on the safe side, although the actual moment coefficients for two-way action would have been smaller.

E–W effective moment of inertia I_e

$$\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} = \frac{1.17 \times 10^5}{3.52 \times 10^5} = 0.332$$

$$\left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 = 0.037$$

$$I_e = 0.037 \times 63{,}600 + (1 - 0.037)45{,}500 = 46{,}170 \text{ in.}^4$$

N–S effective moment of inertia I_e

$$\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a} = \frac{0.97 \times 10^5}{2.81 \times 10^5} = 0.345$$

$$\left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3 = 0.041$$

$$I_e = 0.041 \times 47{,}000 + (1 - 0.041)32{,}500 = 33{,}095 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\text{average } \frac{I_g}{I_e} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{63{,}600}{46{,}170} + \frac{47{,}000}{33{,}095}\right) = 1.40$$

adjusted central deflection for cracked section effect

$$= 1.40 \times 0.28 = 0.39 \text{ in. } (9.9 \text{ mm})$$

$$\frac{l}{\Delta} = \frac{25 \text{ ft} \times 12}{0.39} = 769 > 480 \qquad \text{allowed in Table 11.4}$$

Hence the long-term central deflection is acceptable.

11.9 CRACKING BEHAVIOR AND CRACK CONTROL IN TWO-WAY-ACTION SLABS AND PLATES

11.9.1 Flexural Cracking Mechanism and Fracture Hypothesis

Flexural cracking behavior in concrete structural floors under two-way action is significantly different from that in one-way members. Crack-control equations for beams underestimate the crack widths developed in two-way slabs and plates and do not tell the designer how to space the reinforcement. Cracking in two-way slabs and plates is controlled primarily by the steel stress level and the spacing of the reinforcement in the two perpendicular directions. In addition, the clear concrete cover in two-way slabs and plates is nearly constant [$\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) for interior exposure], whereas it is a major variable in the crack-control equations for beams. The results from extensive tests on slabs and plates by Nawy et al. demonstrate this difference in behavior in a fracture hypothesis on crack development and propagation in two-way plate action. As seen in Figure 11.26, stress concentration develops initially at the points of intersection of the reinforcement in the reinforcing bars and at the welded joints of the wire mesh, that is, at grid nodal points, thereby dynamically generating fracture lines along the paths of least resistance: A_1B_1, A_1A_2, A_2B_2, and B_2B_1. The resulting fracture pattern is a total repetitive cracking grid, provided that the spacing of the nodal points A_1, B_1, A_2, and B_2 is close enough to generate this preferred initial fracture mechanism of orthogonal cracks narrow in width as a fracture mechanism.

If the spacing of the reinforcing grid intersections is too large, the magnitude of the stress concentration and the energy absorbed per unit grid are too low to generate cracks along the reinforcing wires or bars. As a result, the principal cracks follow diagonal yield-line cracking in the plain concrete field away from the reinforcing bars early in the loading history. These cracks are wide and few.

This hypothesis also leads to the conclusion that surface deformations of the individual reinforcing elements have little effect in arresting the generation of the cracks or controlling their type or width in a two-way-action slab or plate. In a similar manner, we may conclude that the scale effect on two-way-action cracking behavior is insignificant, since the cracking grid would be a reflection of the reinforcement grid if the preferred or-

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

A graphical solution of Eq. 11.22 is given in Figure 11.27 for

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (414 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_s = 40\% \, f_y = 24{,}000 \text{ psi } (166 \text{ MPa})$$

for rapid determination of the reinforcement size and spacing needed for crack control. Equation 11.22 in SI units is

$$w_{max}\,(\text{mm}) = 0.145\, K\beta f_s \sqrt{G_I} \tag{11.22a}$$

where f_s = MPa, $G_I = s_1 s_2 d_c / d_{b1} \times 8/\pi$, and s_1, s_2, d_c, and d_{b1} are in millimeters.

The grid index, G_I, specifies the size and spacing of the bars in the two perpendicular directions of any concrete floor system, and w_{max} is the maximum tolerable crack width.

The crack control equation and guidelines presented are important not only for the control of corrosion in the reinforcement but also for deflection control. The reduction of the stiffness EI of the two-way slab or plate due to orthogonal cracking when the limits of tolerable crack widths in Table 8.5 are exceeded can lead to excessive deflec-

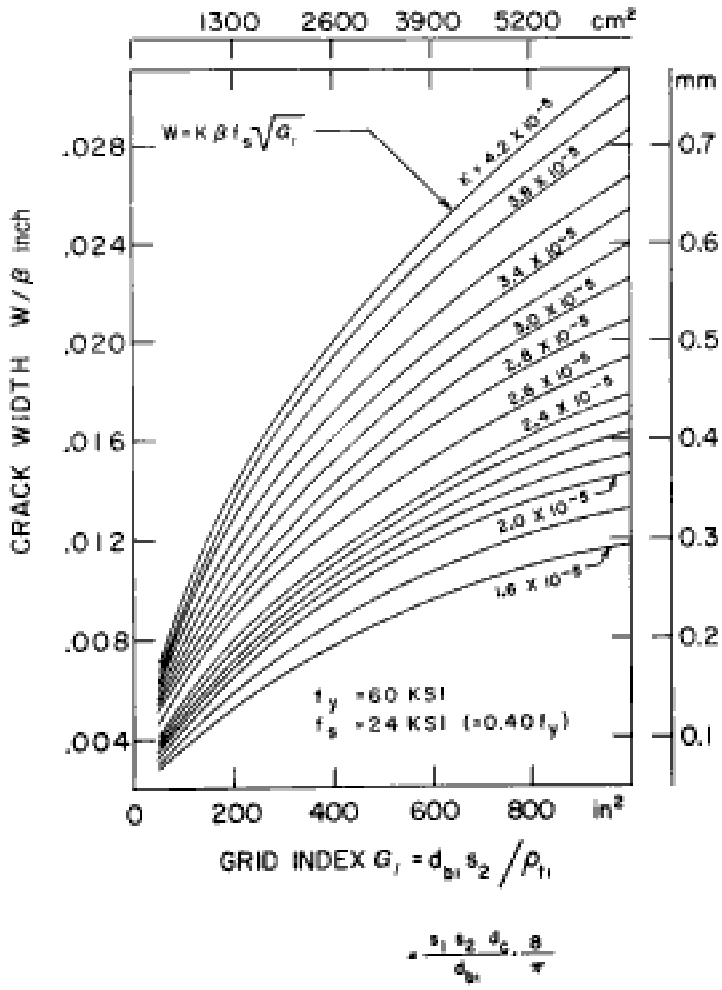


Figure 11.27 Crack-control reinforcement distribution in two-way-action slabs and plates for all loading conditions: f_y = 60,000 psi, f_s = 24,000 psi (= 0.40f_y).

Hidden page

Hence the 9-in. center-to-center spacing specified for flexure is not satisfactory. Reduce the spacing of reinforcement to No. 4 bars at $8\frac{1}{2}$ in. (216 mm) center to center for crack control (12.7-mm diameter at 216 mm center to center).

11.9.4 Example 11.7: Crack-control Evaluation for Serviceability in a Rectangular Panel Subjected to Severe Exposure Conditions

Select the bar size and spacing necessary for crack control at the column reaction region of the 7-in.-thick slab shown in Figure 11.29 that is uniformly loaded. Select the bar size for two conditions:

Condition A: Floor is subjected to severe exposure of humidity and moist air.

Condition B: Floor sustains an aggressive chemical environment where the design working stress level in the reinforcement is limited to 15 ksi (15,000 psi).

Given:

$$\beta = 1.20$$
$$l_2/l_1 = 0.8$$
$$f_y = 60 \text{ ksi (414 MPa)}$$

Solution: *Condition A: Humidity and moist air*

Tolerable $w_{max} = 0.012$ in. (0.3 mm) (Table 8.4). Try No. 4 bars $d_b = 0.5$, $d_c = 0.75 + 0.25 = 1.0$ in. Assume that $s_1 = s_2 = s$ for the given panel. The aspect ratio, $l_2/l_1 = 0.8$. $K = 2.1 \times 10^{-5}$ for concentrated reaction at the column support (Table 11.10).

$$0.012 = 2.1 \times 10^{-5} \times 1.20 \times 0.4 \times 60\sqrt{G_I}$$

to give $G_I = 394$ in.^{2}. Therefore,

$$394 = \frac{s^2 d_c}{d_{b1}} \times \frac{8}{\pi} = \frac{s^2 \times 1.0}{0.5} \times \frac{8}{\pi}$$
$$s = 8.8 \text{ in.}$$

Hence use No. 4 bars at $8\frac{1}{2}$ in. center to center each way for crack control.

Condition B: Aggressive chemical environment

Tolerable $w_{max} = 0.007$ in. (0.18 mm) (Table 8.4). $f_s = 15$ ksi to be used as a low stress level for sanitary or water-retaining structures instead of 0.4 f_y. Try No. 5 bars ($d_{b1} = 0.625$ in.).

$$0.007 = 2.1 \times 10^{-5} \times 1.20 \times 15.0\sqrt{G_I}$$

to give a grid index $G_I = 343$ in.^{2}

$$d_{c1} = 0.75 + 0.312 = 1.06 \text{ in.}$$

$$G_I = 343 = \frac{s^2 \times 1.06}{0.625} \times \frac{8}{\pi} \qquad \text{to get } s = 8.9 \text{ in.}$$

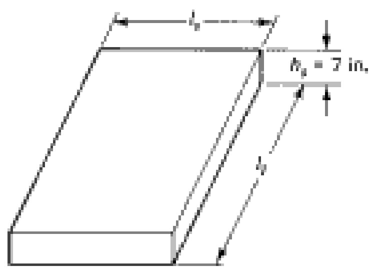


Figure 11.29 Rectangular panel.

Use No. 5 bars at 9-in. (229-mm) center-to-center spacing each way for crack control.

Reinforcement summary

Condition A: No. 4 bars at $8\frac{1}{2}$ in. c–c (12.7-mm diameter at 216 mm c–c)

Condition B: No. 5 bars at 9 in. c–c (15.9-mm diameter at 229 mm c–c)

11.9.5 Example 11.8: SI Example on Crack Control in Two-way Slabs and Plates

Solve Ex. 11.6 using SI units.
Data

$$f_s = 166 \text{ MPa}$$

$$\text{max allowable } w_{max} = 0.40 \text{ mm}$$

$$K = 2.8 \times 10^{-5}, \qquad \beta = 1.25$$

$$d_c = 25 \text{ mm}, \qquad d_{b1} = 12.7 \text{ mm}$$

Solution:

$$w_{max}\,(\text{mm}) = 0.145\, K\beta f_s \sqrt{G_I}$$

where

$$G_I = \frac{s_1 s_2 d_c}{d_{b1}} \times \frac{8}{\pi}$$

$$0.40 = 0.145 \times 2.8 \times 10^{-5} \times 1.25 \times 166 \sqrt{G_I}$$

$$\sqrt{G_I} = \frac{0.4 \times 10^5}{0.145 \times 2.8 \times 1.25 \times 166} = 475$$

If $s_1 = s_2$ for this square panel,

$$(475)^2 = \frac{s^2 \times 25}{12.7} \times \frac{8}{\pi}$$

$$s = \left[\frac{(475)^2 \times 12.7 \times \pi}{25 \times 8}\right]^{1/2} = 212 \text{ mm}$$

Hence space the bars at 20 cm c–c even.

11.10 YIELD-LINE THEORY FOR TWO-WAY ACTION PLATES

A study of the hinge-field mechanism in a slab or plate at loads close to failure aids the engineering student in developing a feel for the two-way-action behavior of plates. Hinge fields are successions of hinge bands that are idealized by lines; hence the name *yield-line theory* by K. W. Johansen.

To do justice to this subject, an extensive discussion over several chapters or a whole textbook is necessary. The intention of this chapter is only to introduce the reader to the fundamentals of the yield-line theory and its application.

The yield-line theory is an upper-bound solution to the plate problem. This means that the predicted moment capacity of the slab has the highest expected value in comparison with test results. Additionally, the theory assumes a totally rigid-plastic behavior; that is, the plate stays planar at collapse, producing rigid planar failure systems. Consequently, deflection is not accounted for, nor are the compressive membrane forces that will act in the plane of the slab or plate considered. The plates are assumed to be considerably underreinforced, so that the reinforcement percentage ρ does not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$% of the section *bd*.

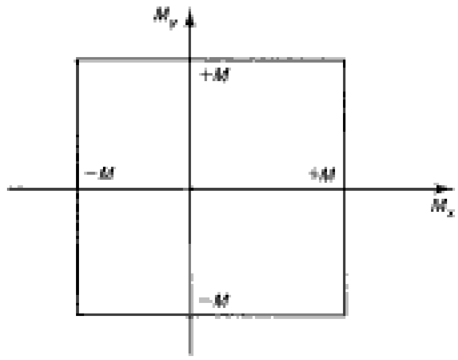


Figure 11.30 Johansen's square yield criterion.

Since the solutions are upper bound, the slab thickness obtained by this process is in many instances thinner than what is obtained by the other lower-bound solutions, such as the direct design method. Consequently, it is important to apply rigorously the serviceability requirements for deflection control and for crack control in conjunction with the use of the yield-line theory as given in Sections 11.8 and 11.9.

One district advantage in this theory is that solutions are possible for any shape of a plate, whereas most other approaches are applicable only to the rectangular shapes with rigorous computations for boundary effects. The engineer can, with ease, find the moment capacity for a triangular, trapezoidal, rectangular, circular, and any other conceivable shape provided that the failure mechanism is known or predictable. Since most failure patterns are presently identifiable, solutions can be readily obtained, as seen in Section 11.10.2.

11.10.1 Fundamental Concepts of Hinge-field Failure Mechanisms in Flexure

Under the action of a two-dimensional system of bending moments, yielding of a rigid-plastic plate occurs when the principle moments satisfy Johansen's square yield criterion, as shown in Figure 11.30. In this criterion, yielding is considered to have occurred when the numerically greater of the principal moments reaches the value of $\pm M$ at the yield-line cracks. The directions of the principal curvature rates are considered to coincide with the curvatures of the principal moments. The idealized moment–curvature relationship is shown as the solid line in Figure 11.31.

Line OA is considered almost vertical at point O and strain hardening is neglected.

If we consider the simplest case of a square slab with supports, with degree of fixity i varying from $i = 0$ for simply supported to $i = 1.0$ for fully restrained on all four sides, the failure mechanism would be as shown in Figure 11.32, when a uniformly distributed load is applied.

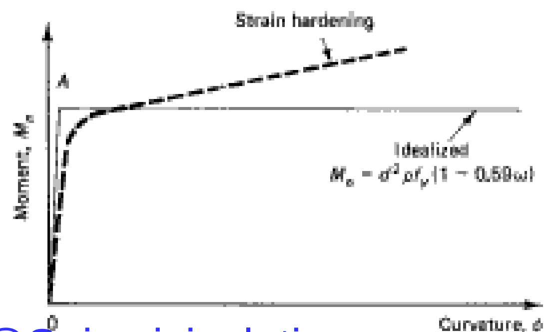


Figure 11.31 Moment—curvature relationship.

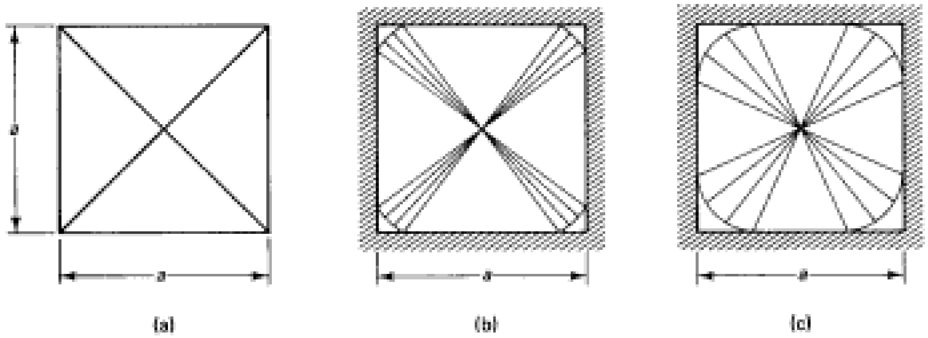


Figure 11.32 Failure mechanism of a square slab: (a) $i = 0$; (b) $i = 0.5$; (c) $i = 1.0$.

Take the simply supported case (a). The yield-line moments along the yield lines are the principal moments. Hence the twisting moments are zero in the yield lines and in most cases the shearing forces are also zero. Consequently, only moment M per unit length of the yield line acts about the lines AD and BE in Figure 11.33. The total moments can be represented by a vector in the direction of the yield line whose value is $M \times$ length of the yield line, that is, $M[a/2 \cos \theta]$ in Figure 11.33c. The virtual work of the yield moments of the shaded triangular segment ABO is the scalar product of the two moment vectors $M[a/2 \cos \theta]$ on fracture lines AO and BO and a rotation θ. In other words, the internal work

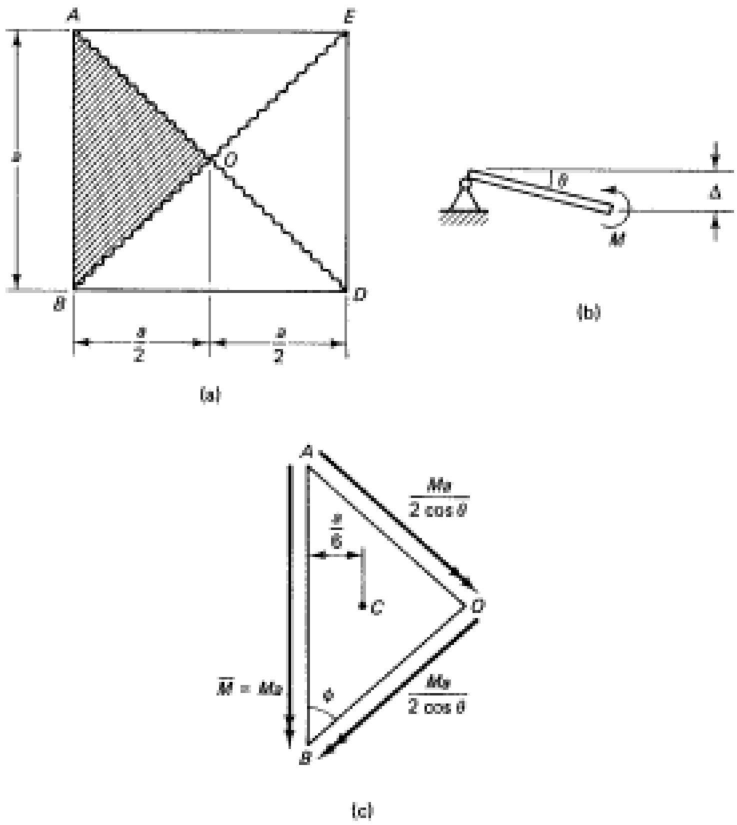


Figure 11.33 Vector moments on slab segment at failure.

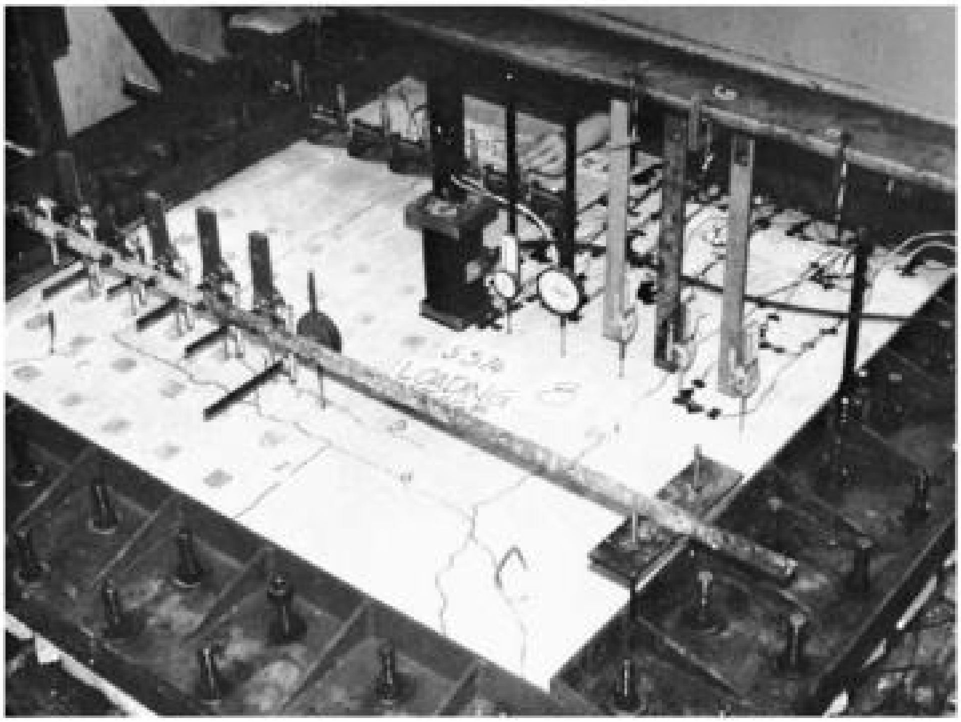


Photo 11.5 Testing setup of four-panel prestressed concrete floor. (Tests by Nawy et al.)

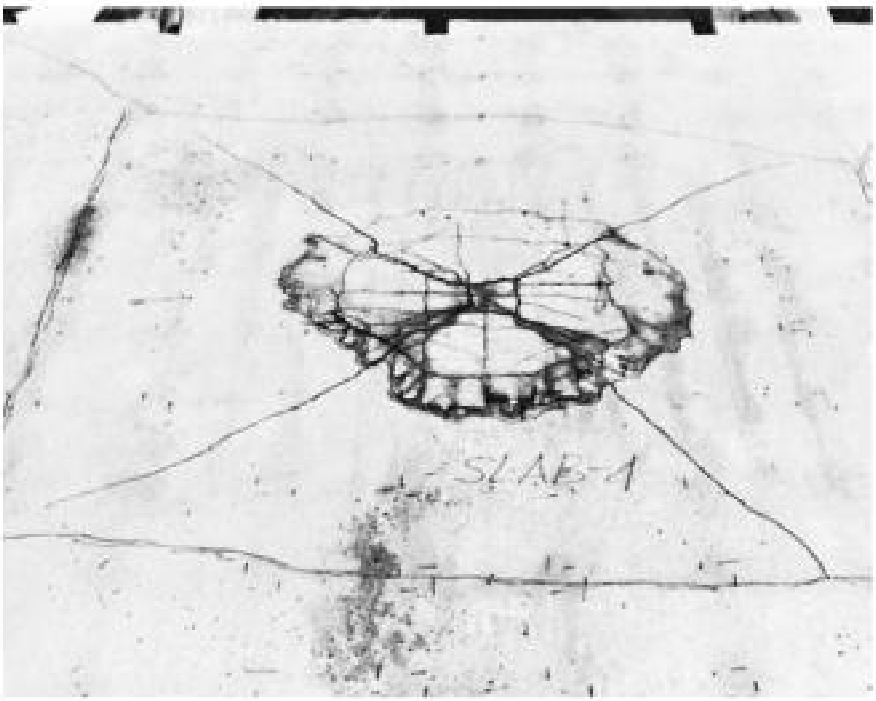


Photo 11.6 Yield-line pattern at failure at column reaction and panel boundaries of a two-way (multipanel) floor. (Tests by Nawy, Chakrabarti, et al.)

$$E_I = \Sigma \, \overline{M}\theta$$

If the displacement of the shaded segment at its center of gravity c is δ, the external work

$$E_E = \text{force} \times \text{displacement}$$
$$= \Sigma \iint w_u \, dx \, dy \, \delta$$

where w_u is the intensity of external load per unit area. But $E_I = E_E$; hence

$$\Sigma \, \overline{M}\theta = \Sigma \iint w_u \, dx \, dy \, \delta \tag{11.24}$$

Applying Eq. 11.24 to the particular case under discussion gives us

$$\overline{M}\theta = Ma \frac{\Delta}{a/2}$$

since angle θ in Figure 11.33b is small, where $\theta = \Delta/(a/2)$.

Work per one triangular segment:

$$E_I = \overline{M}\theta = 2M\Delta$$

$$E_E = \frac{w_u a^2}{4} \times \frac{\Delta}{3}$$

where deflection at center of gravity of the triangle = $\Delta/3$. Therefore,

$$4(2M\Delta) = 4\left(\frac{w_u a^2}{12}\Delta\right)$$

or

$$\text{unit } M = \frac{w_u a^2}{24} \tag{11.25}$$

If the square slab was fully fixed on all four sides, $E_I = 4(4M\Delta)$ since fracture lines develop around not only the diagonals but also the four edges, as shown in Figure 11.32c. Hence

$$\text{unit } M = \frac{w_u a^2}{48} \tag{11.26}$$

It is to be noted that a lower-bound solution as proposed by Mansfield's failure pattern in Figure 11.32c gives a value $M = w_u a^2/42.88$. Hence, for a uniformly loaded square slab with load intensity w_u per unit area and degree of support fixity i on all sides,

$$w_u a^2 = M[24(1 + i)] \tag{11.27}$$

The general equation for the yield-line moment capacity of a rectangular isotropic slab on beams and having dimensions $a \times b$ as shown in Figure 11.34, with side a being the shorter dimension, is

$$\text{unit } M \frac{\text{ft-lb}}{\text{ft}} = \frac{w_u a_r^2}{24}\left[\sqrt{3 + \left(\frac{a_r}{b_r}\right)^2} - \frac{a_r}{b_r}\right]^2 \tag{11.28}$$

where $a_r = \dfrac{2a}{\sqrt{1 + i_2} + \sqrt{1 + i_4}}$

$$b_r = \frac{2b}{\sqrt{1 + i_1} + \sqrt{1 + i_3}}$$

i = degree of restraint depending on stiffness ratios discussed in Section 11.2

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

1. *Divide* the linear dimension by $\sqrt{\mu}$ in the μM direction of the positive moment for a slab to be reinforced for a moment M in both directions using the same unit load intensity w_u per unit area.
2. In the case of concentrated loads or total loads, also divide such loads by $\sqrt{\mu}$.
3. In the case of line loads, the line load has to be divided by $\sqrt{\mu \cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta}$, where θ is the angle between the line load and the M direction.

If the slab is to be analyzed as an affine slab with the moment μM in both directions, the dimension in the μM direction would have to be *mulitplied* by $\sqrt{\mu}$. In either case, the result would of course have to be the same (see Ex. 11.9).

11.10.2 Failure Mechanisms and Moment Capacities of Slabs of Various Shapes Subjected to Distributed or Concentrated Loads

The preceding concise introduction to the virtual-work method of yield-line moments evaluation should facilitate good understanding of the mathematical procedures of most standard rectangular shapes subjected to uniform loading. More complicated slab shapes and other types of symmetrical and nonsymmetrical loading require additional and more advanced knowledge of the subject as discussed in the introduction. Also, the assumed failure shape and minimization energy principles can give values for particular cases that can differ slightly from one author to another depending on the mathematical assumptions made with respect to the failure shape.

The following summary of failure patterns and the respective moment capacities in terms of load, many of them due to Mansfield (Ref. 11.13), should give the reader adequate coverage in a capsule of solutions to most cases expected in today's and tomorrow's structures.

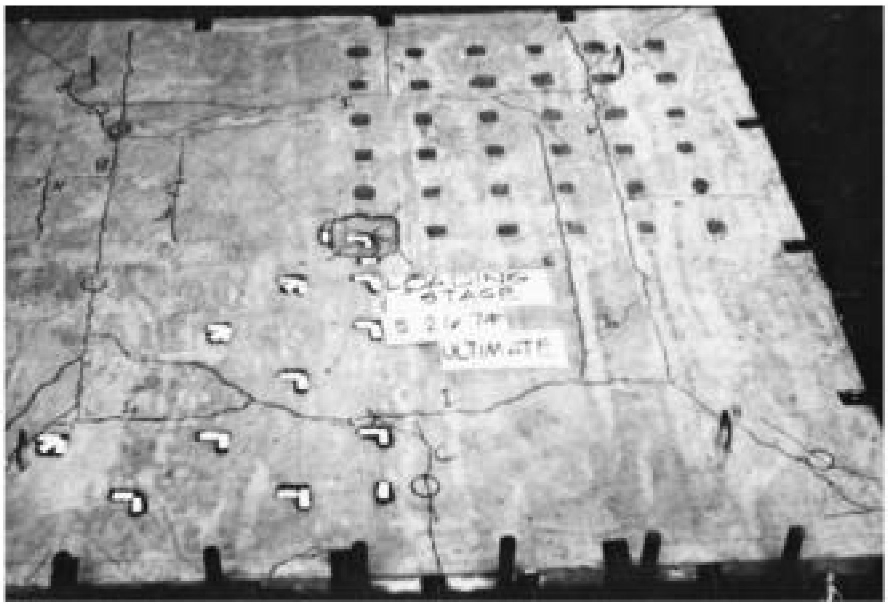
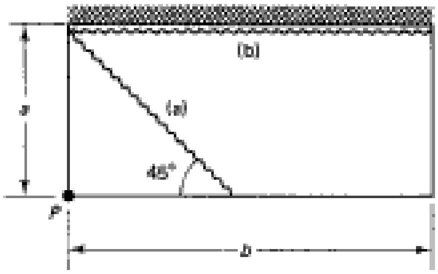
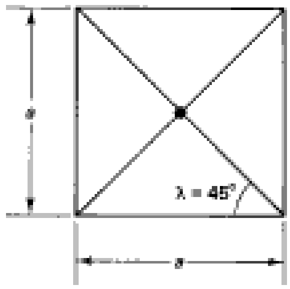


Photo 11.8 Four-panel slab at failure showing the yield-line patterns at the negative compression side of the supports. (Tests by Nawy and Chakrabarti.)

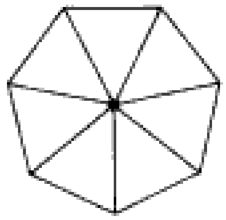
1. Point load to corner of rectangular cantilever plates:



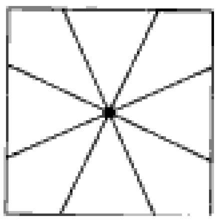
2. Square plate centrally loaded having boundaries simply supported against both downward and upward movements:



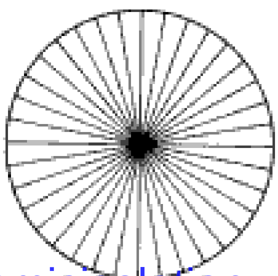
3. Regular n-sided plate with simply supported edges and centrally loaded ($n > 4$):



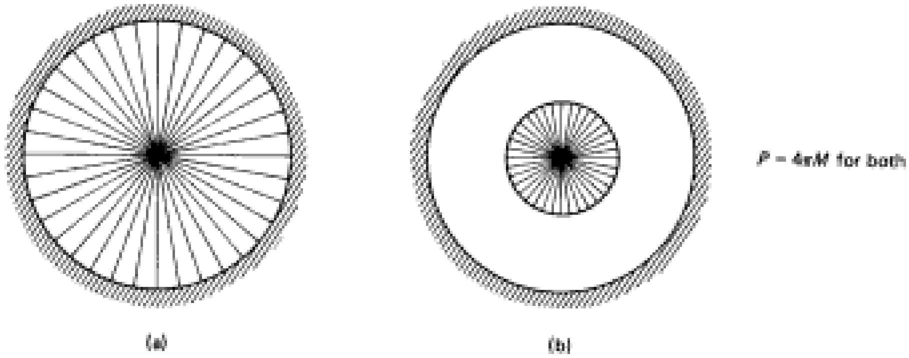
4. Square plates centrally loaded, having boundaries simply supported against downward movement but free for upward movement:



5. Circular centrally loaded plate simply supported along the edges:

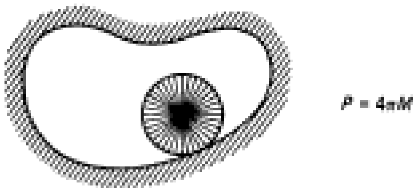


6. Circular plate with fully restrained edges and centrally loaded by point load P:

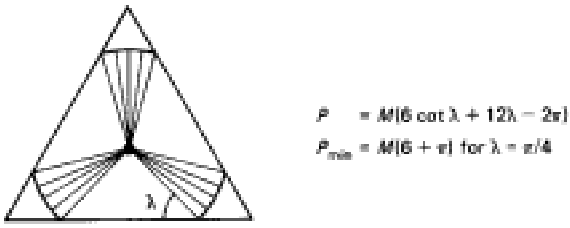


(a) (b)

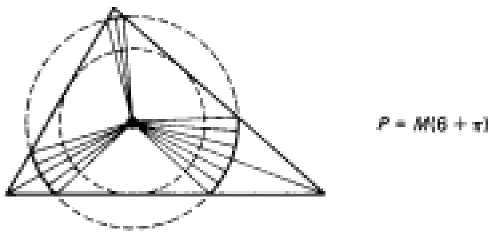
7. Point load P applied anywhere in arbitrarily shaped plate fully restrained on all boundaries:



8. Equilateral triangular plate with simply supported edges and centrally loaded by point load P:



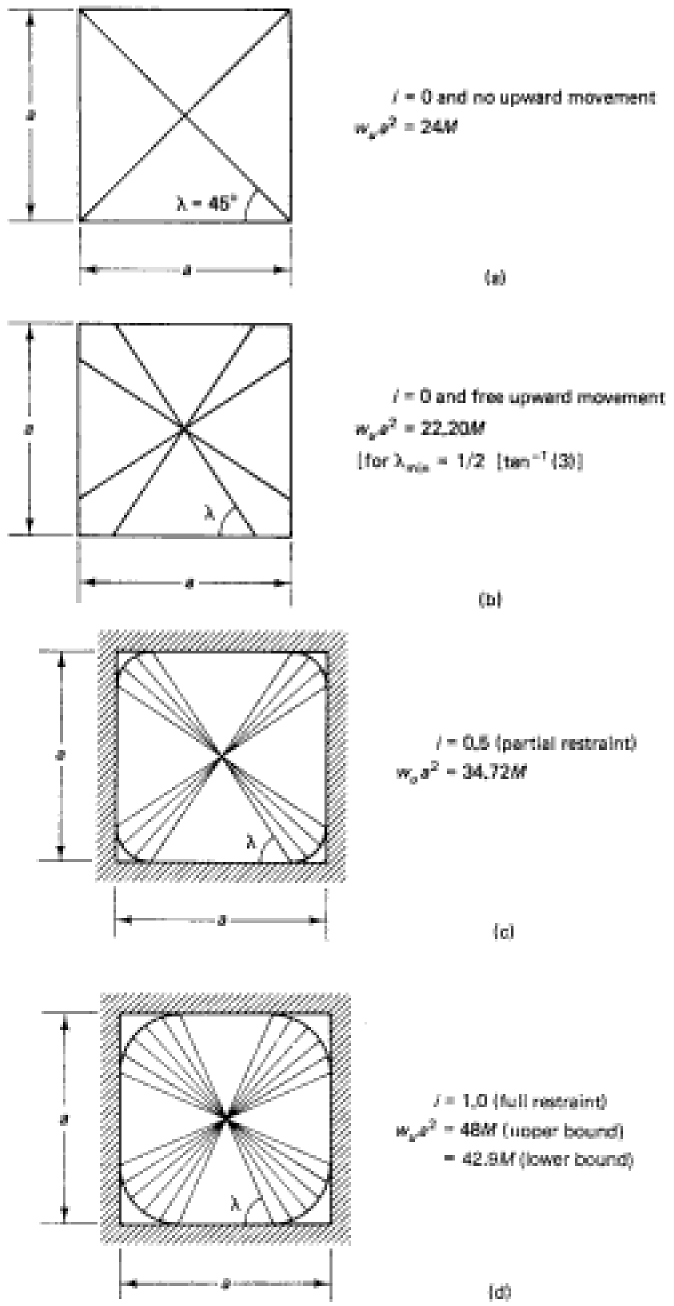
9. Acute-angled triangular plate on simply supported edges loaded with point load P at the center of the inscribed circle:



Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

14. Uniformly loaded square slab with degree of fixity i varying between zero and 1.0:



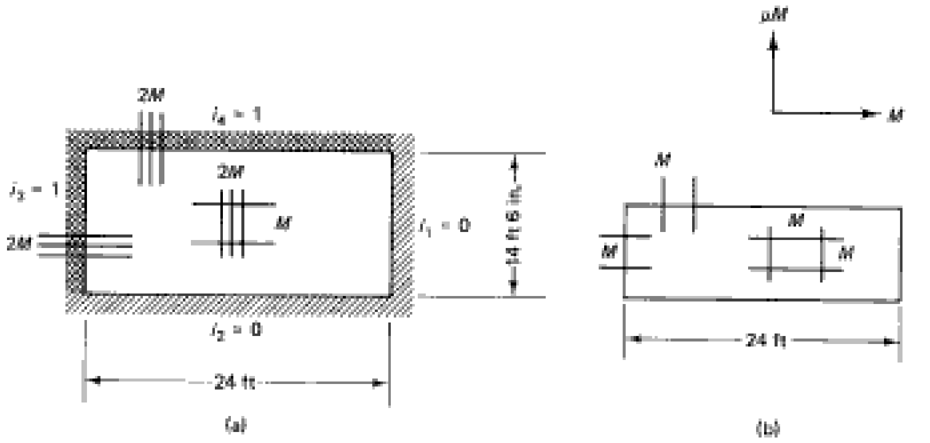


Figure 11.35 Slab geometry: (a) orthotropic; (b) affine.

11.10.3 Example 11.9: Rectangular Slab Yield-line Design

The reinforced concrete slab shown in Figure 11.35 is 14 ft 6 in. × 24 ft in plan (4.42 m × 7.32 m). It carries an external factored ultimate uniform load $w_u = 220$ psf (10.5 kPa), including its self-weight. It is simply supported on one long edge and the adjacent short edge and built in on the opposite edges. Let the reinforcement spanning the short direction be twice the reinforcement spanning the long direction. Also assume the reinforcement on the built-in edges to be equal to the strong reinforcement. Design the slab structure for flexure, including the reinforcement needed and its spacing, using the yield-line theory. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa), normal-weight concrete}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Solution: μ = ratio of reinforcement in the strong direction to the weak direction = 2. From Eq. 11.28, the expression for the unit moment in an affine rectangular slab is

$$M_y = \frac{w_u a_r^2}{24}\left[\sqrt{3 + \left(\frac{a_r}{b_r}\right)^2} - \frac{a_r}{b_r}\right]^2$$

Change to affine slab converting the span dimension:

$$a = 14.5 \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu}} = 14.5 \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = 10.25 \text{ ft}$$

$$a_r = \frac{2a}{\sqrt{i_2 + 1} + \sqrt{i_4 + 1}} = \frac{2 \times 10.25}{\sqrt{0 + 1} + \sqrt{1 + 1}}$$

$$= \frac{20.50}{2.414} = 8.492$$

$$b_r = \frac{2b}{\sqrt{1 + i_1} + \sqrt{1 + i_3}} = \frac{2 \times 24.0}{\sqrt{1 + 0} + \sqrt{1 + 1}}$$

$$= \frac{48.0}{2.414} = 19.884$$

$$\frac{a_r}{b_r} = \frac{8.492}{19.884} = 0.427$$

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

$$p' = \frac{p}{\sqrt{3\cos^2 30 + \sin^2 30}} = 0.632p$$

$$E_I = \Delta M \cot \phi + \Delta M \tan \phi$$

$$E_E = p' \times 16.866 \times \frac{\Delta}{2} = 8.433p'\,\Delta$$

But $E_I = E_E$; therefore,

$$\frac{p'}{M} = 0.1186 \cot \phi + 0.1186 \tan \phi$$

$$\phi_{min} = 45° \qquad \tan \phi = 1.0$$

Therefore,

$$p' = 2 \times 0.1186M = 0.237M$$

or

$$p = \frac{0.237}{0.632}M = 0.375M \quad \text{(as before)}$$

Design of reinforcement

$400 = 0.375M$ to give $M = 1067$ lb or $\mu M = 3 \times 1067 = 3200$ lb or ft-lb/ft. Assume that $h = 5$ in. ($d = 4$ in. $= 100$ mm).

$$3200 = d^2 \rho f_y (1 - 0.59\omega)$$

or

$$3200 = 4^2 \rho \times 60{,}000 \left(1 - 0.59\rho \times \frac{60{,}000}{4000}\right)$$

to give $\rho = 0.0034$. The required $A_s = 0.0034 \times 4 \times 12 = 0.163$ in.^{2}. Use No. 3 bars at 8 in. center to center in the short direction $= 0.165$ in.^{2} (9.53-mm diameter at 203 mm center to center) and No. 3 bars at $2h = 10$ in. center to center in the long direction to satisfy moment requirements.

SELECTED REFERENCES

11.1 ACI Committee 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete ACI* 318–08 and *Commentary* (ACI 318R–08), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2005, 465 pp.

11.2 CEB-FIP, *Concrete Design—U.S. and European Practices*, Joint ACI-CEB Symposium, Bulletin d'Information 113, Comité Euro-International du Béton, Paris, February 1990.

11.3 Gamble, W. L., Sozen, M. A., and Siess, C. P., *An Experimental Study of Reinforced Concrete Two-Way Floor Slab*, Civil Engineering Studies, Structural Research Series 211, University of Illinois, Urbana, Ill., 1961, 304 pp.

11.4 Corley, W. G., and Jirsa, J. D., "Equivalent Frame Analysis for Slab Design," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Proc. Vol. 67, No. 11, Farmington Hills, MI, November 1970, pp. 875–884.

11.5 Wang, C. K., and Salmon, C. G., *Reinforced Concrete Design*, 3rd ed., Harper & Row, New York, 918 pp.

11.6 Branson, D. E., *Deformation of Concrete Structures*, McGraw-Hill, NY, 1977, 546 pp.

11.7 Cross, H., and Morgan, N., *Continuous Frames of Reinforced Concrete*, Wiley, NY, 1954.

11.8 Rice, P. F., Hoffman, E. S., Gustafson, D. P., and Gouwens, A. J., *Structural Design Guide to the ACI Building Code*, 3rd ed., Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1985, 477 pp.

11.9 Reynolds, C. E., and Steedman, J. C., *Reinforced Concrete Designer's Handbook*, 9th ed., Viewpoint Publications, London, 1981, 505 pp.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

11.1 An end panel of a floor system supported by beams on all sides carries a uniform service live load $w_L = 75$ psf and an external dead load $w_D = 20$ psf in addition to its self-weight. The center-line dimensions of the panel are 18 ft × 20ft (the dimension of the discontinuous side is 18 ft). Design the panel and the size and spacing of the reinforcement using the ACI Code direct design method. Given:

$f'_c = 4000$ psi, normal-weight concrete
$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi
column sizes 20 in. × 20 in.
width of the supporting beam webs = 12 in.
assume reinforcement ratio $\rho \simeq 0.4\,\rho_b$ for the supporting beams.

11.2 Solve Problem 11.1 by the direct design method and by the equivalent frame method of the ACI Code assuming that the floor is a flat plate system with no edge beams.

11.3 Determine the size and spacing of reinforcement in the N–S direction of the floor slab in Ex. 11.3 for both the column and the middle strips.

11.4 Solve for the factored moments for the floor slab on beams in Ex. 11.1 using the coefficients in Figure 11.23.

11.5 An interior flat-plate panel is supported on columns spaced 18 ft × 20 ft. The panel dimensions, loading, and material properties are the same as those in Problem 11.1. Design the panel and size and spacing of the main as well as shear–moment transfer reinforcement by the ACI Code direct design method.

11.6 Calculate the time-dependent deflection at the center of the panel in (a) Problem 11.1 and (b) Problem 11.5. Check also if the panels satisfy the serviceability requirements for deflection control and crack control for aggressive environment. Assume that $K_{ec}/E_c = 350$ in.^{3} per radian for part (a) and = 225 in.^{3} per radian for part (b).

11.7 Use the yield-line theory to evaluate the slab thickness needed in the column zone of the flat plate in Problem 11.5 for flexure, assuming that the hinge field would have a radius of 24 in.

11.8 An isotropically reinforced long strip is simply supported on the edges. A concentrated load P acts on the minor axis of the slab midway between the long edges. Prove that the magnitude of the collapse load is $P = M(4 + 2\pi)$.

11.9 A slab 21 ft × 13 ft 6 in. carries an external factored ultimate load of 200 lb per square foot, including its self-weight. It is simply supported on one long edge and the adjacent short edge and built in on the opposite edges. Let the reinforcement spanning the short way be three times the reinforcement spanning the long way. Also assume the reinforcement on the built-in edges to be equal to the strong reinforcement. Design the slab structures and the reinforcement needed and its spacing using the yield-line theory. Given:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi, normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

11.10 Calculate the maximum crack width in a two-way interior panel of a reinforced concrete floor system. The slab thickness is 8 in. (203 mm) and the panel size is 20 ft × 28 ft (6.10 m × 8.53 m). Also design the size and spacing of the reinforcement necessary for crack control assuming that (a) the floor is exposed to normal environment; (b) the floor is part of a parking garage. Given: $f_y = 60.0$ ksi (414 MPa).

12

FOOTINGS

12.1 INTRODUCTION

Cumulative floor loads of a superstructure are supported by foundation substructures in direct contact with the soil. The function of the foundation is to transmit safely the high concentrated column and/or wall reactions or lateral loads from earth-retaining walls to the ground without causing unsafe differential settlement of the supported structural system or soil failure.

If the supporting foundations are not adequately proportioned, one part of a structure can settle more than an adjacent part. Various members of such a system become overstressed at the column–beam joints due to *uneven* settlement of the supports leading to large deformations. The additional bending and torsional moments in excess of the resisting capacity of the members can lead to excessive cracking due to yielding of the reinforcement and ultimately to failure.

If the total structure undergoes *even* settlement, little or no overstress occurs. Such behavior is observed when the foundation is excessively rigid and the supporting soil highly yielding such that a structure behaves similar to a floating body that can sink or tilt without breakage. Numerous examples of such structures can be found in such locations

Photo 12.1 One Shell Plaza, New Orleans. (Courtesy of Portland Cement Association.)

as Mexico City with buildings on mat foundations or rigid supports that sank several feet over the years due to the high consolidation of the supporting soil. Examples of other famous cases of very slow and relatively uneven consolidation process can be cited. Gradual loss of stability of a structure undergoing tilting with time, like the leaning Tower of Pisa, is an example of foundation problems resulting from uneven bearing support.

Layouts of structural supports vary widely and soil conditions differ from site to site and within a site. As a result, the type of foundation to be selected has to be governed by these factors and by optimal cost considerations. In summary, the structural engineer has to acquire the maximum economically feasible soil data on the site before embarking on a study of the various possible alternatives for site layout.

Basic knowledge of soil mechanics and foundation engineering is assumed in presenting the topic of design of footings in this chapter. Background knowledge of the methodology of determining the resistance of cohesive and noncohesive soils is necessary to select the appropriate bearing capacity value for the particular site and the particular foundation system under consideration.

The bearing capacity of soils is usually determined by borings, test pits, or other soil investigations. If these are not available for the preliminary design, representative values at the footing level can normally be used from Table 12.1.

Table 12.1 Presumptive Bearing Capacity (tons/ft^2)

Type of Soil	Bearing Capacity
Massive crystalline bedrock, such as granite, diorite, gneiss, and trap rock	100
Foliated rocks, such as schist or slate	40
Sedimentary rocks, such as hard shales, sandstones, limestones, and siltstones	15
Gravel and gravel–sand mixtures (GW and GP soils)	
Densely compacted	5
Medium compacted	4
Loose, not compacted	3
Sands and gravely sands, well graded (SW soil)	
Densely compacted	$3\frac{3}{4}$
Medium compacted	3
Loose, not compacted	$2\frac{1}{4}$
Sands and gravely sands, poorly graded (SP soil)	
Densely compacted	3
Medium compacted	$2\frac{1}{2}$
Loose, not compacted	$1\frac{3}{4}$
Silty gravels and gravel–sand–silt mixtures (GM soil)	
Densely compacted	$2\frac{1}{2}$
Medium compacted	2
Loose, not compacted	$1\frac{1}{2}$
Silty sand and silt-sand mixtures (SM soil)	2
Clayey gravels, gravel–sand–clay mixtures, clayey sands, sand–clay mixtures (GC and SC soils)	2
Inorganic silts, and fine sands; silty or clayey fine sands and clayey silts, with slight plasticity; inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity; gravely clays; sandy clays; silty clays; lean clays (ML and CL soils)	1
Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays; micaceous or diatomaceous fine sand or silty soils, elastic silts (CH and MH soils)	1

12.2 TYPES OF FOUNDATIONS

There are basically six types of foundation substructures, as shown in Figure 12.1. The foundation area must be adequate to carry the column loads, the footing weight, and any overburden weight within the permissible soil pressure.

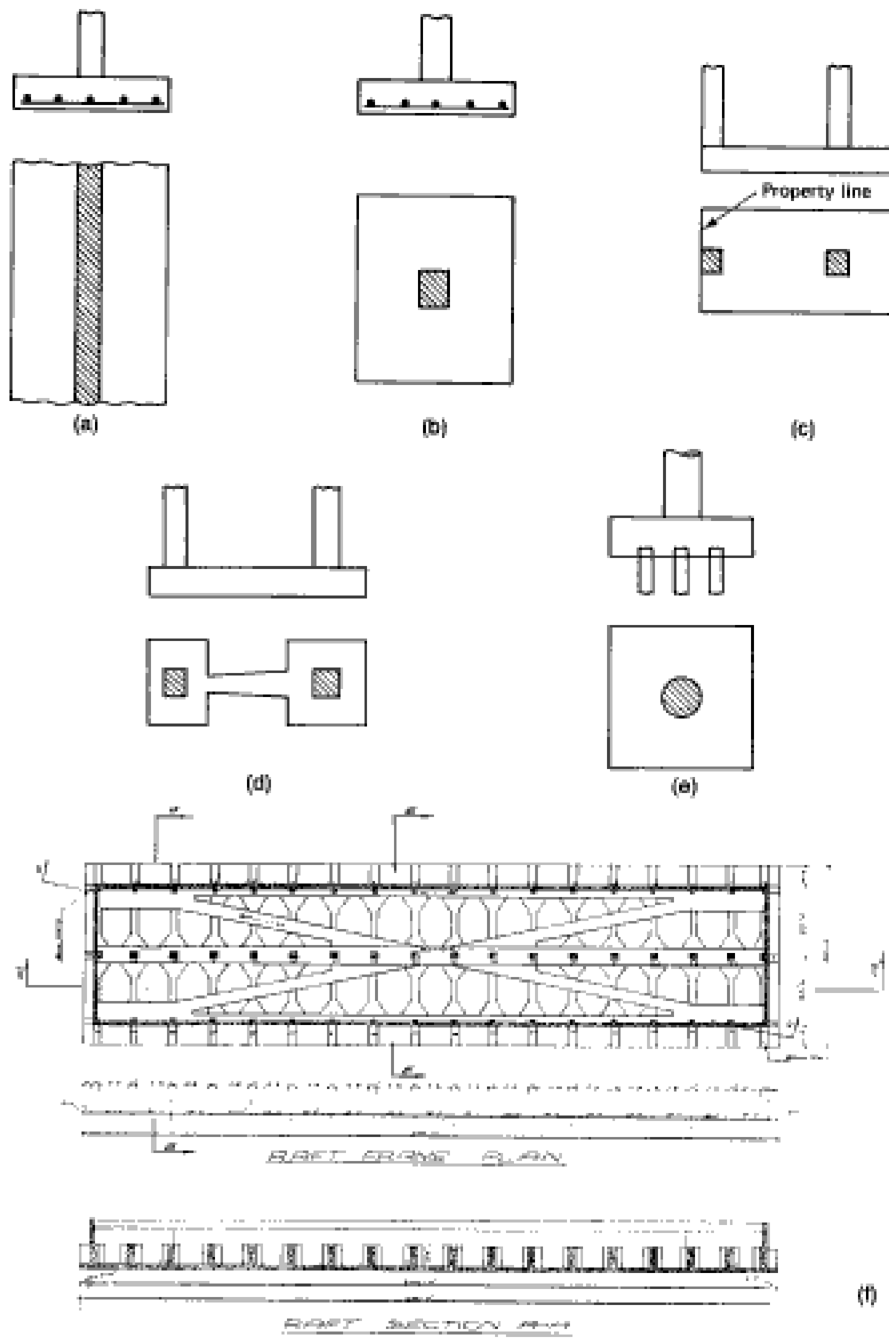


Figure 12.1 Types of foundations: (a) wall footing; (b) isolated footing; (c) combined footing; (d) strap footing; (e) pile foundation; (f) raft foundation.

1. *Wall footings.* Such footings comprise a continuous slab strip along the length of the wall having a width larger than the wall thickness. The projection of the slab footing is treated as a cantilever loaded up by the distributed soil pressure. The length of the projection is determined by the soil bearing pressure, with the critical section for bending being at the face of the wall. The main reinforcement is placed perpendicular to the wall direction.
2. *Independent isolated column footings.* These consist of rectangular or square slabs of either constant thickness or sloping toward the cantilever tip. They are reinforced in both directions and are economical for relatively small loads or for footings on rock.
3. *Combined footings.* Such footings support two or more column loads. They are necessary when a wall column has to be placed on a property line and the footing slab cannot project outside the property line. In such a case, an independent footing would be eccentrically loaded, causing apparent tension on the foundation soil.

   In order to achieve a relatively uniform stress distribution, the footing for the exterior wall column can be combined with the footing of the adjoining interior column. Additionally, combined footings are also used when the distance between adjoining columns is relatively small, such as in the case of corridor columns, when it becomes more economical to build a combined footing for the closely spaced columns.
4. *Cantilever or strap footings.* These are similar to the combined footings, except that the footings for the exterior and interior columns are built independently. They are joined by a strap beam to transmit the effect of the bending moment produced by the eccentric wall column load to the interior column footing area.
5. *Pile foundations.* This type of foundation is essential when the supporting ground consists of structurally unsound layers of material to large depths. The piles may be driven either to solid bearing on rocks or hardpan or deep enough into the soil to develop the allowable capacity of the pile through skin frictional resistance or a combination of both. The piles could be either precast, and hence driven into the soil, or cast in place by drilling a caisson and subsequently filling it with concrete. The precast piles could be reinforced or prestressed concrete. Other types of piles are made of steel or treated wood. In all types, the piles have to be provided with appropriately designed concrete caps reinforced in both directions.
6. *Raft, mat, or floating foundations.* Such foundation systems are necessary when the allowable bearing capacity of soil is very low to great depths, making pile foundations uneconomical. In this case it becomes necessary to have a deep enough excavation with sufficient depth of soil removed that the net bearing pressure of the soil on the foundation is almost equivalent to the structure load. It becomes necessary to spread the foundation substructure over the entire area of the building such that the superstructure is considered to be theoretically floating on a raft. Continuously consolidating soils require such a substructure, which is basically an inverted floor system. Otherwise, friction piles or piles driven to rock become mandatory.

12.3 SHEAR AND FLEXURAL BEHAVIOR OF FOOTINGS

To simplify foundation design, footings are assumed to be rigid and the supporting soil layers elastic. Consequently, uniform or uniformly varying soil distribution can be assumed. The net soil pressure is used in the calculation of bending moments and shears by subtracting the footing weight intensity and the surcharge from the total soil pressure. If a column footing is considered as an inverted floor segment where the intensity of net soil

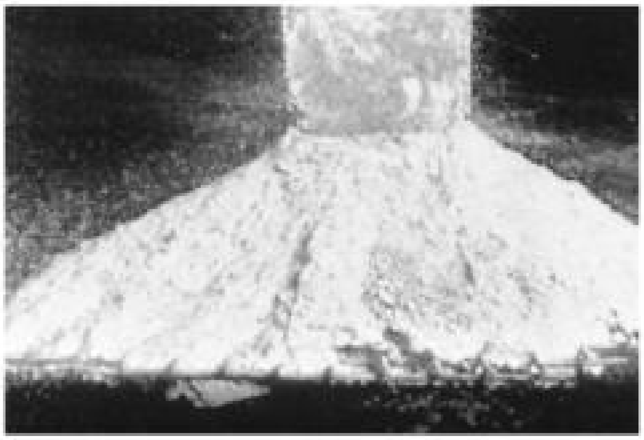


Photo 12.2 Reinforced concrete footing after excavation. (Tests by F. E. Richart.)

pressure is considered to be acting as a column-supported cantilever slab, the slab would be subjected to both bending and shear in a similar manner to a floor slab subjected to gravity loads.

When heavy concentrated loads are involved, it has been found that shear rather than flexure controls most foundation designs. The mechanism of shear failure in footing slabs is similar to that in supported floor slabs. However, the shear capacity is considerably higher than that of beams, as will be discussed in the next section. Since the footing in most cases bends in double curvature, shear and bending about both principal axes of the footing plan have to be considered.

The state of stress at any element in the footing is due primarily to the combined effects of shear, flexure, and axial compression. Consequently, a basic understanding of the fundamental behavior of the footing slab and the cracking mechanism involved is essential. It enables developing a background feeling for the underlying hypothesis used in the analysis and design requirements of footings both in shear and in flexure.

12.3.1 Failure Mechanism

The inclined shear cracks develop in essentially the same manner as in beams, stabilizing at approximately 65% of the ultimate load and extending rapidly toward the neutral axis. Thereafter, the cracks propagate slowly toward the compression zone such that a very shallow depth in compression remains at failure.

The inclined cracks always form close to the concentrated load or column reaction in two-way slabs or footings, as seen in Figure 12.2a. This is due partly to the heavy concentration of bending moments in the region close to the column face, forming a truncated pyramid at the foot of the column region. The column can perimetrically punch through the slab in this failure form if the slab is not adequately designed to resist shear failure (also called *diagonal tension* or *punching shear*). The action of the confining surrounding punched slab on the column base interface punching through the slab in Figure 12.2b can be represented by the resulting shear forces V_1 and V_2, the compressive forces, C_1 and C_2 and the tensile forces T_1 and T_2, in addition to the internal dowel and membrane action of the slab.

Figure 12.2c shows an infinitesimal element taken from the compression zone above the inclined crack. The element is subjected to the following four stress components: (1) vertical shear stress v_0, (2) direct compressive stress f_c, (3) vertical compressive stress f_3, and (4) lateral compressive stress f_2.

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

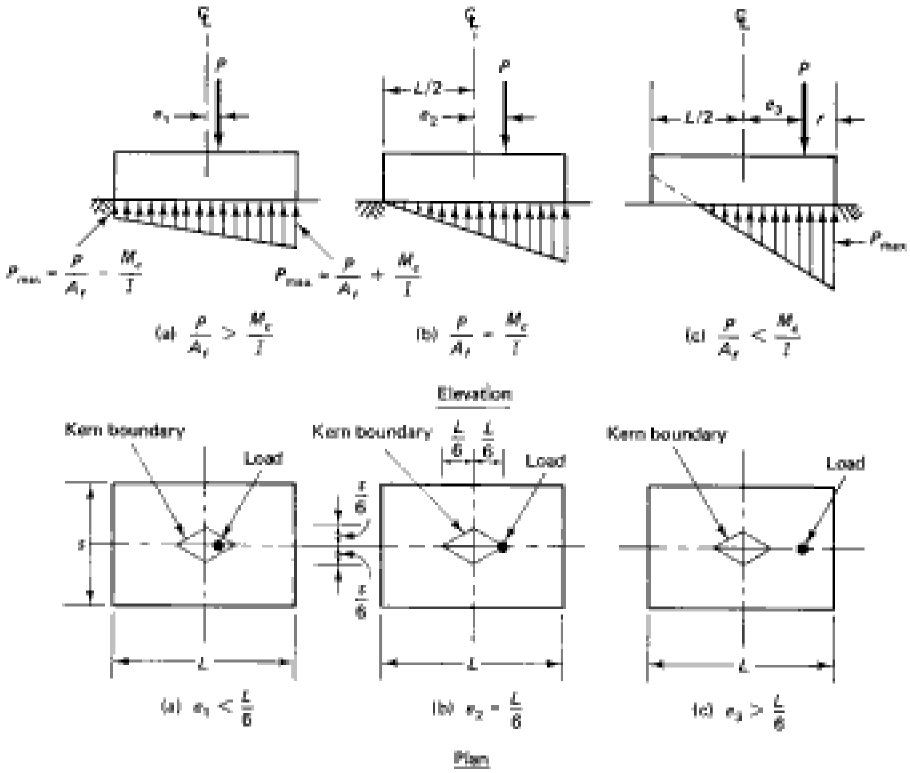


Figure 12.3 Eccentrically loaded footings.

$$p_{max} = \frac{P}{A_f} + \frac{Pe_1c}{I} \tag{12.1a}$$

$$p_{min} = \frac{P}{A_f} - \frac{Pe_1c}{I} \tag{12.1b}$$

2. *Eccentricity case* $e_2 = L/6$ (Fig. 12.3b):

$$\text{direct stress} = \frac{P}{A_f} = \frac{P}{sL} \tag{12.2a}$$

$$\text{bending stress} = \frac{Mc}{I} = Pe_2 \times \frac{c}{I} \tag{12.2b}$$

$$\frac{c}{I} = \frac{L/2}{s(L^3/12)} = \frac{1}{s(L^2/6)} = \frac{6}{sL^2} \tag{12.2c}$$

Figure 12.4 Biaxial loading of footing.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

ings indicate a densely compacted gravel–sand soil. Determine the required area of the footing and the net soil pressure intensity p_n to which it is subjected. Given:

$$\text{unit weight of soil } \gamma = 135 \text{ lb/ft}^3 \text{ } (21.1 \text{ kN/m}^3)$$

$$\text{footing slab thickness} = 2 \text{ ft } (0.61 \text{ m})$$

Solution: Since the footing is concentrically loaded, the soil bearing pressure is considered uniformly distributed assuming the footing is rigid. From the soil test borings and Table 12.1, the presumptive bearing capacity of the soil is 5 tons/ft² at the level of the footing, that is, 10,000 lb/ft² (478.8 kPa). Assume that the average weight of the soil and concrete above the footing is 135 pcf. Since the top of the footing has to be below the frost line (minimum 3 ft below grade), the net allowable pressure is

$$p_n = 10{,}000 - (5 \times 135 + 100 \text{ psf for surcharge paving}) = 9225 \text{ psf}$$

$$\text{minimum area of footing } A_f = \frac{400{,}000}{9{,}225} = 43.36 \text{ ft}^2$$

Use square footing 6 ft 8 in. × 6 ft 8 in. (2.03 m × 2.03 m):

$$A_f = 44.44 \text{ ft}^2 \text{ } (4.13 \text{ m}^2) > 43.36 \text{ ft}^2$$

12.4.3 Example 12.2: Eccentrically Loaded Footings

A reinforced concrete footing supports a 14 in. × 14 in. column reaction $P = 400{,}000$ lb (1779 kN) at the frost line (3 ft below grade). The load acts at an eccentricity $e_1 = 0.4$ ft, $e_2 = 1.3$ ft, and $e_3 = 2.2$ ft. Select the necessary area of footing assuming that it is rigid and has a thickness $h = 2\frac{1}{2}$ ft. Soil test borings indicate that the bearing area is composed of layers of shale and clay to a considerable depth below the foundation. Use a unit weight $\gamma = 140$ lb/ft³.

Solution: From Table 12.1, assume an allowable bearing capacity $p_g = 6.5$ tons/ft² (13,000 lb/ft²) at the footing base level.

Eccentricity $e_1 = 0.4$ ft

By trial and adjustment, assume a footing 5 ft × 9 ft (1.52 m × 2.74 m), $A_f = 45$ ft². Assume that the footing base is 6 ft below grade and that a slab on grade surcharge weighs 120 psf. Assume that the average weight of the soil and footing is ≈ 140 pcf.

$$\text{net allowable bearing pressure } p_n = 13{,}000 - (6 \times 140 + 120)$$
$$= 12{,}040 \text{ lb/ft}^2 \text{ } (576.5 \text{ KPa})$$

Stress due to the service eccentric column load is

$$p = \frac{P}{A_f} \pm \frac{P \times e}{I/c} = \frac{400{,}000}{45} \pm \frac{400{,}000 \times 0.46 \times 6}{5(9)^2}, \quad \text{where } \frac{I}{c} = \frac{bh^2}{6}$$

$$= 8889 \pm 2370 = 11{,}259 \text{ lb/ft}^2 \text{ (C) and } 6519 \text{ lb/ft}^2 \text{ (C)} < 12{,}040 \text{ lb/ft}^2$$

The distribution of the bearing pressure is as shown in Figure 12.6a; therefore, O.K.

Eccentricity $e_2 = 1.3$ ft

By trial and adjustment, assume a footing 6 ft × 10 ft (1.83 m × 3.05 m), $A_f = 60$ ft² (5.57 m²). The actual service load-bearing pressure is

$$p = \frac{400{,}000}{60.0} \pm \frac{400{,}000 \times 1.3 \times 6}{6(10)^2}$$

$$= 6667 \pm 5200 = 11{,}867 \text{ lb/ft}^2 \text{ (C) and } 1467 \text{ lb/ft}^2 \text{ (C)}$$

$< 12{,}040$ lb/ft²; therefore, O.K.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hence the permissible bearing stress on the column can normally be considered $0.60 f'_c$ for the column concrete. The compressive force that *exceeds* that developed by the permissible bearing stress at the base of the column or at the top of the footing has to be carried by dowels or extended longitudinal bars.

As the footing supporting surface is wider on all sides than the loaded area, the code allows the design bearing strength on the loaded area to be multiplied by $\sqrt{A_2/A_1}$, but the value of $\sqrt{A_2/A_1}$ cannot exceed 2.0. A_1 is the loaded area and A_2 is the maximum area of the supporting surface that is geometrically similar and concentric with the loaded area.

A minimum area of reinforcement of $0.005A_g$ (but not less than four bars) has to be provided across the interface of the column and the footing even when the concrete bearing strength is not exceeded, A_g (in.^{2}) being the gross area of the column cross section.

Lateral forces due to horizontal normal loads, wind, or earthquake can be resisted by shear-friction reinforcement, as described in Section 6.10.

12.7 OPERATIONAL PROCEDURE FOR THE DESIGN OF FOOTINGS

The following sequence of steps can be used for the selection and geometrical proportioning of the size and reinforcement spacing in footings.

1. Determine the allowable bearing capacity of the soil based on site boring test data and soil investigations.
2. Determine the service loads and bending moments acting at the base of the columns supporting the superstructure. Select the controlling service load and moment combinations.
3. Calculate the required area of the footing by dividing the total controlling service load by the selected allowable bearing capacity of the soil if the load is concentric or by also taking into account the controlling bending stress if combined load and bending moments exist.
4. Calculate the factored loads and moments for the controlling loading condition and find the required nominal resisting values by dividing the factored loads and moments by the applicable strength reduction factors ϕ.
5. By trial and adjustment, determine the required effective depth d of the section that has adequate punching shear capacity at a distance d from the support face for one-way action and at a distance $d/2$ for two-way action such that $V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d$ for one-way action and V_c = smallest of values from Eqs. 12.6 for two-way action, where b_w is the footing width for one-way action and b_0 is the perimeter of the failure planes in two-way action. Use an average value of d, since there are two reinforcing mats in the footing. If the footing is rectangular, check the beam shear capacity in each direction on planes at a distance d from the face of the column support.
6. Calculate the factored moment of resistance M_u on a plane at the face of the column support due to the controlling factored loads from that plane to the extremity of the footing. Find $M_n = M_u/(\phi = 0.9)$. Select a total reinforcement area A_s based on M_n and the applicable effective depth.
7. Determine the size and spacing of the flexural reinforcement in the long and short directions:
   (a) Distribute the steel uniformly across the width of the footing in the long direction.
   (b) Determine the portion A_{s1} of the total steel area A_s determined in step 6 for the short direction to be uniformly distributed over the central band:

$$A_{s1} = \frac{2}{\beta + 1} A_s$$

Distribute uniformly the remainder of the reinforcement ($A_s - A_{s1}$) outside the center band of the footing. Verify that the area of steel in each principal direction of the footing plan exceeds the minimum value required for temperature and shrinkage: $A_s = 0.0018 b_w d$ for sections reinforced with grade 60 steel and $0.0020 b_w d$ with grade 40 steel.

8. Check the development length and anchorage available to verify that bond requirements are satisfied (see Chapter 10).
9. Check the bearing stresses on the column and the footing at their area of contact such that the bearing strength P_{nb} for both is larger than the nominal value of column reaction $P_n = P_u/(\phi = 0.70)$. For footing bearing $P_{nb} = \sqrt{A_2/A_1}\,(0.85 f'_c A)$, $\sqrt{A_2/A_1}$ not to exceed 2.0.
10. Determine the number and size of the dowel bars that transfer the column load to the footing slab.

Figure 12.9 presents a flowchart for the sequence of calculation operations.

12.7.1 SI Footing Design Expressions

$$E_c = w_c^{1.5}\, 0.043 \sqrt{f'_c}\ \text{MPa}$$

$$f_r = 0.7 \sqrt{f'_c}$$

$$K_{tr} = \frac{1.4\, A_{tr}}{sn} \qquad \text{where } f_{yt} \text{ is in MPa}$$

$$\ell_d = d_b \left[\frac{15 f_y \psi_t \psi_e \psi_s}{16 \lambda \sqrt{f'_c} \left(\dfrac{c + K_{tr}}{d_b} \right)} \right]$$

If $\psi_t = \psi_e = \psi_s = \lambda = 1.0$ and $f'_c = 27.6$ MPa,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{bars} \le \text{No. 20 M}, \quad & s \ge 2d_b: \quad \ell_d = 38 d_b \\ & s < 2d_b: \quad \ell_d = 57 d_b \\ \text{bars} \le \text{No. 25 M}, \quad & s > 2d_b: \quad \ell_d = 48 d_b \\ & s \le 2d_b: \quad \ell_d = 72 d_b \end{aligned}$$

Shear in beam action

$$V_c = 2\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d$$

Shear in two-way action

The smallest of

$$V_c = \left(2 + \frac{4}{\beta}\right) \lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_0 d/12$$

$$V_c = \left(\frac{\alpha_s d}{b_0} + 2\right) \lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_0 d/12$$

$$V_c = 4\, \lambda \sqrt{f'_c}\, b_0 d/12$$

$\alpha_s = 40$ for interior columns, $\alpha_s = 30$ for edge columns, and $\alpha_s = 20$ for corner columns.

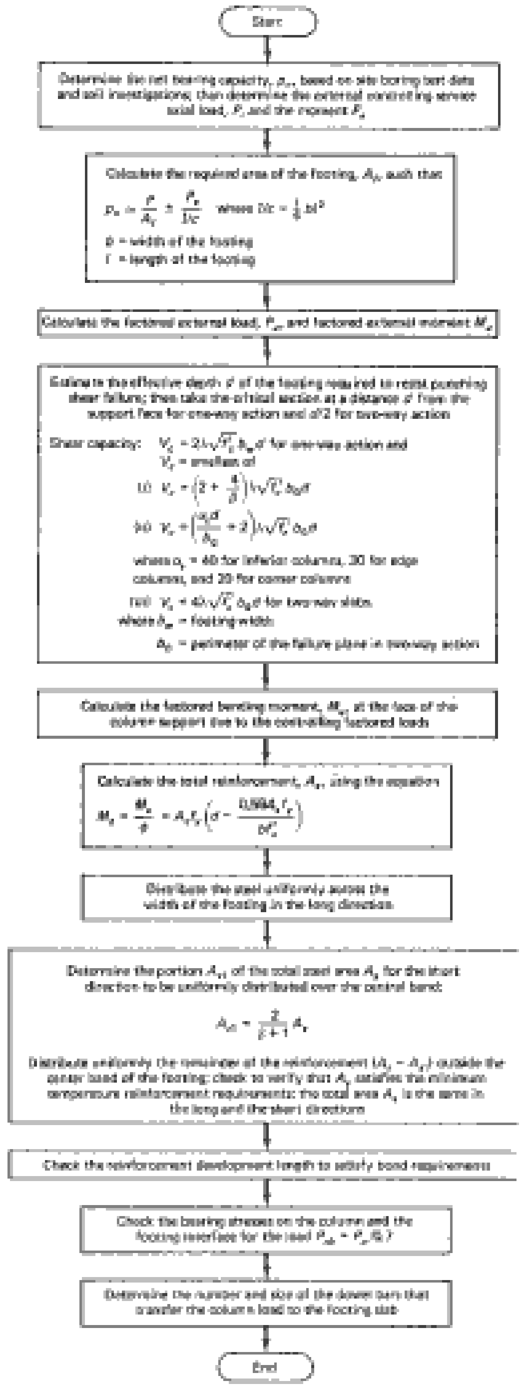


Figure 12.9 Flowchart for footing design.

12.8 EXAMPLES OF FOOTING DESIGN

12.8.1 Example 12.3: Design of Two-way Isolated Footing

Design the footing thickness and reinforcement distribution for the isolated square footing in Ex. 12.1 if the total service load $P = 400{,}000$ comprises 230,000 lb (1023 kN) dead load and 170,000 lb (756 kN) live load. Given:

$$f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi (20.7 MPa), normal-weight concrete (footing)}$$
$$f'_c = 5500 \text{ psi (37.9 MPa) in column}$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

Solution: *Factored load intensity (step 4)*

Data from Ex. 12.1:

column size = 14 in. × 14 in. (356 mm × 356 mm)

footing area = 6 ft 8 in. × 6 ft in 8 in. (2.03 m × 2.03 m), $A_f = 44.49$ ft^2

assumed footing slab thickness $h = 2$ ft

factored load $U = 1.2 \times 230{,}000 + 1.6 \times 170{,}000 = 548{,}000$ lb

$$\text{factored load intensity} = q_s = \frac{U}{A_f} = \frac{548{,}000}{44.49} = 12{,}317 \text{ lb/ft}^2 \text{ (590 kPa)}$$

Shear capacity (step 5)

Assume that the thickness of the footing slab ≃ 2 ft. The average depth $d = h - 3$ in. minimum clear cover minus steel diameter ≃ 20 in.

Beam action (at d from support face): The area to be considered for factored shear V_u is shown as *ABCD* in Figure 12.10.

$$\text{factored } V_u = 12{,}317\left(\frac{6 \text{ ft } 8 \text{ in.}}{2} - \frac{14}{2 \times 12} - \frac{20}{12}\right)(6 \text{ ft } 8 \text{ in.}) = 88{,}920 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{88{,}920}{0.75} = 118{,}560 \text{ lb}$$

$$b_w = 6 \text{ ft } 8 \text{ in.} = 80 \text{ in. (2.03 m)}$$

$$\text{available } V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 2\sqrt{3000} \times 80 \times 20 = 175{,}271 \text{ lb}$$

Two-way action (at d/2 from support face): The area to be considered for factored shear V_u is equal to the total area of footing less area *EFGH* of the failure zone.

$$\text{factored } V_u = 12{,}317\left[44.49 - \left(\frac{14 + 20}{12}\right)^2\right] = 449{,}105 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{V_u}{0.75} = 598{,}807 \text{ lb (2663 kN)}$$

$$b_0 = \text{perimeter of failure zone } EFGH = (14 + 20)4 = 136 \text{ in.}$$

$$\beta = \frac{14}{14} = 1.0$$

The available nominal shear strength from Eqs. 12.6 is the smallest of

$$V_c = \left(2 + \frac{4}{\beta}\right)\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_0 d \le 4\,\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_0 d$$

Hidden page

$$M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{3,727,755}{0.90} = 4,141,950 \text{ in.-lb}$$

(468 kN-m)

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2} \right)$$

Assume that $(d - a/2) = 0.9d$. Use average $d = 20$ in.

$$4,141,950 = A_s \times 60,000 \times 0.9 \times 20$$

or

$$A_s = \frac{4,141,950}{60,000 \times 0.9 \times 20} = 3.84 \text{ in.}^2\text{/80-in. band}$$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{3.84 \times 60,000}{0.85 \times 3000 \times 80} = 1.13 \text{ in.}$$

$$4,141,950 = A_s \times 60,000 \left(20.0 - \frac{1.13}{2} \right)$$

$$A_s = 3.55 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad \rho = \frac{A_s}{bd} = \frac{3.55}{80 \times 20} = 0.0022$$

Minimum allowable shrinkage steel

$$\rho_{min} = 0.0018 < \rho \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Use 12 No. 5 bars ($A_s = 3.66$ in.^{2}) each way spaced at $\simeq 6\frac{1}{2}$ in. (165 mm) center to center.

Development of reinforcement (step 8)

The critical section for development-length determination is the same as the critical section in flexure, that is, at the face of the column. From Table 10.2 $\ell_d = 24$ in. for No. 5 bars (bottom bars).

$$\text{check } \sqrt{f'_c} = \sqrt{3000} = 54.8 < 100 \qquad \text{O.K.;} \qquad s = 6\frac{1}{2} \text{ in.} > 2d_b$$

Use $l_d = 24$ in. The projection length of each bar beyond the column face is

$$\frac{1}{2}(6 \text{ ft } 8 \text{ in.} - 14 \text{ in.}) - 3 \text{ in. cover} = 30 \text{ in.} > 24 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Force transfer at interface of column and footing (step 9)

Column $f'_c = 5500$ psi. Factored $P_u = 548,000$ lb.

(a) Bearing strength on column using Eq. 12.8b:

$$\phi P_{nb} = 0.70 \times 0.85 f'_c A_1 = 0.60 f'_c A_1$$

or

$$\phi P_{nb} = 0.60 f'_c A_1 = 0.60 \times 5500 \times 14 \times 14$$
$$= 646,800 \text{ lb} > 548,000 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

From step 9 of the design operational procedure on bearing strength on footing concrete,

$$\sqrt{\frac{A_2}{A_1}} = \sqrt{\frac{(6 \text{ ft } 8 \text{ in.}) \times (6 \text{ ft } 8 \text{ in.})}{(14 \times 14)/144}} = 5.714 > 2.0 \qquad \text{use } 2.0$$

$$\phi P_{nb} = 2.0(0.60 f'_c A_1) = 2.0 \times 0.60 \times 3000 \times 14 \times 14 = 705,600 \text{ lb}$$
$$> 548,000 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Dowel bars between column and footing (step 10)

Even though the bearing strength at the interface between the column and the footing slab is adequate to transfer the factored P_u, a minimum area of reinforcement is necessary across the interface. The minimum $A_s = 0.005\ (14 \times 14) = 0.98$ in.^{2}, but not less than four bars. Use four No. 5 bars as dowels ($A_s = 1.22$ in.^{2}).

Development of dowel reinforcement in compression: From Eqs. 10.7 a and b for No. 5 bars and Section 10.3.5,

$$l_{db} = \frac{0.02 d_b f_y}{\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}}$$

where $\lambda = 1.0$ for normal weight concrete
and $l_{db} \geq 0.0003 d_b f_y$, where d_b is the dowel bar diameter. Within column,

$$l_d = \frac{0.02 \times 0.625 \times 60{,}000}{\sqrt{5500}} = 10.11 \text{ in.}$$

$$0.0003 \times 0.625 \times 60{,}000 = 11.25 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{controls}$$

Within footing,

$$l_d = \frac{0.02 \times 0.625 \times 60{,}000}{\sqrt{3000}} = 13.69 \text{ in.}$$

Available length for development above the footing reinforcement assuming column bars size to be the same as the dowel bars size:

$$\begin{aligned} l &= 24 - 3\ (\text{cover}) - 2 \times 0.625\ (\text{footing bars}) - 0.625\ (\text{dowels}) \\ &= 19.13 > 13.69 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{O.K.} \end{aligned}$$

12.8.2 Example 12.4: Design of Two-way Rectangular Isolated Footing

Determine the size and distribution of the bending reinforcement of an isolated rectangular footing subjected to a concentrated concentric factored column load P_u = 680,000 lb (3025 kN) and having an area 10 ft × 15 ft (3.05 m × 4.57 m). Given:

$$f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi (20.7 MPa), footing}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (413.7 MPa)}$$

$$\text{column size} = 14 \text{ in.} \times 18 \text{ in.}$$

Solution: factored load intensity $q_s = \dfrac{680{,}000}{10 \times 15} = 4533$ lb/ft^2

Shear capacity (step 5)

Through trial and adjustment, assume that the footing slab is 2 ft 4 in. thick.

Beam action (at distance d from column face): Average effective depth = 2 ft 4 in. − 3 in. (cover) − $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (diameter of bars in first layer) = 24 in.

From Figure 12.11, length *CD* subjected to bearing intensity q_s, in one-way beam action:

$$\frac{15 \text{ ft}}{2} - \frac{18 \text{ in.}}{2 \times 12} - \frac{24 \text{ in.}}{12} = 4 \text{ ft } 9 \text{ in.} = 57 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{factored } V_u = 4533 \times 10 \text{ ft} \times 4 \text{ ft } 9 \text{ in.} = 215{,}318 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{215{,}318}{0.75} = 287{,}090 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{available } V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 2\sqrt{3000} \times 120 \times 24$$

$$= 315{,}488 \text{ lb} > 287{,}090 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

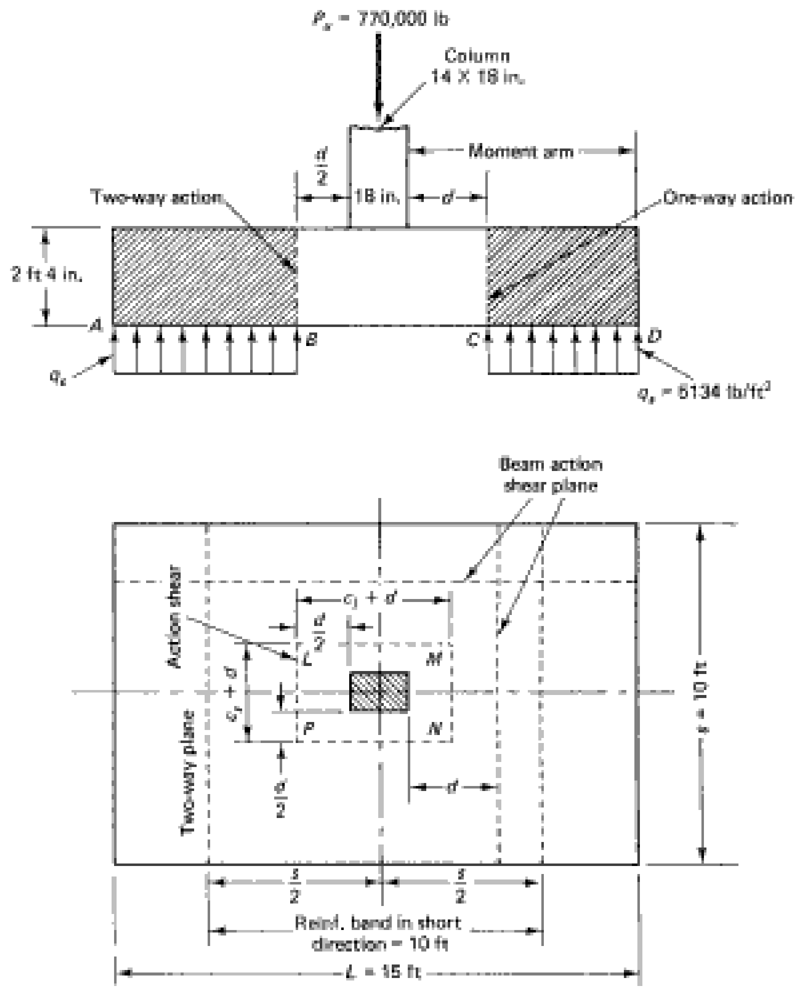


Figure 12.11 Beam action and two-way action planes in Ex. 12.4.

Notice that the shorter side length was used for b_w to give the lower available V_n value.

Two-way action (at distance d/2 from column face):

loaded area outside the failure zone $LMNP$ in Figure 12.11

$$= 15 \times 10 - (c_l + d)(c_s + d)$$

$$= 150 - \frac{(18 + 24)(14 + 24)}{144}$$

$$= 138.92 \text{ ft}^2$$

$$\text{factored } V_u = 4533 \times 138.92 = 629{,}724 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{629{,}724}{0.75} = 839{,}632 \text{ lb (3735 kN)}$$

$$\text{perimeter of shear failure plane } b_0 = 2[(c_l + d) + (c_s + d)]$$

$$= 2[(18 + 24) + (14 + 24)] = 160 \text{ in.}$$

From Eqs. 12.6,

$$V_c = \left(2 + \frac{4}{\beta}\right)\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_0 d \le 4\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_0 d$$

$$\beta = \frac{18}{14} = 1.286 \qquad \lambda = 1.0$$

or

$$V_c = \left(2 + \frac{4}{1.286}\right)\sqrt{3000} \times 160 \times 24 = 1{,}074{,}851 \text{ lb.}$$

$$V_c = \left(\frac{\alpha_s d}{b_0} + 2\right)\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_0 d = \left(\frac{40 \times 24}{160} + 2\right)\sqrt{3000} \times 160 \times 24$$

$$= 1{,}682{,}604 \text{ lb}$$

and

$$V_c = 4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_0 d = 4\sqrt{3000} \times 160 \times 24$$

$$= 841{,}302 \text{ lb}, \qquad \text{controls} > 839{,}632 \text{ lb} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Design of two-way reinforcement

The critical section for bending is at the face of the column. The controlling moment arm is in the long direction:

$$\frac{15 \text{ ft}}{2} - \frac{18 \text{ in.}}{2 \times 12} = 6.75 \text{ ft } (2.06 \text{ m})$$

$$\text{factored moment } M_u = 4533 \times \frac{10(6.75)^2}{2}$$

$$= 1{,}032{,}674 \text{ ft-lb} = 12{,}392{,}089 \text{ in.-lb } (1400 \text{ kN-m})$$

$$M_n = \frac{12{,}392{,}089}{0.9} = 13{,}768{,}988 \text{ in.-lb } (1555 \text{ kN-m})$$

Assume that $(d - a/2) \simeq 0.9d$.

$$M_n = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad 13{,}768{,}988 = A_s \times 60{,}000 \times 0.9 \times 24$$

$$A_s = \frac{13{,}768{,}988}{60{,}000 \times 0.9 \times 24} = 10.62 \text{ in.}^2/10\text{-ft-wide strip}$$

Check:

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{10.62 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 3000 \times 120} = 2.08 \text{ in.}$$

$$13{,}768{,}988 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(24 - \frac{2.08}{2}\right)$$

$$A_s = 10.0 \text{ in.}^2 = \frac{10.0}{10 \text{ ft}} = 1.0 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ ft/width}$$

Try No. 8 bars, $A_s = 0.79$ in.^{2} per bar.

$$\text{number of bars in the long direction} = \frac{10.0}{0.79} = 12.68$$

Use 14 bars.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

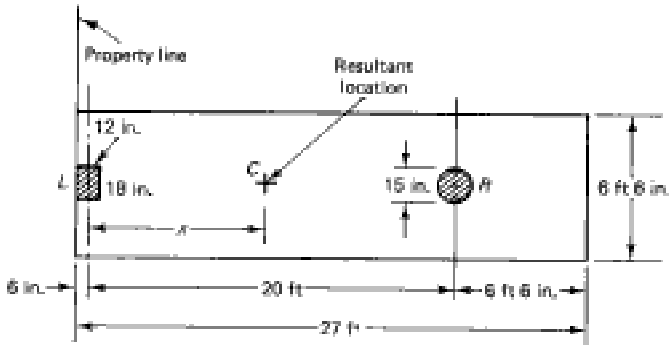


Figure 12.13 Combined footing plan geometry in Ex. 12.5.

load. The bearing capacity of the soil at the level of the footing base is 4000 lb/ft^2 (191.5 kPa), and the average value of the soil and footing unit weight γ = 120 pcf (1922 kg/m^3). A surcharge of 100 lb/ft^2 results from the slab on grade. Proportion the footing size and select the necessary size and distribution of the footing slab reinforcement and verify the development length required. Given:

$$f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi } (20.7 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})$$

base of footing at 7 ft below grade

Solution: total columns load = 200,000 + 350,000 = 550,000 lb (2446.4 kN) net allowable soil capacity $p_n = p_g - 120$(7 ft height to base of footing) $- 100$ or

$$p_a = 4000 - 120 \times 7 - 100 = 3060 \text{ lb/ft}^2$$

$$\text{minimum footing area } A_f = \frac{P}{p_n} = \frac{550{,}000}{3060} = 179.8 \text{ ft}^2$$

Center of gravity of column loads from the property line:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{200{,}000 \times 0.5 + 350{,}000 \times 20.5}{550{,}000} = 13.23 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{length of footing } L = 2 \times 13.23 = 26.46 \text{ ft}$$

Use L = 27 ft.

$$\text{width of footing } S = \frac{179.8}{27.0} = 6.66 \text{ ft}$$

Use S = 6 ft 6 in. as shown in Figure 12.13.

Factored shears and moments

column L: $P_D = 0.65 \times 200{,}000 = 130{,}000$ lb

$P_L = 200{,}000 - 130{,}000 = 70{,}000$ lb

$P_U = 1.2 \times 130{,}000 + 1.6 \times 70{,}000 = 268{,}000$ lb

column R: $P_D = 227{,}500$ lb

$P_L = 122{,}500$ lb

$P_U = 1.2 \times 227{,}500 + 1.6 \times 122{,}500 = 469{,}000$ lb

The net factored soil pressure for footing structural design is

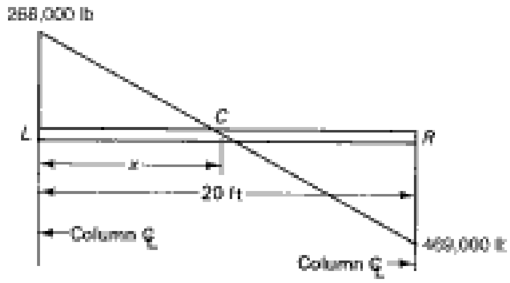


Figure 12.14 Shear diagram of footing in Ex. 12.5.

$$q_s = \frac{P_u}{A_f} = \frac{268{,}000 + 469{,}000}{6.5 \times 27.0} = 4200 \text{ lb/ft}^2$$

Assume that the column loads are acting through their axes.

$$\text{factored bearing pressure per foot width} = q_s \times S = 4200 \times 6.5 = 27{,}300 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$V_u \text{ at center line of column } L = 268{,}000 - 27{,}300 \times \frac{6}{12} = 254{,}350 \text{ lb}$$

$$V_u \text{ at center line of column } R = 469{,}000 - 27{,}300 \times 6.5 = 291{,}550 \text{ lb}$$

The maximum moment is at the point C of zero shear in Figure 12.14 x (ft) from the center of the left column L.

$$x = \frac{254{,}350 \text{ lb}}{27{,}300 \text{ plf}} = 9.32 \text{ ft}$$

Taking a free-body diagram to the left of a section through C, the factored moment at point C is

$$M_{uc} = \frac{w_u l^2}{2} - P_{uL} x$$

$$M_u \text{ from left side} = 27{,}300 \frac{(9.32 + 0.50)^2}{2} - 268{,}000 \times 9.32$$

$$= -1{,}181{,}458 \text{ ft-lb} = -14{,}177{,}496 \text{ in.-lb} \qquad \text{(Fig. 12.15)}$$

$$M_u \text{ from right side} = 27{,}300 \frac{(27.0 - 9.82)^2}{2} - 469{,}000(20.0 - 9.32)$$

$$= 980{,}090 \text{ ft-lb} = -11{,}761{,}080 \text{ in.-lb; less than } -14{,}117{,}496 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Hence M_u from the left side controls. Note that M_u from the right side differs from M_u from the left side because the footing length of 27 ft is used instead of the computed length of 26.46 ft and because x is rounded off. Therefore, the load is not exactly uniform due to the small eccentricity.

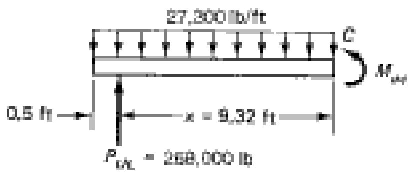


Figure 12.15 Free-body diagram.

Design of the footing in the longitudinal direction

(a) *Shear:* The combined footing is considered as a beam in the shear computations. Hence the critical section is at a distance d from the face of the support. Controlling V_u at the column center line

$$\frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{291{,}550}{0.75} = 388{,}733 \text{ lb}$$

Assume that the total footing thickness = 3 ft (0.92 m). The effective footing depth d = 32 in. for minimum steel cover of = 4 in. For the controlling interior column R, the equivalent rectangular column size $\sqrt{\pi(15)^2/4} = 13.29$ in.

$$\text{required } V_n \text{ at } d \text{ section} = 388{,}733 - \frac{(13.29/2 + d)}{12} \times \frac{27{,}300}{\phi}$$

$$= 388{,}733 - \frac{38.65 \times 27{,}300}{12 \times 0.75} = 271{,}495 \text{ lb (1208 kN)}$$

$$V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 2\sqrt{3000} \times 6.5 \times 12 \times 32$$

$$= 273{,}423 \text{ lb (1216 kN)} > 271{,}495 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

(b) *Moment and reinforcement in the longitudinal direction (step 4):* The distribution of shear and moment in the longitudinal direction is shown in Figure 12.16. The critical section for moment is taken at the face of the columns.

$$\text{controlling moment } M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{14{,}117{,}496}{0.9} = 15{,}752{,}773 \text{ in.-lb (1854 kNm)}$$

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

Assume that $(d - a/2) \approx 0.9d$.

$$15{,}572{,}773 = A_s \times 60{,}000(0.9 \times 32)$$

or

$$A_s = \frac{15{,}572{,}773}{60{,}000 \times 0.9 \times 32} = 9.12 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c\, b} = \frac{9.12 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 3{,}000 \times 6.5 \times 12} = 2.75 \text{ in.}$$

$$15{,}572{,}773 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(32 - \frac{3.09}{2}\right)$$

$$A_s = 8.58 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (6245 mm}^2\text{)}$$

Use 20 No. 6 bars at the top for the middle span.

$$A_s = 8.8 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (20 bars, 19.1-mm diameter)}$$

Design of footing in the transverse direction

Both columns are treated as isolated columns. The width of the band should not be larger than the width of the column plus half the effective depth d on *each* side of the column. This assumption is on the safe side since the actual bending stress distribution is highly indeterminate. It is, however, possible to assume that the flexural reinforcement in the transverse direction can raise the shear punching capacity within the $d/2$ zone from the face of the rectangular left column L and the *equivalent* rectangular right column R. Figure 12.17 shows the transverse band widths for both columns L and R determined on the basis of this discussion.

$$\text{band width } b_L = 12 + \frac{32}{2} = 28 \text{ in.} = 2.33 \text{ ft}$$

The rectangular column size equivalent to the circular interior 15-in.-diameter column = 13.29 in.

Hidden page

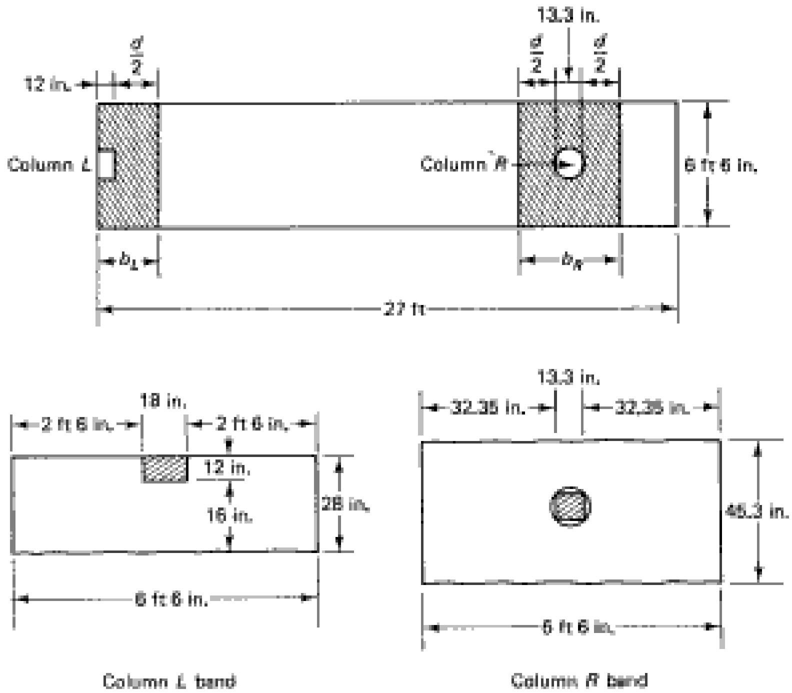


Figure 12.17 Footing transverse band widths.

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{1.0 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 3000 \times 28} = 0.84 \text{ in.}$$

$$1{,}717{,}960 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(32 - \frac{0.84}{2}\right)$$

$$A_s = 0.91 \text{ in.}^2\ (587 \text{ mm}^2)$$

$$\text{min. } A_s = 0.0018 b_w d = 0.0018 \times 28 \times 32 = 1.62 \text{ in.}^2 > 0.91 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_s = 1.62 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ controls.}$$

Use six No. 5 bars, $A_s = 1.86$ in.^{2} (six bars, 15.9-mm diameter) equally spaced in the band, which is to be centered under the column.

Column R transverse band reinforcement Equivalent square column size = 13.3 in. × 13.3 in.

$$\text{moment arm} = \frac{6 \text{ ft } 6 \text{ in.}}{2} - \frac{13.3 \text{ in.}}{2 \times 12} = 2.69 \text{ ft} = 32.35 \text{ in.}$$

Net factored bearing pressure in the transverse direction is

$$q_s = \frac{469{,}000}{6.50} = 72{,}154 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$M_u = q_s \frac{l^2}{2} = 72{,}154 \frac{(2.69)^2}{2} = 261{,}057 \text{ ft-lb} = 3{,}132{,}684 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{3{,}132{,}684}{0.90} = 3{,}480{,}760 \text{ in.-lb (393 kN-m)}$$

$$M_n = A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \quad \text{assume that } d - \frac{a}{2} \simeq 0.90d$$

or

$$3{,}480{,}760 = A_s \times 60{,}000 \times 0.9 \times 32$$

$$A_s = 2.01 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{2.01 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 3000 \times 45.3} = 1.04 \text{ in.}$$

$$3{,}480{,}760 = A_s \times 60{,}000\left(32 - \frac{1.04}{2}\right)$$

$$A_s = 1.84 \text{ in.}^2 \ (1186 \text{ mm}^2)$$

$$\rho = \frac{1.84}{45.3 \times 32} = 0.0013 < \rho_{min}$$

where $\rho_{min} = 0.0018$ (shrinkage temperature reinforcement).

$$\text{minimum } A_s = 0.0018 \times 45.3 \times 32 = 2.61 \text{ in.}^2$$

Use nine No. 5 bars, $A_s = 2.79$ in.^{2} (nine bars, 15.9-mm diameter) equally spaced.

Development length check for top bars in tension

$$f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi (20.7 MPa)}$$

Top reinforcement more than 12-in. concrete below bars, $\alpha = 1.3$. From Eq. 10.6,

$$\frac{\ell_d}{d_b} = \frac{3}{40\lambda}\frac{f_y}{\sqrt{f'_c}}\frac{\psi_t\psi_e\psi_s}{\left(\dfrac{c_b + K_{tr}}{d_b}\right)}$$

(a) *Longitudinal top bars:* Assume transverse reinforcement index $K_{tr} \simeq 0$. Spacing $c = 4.91$ in. $> 2d_b$. $c/d_b = 4.91/0.75 = 6.5 > 2.5$; use 2.5. No. 6 bar $d_b = 0.75$ in. (19.1 mm).

$$\psi_t = 1.3, \quad \psi_e = 1.0, \quad \psi_s = 0.8, \quad \lambda = 1.0, \quad K_{tr} = 0$$

$$\ell_d = 0.75\left(\frac{3}{40}\frac{60{,}000}{\sqrt{3000}} \times \frac{1.3 \times 1.0 \times 0.8 \times 1.0}{2.5}\right) = 25.7 \text{ in.}$$

$$> \min \ell_d = 12 \text{ in.}$$

Use $\ell_d = 26$ in. $= 2.2$ ft. (660 mm).

The distance from c at the maximum moment in Figure 12.14 to the center of the left column $= 9.32 + 0.50 = 9.82$ ft. > 2.3, O.K.

(b) *Transverse bottom steel:* No. 5 bars, $d_b = 0.625$

$$\psi_t = 1.0 \text{ (bottom steel)}, \quad \psi_e = 1.0, \quad \psi_s = 0.8, \quad \lambda = 1.0, \quad K_{tr} \simeq 0$$

$$c = 3.8 \text{ in.}, \quad c/d_b = 3.8/0.625 = 6.1 > 2.5, \quad \text{use } 2.5$$

$$\ell_d = 0.625\left(\frac{3}{40} \times \frac{60{,}000}{\sqrt{3000}} \times \frac{1.0 \times 1.0 \times 0.8 \times 1.0}{2.5}\right) = 16.4 \text{ in.}$$

$$\lambda_s = \frac{A_s \text{ required}}{A_s \text{ provided}}$$

$$\text{column } L \text{ steel modifier:} \quad \lambda_s = \frac{1.62}{1.86} = 0.87$$

$$\text{column } R \text{ steel modifier:} \quad \lambda_s = \frac{2.61}{2.79} = 0.94$$

$$\text{modified } \ell_d = 16.4 \times 0.94 = 15.4 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{available development length} = (32.35 - 3.0) \text{ in.} > 15.4 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Therefore, adopt reinforcement as in Figure 12.18. Check for dowel steel from the columns to the footing slab.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

12.8. Sowers, G. B., and Sowers, G. F., *Introductory Soil Mechanics and Foundations*, 3rd ed., Macmillan, New York, 556 pp.

12.9. Bowles, J. E., *Foundations Analysis and Design*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1982, 816 pp.

12.10. Winterkorn, H. F., and Fang, H. Y., *Foundation Engineering Handbook*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1975, 751 pp.

12.11. Baker, A. L. L., *Raft Foundations—The Soil Line Method of Design*, Concrete Publications, London, 1948, 141 pp.

12.12. Nawy, E. G., Ed., *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

12.13. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 944 pp.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

12.1. Design a reinforced concrete, square, isolated footing to support an axial column service live load $P_L = 300{,}000$ lb (1334 kN) and service dead load $P_D = 625{,}000$ lb (2780 kN). The size of the column is 30 in. × 24 in. (0.76 m × 0.61 m). The soil test borings indicate that it is composed of medium compacted sands and gravely sands, poorly graded. The frost line is assumed to be 3 ft below grade. Given:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{average weight of soil and concrete above the footing, } \gamma &= 130 \text{ pcf } (20.4 \text{ kN/m}^3)\\ \text{footing } f'_c &= 3000 \text{ psi } (20.7 \text{ MPa})\\ \text{column } f'_c &= 4000 \text{ psi } (27.6 \text{ MPa})\\ f_y &= 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})\\ \text{surcharge} &= 120 \text{ psf } (5.7 \text{ kPa})\end{aligned}$$

12.2. Design a reinforced concrete wall footing for (a) a 10-in. (0.25-m) reinforced concrete wall and (b) a 12-in. (0.30-m) masonry wall. The intensity of service linear dead load is $W_D = 20{,}000$ lb/ft (292.0 kN/m) and a service linear live load $W_L = 12{,}000$ lb/ft (266 kN/m) of wall length. Assume an evenly distributed soil bearing pressure and that the average soil bearing pressure at the base of the footing is 3 tons/ft^2 (87.6 kN/m). The frost line is assumed to be 2 ft below grade. Given:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{average weight of soil and footing above base} &= 125 \text{ pcf } (19.6 \text{ kN/m}^3)\\ \text{footing } f'_c &= 3000 \text{ psi } (20.7 \text{ MPa})\\ \text{column } f'_c &= 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa})\\ f_y &= 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})\end{aligned}$$

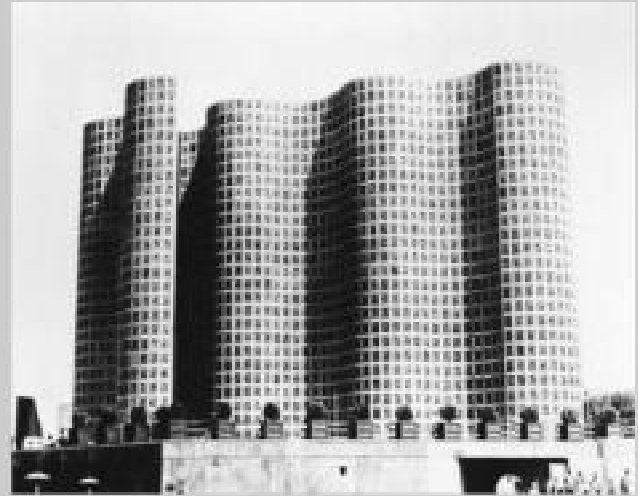
12.3. A combined footing is subjected to an exterior 16 in. × 16 in. (0.4 m × 0.4 m) column abutting the property line carrying a total service load $P_W = 300{,}000$ lb (1334 kN) and an interior column 20 in. × 20 in. (0.5 m × 0.5 m) carrying a total factored load $P_W = 400{,}000$ lb (1779 kN). The live load is 30% of the total load. The center-line distance between the two columns is 22′–0″ (6.71 m). Design the appropriate reinforced concrete footing on a soil weighing 135 pcf (21.2 kN/m^3). The bearing capacity of the soil at the level of the footing base is 6000 lb/ft^2. The frost line is assumed to be at 3′–6″ (1.07 m) below grade. Assume a surcharge of 125 psf (19.62 kN/m^2) at grade level. Given:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{footing } f'_c &= 3500 \text{ psi } (24.1 \text{ MPa})\\ \text{column } f'_c &= 5500 \text{ psi } (37.4 \text{ MPa})\\ f_y &= 60{,}000 \text{ psi } (413.7 \text{ MPa})\end{aligned}$$

12.4. Redesign the isolated reinforced concrete footing in Problem 12.1 if the load is applied at an eccentricity (a) $e = 0.5$ ft (0.15 m) and (b) $e = 1.8$ ft (0.55 m).

12.5. Redesign the combined reinforced concrete footing in Problem 12.3 if the center-line distance between the two columns is 18 ft (5.49 m).

13



CONTINUOUS REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURES

13.1 INTRODUCTION

Preceding chapters have covered the design and analysis of individual elements and isolated reinforced concrete sections. However, except for precast construction, concrete structural systems are constructed in continuous monolithic pours with the reinforcement well developed through adjoining spans and overlapping columns. Consequently, support sections and joints transmit flexural moments, thereby rendering a structure statically indeterminate in view of the continuity of the components. The three equations of equilibrium of forces and moments are no longer sufficient to solve for the unknown moments and reactions, and equations of geometry have to be developed to eliminate the indeterminacy.

Equations of geometry consider the *deformation* of the structure under load or stress, because the deflected shape of individual elements depends not only on load but also on the rotations and slopes of the element at its ends. The magnitudes of the slope and rotation depend on the rigidity (or flexibility) of the joint, that is, the relative rigidities of the adjoining members, which normally comprise horizontal beam elements and vertical column elements.

Photo 13.1 New York Hall of Science, Queens, New York. (Courtesy of Ammann & Whitney.)

The equations of geometry ensure the compatibility of the deformations with the geometry of the structure, hence the name *geometry conditions* or *compatibility conditions.* An example of such a condition is that no deflection takes place at the intermediate support of a continuous beam, and the rotation is the same on both sides of that support when the two adjacent spans are equal and similarly loaded. Since the manner of load application on one span affects the manner of deformation of the adjacent spans, it is essential to alternate live-load patterns on adjacent spans to give the maximum and minimum (reverse) moments and the resulting stresses in the various parts of the structural system.

Several methods of analysis of statically indeterminate structures have been developed over the years. Some of them are more exact than others, and some include approximations and simplifications that facilitate relatively quick solutions when computer utilization is not readily possible or justified. The classical methods are based primarily on a physical understanding of the structural deformational behavior and are particularly important in interpreting the response of the system to the type and sense of applied load. The availability of computers transformed this need for understanding physical behavior to formatting a problem so that it can be understood by the computer through matrix formulation of the computations. In this manner, it becomes possible to keep track of a larger number of calculations and hence to be able to analyze more complex structural systems.

It is important for historical purposes to list the major methods of structural analysis. The common basic concept in these methods is either the *force method* with consistent deformation, for which the redundant forces are the primary unknowns, or the *displacement method*, for which displacements are the primary unknowns. The former is also termed the *flexibility method* and the latter is termed the *stiffness method.*

Emile Clapeyron's *three moments theorem* (1897) is a "force method" in which bending moments at supports are considered as the redundants to be evaluated by solving simultaneous equations whose number is equivalent to the number of indeterminacies. Carlo Castigliano's *energy method*, embodying his second theorem of differential coefficients of internal work (1858), postulates that the partial differential of the internal work of an elastic structure as a function of one of the external forces gives the relative displacement at the point of application of that force. Both force methods, while very powerful at the time, have the limitation of applicability to few spans with essentially unyielding supports and the necessity for exceedingly tedious computational effort. Another application of the force method is the elastic center and the analogous column. In this method the redundants are chosen at a point called the elastic center, involving computations similar to those for stresses in a column subjected to combined bending and direct stress.

The slope deflection concept is an example of the displacement method, where deflections and slopes are taken as the primary unknowns. It was developed independently by Axel Bendixen in Germany (1914) and George Manney in the United States (1915) and is the precursor of the moment distribution method of Hardy Cross (1929). It is worthwhile noting that it was originally developed because of the need to consider the secondary effects, that is, the internal bending moments and shears resulting from rotational restraints that develop in the bolted or welded truss joints.

The availability of computers for speedy solution of complex problems has decreased interest in use of the classical methods discussed thus far. The approaches here are more in the direction of formatting problems in such a manner that the computer can keep track of large quantities of numbers. Such formatting or bookkeeping can be achieved by the use of matrix methods. Matrix formulations can be used for the "force method–method of consistent deformation" solutions through the use of the *flexibility matrix*. The displacement method can be applied through the use of the *stiffness matrix*. The unknown joint displacements are obtained by solving an equal number of simultaneous equations in matrix form. It should be noted at the outset that the matrix displacement method using stiffness matrices is the most powerful of the various methods of analysis hitherto discussed when computers are used, and in its generalization as the *finite-element method* it is capable of analyzing any elastic structural system and most plastic systems.

13.2 LONGHAND DISPLACEMENT METHODS

13.2.1 Slope Deflection Method

This displacement method involves writing two equations for each span of a continuous structure, one at each end, expressing the end moments as the sum of the following *four* contributions:

1. The restraining moment resulting from an assumed fixed-end condition of the loaded span
2. The moment due to the rotation of the tangent to the elastic curve at one end of the span
3. The moment due to the rotation of the tangent to the elastic curve at the other end of the span
4. The moment resulting from the translation of one end of the span with respect to the other

The equations have to be set to conform to the requirements of equilibrium and compatability at each joint of a continuous beam or a frame.

Consequently, a *large* set of simultaneous linear algebraic equations results for a total structural system, with displacements as the unknowns. For a structure with several spans or a high-rise building, the computational effort needed to solve the equations could be staggering and the probability of errors great. Use of this method is limited today, because other faster methods are available. Example 13.2 with two redundancies is given as an illustration.

13.2.2 Moment Distribution Method

This method is a *numerical* application of the displacement method in which the desired moments, shears, or stresses are obtained by a method of successive approximations suitable for longhand computations. The method lends itself to simple physical interpretation. Hence it can be used for quick approximate as well as exact solutions, depending on the number of successive cycles chosen. It is essentially an iterative solution of the slope deflection equations and has been used extensively since its development by Hardy Cross in the United States in 1929. The student and the designer are assumed to be well acquainted with this hand-computational method, and the reader is referred to the various texts on the subject of structural analysis given in the list of references to supplement the examples presented in this chapter using moment distribution.

13.3 FORCE METHOD OF ANALYSIS

13.3.1 The Force Method and the Flexibility Matrix

In this method, earlier forces or moments can be used as redundants. Moments will be used in this book as redundants. They are more convenient than forces in the analysis, particularly at the limit state of failure, as shown in A. L. L. Baker's method of "imposed rotations" presented in Section 13.7.2. Hence a somewhat more detailed discussion with an analysis example presented here to fit the sequence of analysis methods. It is also assumed that the reader has a background from other courses in structural analysis in both the force method and the matrix force method such that this discussion will serve only as a refresher on the topic.

In this method, cuts or hinges are inserted at suitable points in an indeterminate frame or continuous beam. As many supporting reactions or moments as necessary are removed until the structure becomes statically determinate, thereby facilitating the analysis. If the total strain energy U with respect to the elastic redundant moment X_i at any hinge i is made equal to the *elastic* rotation at the hinge, that is,

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial X_i} = -\theta_i \tag{13.1}$$

and if δ_{ik} is assumed to represent the relative rotation of the ith hinge due to a moment at the kth hinge, then $\delta_{ik} = \delta_{ki}$ from Maxwell's reciprocal theorem. The coefficients δ_{ik} are called *influence coefficients* because they represent the displacement or rotation at a particular section due to a unit moment at *another* section, that is, $\delta_{ik} = -\theta_i$.

From the principle of virtual work,

$$\delta_{ik} = \Sigma \int_0^l \frac{M_i M_k}{EI}\, ds \tag{13.2}$$

The right side of Eq. 13.2 represents the integration of the products of the areas of the M_i diagrams and the ordinates of the M_k diagrams at the *centroids* of the M_i diagrams along the horizontal distances along the span. In other words,

$$\delta_{ik} = \frac{A_i}{EI}\eta \tag{13.3}$$

where A_i is the area under the primary M_i bending moment diagram and η is the ordinate of the M_k moment diagram under the centroid of the M_i diagram (Ref. 13.2). As an example, in Figure 13.1 the influence coefficient δ_{ki} is obtained by superposing the moment

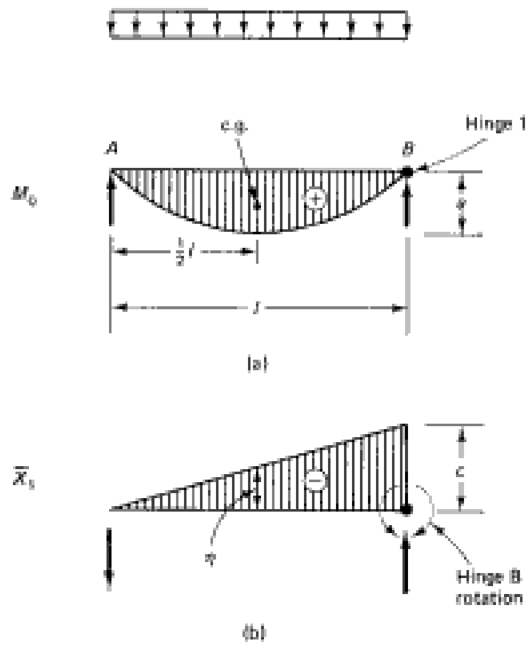


Figure 13.1 Influence coefficient determination from superposing M_0 and X_1; (a) primary structure moment; (b) redundant structure moment.

diagram M_0 of the primary structure on the moment diagram X_1 of the redundant structure created by the assumed developed hinge 1.

$$A_i = \frac{2}{3}\, la$$

η under the centroid of M_0 diagram $= c/2$.

$$\delta_{01} = -\frac{1}{EI}\left(\frac{2}{3}\, la\right)\left(\frac{c}{2}\right) = -\frac{1}{3EI}\, lac$$

δ_{11} is obtained by superposing the redundant structure X_1 on itself.

$$A_i = -\frac{1}{2}\, la$$

$$\delta_{11} = -\frac{1}{EI}\left(\frac{1}{2}\, la \times \frac{2}{3}\, c\right) = -\frac{1}{3EI}\, lac$$

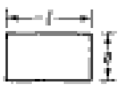
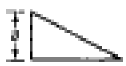
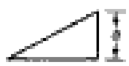
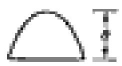
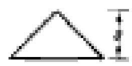
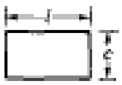
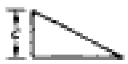
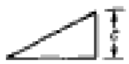
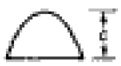
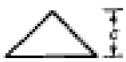
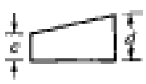
Table 13.1 gives the product integral values $\int M_i M_k ds$ for evaluating the influence coefficients δ_{ik} for various combinations of primary and redundant moment diagrams. It can aid the designer in easily getting sets of equations 13.6 to follow.

Equation 13.2 can be rewritten as

$$\Sigma \int_0^l \frac{M_i M_k}{E_c I}\, ds = -\theta_i \tag{13.4}$$

Substituting δ_{i0} and δ_{ik} for M_k in Eq. 13.4, the following expression is obtained:

Table 13.1 Product Integral Values $\int_0^l M_i M_k\, ds$ for Various Moment Combinations (E/δ_{ik})

M_i / M_k				Parabolic 		
	lac	$\frac{1}{2}lac$	$\frac{1}{2}lac$	$\frac{2}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{2}lac$	$\frac{1}{2}l(a+b)c$
	$\frac{1}{2}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{6}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{4}lac$	$\frac{1}{6}l(2a+b)c$
	$\frac{1}{2}lac$	$\frac{1}{6}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{4}lac$	$\frac{1}{6}l(a+2b)c$
Parabolic 	$\frac{2}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}lac$	$\frac{8}{15}lac$	$\frac{5}{12}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}l(a+b)c$
	$\frac{1}{2}lac$	$\frac{1}{4}lac$	$\frac{1}{4}lac$	$\frac{5}{12}lac$	$\frac{1}{3}lac$	$\frac{1}{4}l(a+b)c$
	$\frac{1}{2}la(c+d)$	$\frac{1}{6}la(2c+d)$	$\frac{1}{6}la(c+2d)$	$\frac{1}{3}la(c+d)$	$\frac{1}{4}la(c+d)$	$\frac{1}{6}l[a(2c+d)+b(2d+c)]$

$$\delta_{i0} + \sum_{k=1}^{k=n} \delta_{ik} X_k = -\theta_i \tag{13.5}$$

where $\theta_r = 0$ is the net *elastic* rotation.

Hence, to solve for a structure having n degrees of indeterminacy, it should satisfy the following condition

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta_{10} + \delta_{11}X_1 + \delta_{12}X_2 + \cdots + \delta_{1n}X_n &= -\theta_1 = 0 \\
\delta_{20} + \delta_{21}X_1 + \delta_{22}X_2 + \cdots + \delta_{2n}X_n &= -\theta_2 = 0 \\
\delta_{n0} + \delta_{n1}X_1 + \delta_{n2}X_2 + \cdots + \delta_{nn}X_n &= -\theta_n = 0
\end{aligned} \tag{13.6}$$

The number of equations in a set is equal to the number of redundancies. In matrix form, the structure flexibility matrix $[\theta]$ can be defined for n loading conditions as

$$-[\theta] = \begin{bmatrix} \delta_{11} & \delta_{12} & \cdots & \delta_{1n} \\ \delta_{21} & \delta_{22} & \cdots & \delta_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \delta_{n1} & \delta_{n2} & \cdots & \delta_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} X_{11} & X_{12} & \cdots & X_{1n} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} & \cdots & X_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ X_{n1} & X_{n2} & \cdots & X_{nn} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \delta^{\circ}_{11} & \delta^{\circ}_{12} & \cdots & \delta^{\circ}_{1n} \\ \delta^{\circ}_{21} & \delta^{\circ}_{22} & \cdots & \delta^{\circ}_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \delta^{\circ}_{n1} & \delta^{\circ}_{n2} & \cdots & \delta^{\circ}_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \tag{13.7a}$$

or in shorter form,

$$[\delta][X] + [\delta^{\circ}] = -[\theta] \tag{13.7b}$$

Solving for the unknown redundants by inversion of the $[\delta]$ matrix,

$$[X] = -[\delta]^{-1}\{[\theta] + [\delta^{\circ}]\} \tag{13.8}$$

The parameters $\delta_{11} \ldots \delta_{nn}, X_{11} \ldots X_{nn}, \delta^{\circ}_{11} \ldots \delta^{\circ}_{nn}$ can best be described in Figure 13.2 for a typical two-span continuous beam ABC with a hinge introduced at interior support B

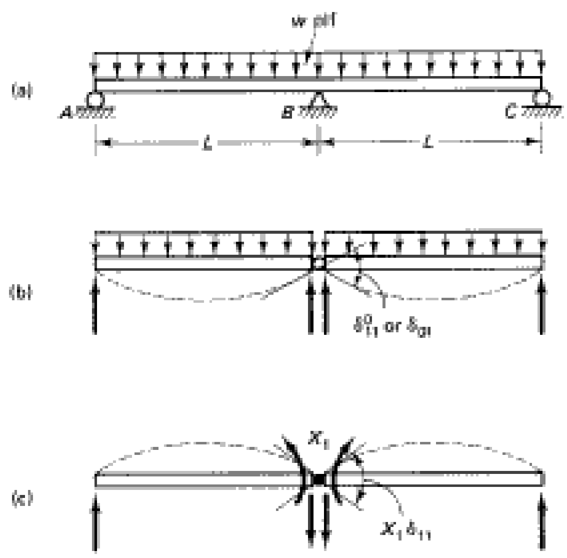


Figure 13.2 Reduction of indeterminate beam through introduction of hinge as redundant: (a) continuous beam elevation; (b) primary structure; (c) redundant structure.

due to moment X_1 causing a rotation θ_1 at this support. The beam is subjected to a single external loading condition of uniformly distributed load.

13.3.2 Example 13.1: Analysis of Two-span Continuous Beam by the Force and Matrix Methods

Consider the two-span continuous prismatic beam *ABC* in Figure 13.3 having a fixed moment at the right end *C*. Solve for the moments at *B* and *C* due to a uniform load of intensity *w* per unit length of span using (a) the force method (the method of consistent deformations) and (b) the matrix force method.

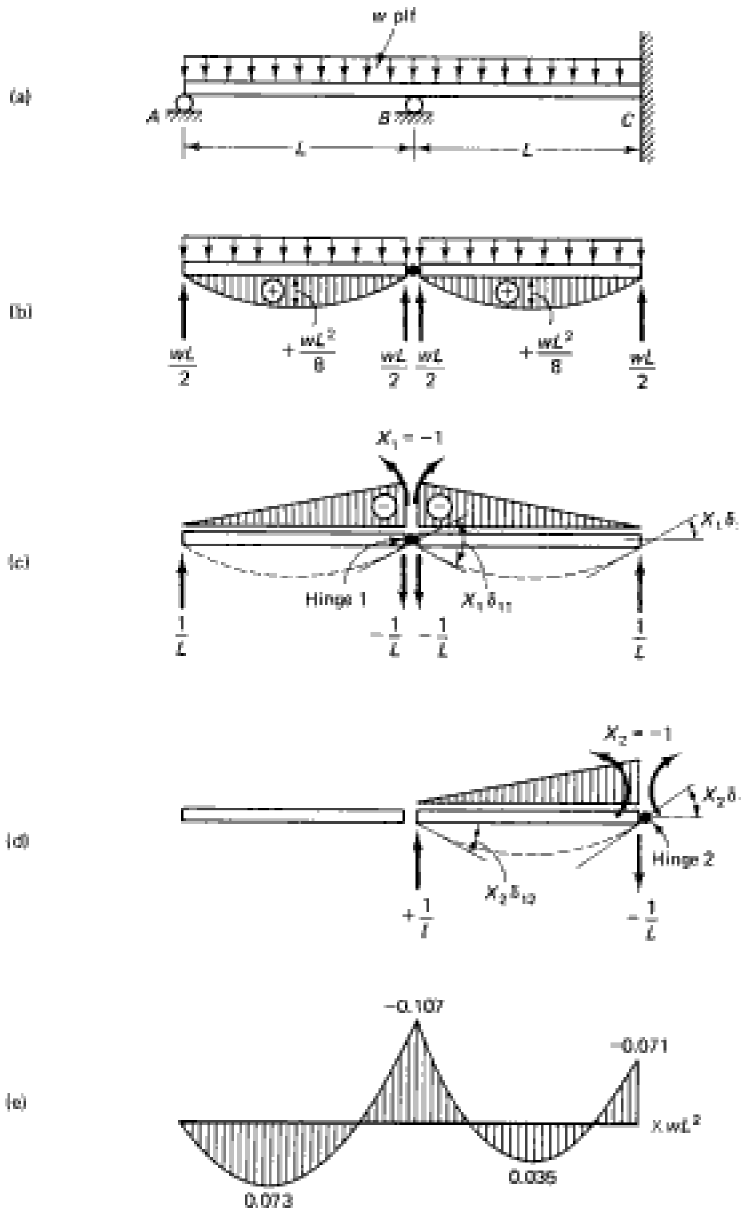


Figure 13.3 Statically indeterminate beam in Ex. 13.1: (a) structure elevation; (b) primary structure (M_0); (c) redundant structure $X_1 = -1$; (d) redundant structure $X_2 = -1$; (e) final moments.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

$$[F]^{-1} = \frac{6EI}{7L}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$[X] = [F]^{-1}\Big[[\Delta] - [\Delta^o]\Big]$$

or

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_{11} & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{6EI}{7L}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\left[\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} - \frac{wL^3}{24EI}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right]$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -\dfrac{3wL^2}{28} \\ -\dfrac{2wL^2}{28} \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence

$$M_B = -\frac{3wL^2}{28} = -0.107wL^2$$

$$M_C = -\frac{2wL^2}{28} = -0.071wL^2$$

13.4 DISPLACEMENT METHOD OF ANALYSIS

13.4.1 Displacement Method and the Stiffness Matrix

The displacement method is analogous to the force (deformation) method except that the nodal displacements are considered as the unknowns instead of the redundant forces or moments. Essentially the slope deflection method, it can be considered the direct link to computer methods of structural analysis. Since the joint displacements represent the freedom to move or rotate, the term "degrees of freedom" represents the joint displacements as a measure of the *kinematic* degrees of indeterminacy.

A set of equilibrium equations equal to the number of unknown displacements has to be solved in order to determine these unknown displacements. The computational operation involves (1) computation of the force–displacement or moment–rotation relationships, that is, the stiffness; (2) setting up the geometrical relationships; (3) setting up the equilibrium equations in order to determine the unknown *displacements* or *rotations;* and (4) calculation of the forces or moments by substituting the displacements or rotations computed in (3) in the force–displacement or moment–rotation relationship established in (1).

In matrix form, we must establish the kinematic degrees of freedom n to be used in the solution. Next, the static matrix $[A]$ and the deformation matrix $[B]$ have to be established using basic concepts, to be followed by a visual check to ensure that the matrix $[B] = [A^T]$; that is, $[B]$ is the transpose of $[A]$. The member stiffness matrix $[S]$ is then computed. The fixed-end moments $\{M_0\}$ are also computed, and the external force (moment) matrix $\{P\}$ is established in which the elements of the $\{P\}$ matrix are the reversals of the forces (moments) acting on the member ends in the fixed condition.

Combining the equilibrium conditions as in Ref. 13.3,

$$\{P\}_{np\times 1} = [A]_{nP\times nM} \cdot \{M\}_{nM\times 1} \tag{13.9}$$

the moment–rotation relationships,

$$\{M\}_{nM\times 1} = [S]_{nM\times nM} \cdot \{\theta\}_{nP\times 1} \tag{13.10}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

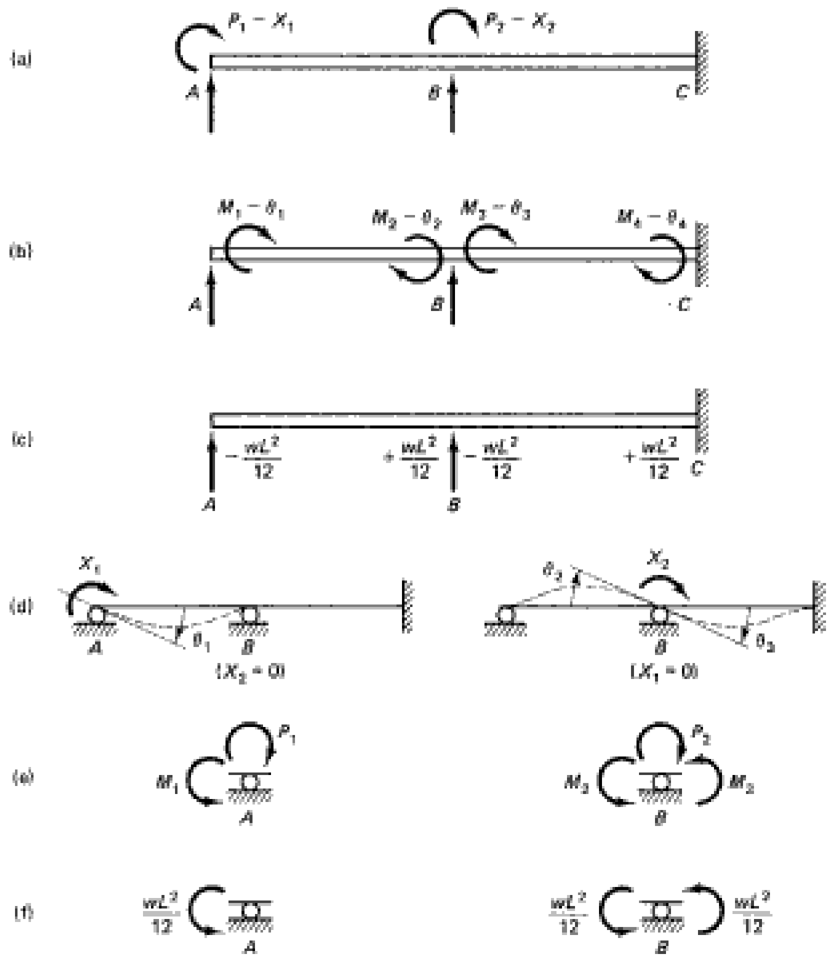


Figure 13.5 Details of the matrix formulations in Ex. 13.2: (a) external P–X diagram; (b) internal M–θ diagram; (c) fixed-end moments M_0; (d) compatibility of internal deformations (rotations) with joint displacements; (e) equilibrium moments at joints; (f) fixed-end moments at joints. Sign convention: Moment causing compression at bottom face is positive.

(3) *Member stiffness matrix* [S]: This matrix is obtained from the pair of Eqs. 13.17a and b and the slope deflection solutions given in Eqs. 13.19 of the previous solution, where

$$M_1 = \frac{4EI}{L}\theta_A + \frac{2EI}{L}\theta_B - \frac{wL^2}{12}$$

$$M_2 = \frac{2EI}{L}\theta_A + \frac{4EI}{L}\theta_B + \frac{wL^2}{12}$$

$$M_3 = \frac{4EI}{L}\theta_B - \frac{wL^2}{12}$$

$$M_4 = \frac{2EI}{L}\theta_B + \frac{wL^2}{12}$$

Hence

$$[S]_{4\times 4} = \begin{array}{c|cccc} M \backslash \theta & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline 1 & \frac{4EI}{L} & \frac{2EI}{L} & & \\ 2 & \frac{2EI}{L} & \frac{4EI}{L} & & \\ 3 & & & \frac{4EI}{L} & \\ 4 & & & & \frac{2EI}{L} \end{array}$$

(4) *External force (moment) matrix* $[P]$: From the fixed-end moments in Figure 13.5c and the rotational equilibrium of joints A and B in Figure 13.5f, the net *reverse* moments on the joints are

$$P_1 = -\left(-\frac{wL^2}{12}\right) = +\frac{wL^2}{12}$$

$$P_2 = -\left(\frac{wL^2}{12} - \frac{wL^2}{12}\right) = 0$$

$$\{P\}_{2\times 1} = \begin{array}{c|c} P \backslash M_0 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & +\frac{wL^2}{12} \\ 2 & 0 \end{array}$$

(5) $[SA^T]$ *matrix* $= [S] \times [A^T]$: Transpose $[A^T] = [B]$; hence

$$[SA^T]_{4\times 2} = \begin{array}{c|cc} M \backslash X & 1 & 2 \\ \hline 1 & \frac{4EI}{L} & \frac{2EI}{L} \\ 2 & \frac{2EI}{L} & \frac{4EI}{L} \\ 3 & 0 & \frac{4EI}{L} \\ 4 & 0 & \frac{2EI}{L} \end{array}$$

(6) *Global stiffness matrix* $[K]$: The complete stiffness matrix from Eq. 13.12 $[K] = [ASA^T]$; hence

$$[K]_{2\times 2} = \begin{array}{c|cc} P \backslash X & 1 & 2 \\ \hline 1 & \frac{4EI}{L} & \frac{2EI}{L} \\ 2 & \frac{2EI}{L} & \frac{8EI}{L} \end{array}$$

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

13.6 APPROXIMATE ANALYSIS OF CONTINUOUS BEAMS AND FRAMES

13.6.1 Idealization Principle

The use of computers has facilitated the rapid analysis of continuous structures with high degrees of indeterminacy, giving relatively exact solutions. This advantage has come through the digital computational process, applying matrix methods and finite-element techniques and utilizing the revolutionary advances in the hardware and software capabilities and speed of today's desktop computers. However, preceding a detailed computer analysis, the elastic properties of the members have to be assumed as an input requirement. These include modulus of elasticity, cross-sectional area, cross-sectional moment of inertia, and the length of members. All these parameters are needed for establishing preliminary stiffness values for the beams and columns. Also, the pattern of load distribution that can give the worst loading conditions has to be set by the design engineer. Hence *approximate* structural analysis has to be initially performed with the appropriate idealizations *prior* to embarking on an "exact" solution using the computer. In many instances for moderate-sized structures, the approximate solution is often sufficient since the input of stiffness values into a computer involves idealizations and assumptions based on engineering judgment and isolation of controlling segments of an indeterminate structure to arrive at a preliminary stiffness.

Photo 13.2 Chicago Mercantile Exchange; a high-strength concrete unique cantilever supports an office tower. (Courtesy of Robert B. Johnson, Alfred Benesch and Co., Chicago.)

Taking the simple case of a fixed-end beam as in Figure 13.6a, the elastic curve of the beam changes slope at a distance of $0.211L$ from the fixed supports, thereby creating *inflection points:* points of zero moments at points C and D in the span. Consequently, AC and BD can be treated as cantilever beams, and segment CD can be considered a simply supported beam of span $L_1 = 0.578L$ and solved by simple statics.

Frames can be treated in a similar manner through location of the inflection points. Figure 13.7 shows two portal frames, one with a hinged base and the other with a fixed base subjected to gravity loading. Note that the bending moment diagrams are consistently drawn on the *tension* side of the members. The bending moment at midspan of the horizontal top member would be the difference between the moment at B and C and the total static moment $wL_{B}^{2}/8$. If the same frame is subjected to horizontal wind forces, the inflection points and the resulting bending moments are as shown in Figure 13.8.

On the basis of the foregoing discussion for gravity and wind loads, a multistory frame can thus be idealized as shown in Figure 13.9a for gravity loading and in Figure 13.9b for wind loading, with the inflection points located at the sections where a change

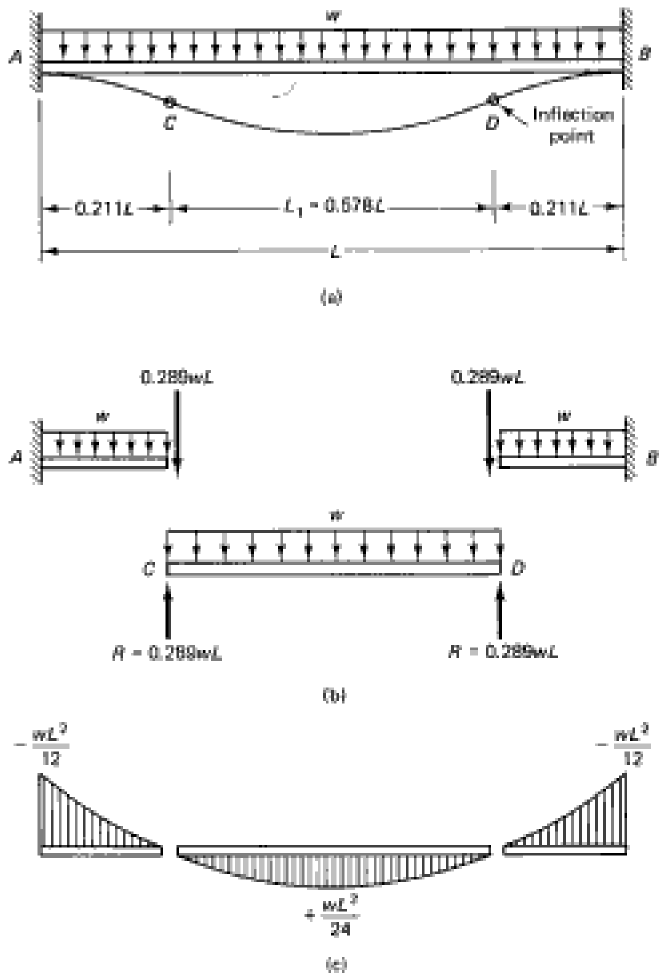


Figure 13.6 Idealization of fixed-end beam through location of inflection points: (a) fixed-end beam elevation; (b) idealization through location of inflection points; (c) bending moment diagram.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

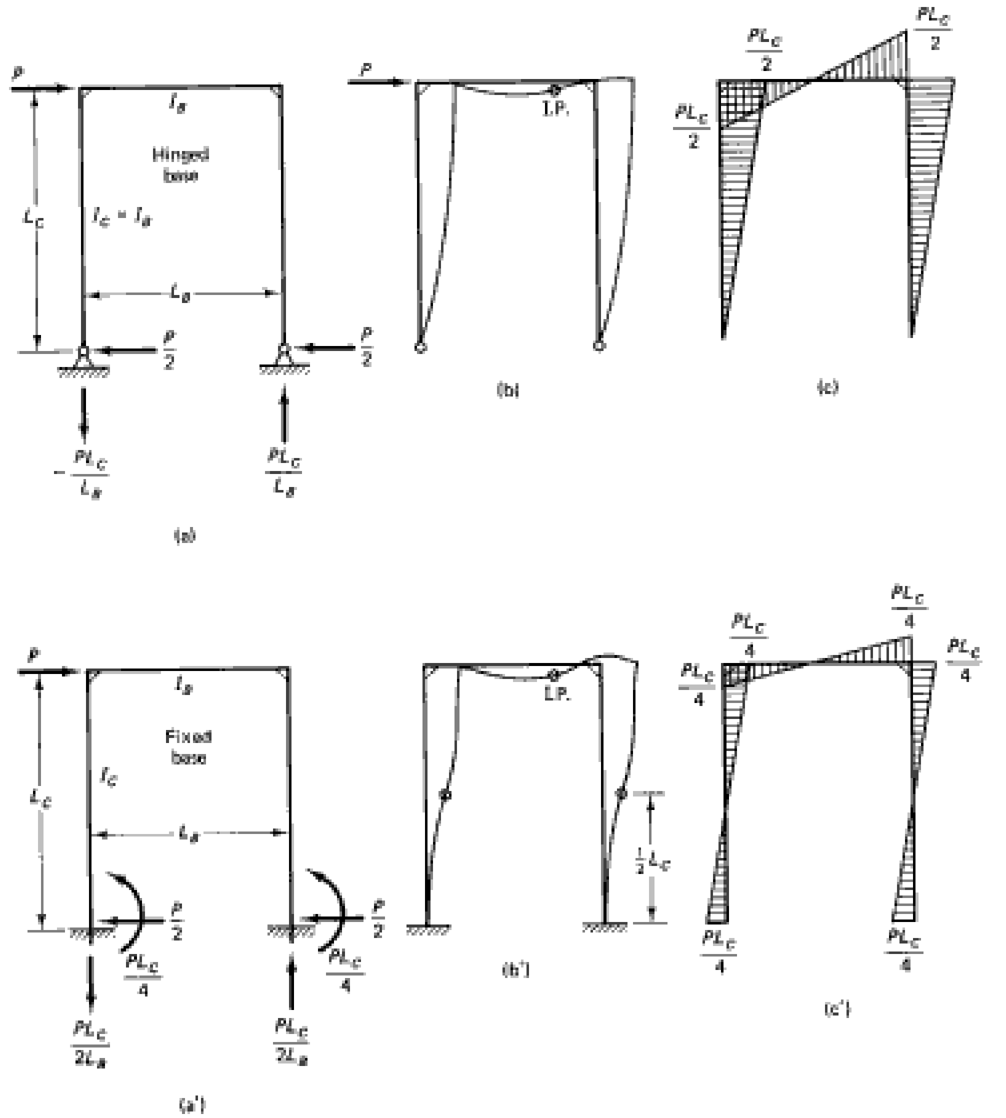


Figure 13.8 Idealization of portal frame through location of inflection points, wind loading: (a, a′) frame elevation; (b, b′) deflected shape; (c, c′) bending moment diagrams.

3. The total horizontal shear in the columns of a given story is equal to the total lateral force above that story.
4. Inflection points, equivalent to hinges, occur at midspan of beams and at column midheight except in basement levels. In that case, it can be assumed to occur at about one-fourth to one-third of the column height above the foundation.

These assumptions are based on the fact that the total shearing force due to wind at any floor level can be divided among the columns at that level in proportion to their stiffnesses, and the vertical reactions on the columns due to wind can be considered to be proportional to their distance from the *center* of the building. Such assumptions are true only if the beams are infinitely stiff relative to the columns. Yet they are nearly correct in most cases and do [illegible] factor, considering that I_c values for

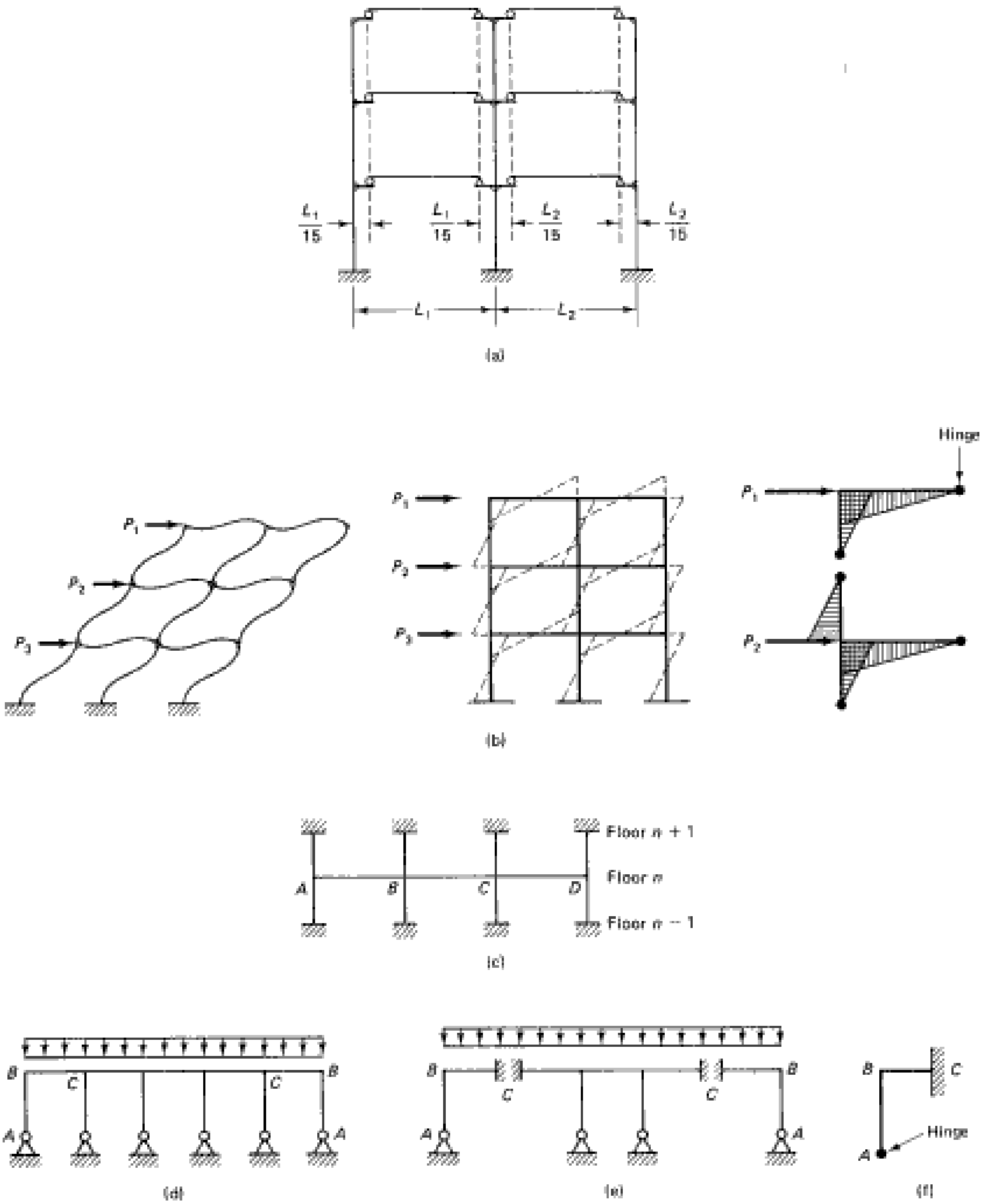


Figure 13.9 Idealization of continuous structures for approximate analysis: (a) gravity loading; hinges assumed at $\frac{1}{15}$ of span from column support for preliminary analysis; (b) wind loading; (c) alternative idealization of multistory frame for gravity loading; (d) single-floor multispan symmetrical portals; (e) portal idealization of structure in (d); (f) portal unit ABC.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

The axial load in the first interior columns is $Ph/2nl_1 - Ph/2nl_2$ and in the second interior columns is $Ph/2nl_2 - Ph/2nl_3$.

As shown in Figure 13.10b, column moments are determined by the column shear times one-half the column height. Consequently, for joint B of the portal frame, the column moment becomes $(P/3) \cdot (h/2)$ to give a moment value of $Ph/6$. This moment must be balanced by equal moments in BA and BC of a magnitude $Ph/12$ without considering their relative stiffnesses. The shear in beams AB and BC is then determined by dividing the beam end moments by one-half the beam length. In this case, the end shear becomes $(Ph/12)/(l/2)$, giving a value of $(Ph/6l)$ at each floor level. Summation is then made of the beam shear and column load values as we proceed from the top floor to the foundation floor level.

Example 13.5 illustrates the use of the portal frame method for the analysis of forces in an indeterminate frame due to wind loading.

It should be noted that the classical portal frame method is a conservative way of rapid analysis that can serve as a quick check of computer solutions. Canned computer programs, such as PCA-Frame program, STAAD Professional, Sap 2000 and subsequent editions, and others are available for accurate analysis of indeterminate multistory frames subjected to gravity loading plus wind and earthquake forces.

13.6.2 Indeterminate Frames and Portals

13.6.2.1. General Properties. Concrete frames are indeterminate structures consisting of horizontal and vertical or inclined members joined in such a manner that the connection can withstand the stresses and bending moments that act on it. The degree of indeterminacy depends on the number of spans, number of vertical members, and type of end reactions. Typical frame configurations are shown in Figure 13.11. If n is the number

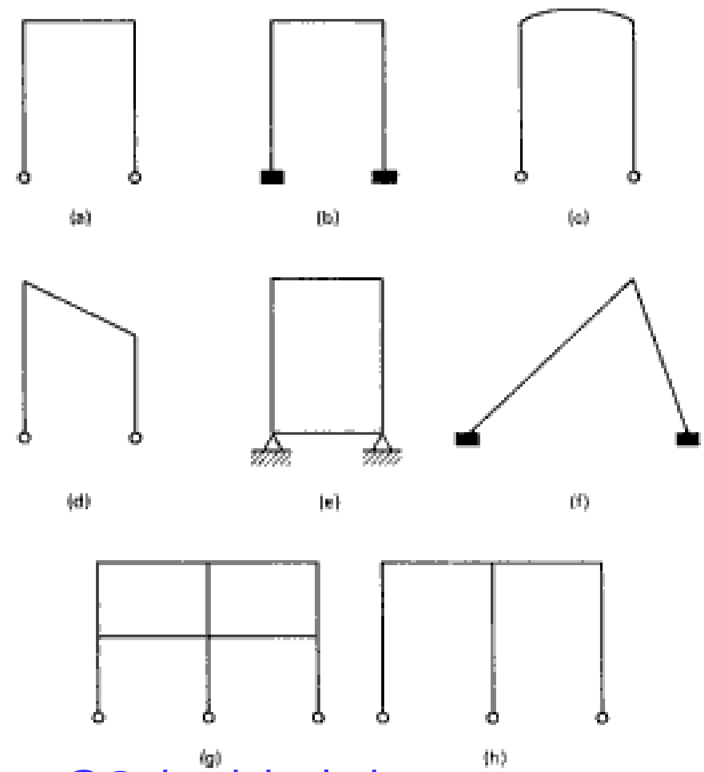


Figure 13.11 Typical structural frames.

of joints, b the number of members, r the number of reactions, and s the number of indeterminacies, the degree of indeterminacy is determined from the following inequalities:

$$3n + s > 3b + r \qquad \text{unstable} \tag{13.21a}$$

$$3n + s = 3b + r \qquad \text{statically determinate} \tag{13.21b}$$

$$3n + s < 3b + r \qquad \text{statically indeterminate} \tag{13.21c}$$

The degree of indeterminacy is

$$s = 3b + r - 3n \tag{13.22}$$

where $3n$ equations of static equilibrium are always available and the total number of unknowns is $3b + r$.

As an example, the degree of indeterminacy of the frame in Figure 13.11a is

$$s = 3 \times 3 + 2 \times 2 - 3 \times 4 = 1$$

For the frame in Figure 13.11g,

$$s = 3 \times 10 + 2 \times 3 - 3 \times 9 = 9$$

For a frame to perform satisfactorily, the following conditions must be satisfied:

1. The design should be based on the most unfavorable moment and shear combinations. If moment reversal is possible due to reversal of live-load direction, the highest values of positive and negative bending moments have to be considered in the design.
2. Proper foundation support for horizontal thrust has to be provided. If the frame is designed as hinged, which is an expensive construction procedure, an actual hinge system has to be provided.

13.6.2.2. Forces and Moments in Portal Frames. The behavior of concrete frames before cracking can reasonably be considered elastic, as was done in the case of continuous beam at service-load and slight overload conditions. Consequently, well before the development of plastic hinging, the bending moment diagrams shown in Figures 13.12 and 13.13 can easily be used in the design of indeterminate reinforced concrete frames. It has to be assumed that the student or the design engineer is well versed in these procedures as a basic background, and only the minimum guidelines and simplifications are presented in this book.

13.6.2.3. Uniform Gravity Loading on Single-bay Portal. Assuming that the moments of inertia I_c of the vertical columns and I_b of the horizontal beam of the portal in Figure 13.14a are not equal, the following values of the moments and thrusts can be deduced:

End shear in beam

$$V_B = V_C = -\frac{1}{2} wl \tag{13.23a}$$

$$\text{horizontal thrust } H = \frac{l}{h} C_1 wl \tag{13.23b}$$

where

$$C_1 = \frac{1}{12\left(\dfrac{2}{3}\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 1\right)} \tag{13.23c}$$

Maximum negative moment at beam-column junction

$$M_B = M_C = -Hh = -C_1 wl^2 \tag{13.23d}$$

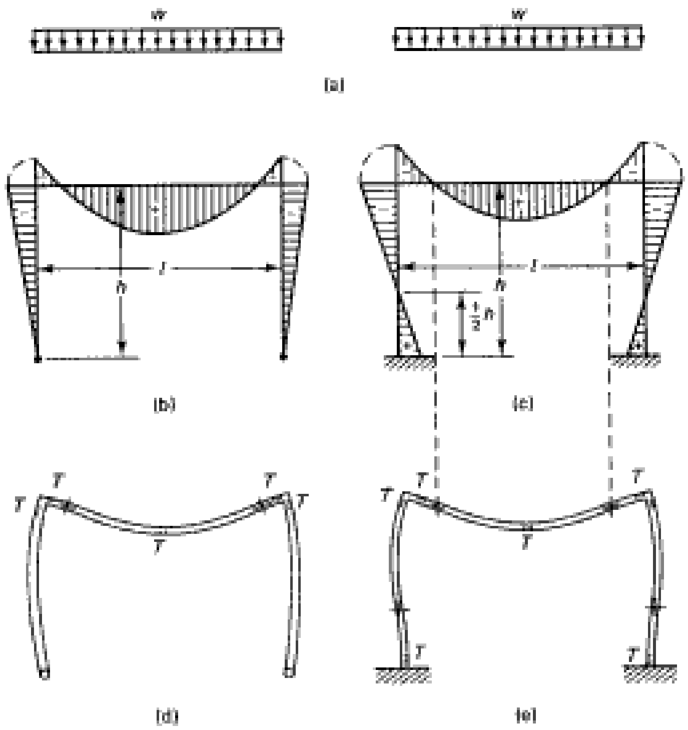


Figure 13.12 Right-angle portal frame loaded with gravity load intensity w (T indicates tension fibers): (a) load intensity; (b) bending moment (hinged base frame); (c) bending moment (fixed base frame); (d) deformation of frame (b); (e) deformation of frame (c).

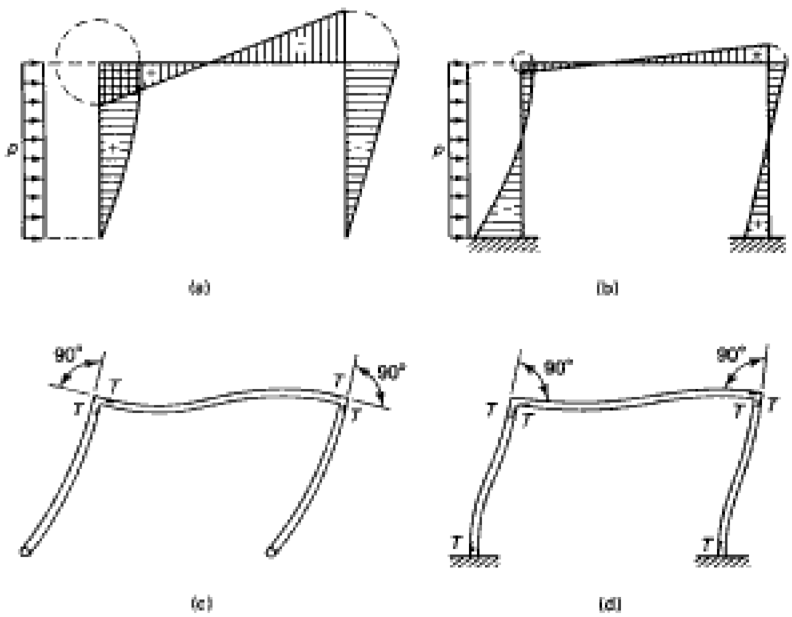


Figure 13.13 Right-angle portal frame loaded with wind load intensity p (T indicates tension fibers): (a) bending moment (hinged base frame); (b) bending moment (fixed base frame); (c) deformation of frame (a); (d) deformation of frame (b).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Photo 13.3 River City Apartment Complex, Chicago, Illinois. The marina area has room for 70 moors. (Courtesy Bertrand Goldberg Associates, Architects and Engineers, Chicago, Illinois.)

13.6.2.4. Concentrated Gravity Loading on Single-bay Portal. Since the concentrated load P does not have to act at midspan, nonsymmetry of shears results. The end shears from Figure 13.14b are

$$V_B = \left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right)P \quad \text{and} \quad V_C = \frac{a}{l}P \tag{13.24a}$$

Horizontal thrust

$$H = C_3 \frac{a}{l}\left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right)P\frac{l}{h} \tag{13.24b}$$

where

$$C_3 = \frac{1}{2\left(\frac{2}{3}\frac{I_b}{I_c} + 1\right)} \tag{13.24c}$$

Bending moments at corners

$$M_B = M_C = -Hh = -C_3\frac{a}{l}\left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right)Pl \tag{13.24d}$$

Bending moments at any point along BC: for $x < a$,

$$M_x = \left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right)\left(\frac{x}{l} - \frac{a}{l}C_3\right)Pl \tag{13.24e}$$

For $x > a$,

$$M_x = \frac{a}{l}\left[1 - \frac{x}{l} - \left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right)C_3\right]Pl \tag{13.24f}$$

Maximum positive moment at $x = a$

$$M_{max} = \frac{a}{l}\left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right)Pl - Hh = (1 - C_3)\frac{a}{l}\left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right)Pl \tag{13.24g}$$

Horizontal thrust for several constructed gravity loads

$$H = \frac{l}{h}C_3\left[P_1\frac{a_1}{l}\left(1 - \frac{a_1}{l}\right) + P_2\frac{a_2}{l}\left(1 - \frac{a_2}{l}\right) + \cdots\right] \tag{13.24h}$$

or

$$H = \frac{l}{h}C_3 \Sigma P\frac{a}{l}\left(1 - \frac{a}{l}\right) \tag{13.24i}$$

13.6.2.5. Uniform Horizontal Pressure on Single-bay Portal. From Fig. 13.14c,

Vertical reactions at supports

$$R_A = -\frac{1}{2}ph\frac{h}{l} \quad \text{and} \quad R_D = +\frac{1}{2}ph\frac{h}{l} \tag{13.25a}$$

Horizontal reactions: For windward hinge A,

$$H_A = \frac{1}{8}\,\frac{11\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 18}{2\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 3}\,ph = C_4 ph \tag{13.25b}$$

where

$$C_4 = \frac{1}{8}\,\frac{11\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 18}{2\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 3} \tag{13.25c}$$

For leeward hinge, D,

$$H_D = ph - H_A = (1 - C_4)ph \tag{13.25d}$$

Bending moments at any point y along the column height due to horizontal pressure, with y being measured from the *bottom*

$$M_y = H_A y - \frac{1}{2}py^2 \tag{13.25e}$$

Maximum moment at windward column

$$M_{max} = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{8}\,\frac{11\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 18}{2\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 3}\right)ph^2 = \frac{1}{2}(C_4)\,ph^2 \tag{13.25f}$$

Point of maximum bending moment above support A

$$y_1 = \frac{1}{8}\left(\frac{11\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 18}{2\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 3}\right)h = C_4 h \tag{13.25g}$$

Bending moments in corners of portal

$$M_B = H_A h - \frac{1}{2}ph^2 = \frac{3}{8}\,\frac{\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 2}{2\dfrac{I_b}{I_c}\dfrac{h}{l} + 3}\,ph^2$$

$$= (C_4 - 0.5)\,ph^2 \tag{13.25h}$$

$$M_C = -H_D h = -(1 - C_4)\,ph^2 \tag{13.25i}$$

The constants C_1, C_2, C_3, and C_4 in Eqs. 13.23, 13.24, and 13.25 can be graphically represented as in Figure 13.15. Canned computer programs for the analysis of indeterminate

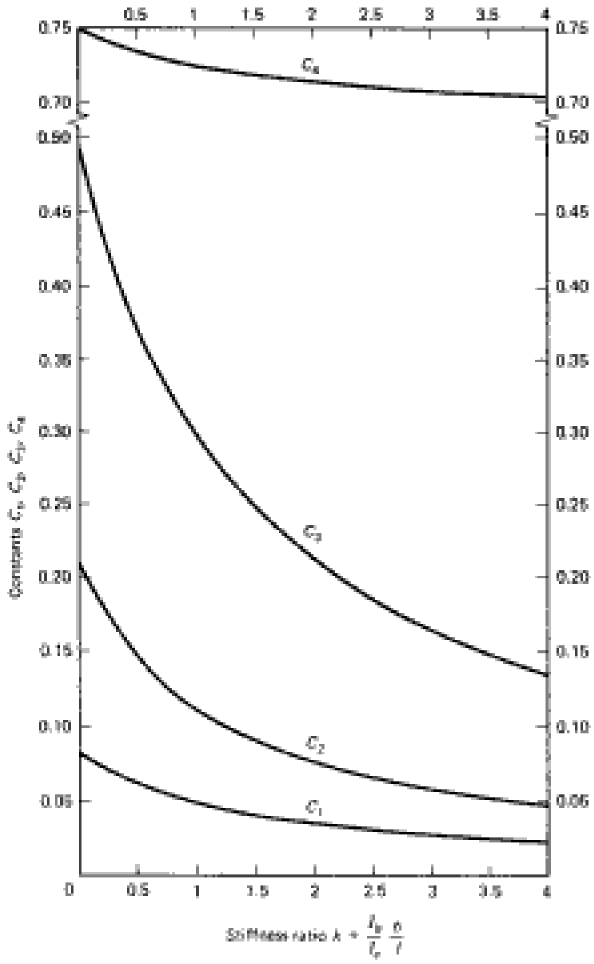


Figure 13.15 Constants C_1, C_2, C_3, and C_4 in Eqs. 13.23, 13.24, and 13.25.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Table 13.2 ACI Moment and Shear Coefficients[a]

Positive moment	
End spans	
If discontinuous end is unrestrained	$\frac{1}{11}w_u\ell_n^2$
If discontinuous end is integral with the support	$\frac{1}{14}w_u\ell_n^2$
Interior spans	$\frac{1}{16}w_u\ell_n^2$
Negative moment at exterior face of first interior support	
Two spans	$\frac{1}{9}w_u\ell_n^2$
More than two spans	$\frac{1}{10}w_u\ell_n^2$
Negative moment at other faces of interior supports	$\frac{1}{11}w_u\ell_n^2$
Negative moment at face of all supports (1) slabs with spans not exceeding 10 ft and (2) beams and girders where ratio of sum of column stiffness to beam stiffness exceeds 8 at each end of the span	$\frac{1}{12}w_u\ell_n^2$
Negative moment at interior faces of exterior supports for members built integrally with their supports	
Where the support is a spandrel beam or girder	$\frac{1}{24}w_u\ell_n^2$
Where the support is a column	$\frac{1}{16}w_u\ell_n^2$
Shear in end members of first interior support	$1.15\,\frac{w_u\ell_n}{2}$
Shear at all other supports	$\frac{w_u\ell_n}{2}$

Source: Ref. 13.13.

[a]w_u = total factored load per unit length of beam or per unit area of slab

ℓ_n = clear span for positive moment and shear and the average of the two adjacent clear spans for negative moment

The code permits decreasing the negative moments at the supports for continuous members by not more than $1000\,\varepsilon_t$ % with a maximum of 20%. The reason is that for ductile members, plastic hinge regions develop at points of maximum moment and cause a shift in the elastic moment diagram. The result is a reduction of the negative moment and a corresponding increase in the positive moment. The redistribution of the negative moment as permitted by the code can only be used when ε_t is equal or greater than 0.0075 in./in. at the section at which the moment is reduced. This redistribution is logically inapplicable to working stress design or to slab systems designed by the direct design method (DDM).

Figure 5.7 in Chapter 5 shows the permissible moment redistribution for minimum rotational capacity.

13.6.5.3. Effective Span Moments. The usual assumption in frame analysis postulates that the members are prismatic, having constant moment of inertia between center lines. In reality, a beam stops to have constant section at the face of the column support, and its moment of inertia is greatly increased as it approaches the column center line. To account for this discrepancy in the analysis, the moments and shears have to be adjusted by the change in moment values between the support center line and the support face, as shown in Figure 13.18. The adjusted moment value can be determined by mapping the area of the shear diagram between the column face and its center line. This area can be taken as $\frac{1}{2}Val$ for the knife-edge support assumption of $\frac{1}{3}Val$ for the finite support area as usually exists.

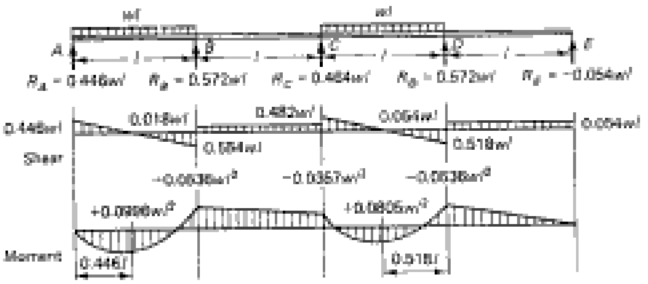
@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

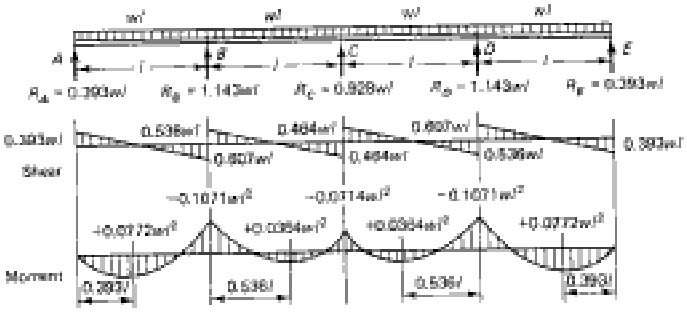
Table 13.3 *Continued*

5. CONTINUOUS BEAM—FOUR EQUAL SPANS—LOAD FIRST AND THIRD SPANS



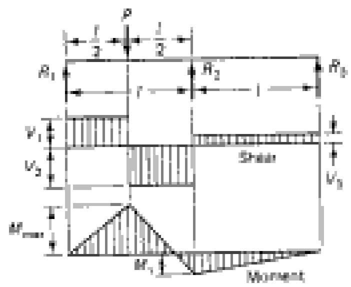
Δ_{max} (0.477l from A) = $0.0097wl^4/EI$

6. CONTINUOUS BEAM—FOUR EQUAL SPANS—ALL SPANS LOADED



Δ_{max} (0.440l from A and E) = $0.0065wl^4/EI$

7 CONTINUOUS BEAM—TWO EQUAL SPANS—CONCENTRATED LOAD AT CENTER OF ONE SPAN



Total equivalent uniform load $= \frac{13}{8}P$

$R_1 = V_1$ $= \frac{13}{32}P$

$R_2 = V_2 + V_3$ $= \frac{11}{16}P$

$R_3 = V_3$ $= -\frac{3}{32}P$

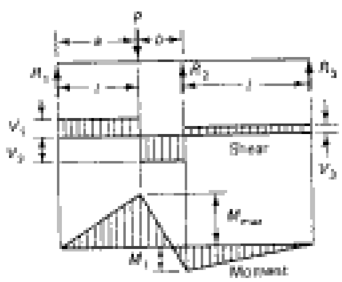
V_2 $= \frac{19}{32}P$

M_{max} (at point of load) $= \frac{13}{64}Pl$

M_1 (at support R_2) $= \frac{3}{32}Pl$

Δ_{max} (0.480l from R_1) $= 0.015Pl^3/EI$

8. CONTINUOUS BEAM—TWO EQUAL SPANS—CONCENTRATED LOAD AT ANY POINT



$R_1 = V_1$ $= \frac{Pb}{4l^3}[4l^2 - a(l + a)]$

$R_2 = V_2 + V_3$ $= \frac{Pa}{2l^3}[2l^2 + b(l + a)]$

$R_3 = V_3$ $= -\frac{Pab}{4l^3}(l + a)$

V_2 $= \frac{Pa}{4l^3}[4l^2 + b(l + a)]$

M_{max} (at point of load) $= \frac{Pab}{4l^3}[4l^2 - a(l + a)]$

M_1 (at support R_2) $= \frac{P}{4l^2}$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

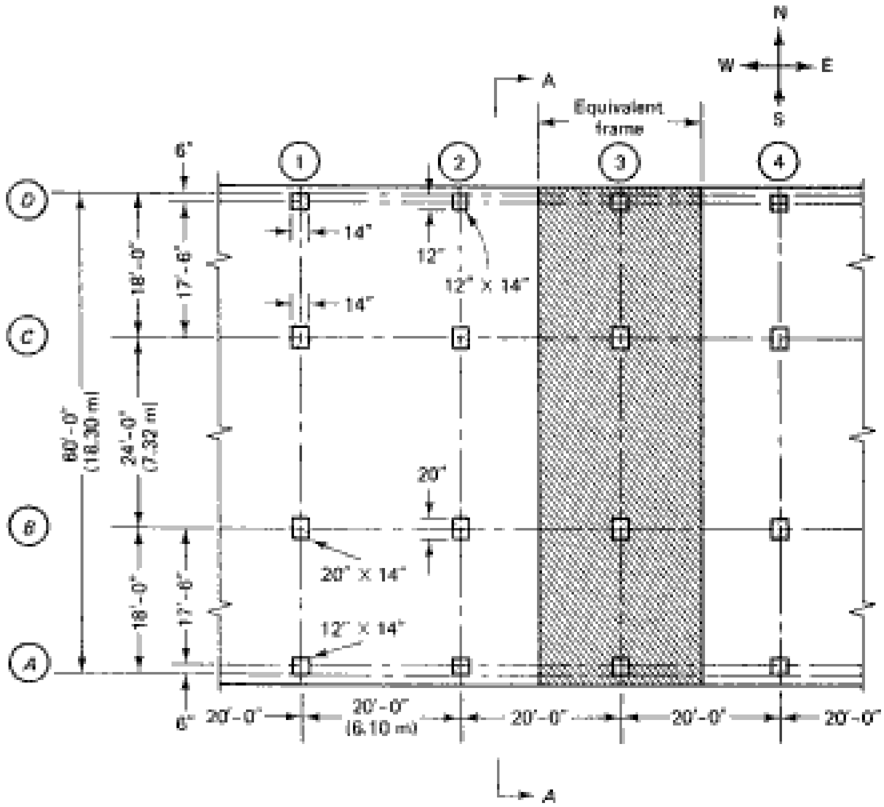


Figure 13.19 Flat-plate apartment structure in Ex. 13.4.

$$K_c = \frac{4E_c I_c}{L_n - 2h} \tag{13.27}$$

where $l_s = 8'\text{-}9'' = 105$ in.

Exterior column (14 in. × 12 in.) stiffness

$$b = 14 \text{ in.} \quad I_c = 14(12)^3/12 = 2016 \text{ in.}^4$$

Assume that

$$\frac{E_{col}}{E_{slab}} = \frac{E_{cc}}{E_{cs}} = 1.0$$

Use $E_{cc} = E_{cs} = 1.0$ in the calculations because E_{cs} drops out in the equation for K_{ec}.

$$\text{total } K_c = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 2016}{105 - (2 \times 6.5)} \times 2 \quad \text{(for top and bottom columns)}$$

$$= 175.3 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cc}$$

$$\text{torsional constant } C = \Sigma\left(1 - 0.63\frac{x}{y}\right)x^3\frac{y}{3}$$

$$= \left(1 - 0.63 \times \frac{6.5}{12}\right)6.5^3 \times \frac{12}{3} = 724$$

Torsional stiffness of the slab at the column line is

$$K_t = \Sigma \frac{9E_{cs}C}{L_2(1 - c_2/L_2)^3}$$

$$= \frac{9 \times 1 \times 724}{20 \times 12[1 - 14/(12 \times 20)]^3} + \frac{9 \times 1 \times 724}{20 \times 12[1 - 14/(12 \times 20)]^3}$$

$$= 65 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

The equivalent column stiffness is

$$K_{ec} = \left(\frac{1}{K_c} + \frac{1}{K_t}\right)^{-1} = \left(\frac{1}{175.3} + \frac{1}{65}\right)^{-1} = 47 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cc}$$

Interior column (14 in. × 20 in.) stiffness

$$b = 14 \text{ in.} \qquad I = \frac{14(20)^3}{12} = 9333 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\text{total } K_c = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 9333}{105 - 2 \times 6.5} \times 2 = 812 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cc}$$

$$C = (1 - 0.63 \times 6.5/20) \times (6.5)^3 \times 20/3 = 1456$$

$$K_t = \frac{9 \times 1456}{20 \times 12[1 - 14/(12 \times 20)]^3} + \frac{9 \times 1456}{20 \times 12[1 - 14/12 \times 20)]^3}$$

$$= 131 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

$$K_{ec} = \left(\frac{1}{812} + \frac{1}{131}\right)^{-1} = 113 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

Slab stiffness: From Eq. 13.27,

$$K_s = \frac{4E_{cs}I_s}{L_n - c_1/2}$$

where L_n = center-line span

c_s = column depth

Slab band width in E–W direction = 20/2 + 20/2 = 20 ft.

$$I_s = 20 \times \frac{12(6.5)^3}{12} = 5493 \text{ in.}^4$$

Slab at right of exterior column *A:*

$$K_s = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 20(6.5)^3}{12 \times 17.5 - 12/2} = 108 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

Slab at left of interior column *B:*

$$K_s = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 20(6.5)^3}{12 \times 17.5 - 20/2} = 110 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

Slab at right of interior column *B:*

$$K_s = \frac{4 \times 1 \times 20(6.5)^3}{12 \times 24 - 20/2} = 79 \text{ in.-lb/rad}/E_{cs}$$

Slab distribution factor at joints: DF = $K_s/\Sigma K$, where $\Sigma K = K_{ec} + K_{s(left)} + K_{s(right)}$.

$$\text{outer joint } A \text{ slab DF} = \frac{108}{47 + 108} = 0.697$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

image
not
available

number of bays. In such cases, the use of computers in evaluating the axial forces, shears, and moments becomes necessary.

The horizontal and vertical shear forces computed in this example for the *second*-floor portals are shown in Figure 13.20b. For wind blowing from left to right, the total axial tensile force due to wind in column A and the axial compressive force due to wind in column D are equal to the sum of all the vertical shears in the beams in all the floors and the roof in bays AB and CD, respectively. Note that the bending moment diagram in Figure 13.20b due to wind is drawn on the *tension* face of the members.

NOTE: The portal method is an *approximate* and rapid method of analyzing the moments and shears due to wind in multistory frames. Exact analysis taking into account the P–Δ effects on the columns can be achieved by the utilization of canned computer programs, as explained in Section 9.13.

13.7 LIMIT DESIGN (ANALYSIS) OF INDETERMINATE BEAMS AND FRAMES

The discussions presented in this chapter thus far entail the *elastic* analysis of indeterminate beam and frame systems with examples for "exact" solutions as well as by approximate methods based on the geometrical behavior of the structure. Also, redistribution factors p_d for continuity are introduced where permissible provided that *adequate* longitudinal reinforcement is provided at the critical continuity zones to control the cracking levels of such zones.

These procedures do not necessarily give the most efficient solution to a statically indeterminate continuous beam or frame, since full redistribution at ultimate load is not considered. As the applied load is gradually increased until the structure as a whole reaches its limit capacity, the critical sections, such as the supports or corners of frames, develop severe cracking, and rotations become so large that for all practical purposes rotating *plastic hinges* develop. If the number of plastic hinges that develops equals the number of the indeterminacies, the structure becomes determinate, as *full redistribution* of moments would have taken place throughout the structure. With the development of an additional hinge, the structure becomes a mechanism resulting in a collapse.

Analysis of the structure at *full* moment redistribution is termed *plastic* or *limit* analysis. Since concrete cracks severely at high overloads, it is possible for the designer to *impose the desirable* locations of the plastic hinges by making the concrete member fail or making it adequately strong at any section by decreasing or increasing the reinforcement percentage without appreciably altering the stiffness of the member. This flexibility in proportioning is not available in the plastic design of steel structures where the resulting locations of the plastic hinges are obtained from mechanisms determined by upper- and lower-bound solutions. Details of the *theory of imposed rotations* by A. L. L. Baker are well presented in Refs. 13.9, 13.10, and 13.11.

13.7.1 Method of Imposed Rotations

The *imposed* locations of the plastic hinges coincide with the locations of the maximum elastic moments for combined gravity loads and horizontal wind loads. These locations occur at intermediate supports of continuous beams and beam–column corners of frames as seen in the portal frame of Fig. 13.21. By superimposing Figs. 13.21a and b, the maximum elastic moment occurs at corner C. As plastic moments are a magnification of the elastic moments, the natural location for the development of a plastic hinge is corner C. Since the structure is indeterminate to the first degree, only one hinge develops, resulting in a *basic* frame ABC, which is the fundamental frame for the imposed hinges seen in Fig. 13.21e, numbered in the order in which they are expected to form. This structure has nine indeterminacies; hence nine plastic hinges are formed. A tenth hinge reduces the struc-

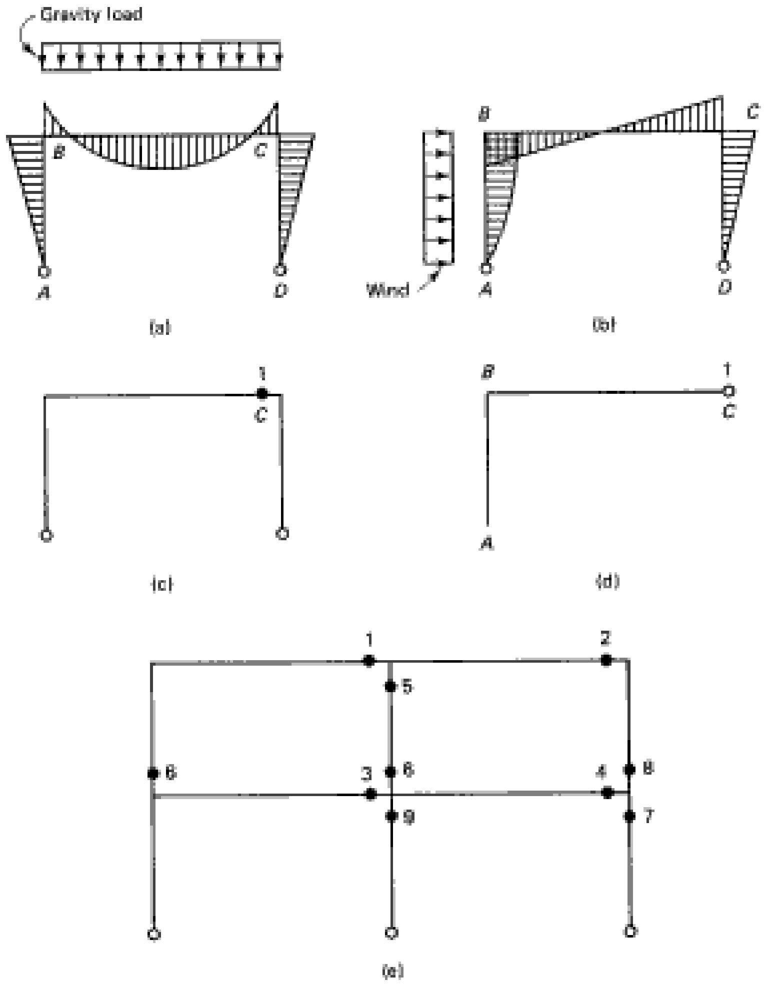


Figure 13.21 Imposed plastic hinges in concrete frames: (a) gravity load elastic moment; (b) wind-load intensity moments; (c) hinge 1 at *C* reducing frame to statically determinate; (d) basic plastic frame; (e) succession of plastic hinges in two spans, two-level frame.

ture to a mechanism resulting in a collapse. Note that no plastic hinges are permitted to form at midspan of the horizontal members. The plastic moments corresponding to assumed hinges 1, 2, 3, . . . , n are denoted by $\overline{X}_1, \overline{X}_2, \overline{X}_3, \ldots, \overline{X}_n$ and are assumed to remain constant throughout the progressive deformation of the structure.

Hence the derivative of the total strain energy U with respect to the assumed plastic moments X_i at any hinge i is made equal to the plastic rotation at the hinge:

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial X_i} = -\theta_i \tag{13.28}$$

Equation 13.30 is similar to Eq. 13.1 except that plastic moment $\overline{X}_i$ is used instead of the elastic moment X_i. If δ_{ik} is assumed to represent the relative rotation of the ith hinge due to a unit moment at the kth hinge, $\delta_{ik} = \delta_{ki}$ from Maxwell's reciprocal theorem. The coefficients δ_{ik} are called *influence coefficients* because they represent the displacement or rotation at a particular section due to a unit moment at *another* section; that is, $\delta_{ik} = -\theta_i$.

From the principle of virtual work,

$$\delta_{ik} = \Sigma \int_0^l \frac{M_i M_k}{E_c I}\, ds = -\theta_i \tag{13.29}$$

where θ_i has a finite value *not* equal to zero, as was the case in the elastic analysis represented by Eq. 13.4.

By substituting δ_{io} and δ_{ik} for M_k in Eq. 13.31, the following expression is obtained:

$$\delta_{i0} + \sum_{k=1}^{k=n} \delta_{ik} \overline{X}_k = -\theta_i \tag{13.30}$$

Hence a structure should develop n plastic hinges to reduce it to statically determinate.

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{10} + \delta_{11}\overline{X}_1 + \delta_{12}\overline{X}_2 + \cdots + \delta_{1n}\overline{X}_n &= -\theta_1 \\ \delta_{20} + \delta_{21}\overline{X}_1 + \delta_{22}\overline{X}_2 + \cdots + \delta_{2n}\overline{X}_n &= -\theta_2 \\ \delta_{n0} + \delta_{n1}\overline{X}_1 + \delta_{n2}\overline{X}_2 + \cdots + \delta_{nn}\overline{X}_n &= -\theta_n \end{aligned} \tag{13.31}$$

The number of equations in a set is equal to the number of redundancies or indeterminacies. By trial and adjustment of the redundant plastic moments $\overline{X}_1, \ldots, \overline{X}_n$ in the solution of the set of Eqs. 13.31 for controlled maximum allowable rotation of the largest rotating hinge θ_1, the plastic moments at beam supports and column ends are obtained for the plastic design of the concrete structure. It has to be emphasized that the arbitrary plastic moment values $\overline{X}_1, \overline{X}_2, \overline{X}_3, \ldots, \overline{X}_n$ are chosen in Eqs. 13.31 to result in plastic rotations $\theta_1, \theta_2, \ldots, \theta_n$ that give *full redistribution* of moments throughout the structure.

As shown in Section 13.3.1, the influence coefficient δ_{ik} in Eqs. 13.31 is

$$\delta_{ik} = \frac{A_i}{EI}\eta \tag{13.32}$$

where A_i is the area under the primary M_i bending moment diagram and η is the ordinate of the M_k moment diagram under the centroid of the M_i diagram (Ref. 13.9). Table 13.1 and the example accompanying it give solutions for products of integral values $\int_0^l M_i M_k$ for various moment combinations $EI\delta_{ik}$.

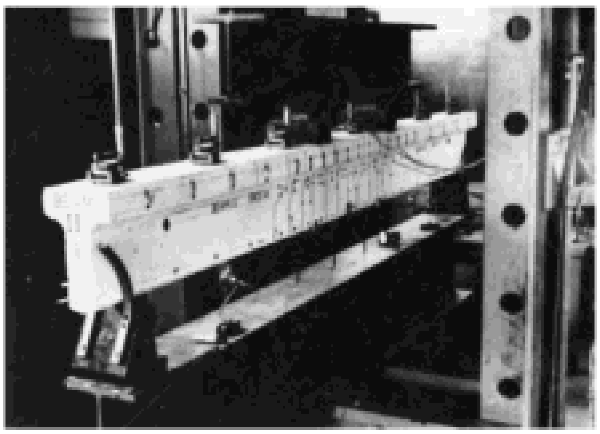


Photo 13.4 Rotation measurement setup using inclinometers in flanged beam (Nawy et al.)

13.7.2 Example 13.6: Determination of Plastic Hinge Rotations in Continuous Beams

Determine the required plastic hinge rotation in the four-span beam of Figure 13.22. The beam is subjected to a simple span plastic moment M_o so that midspan moment = support moment = $\frac{1}{2}M_o$ before full rotation of the hinges and full moment redistribution takes place.

Solution: The structure is statically indeterminate to the third degree, so three hinges will develop at the plastic limit. Assume the maximum ordinate c of the redundant moment at hinge location to be unity. From Table 13.1 and Figure 13.23

$$EI\delta_{10} = -\frac{2}{3}M_o l \qquad EI\delta_{11} = \frac{2}{3}l$$

$$EI\delta_{12} = \frac{1}{6}l \qquad EI\delta_{13} = 0$$

From Eq. 13.33,

$$-\theta_1 = \delta_{10} + \delta_{11}\overline{X}_1 + \delta_{12}\overline{X}_2 + \delta_{13}\overline{X}_3$$

$$-EI\theta_1 = -\frac{2}{3}M_o l + 0.5M_o\left(\frac{2l}{3}\right) + 0.5\,M_o\left(\frac{l}{6}\right) + 0 = -\frac{M_o l}{4}$$

Similarly, from Table 13.1 and Figure 13.23

$$EI\delta_{20} = \frac{2}{3}M_o l\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) + \frac{2}{3}M_o l\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = -\frac{2}{3}M_o l$$

$$EI\delta_{21} = \left(-\frac{l}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right) = +\frac{l}{6}$$

$$EI\delta_{22} = 2\left(-\frac{l}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{2}{3}\right) = +\frac{2l}{3}$$

$$EI\delta_{23} = \left(-\frac{l}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right) = +\frac{l}{6}$$

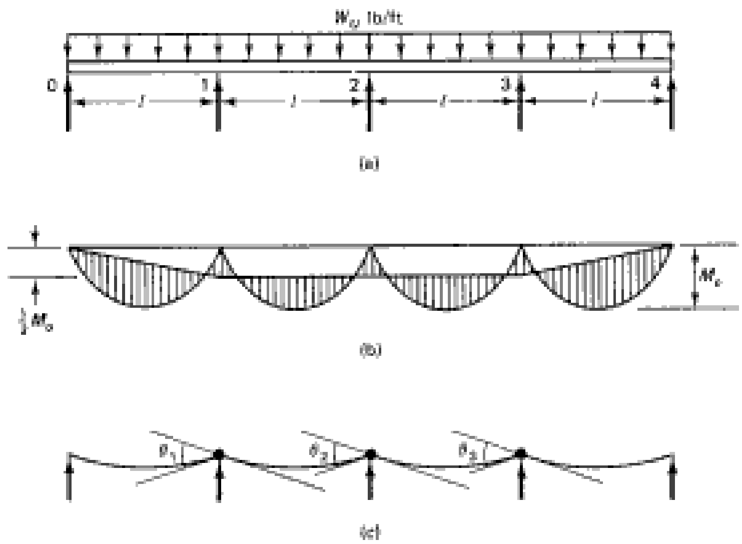


Figure 13.22 Bending moments and plastic hinge rotations in Ex. 13.6.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

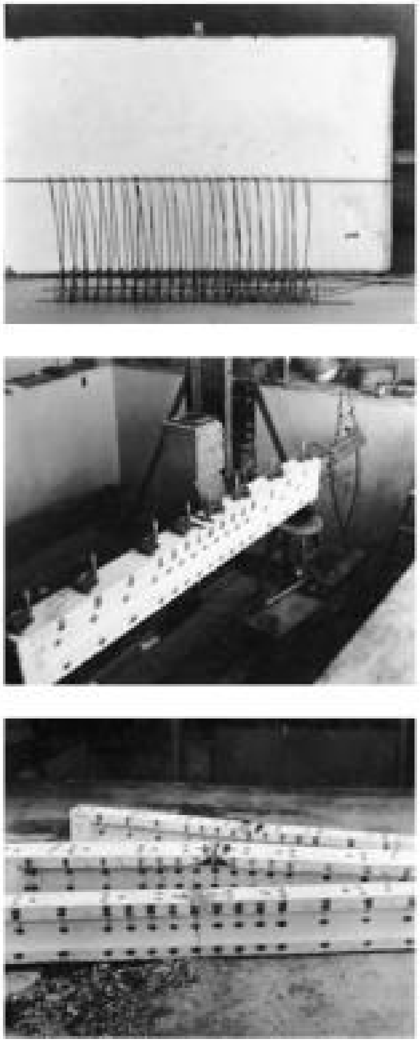


Photo 13.5 I-beams loaded to failure with spiral confining reinforcement: (a) rectangular spirals; (b) test setup after posttensioning; (c) postfailure condition. (Nawy and Salek.)

13.7.3 Rotational Capacity of Plastic Hinges

Rotation is the *total* change in slope along the short plasticity length concentrated at the hinge zone. It can also be described as the angle of discontinuity between the plastic parts of the member on either side of the plastic hinge. There are two types of hinges, as shown in Fig. 13.24, tensile hinges and compressive hinges. So that the first hinge that develops in the structure, usually the critical hinge, can rotate *without* rupture until the *n*th hinge develops, the concrete section at this hinge has to be made ductile enough through section core confinement to be able to sustain the necessary rotation. This is equally applicable to both tension and compression hinges, where confinement of the concrete core is obtained through concentration of closed stirrups at the supports and column ends. Fig. 13.24 shows typical tensile and compressive hinges.

Table 13.5 Beam Moment Coefficients for Assigned Moments

Boundary Condition	Moment Type	Beam Loaded by One Concentrated Load at Midspan	All Other Beams
Span with ends restrained	Negative	0.37	0.50
	Positive	0.42	0.33
Span with one end restrained	Negative	0.56	0.75
	Positive	0.50	0.46

The plasticity length l_p determines the extent of the severe cracking and the rotation magnitude of the hinge. Therefore, it is important to limit the magnitude of l_p through use of *closely spaced* ties or closed stirrups. In this manner, the strain capacity of the concrete at the confined section can be significantly raised, as demonstrated experimentally by several investigators, including the author's work in Refs. 13.17, 13.18, and 13.19. Several empirical expressions have been developed: Baker (Ref. 13.9), Corley (Ref. 13.16), Nawy and Potyondy (Ref. 13.19), Sawyer (Ref. 13.22), Mattock (13.24), and others.

The following simplified expressions for plasticity length l_p and concrete strain ϵ_c (Ref. 13.24) are presented:

$$l_p = 0.5d + 0.05Z \tag{13.33}$$

$$\epsilon_c = 0.003 + 0.02\frac{b}{Z} + 0.2\rho_s \tag{13.34}$$

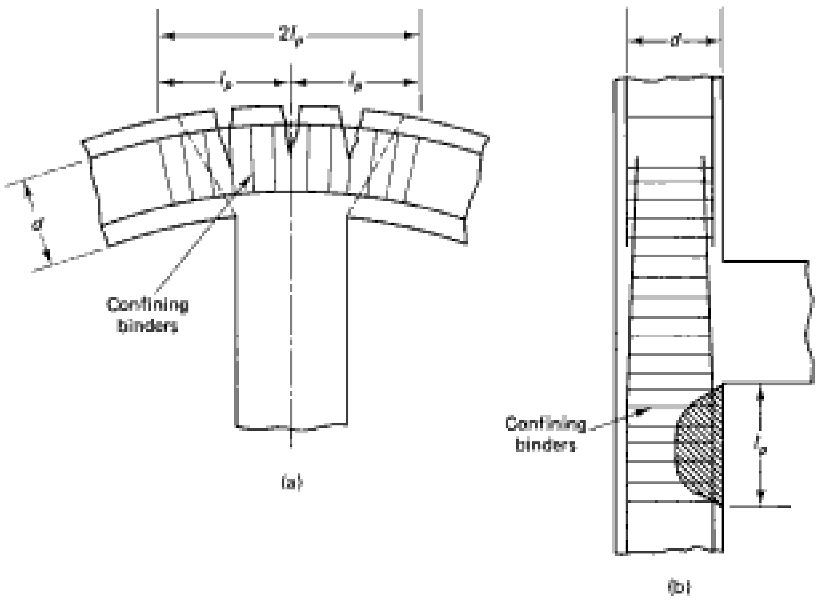


Figure 13.24 Plasticity zones l_p in plastic hinges: (a) tensile hinge; (b) compressive hinge.

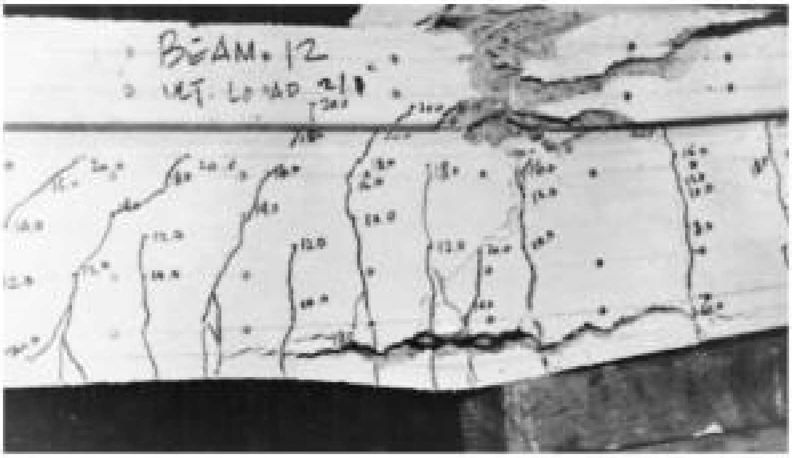


Photo 13.6 Tensile hinge at failure in a T-beam with rectangular confining reinforcement. (Nawy and Potyondy.)

where d = effective depth of beam, in.

b = beam width, in.

Z = distance from the critical section to the point of contraflexure

ρ_s = ratio of volume of confining binder steel (including the compression steel) to the volume of the concrete core

l_p = *half* the plasticity length on each side of the center line of the plastic hinge

Equation 13.33 can be more conservative for high values of ρ_s.

Additionally, such a ρ_s should be chosen that the necessary confinement is achieved as detailed in Ref. 13.20. The maximum spacing of the confining hoops should not exceed the *smallest* of the following: $d/4$, 8 times the diameter of the smallest longitudinal bars, 24 times the diameter of the hoop bars, or 12 in. in beams and 4 in. in columns.

Once the concrete strain ϵ_c is determined, the angle of rotation of the plastic hinge is readily determined from the expression

$$\theta_p = \left(\frac{\epsilon_c}{c} - \frac{\epsilon_{ce}}{kd}\right) l_p \tag{13.35}$$

where c = neutral axis depth at the limit state at failure

ϵ_{ce} = strain in the concrete at the extreme compression fibers when the yield curvature is reached

kd = neutral axis depth corresponding to ϵ_{ce}

ϵ_c = concrete compressive strain at the end of the inelastic range or at the limit state at failure

The strain ϵ_{ce} can usually be taken at the load level where the strain in the tension reinforcement reaches the yield strain $\epsilon_y = f_y/E_s$. The strain ϵ_{ce} can be taken = 0.001 in./in. or higher, depending on whether the tension steel yields before the concrete crushes at the extreme compression fibers in cases of over-reinforced beams as is the case in some prestressed beams. If concrete crushes first, the value of ϵ_{ce} would have to be higher than 0.001 in./in. A limit of allowable ϵ_c = 1.0% is recommended in determining the maximum allowable plastic rotation θ_p, although strains of confined concrete as high as 13% could be obtained, as shown in the author's work (Ref. 13.19). A typical comparison of plastic

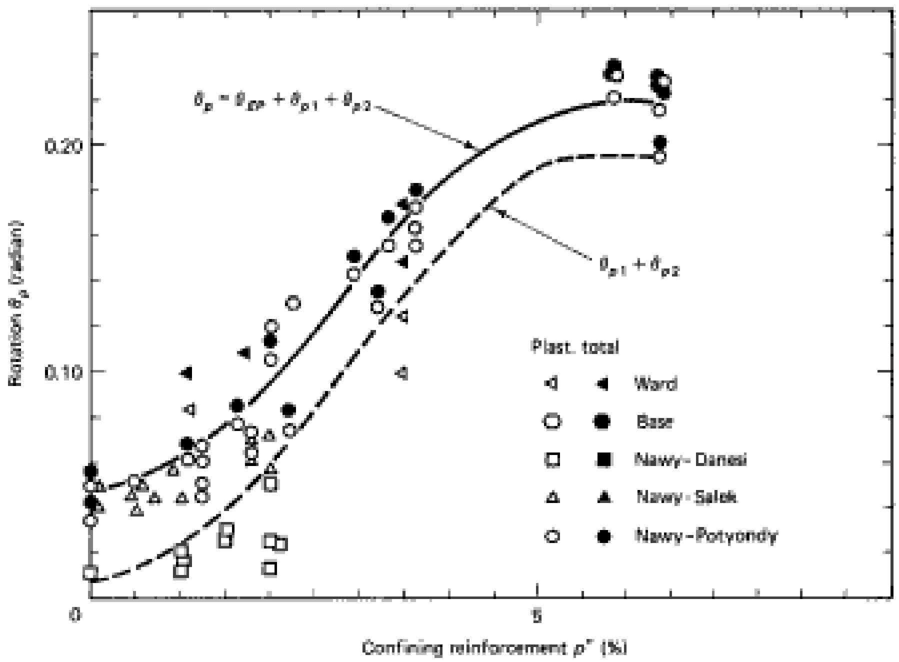


Figure 13.25 Comparison of plastic rotation with results of other authors.

rotations obtained by several authors for various degrees of confinement is shown in Figure 13.25.

It should be stated that the discussions presented are equally applicable to reinforced and prestressed concrete indeterminate structures at the plastic loading range, where full redistribution of moment has taken place. As the load reaches the limit state at failure, the flexural behavior of the prestressed concrete elements is expected to resemble closely that of reinforced concrete elements.

Discussion and design examples on the confinement of members by the ACI and UBC Codes and the International Building Code, IBC 2000, for resisting seismic loading are presented in detail in Chapter 15. Additional discussion in the case of prestressed concrete structures in seismic zones is given in Ref. 13.26.

13.7.4 Example 13.7: Calculation of Available Rotational Capacity

Determine the required and the available rotational capacities of the critical plastic hinges in the continuous beam of Ex. 13.6 for both confined and unconfined concrete. Given:

$$M_u = \frac{1}{2} M_0 = 400bd^2$$

$$c = 0.28d$$

$$kd = 0.375d$$

$$\epsilon_{ce} = \begin{cases} 0.001 \text{ in./in. at end of the elastic range (unconfined)} \\ 0.004 \text{ in./in. at end of the inelastic range for unconfined sections} \end{cases}$$

maximum allowable $\epsilon_c = 0.01$ in./in. (confined)

$$E_c I_c = 150{,}000bd^3 \text{ in.}^2\text{-lb}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

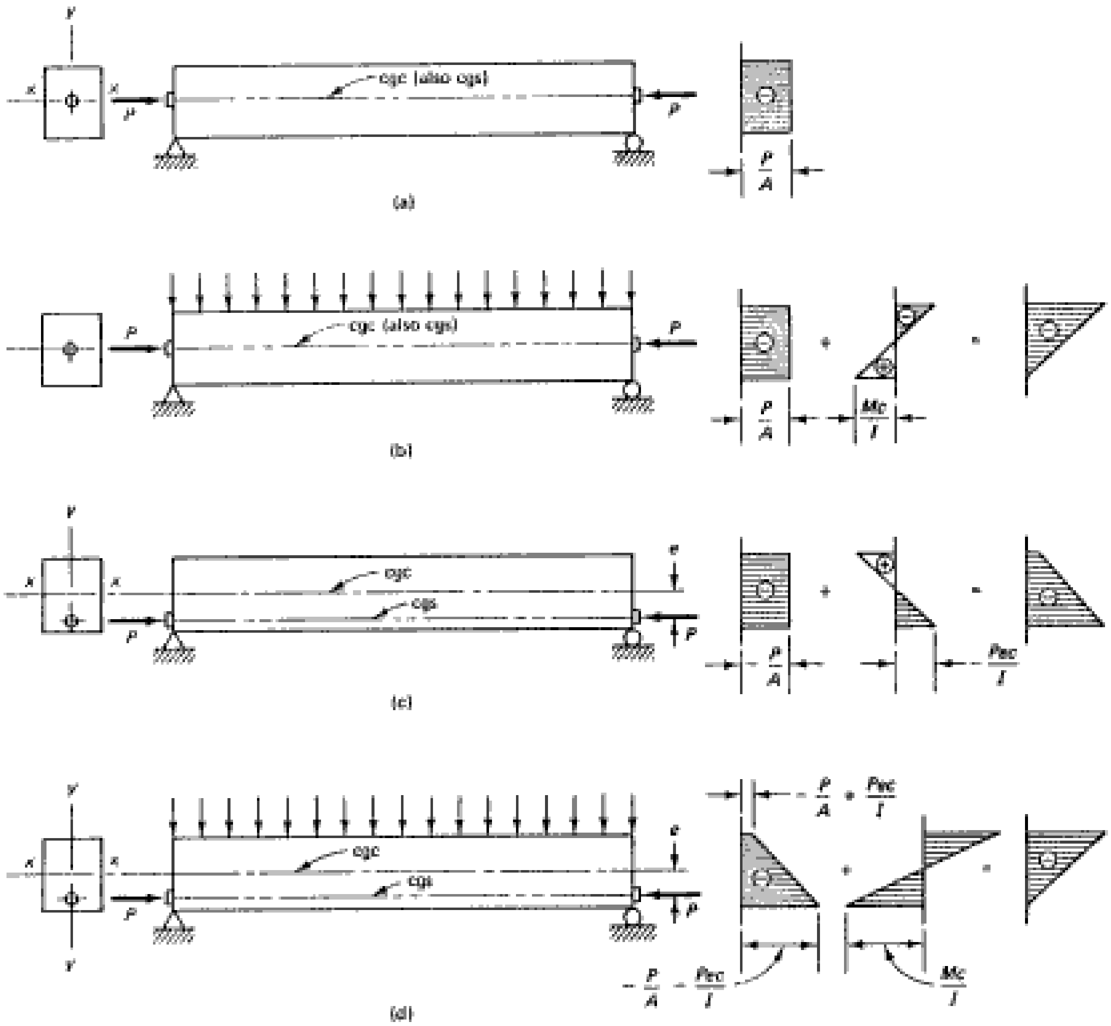


Figure 14.1 Concrete fiber stress distribution in a rectangular beam with straight tendon: (a) concentric tendon, prestress only; (b) concentric tendon, self-weight added; (c) eccentric tendon, prestress only; (d) eccentric tendon, self-weight added.

$$f = -\frac{P}{A_c} \tag{14.1}$$

where $A_c = bh$ is the cross-sectional area of a beam section of width b and total depth h. A *minus* sign is used for compression and a *plus* sign for tension throughout the text. Also, bending moments are drawn on the tensile side of the member.

If external transverse loads are applied to the beam, causing a maximum moment M at midspan, the resulting stress becomes

$$f^t = -\frac{P}{A} - \frac{Mc}{I_g} \tag{14.2a}$$

and

$$f_b = -\frac{P}{A} + \frac{Mc}{I_g} \tag{14.2b}$$

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

$f'_c = 6000$ psi, normal-weight (41.3 MPa)
$f_{pu} = 270{,}000$ psi, stress relieved (1862 MPa) = specified tensile strength of the tendons
$f_{py} = 220{,}000$ psi (1517 MPa) = specified yield strength of the tendons
$f_{pe} = 150{,}000$ psi (1034 MPa)
$f_t = 12\sqrt{f'_c} = 930$ psi (6.4 MPa) = maximum allowable tensile stress in concrete
$f'_{ci} = 4800$ psi (33.1 MPa) = concrete compressive strength at time of initial prestress
$f_{ci} = 0.6f'_{ci} = 2880$ psi (19.9 MPa) = maximum allowable stress in concrete at initial prestress
$f_c = 0.45f'_c$ = maximum allowable compressive stress in concrete at service-load level

Assume that ten $\frac{1}{2}$-in.-dia seven-wire-strand (ten 12.7-mm-dia strand) tendons are used to prestress the beam and

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_c &= 449 \text{ in.}^2 \ (2{,}915 \text{ cm}^2)\\
I_c &= 22{,}469 \text{ in.}^4 \ (935{,}347 \text{ cm}^4)\\
r^2 &= I_c/A_c = 50.04 \text{ in.}^2\\
c_b &= 17.77 \text{ in. } (452 \text{ mm})\\
c_t &= 6.23 \text{ in. } (158 \text{ mm})\\
e_c &= 14.77 \text{ in. } (375 \text{ mm})\\
e_e &= 7.77 \text{ in. } (197 \text{ mm})\\
S_b &= 1{,}264 \text{ in.}^3 \ (20{,}714 \text{ cm}^3)\\
S^t &= 3{,}607 \text{ in.}^3 \ (59{,}108 \text{ cm}^3)\\
W_D &= 359 \text{ plf } (4.45 \text{ kN/m})
\end{aligned}
$$

Solution:

(i) Initial Conditions at Prestressing

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{ps} &= 10 \times 0.153 = 1.53 \text{ in.}^2\\
P_i &= A_{ps} f_{pi} = 1.53 \times 189{,}000 = 289{,}170 \text{ lb } (1{,}287 \text{ kN})\\
P_e &= 1.53 \times 150{,}000 = 229{,}500 \text{ lb } (1{,}020 \text{ kN})
\end{aligned}
$$

The midspan self-weight dead-load moment is

$$M_D = \frac{wl^2}{8} = \frac{359(64)^2}{8} \times 12 = 2{,}205{,}696 \text{ in.-lb } (249 \text{ kN-m})$$

From Equations 14.5 and 14.7,

$$
\begin{aligned}
f^t &= -\frac{P_i}{A_c}\left(1 - \frac{ec_t}{r^2}\right) - \frac{M_D}{S^t}\\
&= -\frac{289{,}170}{449}\left(1 - \frac{14.77 \times 6.23}{50.04}\right) - \frac{2{,}205{,}696}{3{,}607}\\
&= +540.3 - 611.5 \cong -70(C)\\
f_b &= -\frac{P_i}{A_c}\left(1 + \frac{ec_b}{r^2}\right) + \frac{M_D}{S_b}\\
&= -\frac{289{,}170}{449}\left(1 + \frac{14.77 \times 17.77}{50.04}\right) + \frac{2{,}205{,}696}{1{,}264}\\
&= -4{,}022.1 + 1{,}745.0 \cong -2{,}277(C)
\end{aligned}
$$

$< f_{ci} = 2{,}880$ psi allowed, O.K.

(ii) Final Condition at Service Load. Midspan moment due to superimposed dead and live load is

$$M_{SD} + M_L = \frac{420(64)^2}{8} \times 12 = 2{,}580{,}480 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Total moment } M_T = 2{,}205{,}696 + 2{,}580{,}480$$
$$= 4{,}786{,}176 \text{ in.-lb (541 kN-m)}$$

$$f^t = -\frac{P_e}{A_c}\left(1 - \frac{ec_t}{r^2}\right) - \frac{M_T}{S^t}$$
$$= -\frac{229{,}500}{449}\left(1 - \frac{14.77 \times 6.23}{50.04}\right) - \frac{4{,}786{,}176}{3{,}607}$$
$$= +429 - 1{,}327 \cong -898(C) \text{ (7 MPa)}$$
$$< f_c = 0.45 \times 6{,}000 = 2{,}700 \text{ psi, O.K.}$$

$$f_b = -\frac{P_e}{A_c}\left(1 + \frac{ec_b}{r^2}\right) + \frac{M_T}{S_b}$$
$$= -\frac{229{,}500}{449}\left(1 + \frac{14.77 \times 17.77}{50.04}\right) + \frac{4{,}786{,}176}{1{,}264}$$
$$= -3{,}192 + 3{,}786 \cong +594\,(T) \text{ (5.2 MPa)}$$
$$< f_t = 12\sqrt{f'_c} = 930 \text{ psi, O.K.}$$

14.2 PARTIAL LOSS OF PRESTRESS

It is a well-established fact that the initial prestressing force applied to the concrete element undergoes a progressive process of reduction over a period of approximately 5 years. Consequently, it is important to determine the level of the prestressing force at each loading stage, from the stage of transfer of the prestressing force to the concrete, to the various stages of prestressing available at service load, up to the ultimate. Essentially, the reduction in the prestressing force can be grouped into two categories:

1. Immediate elastic loss during the fabrication or construction process, including elastic shortening of the concrete, anchorage losses, and frictional losses
2. Time-dependent losses such as creep, shrinkage, and those due to temperature effects and steel relaxation, all of which are determinable at the service-load limit state of stress in the prestressed concrete element

An exact determination of the magnitude of these losses, particularly the time-dependent ones, is not feasible, since they depend on a multiplicity of interrelated factors. Empirical methods of estimating losses differ with the different codes of practice or recommendations, such as those of the Prestressed Concrete Institute, the ACI–ASCE joint committee approach, the AASHTO lump-sum approach, the Comité Eurointernationale du Béton (CEB), and the FIP (Federation Internationale de la Précontrainte). The degree of rigor of these methods depends on the approach chosen and the accepted practice of record.

A very high degree of refinement of loss estimation is neither desirable nor warranted, because of the multiplicity of factors affecting the estimate. Consequently, lump-sum estimates of losses are more realistic, particularly in routine designs and under average conditions. Such lump-sum losses are summarized in Table 14.1 of AASHTO and Table 14.2 of PTI. They include elastic shortening, relaxation in the prestressing

Table 14.1 AASHTO Lump-Sum Losses

Type of Prestressing Steel	Total Loss [psi (N/mm²)]	
	f'_c = 4000 psi (27.6 N/mm²)	f'_c = 5000 psi (34.5 N/mm²)
Pretensioning strand		45,000 psi (310)
Posttensioning[a] wire or strand	32,000 psi (221)	33,000 psi (228)
Bars	22,000 psi (152)	23,000 psi (159)

[a]Losses due to friction are excluded. Such losses should be computed according to Section 6.5 of the AASHTO specifications.

steel, creep, and shrinkage and are applicable only to routine, standard conditions of loading; normal concrete, quality control, construction procedures, and environmental conditions; and the importance and magnitude of the system. Detailed analysis has to be performed if these standard conditions are not fulfilled.

A summary of the sources of the separate prestressing losses and the stages of their occurrence is given in Table 14.3, in which the subscript i denotes "initial" and the subscript j denotes the loading stage after jacking. From this table, the total loss in prestress can be calculated for pretensioned and posttensioned members as follows:

1. *Pretensioned members*

$$\Delta f_{pT} = \Delta f_{pES} + \Delta f_{pR} + \Delta f_{pCR} + \Delta f_{pSH} \tag{14.8a}$$

where $\Delta f_{pR} = \Delta f_{pR}(t_0, t_{tr}) + \Delta f_{pR}(t_{tr}, t_s)$

t_0 = time at jacking

t_{tr} = time at transfer

t_s = time at stabilized loss

Hence, computations for steel relaxation loss have to be performed for the time interval t_1 through t_2 of the respective loading stages.

As an example, the transfer stage, say, at 18 hours would result in $t_{tr} = t_2 = 18$ hours and $t_0 = t_1 = 0$. If the next loading stage is between transfer and 5 years (17,520 hours), when losses are considered stabilized, then $t_2 = t_s = 17{,}520$ hours and $t_1 = 18$

Table 14.2 Approximate Prestress Loss Values for Posttensioning[a]

Posttensioning Tendon Material	Prestress Loss [psi (N/mm²)] Slabs	Prestress Loss [psi (N/mm²)] Beams and Joists
Stress-relieved 270K strand and stress-relieved 240K wire	30,000 (207)	35,000 (241)
Bar	20,000 (138)	25,000 (172)
Low-relaxation 270K strand	15,000 (103)	20,000 (138)

Source: Post-Tensioning Institute.

[a]This table of approximate prestress losses was developed to provide a common posttensioning industry basis for determining tendon requirements on projects in which the magnitude of prestress losses is not specified by the designer. These loss values are based on use of normal-weight concrete and on average values of concrete strength, prestress level, and exposure conditions. Actual values of losses may vary significantly above or below the table values where the concrete is stressed at low strengths, where the concrete is highly prestressed, or in very dry or very wet exposure conditions. The table values do not include losses due to friction.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

(4) *Shrinkage loss*

$$\Delta f_{pSH} = 0$$

So the tendon stress f_{pi} at the end of stage I is

$$164{,}848 - 3450 = 161{,}398 \text{ psi } (1113 \text{ MPa})$$

Stage II: ***Transfer to placement of topping after 30 days***

(1) *Creep loss*

$$P_i = 161{,}398 \times 12 \times 0.153 = 296{,}327 \text{ lb}$$

$$\bar{f}_{cs} = -\frac{P_i}{A_c}\left(1 + \frac{e^2}{r^2}\right) + \frac{M_D e}{I_c}$$

$$= -\frac{296{,}327}{615}\left[1 + \frac{(17.58)^2}{97.11}\right] + \frac{3{,}464{,}496 \times 17.58}{59{,}720}$$

$$= -2016.2 + 1020.0 = 996.2 \text{ psi } (6.94 \text{ MPa})$$

Hence the creep loss is

$$\Delta f_{pCR} = nK_{CR}\,(\bar{f}_{cs} - \bar{f}_{csd})$$

$$= 9.72 \times 1.6(996.2 - 519.3) = 7417 \text{ psi } (51.9 \text{ MPa})$$

(2) ***Shrinkage loss:*** Given

$\Delta f_{pSH} = 3{,}590$ psi (24.8 MPa) at 30 days using a shrinkage reduction coefficient $= 0.58$

(3) *Steel relaxation loss at 30 days*

$$f_{pi} = 161{,}398 \text{ psi}$$

The relaxation loss in stress becomes

$$\Delta f_{pR} = 161{,}398\,\frac{\log 720 - \log 18}{10}\left(\frac{161{,}398}{230{,}000} - 0.55\right)$$

$$= 3923 \text{ psi } (27.0 \text{ MPa})$$

Stage II: Total losses

$$\Delta f_{pT} = \Delta f_{pCR} + \Delta f_{pSH} + \Delta f_{pR}$$

$$= 7417 + 3590 + 3923 = 14{,}930 \text{ (103.0 MPa) psi } (122.2 \text{ MPa})$$

The increase in stress in the strands due to the addition of topping is $f_{SD} = 5048$ psi (34.8 MPa); hence the strand stress at the end of stage II is

$$f_{pe} = f_{pi} - \Delta f_{pT} + \Delta f_{SD} = 161{,}398 - 14{,}930 + 5048 = 151{,}516 \text{ psi } (1045 \text{ MPa})$$

Stage III: At end of 2 years

$$f_{pe} = 151{,}516 \text{ psi}$$

$$t_1 = 720 \text{ hours}$$

$$t_2 = 17{,}520 \text{ hours}$$

The steel relaxation stress loss is

$$\Delta f_{pR} = 151{,}516\left(\frac{\log 17{,}520 - \log 720}{10}\right)\left(\frac{151{,}516}{230{,}000} - 0.55\right)$$

$$= 2248 \text{ psi } (15.8 \text{ MPa})$$

Assuming that the creep shrinkage losses were maintained till stage III, the strand stress f_{pe} at the end of stage III is approximately

$$151{,}516 - 2248 = 149{,}232 \text{ psi } (1029 \text{ MPa})$$

Summary of stresses

Stress Level at Various Stages	Steel Stress (psi)	Percent
After tensioning ($0.70f_{pu}$)	189,000	100.0
Elastic shortening loss	0	0.0
Anchorage loss[a]	–8,333	–4.4
Frictional loss[a]	–15,819	–8.4
Creep loss	–7,417	–3.9
Shrinkage loss	–3,590	–1.9
Relaxation loss (3528 + 4008 + 2056)	–9,657	–5.1
Increase due to topping	+5,048	+2.7
Final net stress f_{pe}	149,232	79.0
Percentage of total losses = 100 – 77.9 = 22.1%, say, 22% for this posttensioned beam		

[a]Frictional and anchorage seating losses are included in this table since the total jacking stress is given as 189,000 psi; otherwise, the tendons would have to be jacked an additional stress of such magnitude as to neutralize the frictional and anchorage seating losses.

14.2.2 Example 14.3: Lump-sum Computation of Time-dependent Losses in Prestressing

Solve Example 14.2 by the approximate lump-sum method and compare the results.

Solution: From Table 14.2, the total loss Δ_{pT} = 35,000 psi (241.3 MPa). So the net final strand stress by the lump-sum method is

$$f_{pe} = 189{,}000 - 45{,}000 = 144{,}000 \text{ psi } (993 \text{ MPa})$$

$$\text{step-by-step } f_{pe} \text{ value} = 149{,}232 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{percent difference} = \frac{149{,}232 - 144{,}000}{189{,}000} = 2.8\%$$

The difference between the step-by-step "exact" method and the approximate lump-sum method is quite small, indicating that in normal, standard cases both methods are equally reliable.

14.3 FLEXURAL DESIGN OF PRESTRESSED CONCRETE ELEMENTS

Flexural stresses are the result of external, or imposed, bending moments. In most cases, they control the selection of the geometrical dimensions of the prestressed concrete section regardless of whether it is pretensioned or posttensioned. The design process starts with the choice of a preliminary geometry, and by trial and adjustment it converges to a final section with geometrical details of the concrete cross-section and the sizes and alignments of the prestressing strands. The section satisfies the flexural (bending) requirements of concrete stress and steel stress limitations. Thereafter, other factors, such as shear and torsion capacity, deflection, and cracking, are analyzed and satisfied.

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

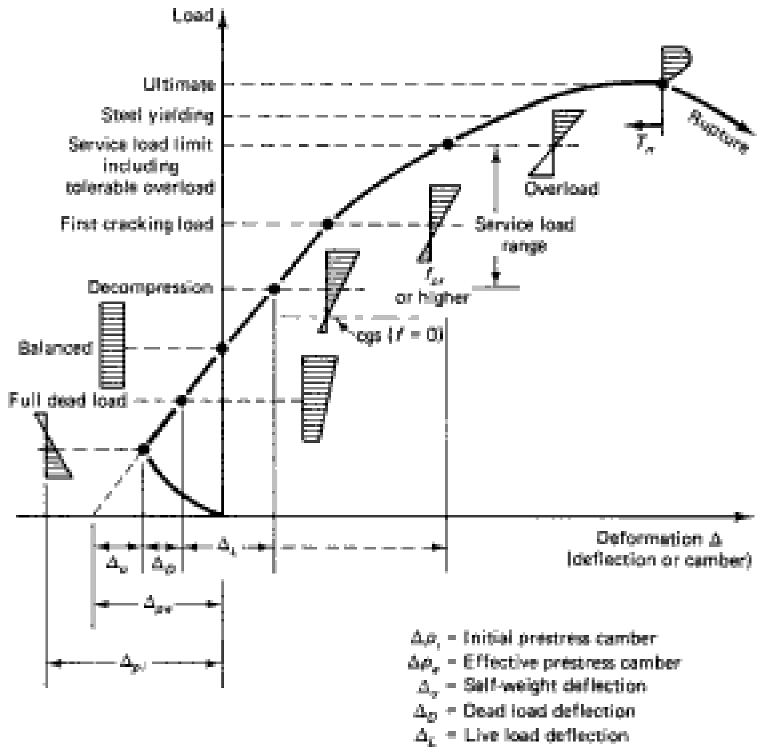


Figure 14.7 Load–deformation curve of typical prestressed beam.

sition is to define the minimum section modulus that can withstand all the loads after losses.

14.3.1.2. Minimum Section Modulus. To design or choose the section, a determination of the required minimum section modulus S'_b has to be made first. If

f_{ci} = maximum allowable compressive stress in concrete immediately after transfer and prior to losses

$= 0.60f'_{ci}$

f_{ti} = maximum allowable tensile stress in concrete immediately after transfer and prior to losses

$= 3\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ (the value can be increased to $6\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ at the supports for simply supported members)

f_c = maximum allowable compressive stress in concrete after losses at service-load level

$= 0.45f'_c$ or $0.60f'_c$ as stipulated in ACI 318 Code

f_t = maximum allowable tensile stress in concrete after losses at service-load level

$= 6\sqrt{f'_c}$ (the value can be increased in one-way systems to $12\sqrt{f'_c}$ if long-term deflection requirements are met)

then the *actual* extreme fiber stresses in the concrete cannot exceed the values listed.

where γ is the residual prestress ratio, the loss of prestress is

$$P_i - P_e = (1 - \gamma)P_i \tag{a}$$

If the actual concrete extreme fiber stress is equivalent to the maximum allowable stress, the change in this stress after losses, from Eqs. 14.9a and 14.9b, is given by

$$\Delta f^t = (1 - \gamma)\left(f_{ti} + \frac{M_D}{S^t}\right) \tag{b}$$

$$\Delta f_b = (1 - \gamma)\left(-f_{ci} + \frac{M_D}{S_b}\right) \tag{c}$$

From Figure 14.8, as the superimposed dead-load moment M_{SD} and live-load moment M_L act on the beam, the net stress at the top fibers is

$$f_n^t = f_{ti} - \Delta f^t - f_c \tag{d}$$

or

$$f_n^t = \gamma f_{ti} - (1 - \gamma)\frac{M_D}{S^t} - f_c$$

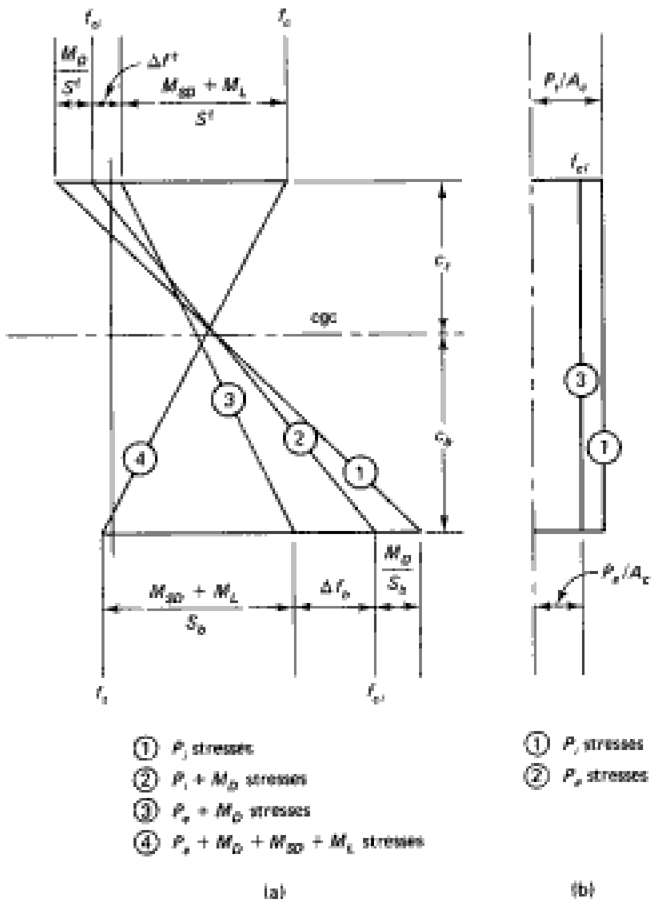


Figure 14.8 Maximum fiber stresses in beams with draped or harped tendons; (a) critical section such as midspan; (b) support section of simply supported beam ($e_e = 0$ as tendon draped/harped).

Hidden page

Hidden page

Table 14.5 Geometrical Outer Dimensions and Section Moduli of Standard PCI T Sections

Designation	Top-/Bottom-Section Modulus (in.^{3})	Flange Width b_f (in.)	Flange Width t_f (in.)	Total Depth h (in.)	Web Width b_w (in.)
8DT12	1001/315	96	2	12	9.5
8DT14	1307/429	96	2	14	9.5
8DT16	1630/556	96	2	16	9.5
8DT20	2320/860	96	2	20	9.5
8DT24	3063/1224	96	2	24	9.5
8DT32	5140/2615	96	2	32	9.5
10DT32	5960/2717	120	2	32	12.5
*12DT34	10,458/3340	144	4	34	12.5
*15DT34	13,128/4274	180	4	34	12.5

*Pretopped

14.3.2 Example 14.4: Service-load Design Example

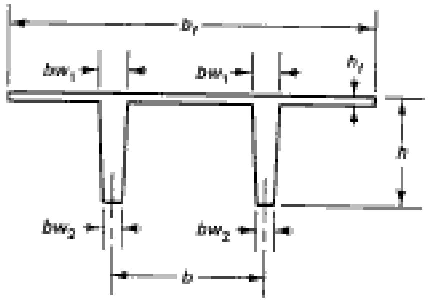
Design a simply supported pretensioned beam with harped tendon and with a span of 65 ft (19.8 m) using the ACI 318 Building Code allowable stresses. The beam has to carry a superimposed service load of 1100 plf (16.1 kN/m) and superimposed dead load of 100 plf (1.5 kN/m) and has no concrete topping. Assume that beam is made of normal-weight concrete with $f'_c = 5000$ psi (34.5 MPa) and the concrete strength f'_{ci} at transfer is 75% of the cylinder strength. Assume also that the time-dependent losses of the initial prestress are 18% of the initial prestress and $f_{pu} = 270{,}000$ psi (1862 MPa) for stress-relieved tendons.

Table 14.6 Geometrical Outer Dimensions and Section Moduli of Standard AASHTO Bridge Sections

	AASHTO Sections					
Designation	**Type 1**	**Type 2**	**Type 3**	**Type 4**	**Type 5**	**Type 6**
Area A_c, in.^{2}	276	369	560	789	1,013	1,085
Moment of inertia I_g, in.^{4}	22,750	50,979	125,390	260,741	521,180	733,320
Top-/bottom-section modulus, in.^{3}	1,476 1,807	2,527 3,320	5,070 6,186	8,908 10,544	16,790 16,307	20,587 20,157
Top flange width, b_f (in.)	12	12	16	20	42	42
Top flange average thickness, t_f (in.)	6	8	9	11	7	7
Bottom flange width, b_2 (in.)	16	18	22	26	28	28
Bottom flange average thickness, t_2 (in.)	7	9	11	12	13	13
Total depth, h (in.)	28	36	45	54	63	72
Web width, b_w (in.)	6	6	7	8	8	8
c_t/c_b (in.)	15.41 12.59	20.17 15.83	24.73 20.27	29.27 24.73	31.04 31.96	35.62 36.38
r^2, in.^{2}	82	132	224	330	514	676

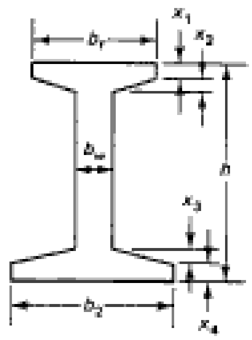
Table 14.7 Geometrical Details of As-Built PCI and AASHTO Sections

Designation	b_f (in.)	h_f (in.)	b_{w1} (in.)	b_{w2} (in.)	h (in.)	b (in.)
8DT12	96	2	5.75	3.75	12	48
8DT14	96	2	5.75	3.75	14	48
8DT16	96	2	5.75	3.75	16	48
8DT18	96	2	5.75	3.75	18	48
8DT20	96	2	5.75	3.75	20	48
8DT24	96	2	5.75	3.75	24	48
8DT32	96	2	7.75	4.75	32	48
10DT32	120	2	7.75	4.75	32	60
12DT34	144	4	7.75	4.75	34	60
15DT34	180	4	7.75	4.75	34	60



Actual double-T sections

Designation	b_f (in.)	x_1 (in.)	x_2 (in.)	b_2 (in.)	x_3 (in.)	x_4 (in.)	b_w (in.)	h (in.)
AASHTO 1	12	4	3	16	5	5	6	28
AASHTO 2	12	6	3	18	6	6	6	36
AASHTO 3	16	7	4.5	22	7.5	7	7	45
AASHTO 4	20	8	6	26	9	8	8	54
AASHTO 5	42	5	7	28	10	8	8	63
AASHTO 6	42	5	7	28	10	8	8	72



Actual I sections

Solution:

$$\gamma = 100 - 18 = 82\%$$

$$f'_{ci} = 0.75 \times 5000 = -3750 \text{ psi } (25.9 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_{ci} = 0.60 \times 3750 = -2250 \text{ psi } (15.5 \text{ MPa})$$

$$f_{ti} = 3\sqrt{3750} = 184 \text{ psi} \quad \text{(midspan)}$$

$$= 6\sqrt{3750} = 368 \text{ psi} \quad \text{(support)}$$

$$f_c = 0.45 \times 5000 = -2250 \text{ psi } (15.5 \text{ MPa})$$

Use $f_t = 6\sqrt{5000} = 425$ psi (2.95 MPa) as the maximum stress in tension, and assume a self-weight of approximately 850 plf (12.4 kN/m). Then the self-weight moment is given by

$$M_D = \frac{wl^2}{8} = \frac{850(65)^2}{8} \times 12 = 5{,}386{,}875 \text{ in.-lb } (608.7 \text{ kN-m})$$

and the superimposed load moment is

$$M_{SD} + M_L = \frac{(1100 + 100)(65)^2}{8} \times 12 = 7{,}605{,}000 \text{ in.-lb } (859.4 \text{ kN-m})$$

Since the tendon is harped, the critical section is close to the midspan, where dead-load and superimposed dead-load moments reach their maximum. The critical section is in many cases taken at $0.40L$ from the support, where L is the beam span. From Eqs. 14.12a and 14.12b,

$$S^t \geq \frac{(1 - \gamma)M_D + M_{SD} + M_L}{\gamma f_{ti} - f_c}$$

$$\geq \frac{(1 - 0.82)5{,}386{,}875 + 7{,}605{,}000}{0.82 \times 184 + 2250} = 3572 \text{ in.}^3 \; (58{,}535 \text{ cm}^3)$$

$$S_b \geq \frac{(1 - \gamma)M_D + M_{SD} + M_L}{f_t - \gamma f_{ci}}$$

$$\geq \frac{(1 - 0.82)5{,}386{,}875 + 7{,}605{,}000}{425 + (0.82 \times 2250)} = 3777 \text{ in.}^3 \; (61{,}892 \text{ cm}^3)$$

$$\text{required } S^t = 3572 \text{ in.}^3 \; (58{,}535 \text{ cm}^3)$$

$$\text{required } S_b = 3777 \text{ in.}^3 \; (61{,}872 \text{ cm}^3)$$

Since the section moduli at the top and bottom fibers are almost equal, a symmetrical section is adequate. Next, analyze the section in Figure 14.10 chosen by trial and adjustment.

Analysis of stresses at transfer

From Eq. 14.12d,

$$\bar{f}_{ci} = f_{ti} - \frac{c_t}{h}(f_{ti} - f_{ci})$$

$$= +184 - \frac{21.16}{40}(+184 + 2250) = -1104 \text{ psi } (C) \; (7.6 \text{ MPa})$$

$$P_i = A_c \bar{f}_{ci} = 377 \times 1104 = 416{,}208 \text{ lb } (1851 \text{ kN})$$

$$M_D = \frac{393(65)^2}{8} \times 12 = 2{,}490{,}638 \text{ in.-lb } (281 \text{ kN-m})$$

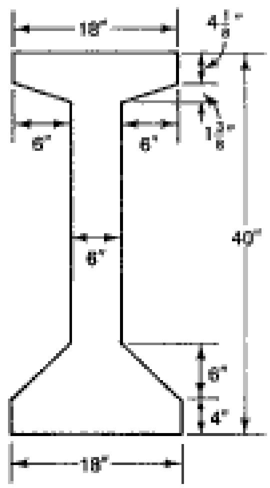


Figure 14.10 I-beam section in Ex. 14.4.

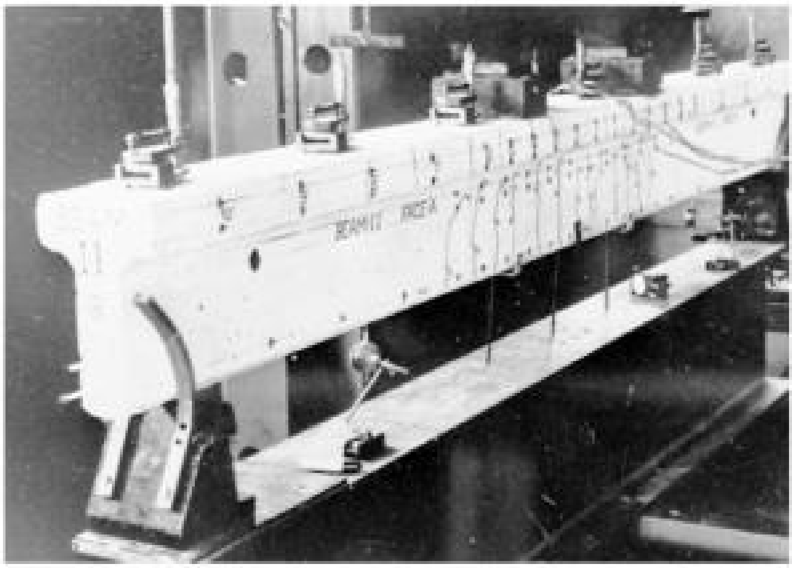


Photo 14.4 Crack development is prestressed T-beam. (Test by Nawy et al.)

From Eq. 14.12c, the eccentricity required at the section of maximum moment at midspan is

$$e_c = (f_{ti} - \bar{f}_{ci})\frac{S^t}{P_i} + \frac{M_D}{P_i}$$

$$= (184 + 1104)\frac{3572}{416{,}208} + \frac{2{,}490{,}638}{416{,}208}$$

$$= 11.05 + 5.98 = 17.04 \text{ in. (433 mm)}$$

Since $c_b = 18.84$ in. and assuming a cover of 3.75 in., try $e_c = 18.84 - 3.75 \cong 15.0$ in. (381 mm).

$$\text{required area of tendons } A_p = \frac{P_i}{f_{pi}} = \frac{416{,}208}{189{,}000} = 2.2 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (14.2 cm}^2\text{)}$$

$$\text{number of strands} = \frac{2.2}{0.153} = 14.38$$

Try thirteen $\frac{1}{2}$-in. strands, $A_p = 1.99$ in.^{2} (12.8 cm), and an actual $P_i = 189{,}000 \times 1.99 = 376{,}110$ lb (1673 kN), and check the concrete extreme fiber stresses. From Eq. 14.9a,

$$f^t = -\frac{P_i}{A_c}\left(1 - \frac{ec_t}{r^2}\right) - \frac{M_D}{S^t}$$

$$= -\frac{376{,}110}{377}\left(1 - \frac{15.0 \times 21.16}{187.5}\right) - \frac{2{,}490{,}638}{3340}$$

$$= +691.2 - 745.7 = -54.5 \text{ psi } (C) \text{, no tension at transfer} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

From Eq. 14.9b,

$$f_b = -\frac{P_i}{A_c}\left(1 + \frac{ec_b}{r^2}\right) + \frac{M_D}{S_b}$$

$$= -\frac{376{,}110}{377}\left(1 + \frac{15 \times 18.84}{187.5}\right) + \frac{2{,}490{,}638}{3750}$$

$$= -2501.3 + 664.2 = -1837.1 \text{ psi } (C) < f_{ci} = 2250 \text{ psi} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

(b) At service load

$$f^t = -\frac{308{,}225}{377}\left(1 - \frac{12.49 \times 21.16}{187.5}\right) - 0 = 334.9 \text{ psi } (T) < 465 \text{ psi} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

$$f_b = -\frac{308{,}225}{377}\left(1 + \frac{12.49 \times 18.84}{187.5}\right) - 0 = -1843 \text{ psi } (C) < -2700 \text{ psi} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

Hence adopt the 40-in. (102-cm)-deep I-section prestressed beam of f'_c equal to 6000 psi (41.4 MPa) normal-weight concrete with thirteen $\frac{1}{2}$-in. strands having midspan eccentricity $e_c = 15.0$ in. (381 mm) and end section eccentricity $e_e = 12.5$ in. (318 m). An alternative to this solution is to continue using $f'_c = 5000$ psi, but change the number of strands and eccentricities.

14.3.3 Flowchart for Service-load Flexural Design of Prestressed Beams

Figure 14.11 shows a flowchart for the service-load flexural design of prestressed beams.

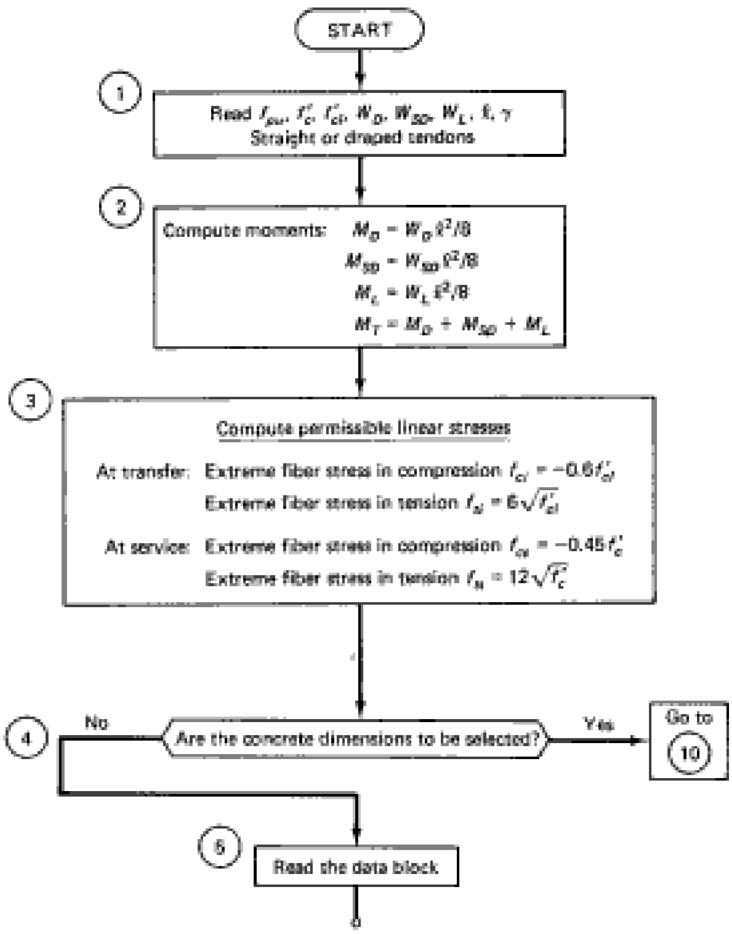


Figure 14.11 Flowchart for service-load flexural design of prestressed beams.

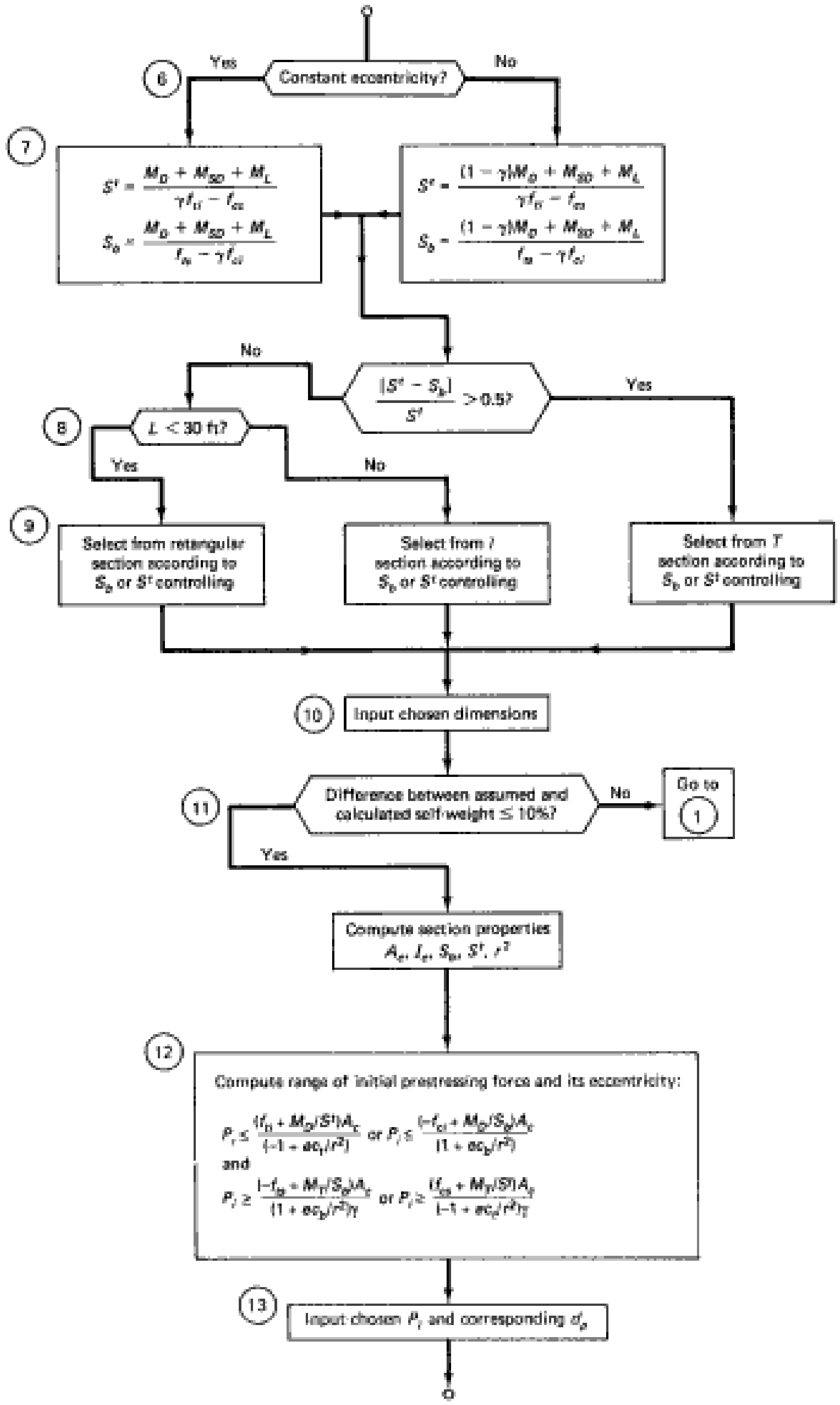


Figure 14.11 *Continued*

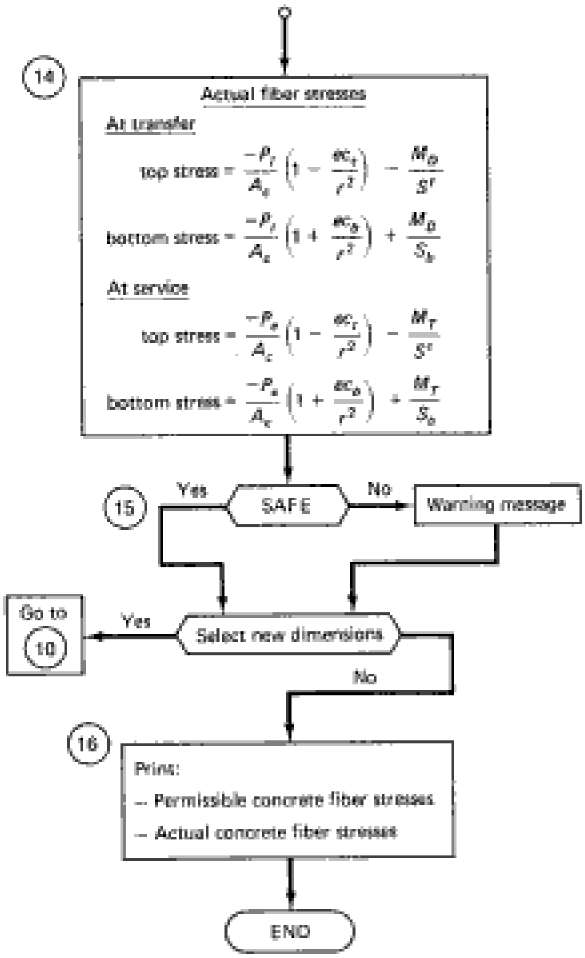


Figure 14.11 *Continued*

14.4 SERVICEABILITY REQUIREMENTS IN PRESTRESSED CONCRETE MEMBERS

Prestressed concrete flexural members are classified into three classes in the new ACI 318 Code.

(a) *Class U:* $$f_t \leq 7.5\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{14.14a}$$

In this class, the gross section is used for section properties when both stress computations at service loads and deflection computations are made. No skin reinforcement needs to be used.

(b) *Class T:* $$7.5\sqrt{f'_c} \angle f_t \leq 12\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{14.14b}$$

This class is a transition between uncracked and cracked sections. For stress computations at service loads, the gross section is used. The cracked bilinear section is used in the deflection computations. No skin reinforcement needs to be used.

(c) *Class C:* $$f_t > 12\sqrt{f'_c} \tag{14.14c}$$

This class denotes cracked sections. Hence, a cracked section analysis has to be made for evaluation of the stress level at service, and for deflection. Computation of Δf_{ps} or f_s for crack control is necessary, where Δf_{ps} = stress increase beyond the decompression state.

and f_s = stress in the mild reinforcement when mild steel reinforcement is also used. Crack control provisions for distribution of mild steel reinforcement is as follows:

$$s = 540 / f_s - 2.5c_c \tag{14.15}$$

where s = mild reinforcement spacing, in.
f_s = service load stress level in the reinforcement of one-way members = $0.60 f_y$, ksi
c_c = clear cover from the nearest surface in tension to the surface of the tension reinforcement, in.

If longitudinal skin reinforcement has to be used at the vertical side faces in the case of very deep beams, the size and spacing of bars or wires are to be chosen as given in Section 8.12 stipulating the size and spacing of skin reinforcement.

The ACI Code does not give guidance for evaluating the developed crack width, and whether it is within tolerable limits, for overstress Δf_s beyond the decompression state. The author's extensive work (Ref. 14.7) and the provisions of the ACI 224 Report on cracking (Ref. 14.8) recommend the following expressions for crack width evaluation in prestressed concrete members:

(a) Pretensioned beams:

$$w_{max} = 5.85 \times 10^{-5} \frac{A_t}{\Sigma 0} (\Delta f_s) \tag{14.16a}$$

(b) Post-tensioned bonded beams

$$w_{max} = 6.51 \times 10^{-5} \frac{A_t}{\Sigma 0} (\Delta f_s) \tag{14.16b}$$

For non-bonded beams, the factor 6.51 becomes 6.83.

A_t = Area of concrete in tension, in.^{2}
$\Sigma 0$ = Sum of perimeters of all reinforcing elements, both mild and prestressing reinforcement, in.
Δf_s = Increase in stress in the prestressing reinforcement above the decompression state level

For high-strength prestressed concrete beams where $6{,}000 < f_c' \leq 12{,}000$, a factor of 2.75 is to be used instead. For more refined values, a modifying factor for particular f_c' values can be obtained from the following expressions:

For pretensioned beams, the reduction multiplier λ_r is

$$\lambda_r = \frac{2}{(0.75 + 0.06\sqrt{f_c'})\sqrt{f_c'}} \tag{14.17a}$$

For post-tensioned beams, the reduction multiplier λ_0 is

$$\lambda_0 = \frac{1}{0.75 + 0.06\sqrt{f_c'}} \tag{14.17b}$$

where f_c' and the reinforcement stress are in ksi.

14.5 ULTIMATE-STRENGTH FLEXURAL DESIGN OF PRESTRESSED BEAMS

14.5.1 Rectangular Sections

The actual distribution of the compressive stress in a section at failure has the form of a rising parabola, as shown in Figure 14.12c. It is time-consuming to evaluate the volume of the compressive stress block if it has a parabolic shape. An equivalent rectangular stress

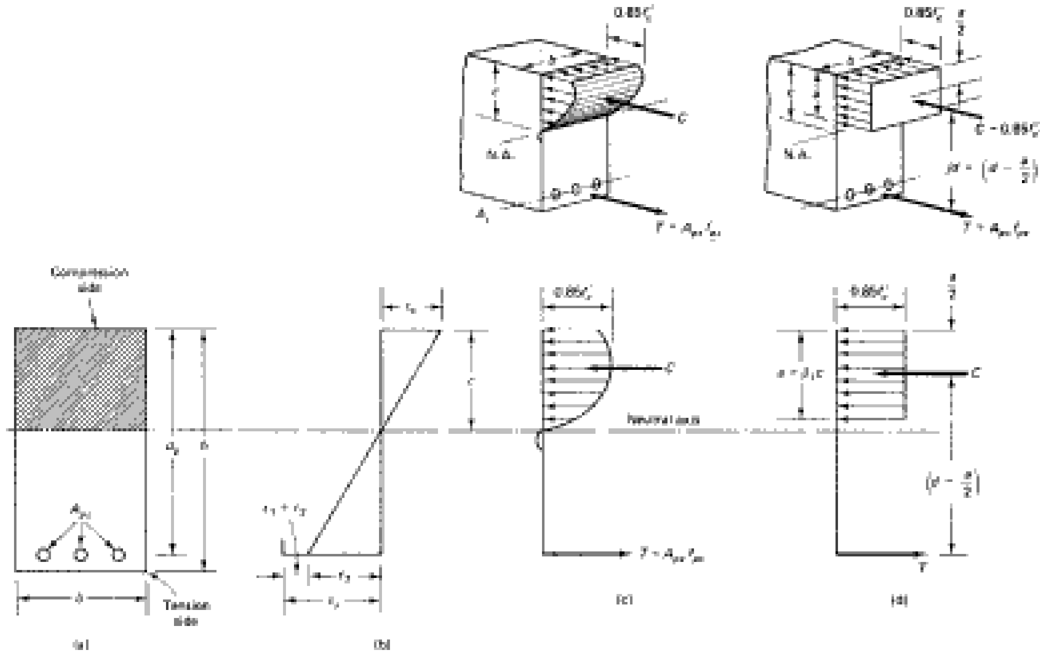


Figure 14.12 Stress and strain distribution across beam depth: (a) beam cross-section; (b) strains; (c) actual stress block; (d) assumed equivalent stress block.

block due to Whitney can be used with ease and without loss of accuracy to calculate the compressive force and hence the flexural moment strength of the section. This equivalent stress block has a depth a and an average compressive strength $0.85f'_c$. As seen from Figure 14.12d, the value of $a = \beta_1 c$ is determined by using a coefficient β_1 such that the area of the equivalent rectangular block is approximately the same as that of the parabolic compressive block, resulting in a compressive force C of essentially the same value in both cases.

The value $0.85f'_c$ for the average stress of the equivalent compressive block is based on the core test results of concrete in the structure at a minimum age of 28 days. Based on exhaustive experimental tests, a maximum allowable strain of 0.003 in./in. was adopted by the ACI as a safe limiting value. Even though several forms of stress blocks, including the trapezoidal, have been proposed to date, the simplified equivalent rectangular block is accepted as the standard in the analysis and design of reinforced concrete. The behavior of the steel is assumed to be elastoplastic.

Using all the preceding assumptions, the stress distribution diagram shown in Figure 14.12c can be redrawn as shown in Figure 14.12d. We can easily deduce that the compression force C can be written $0.85f'_c ba$, that is, the *volume* of the compressive block at or near the ultimate when the tension steel has yielded ($\epsilon_s > \epsilon_y$). The tensile force T can be written as $A_{ps}f_{ps}$; thus the equilibrium equation can be written as

$$A_{ps}f_{ps} = 0.85f'_c ba \tag{14.18}$$

Hence

$$a = \beta_1 c = \frac{A_{ps}f_{ps}}{0.85f'_c b}$$

The nominal moment strength is obtained by multiplying C or T by the moment arm $(d_p - a/2)$, yielding

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

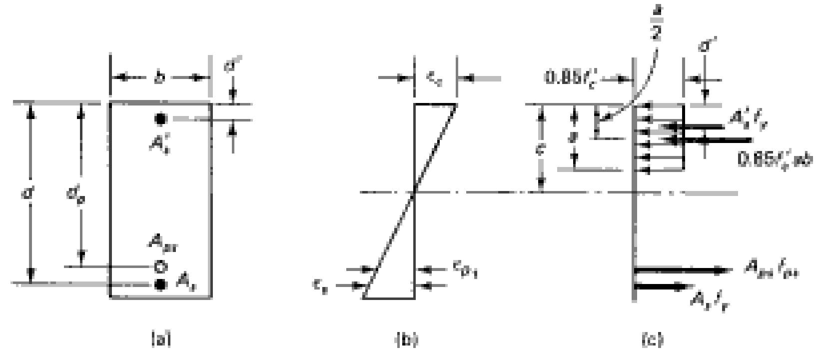


Figure 14.13 Strain, stress, and forces across beam depth of rectangular section: (a) beam section; (b) strain; (c) stresses and forces.

where $\omega = \rho(f_y/f'_c)$, or

$$M_n = A_{ps}f_{ps}\left(d_p - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \tag{14.21c}$$

The contribution from compression reinforcement can be taken into account provided it has been found to have yielded

$$a = \frac{A_{ps}f_{ps} + A_s f_y - A'_s f_y}{0.85f'_c b} \tag{14.22}$$

where b is the section width at the compression face of the beam.

Taking moments about the center of gravity of the compressive block in Figure 14.13, the nominal moment strength in Eq. 14.21c becomes

$$M_n = A_{ps}f_{ps}\left(d_p - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A_s f_y\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) + A'_s f_y\left(\frac{a}{2} - d'\right) \tag{14.23}$$

14.5.2 Nominal Moment Strength of Flanged Sections

When the compression flange thickness h_f is less than the neutral axis depth c and equivalent rectangular block depth a, the section can be treated as a flanged section as in Figure 14.14. From the figure,

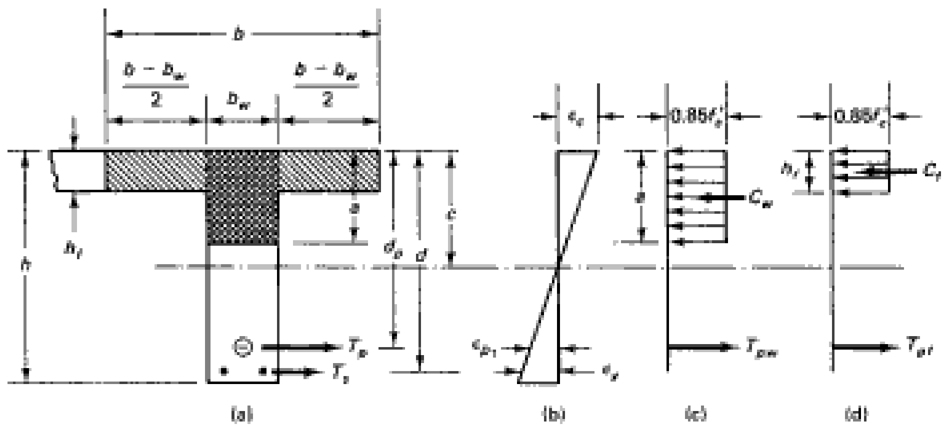


Figure 14.14 Strain, stress, and forces in flanged sections: (a) beam section; (b) strain; (c) web stress and forces; (d) flange stress and force.

Hidden page

$$f_{pe} = \frac{P_e}{A_{ps}} \geq 0.50 f_{pu} \tag{14.29b}$$

with separate equations for f_{ps} given for bonded and nonbonded members.

Bonded Tendons. The empirical expression for bonded members is

$$f_{ps} = f_{pu}\left(1 - \frac{\gamma_p}{\beta_1}\left[\rho_p \frac{f_{pu}}{f'_c} + \frac{d}{d_p}(\omega - \omega')\right]\right) \tag{14.30}$$

where the reinforcement index for the compression nonprestressed reinforcement is $\omega' = \rho'(f_y/f'_c)$. If the compression reinforcement is taken into account when calculating f_{ps} by Eq. 14.26, the term $[\rho_p(f_{pu}/f'_c) + (d/d_p)(\omega - \omega')]$ should not be less than 0.17 and d' should not be greater than $0.15d_p$. *Also,*

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_p &= 0.55 \text{ for } f_{py}/f_{pu} \text{ not less than } 0.80 \\ &= 0.40 \text{ for } f_{py}/f_{pu} \text{ not less than } 0.85 \\ &= 0.28 \text{ for } f_{py}/f_{pu} \text{ not less than } 0.90 \end{aligned}$$

The value of the factor γ_p is based on the criterion that $f_{py} = 0.80 f_{pu}$ for high-strength prestressing bars, 0.85 for stress-relieved strands, and 0.90 for low-relaxation strands.

Unbonded Tendons. For a span-to-depth ratio of 35 or less,

$$f_{ps} = f_{pe} + 10{,}000 + \frac{f'_c}{100\rho_p} \tag{14.31a}$$

where f_{ps} shall not be greater than f_{py} or $f_{pe} + 60{,}000$.

For a span-to-depth ratio greater than 35,

$$f_{ps} = f_{pe} + 10{,}000 + \frac{f'_c}{300\rho_p} \tag{14.31b}$$

where f_{ps} shall not be greater than f_{py} or $f_{pe} + 30{,}000$. Code requirements for maximum and minimum reinforcement index ω have to be observed.

AASHTO expressions for the ultimate design strength f_{ps} of the prestressing reinforcement are given in Chapter 15.

The ultimate analysis and design of prestressed concrete members follows the strain limits approach detailed in Chapter 5. The net tensile strain limits for compression- and tension-controlled sections shown in Fig. 5.5 are equally applicable to prestressed concrete sections. They replace the maximum-reinforcement limits used in code provisions prior to the 2005 ACI-318 Code. The net tensile strain for tension-controlled sections may still be stated in terms of the reinforcement index, ω_p, embodied in Eq. 14.30, where the maximum index is

$$\left[\omega_p + \frac{d}{d_p}(\omega - \omega')\right].$$

The net tensile strain limit of 0.005 corresponds to $\omega_p = 0.32\beta_1$ for prestressed rectangular sections.

It should be noted that the total amount of prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement should be adequate to develop a factored load of at least 1.2 times the cracking load computed on the basis of the modulus of rupture f_r. This provision in ACI 318 Code is permitted to be waived for (a) two-way, unbonded post-tensioned slabs; and (b) flexural members with shear and flexural strength at least twice the load level causing the first cracking moment M_{cr}.

It should also be noted that this provision is waived if the load is > 1.2 times the cracking load for flexural members with shear and flexural strengths at least twice those

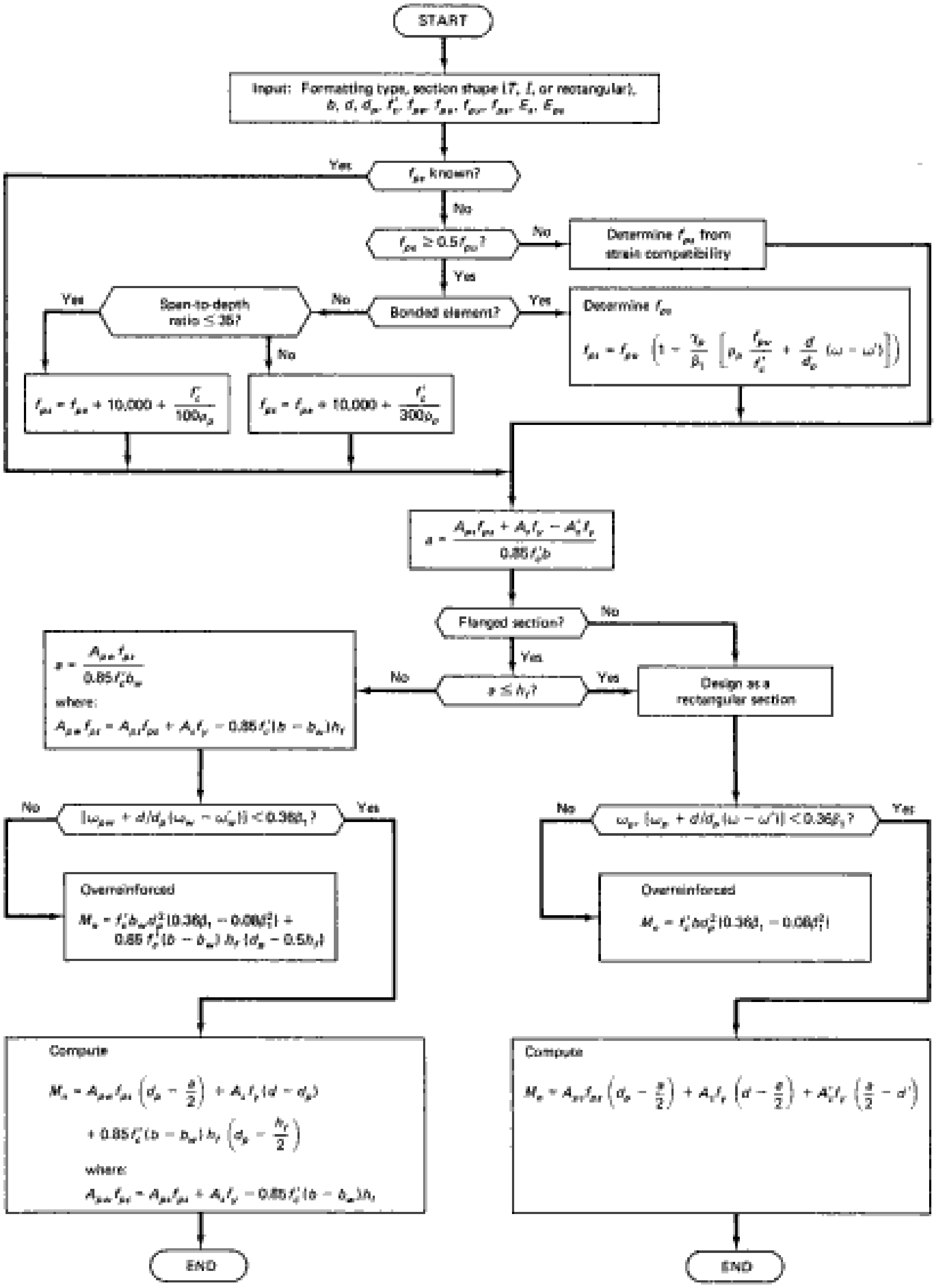


Figure 14.15 Flowchart for ultimate load flexural analysis of rectangular and flanged prestressed sections based on cgs profile depth.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

@Seismicisolation

$$\epsilon_2 = \epsilon_{decomp} = \frac{P_e}{A_c E_c}\left(1 + \frac{e^2}{r^2}\right)$$

$$= \frac{308{,}295}{377 \times 4.03 \times 10^6}(1 + 1.20) = 0.0004 \text{ in./in.}$$

Assume that the stress $f_{ps} = 205{,}000$ psi as a first trial. Suppose the neutral axis inside the flange is verified. Then, from Eq. 14.20a,

$$a = \frac{A_{ps} f_{ps} + A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b} = \frac{1.99 \times 205{,}000 + 1.76 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 5000 \times 18}$$

$$= 6.71 \text{ in. (17 cm)} < h_f = 7.5 \text{ in.}$$

Hence the equivalent compressive block is inside the flange and the section is to be treated as rectangular.

Accordingly, for 5000-psi concrete,

$$\beta_1 = 0.85 - 0.05 = 0.8$$

$$c = \frac{a}{\beta_1} = \frac{6.71}{0.80} = 8.39 \text{ in. (22.7 cm)}$$

$$d = 40 - \left(1.5 + \frac{1}{2} \text{ in. for stirrups} + \frac{5}{16} \text{ in. for bar}\right) = 37.6 \text{ in.}$$

The increment of strain due to overload to the ultimate, from Eq. 14.20b, is

$$\epsilon_3 = \epsilon_c \frac{d - c}{c} = 0.003 \frac{37.6 - 8.39}{8.39} = 0.0104 \text{ in./in.}$$ > 0.005, hence tension-controlled ductile behavior, O.K.

The total strain is

$$\epsilon_{ps} = \epsilon_1 + \epsilon_2 + \epsilon_3$$

$$= 0.0055 + 0.0004 + 0.0104 = 0.0163 \text{ in./in.}$$

From the stress–strain diagram in Figure 14.16, the f_{ps} corresponding to $\epsilon_{ps} = 0.0163$ is 230,000 psi.

Second trial for f_{ps} value: Assume that

$$f_{ps} = 229{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$a = \frac{1.99 \times 229{,}000 + 1.76 \times 60{,}000}{0.85 \times 5000 \times 18} = 7.34 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = \frac{7.34}{0.80} = 9.17 \text{ in.}$$

$$\epsilon_3 = 0.003 \frac{37.6 - 9.17}{9.17} = 0.0093 > 0.005, \text{ tension-controlled,} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Then the total strain is $\epsilon_{ps} = 0.0055 + 0.0004 + 0.0093 = 0.0152$ in./in. From Fig. 14.16, $f_{ps} =$ 229,000 psi (1,579 MPa); use

$$A_s = 4 \text{ No. } 6 = 1.76 \text{ in.}^2$$

Available moment strength

From Eq. 14.17c, for the neutral axis falling within the flange,

$$M_n = 1.99 \times 229{,}000\left(36.16 - \frac{7.34}{2}\right) + 1.76 \times 60{,}000\left(37.6 - \frac{7.34}{2}\right)$$

$$= 14{,}806{,}017 + 3{,}583{,}008 = 18{,}389{,}025 \text{ in.-lb (2078 kN-m)}$$

$$> \text{required } M_n = 16{,}362{,}000 \text{ in.-lb} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

The percentage of moment resisted by the nonprestressed steel is

$$\frac{3{,}583{,}008}{16{,}562{,}00} = 22\%$$

Check for minimum and maximum reinforcement

Minimum $A_s = 0.004A$, where A is the area of the part of the section between the tension face and the cgc. From the cross section of Figure 14.10,

$$A = 377 - 18\left(4.125 + \frac{1.375}{2}\right) - 6(21.16 - 5.5) = 201 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{minimum } A_s = 0.004 \times 201 = 0.80 \text{ in.}^2 < 1.76 \text{ used} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

The maximum steel index, from Ref. 14.1, is

$$\omega_p + \frac{d}{d_p}(\omega - \omega') \leq 0.36\beta_1 \leq 0.29 \text{ for } \beta_1 = 0.80$$

and the actual total reinforcement index is

$$\omega_T = \frac{1.99 \times 229{,}000}{18 \times 36.16 \times 5000} + \frac{37.6}{36.16}\,\frac{1.76 \times 60{,}000}{18 \times 37.6 \times 5000}$$
$$= 0.14 + 0.03 = 0.17 < 0.29 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

An alternative check in accordance with ACI 318-08, where $\epsilon_t > 0.005$, satisfies the maximum limit on the reinforcement allowed for ductile behavior.

Choice of section for ultimate load

The section in Ex. 14.4 with the modifications shown in Figure 14.17 has the normal moment strength M_n that can carry the factored load, provided that four No. 6 nonprestressed bars are used at the tension side as a partially prestressed section. So we can adopt the section for flexure, as it also satisfies the service-load flexural stress requirements both at midspan and at the support. Note that the section could only develop the required nominal strength $M_n = 16{,}562{,}000$ in.-lb by the addition of the nonprestressed bars at the tension face to resist 22% of the total *required* moment strength. Note also that this section is adequate

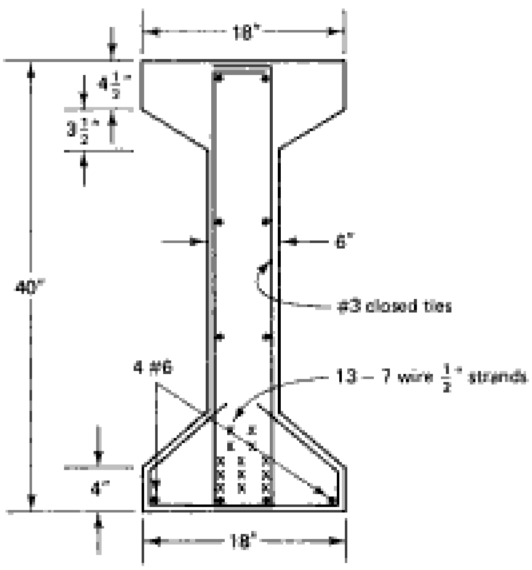


Figure 14.17 Midspan section of the beam in Ex. 14.5.

with a concrete $f'_c = 5000$ psi, while the section in Ex. 14.4 has to have $f'_c = 6000$ psi strength in order not to exceed the allowable service-load concrete stresses. Hence ultimate-load computations are necessary in prestressed concrete design to ensure that the constructed elements can carry all the factored load and are thus an integral part of the total design.

14.7 WEB REINFORCEMENT DESIGN PROCEDURE FOR SHEAR

The following is a summary of a recommended sequence of design steps:

1. Determine the required nominal shear strength value $V_n = V_u/\phi$ at a distance $d_p/2$ from the face of the support, where $\phi = 0.75$.
2. Calculate the nominal shear strength V_c that the web has by one of the following two methods.
   (a) *ACI short method if $f_{pe} > 0.40 f_{pu}$*

$$V_c = \left(0.60\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + \frac{700 V_u d_p}{M_u}\right) b_w d_p$$

   where $2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d_p \le V_c \le 5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d_p$ and where $V_u d_p/M_u \le 1.0$ and V_u is calculated at the same section for which M_u is calculated.
   If the average tensile splitting strength f_{ct} is specified for lightweight concrete, then $\lambda = f_{ct}/6.7\sqrt{f'_c}$ with $\sqrt{f'_c}$ not to exceed a value of 100.
   (b) *Detailed analysis where V_c is the lesser of V_{ci} and V_{cw}*

$$V_{ci} = 0.60\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d_p + V_d + \frac{V_i}{M_{\max}}(M_{cre}) \ge 1.7\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d_p$$

$$V_{cw} = (3.5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + 0.3\bar{f}_c) b_w d_p + V_p$$

   using d_p or $0.8h$, whichever is larger, and where

$$M_{cre} = (I_c/y_t)(6\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + f_{ce} - f_d) \text{ or}$$

$$M_{cre} = S_b(6\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + f_{ce} - f_d) \text{ where } M_{cre} \text{ is due to externally applied load}$$

   V_i = factored shear force at section due to externally applied loads occurring simultaneously with $M_{\max}$

   f_{ce} = compressive stress in concrete after occurrence of all losses at extreme fibers of section where external load causes tension

3. If $V_u/\phi \le \frac{1}{2}V_c$, no web steel is needed. If $V_u/\phi > \frac{1}{2}V_c < V_c$, provide minimum reinforcement. If $V_u/\phi > V_c$ and $V_s = V_u/\phi - V_c \le 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d_p$, design the web steel. If $V_s = V_u/\phi - V_c > 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d_p$, or if $V_u > \phi(V_c + 8\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,b_w d_p)$, enlarge the section.
4. Calculate the required minimum web reinforcement. The spacing is $s \le 0.75h$ or 24 in., whichever is smaller.

$$\text{minimum } A_v = \frac{50 b_w s}{f_y} \qquad \text{(conservative)}$$

$$\text{or} \quad A_v = 0.75\sqrt{f'_c}\,\frac{b_w s}{f_y} \text{ whichever is larger}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

A_{ps} = 13 seven-wire $\frac{1}{2}$-in. strands = 1.99 in.^{2} (12.8 cm^2)

A_s = 4 No. 6 bars = 1.76 in.^{2} (11.4 cm^2)

span = 65 ft (19.8 m)

service W_L = 1100 plf (16.1 kN/m)

service W_{SD} = 100 plf (1.46 kN/m)

service W_D = 393 plf (5.7 kN/m)

e_e = 12.5 in. (32 cm)

I_c = 70,700 in.^{4} (2.94 × 10^6 cm^4)

A_c = 377 in.^{2} (2432 cm^2)

r^2 = 187.5 in.^{2} (1210 cm^2)

c_b = 18.84 in. (48 cm)

c_t = 21.16 in. (54 cm)

P_e = 308,255 lb. (1371 kN)

h = 40 in. (101.6 cm)

$$\text{factored load } W_U = 1.2D + 1.6L$$
$$= 1.2(100 + 393) + 1.6 \times 1100 = 2352 \text{ plf}$$

$$\text{factored shear force at face of support} = V_u = \frac{W_U L}{2}$$
$$= \frac{2352 \times 65}{2} = 76{,}440 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{required } V_n = \frac{V_u}{\phi} = \frac{76{,}440}{0.75} = 101{,}920 \text{ lb at support}$$

Plane at $\frac{1}{2}d_p$ from face of support

Nominal shear strength V_c of web (steps 2, 3)

$$\frac{1}{2}d_p = \frac{36.16}{2 \times 12} = 1.5 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{Required } V_n = 101{,}920 \times \frac{(65/2) - 1.5}{65/2} = 97{,}216 \text{ lb}$$

$$V_u \text{ at } \frac{1}{2}d_p = \phi V_n = 0.75 \times 97{,}216 = 72{,}912 \text{ lb}$$

$$f_{pe} = 155{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$0.40 f_{pu} = 0.40 \times 270{,}000 = 108{,}000 \text{ psi (745 MPa)} < f_{pe}$$
$$= 155{,}000 \text{ psi (1069 MPa)}$$

Use ACI short method. Since $d_p > 0.8h$, use d_p = 36.16 in., assuming that part of the prestressing strands continue straight to the support.

$$V_c = \left(0.60\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + 700\frac{V_u d_p}{M_u}\right) b_w d_p \geq 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d_p \leq 5\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d_p$$

$$\lambda = 1.0 \text{ for normal-weight concrete}$$

$$M_u \text{ at } \frac{d}{2} \text{ from face} = \text{reaction} \times 1.5 - \frac{W_u(1.5)^2}{2} = 76{,}440 \times 1.5 - \frac{2352(1.5)^2}{2}$$
$$= 112{,}014 \text{ ft-lb} = 1{,}344{,}168 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\frac{V_u d_p}{M_u} = \frac{72{,}912 \times 36.16}{1{,}344{,}168} = 1.96 > 1.0$$

So use $V_u d_p / M_u = 1.0$. Then

$$\text{Minimum } V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d_p = 2 \times 1.0\sqrt{5000} \times 6 \times 36.16 = 30{,}683 \text{ lb}$$

Hidden page

giving

$$x = 8.04 \text{ ft } (2.04 \text{ m}) \simeq 96 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, adopt the design in question, using No. 3 U at 20 in. center to center over a stretch length of approximately 96 in., with the first stirrup to start at 18 in. from the face of support. Extend the stirrups to the midspan if composite action doweling is needed.

SELECTED REFERENCES

14.1. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete: A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2005, 944 pp.

14.2. Prestressed Concrete Institute, *PCI Design Handbook*, 6th ed., PCI, Chicago, 2004.

14.3. Post-Tensioning Institute, *Post-Tensioning Manual*, 6th ed., PTI, Phoenix, AZ, 2005.

14.4. Lin, T. Y., "Cable Friction in Post-Tensioning," *Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE*, November 1956, pp. 1107–1 to 1107–13.

14.5. Lin, T. Y., and Burns, N. H., *Design of Prestressed Concrete Structures*, 3d ed., Wiley, New York, 1981.

14.6. ACI Committee 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete* (ACI 318-08) and Commentary (ACI 318 R-08), Farmington Hills, MI, 2008, 465 pp.

14.7. Nawy, E. G., "Design for Crack Control in Reinforced and Prestressed Concrete Beams, Two-Way Slabs and Circular Tanks—A State of the Art," *ACI Special Publication*, SP 203, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2002, pp. 1–42.

14.8. ACI Committee 224, *Control of Cracking in Concrete Structures*, Committee Report, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2002, 75 pp.

14.9. Nawy, E. G., *Fundamentals of High Performance Concrete*, 2nd ed., John Wiley and Sons, New Jersey, 2001, 452 pp.

14.10. Nawy, E. G., *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

14.1. An AASHTO prestressed simply supported I beam has a span of 34 ft (10.4 m) and is 36 in. (91.4 cm) deep. Its cross section is shown in Figure 14.18. It is subjected to a live-load intensity $W_L = 3600$ plf (52.6 kN/m). Determine the required $\frac{1}{2}$-in.-diameter, stress-relieved, seven-wire strands to resist the applied gravity load and the self-weight of the beam, assuming that the tendon eccentricity at midspan is $e_c = 13.12$ in. (333 mm). Maximum permissible stresses are as follows:

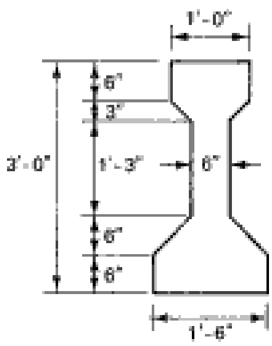


Figure 14.18

$$
\begin{aligned}
f'_c &= 6000 \text{ psi } (41.4 \text{ MPa}) \\
f_c &= 0.45 f'_c \\
&= 2700 \text{ psi } (26.7 \text{ MPa}) \\
f_t &= 12\sqrt{f'_c} = 930 \text{ psi } (6.4 \text{ MPa}) \\
f_{pu} &= 270{,}000 \text{ psi } (1862 \text{ MPa}) \\
f_{pi} &= 189{,}000 \text{ psi } (1303 \text{ MPa}) \\
f_{pe} &= 145{,}000 \text{ psi } (1000 \text{ MPa})
\end{aligned}
$$

The section properties, given these stresses, are

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_c &= 369 \text{ in.}^2 \\
I_g &= 50{,}979 \text{ in.}^4 \\
r^2 &= \frac{I_c}{A_c} = 138 \text{ in.}^2 \\
c_b &= 15.83 \text{ in.} \\
S_b &= 3220 \text{ in.}^3 \\
S^t &= 2527 \text{ in.}^3 \\
W_D &= 384 \text{ plf} \\
W_L &= 3600 \text{ plf}
\end{aligned}
$$

14.2. A simply supported pretensioned beam has a span of 75 ft (22.9 m) and the cross-section shown in Figure 14.19. It is subjected to a uniform gravitational live-load intensity $W_L = 1200$ plf (17.5 kN/m) in addition to its self-weight and is prestressed with 20 stress-relieved ½-in. (12.7 mm) diameter seven-wire strands. Compute the total prestress losses by the step-by-step method, and compare them with the values obtained by the lump-sum method. Take the following values as given:

$$
\begin{aligned}
f'_c &= 6000 \text{ psi } (41.4 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete} \\
f'_{ci} &= 4500 \text{ psi } (31 \text{ MPa}) \\
f_{pu} &= 270{,}000 \text{ psi } (1862 \text{ MPa}) \\
f_{pi} &= 0.70 f_{pu} \\
\text{relaxation time } t &= 15 \text{ years} \\
e_c &= 19 \text{ in. } (483 \text{ mm}) \\
\text{relative humidity, RH} &= 75\% \\
\frac{V}{S} &= 3.0 \text{ in. } (7.62 \text{ cm})
\end{aligned}
$$

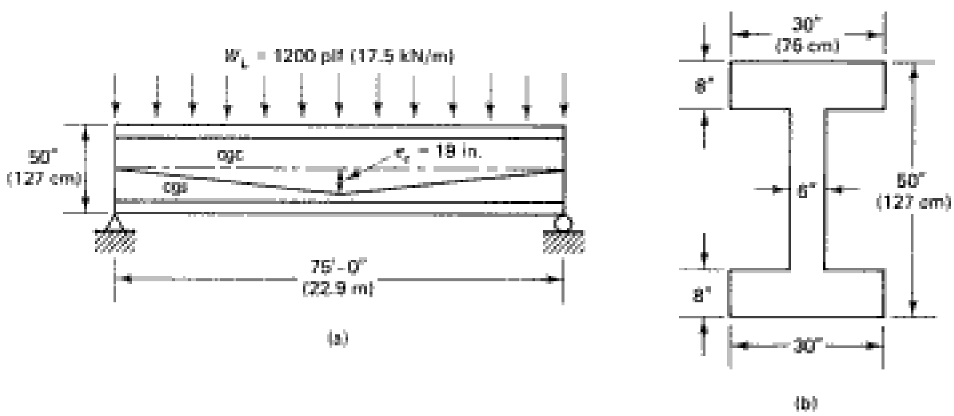


Figure 14.19 (a) Elevation; (b) section.

14.3. For service-load and ultimate-load conditions, design a pretensioned symmetrical I-section beam to carry a superimposed dead load of 750 plf (10.95 kN/m) and a service live load of 1500 plf (21.90 kN/m) on a 50-ft (15.2-m) simply supported span. Assume that the sectional properties are $b = 0.5h$, $h_f = 0.2h$, and $b_w = 0.40b$, and suppose the following data are given:

$$f_{pu} = 270{,}000 \text{ psi } (1862 \text{ MPa})$$
$$E_{ps} = 28.5 \times 10^6 \text{ psi } (196 \times 10^3 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f'_c = 5000 \text{ psi } (34.5 \text{ MPa}), \text{ normal-weight concrete}$$
$$f'_{ci} = 3500 \text{ psi } (24.1 \text{ MPa})$$
$$f_t = 12\sqrt{f'_c} \text{ assuming that deflection is not critical}$$

Sketch the design details, including the anchorage zone reinforcement, and arrangement of strands for (a) the straight-tendon case and (b) a harped tendon at the third span points with end eccentricity zero. Assume total prestress losses of 22%.

14.4. A post-tensioned bonded prestressed beam has the cross section shown in Figure 14.20. It has a span of 75 ft (22.9 m) and is subjected to a service superimposed dead load $W_{SD} = 450$ plf (6.6 kN/m) and a superimposed service live load $W_L = 2300$ plf (33.6 kN/m). Design the web reinforcement necessary to prevent shear cracking (a) by the detailed design method and (b) by the alternative method at a section 15 ft (4.6 m) from the face of the support. The profile of the prestressing tendon is parabolic. Use No. 3 stirrups in your design, and detail the section. The following data are given:

$$A_c = 876 \text{ in.}^2 \ (5652 \text{ cm}^2)$$
$$I_c = 433{,}350 \text{ in.}^4 \ (18.03 \times 10^6 \text{ cm}^4)$$
$$r^2 = 495 \text{ in.}^2 \ (3194 \text{ cm}^2)$$
$$c_t = 25 \text{ in. } (63.5 \text{ cm})$$
$$S^t = 17{,}300 \text{ in.}^3 \ (2.83 \times 10^5 \text{ cm}^3)$$
$$c_b = 38 \text{ in. } (96.5 \text{ cm})$$
$$S_b = 11{,}400 \text{ in.}^3 \ (1.86 \times 10^5 \text{ cm}^3)$$
$$W_d = 910 \text{ plf } (13.3 \text{ kN/m})$$
$$e_c = 32 \text{ in. } (81.3 \text{ cm})$$

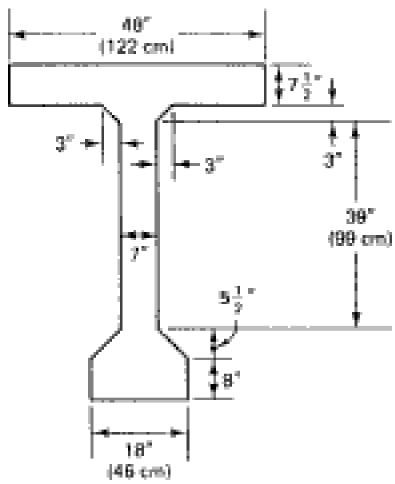


Figure 14.20

e_c = 2 in. (5 cm)
f'_c = 5000 psi (44.5 MPa), normal-weight concrete
f'_{ci} = 3500 psi (24.1 MPa)
f_y for stirrups = 60,000 psi (41.8 MPa)
f_{pu} = 270,000 psi (1862 MPa) low-relaxation strands
f_{py} = 243,000 psi (1675 MPa)
f_{pe} = 157,500 psi (1086 MPa)
A_{ps} = twenty-four $\frac{1}{2}$-in. (12.7-mm) diameter seven-wire strands

15

LRFD AASHTO DESIGN OF CONCRETE BRIDGE DECK STRUCTURES

15.1 LRFD TRUCK LOAD SPECIFICATIONS

The design of prestressed concrete elements of a bridge is governed by requirements of the American Association of Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO). The traffic lanes and the loads they contain for the design of the bridge superstructure have to be chosen and placed in such numbers and positions on the roadway that they produce the maximum stress in the constituent members.

The bridge live loadings should consist of standard truck or lane loads that are equivalent to truck trains. For railway bridges, the requirements are set by the American Railway Engineering Association (AREA). Requirements for structural proportioning of supporting members are essentially based on the ACI and PCI standards. Except for truck wheel loads and geometry, LRFD requirements differ in some areas from the standard AASHTO requirements. For comparison, it is useful to present also the major AASHTO expressions, particularly since they have been used so long by the design profession.

Photo 15.1 West Kowloon Expressway Viaduct, Hong Kong, 1997. A 4.2-km dual three-lane causeway connecting Western Harbor Crossing to the new airport (*Courtesy* Institution of Civil Engineers, London).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

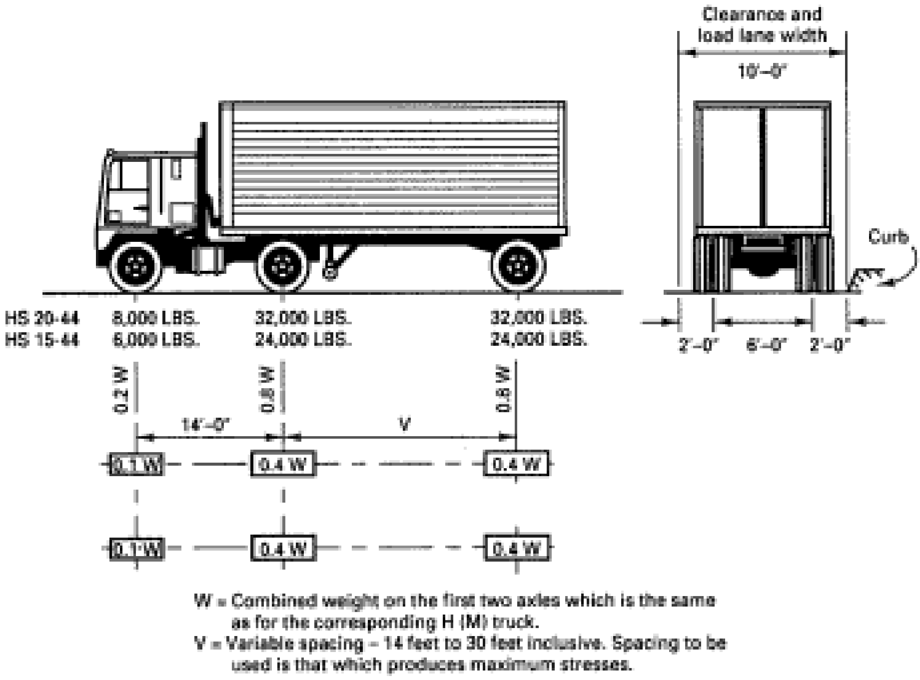


Figure 15.2 Wheel loads and geometry for HS trucks.

(ii) Longitudinal Forces. Provision should be made for the effect of a longitudinal force of 5% of the live load in all lanes carrying traffic headed in the same direction. All lanes should be loaded in the case of bridges which could likely become one-directional in the life of the structure. The load area, without impact, should be as follows:

> Lane load + concentrated load so placed on the span as to produce maximum stress. The concentrated load and uniform load should be considered as uniformly distributed over a 10-foot width on a line normal to the centerline of the lane. The center of gravity of the longitudinal force is to be assumed located 6 feet above the floor slab.

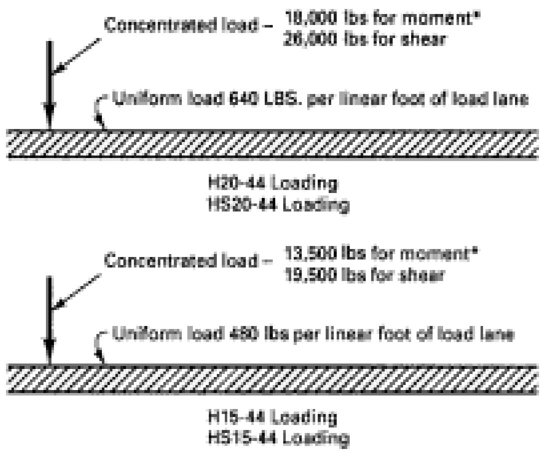


Figure 15.3 Equivalent lane loading for H and HS trucks.

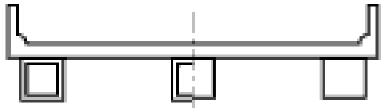
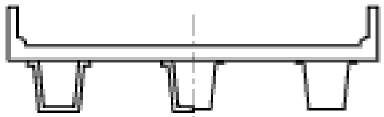
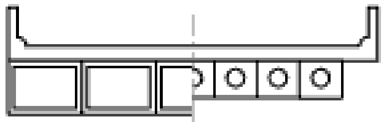
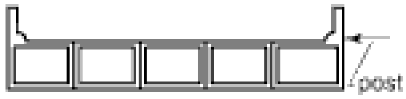
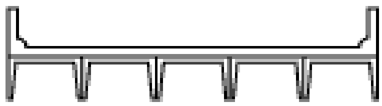
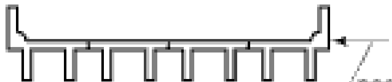
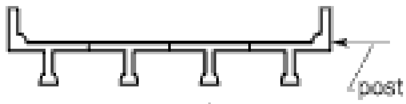
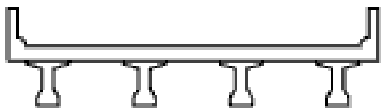
SUPPORTING COMPONENTS	TYPE OF DECK	TYPICAL CROSS-SECTION
Closed Steel or Precast Concrete Boxes	Cast-in-place concrete slab	 (b)
Open Steel or Precast Concrete Boxes	Cast-in-place concrete slab, precast concrete deck slab	 (c)
Precast Solid, Voided or Cellular Concrete Boxes with Shear Keys	Cast-in-place concrete overlay	 (f)
Precast Solid, Voided or Cellular Concrete Box with Shear Keys and with or without Transverse Post-Tensioning	Integral concrete	 (g)
Precast Concrete Channel Sections with Shear Keys	Cast-in-place concrete overlay	 (h)
Precast Concrete Double Tee Section with Shear Keys and with or without Transverse Post-Tensioning	Integral concrete	 (i)
Precast Concrete Tee Section with Shear Keys and with or without Transverse Post-Tensioning	Integral concrete	 (j)
Precast Concrete I or Bulb-Tee Sections	Cast-in-place concrete, precast concrete	 (k)

Figure 15.4 Cross sections of typical bridge deck structures (Ref. 15.1).

A reduction factor should be applied when a number of traffic lanes are simultaneously loaded, as in Section (iv) to follow.

(iii) Centrifugal Horizontal Force. This force is produced by vehicle motion on curves. It is a percentage of the live load, without impact, as follows:

$$C = 0.00117S^2D = \frac{6.68S^2}{R} \tag{15.2}$$

where C = centrifugal force in percent of the live load without impact
S = design speed in miles per hour
D = degree of curve
R = radius of curve in feet

(iv) Reduction in Load Intensity. When maximum stresses are produced in any member by loading a number of traffic lanes simultaneously, a reduction in the live load intensity can be made as follows:

	Percent
One or two lanes	100
Three lanes	90
Four lanes or more	75

15.1.2 LFD Standard AASHTO Wheel Load Distribution on Bridge Decks

(i) Shear. No longitudinal distribution of wheel loads can be made for wheel or axle load adjacent to the end when computing end shears and reactions in transverse or longitudinal beams.

(ii) Bending Moments: Longitudinal Beams. In computing bending moments in longitudinal beams or stringers, no longitudinal distribution of the wheel loads is permitted. In the case of interior stringers, the live load bending moment for each stringer should be determined by applying to the stringer a fraction of the wheel load as follows for prestressed concrete elements.

	Bridge designed for one traffic lane	Bridge designed for two or more traffic lanes
Prestressed concrete girders	$S/7.0$ if $S > 6$ ft.[a]	$S/5.5$ if $S > 10$.[a]
Nonattached concrete box girders	$S/8.0$ if $S > 12$ ft.[a]	$S/7.0$ if $S > 16$ ft.[a]

[a]If S exceeds denominator, the load on the beam should be the reaction of the wheel loads assuming the flooring between beams to act as a simple beam.
S = spacing of floor beams in feet.

(iii) Side by Side Precast Beams in Multi-beam Decks.[15.2] A multi-beam bridge is constructed with precast reinforced or prestressed concrete beams that are placed *side by side* on the supports. The interaction between the beams is developed by continuous longitudinal shear keys used in combination with transverse tie assemblies which may, or may not, be prestressed, such as bolts, rods, or prestressing strands, or other mechanical means. Full-depth rigid end diaphragms are needed to ensure proper load distribution for channel, single- and multi-stemmed tee beams.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

The formula assumes that both flanges are the same thickness and uses the thickness of only one flange. The same is true of the webs.

For preliminary design, the following values of K may be used:

Bridge Type	Beam Type	K
Multi-beam	Nonvoided rectangular beams	0.7
	Rectangular beams with circular voids	0.8
	Box section beams	1.0
	Channel, single- and multi-stemmed tee beams	2.2

(iv) Stresses in Concrete

Case I: *All Loads Including Prestress (D + L + P/S)*

$$f_c = 0.60\, f'_c$$
$$f_t = 6\sqrt{f'_c}$$

Case II: *Prestress + All Dead Loads (D + P/S)*

$$f_c = 0.40\, f'_c$$
$$f_t = 6\sqrt{f'_c}$$

Case III: $\frac{1}{2}$*(Prestress + Dead) + Live Load [0.5 (D + P/S) + L]*

$$f_c = 0.40\, f'_c$$
$$f_t = 6\sqrt{f'_c}$$

15.1.3 LFD Standard AASHTO Bending Moments in Bridge Deck Slabs

There are two categories for bending moment calculations: category A and category B for reinforcement perpendicular and parallel respectively to the traffic.

S = effective span length in feet
E = width of slab in feet over which a wheel load is distributed
P = load on one rear wheel of truck (P_{15} or P_{20})
P_{15} = 12,000 lbs. for H 15 loading
P_{20} = 16,000 lbs. for H 20 loading

(a) *Case A—Main Reinforcement Perpendicular to Traffic (spans 2 to 24 feet)*

The live load moments for simple spans are to be determined in accordance with the following expressions:

H 20 Loading,

$$M_L = \left(\frac{S + 2}{32}\right) P_{20} \qquad (15.3a)$$

H 15 Loading,

$$M_L = \left(\frac{S + 2}{32}\right) P_{15} \qquad (15.3b)$$

where M_L is in ft-lb/ft of slab width.

In slabs continuous over three or more supports, a continuity factor of 0.8 should be applied to Equations 15.3(a) and 15.3(b)

(b) *Case B—Main Reinforcement Parallel to Traffic*

For wheel loads, the distribution width, E, should be $= 4 + 0.06S \leq 7.0$ ft. Lane loads are distributed over a width $2E$ as follows:

H 20 Loading

$$S \leq 50 \text{ ft:} \qquad M_L = 900S \tag{15.3c}$$

$$S = 50 - 100 \text{ ft: } M_L = 1000S \tag{15.3d}$$

where M_L is in ft-lb

For H 15 loading, reduce the values in Equations 15.3(c) and 15.3(d) by 25 percent.

15.1.4 Wind Loads

In accounting for the wind loads, the exposed area is equal to the sum of the areas of all members including floor system and railings as seen in an elevation 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the structure. Design should be based on a wind velocity $V = 100$ miles per hour. The area may be reduced as stipulated in Ref. 15.2.

15.1.5 Seismic Forces

Both the equivalent static force method and the response spectrum method can be used for the design of structures with supporting members of approximately equal stiffnesses. Details are given in Ref. 15.2. Additional basic discussion of earthquake response, the fundamental period of vibration, and the International Building Code (IBC 2000) are given in Ref. 15.5.

15.1.6 LRFD Load Combinations

The load combinations using the LRFD specifications differ from the standard specifications. Tables 15.1 to 15.2 give the required load combinations, and Tables 15.4 to 15.6 the shear and moment expressions to be used in design. Section 15.2.2 gives the LRFD resistance factors, ϕ, which differ from the standard reduction factor ϕ. It should be noted that in the standard specifications, either the lane load or the truck load is used in the live-load calculations. The LRFD specifications require that the *combined* lane and truck loads be used in the live-load computations.

Strength I: Basic load combination, no wind
Strength II: Load on bridge with owner-specified design, no wind
Strength III: Load includes wind
Strength IV: Very high ratio of dead to live load
Service I: Normal operational use load combinations with deflection and crack control
Service II: Load combinations with control of yielding of steel structures
Service III: Load combinations relating only to tension in prestressed concrete

The LRFD Resistance Factor ϕ values are given in Table 15.8. The following expressions in Tables 15.4 and 15.5 (Ref. 15.2) may be used to compute the maximum bending moments and the maximum shear force per *lane* of any point in a span for HS20 truck, with the limitations indicated in the table. The computed values have to be multiplied by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ in order to obtain the shear force and moment per *line* of wheels.

The expressions in the tables are limited to simply supported spans and do not include the impact factors.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Photo 15.2 Stoney Trail Bow River segmental bridge, Calgary, Alberta, utilizing the incremental launch method—span 1562 ft, deck width 69 ft, and the deck rises 89 to 118 ft above the river valley (*Courtesy* James Skeet–Reid Crowther Engineering, Calgary).

The maximum bending moments and maximum shear forces per lane at any point on a span for a lane load of 0.64 kip/ft may be computed from the following *simplified* expressions:

$$\text{Maximum } V_{LL} = \frac{0.64}{2L}(L - x)^2 \text{ kip} \tag{15.4a}$$

$$\text{Maximum } M_{LL} = \frac{0.64(x)(L - x)}{2} \text{ ft-kip} \tag{15.4b}$$

where, x = distance from left support, ft
L = beam span, ft
LL = lane load

The LRFD specifications require a higher impact factor than the standard specifications. They also require consideration of the fatigue state limits. For fatigue, a special truck load is considered. It consists of a single design truck which has the same axle weight

Table 15.2 LRFD Permanent Loads

Type of Load	Load Factor	
	Maximum	Minimum
DC: Component and Attachments	1.25	0.90
DD: Downdrag	1.80	0.45
DW: Wearing surface and utilities	1.50	0.65
EH: Horizontal Earth Pressure		
Active	1.50	0.90
At-Rest	1.35	0.90
EL: Locked-in Erection Stresses	1.00	1.00
EV: Vertical Earth Pressure		
Overall Stability	1.50	0.90
Retaining Structure	1.35	1.00
Rigid Buried Structure	1.30	0.90
Rigid Frame	1.35	0.90
Flexible Buried Structure other than Metal Box Culvert	1.95	0.90
ES: Earth Surcharge	1.50	0.75

used in all other limit states, but with a constant spacing of 30 ft between the 32-kip axles. Table 15.6a gives the impact factor *IM* for the various types of limit states. Table 15.7 (Ref 15.3) gives expressions for computing the maximum bending moments per lane due to HL-93 fatigue truck loading. The values obtained from the table have to be multiplied by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ in order to obtain the values per line of wheels.

The LRFD design live load is an HL-93 truck configuration which consists of a *combination* of:

(a) Design truck or design tandem with dynamic allowance. The design truck is the same as the HS20 design truck specified in the Standard AASHTO specifications. The design tandem consists of a pair of 25 kip axles spaced at 4 ft.

(b) Design lane load of 0.64 kip/ft without dynamic allowance.

15.2 FLEXURAL DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

15.2.1 Strain ϵ and Factor ϕ Variations: The Strain Limits Approach

For ductile behavior of sections, the reinforcement percentage has to be considerably smaller than the balanced strain limit in flexure as detailed in Sec. 5.3.1. No upper limits on the amount of reinforcement need to be used in a beam provided that the strain limit

Table 15.3a Distribution of Live Load Per Lane for Shear in Interior Beams

Section	One Design Lane	Two or More Design Lanes
Concrete Box Beams in Multi-beam Decks	$\left(\frac{b}{130L}\right)^{0.15}\left(\frac{I}{J}\right)^{0.05}$	$\left(\frac{b}{156}\right)^{0.4}\left(\frac{b}{12L}\right)^{0.1}\left(\frac{I}{J}\right)^{0.05}$
Concrete Deck, I-, T- and Double-T Sections	$0.36+\left(\frac{S}{25.0}\right)$	$0.20+\left(\frac{S}{12}\right)-\left(\frac{S}{36}\right)^{2}$

1. Ranges for b, d, L, N_b, S, t, Kg are given in Ref. 15.3.
2. For exterior beams, see Ref. 15.3, Section 4.6.2.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Table 15.6 Impact Factors

Component	*IM*
Deck Joints—All Limit States	**15%**
All other Components	
Fatigue and Fracture Limit States	15%
All Other Limit States	33%

Table 15.7 Fatigue Bending Moment per Lane

Load Type	*x/L*	*Formula for maximum bending moment, ft-kips*	*Minimum*	
			x, * ft	***L*, ft**
Fatigue Truck Loading (LRFD)	0–0.241	$\dfrac{72(x)[(L-x)-18.22]}{L}$	0	44
	0.241–0.500	$\dfrac{72(x)[L-x)-11.78]}{L}-112$	14	28

*x is the distance from left support to the section being considered, ft; LT = truck load

is not exceeded and the appropriate ϕ factor is used. A tensile strain $\epsilon_t = 0.005$ in./in. as the limiting strain is comparable to a 75% of the balanced reinforcement percentage and is the basis of this approach (Figure 15.5). This minimum limiting strain is considered at the extreme tensile steel reinforcement level, namely, at the centroid of the layer closest to the tensile face of the section. More precisely, $\epsilon_t = 0.0041$ corresponds to $f_y = 230{,}000$ psi in the prestressing steel.

In the LRFD procedure, a limiting value of the ratio of the neutral axis depth, c, to the effective beam depth, d_e, to the centroid of the reinforcement is taken as 0.42 in this strain limits approach, invariably called a "unified approach" (Refs. 15.14–15.16).

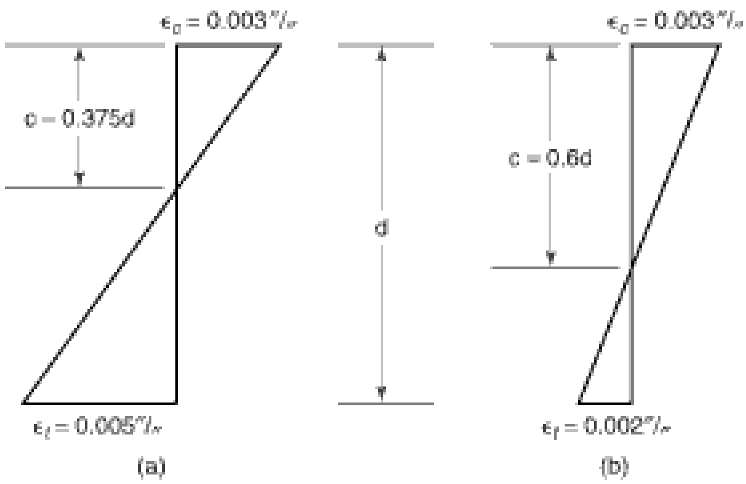


Figure 15.5 Strain limits (a) tension-controlled, (b) compression-controlled.

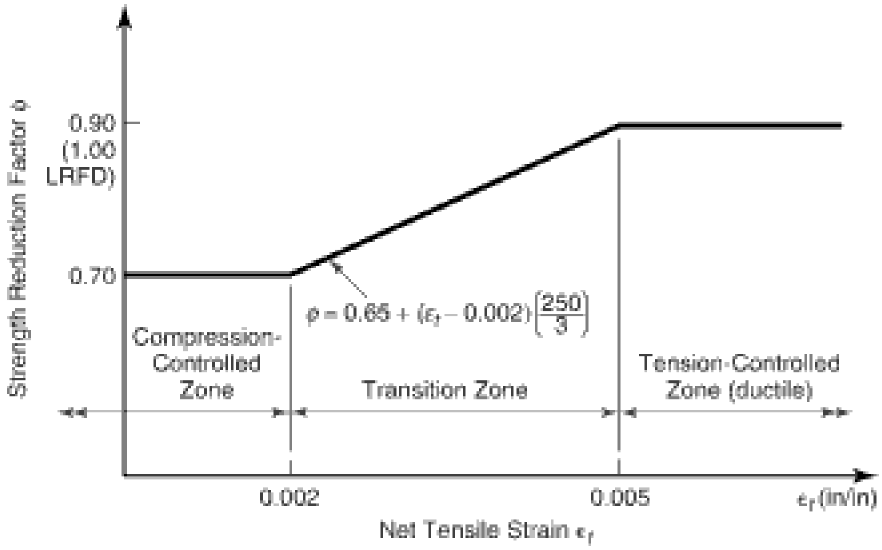


Figure 15.6 Variation of strength reduction factor ϕ with the net tensile strain ϵ_t.

A strain value ϵ_t considerably higher than 0.005 in./in. has to be used, such as 0.007 to 0.009 in./in. The lower compression-controlled limit for beam-column sections is $\epsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in. The $\epsilon_t = 0.002$ is used as a basis for first yield strain. $\epsilon_y = f_y/E_s = 0.002$, although this value can vary depending on the type of reinforcement used. Fig. 15.6 gives on this basis the limits of strain for tension-controlled and compression-controlled concrete sections for all cases, reinforced and prestressed, as in Figure 15.6.

When the net tensile strain in the extreme tension reinforcement is sufficiently large (equal to or greater than 0.005), the section is defined as tension-controlled where ample warning of failure with extensive deflection and cracking can occur. When the net tensile strain in the extreme tension reinforcement is small (less than or equal to the compression-controlled strain limit), a brittle failure condition is expected to develop, with little warning of impending failure.

A balanced strain condition develops at a section when the maximum strain at the extreme compression fibers just reaches 0.003 in./in. simultaneously with the first yield strain $\epsilon_y = f_y/E_s$ in the tension reinforcement corresponding to a net tensile strain in the tension reinforcement set in this method at a value $\epsilon_t = 0.002$ in./in.

This condition cannot be used in the flexural design of beams not subjected to compression. In such members, a strain ϵ_t in the extreme tensile reinforcement should be about 0.0075 in./in. for practical purposes.

15.2.2 Factored Flexural Resistance

The factored flexural resisting moment,

$$M_r = \phi M_n \tag{15.5}$$

where the resistance factor $\phi = 1.0$.

It is recommended in strain compatibility analysis that ϕ be reduced from a value $\phi = 1.0$ for net tensile strain of 0.005 in./in. to $\phi = 0.7$ for net tensile strain of 0.002 in./in. in the extreme tension steel strain.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

The depth, c, of the neutral axis is obtained from the following expressions:

(a) ***Doubly reinforced sections:***

$$c = \frac{A_{ps}f_{pu} + A_s f_y - A'_s f'_y}{0.85f'_c\beta_1 + kA_{ps}\dfrac{f_{pu}}{d_p}} \tag{15.8}$$

where f'_y = yield strength of the compression reinforcement

(b) ***Flanged sections:***

$$c = \frac{A_{ps}f_{pu} + A_s f_y - A'_s f'_s - 0.85f'_c\beta_1(b - b_w)h_f}{0.85f'_c\beta_1 b_w + kA_{ps}\dfrac{f_{pu}}{d_p}} \tag{15.9}$$

where b_w = web width

d_p = distance from the extreme compression fiber to the centroid of the prestressing tendons.

15.2.4 Reinforcement Limits

(a) ***Maximum reinforcement limit***

The maximum amount of prestressed and non-prestressed reinforcement should be such that,

$$\frac{c}{d_e} \le 0.42 \tag{15.10}$$

$$\text{where } d_e = \frac{A_{ps}f_{ps}d_p + A_s f_y d_s}{A_{ps}f_{ps} + A_s f_y} \tag{15.11}$$

(b) ***Minimum reinforcement***

At any section, the amount of prestressed and non-prestressed reinforcement should be adequate to develop a factored flexural resistance, M_r, at least equal to the *lesser* of 1.2 M_{cr} determined on the basis of elastic analysis or 1.33 times the factored moment required by the applicable strength load combinations.

$$M_{cr} = (f_r + f_{ce})S_b - M_{dnc}\left[\frac{S_{bc}}{S_b} - 1\right] \tag{15.12}$$

where,

M_{dnc} = moment due to noncomposite dead loads

S_b = noncomposite section modulus

S_{bc} = composite section modulus

f_r = modulus of rupture = 7.5 $\sqrt{f'_c}$ psi = 0.24 $\sqrt{f'_c}$ ksi

f_{ce} = compressive stress in the concrete due to effective prestress *only*, after losses, at the extreme tensile fibers of the section where tensile stresses are caused by external loads.

15.3 SHEAR DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

15.3.1 The Modified Compression Field Theory

When torsion exists, it is assumed that concrete carries no tension after cracking and the field of diagonal compression carries the torsional shear. The inclination angle θ of

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

where b_v = width of web adjusted for presence of ducts (in.)
f_{yt} = yield strength of transverse reinforcement (ksi)
s = spacing of transverse reinforcement

Additionally, when the beam reaction induces compression into the ends of the members as occurs in the majority of cases, the critical section for shear is taken as the larger of $0.5\ d_v \cot\theta$ or d_v, measured from the face of the support.

In order to determine the nominal shear resistance of the prestressed member, the design engineer has to determine the values of β and θ needed for computing V_c and V_s in equations 15.19 and 15.20. For non-prestressed concrete sections use $\beta = 2.0$ and $\theta = 45°$. For prestressed concrete sections, lower variable β values are to be used by trial and adjustment. AASHTO Table 15.9(a) gives the values of β and θ for various values of strain ϵ_x for sections containing *at least* minimum transverse reinforcement, and Table 15.9(b) for sections containing *less* than the minimum.

15.3.4 Longitudinal Strain ϵ_x in the Tension Reinforcement

1. If the section contains *at least* the minimum of transverse reinforcement, the initial value of longitudinal strain, ϵ_x, should not be taken greater than 0.001 as in Equation 15.25 (a) as follows:

$$\epsilon_x = \frac{\left(\dfrac{M_u}{d_v} + 0.5\ N_u + 0.5(V_u - V_p)\cot\theta - A_{ps} f_{po}\right)}{2(E_s A_s + E_p A_{ps})} \le 0.001 \qquad (15.25a)$$

Table 15.9(a) Values of θ and β for Sections Containing at Least Minimum Traverse Reinforcement

$\frac{v}{f'_c}$	$\epsilon_x \times 1{,}000$								
	≤ −0.20	≤ −0.10	≤ −0.05	≤ 0	≤ 0.125	≤ 0.25	≤ 0.50	≤ 0.75	≤ 1.00
≤ 0.075	22.3 6.32	20.4 4.75	21.0 4.10	21.8 3.75	24.3 3.24	26.6 2.94	30.5 2.59	33.7 2.38	36.4 2.23
≤ 0.100	18.1 3.79	20.4 3.38	21.4 3.24	22.5 3.14	24.9 2.91	27.1 2.75	30.8 2.50	34.0 2.32	36.7 2.18
≤ 0.125	19.9 3.18	21.9 2.99	22.8 2.94	23.7 2.87	25.9 2.74	27.9 2.62	31.4 2.42	34.4 2.26	37.0 2.13
≤ 0.150	21.6 2.88	23.3 2.79	24.2 2.78	25.0 2.72	26.9 2.60	28.8 2.52	32.1 2.36	34.9 2.21	37.3 2.08
≤ 0.175	23.2 2.73	24.7 2.66	25.5 2.65	26.2 2.60	28.0 2.52	29.7 2.44	32.7 2.28	35.2 2.14	36.8 1.96
≤ 0.200	24.7 2.63	26.1 2.59	26.7 2.52	27.4 2.51	29.0 2.43	30.6 2.37	32.8 2.14	34.5 1.94	36.1 1.79
≤ 0.225	26.1 2.53	27.3 2.45	27.9 2.42	28.5 2.40	30.0 2.34	30.8 2.14	32.3 1.86	34.0 1.73	35.7 1.64
≤ 0.250	27.5 2.39	28.6 2.39	29.1 2.33	29.7 2.33	30.6 2.12	31.3 1.93	32.8 1.70	34.3 1.58	35.8 1.50

Hidden page

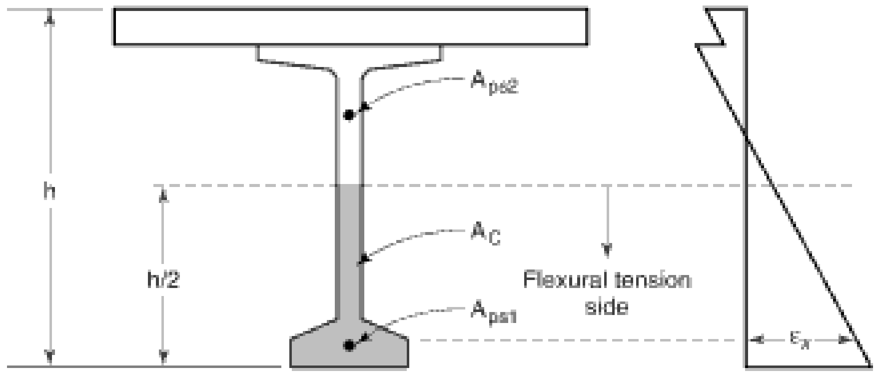


Figure 15.8 Strain distribution in prestressed flanged section

E_p = modulus of prestressing steel reinforcement (ksi)
f_{po} = stress value primarily at jacking but taken as the modulus of elasticity of the prestressing tendon multiplied by the locked in difference in strain between the prestressing tendons and the surrounding concrete (ksi). It can be computed from the expression in Equation 15.26 below or a conservative average value of $f_o = 0.75\, f_{pu}$ is used.
N_u = factored axial force, taken as positive if tensile and negative if compressive (kip)
M_u = factored moment, taken as positive quantity (in.-kip), but not to be taken less than ($V_u\, d_v$), namely,

$$\left(\frac{V_u\, d}{M_u}\right) \leq 1.0$$

V_p = vertical component of harped or draped prestressing tendon (kip)
V_u = factored shear forces, taken as positive quantity (kip)

The flexural tensile side of the member is taken as the half-depth containing the flexural tension zone as illustrated in Figure 15.8. The value of the stress f_o can be computed from the following expression as indicated in its definition previously stated and is applicable for both pretensioned and post-tensioned steel reinforcement:

$$f_o = f_{pe} + \frac{\bar{f}_{ce}\, E_p}{E_c} \tag{15.26}$$

where $\bar{f}_{ce}$ = concrete compressive stress at the centroid of the composite section resisting live load or at the junction of the web and the flange if it lies within the flange due to both prestress and the bending moment resisted by the precast section acting alone, namely prior to composite action (ksi)
f_{pe} = effective stress in the prestressing steel reinforcment after all losses

The longitudinal reinforcement should be so proportioned that each beam section has to satisfy the following expression:

$$A_s f_y + A_{ps} f_{ps} \geq \frac{M_u}{d_v \phi_f} + 0.5\frac{N_u}{\phi_c} + \left(\frac{V_u}{\phi_v} + 0.5V_s + V_p\right)\cot\theta \tag{15.27}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

The value of β in Equation 15.41 for determining the shear capacity, V_c, of the plain concrete in the web is obtained from Table 15.9(a) or (b) as applicable.

In order to avoid yielding of the longitudinal reinforcement, a check has to be made that the flexural reinforcement on the tension side of the number is so proportioned as to satisfy the following condition:

$$(A_s f_y + A_{ps} f_{ps}) \geq \frac{M_u}{\phi_f d_v} + \frac{0.5 N_u}{\phi_c} + \cot\theta \sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u}{\phi_v} - 0.5 V_s - V_p\right)^2 + \left(\frac{0.45 T_u p_o}{2 A_0 \phi_v}\right)^2} \tag{15.45}$$

where p_0 = Perimeter of the shear flow path
N_u = Applied axial force, taken as positive if compressive

15.6 STEP-BY-STEP LRFD DESIGN PROCEDURES

The following is a summary of a recommended sequence of design steps:

1. Determine whether or not partial prestressing is to be chosen.

2. Select the shear forces and bending moments using Tables 15.4 and 15.5.

3. Follow the step sequence for flexural design of the member described in Section 15.2. Generally, $d_v = (d_e - a/2)$.

4. Determine the factored shear force V_u due to all applied loads at the critical section located at a distance d_v or 0.5 d_v cotθ from the face of the support, whichever is larger, where

$$d_e = \text{effective depth}$$
$$= d_p \text{ if no mild steel is used.}$$

5. Compute the tendon shear component V_p. The factored shear stress is:

$$v = \frac{V_u - \phi V_p}{\phi b_v d_v}$$

The nominal available shear stress $v_c = v/h$.

6. Compute the quantity v/f'_c and assume a value of θ. A good initial assumption for prestressed beams is θ = 22° – 30°.

7. Compute the strain ϵ_x in the tensile reinforcement in order to enter Table 15.9(a) or (b) as applicable to obtain a trial value of θ and β from Eqs. 15.25(a), (b), or (c) that applies, namely, from the following expressions:

Section contains *at least* the minimum transverse reinforcement:

$$\epsilon_x = \frac{\left(\frac{M_u}{d_v} + 0.5\, N_u + 0.5(V_u - V_p)\cot\theta - A_{ps} f_{po}\right)}{2(E_s A_s + E_p A_{ps})} \leq 0.001$$

Section contains *less* than the minimum transverse reinforcement:

$$\epsilon_x = \frac{\left(\frac{M_u}{d_v} + 0.5\, N_u + 0.5(V_u - V_p)\cot\theta - A_{ps} f_{po}\right)}{E_s A_s + E_p A_{ps}} \leq 0.002$$

Hidden page

Torsion reinforcement:

$$\frac{A_t}{s} = \frac{T_u}{2A_0 f_{yt} \cot\theta}$$

Total web closed ties reinforcement:

$$\frac{A_{vt}}{s} = \frac{A_v}{s} + 2\frac{A_t}{s}$$

Shear stress v for obtaining angle θ:

(a) Box sections:

$$v = \frac{V_u - \phi V_p}{\phi b_v d_v} + \frac{TP_h}{\phi A_0 h^2}$$

(b) Other sections:

$$v = \sqrt{\left(\frac{V_u - \phi V_p}{\phi b_v d_v}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{TP_h}{\phi A_{oh}^2}\right)^2}$$

For avoiding yield of the longitudinal tensile reinforcement:

$$(A_s f_y + A_{ps} f_{ps}) \geq \frac{M_u}{\phi_f d_v} + \frac{0.5N_u}{\phi_c} + cot\theta\sqrt{(V_u - 0.5V_s - V_p)^2 + \left(\frac{0.45T_u P_h}{2A_o \phi_v}\right)^2}$$

12. Check the horizontal interface shear:

$$v_n A_{cv} \leq \phi V_n$$

where

$$V_n = cA_{cv} + \mu(A_{vf} f_y)$$

$$v_{uh} \leq \phi\left(0.1 + \frac{A_{vf}}{A_{cv}}\right)$$

where $$A_{vf} = \frac{0.05b_v s}{f_{yt}} \qquad (f_{yt} \text{ is in ksi})$$

Take the nominal shear resistance as the lesser of

$$V_n \leq 0.20f'_c A_{cv}$$

or

$$V_n \leq 0.80A_{cv}$$

c = cohesion factor

μ = friction factor

A_{cv} = concrete interface area = $b_v l_v$

A_{vf} = area of shear reinforcement crossing the shear plane within area A_{cv}

ϕ = strength reduction factor = 0.90.

Limit A_{vf} to cases in which v_{uh}/ϕ is greater than 100 psi.

13. The maximum allowable spacing of transverse reinforcement is as follows:

   1. If $v_u < 0.125\, f'_{ci}$ $\quad s = 0.8\, d_v \quad \le 24$ *in.*
   2. If $v_u > 0.125\, f'_{ci}$ $\quad s = 0.4\, d_v \quad \le 12$ *in.*

   Note that the design yield strength of non-prestressed transverse reinforcement should not exceed 60.0 ksi. The design yield strength of prestressed transverse reinforcement should be taken as the effective prestress after allowing for all prestress losses plus 60.0 ksi, but not greater than f_{py}.

   For Dowel reinforcement:

$$A_v \ge \frac{0.05\, b_v}{f_{yt}}$$

   where b_v = width of interface and spacing as determined from item 13.

15.7 LRFD DESIGN OF BULB-TEE BRIDGE DECK: EXAMPLE 15.1

Design for flexure an interior beam of a 120 ft (36.6 m) simply supported AASHTO-PCI bulb-tee composite bridge deck with no skews (adapted from Ref. 15.11). The superstructure is composed of six pretensioned beams at 9′–0″ (2.74 m) on centers as shown in Figure 15.9. The bridge has an 8-in. (203-mm) situ-cast concrete deck with the top ½-in to be considered as wearing surface. The design live load is the HL-93 AASHTO-LRFD fatigue loading.

Assume the bridge is to be located in a low seismicity zone.

Given:

Maximum allowable stresses

Deck $\quad f'_c = 4000$ psi, normal weight

$\quad f_c = 0.60\, f'_c = 2400$ psi

Bulb-tee $\quad f'_c = 6500$ psi

$\quad f'_{ci} = 5500$ psi

Allowable stresses

$f_c = 0.60\, f'_c = 3900$ psi, Service III

$f_c = 0.45\, f'_c = 2925$ psi, Service I

$f_{ci} = 0.60\, f'_{ci} = 3480$ psi

$f_t = 6\sqrt{f'_c} = 484$ psi

$f_{pu} = 270{,}000$ psi

$f_{py} = 0.90\, f_{pu} = 243{,}000$ psi

$f_{pi} = 0.75\, f_{pu} = 202{,}500$ psi

$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000$ psi

$E_{ps} = 28.5 \times 10^6$ psi

$E_s = 29.0 \times 10^6$ psi.

Section properties

$A_c = 767$ in.^{2}

$h = 72$ in.

$I_c = 545{,}894$ in.^{4}

$c_b = 36.60$ in.

$c_t = 35.40$ in.

$S_b = 14{,}915$ in.^{3}

$S^t = 15{,}421$ in.^{3}

$$r^2 = \frac{I_c}{A_c} = \frac{545{,}894}{767} = 712 \text{ in.}^2$$

$W_D = 799$ plf.

Solution:

1. ***Transformed deck slab controlling width***

   Compute the transformed flange width:

$$E_{cs} = 33w^{1.5}\sqrt{f'_c} = 33 \times (1.5)^{1.5}\sqrt{4000} = 3830 \text{ ksi}$$

$$E_{ci} \text{ at transfer} = 33(1.5)^{1.5}\sqrt{5500} = 4500 \text{ ksi}$$

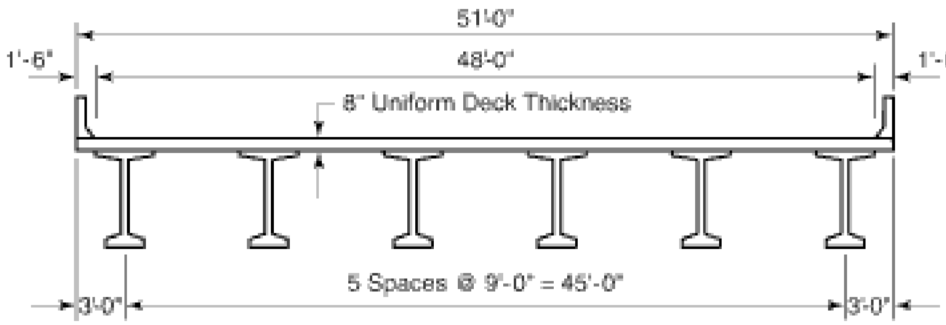


Figure 15.9 Bulb-tee bridge deck cross section in Example 12.1 (Ref. 15.11).

E_{ct} at service $= 33(1.5)^{1.5}\sqrt{6500} = 4890$ ksi
Effective flange width is the lesser of

(i) $(\frac{1}{4})$ span $= \dfrac{120 \times 12}{4} = 360$ in.

(ii) $12\,h_f$ + greater of web thickness or $\frac{1}{2}$-beam top flange width, $b = 12 \times 7.5 + 0.5 \times 42 = 111$ in.

(iii) average spacing between beams $= 9 \times 12 = 108$ in.
hence, controlling flange width $= 108$ in.

$$\text{Modular ratio } n_1 = \frac{E_{cs}}{E_c} = \frac{3830}{4890} = 0.78$$

Transformed width $b_w = n_1 b = 0.78 \times 108 = 84$ in.

2. *Properties of composite section*
Disregard as insignificant the contribution of the deck concrete haunch to I'_c which is needed because of the precast element camber.

$A'_c = 1397$ in.^{2}

$h = 80$ in.

$I_{cc} = 1{,}095{,}290$ in.^{4}

$c_{bc} = 54.6$ in. to the bottom fibers

$c_{tc} = 72 - 54.6 = 17.4$ in. – precast

$c_{tc}' = 80 - 54.6 = 25.4$ in. – deck top

$$S_{bc} = \frac{1{,}095{,}290}{54.6} = 20{,}060 \text{ in.}^3$$

$$S_c^t = \frac{1{,}095{,}290}{17.4} = 62{,}950 \text{ in.}^3$$

$$S_c^{tt} = \frac{1{,}095{,}290}{25.4 \times 0.78} = 55{,}284 \text{ in.}^3$$

3. *Bending moments and shear forces*

$$\text{Slab: } W_{SD1} = \frac{8}{12} \times 9 \times 150 = 900 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$\text{Barrier weight: } W_{SD2} = \frac{2 \text{ barriers (300 lb/ft)}}{6 \text{ beams}} = 100 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$\text{2 in. future-wearing surface: } W_{SD3} = \frac{2}{12} \times \frac{48 \text{ ft}}{6 \text{ beams}} \times 150 = 200 \text{ lb/ft}$$

Hidden page

(b) *Distribution factor for shear*

From Table 15.3(a),

For two or more lanes loaded

$$\text{DFV} = 0.2 + \left(\frac{S}{12}\right) - \left(\frac{S}{36}\right)^2$$

provided that

beam spacing:	$3.5 \le S \le 16$	Actual S = 9.0 ft	O.K.
deck slab:	$4.5 \le T_s \le 12$	Actual T_s = 7.5 in.	O.K.
span:	$20 \le L \le 240$	Actual L = 120 ft	O.K.
$10{,}000 \le K_g \le 7{,}000{,}000$		Actual K_g = 2,242,191 in.^{4}	O.K.

$$\text{hence,}\quad \text{DFV} = 0.2 + \left(\frac{9}{12}\right) - \left(\frac{9}{36}\right)^2 = 0.887 \text{ lanes/beam.}$$

For one design lane loaded (Table 15.3a)

$$\text{DFV} = 0.36 + \left(\frac{S}{25.0}\right) = 0.36\left(\frac{9.0}{25.0}\right) = 0.720 \text{ lanes/beam;}$$

consequently, the case of two or more lanes loaded controls and DFV = 0.887 lanes per beam.

4. *Load Combinations*

Total factored load, $Q = \eta\Sigma\gamma_i q_i$

where η = a factor relating to ductility, redundancy and operational importance.
γ_i = load factors
q_i = special loads;

use $\eta = 1.0$ for all practical purposes in this example.

Investigate all the load combinations from Tables 15.1 and 15.2. The cases that control are as follows:

(a) Service I for compressive stresses in the prestressed concrete components: $Q = 1.0\,(DC + DW) + 1.0\,(LL + IM)$

(b) Service III for tensile stresses in the prestressed concrete components: $Q = 1.0\,(DC + DW) + 0.8\,(LL + IM)$

(c) Strength I for ultimate strength:

$$\text{Maximum}\quad Q = 1.25\,\text{DC} + 1.50\,\text{DW} + 1.75\,(\text{LL} + \text{IM})$$

$$\text{Minimum}\quad Q = 0.90\,\text{DC} + 0.65\,\text{DW} + 1.75\,(\text{LL} + \text{IM})$$

(d) Fatigue for checking stress range in the strands

$$Q = 0.75\,(\text{LL} + \text{IM})$$

(The fatigue Q is a special load combination for checking the tensile stress range in the strands due to live load and dynamic allowance.)

5. *Unfactored shear forces and bending moments*

(a) *Truck Loads*

Truck load shear force:

$$\begin{aligned} V_{LT} &= (\text{shear force per lane})(\text{DFV})(1 + \text{IM}) \\ &= (\text{shear force per lane})(0.887)(1 + 0.33) \\ &= 1.180\,(\text{shear force per lane})\text{ kips.} \end{aligned}$$

Truck load bending moment:

$$\begin{aligned} M_{LT} &= (\text{moment per lane})(\text{DFM})(1 + \text{IM}) \\ &= (\text{moment per lane})(0.732)(1 + 0.33) \\ &= 0.974\,(\text{moment per lane})\text{ ft-kips.} \end{aligned}$$

 load

(b) *Lane Loads*
For lane loads, no dynamic allowance is applied, hence,

$$V_{LL} = (\text{shear force per lane})(\text{DFV})$$
$$= (\text{shear force per lane})(0.884) \text{ kips}$$
$$M_{LL} = (\text{moment per lane})(\text{DFM})$$
$$= (\text{moment per lane})(0.732) \text{ ft-kips.}$$

The lane loads from Figure 15.3, the load on this bridge is as follows in Figure 15.10.

6. *Computation of moments and shears*

(a) *Lane live load (DFV = 0.884, DFM = 0.732)*

(i) *Support section:*
shear at the left support ($x = 0$) from equation 15.4(a) and Figure 15.9:

$$V_{LL} = \frac{0.64}{2L}(L - x)^2\,(\text{DFV})$$
$$= \frac{0.64}{2 \times 120}(120)^2\,(0.887) = 34.1 \text{ kips}$$

From equation 15.4(b), and DFM = 0.732

$$M_{LL} = \frac{0.64(x)(L - x)}{2}(\text{DFM}) = 0 \text{ ft-kip}$$

(ii) *Section at 24 ft from support:*
As an example, find V_{LL} and M_{LL} at $x = 24$ ft from the left support.

$$V_{LL} = \frac{0.64}{2 \times 120}(120 - 24)^2\,(0.887) = 21.8 \text{ kips}$$

$$M_{LL} = \frac{0.64(24)(120 - 24)}{2}(0.732) = 539.7 \text{ ft-kip}$$

(b) *Truck live load (DFV = 1.180, DFM = 0.974)*
Here, the impact factor IM = 33% has to be included, hence, larger DFV and DFM values.

(i) *Support sections:*
From Tables 15.4 and 15.5,

$$V_{LT} = \frac{72[(L - x) - 9.33]}{L}(\text{DFV})$$
$$= \frac{72[(120 - 0.0) - 9.33]}{120}(1.180) = 78.1 \text{ kips}$$

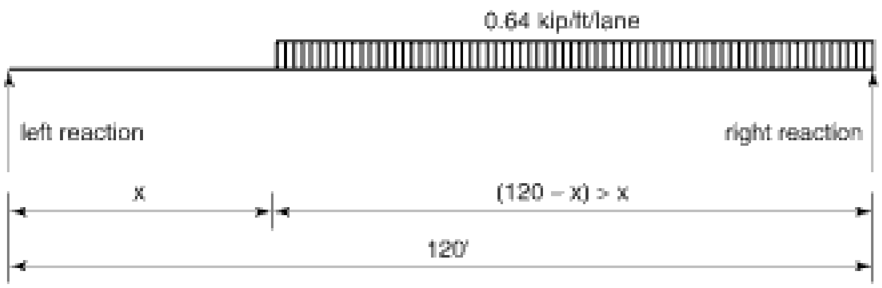


Figure 15.10 Truck load per lane.

From Table 15.5,

$$M_{LT} = \frac{72(x)[(L-x)-9.33]}{L}(\text{DFM})$$

= 0 ft-kip for the support moment.

(ii) *Section at 24 ft from support:*

$$V_{LT} = \frac{72[(120-24)-9.33]}{120}(1.180) = 61.4 \text{ kips}$$

$$M_{LT} = \frac{72(24)[(120-24)-9.33]}{120}(0.974) = 1215.0 \text{ ft-kip}$$

(c) *Fatigue moment at 24 ft (DFF = 0.478):*
From Table 15.7,

$$M_f = \frac{72(x)[(L-x)-18.22]}{L}(\text{DFF})$$

From before, DFF = 0.478
hence,

$$M_f = \frac{72(24)[(120-24)-18.22]}{120}(0.478) = 535.8 \text{ ft-kip}$$

(d) *Shears and moments due to dead loads:*
The loads to be considered are beam weight (W_D) plus deck slab and haunches (W_{SD1}), and future wearing surface (W_{SDS}).
The beam is simply supported, hence, the shear and moment at any cross section along the span are:

$$V_x = W_D(0.5L - x)$$

$$M_x = 0.5W_D x(L - x)$$

As an example, consider a section at 24 ft from the left support and compute the shear and moment due to self-weight $W_D = 0.799$ Kip/ft:

$$V_x = 0.799(0.5 \times 120 - 24) = 28.8 \text{ kips}$$

$$M_x = 0.5 \times 0.799 \times 24(120 - 24) = 920.4 \text{ ft-kip.}$$

Tables 15.9, 15.10, and 15.11 (Ref. 15.11) list the forces and moments required for the design of the interior beam elements. It should be noted that long-hand computations to develop such a table are time consuming. Computer programs developed by several state DOTs are available, some on the internet, such as the Washington State DOT Program.

7. *Design of the Bulb-tee prestressed interior beam*

(1) ***Selection of Prestressing Strands***

For Service-III load combination, bottom fiber stress f_b is:

$$f_b = \frac{M_D + M_S}{S_b} + \frac{M_b + M_{WS} + 0.8(M_{LT} + M_{LL})}{S_{bc}}$$

where M_D = unfactored self-weight moment, ft-kip
M_S = unfactored moment due to slab and haunch weight, ft-kip
M_b = unfactored barrier moment, ft-kip
M_{WS} = unfactored future wearing surface moment, ft-kip
M_{LT} = unfactored truck load moment, ft-kip
M_{LL} = unfactored lane load moment, ft-kip

From before, $S_b = 14{,}915$ in.^{3}

S_{bc} = [illegible] in.^{3}

Table 15.10 LRFD Service Shear and Moment Due to Dead Load

Distance X	Section X/L	Beam Weight W_D		(Slab + Haunch) Weight W_{SD1}		Barrier Weight W_{DS2}		Wearing Surface W_{SD3}	
		Shear	Moment M_g	Shear	Moment M_s	Shear	Moment M_b	Shear	Moment M_{ws}
ft		kips	ft-kips	kips	ft-kips	kips	ft-kips	kips	ft-kips
0	0.0	47.9	0.0	55.3	0.0	6.0	0.0	12.0	0.0
6.00*	0.05	43.1	274.3	49.8	315.3	5.4	34.2	10.8	68.4
12	0.1	38.4	517.8	44.3	597.5	4.8	64.8	9.6	129.6
24	0.2	28.8	920.4	33.2	1,062.1	3.6	115.2	7.2	230.4
36	0.3	19.2	1,208.1	22.1	1,394.1	2.4	151.2	4.8	302.4
48+	0.4	9.6	1,380.7	11.1	1,593.2	1.2	172.8	2.4	345.6
60	0.5	0.0	1,438.2	0.0	1,659.6	0.0	180.0	0.0	360.0

*Critical section for shear
+ Harp point

From Tables 15.10 and 15.11,
Midspan stresses at bottom fibers at service:

$$f_{bc} = \frac{(1438.2 + 1659.6)}{14{,}915}(12) + \frac{(180 + 360) + 0.8(1830.3 + 843.2)}{20{,}090}(12)$$

$$= 2.50 + 1.60 \cong 4.10 \text{ ksi (T)}.$$

The 4.10 ksi (T) will be neutralized by prestressing the beam. Maximum allowable tensile stress:

$$f_t = 6.0\sqrt{f_c'} \text{ psi} = 6\sqrt{6500} = 484 \text{ psi} = 0.484 \text{ ksi}$$

Required prestress compressive stress at the bottom fibers:

$$f_{cb} = (4.1 - 0.48) = 3.62 \text{ ksi}$$

Table 15.11 LRFD Service Shear and Moment Due to Truck and Lane Loads

Distance X	Section X/L	Truck Load with Impact W_{LT+I}		Lane Load W_{LL}		Fatigue Truck with Impact W_f
		Shear V_{LT}	Moment M_{LT}	Shear V_{LL}	Moment M_{LL}	Moment M_f
ft		kips	ft-kips	kips	ft-kips	ft-kips
0	0.0	78.1	0.0	33.9	0.0	0.0
6.00*	0.05	73.8	367.8	30.6	160.2	165.0
12	0.1	69.6	691.6	27.5	303.6	309.2
24	0.2	61.4	1,215.0	21.8	539.7	535.8
36	0.3	52.7	1,570.2	16.6	708.3	692.7
48+	0.4	44.2	1,778.9	12.2	809.5	776.2
60	0.5	35.7	1,830.2	8.5	843.3	776.9

*Critical section for shear
+ Harp point

Assume that the distance from the centroid of the prestressing reinforcement and the section bottom fibers = $0.05h$

$$= (0.05)(72) = 3.6 \text{ in; use } 4.0 \text{ in., hence } e_c = 36.6 - 4.0 = 32.6 \text{ in.}$$

$$f_{bp} \text{ due to prestress} = \frac{P_e}{A_c} + \frac{P_e \times e_c}{S_b}$$

$$\text{or} \quad f_{bp} = \frac{P_e}{767} + \frac{P_e \times 32.6}{14{,}915} = 3.62 \text{ ksi}$$

to give prestressing force $P_e = 1037$ kips
Assume total prestress loss = 25%

$$P_i = \frac{1037}{1 - 0.25} = 1383 \text{ kips}$$

assume using $\frac{1}{2}$ in.-dia 7-wire 270-K low-relaxation strands ($A_{ps} = 0.153$ in.^{2})

$$\text{Required number of strands} = \frac{1383}{0.153 \times 202.5} = 44.6 \text{ strands.}$$

After two trials and adjustments, 48 strands with the configuration shown in Figure 15.11 are tried. Less than 48 strands result in tensile stresses at the bottom fibers at service which exceed the maximum allowable $f_t = 484$ psi. Twelve strands are harped at 0.4 L. Accordingly, 36 strands remain straight at the beam.

From data, $c_b = 36.60$ in. and $c_t = 72 - 36.60 = 35.40$ in.

$$e_e = c_b - [2 \times 70 + 2 \times 68 + 2 \times 66 + 2 \times 64 + 2 \times 62 + 2 \times 60 + 4 \times 8 + 8 \times 6 + 12 \times 4 + 12 \times 2]/48$$
$$= 36.60 - 19.42 = 17.28 \text{ in.}$$

$$e_c = c_b - [2 \times 12 + 12 \times 4 + 8 \times 6 + 8 \times 4 + 2 \times 10 + 2 \times 12 + 2 \times 14 + 2 \times 16 + 2 \times 18 + 2 \times 20]/48$$
$$= 36.6 - 6.92 = 29.68 \text{ in.}$$

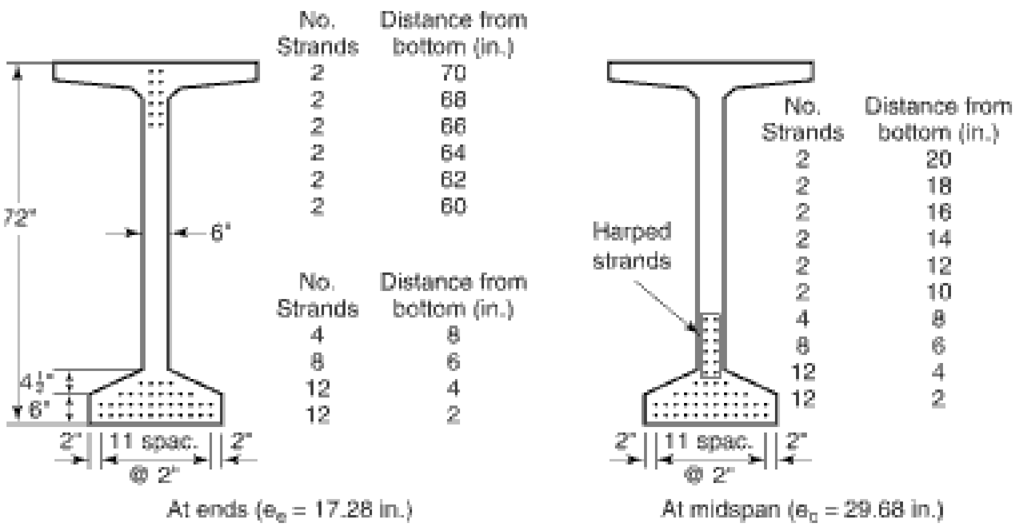


Figure 15.11 Bulb-Tee Prestressing Strand Pattern

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

$= 11{,}364$ ft-kips $>$ required $M_u = 9316$ ft-kip O.K.

$\frac{c}{d_e} \leq 0.42$ for ductile behavior discussed in Section 15.2.

Actual $\frac{c}{d_e} = \frac{6.20}{73.08} = 0.085 < 0.42$ O.K.

(b) *Minimum reinforcement*

As discussed in Section 15.2.4, the minimum reinforcement has to be the lesser of 1.2 M_{cr} or 1.33 M_u required by the applicable load combinations.

$$f_r = 7.5\sqrt{f'_c} = 7.5\sqrt{6500} = 605 \text{ psi} = 0.6 \text{ ksi}$$

f_{ce} = compressive stress due to effective prestress only at the bottom fibers as defined in Section 15.2.4,

$$= -\frac{P_e}{A_c}\left(1 + \frac{e_c c_b}{r^2}\right) = -3.606 \text{ ksi from before.}$$

Noncomposite $M_{dnc} = M_D + M_S = 1438 + 1660 = 3098$ ft-kip

$$S_{bc} = 20{,}060 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$S_b = 14{,}915 \text{ in.}^4$$

From Equation 15.12,

$$M_{cr} = (f_r + f_{ce})S_b - M_{dnc}\left(\frac{S_{bc}}{S_b} - 1\right)$$

$$= (0.6 + 3.6)\frac{14{,}915}{12} - 3098\left(\frac{20{,}060}{14{,}915} - 1\right)$$

$$= 5220 - 1069 = 4151 \text{ ft-kip}$$

$$1.2\ M_{cr} = 1.2 \times 4151 = 4981 \text{ ft-kip}$$

$$1.33\ M_u = 1.33 \times 9316 = 12{,}390 \text{ ft-kip} > 4981 \text{ ft-kip}$$

hence, the lesser of the two moments controls, namely, 1.2 $M_{cr} = 4981$.
M_n or $M_r = 11{,}364 > 4981$ O.K.

9. *Pretensioned anchorage zone*

The zone reinforcement is designed using the force in the strands just prior to release transfer. The LRFD specifications require that the bursting resistance, P_r should not be less than 4.0% of the force in the strands, F_{pi}, before release, namely:

$P_r = f_s A_s \geq 0.04 F_{pi}$

$F_{pi} = 48 \times 0.153 \times 202.5 = 1488$ kips

$P_r = 0.04 \times 1488 = 59.5$ kips

Use a stress, f_s, in the anchorage reinforcement not exceeding 20 ksi.

Required area = 59.5/20 = 2.98 in.^{2}

Try No. 5 closed ties: $A_s = 2 \times 0.31 = 0.62$ in.^{2}

Number of ties = 2.98/0.62 = 4.8

Distance within which anchorage reinforcement has to be provided from beam end = $h/5 = 72/5 = 14.4$ in.

Use No. 5 closed ties at 3 in. center-to-center, with the first tie starting at 2 in. from the beam end.

Conclusion:

Accept the design of the bulb-tee bridge for flexure. For the design to be complete, design for shear, interface shear transfer and deflection/camber checks have to be performed as in Example 15.1.

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Table 15.12 Long-term Camber and Deflection

	Transfer δ_p (in.)	Non-composite PCI Multipliers	Composite PCI Multipliers	δ_{final} (in.)
Prestress	3.92↑	1.80	2.20	8.62↑
W_d	−1.44↓	1.85	2.40	−3.47↓
	Net 2.48↑			Net 5.15↑
w_{Sdl}	−1.61↓	1.85	2.40	−3.84↓
$w_{barrier}$	−0.26↓	1.85	2.30	−0.60↓
δ_{LL}	−0.41↓			−0.41↓
δ_{LI}	−0.78↓			−0.78↓
Final δ	2.48↑			+0.48↓

It is more conservative to use moment distribution factor DFM = 0.732
Design lane load, $W = 0.64$ DFM

$$= 0.64 \text{ kip/ft } (0.732) = 0.468 \text{ kip/ft/beam}$$

$$= 0.039 \text{ kip/in./beam}$$

$$\delta_{LL} = \frac{5}{384E_cI_{cc}} = \frac{5(0.039)(120 \times 12)^4}{384 \times 4888 \times 1{,}095{,}290} = 0.41 \text{ in.} \downarrow$$

The transient truck load and impact deflection is determined from influence lines of wheel position for maximum moment. For a 120-ft span, the 72 kip resultant of the axial loads falls at 2.33 ft from the midspan. The deflection at midspan = 0.8 in. ↓

$$\delta_{LT} = 0.8(IM)(DFM) = 0.8(1.33)(0.732) = 0.78 \text{ in.} \downarrow$$

Using the PCI multipliers from Ref. 15.22, a summary of the long-term cambers and deflections are given in Table 15.12.

$$\text{Allowable deflection } \delta = \frac{L}{800} = \frac{120 \times 12}{800} = 1.80 \text{ in. (down)}$$

$$> \text{actual} = 0.49 \text{ in.} \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Adopt the bridge deck design of the interior beam in Example 15.1 and 15.2.

SELECTED REFERENCES

15.1. ASCE, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," ASCE 7-98 Standard, American Society of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA, 1998, 250 p.

15.2. AASHTO, "Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges," 18th ed., American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, D.C., 2004.

15.3. AASHTO, "LRFD Bridge Design Specifications," American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, Washington, D.C., 2004.

15.4. ACI, "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-08) and Commentary (ACI 318R-08), American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI., 465 pp.

15.5. Nawy, E.G., *Prestressed Concrete—A Fundamental Approach*, 5th Ed., 2006, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, pp. 944.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Deck $f'_c = 4000$ psi, normal weight

$f_c = 0.60\, f'_c = 2400$ psi

Bulb-tee $f'_c = 6500$ psi

$f'_{ci} = 5500$ psi

$f_c = 0.60\, f'_c = 3900$ psi, Service III

$f_c = 0.45\, f'_c = 2925$ psi, Service I

$f_{ci} = 0.60\, f'_c = 3480$ psi

$f_r = 6\sqrt{f'_c} = 484$ psi

$f_{pu} = 270{,}000$ psi

$f_{py} = 0.90\, f_{pu} = 243{,}000$ psi

$f_{pi} = 0.75\, f_{pu} = 202{,}500$ psi

$f_y = 60{,}000$ psi

$E_{ps} = 28.5 \times 10^6$ psi

$E_s = 29.0 \times 10^6$ psi.

15.2. Design the web shear reinforcement for the bulb-tee beam in Problem 15.1 at the critical section near the supports and the interface shear transfer reinforcement at the interface plane between the precast section and the deck situ-cast concrete. Also, verify if the span deflection is within the allowable limits.

15.3. A single span two-lane unskewed AASHTO Type BIII-48 bridge has an overall span of 96 ft and the cross-section shown in Figure P15.1 (Adapted from PCI Manual Ref. 15.11). The total deck width is 28 ft wide. The deck has a 3-in. bituminous wearing surface. Design for flexure and shear an interior box element using AASHTO LRFD specifications in the design given:

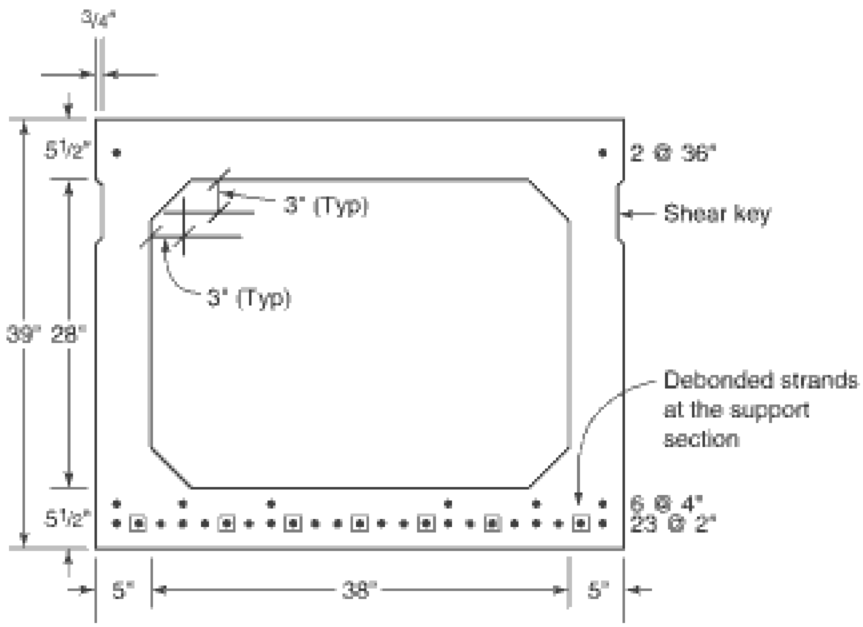


Figure P15.1 Box Girder Section

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{Effective span} &= 95 \text{ ft} \\
f'_c &= 5000 \text{ psi, normal concrete} \\
f_c &= 0.60\, f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi, Sevice III} \\
f_c &= 0.45\, f'_c = 2250 \text{ psi, Service I} \\
f_{ci} &= 0.60\, f'_c = 3000 \text{ psi} \\
f_t &= 6\sqrt{f'_c} = 424 \text{ psi} \\
f_{pu} &= 270{,}000 \text{ psi} \\
f_{py} &= 0.90\, f_{pu} = 243{,}000 \text{ psi} \\
f_{pi} &= 0.75\, f_{pu} = 202{,}500 \text{ psi} \\
f_y &= 60{,}000 \text{ psi} \\
E_{ps} &= 28.5 \times 10^6 \text{ psi} \\
E_s &= 29.0 \times 10^6 \text{ psi} \\
A_c &= 813 \text{ in.}^2 \\
h &= 39 \text{ in.} \\
I_c &= 168{,}367 \text{ in.}^4 \\
c_b &= 19.29 \text{ in.} \\
c_t &= 19.71 \text{ in.} \\
S_b &= 8728 \text{ in.}^3 \\
S^t &= 8542 \text{ in.}^2 \\
W_D &= 874 \text{ lb/ft}
\end{aligned}
$$

16

SEISMIC DESIGN OF CONCRETE STRUCTURES

16.1 INTRODUCTION: MECHANISM OF EARTHQUAKES

Earth's crust is composed of several layers of hard tectonic plates, called *lithospheres*, that float on the softer, underpinning, fluid medium called *mantle*. These plates or rock masses, when fractured, *form fault lines*. The adjoining plates or rock masses are prevented by the interacting frictional forces from moving past one another most of the time. However, when this frictional ultimate resistance is reached because of the continuous motion of the underlying fluid, any two plates can impact on one another, generating seismic waves that can cause large horizontal and vertical ground motions. These ground motions translate into inertia forces in structures.

The length and width of a fault are interrelated to the magnitude of the earthquake. The fault is the cause rather than the result of the earthquake. A fault can cause an earthquake due to the following reasons (Ref. 16.5):

1. Cumulative strain in the fault over a long period of time reaches the rupture strain.
2. Slip of the tectonic plates at the fault zones causes a rebound, as in Figure 16.1a.

Photo 16.1 Northridge, California, 1994 earthquake structural failure. (Courtesy Dr. Murat Saatcioglu.)

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

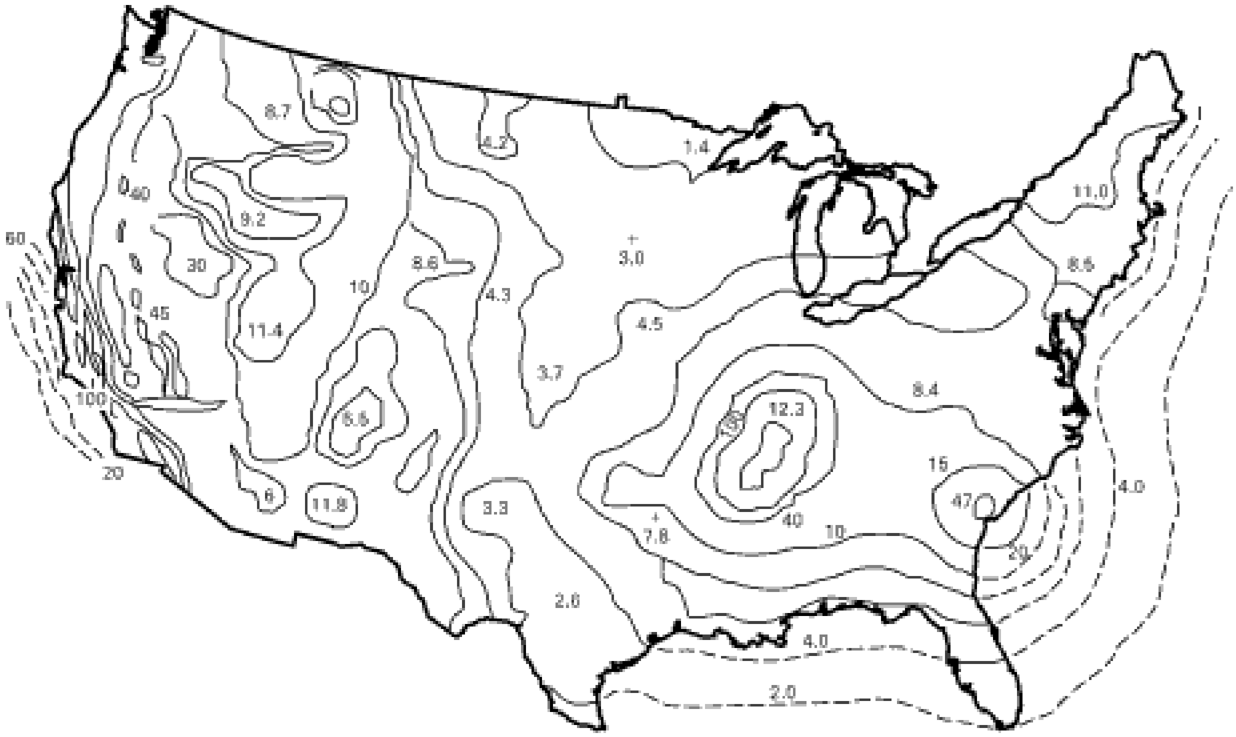


Figure 16.3b Maximum considered earthquake ground motion for the United States, 1.0 sec. Spectral response acceleration, S_1, as a percent of gravity, site class B with 5% critical damping.

imum considered earthquake ground motion maps for site class B, prepared by the United States Geological Survey (USGS). The equivalent maximum considered earthquake ground motion values for the ceiling were determined to be 1.50 g for the short period and 0.60 g for the long period (Ref. 16.15).

In high seismicity regions, where the maximum considered earthquake ground motion values are greater than 0.75 g for the 1.0 sec peak acceleration, additional requirements are imposed on irregular structures exceeding five stories in height and a period T in excess of 0.5 sec, such as increasing the ground motion spectral acceleration values by 50 percent. The USGS large-scale maps for the 1.0 sec and the 0.2 sec levels of spectral response acceleration, site B class, and 5% critical damping are condensed and abridged in Figs. 16.3(a) and (b) for general guidance. They show the relative values of the peak spectral response accelerations at the two ground motion levels of 0.2 and 1.0 sec. Values have to be extrapolated linearly from the USGS large-scale maps for use in the seismic design of structures.

16.2.2 Seismic Design Parameters

Both the spectral response method and the equivalent lateral force method are based on the same code principles and formulations presented in this chapter. Sites are classified into six categories A, B, C, D, E, and F as shown in Table 16.1 on site properties.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Table 16.3b Seismic Design Category based on 1-sec period response accelerations

	Occupancy Category		
Value of S_{D1}	**I or II**	**III**	**IV**
$S_{D1} < 0.067$ g	A	A	A
0.067 g $\le S_{D1} < 0.133$ g	B	B	C
0.133 g $\le S_{D1} < 0.20$ g	C	C	D
0.20 g $\le S_{D1}$	D	D	D

16.2.3 Earthquake Design Load Classifications and Seismic Categories

Structures in seismic areas have to be classified in categories separate from those that are subjected to low or negligible seismic loads. Regardless of the period of vibration of the structure they are classified as in Tables 16.3(a) and 16.3(b) for short period response acceleration and 1-second response acceleration respectively.

The IBC 2006 assigns four seismic occupancy categories: I, II, III, and IV. They are defined by the magnitude of the seismic response acceleration, namely, the short period response S_{DS} of 0.2 seconds and the 1-second period response S_{D1}. Tables 16.3(a) and 16.3(b) list the design categories A, B, C, and D corresponding S_{DS} and S_{SD1} levels. The Code stipulates that Occupancy Category I, II, or III structures located where the map spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period, S_{D1}, is greater than or equal to 0.75, that structure should be assigned seismic design category E. Occupancy Category IV structures located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period S_{D1}, is greater than or equal to 0.75, the structure should be assigned to seismic design Category F.

All other structures should be assigned to a seismic design category based on their occupancy category and the design spectral response coefficients S_{DS} as S_{D1} defined in Eqs. 16.3(a) and (b) or the site-specific procedures of ASCE 7. But each structure should be assigned to more severe seismic category in accordance with Tables 16.3(a) or 16.3(b) irrespective of the fundamental period of vibration, T.

To amplify, there are exceptions that allow for the seismic design category to be determined from Table 16.3(a) alone. In order to use this exception, S_{SD1} must be less than 0.75 and all of the following requirements have to be met (Ref. 16.13):

1. The approximate fundamental period of vibration, T_a, as determined by Equation 16.13 in each of the two orthogonal directions, is less than $0.8T_S$, where $T_S = S_{D1}/S_{DS}$.
2. The fundamental period of the structure that is used to calculate the story drift in the two orthogonal directions is less than T_S.
3. The seismic response coefficient, C_S, is determined by Equation 16.9.
4. The diaphragms are rigid or, where diaphragms are considered flexible, the spacing between vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system does not exceed 40 feet.

The FEMA 302 Parts 1 and 2 defined seismic regions as follows in Ref. 16.15:

Region 1: Regions of Negligible Seismicity with Very Low Probability of Collapse of the Structure (No Spectral Values)

Region definition: Regions for which $S_S < 0.25$ g and $S_1 < 0.10$ g from Step 2B.

Design values: No spectral ground motion values required. Use a minimum *lateral* force level of 1% of the dead load for seismic design category A.

Region 2: Regions of Low and Moderate to High Seismicity (Probabilistic Map Values)

Region definition: Regions for which 0.25 g < S_S < 1.5 g and 0.25 g < S_1 < 0.60 g.

Maximum considered earthquake map values: Use S_S and S_1 map values.

Transition Between Regions 2 and 3: Use values of S_S = 1.5 g and S_1 = 0.60 g.

Region 3: Regions of High Seismicity Near Known Faults (Deterministic Values)

Regional definition: Regions for which 1.5 g < S_S and 0.60 g < S_1.

The structural analysis based on the worst-load combinations should be the basis for determining the seismic forces E for combined gravity and seismic load effects when they are additive and the maximum seismic load effect E_m. The value of E and E_m are determined from the following expressions detailed in Ref. 16.2 for additive seismic force and dead load:

$$E = \rho Q_E + 0.2\, S_{DS} D \tag{16.4a}$$

$$E = \Omega_0 Q_E + 0.2\, S_{DS} D \tag{16.4b}$$

For counteracting seismic forces and dead load:

$$E = \rho Q_E - 0.2\, S_{DS} D \tag{16.5a}$$

$$E = \Omega_0 Q_E - 0.2\, S_{DS} D \tag{16.5b}$$

where E = the combined effect of horizontal and vertical earthquake-induced forces,
ρ = a reliability factor based on system redundancy = 1.0 for categories A, B, and C
Q_E = the effect of horizontal seismic forces,
S_{DS} = the spectral response acceleration at short periods obtained from IBC Sec. 1613.5.4,
Ω_0 = System over-strength factor given in Table 16.4

16.2.4 Redundancy

A redundancy coefficient ρ has to be assigned to all structures based on the extent of structural redundancy inherent in the lateral force-resisting system. For structures in seismic design categories A, B, and C, the value of the redundancy coefficient ρ is to be taken as 1.0. For structures in seismic design categories D, E, and F, the redundancy coefficient ρ has to be taken as the largest of the values ρ_1 calculated at each story level "1" of the structure in accordance with the expression

$$\rho_1 = 2 - \frac{20}{r_{\max i}\sqrt{A_i}} \tag{16.6a}$$

In SI units, the expression becomes

$$\rho_1 = 2 - \frac{6.1}{r_{\max i}\sqrt{A_i}} \tag{16.6b}$$

where

$r_{\max i}$ = ratio of the design story shear resisted by the most heavily loaded single element in the story to the total story shear for a given loading condition
A_i = floor area in square feet (m²) of the diaphragm level immediately above the story

The value of ρ cannot be less than 1.0 and need not exceed 1.5.

Table 16.4 Design Coefficients and Factors for Basic Seismic-Force-Resisting Systems (abridged from Ref. 16.4)

Basic Seismic-Force-Resisting System	Response Modification Coefficient R^a	System Overstrength Factor Ω_o^g	Deflection Amplification Factor, c_d^b	System Limitations and Building Height Limitations (ft) by Seismic Design Category[c] as Determined in IBC Section 1616.1				
				A & B	C	D[d]	E[e]	F[e]
Bearing Wall System								
Special reinforced concrete shear wall	5	2.5	5	NL	NL	160	160	100
Ordinary reinforced concrete shear wall	4	2.5	4	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
Detailed plain concrete shear walls	2	2.5	2	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
Ordinary plain concrete shear walls	1.5	2.5	2	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
Ordinary precast shear wall	3	2.5	3	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
Building Frame System								
Ordinary reinforced concrete shear wall	5	2.5	4.5	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
Detailed plain concrete shear walls	2	2.5	2.5	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
Ordinary plain concrete shear walls	1½	2.5	1½	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP
Intermediate precast shear wall	5	2.5	4½	NL	NL	40	40	40
Moment Resistant Frames								
Special reinforced concrete moment frames	8	3	5.5	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
Intermediate reinforced concrete moment frames	5	3	4.5	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
Ordinary reinforced concrete moment frames	3	3	2.5	NL[h]	NP	NP	NP	NP
Dual System with Special Moment Frames								
Special reinforced concrete shear walls	7	2.5	5½	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
Ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	6	2.5	5	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
Special reinforced masonry wall	5½	3	5	NL	NL	NP	NP	ND
Dual System with Intermediate Moment Frames								
Special reinforced concrete shear walls	6½	2.5	5	NL	NL	160	100	100
Ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	5.5	2.5	4.5	NL	NL	NP	NP	NP
Ordinary reinforced masonry shear wall	3	3	2½	NL	160	NP	NP	NP
Shear wall-frame Interactive system with ordinary reinforced concrete moment frames and ordinary reinforced concrete shear walls	4½	2.5	4	NL	NP	NP	NP	NP

For SI, 1 ft = 305 mm

[a]Response modification coefficient, R, for use throughout

[b]Deflection amplification factor, C_d

[c]NL = not limited and NP = not permitted

[d]limited to buildings with a height of 240 feet or less.

[e]limited to buildings with a height of 160 feet or less.

[f]Ordinary moment frame is permitted to be used in lieu of Intermediate moment frame in seismic design categories B, and C.

[g]The tabulated value of the overstrength factor, Ω_o may be reduced by subtracting 1/2 for structures with flexible diaphragms but shall not be taken as less than 2.0 for any structure

[h]Ordinary moment frames of reinforced concrete are not permitted as a part of the seismic-force-resisting system in seismic design category B structures founded on Site Class E or F soils

Hidden page

$$V = C_S W \tag{16.8}$$

where,

C_S = seismic response coefficient

W = The effective seismic weight of the structure, including the total dead loads and other loads listed below:

1. In areas used for storage, a minimum of 25% of the reduced floor live load (floor live load in public garages and open parking structures need not be included).
2. Where an allowance for partition load is included in the floor load design, the actual partition weight or a minimum weight of 10 psf (500 Pa/m²) of floor area, whichever is greater.
3. Total operating weight of permanent equipment.
4. 20% of flat roof snow load where the flat roof snow load exceeds 30 psf.

$$C_S = \frac{S_{DS}}{(R/I)} \tag{16.9}$$

But C_S cannot exceed the value:

$$C_S = \frac{S_{D1}}{\left(\frac{R}{I}\right)T} \tag{16.10}$$

nor can it be taken less than:

$$C_S = 0.044\, S_{DS} \tag{16.11}$$

where,

S_{DS} = Design spectral response acceleration at short period as determined in Sec. 16.2.2

R = Response modification factor from Table 16.4

I = Occupancy importance factor from Table 16.5

T = fundamental period of building (seconds)

For buildings and structures in seismic design categories E or F and in buildings and structures for which the 1-sec spectral response, S_1, is equal to or greater than 0.6 g, the value of the seismic coefficient C_s should not be taken less than:

$$C_S = \frac{0.5 S_1}{R/I} \tag{16.12}$$

The fundamental period T in the direction under consideration has to be determined by analysis basis of the structural and deformational characteristics of the resisting element. In lieu of an analysis, an approximate fundamental period T_a, in seconds, can be used from the following expression:

$$T_a = C_T\, h^{3/4} \tag{16.13}$$

where,

C_T = Building Period Coefficient

- 0.035 for moment resisting frame systems of steel in which the frames resist 100% of the required seismic force and are not enclosed or adjoined by more rigid com-

Table 16.5(a) Occupancy of Buildings and Other Structures for Floods, Wind, Snow, Earthquake and Ice Loads[a]

Nature of Occupancy	Occupancy Category
Buildings and other structures that represent a low hazard to human life in the event of failure, including, but not limited to: • Agricultural facilities • Certain temporary facilities • Minor storage facilities	I
All buildings and other structures except those listed in Occupancy Categories I, III, and IV	II
Buildings and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in life in the event of failure, including, but not limited to: • Buildings and other structures where more than 300 people congregate in one area • Buildings and other structures with daycare facilities with a capacity greater than 150 • Buildings and other structures with elementary school or secondary school facilities with a capacity greater than 250 • Buildings and other structures with a capacity greater than 500 for colleges or adult education facilities • Health care facilities with a capacity of 50 or more resident patients, but not having surgery or emergency treatment facilities • Jail and detention facilities Buildings and other structures, not included in Occupancy Category IV, with potential to cause a substantial economic impact and/or mess disruption of day-to-day civilian life in the event of failure, including, but not limited to: • Power generating stations • Water treatment facilities • Sewage treatment facilities • Telecommunication centers Buildings and other structures not included in Occupancy Category IV (including but not limited to, facilities that manufacture, process, handle, store, use, or dispose of such substances as hazardous fuels, hazardous chemicals, hazardous waste, or explosives) containing sufficient quantities of toxic or explosive substances to be dangerous to the public if released. Buildings and other structures containing toxic or explosive substances shall be eligible for classification as Occupancy Category II structures if it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction to the authority having jurisdiction by a hazard assessment as described in. Section 1.5.2 that a release of the toxic or explosive substances does not pose a threat to the public.	III
Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including, but not limited to: • Hospitals and other health care facilities having surgery or emergency treatment facilities • Fire, rescue, ambulance, and police stations and emergency vehicle garages • Designated earthquake, hurricane, or other emergency shelters • Designated emergency preparedness, communication, and operation centers and other facilities required for emergency response • Power generating stations and other public utility facilities required in an emergency • Ancillary structures (including, but not limited to, communication towers, fuel storage tanks, cooling towers, electrical substation structures, fire water storage tanks or other structures housing or supporting water or other fire-suppression material or equipment) required for operation of Occupancy Category IV structures during an emergency • Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers, and emergency aircraft hangars • Water storage facilities and pump structures required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression • Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions Buildings and other structures (including, but not limited to, facilities that manufacture, process, handle, store, use, or dispose of such substances as hazardous fuels, hazardous chemicals, or hazardous waste) containing highly toxic substances where the quantity of the material exceeds a threshold quantity established by the authority having jurisdiction. Buildings and other structures containing highly toxic substances shall be eligible for classification as Occupancy Category II structures if it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction by a hazard assessment as described in Section 1.5.2 that a release of the highly toxic substances does not pose a threat to the public. This reduced classification shall not be permitted if the buildings or other structures also function as essential facilities.	IV

[a]Reference 16.2.

Table 16.5(b) Importance Factors[a]

Occupancy Category	I
I or II	1.0
III	1.25
IV	1.5

[a]Reference 16.2.

ponents that will prevent the frames from deflecting when subjected to seismic forces (the metric coefficient is 0.085)

- 0.030 for moment resisting frame systems of reinforced concrete in which the frames resist 100% of the required seismic force and are not enclosed or adjoined by more rigid components that will prevent the frames from deflecting when subjected to seismic forces (the metric coefficient is 0.073)
- 0.030 for eccentrically braced steel frames (the metric coefficient is 0.073)
- 0.020 for all other building systems (the metric coefficient is 0.049)

h_x = the height (ft or m) above the base to the highest level of the building.

In cases where moment resisting frames do not exceed twelve stories in height and having a minimum story height of 10 ft (3 m), an approximate period T_a in seconds in the following form can be used:

$$T_a = 0.1\,N \tag{16.14}$$

where N = number of stories

The calculated fundamental period, T, cannot exceed the product of the coefficient, C_u, in Table 16.6 for the upper limit on the calculated period times the approximate fundamental period, T_a. The base shear V is to be based on a fundamental period, T, in seconds, of 1.2 times the coefficient for the upper limit on the calculated value, C_u, taken from Table 16.6 times the approximate fundamental period T_a.

16.3.2 Vertical Distribution of Forces

The lateral force F_x (kips or kN) induced at any level can be determined from the following expressions:

$$F_x = C_{vx}V \tag{16.15a}$$

$$C_{vx} = \frac{W_x h_x^k}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} W_i h_i^k} \tag{16.15b}$$

Table 16.6 Coefficient for Upper Limit on Calculated Period

Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period, S_{D1}	Coefficient C_u
≥ 0.4	1.2
0.3	1.3
0.2	1.4
0.15	1.5
≤ 0.1	1.7

where

C_{vx} = vertical distribution factor

V = total design lateral force or shear at the base of the building (kips or kN)

W_i and W_x = the portion of the total gravity load of the building, W, located or assigned to Level i or x

h_i and h_x = the height (ft or m) from the base to level i or x and

k = a distribution exponent related to the building period as follows:

- For buildings having a period of 0.5 sec or less, $k = 1$
- For buildings having a period of 2.5 sec or more, $k = 2$
- For buildings having a period between 0.5 and 2.5 sec, k shall be 2 or shall be determined by linear interpolation between 1 and 2

16.3.3 Horizontal Distribution of Story Shear V_x

The seismic design story horizontal shear in any story, V_x (kips or kN) should be determined from the following expression:

$$V_x = \sum_{i=1}^{x} F_i \tag{16.16}$$

where

F_i = the portion of the seismic base shear, V (kips or kN) introduced at level i.

16.3.4 Rigid and Flexible Diaphragms

(a) *Rigid diaphragms:* The seismic design story shear, V_x, has to be distributed to the various vertical elements of the system in the story under consideration. This distribution is to be based on the relative stiffness of the vertical resisting elements and the diaphragms.

(b) *Flexible Diaphragms:* The seismic design story shear, V_x, in this case has to be distributed to the various vertical elements based on the tributary area of the diaphragms to each line of resistance. The vertical elements of the lateral force resisting system can be considered to be in the same line of resistance, if the maximum out of plane offset between such elements is less than 5% of the building's dimension *perpendicular* to the direction of the lateral load.

16.3.5 Torsion

If the diagrams are not flexible, the design has to include the torsional moment M_t (ft-Kip of kN-m) resulting from the difference in location between the center of mass and the center of stiffness. Dynamic amplification of torsion for structures in seismic design category C, D, E, or F has to be accounted for by multiplying the torsional moments by a torsional amplification factor presented in Ref. 16.2, Sec. 16.17.4.

16.3.6 Story Drift and the P-Delta Effect

(a) *Drift:* The design story drift, Δ, is computed as the difference between the deflections of the center of mass at the top and bottom of the story being considered. If allowable stress design is used, Δ is computed using earthquake forces without dividing by 1.4.

Hidden page

Table 16.7 Allowable Story Drift, Δ (in. or mm)[a,b,c,d,e]

Structure	Occupancy Category I or II	III	IV
Structures, other than masonry shear walls structures, four sorties or less with interior walls, partitions, ceilings and exterior wall systems that have been designed to accommodate the story drifts.	$0.25h_{sx}$[c]	$0.020h_{sx}$	$0.015h_{sx}$
Masonry cantilever shear wall structures[d]	$0.010h_{sx}$	$0.010h_{sx}$	$0.010h_{sx}$
Other masonry shear wall structures	$0.007h_{sx}$	$0.007h_{sx}$	$0.007h_{sx}$
All other structures	$0.020h_{sx}$	$0.015h_{sx}$	$0.010h_{sx}$

[a] h_{sx} is the story height below Level X.

[b] For seismic force-resisting systems comprised solely of moment frames in seismic design categories D, E, and F, the allowable story drift shall comply with the requirements of ASCE 7-05 Section 12.12.1.1.

[c] There shall be no drift limit for single-story structures with interior walls, partitions, ceilings, and exterior wall systems that have been designed to accommodate the story drifts. The structure separation requirement of ASCE 7-05 Section 12.12.3 is not waived.

[d] Structure in which the basic structural system consists of masonry shear walls designed as vertical elements cantilevered from their base or foundation support which are so constructed that moment transfer between shear walls (coupling) is negligible.

[e] Refs. 16.2, 16.4.

various vertical force-resisting elements, in the same proportion as the distribution of the horizontal shear forces to these elements. The overturning moment at level x, M_x (kip-ft or kN-m), is determined from the following expression:

$$M_x = \tau \sum_{i=x}^{n} F_i(h_i - h_x) \tag{16.19}$$

where,

F_i = Portion of the seismic base shear, V, induced at level i

h_i and h_x = Height (ft or m) from the base to the level i or x

τ = overturning moment reduction factor

= 1.0 for the top 10 stories

= 0.8 for the 20th story from the top and below

= values between 1.0 and 0.8 determined by a straight line interpolation for stories between the 20th and 10th stories below the top.

16.4 SIMPLIFIED ANALYSIS PROCEDURE FOR SEISMIC DESIGN OF BUILDINGS

This procedure can be used for structures in seismic use group I, subject to the following limitations, otherwise either the method in sec. 16.2 or this section has to be used.

1. Buildings of light-framed construction not exceeding *three* stories in height, excluding basement.
2. Buildings of any construction other than light framed, not exceeding two stories in height, excluding basement.

The seismic base shear, V, can be computed from the following expression,

$$V = \frac{1.2S_{DS}}{R} W \tag{16.20}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

16.5 OTHER ASPECTS IN SEISMIC DESIGN

The discussion presented in the previous sections is intended only to highlight the most important basic considerations for establishing the seismic basic shear force values and their distribution over the height of a structure, at all story levels. The scope of this book does not permit more coverage of other essential topics such as modeling, model forces, deflections and drifts, diaphragms, coupling beams, interconnecting shear walls, connections, irregularity of structures, out-of-plane loading, and torsion and foundations.

Through a careful review of the details presented, the numerical examples and solving the assignments, the reader becomes well equipped to handle the design requirement aspects of the topics listed. The International Building Code—IBC 2006's (Ref. 16.2) detailed provisions give all the additional provisions and guidance needed for safe complete designs of concrete structures that can successfully resist severe earthquakes. The ensuing sections will present ACI 318-08 code provisions for proportioning and detailing of reinforced concrete elements that can withstand seismic loading through conformity with the IBC 2006 requirements.

16.6 FLEXURAL DESIGN OF BEAMS AND COLUMNS

Moment-resisting ductile frames of reinforced concrete structures are designed for strength and ductility. During a strong earthquake, it is anticipated that the critical regions of frame members will develop plastic hinges to dissipate seismically induced energy. In a well-designed frame structure, the energy dissipation occurs in the plastic hinges that form at the ends of the beams, while the columns remain elastic and provide overall strength and stability to the stories above. This can be achieved if the sequence of plastification in the structure can be controlled.

In an effort to control the seismic response of structures, the ACI 318-05 building code calls for "strong columns and weak beams," although it may be difficult to prevent hinging of the lower-story columns. All the potential hinging regions are required to be detailed by special confining reinforcement for improved ductility and energy absorption capacity.

16.6.1 Seismic Shear Forces in Beams and Columns

Shear failure in reinforced concrete members is regarded as brittle failure. Therefore, in designing earthquake-resistant structures, it is important to provide excess shear capacity over and above that corresponding to flexural failure. The ACI 318-05 requirements are based on the strong column–weak beam concept subsequently discussed. Hence plastification of the critical regions at the ends of the beams will have to be considered as a possible loading condition.

The shear force is then computed based on the moment resistances in the developed plastic hinges, labeled as probable moment resistance M_{pr}, developed when the longitudinal flexural steel enters into the hardening stage. Consequently, the computation of the probable moment resistance, $1.25f_y$, is used as the stress in the longitudinal reinforcement. In order to absorb the energy that can cause plastic hinging, the earthquake-resistant frame has to be ductile in part through confinement of the longitudinal reinforcement of the columns and the beam–column joints and in part through the provision of the excess shear capacity previously discussed.

Figure 16.5 shows the deformed geometry of and the moment and shear forces for a beam subjected to gravity loading and reversible sidesway. If the intensity of gravity load is w_u, then ACI 318-05 stipulates

$$w_u = 1.2D + 1.0L + 1.4E \tag{16.22a}$$

@Seismicisolation

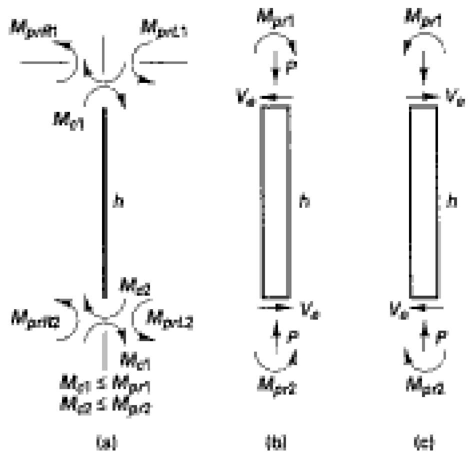


Figure 16.6a Seismic moments and shears at column ends: (a) joint moments; (b) sway to right; (c) sway to left.

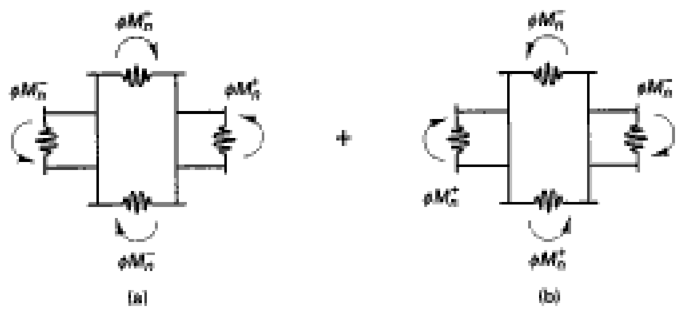
The shear forces in the columns are computed in a similar manner, so the horizontal V_e at top and bottom of the column is

$$V_e = \frac{M_{pr1} + M_{pr2}}{h} \tag{16.24}$$

except that end moments for columns (M_{pr1} and M_{pr2}) need not be greater than the moments generated by the M_{pr} of beams framing into the beam–column joint. h = column height, and the subscripts 1 and 2 indicate the top and bottom column end moments, respectively, as seen in Figure 16.6.

16.6.2 Strong Column–Weak Beam Concept

As previously stated, U.S. seismic codes require that earthquake-induced energy be dissipated by plastic hinging of the beams, rather than the columns. This hypothesis is due to the fact that compression members such as columns have lower ductility than flexure-dominant beams. If columns are not stronger than beams framing into a joint, inelastic action can develop in the column. Furthermore, the consequence of a column failure is far more severe than a local beam failure. Therefore, the ACI 318-08 Code as well as the



$$(\phi M_n^+ + \phi M_n^-)_{col} \ge \left(\tfrac{6}{5}\right)(\phi M_n^+ + \phi M_n^-)_{bm}$$

Figure 16.6b Seismic moment summation at beam–column joint: (a) sidesway to left; (b) sidesway to right.

IBC stipulate "strong columns and weak beams." This is ensured by the following inequality:

$$\Sigma M_{nc} \geq \left(\frac{6}{5}\right) \Sigma M_{nb} \tag{16.25}$$

where ΣM_{nc} = sum of nominal flexural strength of columns framing into joint, calculated for factored axial forces consistent with the direction of forces considered, resulting in lowest flexural strength.

ΣM_{nb} = sum of moments at the faces of the joint corresponding to the nominal flexural strengths of the beams framing into that joint. In T-beam construction, where the slab is in tension under moments at the face of the joint, slab reinforcement within the effective slab width has to be assumed to contribute to flexural strength if the slab reinforcement is developed at the critical section for flexure.

For a joint subjected to reversible base shear forces, as shown in Fig. 16.6b, Eq. 16.25 becomes

$$(\phi M_n^+ + \phi M_n^-)_{col} \geq \frac{6}{5}(\phi M_n^+ + \phi M_n^-)_{bm} \tag{16.26}$$

where $\phi = 0.90$ for beams, 0.65 for tied columns, and 0.75 for spiral columns. For beam–columns, $\phi = 0.90$ to 0.65.

16.7 SEISMIC DETAILING REQUIREMENTS FOR BEAMS AND COLUMNS

Members in frames designed for seismic regions can be classified into two categories for proportioning transverse reinforcement as follows:

1. Members with factored axial compressive force P_u not exceeding $(A_g f'_c/10)$ are treated as beams.
2. Members with factored axial compressive force P_u greater than $(A_g f'_c/10)$ are treated as columns.

16.7.1 Longitudinal Reinforcement

1. In seismic design, when the factored axial load P_u is negligible or significantly less than $A_g f'_c/10$, the member is considered a flexural member (beam). If $P_u > A_g f'_c/10$, the member is considered a beam–column, because it is subjected to both axial and flexural loads as columns and shear walls are.
2. The shortest cross-sectional dimension ≥ 12 in. (300 mm).
3. The limitation on the longitudinal reinforcement ratio in the beam–column element is $0.01 \leq \rho_g = A_s/A_g \leq 0.06$. For practical considerations, an upper limitation of 6% is too excessive, because it results in impractical congestion of longitudinal reinforcement. A practical maximum total percentage ρ_g of 3.5% to 4.0% should be a reasonable limit.
4. A minimum percentage of longitudinal reinforcement in flexural members (beams) is
   (a) For sections requiring tensile reinforcement

$$\rho \geq \frac{3\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} \geq \frac{200}{f_y} \leq 0.025 \tag{16.27a}$$

Photo 16.6 Column localized damage in a high-rise frame building, Los Angeles 1994 earthquake. (Courtesy Portland Cement Association.)

(b) For statically determinate T-sections with flanges in tension

$$\rho \geq \frac{6\sqrt{f'_c}}{f_y} \geq \frac{200}{f_y} \leq 0.025 \tag{16.27b}$$

But under no condition should ρ exceed 0.025. The stresses f'_c and f_y in these expressions are in psi units. All reinforcement has to be continued through the joint. At least two bars have to be continuously provided both at top and bottom.

5. Beams should have at least two of the longitudinal bars continued along both the top and the bottom faces. These bars should be developed at the face of the support.

6. Columns having clear height-to-maximum-plan-dimension ratio of *five* or less should be designed in shear such that not less than the smaller of (a) and (b) :

(a) The sum of the shear associated with development of nominal moment strengths of the member at each restrained end of the clear span and the shear calculated for factored gravity loads

(b) The maximum shear obtained from design load combinations that include modulus E, with E assumed to be twice the modulus prescribed by the governing code for earthquake-resistant design

7. Where design forces have been magnified to account for overstrength of the vertical elements of a seismic-force-resisting system, the limit of $(A_g f'_c/10)$ should be changed to $(A_g f'_c/4)$ and the transverse reinforcement should extend into the discontinued member for at least a distance l_d of the largest longitudinal column bar required in the design.

8. Columns supporting reactions from discontinuous stiff members, such as walls, should be provided with transverse reinforcement at a spacing, s_o, over the full height beneath the level at which the discontinuity occurs if portion of the factored axial compressive force in these members related to earthquake effects exceeded $(A_g f'_c/10)$. Where design forces have been magnified to account for overstrength of the vertical elements of the service-force-resisting system, the limit of $(A_g f'_c/10)$ should be changed to $(A_g f'_c/4)$ according to the ACI 318-08 Code. This transverse reinforcement should extend above and below the column as stipulated in this chapter.
9. Main reinforcement should be chosen on the basis of the strong column–weak beam concept of the ACI Code:

$$\Sigma M_{nc} \geq \frac{6}{5} \Sigma M_{nb}.$$

10. The nominal moment strength requirements are
    (a) M_n^+ at joint face $\geq {}^1/_2 M_n^-$ at that face.
    (b) Neither the negative nor the positive moment strength at *any* section along the span can be less than *one-quarter* the maximum moment strength provided at the face of either joint. Hence at joint face

$$M_n^+ \geq \frac{1}{2} M_n^- \tag{16.28a}$$

At any section,

$$M_n^+ \geq \frac{1}{4} (M_n^-)_{\max} \tag{16.28b}$$

$$M_n^- \geq \frac{1}{4} (M_n^-)_{\max} \tag{16.28c}$$

11. For coupling beams with aspect ratio $l_n/h < 2$, and with factored shear force V_u exceeding $(4\sqrt{f'_c}\, A_{cp})$ has to be reinforced with *two* intersecting groups of diagonally placed bars, symmetrical about the midspan, where A_{cp} = area of concrete-resisting shear.
12. Prestressing steel should be unbonded in potential plastic hinge regions. The calculated strain in the prestressing steel under the design displacement procedure should be less than 1%.
13. Prestressing steel should not contribute to more than one-quarter of the positive and negative flexural strength at the critical section in a plastic hinge region and should be anchored at or beyond the external face of the joint.

16.7.2 Transverse Confining Reinforcement

Transverse reinforcement in the form of closely spaced hoops (ties) or spirals has to be adequately provided. The aim is to produce adequate rotational capacity within the elastic hinges that may develop as a result of the seismic forces.

1. For column spirals, the minimum volumetric ratio of the spiral hoops needed for the concrete core confinement cannot be less than the larger of:

$$\rho_s \geq \frac{0.12 f'_c}{f_{yt}} \tag{16.29a}$$

or

$$\rho_s \geq 0.45\left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1\right)\frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}} \tag{16.29b}$$

whichever is greater, where

ρ_s = ratio of volume of spiral reinforcement to the core volume measured out-to-out
A_g = gross area of the column section
A_{ch} = core area of section measured to the outside of the transverse reinforcement (in.^{2})
f_{yt} = specified yield strength of transverse reinforcement, psi

2. For column rectangular hoops, the total cross-sectional area within spacing s cannot be less than the larger of:

$$A_{sh} \geq 0.09sb_c \frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}} \qquad (16.30a)$$

or

$$A_{sh} \geq 0.3sb_c\left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1\right)\frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}} \qquad (16.30b)$$

whichever is greater, where

A_{sh} = total cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement (including cross ties) within spacing s and perpendicular to dimension h_c
b_c = cross-sectional dimension of member core measured c–c of confining reinforcement as in Figure 16.7, in.
h_x = maximum horizontal spacing of hoops or cross-ties on all faces of the column, in.
A_{ch} = cross-sectional area of structural member, measured out-to-out transverse reinforcement
s = spacing of transverse reinforcement measured along the longitudinal axis of the member, in.
s_o = longitudinal spacing of transverse reinforcement within length ℓ_o, in.
s_{max} = one-quarter of the smallest cross-sectional dimension of the member, 6 times diameter of longitudinal reinforcement. Also, $S_x = 4 + (14 - h_x)/3$.
where $s_x \leq$ longitudinal spacing of the transverse reinforcement within length ℓ_o. Its value should not exceed 6 in. and need not be taken less than 4 in.

Additionally, if the thickness of the concrete outside the confining transverse reinforcement exceeds 4 in., additional transverse reinforcement has to be provided at a spacing not to exceed 12 in. The concrete cover on the additional reinforcement should not exceed 4 in.

3. The confining transverse reinforcement in *columns* should be placed on *both* sides of a potential hinge over a distance ℓ_o. The largest of the following three conditions governs the length ℓ_o:

(a) depth of member at joint face
(b) one-sixth of the clear span
(c) 18 in. Increase ℓ_o by 50% or more in locations of high axial loads and flexural demands such as the base of a building.

When transverse reinforcement is not provided throughout the column length, the remainder of the column length has to contain spiral or hoop reinforcement with spacing not exceeding the smaller of 6 times the diameter of the longitudinal bars or 6 in.

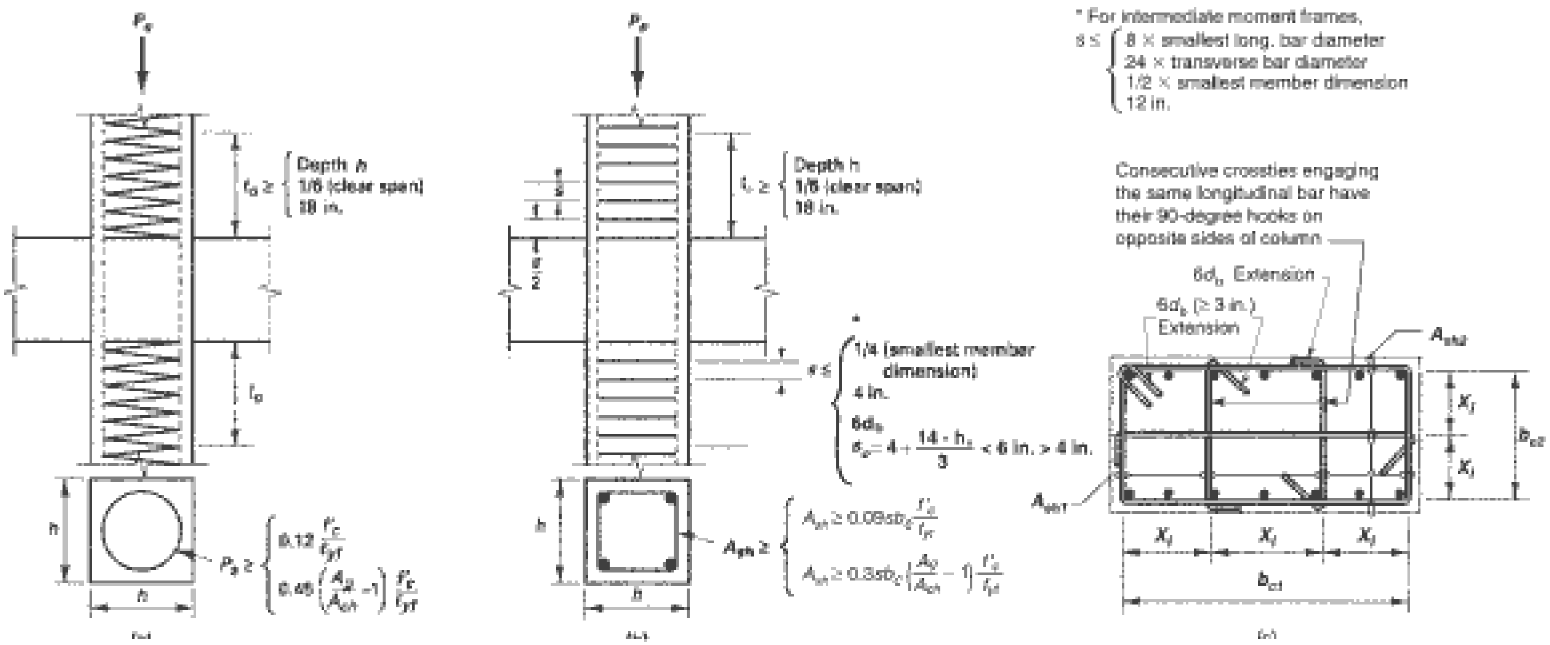


Figure 16.7 Typical detailing of seismically reinforced column: (a) spirally confined; (b) confined with rectangular hoops; (3) cross-sectional detailing of ties. Consecutive cross ties should have 90° hooks on opposite sides.

4. For beam confinement, the confining transverse reinforcement at *beam* ends should be placed over a length equal to *twice* the member depth h from the face of the joint on either side or of any other location where plastic hinges can develop. The maximum hoop spacing should be the smallest of the following four conditions:
   - **(a)** One-fourth effective depth d
   - **(b)** $8 \times$ diameter of longitudinal bars
   - **(c)** $24 \times$ diameter of the hoop
   - **(d)** 12 in. (300 mm)

   IBC Sec. 1908.1.19, however, requires that confining reinforcement spacing not exceed 4.0 in.

   Figure 16.7 (Ref. 16.8) summarizes typical detailing requirements for a confined column.
5. Reduction in confinement at joints: a 50% reduction in confinement and an increase in the minimum tie spacing to 6 in. are allowed by the ACI Code if a joint is confined on all *four* faces by adjoining beams with each beam wide enough to cover three-quarters of the adjoining face.
6. The yield strength of reinforcement in seismic zones should not exceed 60,000 psi.
7. When concrete cover exceeds 4 in., additional transverse reinforcement should be added.

16.8 HORIZONTAL SHEAR IN BEAM–COLUMN CONNECTIONS (JOINTS)

Test of joints and deep beams have shown that shear strength is not as sensitive to joint (shear) reinforcement as for that along the span. On this basis, the ACI Code has assumed the joint strength as a function of only the compressive strength of the concrete and requires a minimum amount of transverse reinforcement in the joint. The effective area A_j in Figure 16.8 from the ACI 318 Commentary should in no case be greater than the column cross-sectional area.

The minimal shear strength of the joint should not be taken greater than the forces V_n specified below for normal-weight concrete.

1. Confined on all faces by beams framing into the joint:

$$V_n \leq 20\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_j \tag{16.31a}$$

2. Confined on three faces or on two opposite faces:

$$V_n \leq 15\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_j \tag{16.31b}$$

3. All other cases:

$$V_n \leq 12\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_j \tag{16.31c}$$

A framing beam is considered to provide confinement to the joint only if at least three-quarters of the joint is covered by the beam.

The value of allowable V_n should be reduced by 25% if lightweight concrete is used. Also, test data indicate that the value of Eq. 16.31c is unconservative when applied to corner joints. A_j = effective cross-sectional area within a joint, as in Figure 16.8, in a plane parallel to the plane of reinforcement generating shear at the joint. The ACI Code assumes that the horizontal shear in the joint is determined on the basis that the stress in the flexural tensile steel = $1.25f_y$. Figure 16.9 shows the forces acting on a beam–column

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

frame elements and thus can respond to or absorb greater lateral forces induced by the earthquake motions, while controlling interstory drift.

16.9.1 Forces and Reinforcement in Shear Walls and Diaphragms

Shear walls, that is, structural walls, with height-to-depth ratio in excess of 2.0 essentially act as vertical cantilever beams. As a result, their strength is determined by flexure rather than by shear.

Flexural considerations:

(a) Displacement-based Approach: For walls or piers continuous in cross-section from the base of the structure to the top of the wall and designed to have a single critical section for flexure and axial loads, the compressive zones have to be reinforced with boundary elements with a geometry defined as follows:

$$c \geq \frac{l_w}{600(\delta_u / h_w)} \tag{16.33a}$$

but that δ_u / h_w is taken not less than 0.007. The reinforcement has to extend vertically along the wall a distance not less than the larger of l_w or $M_u / 4V_u$ from the critical section.

c = distance from the extreme compression fibers to the neural axis calculated from the factored axial force and nominal moment strength.

h_w = height of entire wall.

δ_u = design placement.

(b) Stress-based Approach: This alternative design procedure requires that boundary elements have to be provided whenever the extreme fiber compressive stresses exceed 0.20 f'_c. The boundary elements have to extend along the vertical boundaries of the entire wall and around the edges of openings. They can be discontinued where the calculated compressive stress is less than 0.15 f'_c. The stresses are calculated for factored forces using a linearly elastic model and gross-section properties.

Note that when boundary elements are required, the wall is essentially detailed in a similar manner in both approaches.

Shear considerations:

If the shear wall is subjected to factored in-plane seismic shear forces $V_{uh} > A_{cv}\sqrt{f'_c}$, then it should be reinforced with a reinforcement percentage $\rho_v \geq 0.0025$. Spacing of the reinforcement each way should not exceed 18 in. c to c. If $V_{uh} < A_{cv}\sqrt{f'_c}$, the reinforcement percentage can be reduced to 0.0012 for No. 5 bars or less in diameter and 0.0015 for larger deformed bar sizes. Reinforcement provided for shear strength has to be continuous and distributed across the shear plane.

At least two curtains of reinforcement are needed in the wall if the in-plane factored shear forces exceed a value of $2\lambda A_{cv}\sqrt{f'_c}$.

$\rho_t = A_{sv}/A_{cv}$

A_{cv} = net area of concrete cross section = thickness × length of section in direction of shear considered

A_{sv} = projection on A_{cv} of area of distributed shear reinforcement crossing the plane of A_{cv}

The nominal shear strength V_n of structural walls and diaphragms of high-rise buildings with aspect ratio greater than 2 should not exceed the shear force calculated from

$$V_n = A_{cv}(2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} + \rho_t f_y) \tag{16.33b}$$

where ρ_n = ratio of distributed shear reinforcement on a plane perpendicular to the plane of A_{cv}.

Hidden page

16.9.2 Coupling Beams

Coupling beams are structural elements connecting structural walls to provide additional stiffness and energy dissipation. In many cases, geometrical limits result in coupling beams whose depth to clear span ratio is high (Ref. 16.1, 16.2). Hence, they can be controlled by shear and subjected to strength and stiffness deterioration in earthquakes. To reduce the extent of the deterioration, the span to depth ratio l_n/d is limited to a value of 4.0 except in cases of special moment frames in which the width to depth ratio cannot be less than 0.30. Coupling beams should only be used in locations where damage to them would not impair the vertical load carrying capacity of the structure or the integrity of the non-structural components and their connection to the structure (Ref 16.1).

If the factored shear force V_u exceeds $4\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_{cw}$, two intersecting groups of diagonally placed bars symmetrical about the midspan have to be used. This requirement can be waived if it can be demonstrated that their stiffness and stiffness loss does not impair the vertical load carrying capacity of the structure. The nominal shear strength, V_n, is determined from the following expression:

$$V_n = 2\,A_{vd} f_y \sin\alpha \leq 10\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_{cw} \tag{16.34}$$

where A_{cw} is the cross-sectional area of the beam, and A_{vd} is the total area of reinforcement in each group of diagonally reinforced coupling beams. α = angle between the diagonally placed bars and the longitudinal axis of the coupling beam.

Coupling beams, when reinforced with intersecting groups of diagonally placed bars, each group has to consist of a minimum of four bars provided in two or more layers. The diagonal bars have to be embedded into the wall not less than 1.25 times the development length l_d for steel yield strength f_y in tension. Each group of the diagonal bars has to be enclosed in transverse reinforcement having out-to-out dimensions not smaller than $b_w/2$ parallel to b_w and $b_w/5$ in all other sides. The transverse reinforcement should have spacing measured parallel to the diagonal bars not exceeding six times the diameter of the diagonal bar but not exceeding 6 inches along the entire length of the longitudinal bar. The nominal shear is determined from the expression in Equation 16.34, namely,

$$V_n = 2\,A_{vd}\,f_y \sin\alpha \leq 10\,\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_{cw}$$

In the case of structural diaphragms, the nominal shear in the diaphragm is limited to $V_n \leq 8\,A_{cv}\,\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}$ where A_{cv} = gross area of the concrete section bound by the web thickness and length of section in direction of the shear force (in.^{2}).

A typical illustration of a diagonally reinforced coupling beam is shown in Figure 16.12. The diagonally placed bars have to be developed in tension within the wall and also considered to contribute to the nominal flexural strength of the coupling beam.

16.10 DESIGN PROCEDURE FOR EARTHQUAKE-RESISTANT STRUCTURES

Figure 16.13 gives a logic flowchart for the following operational steps.

1. Determine the earthquake seismicity region, namely whether it is in a low, moderate, or high seismicity region and the site classification (A, B, C, D, E, and F) from Table 16.1.
2. Determine from the maximum considered earthquake ground motion maps, the maximum spectral response S_S for 0.2 sec. And S_1 for 1 sec., site class B, Figure 16.3a and b respectively, or from the latest FEMA maps of USGS (Ref. 16.15).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Photo 16.8 NCNB Tower, Charlotte, North Carolina, 9000-psi concrete. (Courtesy Portland Cement Association.)

(b) *Rectangular hoops in columns:* Total cross sectional within spacing *s:*

$$A_{sh} \geq 0.09 s b_c \frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$$

$$\geq 0.3 s b_c \left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1 \right) \frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$$

whichever is greater.

A_{sh} = total cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement (including cross ties) within spacing s and perpendicular to dimension h_c

b_c = cross-sectional dimension of column core, in.

s = spacing of transverse hoops

s_{max} = one-quarter of the smallest cross-sectional dimension, should not exceed 6 in. or be less than 4 in., whichever is smallest

Placement of confining reinforcement: Place confining reinforcement on either side of potential hinge over a distance the largest of

(i) Depth of member at joint face
(ii) One-sixth clear span
(iii) 18 in.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Equation 16.28a:

$$\text{At joint face:} \quad M_n^+ \geq \frac{1}{2} M_n^-$$

At any section:

$$M_n^+ \geq \frac{1}{4} (M_n^-)_{\max}$$

$$M_n^- \geq \frac{1}{4} (M_n^-)_{\max}$$

Equation 16.29a: $\rho_s \geq 0.12 \dfrac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$

or Eq. 16.29b: $\rho_s \geq 0.45 \left(\dfrac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1 \right) \dfrac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$, whichever is greater

Equation 16.30a: $A_{sh} \geq 0.09 s h_c \dfrac{f'_c}{f_{yh}}$

or Equation 16.30b: $A_{sh} \geq 0.3\, s h_c \left(\dfrac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1 \right) \dfrac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$, whichever is greater

(same stipulations for max s as in Section 15.5.2).

Equation 16.31a: $V_n \leq 1.7 \sqrt{f'_c}\, A_j$

Equation 16.31b: $V_n \leq 1.25 \sqrt{f'_c}\, A_j$

Equation 16.31c: $V_n \leq 1.0 \sqrt{f'_c}\, A_j$

Stress in the flexural reinforcement at the joint has to be taken as $1.25 f_y$ (see Fig. 15.9).

Equation 16.32a: $$\ell_{dh} = \frac{f_y d_b}{5.4 \sqrt{f'_c}}$$

for bar sizes No. 10 M through No. 35 M.

$\ell_d = 2.5 \ell_{dh}$, when concrete depth below bar cast in one lift $\leq$ 300 mm
$\ell_d = 3.5 \ell_{dh}$, when $\geq$ 300 mm

Equation 16.33b: $$V_n = A_{cv} \left[\frac{\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}}{6} + \rho_n f_y \right]$$

For walls or diaphragms with $h_w/\ell_w < 2.0$,

$$V_n = A_{cv}(\alpha_c \lambda \sqrt{f'_c} + \rho_n f_y)$$

where α_c varies linearly from 3.0 for $h_w/\ell_w = 1.5$ to 2.0 for $h_w/\ell_w = 2.0$.

Modulus of rupture: $f_r = 0.7 \sqrt{f'_c}$.

$$V_c \text{ for beams} = \lambda \left(1 + \frac{N_u}{14 A_g} \right) \frac{\lambda \sqrt{f'_c}}{6} b_w d \text{ when seismic force is not applicable;}$$

λ = type of concrete factors.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

From Eq. 16.11, C_S cannot be less than

$$C_S = 0.044\, S_{DS} = 0.044 \times 0.567 = 0.025$$

Hence, $C_S = 0.184$ sec. controls.
$\therefore$ Base Shear $V = C_S W = C_S\,(5W_S) = 0.184 \times 5\, W_S = 0.92\, W_S$

(b) Vertical Distribution of Forces and Overturning Moments:

From Eqs. 16.15 (a) and (b), the lateral force induced at any story level is:

$$F_x = C_{vx}\, V$$

where,

$$C_{vx} = \frac{W_x h_x^k}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} W_i h_i^k}$$

$$k = \frac{0.63 - 0.50}{2.50 - 0.50} \times 1.0 + 1.0 = 1.07 \text{ (by linear interpolation)}$$

Since h is constant for all the floors, C_{vx} becomes $\dfrac{W_x}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} W_i}$ where $i = 5$ at the top floor.

$$\sum_{i=1}^{x} W_i = 1W_s + 2W_s + 3W_s + 4W_s + 5W_s = 15W_s$$

$$\text{Lateral force} \quad F_x = C_{vx}\, V = 0.92\, C_i\, W_s$$

$$\text{Overturning moment from Eq. 16.19 is} \quad M_x = \tau \sum_{i=x}^{n} F_i (h_i - h_x)$$

for the top ten stories, overturning moment reduction factor $\tau = 1.0$.

$$\text{Hence} \quad M_x = \sum_{i=x}^{n} F_i (h_i - h_x)$$

Computing and tabulating the story forces F_i and the overturning moment M_i for all stories in the following table:

Floor	C_i	Lateral force $F_i = 0.92 W_s C_i$	Story Shear	Story Moment
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
5	$C_5 = \frac{5W_s}{15W_s} = 0.333$	$0.3064W_s$	0	0
4	$C_4 = \frac{4}{15} = 0.267$	$0.2456W_s$	$0.3064W_s$	$0.3064W_s h$
3	$C_3 = \frac{3}{15} = 0.200$	$0.1840W_s$	$0.5520W_s$	$0.8584W_s h$
2	$C_2 = \frac{2}{15} = 0.133$	$0.1224W_s$	$0.7360W_s$	$1.5944W_s h$
1	$C_1 = \frac{1}{15} = 0.067$	$0.0616W_s$	$0.8584W_s$	$2.4528W_s h$
Wall base	$C_0 = 0$	0	$0.9200W_s$	$3.3728W_s h$

Hence seismic base shear $V = 0.920W_s$. The moments at each story level are tabulated in column (5).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

@Seismicisolation

2. ***Beam transverse confining reinforcement in the inelastic zone of plastic hinging***
From Eq. 16.23

$$V_L = \frac{M_A + M_B}{\ell_n} + \left(\frac{1.2D + 1.6L}{2}\right) \times \frac{1}{\phi}$$

$$= \frac{4{,}400{,}000 + 4{,}400{,}000}{24 \times 12} + \left(\frac{1.2 \times 35{,}000 + 1.6 \times 60{,}000}{2}\right) \times \frac{1}{0.75}$$

$$= 30{,}555 + 92{,}000 = 122{,}555 \text{ lb } (540 \text{ kN})$$

$$V_c = 2\sqrt{f'_c}\, b_w d = 2\sqrt{4000} \times 12 \times 21.5 = 32{,}634 \text{ lb } (165 \text{ kN})$$

Note that V_c can be assumed zero under certain ACI 318-05 Code Sec. 21.3.4.2 conditions.
V_u at d from face of support is

$$V_u = 122{,}555\left(\frac{12 - 21.5/12}{12}\right) = 104{,}257 \text{ lb } (464 \text{ kN})$$

$$V_s = V_u - V_c = 104{,}257 - 32{,}634 = 71{,}623 \text{ lb } (319 \text{ kN})$$

Try No. 4 hoop, $A_v = 2 \times 0.20 = 0.40$ in.^{2}

$$s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{V_s} = \frac{0.40 \times 60{,}000 \times 21.5}{71{,}623} = 7.20 \text{ in. } (183 \text{ mm})$$

Maximum allowable spacing within a distance $2h = 2 \times 24 = 48$ in. is: $d/4 = 21.5/4 = 5.4$ in.; $8 \times$ smallest longitudinal bar $= 8 \times 1.0 = 8$ in.; $24 \times$ dia of hoop $= 24 \times 0.5 = 12$ in.; max. 12 in.; IBC requirement (Sec. 1908.1.19) for maximum hoop spacing in beams = 4 in. (controlls). Use No. 4 confining hoops at 4 in. c. to c. Place the confining hoops in the beam over a distance $\ell_o = 2h = 2 \times 24 = 48$ in. (1219 mm).

Use $\ell_o = 48$ in., spacing the No. 4 hoops and crossties at 4 in. c-c over this distance.

Use No. 4 closed hoops at 7 in c-c beyond critical section. Increase s to $d/2 = 10.75$ in., say 10 in. c-c, as the midspan is approached. Stop stirrups at $V_c/2$. See Chapter 6 for computational steps.

3. ***Confining reinforcement in the column at beam–column joint:*** From Eqs. 16.29(a) and (b)

(a) Joint Shear Strength
Column horizontal shear forces should not exceed those based on the probable beam end moment strengths M_{pr} of the beams framing into the joint.

$$\text{Hence,}\quad V_{col} = \frac{\text{Probable } M_{pr}}{h_1/2 + h_2/2} = \frac{4{,}400{,}000}{(6.0 + 6.0)12} = 30{,}555 \text{ lb } (136 \text{ kN})$$

$$V_u \text{ at each joint} = A_s f_y - V_{col} = 3.16 \times 60{,}000 - 30{,}555$$
$$= 159{,}845 \text{ lb } (707 \text{ kN})$$

From Eq. 16.30b,

$$\text{allowable } V_n \text{ within column joint} \le 15\lambda\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_j, \quad A_j = 15 \times 24 = 360 \text{ in.}^2\ (232{,}000 \text{ mm}^2)$$

$$\text{allowable } V_n = 15\sqrt{4000} \times 360 = 351{,}526 \text{ lb } (1519 \text{ kN})$$

> actual $V_n = 159{,}845$ lb, O.K.
Hence, the confined column joint is adequate to resist the seismic shear.

(b) Column Confinement in the Inelastic Zone
Col

At the A_g plane, $V_c = 2\sqrt{4000} \times 15 \times 21.5 = 40{,}790$ lb

$$V_s = 159{,}845 - 40{,}790 = 119{,}055 \text{ lb (530 kN)}$$

$$s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{V_s} = \frac{0.40 \times 60{,}000 \times 21.5}{119{,}055} = 4.33 \text{ in (110 mm)}$$

$$A_{sh} \geq 0.09 s b_c \frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$$

or

$$A_{sh} \geq 0.3 s b_c \left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1\right)\frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$$

whichever is greater.

$$b_c = \text{column core dimension} = 24 - 2(1.5 + 0.5) = 20 \text{ in.}$$

Trying $s = 3\frac{1}{2}$ in.

$$A_{sh} = 0.09 \times 3.5 \times 20\left(\frac{4000}{60{,}000}\right) = 0.42 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_{sh} = 0.3 \times 3.5 \times 209\left(\frac{15 \times 24}{11 \times 20} - 1\right)\left(\frac{4000}{60{,}000}\right) = 0.89 \text{ in.}^2 \quad \text{controls}$$

max. allowable $s = \frac{1}{4}b = \frac{1}{4}$ smallest column dimension or 4 in. $= 0.25 \times 15 = 3.75$ in.

or $s \leq 6$ dia of longitudinal bar $= 6 \times 1.0 = 6$ in.

or $s_o \leq 4 + (14 - h_x)/3$ where h_x = maximum horizontal spacing of hoop or crosstie legs on all faces of the column.

Assuming that spacing $h_x = \dfrac{20 - 3}{2} = 8.5$ in., $S_x \leq 4 + (14 - 8.5)/3 = 6.8$ in. Hence, controlling hoop spacing = 3.75 in. c. to c.

Use No. 4 hoops plus two No. 4 crossties at 3 in. c-c. Place the confining hoops in the column on both sides of potential hinge over a distance ℓ_o being the largest of

(a) Depth of member = 24 in. (610 mm)

(b) $\frac{1}{6}$ × clear span = (24 × 12)/6 = 48 in. (1220 mm)

(c) 18 in. (450 mm)

Use ℓ_o = 48 in. (1220 mm), spacing the No. 4 hoops and crossties at 3 in. c-c over this distance (12.7-mm-diameter bars at 89 mm c-c). Figure 16.16 shows detailing of the confining hoops at the beam–column joint at each floor level.

16.13 EXAMPLE 16.3: TRANSVERSE REINFORCEMENT IN A BEAM POTENTIAL HINGE REGION

Design the transverse reinforcement for the potential hinge regions of the earthquake resistant 20 ft span (6.1 m) beam in the monolithic reinforced concrete frame (Ref. 16.16) shown in Figure 16.17. The beam is subjected to a service live load intensity of 1100 lb per ft (17.5 kN/m) and a service dead load of 1750 lb per ft (35.7 kN/m).

Given

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = f_{yt} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

$$b = 18 \text{ in. (457 mm)}$$

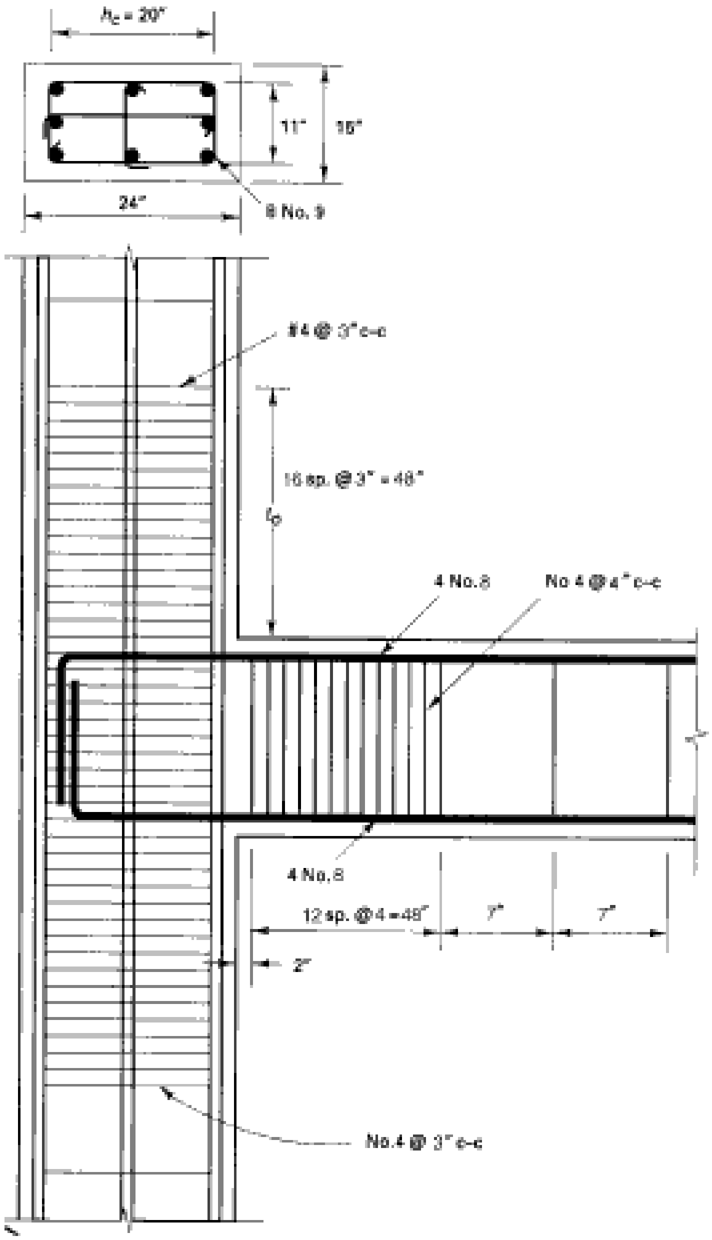


Figure 16.16 Confining hoops at joint in Ex. 16.2.

clear concrete cover = 1.5 in. (38 mm)

Support section A_s = 5 # 9 bars, A'_s = 3 # 9 bars (28.7 mm dia. bars).

Solution:

$$U = [1.2 \times 1750 + 1.6 \times 1100] = 3860 \text{ lb/ft.}$$

$$A_s = 5.0 \text{ in.}^2$$

Assume using #3 closed ties, diameter = 0.375 in. (9.5 mm)

$$d = 24 - 1.5 - 0.375 - 1.128/2 = 21.6 \text{ in.}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hence $s = 4$ in. (10 mm) controls over a zone length $2\,h = 2 \times 24 = 48$ in. from each support face.

16.14 EXAMPLE 16.4: PROBABLE SHEAR STRENGTH OF MONOLITHIC BEAM–COLUMN JOINT

The monolithic columns of the structural frame system in Example 16.3 have a clear height of 12′-0″ (3.2 m) and the probable moment strength, M_{pr}, of each column is 520,000 ft.-lb (705 kN-m). Compute (a) the column probable shear V_e at the column extremity and (b) verify that the joint shear strength of the section exceeds the actual probable horizontal stress in flexural tension shear.

Given

Main reinforcement allowable flexural stress is $1.25\,f_y$ assuming:

$$f'_c = 4000 \text{ psi (27.6 MPa)}$$

$$f_y = 60{,}000 \text{ psi (414 MPa)}$$

Column size 24 in. × 24 in. (610 mm × 610 mm)

Beam $A_s = 5.0$ in.^{2} and $A'_s = 3.0$ in.^{2} at the support section.

Solution: From example 16.3, the probable beam moments are

$$M^{+}_{pr} = 370{,}500 \text{ ft-lb}$$
$$M^{-}_{pr} = 579{,}167 \text{ ft-lb}$$

Probable moment transferred to the upper and lower columns at the joint is

$$M_{pr} = \frac{370{,}500 + 579{,}167}{2} = 474{,}834 \text{ ft-lb.}$$

This moment corresponds to a probable shear $V_e = \dfrac{2(474{,}834)}{2 \times 6} = 79{,}140$ lb.

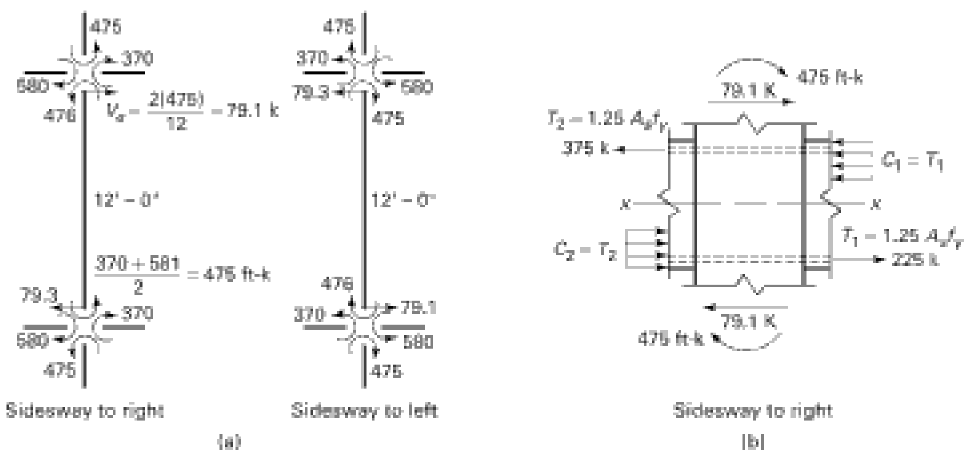


Figure 16.18 Joint probable moments and forces at joint faces in example 16.4: (a) column probable moments at the upper and lower joints, (b) beam-column joint sidesway to the left.

Column shear V_e associated with the formation of plastic hinges at the column extremities when the probable moment strengths, M_{pe}, are developed at these extremities is

$$V_e = \frac{2(M_{pe})_{col}}{h_c} = \frac{2 \times 520{,}000}{12 \text{ ft}} = 86{,}668 \text{ lb} > \text{beam probable shear } V_e = 79{,}140 \text{ lb}.$$

Hence, use $V_e = 79{,}140$ lb (352 kN). See Fig. 16.18 for schematic details of the sense of probable moments and shears (from Ref. 16.16).

Joint probable tension reinforcement force T_2 shown in Figure 16.18 is

$$T_2 = 1.25\,A_s f_y = 1.25 \times 5.0 \times 60{,}000 = 375{,}000 \text{ lb (1668 kN)}.$$

Joint probable compressive reinforcement force $C_1 = T_1$ at bottom fiber in Figure 16.18) is

$$C_1 = 1.25 \times 3.0 \times 60{,}000 = 225{,}000 \text{ lb (1000 kN)}.$$

Joint net horizontal shear $V_{xx} = T_2 + C_1 - V_e = 375{,}000 + 225{,}000 - 79{,}140 = 520{,}860$ lb.

From Equation 16.31a, the available shear design strength of the joint, confined on all four sides is

$$V_n = 20\sqrt{f'_c}\,A_j$$

$$A_j = 24 \times 24 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Hence, } V_n = 20\sqrt{4{,}000} \times 576 = 728{,}590 \text{ lb} > \text{actual } 520{,}860 \text{ lb, O.K.}$$

Accept the design of the column for seismic capacity.

Note that the framing beams are considered in this frame as having symmetrical reinforcement arrangement. Consequently, the computed joint shear associated with sidesway to the right would be the same as that for the sidesway to the left.

Table No. A–40 in the Appendix gives coefficients for rapid computation of the probable seismic moment strengths in terms of reinforcement percentage. Tables A–41 and A–42 respectively give volumetric ratios of spiral hoops and areas of rectilinear hoops (Ref. 16.16) for confinement of the longitudinal reinforcement of structural elements in seismic regions.

Photo 16.11 Failure of piers at Hanshin Highway Bridge, Kobe Earthquake, Japan, 1995. (Courtesy Professor Minoru Yamanaga, Kyoto University, Japan.)

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Hence from Eq. 16.33b

$$\phi V_n = \phi A_{cv}(2\sqrt{f'_c} + \rho_t f_y)$$

where $\phi = 0.60$ in this example; otherwise, refer to the ACI 318–05 Code for other conditions.

$$A_{cv} = 20(26.17 \times 12) = 6280 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\rho_t = \frac{2(0.31)}{20 \times 12} = 0.0026$$

$$\text{available } \phi V_n = 0.60 \times 6280\,(2\sqrt{4000} + 0.0026 \times 60{,}000)$$

$$= 1{,}065{,}000 \text{ lb} > V_u = 885{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$(4.7 \text{ MN} > \text{ required } 3.9 \text{ MN})$$

Hence the wall section is adequate. Therefore, use two curtains of No. 5 bars spaced at 12 in. c-c in both horizontal and vertical directions.

4. ***Boundary element check if acting as a short column under factored vertical forces due to gravity and lateral loads:*** P_u acting on wall = 4,500,000 lb. From before, b = 32 in., h = 50 in., A_s = 39 No. 11 bars = 39 × 1.56 = 60.84 in.^{2} (35,100 mm^2) in each boundary element.

$$\rho_{st} = \frac{A_s}{A_g} = \frac{60.84}{32 \times 50 = 1600} = 0.038$$

$$\rho_{min} = 0.01 < \rho_{st} < \rho_{max} = 0.06 \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

The axial load capacity of the boundary element acting as a short column is

$$\phi P_{n(max)} = 0.80\,\phi[0.85 f'_c\,(A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st} f_y]$$

$$= 0.80 \times 0.65[0.85 \times 4000(1600 - 46.8) + 60.84 \times 60{,}000]$$

$$= 4{,}619{,}443 \text{ lb} > P_u = 4{,}500{,}000 \text{ lb} \qquad \text{O.K.}$$

5. ***Boundary element transverse confining reinforcement:*** b_w = 20 in., b_c = 32 in., h or ℓ_w = 314 in., and A_g = 1600 in.^{2}. From Eqs. 16.30a and b,

$$A_{sh} \geq 0.3 s b_c\left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1\right)\frac{f'_c}{f_{yt}}$$

Assume No. 5 hoops and crossties spaced at 4 in. c-c.

(a) *Short direction*

$$b_{c1} = 50 - 2\left(1.5 + \frac{5}{16}\right) = 46.37 \text{ in.}$$

$$b_{c2} = 32 - 2\left(1.5 + \frac{5}{16}\right) = 28.37 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_{ch} = 46.33 \times 28.37 = 1314 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (core area)}$$

$$A_{sh} = \frac{0.09 f'_c s b_{c1}}{f_{yt}} = \frac{0.09 \times 4000 \times 4 \times 46.37}{60{,}000} = 1.11 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_{sh} = 0.3 \times 4 \times 46.37\left(\frac{1600}{1314} - 1\right)\frac{4000}{60{,}000} = 0.80 \text{ in.}^2$$

A_{sh} = 1.11 in.^{2} (716 mm^2) governs.

Use three No. 5 crossties, for a total of five legs being provided including the hoop every 4 in. along the boundary length (wall length ℓ_w). A_{sh} provided = 5 × 0.31 = 1.55 in.^{2}, O.K.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

16.5. Norris, H. C., Hansen, R. J., Holley, M. J., Biggs, J. M., Namyet, S., and Minami, K., *Structural Design for Dynamic Loads*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1959, 453 pp.

16.6. Engelkirk, R. E., and Hart G. C., *Earthquake Design of Concrete Masonry Buildings*, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 1982, Vol. 1, 144 pp. Vol. 2, 286 pp.

16.7. Schneider, R. R., and Dickey, W. L., *Reinforced Masonry Design*, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 1994, 730 pp.

16.8. Clough R. W., "Dynamic Effects of Earthquakes," *Proc. ASCE*, New York, Vol. 86, ST4, April 1960, pp. 49–65.

16.9. Ghosh, S. K., "Special Provisions for Seismic Design," PCA Publication, *Notes on ACI318-89 Code*, Chapter 31, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, IL, 1990, pp. 31–1 to 31–81.

16.10. Derecho, A. T., Fintel, M., and Ghosh, S. K., "Earthquake-resistant Structures," Ch. 12 in *Handbook of Concrete Engineering*, 2nd ed., Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1985, pp. 411–513.

16.11. Borg, S. E., *Earthquake Engineering-Damage Assessment and Structural Design*, John Wiley, New York, 1983, 110 pp.

16.12. Wakabayashi, M., *Design of Earthquake-resistant Buildings*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1986, 308 pp.

16.13. Naja, W. M. and Bane, C. T., "Seismic Resisting Construction" Chapter 32, *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, E. G. Nawy, Editor-in-Chief, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, pp. 1560 (Ch. 32, 1–70).

16.14. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete—A Fundamental Approach*, 5th Ed., 2008, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2008, p. 964.

16.15. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), "NEHRP Recommended Provisions for Seismic Regulations for New Buildings and other Structures," FEMA 302, Part I & II, Building Seismic Safety Council, Washington, D.C., 1998, 337 and 351 pp., respectively.

16.16. ACI Committee 340, *ACI Design Handbook—Design of Structural Reinforced Concrete Elements with the Strength Design Method*, ACI SP-17, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 1997, 482 pp.

16.17. Englekirk, R. E., *"Seismic Design of Reinforced and Precast Concrete Buildings,"* John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2003, 825 pp.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

16.1. A 3 × 18 panel, ductile, moment-resistant category II, site class B frame building has a ground story 15 ft high (4.6 m) and 10 upper stories of equal height of 11-6' (3.5 m). Calculate the base shear V and the overturning moment at each story level in terms of the weight W_s of each floor. Use the Equivalent Lateral Force Method in the solution. Given:

$$S_1 = 0.34 \text{ sec.}, \quad S_s = 0.90 \text{ sec.}$$
$$R = 5$$
$$W_s \text{ per floor} = 2{,}400{,}000 \text{ lb (9560 kN)}$$

16.2. If the building in Example 16.2 is constructed with components having the dimensions and data listed below, design the confining transverse reinforcement for the spandrel exterior beams and columns (three faces confined) joint for the bottom floor. Given:

Floors have slabs of thickness h_f = 7 in. (178 mm)

All beams: 18 in. × 24 in. (457 mm × 610 mm)

Exterior columns: 20 in. × 20 in. (508 mm × 508 mm)

Clear beam spans in both longitudinal and transverse directions = 20' 0" (6.1 m)

Shear wall base length ℓ_w = 25 ft (7.6 m)

Shear wall height h_w = 130 ft (39.6 m)

Beams A_s = A'_s = 4 No. 9 bars

Columns $A_s = 8$ No. 9 bars

$f'_c = 5000$ psi, normal weight (34.5 MPa)

$f_y = f_{yh} = 60{,}000$ psi (414 MPa)

Sketch the joint reinforcement.

16.3. Design the confining reinforcement for the joint at an interior column in Problem 16.2 and sketch the joint reinforcement.

16.4. Solve Problem 16.3 if the beam spans are 28 ft, factored $W_L = 3000$ plf and factored $W_D = 1200$ plf. Assume $b = 20$ in. and $h = 32$ in.; $A_s = A'_s = 5$ No. 8 bars.

16.5. Design the shear wall in Problem 16.2 and the boundary elements for the shear wall, assuming that the magnitude of loads, forces, and moments are 110% of the values used in Ex. 16.5.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Masonry, the most ancient material, is also one of the most modern materials utilized in every aspect of construction. Codes have become refined and the art and science of masonry construction became more standardized in the early 20th century in the United States. Around 1930, building codes contained only prescriptive requirements for unreinforced masonry, namely, plain masonry. The masonry units embodied in these early stipulations included fired clay and stone units with lime mortar or other types of fillers and, subsequently, concrete units. As earthquakes affected the structural response of different materials and components in California and other states, the masonry industry had to cope with the need to improve the response of masonry structures to natural disasters at that time. Code groups and the codes they developed—such as the Uniform Building Code (UBC), the Building Officials Code Administration International (BOCA), the SEAOC, the International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO), and the Masonry Society (TMS), all toward the latter quarter of the 20th century—are the basis of the present International Building Code (IBC) and its latest version, 2006. In the early 1990s, the American Concrete Institute (ACI) embarked on detailed code development for masonry design and construction, which later became a joint effort with the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE).

In 1999, this effort, joined by the Masonry Society (TMS) and the Masonry Society Joint Committee (MSJC), produced the ACI 530.ASCE 5/TMS 402 Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures and the ACI 530.1/ASCE6/TMS 602 Specifications for Masonry Structure. Thereafter a revised version of the Building Code Requirements and Specifications for Masonry Stuctures was issued containing the Joint Code (TMS 402-08/ACI 530-08/ASCE 5-08) and the Specifications (TMS 602-08/ACI 531.1-08/ASCE-08) as listed in Refs. 17.2 and 17.8. The code permits design by one of three methods: (1) prescriptive design, (2) working load design, and (3) strength design. This chapter is based on the Code's strength approach for the design of masonry structures at the limit state of failure (Refs. 17.1–17.7).

17.1.2 Masonry Materials

17.1.2.1 Mortar. The purpose of mortar is primarily to increase the strength and enhance the character of masonry. It also provides resistance to moisture penetration, and proper alignment through good workability of the mortar mixture. It also increases masonry resistance to shear forces. Mortar is a mixture of cementitious materials, aggregate of prescribed size, water, and possibly one or more admixtures. The relative proportions of each of the constituent materials are chosen on the basis of the preferred plastic properties, and hardened strength and performance properties. The cement could be Portland cement, masonry cement, or mortar cement. Portland cement should either be Type I or Type II, with low alkali content to prevent or minimize efflorescence, which is the unsightly deposit of soluble salts left on the surface as water evaporates. It is advisable to choose Portland cement in lieu of other types. It is also advisable not to use any epoxy admixtures in mortars. There are at present four types of mortars prescribed by ASTM and the requirements of the Masonry Society and its joint committee (MSJC). These are designated as M, S, N, and O mortars. The ingredient proportions as defined by ASTM and required by the Masonry Society Joint Committee (MSJC) are given in Table 17.1(a). The strength, air content, and other requirements for mortar laboratory tests are presented in Table 17.1(b).

17.1.2.2 Grout. Grout is a high-slump concrete made with very small size aggregate such as sand or pea gravel. The name is derived from the Swedish word "groot," which means "porridge," a [illegible] consistency so as to fill all the voids in

Table 17.1(a) Masonry Mortar Proportion[a]

		Cementitious Materials Proportions By Volume								
		Portland Cement or Blended Cement	*Mortar Cement*			*Masonry Cement*			Hydrated Lime or Lime Putty	Aggregate Ratio (Measured in Damp, Loose Conditions)
Mortar	**Type**		M	S	N	M	S	N		
Cement-Lime	M	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	¼	
	S	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over ¼ to ½	
	N	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over ½ to 1-¼	
	O	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	over 1-¼ to 2-½	
Cement	M	1	—	—	1	—	—	—	—	Not less than 2¼ and not more than 3 times the sum of the separate volumes of cementitious materials
	M	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	—	
	S	—	—	1	1	—	—	—	—	
	N	—	—	—	1	—	—	—	—	
	O	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
Masonry Cement	M	1	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	
	M	—	—	—	—	1	—	—	—	
	S	1/2	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	
	S	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	—	
	N	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	
	O	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	

[a]Reference 17.1, 17.3.

Table 17.1(b) Mortar Laboratory Tests[a]

Mortar	Type	Minimum Average Compressive Strength at 28 days, psi (MPa)	Water Retention, min, %	Air Content, max, %	Aggregate Ratio (Measured in Damp, Loose Conditions)
Cement-Lime	M	2500 (17.2)	75	12	
	S	1800 (12.4)	75	12	
	N	750 (5.2)	75	14[b]	
	O	350 (2.4)	75	14[c]	
Mortar Cement	M	2500 (17.2)	75	12	Not less than 2 ¼ and not more than 3 ½ the sum of the separate volumes of cementitious materials
	S	1800 (12.4)	75	12	
	N	750 (5.2)	75	14[b]	
	O	350 (2.4)	75	14[c]	
Masonry Cement	M	2500 (17.2)	75	18	
	S	1800 (12.4)	75	18	
	N	750 (5.2)	75	20[b]	
	O	350 (2.4)	75	20[b]	

[a]Reference 17.1, 17.3.

[b]If structural reinforcement is incorporated in cement-lime or mortar, maximum air content: 12 %.

[c]If structural reinforcement is incorporated in masonry cement mortar, maximum air content: 18 %.

Table 17.2 Masonry Grout Proportion Requirements[a]

Type	Parts by Volume of Portland Cement or Blended Cement	Parts by Volume of Hydrated Lime or Lime Putty	*Aggregate, Measured in a Damp, Loose Condition*	
			Fine	**Coarse**
Fine	1	0–0.1	2.25–3 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials	
Coarse	1	0–0.1	2.25–3 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials	1–2 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials

[a]Reference 17.1, 17.3.

the space between the masonry elements and completely encase the reinforcement. It structural function is to bonding the wythes together into composite elements and bonding the reinforcement to the masonry. In this manner it acts jointly with the other components to increase the masonry capacity and volume to resist bearing and flexural loads and stresses, as well as increase the fire resistance of the composite unit. Here also, Portland cement Types I and II are to be used, but the coarse aggregate in the grout should not be larger than 3/8 in. in size. Table 17.2 gives the masonry grout proportion requirements in accordance with MSJC stipulations and the Code.

17.1.2.3 Masonry Units. There are infinite arrays of colors, sizes, shapes, densities, texts, and materials that are available in masonry units. Masonry units are either concrete or clay bricks. Concrete brick is used very extensively in superstructure and foundation walls, most commonly hollow load-bearing concrete units and in certain cases solid units. Figure 17.2 shows a collection of widely used concrete block units. The clay masonry units are either solid or hollow, depending on their use, as facing bricks are usually solid. Clay paving bricks of a variety of shapes are used for purposes other than structural, while units for anchored veneer at least 2 inches thick are also made of clay brick units. Figure 17.3 shows several of the commonly used assemblage units with different patterns at wall corners.

Tables 17.3(a), (b), and (c) give the average weight of grouted and ungrouted clay and concrete masonry while Table 17.3(d) gives the properties of CMU walls. Table 17.4 gives the physical properties required in concrete masonry units.

17.1.2.4 Reinforcement. Deformed reinforcement bars are placed in bed joints and in other grouted spaces. They could be steel bars, or specially fabricated shapes. The bars have to be deformed bar types except that $\frac{1}{4}$ in. bars or smaller sizes can be smooth. They are preferably fabricated corrosion resistant or coated when they are placed close to the surface. The reinforcement must be securely positioned, wired in place or held by positioners. Figure 17.4 gives an example of assemblage of reinforcement that can be placed

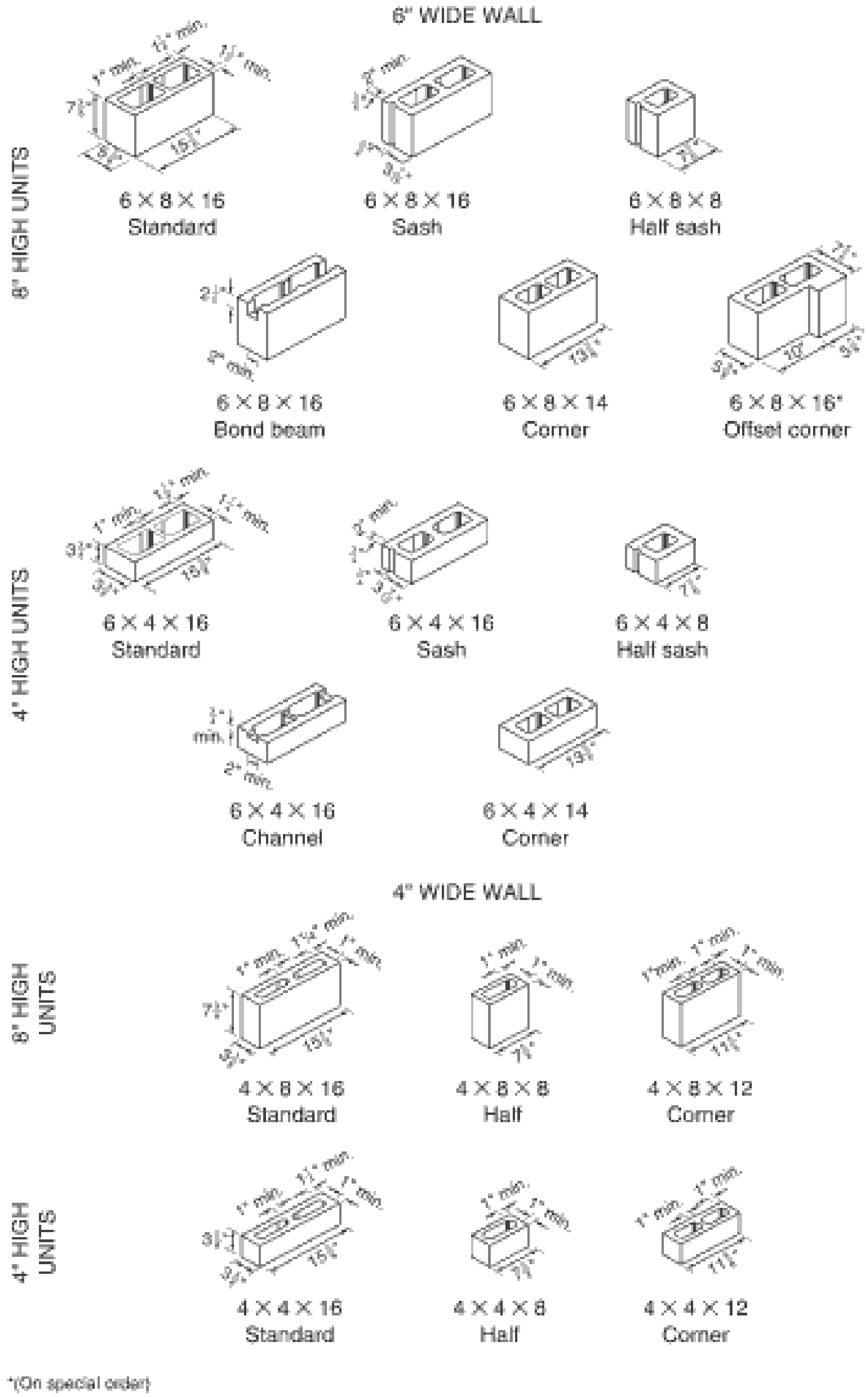


Figure 17.2 Hollow Masonry Unit Shapes (Refs. 17.4, 17.6).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

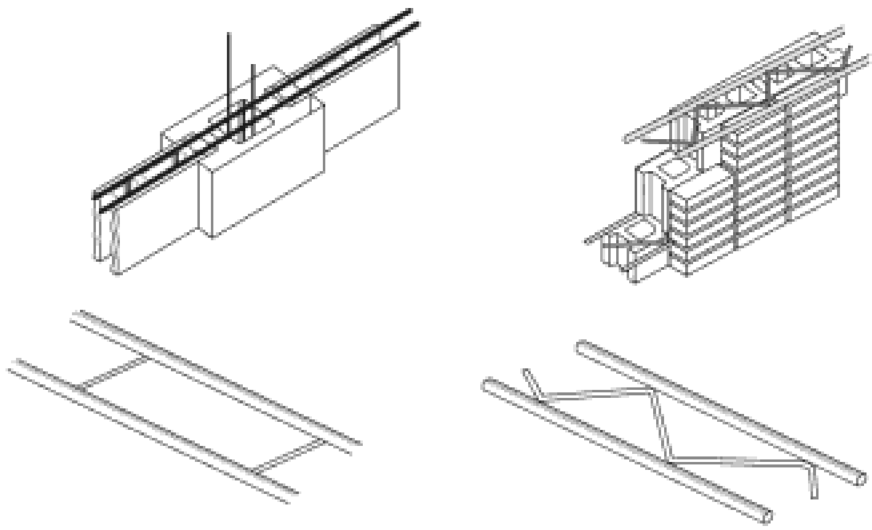
Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Table 17.3(d) Section Properties of CMU Walls—ASTM C 90 Hollow and Solid Units[a]

Property per ft of Wall		Mortar Bedding: Face-Shell	Mortar Bedding: Full	Solid or Fully Grouted[a]
4 in. Walls	**Unit Designation 4 × 8 × 16 Average Unit Dimensions: Thickness = 3.63 in., Length = 15.63 in. Height = 7.63 in.**			
Area	A, in.^{2}	18.0	21.6	43.5
Moment of inertia	I, in.^{4}	38.0	39.4	47.6
Section modulus	S, in.^{3}	21.0	21.7	26.3
Kern eccentricity	e_k, in.	1.17	1.00	0.60
Radius of gyration	r, in.	1.45	1.35	1.05
6 in. Walls	**Unit Designation 6 × 8 × 16 Average Unit Dimensions: Thickness = 5.63 in., Length = 15.63 in. Height = 7.63 in.**			
Area	A, in.^{2}	24.0	32.2	67.5
Moment of inertia	I, in.^{4}	130	139	178
Section modulus	S, in.^{3}	46.3	49.5	63.3
Kern eccentricity	e_k, in.	1.93	1.54	0.94
Radius of gyration	r, in.	2.33	2.08	1.62
8 in. Walls	**Unit Designation 8 × 8 × 16 Average Unit Dimensions: Thickness = 7.63 in., Length = 15.63 in. Height = 7.63 in.**			
Area	A, in.^{2}	30.0	41.5	91.5
Moment of inertia	I, in.^{4}	309	334	443
Section modulus	S, in.^{3}	81.0	87.6	116
Kern eccentricity	e_k, in.	2.70	2.11	1.27
Radius of gyration	r, in.	3.21	2.84	2.20

[a]ASTM Standards.



(a) (b)

Figure 17.4 Wall Joint Reinforcing: (a) ladder type, (b) truss type.

Table 17.4 Physical Properties of Concrete Masonry Units[a]

Unit Type	Minimum Average Compressive Strength, lb/in^2 (MPa)	Maximum Linear Drying Shrinkage	Maximum Water Absorption, [lb/ft^3 (kg/m^3)] Weight Classification, lb/ft^3 (kg/m^3) Lightweight, less than 105 (1,680)	Medium Weight, less than 125 to 105 (2,000 to 1,680)	Normal Weight, 125 (2,000) 1or more
C 55					
Grade N[b]	3,500 (24.1)[d]	0.065%	15 (240)	13 (208)	10 (160)
Grade S[c]	2,500 (17.3)[d]	0.065%	18 (288)	15 (240)	13 (208)
C 73					
Grade SW[e]	5,500 (37.9)[d]	—		15 (240)	
Grade MW[f]	3,500 (34.1)[d]	—		18 (288)	
C 90	1,900 (13.1)	0.065%	18 (288)	15 (240)	13 (240)
C 129	600 (4.1)	0.065%	—	—	—
C 744	—[g]	—[g]	—[g]	—[g]	—[g]
C 1386					
Class 2	360 (2.5)	0.02%	—[h]	—[h]	—[h]
Class 4	725 (5.0)	0.02%			
Class 6	1,090 (7.5)	0.02%			

[a]Reference 17.1,17.3.

[b]For use where high strength and resistance to moisture penetration and severe frost action are desired.

[c]For general use where moderate strength and resistance to frost action and moisture penetration are required.

[d]Compressive strength of C 55 concrete brick and C 73 calcium silicate brick are based on the gross cross-sectional area of the unit.

[e]Brick intended for use where exposed to temperatures below freezing in the presence of moisture.

[f]Brick intended for use where exposed to temperature below freezing but unlikely to be saturated with water.

[g]The concrete masonry units on which the prefaced surface is molded are required to meet the minimum physical properties of C 55, C 73, C 90, or C 129 as specified.

[h]Aerated autoclaved concrete masonry units do not limit the maximum water absorption or designate density classes. Instead, each unit strength class contains an array of nominal densities ranging from 25 to 50 lb/ft^3 (400 to 800 kg/m^3).

in masonry joints. Figure 17.5 gives another example of the steps in grouting the vertical cavities in masonry units reinforced with vertical deformed bars.

17.1.2.5 Strength Requirements. Masonry structural element such as walls, beams or footings are subject to the same principles as those applied to the design of reinforced and prestressed concrete elements. Hence, requirements of compressive strength, shear strength, bond and other physical properties have to be determined in accordance with the code provisions, in this case the MSJC requirements of the joint Code. Based on the net area of the concrete or clay masonry unit and the type of mortar used, the required compressive strength in concrete masonry elements is given in Table 17.5 and in clay masonry in Table 17.6. Values of elastic modulus and shear modulus for concrete masonry is given in Table 17.7 and in clay masonry in Table 17.8. Table 17.9 gives the modulus of rupture of various categories of masonry elements. Typical masonry construction details are given as guidance in Figures 17.6, 17.7, 17.8, and 17.9. Table 17.10 gives the elastic modulus of masonry as a function of the compressive strength.

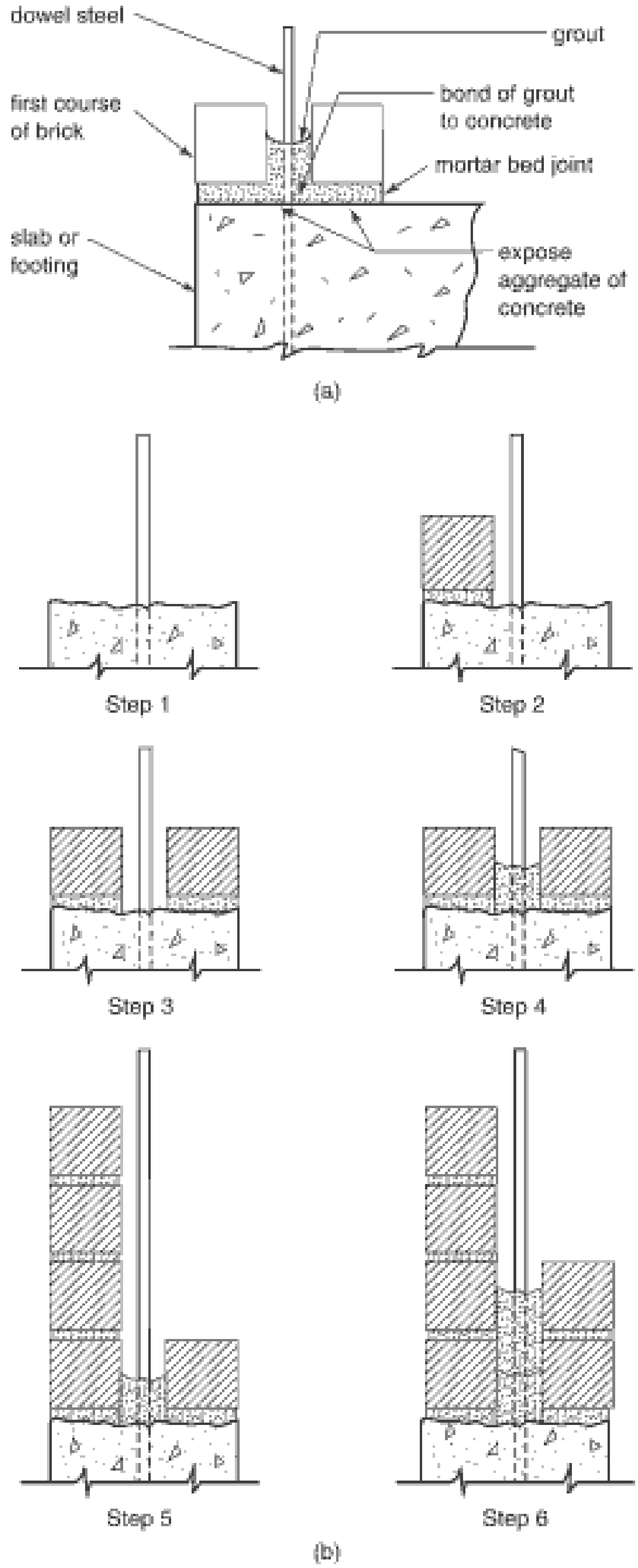


Figure 17.5 Grouting Steps in Assemblies of Solid Bricks and Grout (Refs. 17.4, 17.6).

Table 17.5 Compressive Strength of Concrete Masonry Based on Compressive Strength of the Units and Mortar Type[a]

Net Area Compressive Strength of Concrete Masonry Units, psi (MPa)		Net Area Compressive Strength of Masonry, psi (MPa)[b]
Type M or S Mortar	Type N Mortar	
—	1,900 (13.10)	1,350 (9.31)
1,900 (13.10)	2,150 (14.82)	1,500 (10.34)
2,800 (19.31)	3,050 (21.03)	2,000 (13.79)
3,750 (25.86)	4,050 (27.92)	2,500 (17.24)
4,800 (33.10)	5,250 (36.20)	3,000 (20.69)

[a]Reference 17.1,17.3.

[b]For units of less than 4 in. (102 mm) in height, use 85% of the listed values.

Table 17.6 Compressive Strength of Clay Masonry Based on the Clay Masonry Compressive Strength of Units and Mortar Type[a]

Net Area Compressive Strength of Clay Masonry Units, psi (MPa)		Net Area Compressive Strength of Masonry, psi (MPa)
Type M or S Mortar	Type N Mortar	
1,700 (11.72)	2,100 (14.48)	1,000 (6.90)
3,350 (23.10)	4,150 (28.61)	1,500 (10.34)
4,950 (34.13)	6,200 (42.75)	2,000 (13.79)
6,600 (45.51)	8,250 (56.88)	2,500 (17.24)
8,250 (56.88)	10,300 (71.02)	3,000 (20.69)
9,900 (68.26)	NP[b]	3,500 (24.13)
13,200 (91.01)	NP[b]	4,000 (27.58)

[a]Reference 17.1,17.3.

[b]Not permitted.

Table 17.7 Values of Elastic Modulus and Shear Modulus for Concrete Masonry[a]

Specified Compressive Strength of Masonry, f'_m psi (MPa)	Modulus of Elasticity, E_m, psi (MPa)	Shear Modulus (Modulus of Rigidity), E_v, psi (MPa)
1,000 (6.90)	900,000 (6,205)	360,000 (2,480)
1,500 (10.34)	1,350,000 (9,310)	540,000 (3,725)
2,000 (13.79)	1,800,000 (12,410)	720,000 (4,965)
2,500 (17.24)	2,250,000 (15,515)	900,000 (6,205)
3,000 (20.69)	2,700,000 (18,615)	1,080,000 (7,445)
3,500 (24.13)	3,150,000 (21,720)	1,260,000 (8,690)
4,000 (27.58)	3,600,000 (24,820)	1,440,000 (9,930)

[a]Based on $E_m = 900 f'_m$ ...

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

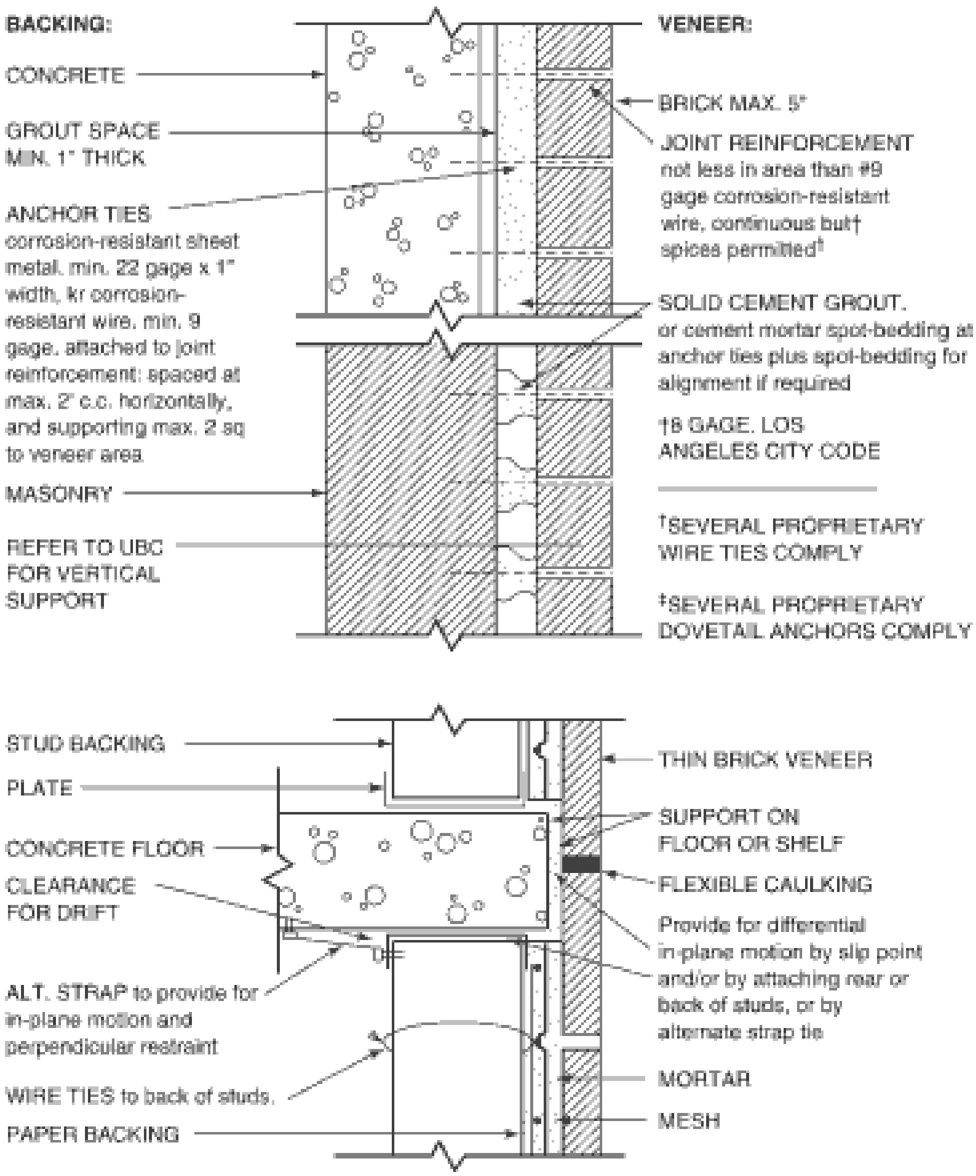


Figure 17.8 Anchored Veneer Details (Refs. 17.4, 17.6).

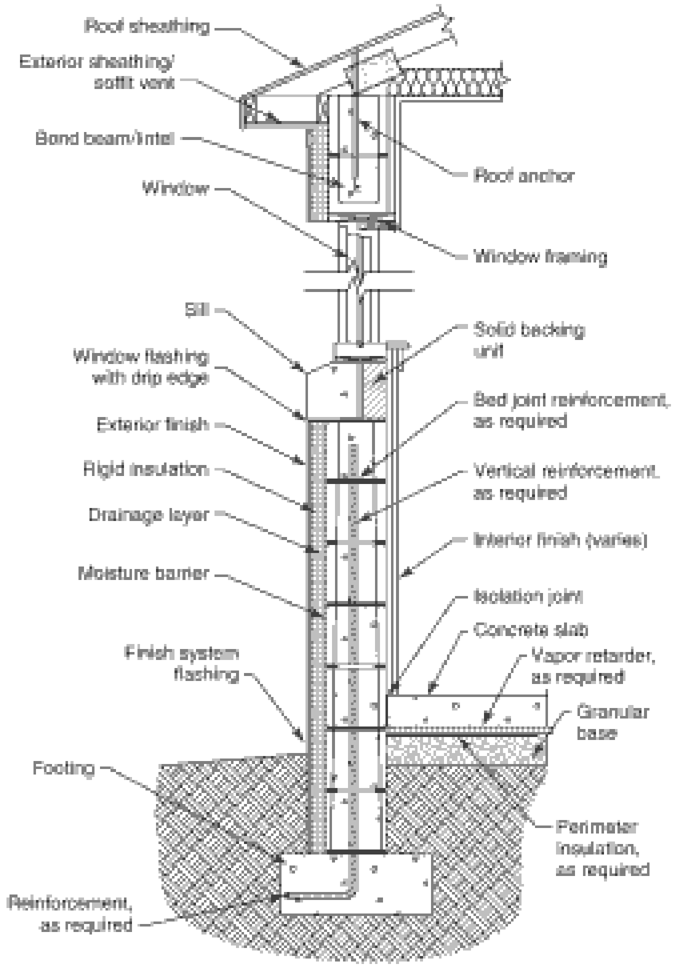


Figure 17.9 Cross-Sectional Details of Masonry Reinforced Wall (Ref. 17.1).

Table 17.11 Values of Elastic Modulus and Shear Modulus for AAC Masonry[a]

Specified Compressive Strength of Masonry, f'_{AAC} psi (MPa)	Modulus of Elasticity, E_{AAC}, psi (MPa)	Shear Modulus (Modulus of Rigidity), E_v, psi (MPa)
290	195,000 (1,345)	78,000 (540)
480	264,000 (1,820)	105,600 (730)
580	296,000 (2,040)	118,400 (815)
870	377,000 (2,600)	150,800 (1,040)

[a]Reference 17.3.

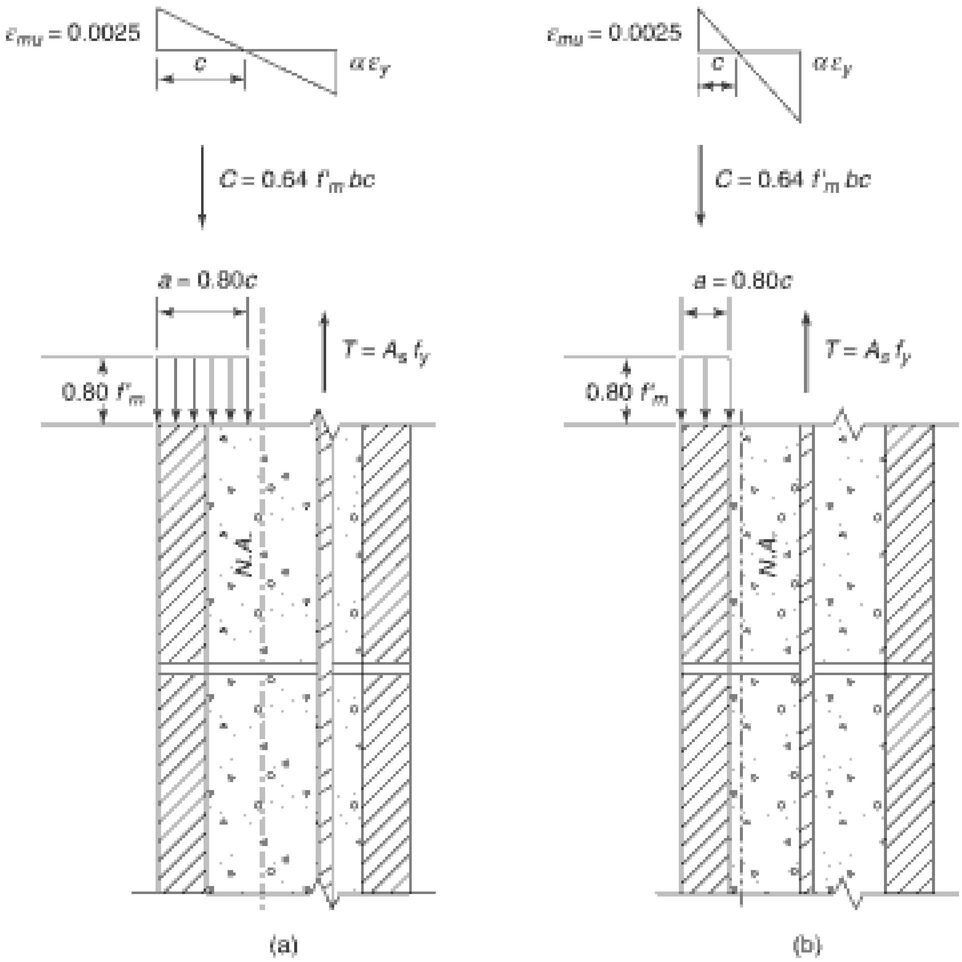


Figure 17.10 Forces, Stresses and Strains in a Reinforced Masonry Wall: (a) Neutral axis within the core; (b) neutral axis within the shell (α is taken = 1.5 except for intermediate reinforced shear walls = 3.0 and special reinforced shear walls = 4.0).

17.2 DESIGN PRINCIPLES

As for reinforced and prestressed concrete design discussed in other chapters of the textbook, the same principles of engineering mechanics are followed with adjustments to account for the nature of masonry materials and composition of the constructed elements. The strength design of masonry elements is based on the following assumptions:

1. Plane sections before bending remain plane after bending. Therefore, strain in the masonry and in the reinforcement, if present, is directly proportional to the distance from the neutral axis, and principles of equilibrium of forces and moment are maintained.

2. For unreinforced masonry, flexural stresses in the masonry are assumed to be directly proportional to strain. For reinforced masonry, the tensile strength of the masonry is neglected when calculating flexural strength, but considered when calculating deflection.
3. The applied load acts on the composite section comprising the individual unit, the mortar grout, and the reinforcement.
4. The maximum allowable masonry compressive stress is $0.8\, f'_m$ for both reinforced and unreinforced masonry.
5. The maximum usable strain, ϵ_{mu}, at the extreme compression fiber is 0.0025 for concrete masonry and 0.0035 for clay masonry.
6. The compressive stress block is assumed rectangular as in reinforced concrete, bounded by the compression face of the masonry and a plane at a depth of $a = 0.80\, c$, where c is the depth of the neutral axis.
7. The same principles of engineering mechanics are followed as in the normal design of concrete structural systems, with adjustments to account for the nature of masonry materials and composition. The strength design of masonry elements is based on the following assumptions. Reinforcement stresses below the specified yield strength, f_y, are taken equal to the modulus of elasticity of the reinforcement, E_s, times the steel strain ϵ_s. For strains greater than that corresponding to f_y, stress in the reinforcement is taken to be equal to f_y.
8. As in reinforced and prestressed concrete, the design strength is $M_u \leq \phi \times$ *nominal strength* M_n.
9. In order to minimize flexural cracking in reinforced masonry beams, the reinforcement should satisfy at least 1.3 times the cracking moment M_{cr}.

As stipulated in these principles, with the distribution of strain linear and the concrete stress distribution rectangular as in the ACI Code, Figure 17.10 shows the distribution of stress and strain across the thickness of the masonry wall both for the case of the neutral axis falling within the core as in Figure 17.10(a), and within the compressive area of the masonry shell as in Figure 17.10(b); the compressive force C acting a distance $a/2$ from the extreme compression fibers and the tensile force T acting at the centroid of the steel reinforcement within the masonry section.

17.3 STRENGTH REDUCTION FACTORS

Strength reduction factors are used to account for variations in properties of the material and conditions which require the reduction of the factored loads and moments. The following are the masonry strength reduction factors, ϕ.

Flexure or axial compressive loads in reinforced masonry	$\phi = 0.90$
Flexure or axial compressive loads in unreinforced masonry	$\phi = 0.60$
Shear	$\phi = 0.80$
Bearing	$\phi = 0.60$
Anchor bolts—nominal strength governed by:	
(i) Masonry breakout	$\phi = 0.50$
(ii) Anchor steel breakout	$\phi = 0.90$
(iii) Anchor pullout	$\phi = 0.65$

Hidden page

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

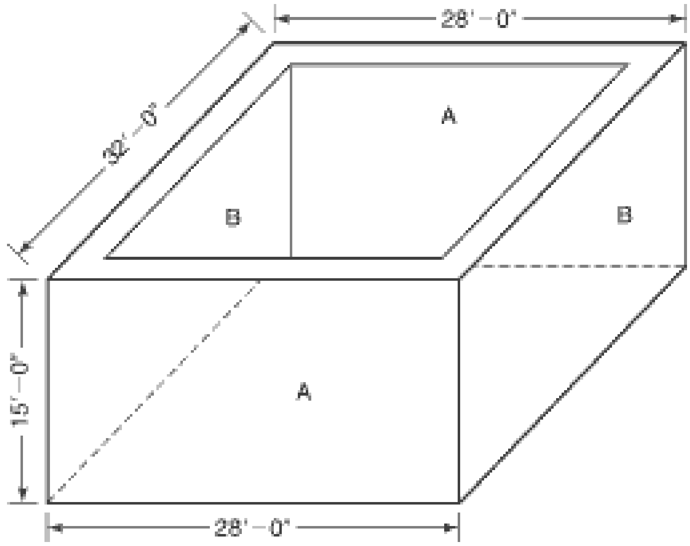


Figure 17.13 Walls A and B Geometry in a Masonry Building in Example 17.2 (not including 3.25 ft parapet).

Horizontal diaphragm shear due to wind load transferred to each side wall B (half at each support) is $V_{ww} = \dfrac{222 \times 28}{2} = 3108$ lb per shear wall

Assume a conservative factored load case for this axially loaded wall

$$= 0.9D + 1.6W$$

1. *Shear stress check in front wall A due to wind pressure*

$$\text{Unit weight of masonry used} = 48 \text{ plf}$$

$$V_u = 1.6 \times V_{ww} = 1.6 \times 3108 = 4973 \text{ lb}$$

Axial force at the parapet foot level due to the masonry self-weight (48 plf) is

$$N_u = 0.9 \times 3.25 \times 48 = 140.4 \text{ lb/ft of wall}$$

Nominal shear capacity of the front or rear wall A at the parapet foot is the smallest of cases (a), (b), and (d) of Section 17.5 as follows:

(a) $V_n = 3.8\sqrt{f'_m}\, A_n$
$= 3.8\sqrt{1500}\,(28 \times 30.0\ in^2/ft) = 123{,}556$ lb

(b) $V_n = 300\, A_n = 300\,(28 \times 30.0\ in.^2/ft) = 252{,}000$ lb

(d) $V_n = 56\, A_n + 0.45\, N_u$
$= 56(28 \times 30.0\ in.^2/ft) + 0.45 \times 140.4 \times 28.0$
$= 48{,}809$ lb

Controlling $V_n = 48{,}809$ lb

$$V_u = \phi\, V_n = 0.80 \times 48{,}809 = 39{,}047 \text{ lb}$$

Factored design shear $= 4973$ lb, considerably less than the shear limit capacity of 39,047 lb, hence O.K.

2. *Shear stress check in front wall A due to wind pressure*

The critical section is at the base of the wall, being subjected to the in-plane maximum moment. If the roof spans between the front and rear walls A as given in the problem statement, the gravity load of the roof does not act on the side walls B of the structure. The axial load on side walls B would therefore come from self-weight only.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

where

$$\delta = \frac{1}{1 - \dfrac{P_u}{A_n f'_m \left(\dfrac{70\, r}{h}\right)^2}} \tag{17.25b}$$

The magnifying factor can be taken as $\delta = 1$ for members in which the slenderness is within the range $45 < h/r \leq 60$, provided that the nominal strength is reduced by 10 percent.

17.6.5 Combined Axial Load and Bending

For masonry elements subjected to combined factored bending moment, M_u, and factored axial force, P_u, the resulting flexural bending stress is determined from Equation 17.27. If F_u as defined in Equation 17.27 is *positive*, the masonry section is tension-controlled and the modulus of rupture values of Table 17.9 and Table 17.11 for AAC masonry, reduced by the appropriate strength reduction factor, must be satisfied. If F_u is *negative*, the masonry section is in compression and the design maximum compressive stress of $0.80\, f'_m$ applies. It should be noted that only dead loads or other permanent loads should be included in P_u when the axial load is intended to offset the flexural bending stress.

The axial stress cannot, however, exceed the value calculated from Equation 17.26. Additionally, when the slenderness ratio (h/t) exceeds 30, the factored axial stress is limited to 5 percent of the specified compressive strength of the masonry, namely, ($0.05\, f'_m$).

$$\frac{P_u}{A_g} \leq 0.20\, f'_m \tag{17.26}$$

where: P_u = factored axial load on the masonry element, lb (N)
A_g = gross cross-sectional area of masonry element, in.^{2} (mm^2)

$$F_u = \frac{M_u t}{2\, I_n} - \frac{P_u}{A_n} \tag{17.27}$$

where: F_u = factored flexural stresses due to bending, psi (MPa)
M_u = factored bending moment, in.-lb (N-mm)
t = specified thickness of masonry element, in. (mm)
I_n = moment of inertia of net cross-sectional area of masonry, in.^{4} (mm^4)
P_u = factored axial load, lb (N)
A_n = net cross-sectional area of masonry element, in.^{2} (mm^2)

The nominal flexural strength, M_n, of a masonry element is determined in accordance with the following requirements. In addition, the nominal flexural strength at any section along a member shall not be less than *one-fourth* of the maximum nominal flexural strength at the critical section. When axial loads are not present, or are conservatively neglected as may be appropriate in some cases, there are several circumstances to consider in determining the nominal flexural strength of reinforced masonry walls. For a fully grouted element, the internal moment arm between the resulting compressive and tensile forces is resolved to determine the resisting capacity of the section.

Additionally, for unreinforced masonry elements subjected to flexural tension, the modulus of rupture varies with the direction of span, mortar type, bond pattern, and percentage of grouting as shown in Table 17.9. For walls spanning horizontally between supports, the code conservatively assumes that masonry constructed in stack bond cannot reliably transfer flexural tension stresses across the head joints. In such a case, the allow-

Hidden page

denominator simply reduces to f_y. Unlike the case of calculating the nominal strengths of the element, the compression reinforcement does not need to be laterally tied since the masonry compressive strain will always be less than the maximum permitted value.

Masonry elements designed for seismic zones and in cases where $M_u/V_ud \leq 1$, seismic response factor R less than or equal to 1.5, or in a boundary element, the maximum allowable reinforcement ratio is not applicable.

17.6.7 Example 17.3: P–M Interaction Plot in Masonry Wall

Construct the P–M interaction diagram for a fully grouted masonry wall through hand calculations per foot of wall length. Given:

Nominal thickness	8 in.
f'_m	1500 psi
f_y	60,000 psi
E_s	29×10^6 psi
ϕ	0.90
β_1	0.80
A_s	No. 5 bars
Bar spacing	42 in.

Plot the coordinates of the P–M diagram for (a) pure compression, (b) balanced point, and (c) pure bending.

The reinforcement is placed in the cross-section mid-depth. The balanced point axial force will not coincide with maximum moment capacity. Consequently, hand calculations rather than spreadsheet computations for some beam–column cases is useful in some reinforced masonry columns, but not in all cases.

Solution:

1. *Pure compression coordinates*
   Effective depth = 8.0 in. less $\frac{3}{8}$ in. = 7.63 in. (Table 17.3d)
   From Eq. 17.19,

$$P_n = 0.80\left[0.80\, f'_m(A_e - A_{st}) + A_{st}f_y\right]$$

   $A_{st} f_y = (A'_s f_y - A_s f_y) = 0$ since the reinforcement is at the geometric center in the core.
   Hence,

$$P_n = 0.8 \times 0.8 \times 1500\,(7.63 \times 42 - 0.31) = 307{,}344 \text{ lb}$$

   P_{no}/ft of reinforced strip of wall

$$= \frac{307{,}344}{42/12 = 3.5} = 87{,}813 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$P_u = \phi\, P_{no} = 0.90 \times 87{,}813 = 79{,}031 \text{ plf}$$

2. *Balanced point*
   Locate the neutral axis from Eq. 7.7,

$$c = d\left(\frac{\epsilon_{mu}}{\epsilon_{mu} + \epsilon_y}\right) = d\left(\frac{0.0025}{0.0025 + 0.00207}\right) = 0.547d = 0.547\left(\frac{7.63}{2}\right) = 2.087 \text{ in.}$$

   From Eqs. 17.17(b) and (c)

   Compressive force C_m = 0.80 (0.80 f'm...

or

$$C = 0.80 \times 2.087\,(0.80 \times 1500 \times 42) = 84{,}148 \text{ lb}$$

$$T = A_s f_y = 0.31 \times 60{,}000 = 18{,}600 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 84{,}148 - 18{,}600 = 65{,}548 \text{ lb}$$

$$\phi P_n/\text{ft} = 0.9 \times 65{,}548/3.5 \text{ ft} = 16{,}855 \text{ plf}$$

From Eq. 17.18, where $a = \beta_1 c = 0.8c$,
The moment is taken at the No. 5 steel bar position,

$$M_n = T\left(d - \frac{h}{2}\right) + C\left(\frac{h}{2} - \frac{\beta_1 c}{2}\right)$$

$$= 18{,}600\left(\frac{7.63}{2} - \frac{7.63}{2}\right) + 84{,}148\left(\frac{7.63}{2} - \frac{0.8 \times 2.087}{2}\right)$$

$$= 0 + 250{,}752 = 250{,}778 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_n/\text{ft} = \frac{250{,}778}{\dfrac{42\ in.}{12\ in./ft.} = 3.5\ ft} = 71{,}651 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$M_u = \phi M_n = 0.9 \times 71{,}651 = 64{,}486 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

3. *Pure flexure*

$$d = \tfrac{1}{2} \times 7.63 = 3.815 \text{ in.}$$

$$\rho = \frac{A_s}{bd} = \frac{0.31}{42 \times 3.815} = 1.935 \times 10^{-3}$$

$$\text{Reinforcement index } \omega = \rho\frac{f_y}{f'_m} = 1.935 \times 10^{-3} \times \frac{60{,}000}{1500} = 0.0774$$

From Eq. 17.6,

$$M_n = \omega\, bd^2 f'_m (1 - 0.625\,\omega)$$

$$= 0.0074 \times 42\left(\frac{7.63}{2}\right)^2 \times 1500\,(1 - 0.625 \times 0.0774) = 64{,}570 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } M_n = \frac{64{,}570}{42/12 = 3.5} = 18{,}449 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$M_u = \phi M_n = 0.9 \times 18{,}449 = 16{,}604 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

Summary	P_u(lb/ft)	M_u (in.-lb/ft)
Pure compression	79,031	0
Balanced point	16,855	64,486
Pure flexure	0	16,604

A plot of these coordinates is given in Figure 17.14.

17.6.8 Example 17.4: Detailed P–M Interaction Relationship with Coordinates for Steel Control and Masonry Control

Plot the P–M interaction diagram for Example 17.3 with coordinates for the neutral axis depth c and the [illegible] by the steel and the masonry.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

3. Case $\frac{c}{d} = 0.20$

$$c = 0.20 \times 3.815 = 0.763 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 40{,}320c = 30{,}764 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 30{,}764 - 18{,}600 = 12{,}164 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_u/\text{ft} = \phi\, P_n/\text{ft} = \frac{0.9 \times 12{,}164}{3.5} = 3128 \text{ plf}$$

$$M_n = C\left(3.813 - \frac{0.8 \times 0.763}{2}\right)$$

$$= 30{,}764(3.51) = 107{,}9114 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_u/\text{ft} = \phi \text{ Mn} = \frac{0.9 \times 107{,}914}{3.5} = 27{,}749 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

4. Case $\frac{c}{d} = 0.40$

$$c = 0.40 \times 3.815 = 1.526 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 40{,}320 \times 1.526 = 61{,}528 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 61{,}528 - 18{,}600 = 42{,}928 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } P_u/\text{ft} = \frac{0.9 \times 42{,}928}{3.5} = 11{,}039 \text{ plf}$$

$$M_n = 0 + 61{,}528\left(3.815 - \frac{0.8 \times 1.526}{2}\right)$$

$$= 197{,}173 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } M_u = \frac{0.9 \times 197{,}173}{3.5} = 50{,}702 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

5. Case $\frac{c}{d} = 0.60$

$$c = 0.60 \times 3.815 = 2.289 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 40{,}320 \times 2.289 = 92{,}292 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 92{,}292 - 18{,}600 = 73{,}692 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } P_u = \frac{0.9 \times 73{,}692}{3.5} = 18{,}949 \text{ plf}$$

$$M_n = 92{,}292\left(3.815 - \frac{0.8 \times 2.289}{2}\right)$$

$$= 267{,}591 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } M_u = \frac{0.9 \times 267{,}591}{3.5} = 68{,}809 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

6. Case $\frac{c}{d} = 0.70$

$$c = 0.70 \times 3.815 = 2.671 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 40{,}320 \times 2.671 = 107{,}695 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 107{,}695 - 18{,}600 = 89{,}095 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } P_u = \frac{0.9 \times 89{,}095}{3.5} = 22{,}910$$

$$M_u = 107{,}695\left(3.815 - \frac{0.8 \times 2.671}{2}\right)$$

$$= 295{,}795 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } M_u = \frac{0.9 \times 295{,}795}{3.5} = 76{,}062 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

7. Case $\dfrac{c}{d} = 1.0$

$$c = 1.0 \times 3.815 = 3.815 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 40{,}320 \times 3.815 = 153{,}821 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 153{,}821 - 18{,}600 = 135{,}221 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } P_n = \frac{0.9 \times 135{,}221}{3.5} = 34{,}771 \text{ plf}$$

$$M_n = 153{,}821\left(3.815 - \frac{0.8 \times 3.815}{2}\right)$$

$$= 352{,}096 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } M_n = \frac{0.9 \times 352{,}096}{3.5} = 90{,}539 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

8. Case $\dfrac{c}{d} = 1.5$

$$c = 1.5 \times 3.815 = 5.722 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 40{,}320 \times 5.722 = 230{,}711 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 230{,}711 - 18{,}600 = 212{,}111 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } P_n = \frac{0.9 \times 212{,}111}{3.5} = 54{,}543 \text{ plf}$$

$$M_n = 230{,}711\left(3.815 - \frac{0.8 \times 5.722}{2}\right)$$

$$= 352{,}111 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } M_n = \frac{0.9 \times 352{,}111}{3.5} = 90{,}543 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

9. Case $\dfrac{c}{d} = 2.0$

$$c = 2.0 \times 3.815 = 7.630 \text{ in.}$$

$$C = 40{,}320 \times 7.630 = 307{,}642 \text{ lb}$$

$$P_n = C - T = 307{,}642 - 18{,}600 = 289{,}042 \text{ lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } P_n = \frac{0.9 \times 289{,}042}{3.5} = 74{,}325 \text{ plf}$$

$$M_n = 307{,}642\left(3.815 - \frac{0.8 \times 7.630}{2}\right)$$

$$= 234{,}731 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$\text{Unit } M_n = \frac{0.9 \times 234{,}731}{3.5} = 60{,}359 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

17.6.9 Example 17.5: Stability Analysis of Load-bearing Masonry Wall

Analyze the stability of the load bearing reinforced fully grouted masonry wall in Example 17.3 loaded out of plane at an eccentricity $e = 2\frac{1}{2}$ in., with the roof at the parapet foot level acting as a reaction or as a shear wall transmitting the load between the two walls. The wall height is 15′-0″ and the parapet is 3′-0″ high, giving a total wall height of 18′-0″. The wall has the same geometric properties listed in Examples 17.3 and 17.4 and is subjected to a total axial load intensity at service of $DL = 700$ plf and $LL = 300$ plf. The masonry unit weight is 48 plf.

Solution

Since flexural capacity increases with increasing axial load, the most critical combination is probably:

$$U = 0.9D + 1.6W$$

1. *Wind load moments*

   Wind intensity from Ex. 17.3 = 20 psf

   Factored moment at base of parapet (roof level) due to wind is

   $$M_1 = \frac{20(3.0)^2}{2} \times 12 = 1080 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

   The maximum moment would be close to that occurring at midheight of the wall. The moment due to wind load can be considered the superposition of one-half the moment at the upper support to the wall, namely half the M1 value plus the midspan moment in a simply supported beam with the same wind load intensity.

   Midspan wind moment on the 15′ −0″ wall assumed acting on beam is

   $$M_2 = \frac{w_u\, l^2}{8} = \frac{20.0(15)^2}{8} \times 12 = 6750 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

   Midspan total moment $= M_1 + M_2$

   $$M_u = \frac{1080}{2} + 6750 = 7290 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

2. *Eccentric vertical load moments*

   At midheight of the wall, the axial force due to 0.9D is

   $$P_u = 0.9 \times 700 + 0.9\,(3.0 \text{ ft} + 0.5 \times 15 \text{ ft}) \times 48 \text{ lb/ft}$$
   $$= 630 + 453.6 = 1083.6, \text{ say } 1084 \text{ lb/ft}$$

   Factored design moment at wall midheight is

   $$M_u = P_u\left(\frac{e}{2}\right) + M_{U(wind)}$$
   $$= 1084\left(\frac{2.5}{2}\right) + 1.6 \times 7290 = 13{,}019 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

   The unit P_u and M_u lies within the interaction diagram of design capacity for the case where no reinforcement is used, calculated in Example 17.4, hence, O.K. for the non-slender case.

3. *Slenderness check*

   For 8.0 in. thick wall, effective $t = 7.625$ in.

   $$\text{Slenderness ratio} = \frac{kh}{r} = \frac{h}{r}$$

   $$r = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}} = \sqrt{\frac{bh^3/12}{bh}} = \frac{h}{\sqrt{12}}$$

   $$= \frac{15 \times 12}{\left(\frac{7.63}{\sqrt{12}}\right)} = \frac{180}{2.20} = 81.8 < 99$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

2. Bond the tendons within the length of the masonry elements, although not a widely used process.

Immediately after jacking the prestressing tendon, immediate loss in prestress occurs and the losses increase with time as described in Chapter 14. Hence, the design must include a close estimate of the loss in prestress. In lieu of calculating the prestress loss, the code allows the following percentage losses at the different stress levels:

1. initial prestress loss after jacking: 5%–10%
2. concrete masonry long term losses + initial loss: 30%–35%
3. clay masonry long term losses + initial loss: 20%–25%

A more refined set of values in accordance with the code are as follows:

1. *At jacking*: f_{ps} = the lesser of 0.94 f_{py}(70.5 ksi) or 0.80 f_{pu}(74.0 ksi).
2. *At transfer after initial losses*: f_{ps} = the lesser of 0.82 f_{py}(61.6 ksi) or 0.74 f_{pu}(ksi).
3. *At service after all losses*: f_{se} = the lesser of 0.78 f_{py}(58.5 ksi) or 0.70 f_{pu}(70.0 ksi).

17.8.1 Service Load Requirements

No net tension is permitted under dead load and prestress force. The stress check over the effective cross-sectional area, A, of the masonry unit is made using the following expressions.

After Transfer:
Compression Check

$$f_{comp} = \frac{(P_{DL} + P_{si})}{A} + \frac{M}{S} \le f_{mi} \tag{17.39a}$$

Tendon Check

$$f_{tension} = \frac{(P_{DL} + P_{si})}{A} - \frac{M}{S} > 0 \tag{17.39b}$$

At Service Load:
Compression Check

$$f_{comp} = \frac{(P_{DL} + P_{LL} + P_{se})}{A} + \frac{M}{S} \le f_{m} \tag{17.40a}$$

Tension Check

$$f_{tension} = \frac{(P_{DL} + P_{LL} + P_{se})}{A} - \frac{M}{S} \le f_{t} \tag{17.40b}$$

Tension Check

$$f_{tension} = \frac{(P_{DL} + P_{se})}{A} - \frac{M}{S} > 0 \tag{17.40c}$$

where f_{mi} = allowable initial compressive stress determined from f'_{mi}
f_{m} = allowable service load compressive stress determined from f'_{m}

Stability Analysis Check:
Laterally Restrained Tendons

$$(P_{DL} + P_{LL}) \le \frac{1}{4} P_e \tag{17.41a}$$

Laterally Unrestrained Tendons

$$(P_{DL} + P_{LL} + P_{se}) < \frac{1}{4} P_e \tag{17.41b}$$

where

$$P_e = \frac{\pi^2 E_m I_m}{h^2}\left(1 - 0.577\frac{e}{r}\right) \tag{17.41c}$$

17.8.2 Strength Requirements

As in reinforced and prestressed structural concrete, the design moment has to be at least equivalent to the factored moment. The factored moment, M_u, is taken as 80% of the nominal moment strength, M_n so that $M_u = \phi M_n$, where $\phi = 0.80$ is the reduction factor for flexure. The nominal moment strength, M_n, for concentric prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement is

$$M_n = (A_{ps} f_{ps} + A_s f_y + P_u)\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) \tag{17.42}$$

where

$$a = \frac{A_{ps} f_{ps} + A_s f_s + P_u}{0.80 f'_m b} \tag{17.43}$$

For bonded tendons, the design ultimate stress, f_{ps}, is calculated assuming strain compatibility within the masonry cross-section, or taken as yield strength, f_{py}. The bond from the mortar also laterally restrains the prestressing tendon so that it is naturally not possible to have bonded unrestrained tendons. Thus, for unbonded tendons, strain compatibility analysis is not applicable. The expressions for computing the stress f_{ps} at nominal strength are as follows:

Laterally Restrained Tendons

$$f_{ps} = f_{se} + (1{,}000{,}000)\left(\frac{d}{l_p}\right)\sqrt{1 - 1.4\left(\frac{A_{ps} f_{pu}}{bd\, f'_m}\right)} \tag{17.44}$$

Laterally Unrestrained Tendons

$$f_{ps} = f_{se} + (700{,}000)\left(\frac{d}{l_p}\right)\sqrt{1 - 1.4\left(\frac{A_{ps} f_{pu}}{bd\, f'_m}\right)} \tag{17.45}$$

where f_{se} = effective prestress after losses (psi or ksi)
f_{py} = yield strength (psi or ksi)
f_{pu} = specified tensile strength of the tendon (psi or ksi)
l_p = tendon length (in.)
A_{ps} = reinforcement cross-sectional area (in.^{2}/ft)
b = 12 in.
d = effective depth = 3.8 in. for 8 in. wythe

17.8.3 Load Interaction in Compression

When the load is a combined axial load and bending, the interaction expression is as follows:

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{F_b} \leq 1.0 \tag{17.46}$$

$$F_a = \frac{1}{4} f'_m \left[1 - \left(\frac{h}{140r} \right)^2 \right] \tag{17.47}$$

$$F_b = \frac{1}{3} f'_m \tag{17.48}$$

where F_a = allowable compressive stress due to axial load only
F_b = allowable compressive stress due to bending only
f_a = actual axial load compressive stress
f_b = actual bending compressive stress
f'_m = specified compressive strength of masonry at time of prestress transfer

17.8.4 Example 17.6: Design of Prestressed CMU Wall in Seismic Zone

A prestressed CMU non–load-bearing wall 16 ft high and having movement joints at 25 ft on centers. It consists of an outer standard modular clay masonry $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. thick veneer and inner wythe of 8 in. CMU. The prestressing tendon is designed for eccentric placement in the CMU wythe. Design the wall for flexure using:

1. Laterally restrained tendons
2. Laterally unrestrained tendons

Given:

mortar	Type S PC-L
CMU density	125 pcf
f'_{mi} at 3 days	1875 psi
f'_m	2500 psi
E_{mi}	$900\, f'_{mi} = 1.688 \times 10^6$ psi
E_m	$900\, f'_m = 2.25 \times 10^6$ psi
A_{ps}	0.44 in.^{2} tendons
A_s	No. 4 steel bars
f_{py}	75,000 psi
f_{pu} (manufacturer value)	100,000 psi
wind intensity	20 psf
seismic intensity	30 psf
wall units weight	39 psf

Grouting is at 10 ft on centers as required by seismic design category C (SDC-C). The wall is laterally restrained.

Assume the tendons stress losses are 10% for CMU at transfer and 35% for CMU at service load.

Solution:
Assume No. 6 tendon, $A_{ps} = 0.44$ in.^{2}

1. Allowable tendon stresses:

At jacking, the lesser of 0.94 f_{py}(70.5 ksi) or 0.80 f_{pu}(80.0 ksi)

At transfer after initial losses, the lesser of 0.82 f_{py}(61.5 ksi) or 0.74 f_{pu}(74.0 ksi)

At service after losses, the lesser of 0.78 f_{py}(58.5 ksi) or 0.70 f_{pu}(70.0 ksi)

Hidden page

From Eq. 17.47

$$F_a = \frac{1}{4}f'_m\left[1 - \left(\frac{h}{140r}\right)^2\right]$$

From Table 17.3(d), $r = 3.21$ in. for face shell (ungrouted CMU)

$$= \frac{1}{4}(2500)\left[1 - \left(\frac{16 \times 12}{140 \times 3.21}\right)^2\right]$$

$$= 625\left[1 - \left(\frac{192}{449.4}\right)^2\right] = 510.9 \text{ psi}$$

From Table 17.3(d), $I = 309\ in.^4$, $S = 81.0\ in.^3$

M_{max} from load combination 2 = 1271 ft-lb/ft

$$f_b = \frac{640 \times 12\ in.\text{–}lb/ft}{81.0\ in.^3} = 94.8\ psi$$

From Eq. 17.48,

$$F_b = \frac{1}{3}f'_m = \frac{1}{3} \times 2500 = 833 \text{ psi}$$

$$\frac{f_a}{F_a} + \frac{f_b}{F_b} = \frac{\dfrac{312 + P_{ps}}{30}}{510.9} + \frac{94.8}{833} \leq 1.0$$

or

$$\left(1 - \frac{94.8}{833}\right)510.9 \times 30 = P_{ps} + 312$$

$13{,}583 = P_{ps} + 312$ giving the limit prestressing force P_{ps} as

$P_{ps} = 13{,}271\ lb/ft$

(b) Check tension stresses at wall midheight for service load combination (ii) where the moment is maximum among the three load combinations.

$$P_{wall} = 187 \text{ lb/ft}$$

$$M_{wall} = 672 \text{ ft-lb/ft}$$

$$f_b = \frac{M}{S} = \frac{672 \times 12\ in.\text{–}lb/ft}{81.0} = 99.6 \text{ psi}$$

$$f_a = \frac{187\ lb/ft + P_{ps}}{30.0\ in^2/ft} = 6.2 + \frac{P_{ps}}{30.0}$$

For Type S PC-L mortar, allowable flexural tensile stress $f_t = 25.0\ psi \geq (f_b - f_a)$

$$99.6 \text{ psi} - (6.2 + P_{ps}/30) \leq 25.0, \text{ giving}$$

$$P_{ps} = (99.6 + 25 - 6.2)\,30.0 = 3552 \text{ lb/ft}$$

Select tendon spacing such that 3552 lb/ft $< P_{ps} <$ 13,271 lb/ft in order that service loads would not overstress the wall.

Using No. 6 tendon with $f_{se} = 38{,}000$ psi.

$$P_{ps} = \frac{A_{tendon} \times f_{se}}{\text{spacing}} = \frac{0.44 \times 38{,}000}{s} = \frac{16{,}720\ lb}{s}$$

Try to space the tendons at 4 ft center to center.

$$P_{ps} = \frac{16{,}720}{4.0} = 4180 \text{ lb/ft} > 3552 \text{ and} < 13{,}271 \text{ lb/ft.}$$

Hence, service loads will not overstress the wall.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

From Eq. 17.42,

$$M_n = (A_{ps}f_{ps} + A_sf_y + P_u)\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

$$M_n = 7694\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 7694 \times \frac{\left(3.815 - \frac{0.32}{2}\right)}{12\ in./ft}$$

$$= 2343 \text{ ft-lb/ft}$$

$$\phi M_n = 0.9 \times 2343 = 2019 \text{ ft-lb/ft}$$

Required factored $M_u = 1024 < 2109$ ft-lb/ft, hence, O.K.

Note that if factored M_u is less than the available M_u, the first attempt should be to increase the size of the mild steel reinforcement if the difference is small. Also, the available M_n in this case is significantly higher than the required M_u, the service load analysis requires the prestressing reinforcement chosen to satisfy the IBC requirement in seismic zones of a spacing at 4 ft on centers.

2. ***Alternative solution for laterally unrestrained tendon reinforcement***
   (a) *Stresses*

$$f_{ps} = f_{se} + 700{,}000\left(\frac{d}{l_p}\right)\sqrt{1 - 1.4\left(\frac{A_{ps}f_{pu}}{bd\, f'_m}\right)}$$

$$F_{st} = 38{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

d = 1.25 + (0.75 in. for a No. 6 tendon)/2 + 0.5 in dia. of horizontal ties bars = 2.13 in.

Note that the effective depth, d, for the unrestrained case is much less than the laterally restrained case.

$$l_p = 192 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_{ps} = 0.11 \text{ in.}^2\text{/ft}$$

$$b = 12 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_s = 0.02 \text{ in.}^2\text{/ft}$$

$$f_{ps} = 38{,}000 + 700{,}000\left(\frac{2.13}{192}\right)\sqrt{1 - 1.4\left(\frac{0.11 \times 100{,}000}{(12\ in.)(2.13)(2500)}\right)}$$

$$= 38{,}000 + 7766\sqrt{0.759}$$

$$= 44{,}766 \text{ psi} < f_{py} < f_{se}\text{, hence, O.K.}$$

From Eq. 17.43,

$$a = \frac{44{,}766\,(0.11) + 60{,}000\,(0.02) + 281}{0.80 \times 2500 \times 12} = \frac{6405}{24{,}000}$$

$$= 0.267 \text{ in.}$$

$$a < \text{face shell (1.25 in.); O.K.}$$

$$\frac{a}{d} = \frac{0.262}{2.13} = 0.123 < 0.425 \text{ O.K.}$$

From Eq. 17.42,

$$M_n = (A_{ps}f_{ps} + A_sf_y + P_u)\left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right)$$

$$M_n = 6405\ lb\left[\frac{\left(2.13 - \frac{0.267}{2}\right)}{12\ in./ft}\right] = 1066 \text{ ft-lb/ft}$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Using Eq. 17.13(a) for calculating V_n at $\dfrac{M_u}{V_u d_v} \le 0.25$

$$V_n = 6A_n\sqrt{f'_m} = 6 \times 1000\sqrt{2500} = 300{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

At $\dfrac{M_u}{V_u d_v} \le 1.0$,

$$V_n = 4A_n\sqrt{f'_m} = 4 \times 1000\sqrt{2500} = 200{,}000$$

Interpolate values for $\dfrac{M_u}{V_u d_v} = 0.561$

$$V_n = \left(\frac{0.641 - 0.25}{1.0 - 0.25}\right)(300{,}000 - 200{,}000) + 200{,}000 = 252{,}133 \text{ lb}$$

From Eq. 17.14,

$$V_m = \left[4.0 - 1.75\left(\frac{M_u}{V_u d_v}\right)\right]A_n\sqrt{f'_m} + 0.25P_u$$

$$V_m = (4.0 - 1.75 \times 0.641)\,300\sqrt{2500} + 0.25 \times 94{,}050$$

$$= 43{,}174 + 23{,}513 = 66{,}687 \text{ lb}$$

Applied $\quad V_u = 30{,}500$

Hence, no V_s reinforcement is needed and the prescriptive reinforcement is adequate with excessive shear capacity of the wall.

Adopt the designed No. 6 prestressing laterally restrained tendons at 48 in. c/c and No 4 grouted mild steel reinforcing bars at 48 in. c/c both horizontally and vertically are all that is needed for this CMU wall as shown in Figure 17.16.

Place No. 4 mild steel horizontal reinforcement at 4 in. c/c along the height of the wall, which is hooked at ends. The tendons and vertical bars must be anchored in the foundation of the wall.

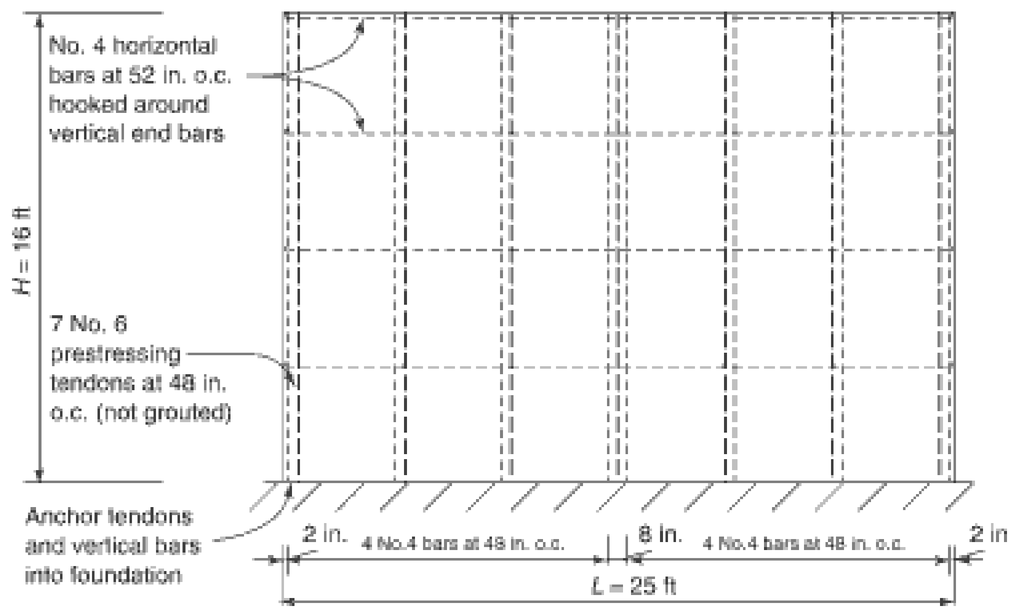


Figure 17.16 Masonry Shear Wall Reinforcement Details in Example 17.16.

17.9 DEFLECTION

To account for deflection resulting from the application of out-of-plane loads and the additional bending moment due to eccentrically applied axial loads, the factored bending moment at the mid-height of a simply supported wall under uniform loading is required to be determined by Equation 17.49, considering that the critical section is at *mid-height* of the wall. When other support or loading conditions exist, appropriate design models should be used instead of Equation 17.49.

$$M_u = \frac{w_u h^2}{8} + P_{uf}\frac{e_u}{2} + P_u \delta_u \qquad (17.49)$$

where: M_u = factored bending moment, in.-lb (N-mm)
w_u = factored out-of-plane uniformly distributed load, lb/in. (N/mm)
h = effective height of masonry element, in. (mm)
e_u = eccentricity of P_{uf}, in. (mm)
δ_u = deflection due to factored loads, in. (mm)
$P_u = P_{uw} + P_{uf}$
P_{uf} = factored load from tributary floor or roof areas, lb (N)
P_{uw} = factored weight of masonry element area tributary to section under consideration, lb (N)
δ_s = deflection at mid-height under service level loads, in. (mm)

17.9.1 Beam and Lintel Deflection

The masonry Code limits the deflection of beams and lintels to (l/600) or 0.3 in. (7.6 mm) in order to prevent any cracking. Supporting beams and lintels in reinforced masonry are not required to meet these deflection limits. As stated in Ref. 17.3 Sec. 7.5.3.6, and with deflection calculated at service load, realistic predictions of beam and lintel deflections require use of reasonable estimates of moment of inertia, modulus of elasticity, modulus of rupture and appropriate creep and shrinkage coefficients for long-term effects. However, the Code does not provide guidelines for deflection calculations. The Branson equation for effective moment of inertia is used as in Equation 8.8 (a) or 8.8 (b) of Chapter 8, namely,

$$I_e = \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right) I_g + \left[1 - \left(\frac{M_{cr}}{M_a}\right)^3\right] I_{cr} \le 0.5\, I_g \qquad (17.50)$$

with the cracking moment of inertia, $I_{cr} = \dfrac{bc^3}{3} + n\,A_s(d-c)^2$ where c = depth of the neutral axis, n = modular ratio, and d = effective depth.

The Masonry Code does not give guidance either for calculating long-term deflection. The expression in Equation 8.9 of Chapter 8 for the deflection multiplier based on the ACI 318 Code can be used.

17.9.2 Wall Deflection

Code requirements for maximum allowable service load deflection in reinforced masonry walls are applicable only to simply supported and uniformly loaded elements. The deflection limitation is in terms of the wall height using the service level unfactored load as in Equation 17.51,

$$\delta_s = 0.007h \qquad (17.51)$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

$$\delta_u = \left(\frac{5\,M_u h^2}{48\,E_m I_{eff}}\right) = 0.07 + \frac{5\,(13{,}397)\,(15 \times 12)^2}{48 \times 1.35 \times 10^6 \times (0.40 \times 444)} = 0.19\ in.$$

$$M_{u1} = 13{,}197 + 1084 \times 0.19 = 13{,}608\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$

$$\delta_{u1} = 0.19 + \frac{(13603 - 13{,}018)}{(13{,}397 - 13{,}018)} \times 0.05 = 0.19 + 0.077 = 0.267\ in.$$

$$M_{u2} = 13{,}397 + 1084 \times 0.267 = 13{,}686\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$

$$\delta_{u2} = 0.19 + \frac{(13{,}686 - 13018)}{397} \times 0.05 = 0.19 + 0.088 = 0.278 \quad \approx 0.280\ in.$$

$$M_{u3} = 13{,}397 + 1084 \times 0.278 = 13{,}698\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$

$$\delta_{u3} = 0.19 + \frac{(13{,}698 - 13{,}018)}{397} = 0.19 + 0.090 = 0.280\ in.$$

Final converged moment M_u = 13, 698 *ft-lb/ft* vs. M_s = 13,548 *ft-lb/ft* in the bi-linear alternative.

17.10 EXAMPLE 17.9: DETAILED DESIGN OF CMU LINTEL IN SEISMIC ZONE

A reinforced concrete masonry (CMU) lintel has a clear span of 30 ft and acts as a beam over the entrance to a building in a seismic zone category D with a seismic modification factor $R = 5$ (Adapted from Ref. 17.3). Assume that the section is grouted solid with fine aggregate grout and consider the full height of the masonry including the parapet as the total depth of the lintel beam. The roof is a 42 ft span joist bearing on the lintel (21 ft load contributing length) and spaced 5 ft on centers. The lintel beam and supporting wall are 8 in. CMU grouted solid (80 psf) and a brick veneer (30 psf). Design this masonry lintel beam for flexure, shear, deflection and bearing. The lintel bearing is 16 in. into the supporting wall as shown in Figure 17.17.

Given:

$$f'_m = 1500\ psi$$
$$E_m = 900\,f'_m = 1.35 \times 10^6\ psi$$
$$f_y = 60{,}000\ psi$$
$$E_s = 29 \times 10^6\ psi$$
$$A_s = \text{Grade 60 steel}$$

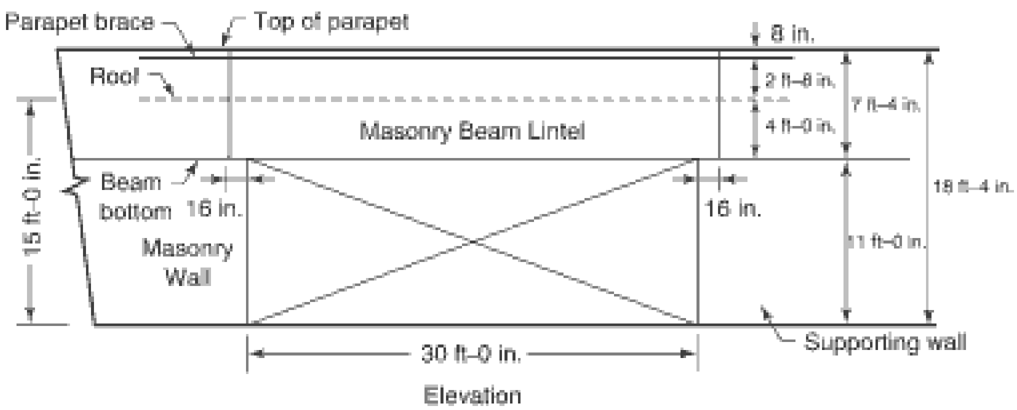


Figure 17.17 Masonry Concrete Lintel and Wall in Example 17.7.

Mortar: Type S PC-L

Seismic load combination: $1.2D + 1.6L_r$

Wind load intensity $w_u = 20\ psf$

Roof DL = 25 psf

Roof LL = 20 psf

CMU DL = 80 psf

Veneer DL = 30 psf

Solution

1. ***Factored Loads and Moments***

Lintel $DL = 1.2\,(80 + 30)$ psf (3.33 ft) = 968 plf

Roof $DL = 1.2$ (25 psf) (21 ft) = 630 plf

Roof $LL = 1.6$ (20 psf) (21 ft) = 672 plf

Total factored load $w_u = 1.2D + 1.6L_r = 968 + 630 + 672 = 2270\ plf$

Bearing length from Fig. 17.17 = 16 in. = 1.33 ft

$$\text{Supported span } l = 3 + \frac{2 \times 1.33\ ft}{2} = 31.33\ ft$$

$$\text{Bearing load } R_u = \frac{w_u\, l}{2} = \frac{31.3 \times 2270}{2} = 35{,}526\ lb$$

$$M_u = \frac{w_u\, l^2}{8} = \frac{2270\,(31.33)^2}{8} = 278{,}520\ ft\text{-}lb = 3{,}342{,}240\ in.\text{-}lb$$

Assume at this stage that two rows of reinforcing bars spaced at 2 in. are needed as tension reinforcement and a cover of 2-1/2 in. (Figure 17.18).

Hence, $d = [7.33\ ft \times 12\ in./ft - (2.5 + 1)] = 84.5\ in.$

Effective masonry unit thickness = 8 in. less 3/8 in. = 7.63 in.

2. ***Factored Design***

$$M_n \geq \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{3{,}342{,}240}{0.90} = 3{,}713{,}600\ in.\text{-}lb$$

Assuming moment lever arm = 0.9 d, then $M_n = A_s f_y (0.9\, d)$

or $3{,}713{,}600 = A_s \times 60{,}000\,(0.9 \times 84.5)$ giving required $A_s = 0.81\ in.^2$

Try 4 No. 4 bars = $4 \times 0.20 = 0.80\ in.^2$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.80\, f'_m b} = \frac{0.80 \times 60{,}000}{0.80 \times 1500 \times 7.63} = 5.24\ in.^2$$

$$Available\ M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2}\right) = 0.80 \times 60{,}000 \left(84.5 - \frac{5.24}{2}\right)$$

$$= 3{,}930{,}240\ in.\text{-}lb > Rqd.\ M_n = 3{,}713{,}600\ in.\text{-}lb,\ hence,\ O.K.$$

3. ***Maximum Allowable Reinforcement Check***

From Eq. 17.8 or Eq. 17.28 with the denominator = 0 when no compression reinforcement is accounted for,

$$Max.\ A_s = \frac{0.64\, f_m\, bd}{f_y}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_{mu}}{\varepsilon_{mu} + 1.5\,\varepsilon_y}\right) = \frac{0.64 \times 1500 \times 7.63\ in. \times 84.5\ in.}{60{,}000}$$
$$\left(\frac{0.0025}{0.0025 + 1.5 \times 0.00207}\right)$$
$$= 4.60\ in.^2 > 0.80\ in.^2,\ hence,\ O.K.$$

4. ***Cracking Moment Check***
From Table 17.9, for flexural tensile steel parallel to bed joints in solid units type S (P-CL), the modulus of rupture $f_r = 200\ psi$.

$$f_r = \frac{M_{cr}\, c}{I} = \frac{M_{cr}}{S},\ \text{hence,}$$

$$M_{cr} = f_r S = 200\left(\frac{bh^2}{6}\right) = 200 \times 6\frac{7.63\ in.(7.33\ ft \times 12\ in./ft)^2}{} = 1{,}967{,}767\ in.\text{-}lb$$

$1.3\ M_{cr} = 1.3 \times 1{,}967{,}767 = 2{,}558{,}097\ in.\text{-}lb <$ available $M_n = 3{,}390{,}240\ in.\text{-}lb$, O.K.

Hence, use four No. 4 bars in two rows for tension reinforcement as shown in Fig. 17.18.

5. ***Shear Capacity Check***

$$V_u = \frac{w_u\, l_n}{2} = \frac{2270 \times 30}{2} = 34{,}050\ lb$$

$$V_n = V_m + V_s,\ \text{where } V_m \text{ is dependent on the shear span to depth ratio } \frac{M_u}{V_u\, d_v}$$

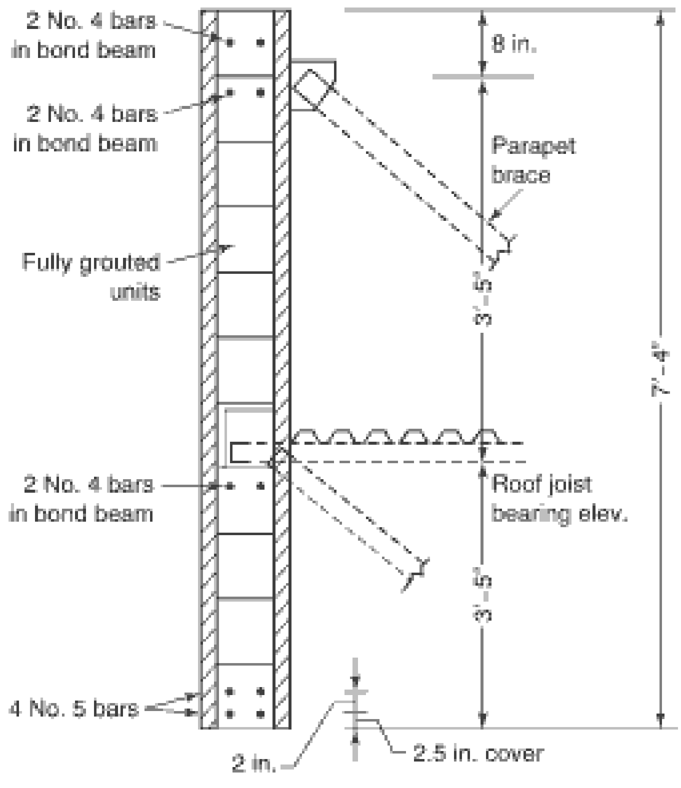


Figure 17.18 Lintel Beam Cross-Section in Example 17.8.

As a simply supported beam with maximum shear at the support and very small moment, the value of $\frac{M_u}{V_u\, d_v}$ becomes very small and can be conservatively assumed = 1.0. From Eq. 17.14,

$$V_m = \left[4.0 - 1.75\left(\frac{M_u}{V_u d_v}\right)\right] A_n \sqrt{f'_m} + 0.25 P_u$$

$$= [4.0 - 1.75 \times 1.0](7.63 \times 84.5)\sqrt{1500} = 56{,}184\ lb$$

$$\phi\, V_m = 0.80 \times 56{,}184 = 44{,}947\ lb > actual\ V_u = 34{,}050\ lb$$

Hence, no shear reinforcement is needed. See Fig. 17.18 for lintel beam reinforcement details. Note that a bonded beam reinforcement of two No. 4 bars in two layers is also used at the parapet braced level as well as two No. 4 bars in a bonded beam at the roof joist level for rigidity.

6. ***Bearing Stress Check***

From Fig. 17.17, bearing width = 16 in. Bearing area $A = 7.63 \times 16 = 122\ in.^2$

Available bearing capacity $C_u = 0.6\, Af'_m = 0.6 \times 122 \times 1500 = 109{,}872\ lb$

$\phi\, C_u = 0.6 \times 109{,}872 = 65{,}923\ lb >$ actual bearing load $R_u = 35{,}526\ lb$, O.K.

7. ***Parapet Bracing Check***

The Masonry Code requires that the compression zone of flexural members be braced laterally not more than 32 times the least width of the compression area. Hence, the maximum spacing of lateral bracing in this case has to be

$$s_{bracing} = 32 \times 7.63\ in. = 244\ in. = 20.3\ ft$$

In this parapet beam lintel, with a span of 30 ft, one brace satisfies the code. However, for unintended eccentricities and the fact that the roof joists are spaced at 5 ft on centers, space the bracing at 10 ft distance on center.

8. ***Deflection Check***

The Masonry Code stipulates that grouted reinforced masonry beam elements do not need to satisfy the allowable deflection limits. To justify this stipulation computationally in this example, the following check is made.

$$w_{ser} = (80 + 30)\,psf \times 7.33\ ft + (25 + 20)\,psf \times 21\ ft = 1751\ plf.$$

$$M_{cr} = 1{,}967{,}767\ in.\text{-}lb \text{ from before.}$$

$$E_m = 900\, f'_m = 900 \times 1500 = 1.35 \times 10^6 psi$$

$$h = 7'\text{-}4'' = 88\ in.$$

$$I_g = \frac{bh^3}{12} = \frac{7.63(88)^3}{12} = 433{,}303\ in.^4$$

$$M_{ser} = \frac{1751(30)^2}{8} \times 12 = 2{,}363{,}850\ in.\text{-}lb$$

From Eq. 17.52,

$$\delta_s = \frac{5\, M_{ser}\, h^2}{48\, E_m\, I_g} = \frac{5 \times 2{,}363{,}850\,(88)^2}{48 \times 1.35 \times 10^6 \times 433{,}303} = 0.003\ in.$$

$$\ll 0.3 \text{ in.} \ll \text{span}/600 = 30 \times 12/600 = 0.6 \text{ in. code limits}$$

Using the bi-linear Eq. 17.53 when $M_{ser} > M_{cr}$ as this case is would not change the present negligible deflection value to any meaningful extent, illustrating that for such masonry deep beams the deflection limit cannot be exceeded.

Adopt the design of this reinforced and fully grouted 7′-4″ deep concrete masonry lin

17.11 EXAMPLE 17.10: DESIGN OF GROUTED CMU WALL SUPPORTING BEAM LINTEL OF EXAMPLE 17.9

Design the supporting grouted solid 8 in. concrete masonry wall to the 7′−4″ lintel beam in Example 17.9.

Given:

$$\text{Effective } t = 7.625 \text{ in.}$$
$$\epsilon_{m} = 0.0025$$
$$f_{m} = 1500 \text{ psi}$$
$$f_{r} = 163 \text{ psi}$$
$$E_{m} = 1.35 \times 10^{6} \text{ psi}$$
$$f_{y} = 60{,}000 \text{ psi}$$
$$E_{s} = 29 \times 10^{6} \text{ psi}$$
$$d = 3.813 \text{ in.}$$
$$\text{Flexure } \phi = 0.90$$

Unit width = 12 in.

Wall height, h, to roof level = 15′−0″

Total wall height to parapet top = 18′−4″

Tensile A_s = No.5 bars (0.31 in.^{2}) at 42 in. c/c

Eccentricity of roof loads: e = 1.3 in.

Seismic factors: S_{DS} = 0.90, I = 1.25

Wind speed = 140 mph

Wall CMU unit DL (solid grouted)	= 80 psf
Parapet CMU unit load (partially grouted)	= 60 psf
Clay veneer DL	= 30 psf
Roof DL	= 25 psf
Roof LL	= 20 psf

Solution

The wall (CMU = 80 psf) is laterally supported at the roof level acting as a diaphragm to the wall at elevation 15 ft above the foundation (Fig. 17.17) and also subjected to the 3′-4″ parapet (CMU = 60 psf). Hence, the unbraced wall height = 15′-0″.

1. ***Loading***

   (a) *Beam Loads*

   Parapet beam projects 16 in (1.33 ft) into the wall. The roof joist is 42 ft long, thus, contributing load to the roof on 42/2 = 21 ft length.

$$\text{Beam } DL = (80\,psf + 30\,psf)\left(7.33\,ft \times \frac{31.33\,ft}{2}\right) = 12{,}631\ lb$$

$$\text{Roof } DL = (25\,psf \times 25\,ft)\left(\frac{31.33}{2}\right) = 8{,}224\ lb$$

$$\text{Roof } LL = (20\,psf \times 21\,ft)\left(\frac{31.33}{2}\right) = 6{,}579\ lb$$

$$\text{Total roof loads:}\quad W_{DL} = 12{,}631 + 8{,}224 = 20{,}855\ lb$$
$$W_{LL} = 6{,}579\ lb$$

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

From Eq. 17.49, Secondary moment effect,

$$M_s = \left(\frac{w_s h^2}{8} + P_s \frac{e_n}{2}\right) + P_s \delta_n$$

From Eq. 17.57 for $M_s > M_{cr}$

$$\delta_s = \frac{5\, M_{cr}\, h^2}{48\, E_m\, I_g} + \frac{5\,(M_s - M_{cr})\, h^2}{48\, E_m\, I_{cr}}$$

If we use the bi-linear approach as in Example 17.7 with A_s = No. 5 bars at 2 *ft* c/c, namely $\left(\frac{0.31\ in.^2}{2}\right)$ per *ft*, the resulting deflection value for the first cycle would be $\delta_u = 0.295\ in.$

$$M_s = 21{,}240\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$
$$P_s = 8819\ lb/ft$$
$$f_r = 163\ psi$$
$$h = 15\ ft = 180\ in.$$

$$18{,}979,\ M_{cr} = f_r S = 163\left[\frac{12(7.63)^2}{6}\right] = 18{,}979,\ \text{say},\ 19{,}000\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$

$$I_{eff} = 0.40\, I_g = 0.40\left[\frac{12\ in.(7.63\ in.)^3}{12}\right] = 0.40\,(444)\ in.^4 = 177\ in.^4$$

$$I_g = 444\ in.^4$$
$$h = 15\ ft \times 12 = 180\ in.$$
$$\delta_s = \frac{5(19{,}000)(180)^2}{48 \times 1.35 \times 10^6 \times 444} + \frac{5(21{,}240 - 19{,}000)(180)^2}{48 \times 1.35 \times 10^6 \times 177}$$
$$= 0.107 + 0.00001412(21{,}240 - 19{,}000) = 0.107 + 0.032 = 0.139\ in.$$

(a) *First Iteration*
Applying Eq. 17.49,

$$M_s = \left(\frac{w_s h^2}{8} + P_s \frac{e_n}{2}\right) + P_s \delta_u$$
$$M_{s1} = 21{,}240 + 8879\,(0.139) = 22{,}474\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$
$$\delta_{s1} = 0.107 + 0.00001412\,(22{,}474 - 19{,}000)$$
$$= 0.107 + 0.049 = 0.156\ in.$$

as compared to $\delta_u = 0.297$ in the bi-linear I_{cr} approach.

(b) *Second Iteration*

$$M_{s2} = 21{,}240 + 8879\,(0.156) = 22{,}625\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$
$$\delta_{s2} = 0.107 + 0.00001412\,(22{,}625 - 19{,}000) = 0.158\ in.$$

(c) *Third Iteration*

$$M_{s3} = 21{,}240 + 8879\,(0.158) = 22,643\ in.\text{-}lb/ft$$
$$\delta_{s3} = 0.107 + 0.00001412\,(22648 - 19{,}000) = 0.1584\ in.$$

Consider the iteration achieved and use the $M_u = 22{,}643$ *in.-lb/ft* for the design.

$$M_n = \frac{M_u}{\phi} = \frac{22{,}643}{0.9} = 25{,}159 \text{ in.-lb/ft}$$

$$M_n = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2} \right).$$ Assume moment arm $jd = 0.9\,d$.

Since the reinforcing bars are in the geometric centroid of the CMU unit,

$$d = \frac{1}{2} \times 7.63 \text{ in.} = 3.815 \text{ in.}$$

Hence, $25{,}159 = A_s \times 60{,}000\,(0.9 \times 3.815)$, giving

$$A_s = \frac{25{,}159}{60{,}000\,(0.9 \times 3.815)} = 0.122 \text{ in.}^2/ft$$

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.80 f'_m b} = \frac{0.122 \times 60{,}000}{0.80 \times 1500 \times 12} = 0.51 \text{ in.}$$

$$A_s = \frac{25{,}159}{60{,}000\left(3.81 - \dfrac{0.51}{2}\right)} = 0.12 \text{ in.}^2/ft$$

Placing bars vertically in the wall at 2 ft spacing we need to double the area in order to achieve the same result so that $A_s = 2 \times 0.12 = 0.24$ *in.*^{2} at 2 ft c/c.
Use No. 5 bars at 2 ft c/c spacing = 0.31 *in.*^{2} > than the required 0.24 *in.*^{2}

4. ***Maximum allowable reinforcement check***
Maximum reinforcement percentage from Eq. 17.29(a) (bracketed value in the denominator = 0 when no compression reinforcement present).

$$\rho_{max} = \frac{0.64 f'_m \left(\dfrac{\epsilon_{mu}}{\epsilon_{mu} + \alpha \epsilon_y} \right) - \dfrac{P_u}{bd}}{f_y}$$

$\epsilon_{mu} = 0.0025$ for concrete masonry.

As stated in Section 17.6.5. for out-of-plane forces the following load combination has to be applied for the out-of-plane force:

$$U = D + 0.75L + 0.525\,Q_E$$

Or

$$P_u = 6539 + 0.75 \times 2065 + 0.525 \times 1177 = 8706 \text{ plf}$$

$$\rho_{max} = \frac{0.64 \times 1500 \left(\dfrac{0.0025}{.0025 + 1.5 \times 0.00207} \right) - \dfrac{8706}{12 \times 3.81}}{60{,}000} = 0.00396$$

$$\text{Actual } \rho = \frac{0.31}{2\,ft \times 12} = 0.0034 < 0.00396, \text{ O.K.}$$

5. ***Check Shear Capacity***
Maximum V_u from load combination 4 lb/ft

$$d_v = 3.81 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{M_u}{V_u d_v} = \frac{22{,}643}{467 \times 3.81} = 12.7 \gg 1.0, \text{ use } \frac{M_u}{V_u d_v} = 1.0$$

From Eq. 17.13(b).
Max. allowable shear force:

The projected area of the failure surface from Eq. 17.34 is

$$A_{pt} = 2\,(\pi\, l_b^2) = 2\,\pi\,(4.0)^2 = 100\ in.^2$$

From Eq. 17.31, the nominal axial strength of a bolt based on masonry breakout is

$$B_{an} = 4\,A_{pt}\sqrt{f'_m} = 4 \times 100\sqrt{1500} = 15{,}492\ lb > 10{,}500\ lb, \quad \text{O.K.}$$

Anchor Bolt Shear Strength

Since the shear force is along the wall length, the anchor bolts are loaded in the plane of the wall. Hence, masonry breakout failure does not occur, and Eq. 17.35, where

$$B_{vn} = 4\,A_{pv}\sqrt{f'_m}\ \text{does not apply.}$$

However the steel bolts have to be checked for shear capacity from Eq. 17.36,

$$B_{vn} = 0.6\,A_b\,f_y$$

$$A_b = 0.31\ in.^2 \quad \text{and} \quad f_y = 27{,}000\ psi,\ \text{hence}$$

$$B_{vn} = 2\,(0.6 \times 0.31 \times 27{,}000) = 10{,}044\ lb$$

$$\phi\, B_{vn} = 0.9 \times 10{,}044 = 9040\ lb \gg 2800\ \text{lb, O.K.}$$

Since the anchors are subjected to combined tension and shear, they have to satisfy the interaction Eq. 17.38 as follows.

$$\frac{b_{af}}{\phi\, B_{an}} + \frac{b_{vf}}{\phi\, B_{vn}} \le 1.0$$

$$\frac{10{,}500}{15{,}492} + \frac{2800}{10{,}044} = 0.678 + 0.274 = 0.957 < 1.0,\ \text{O.K.}$$

Adopt the design using two size 5/8 in. diameter–headed steel bolts 8 in. apart.

SELECTED REFERENCES

17.1. Jason J. Thompson, "Masonry Design and Construction," Chapter 28, *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., CRC Press/Taylor and Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1380 pp.

17.2. ACI, *Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures*, TMS 402-08/ACI 350-08/ASCE 5-08, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, 2008, 256 pp.

17.3. TMS, *Masonry Designer's Guide*, 5th ed., The Masonry Society, Boulder, CO, 2007.

17.4. Nawy, E. G., *Reinforced Concrete—A Fundamental Approach*, 6th ed., Prentice Hall/ Pearson Education Group, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2008, 934 pp.

17.5. Nawy, E. G., *Concrete Construction Engineering Handbook*, 2nd ed., 2008, pp. 1560, and 1st ed., 1998, pp. 1150, CRC Press/Taylor and Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2008, 1560 pp.

17.6. Schneider, R. R. and Dickey, W. L., *Reinforced Masonry Design*, 3rd ed., Prentice Hall/Pearson Education Group, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 1994, 729 pp.

17.7. Klingner, R. E., "Masonry Design Notes," The Masonry Society, Boulder, CO, January 2007, 442 pp.

17.8. Masonry Society Joint Council (MSJC), *Specifications for Masonry Structures*, TMS 602-08/ ACI 530.1-08/ASCE 6-08, American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI, and the Masonry Society (TMS), Boulder, CO, 32 pp.

17.9. Nawy, E. G., *Prestressed Concrete—A Fundamental Approach*, 5th ed., Prentice Hall/Pearson Education Group, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2006, 944 pp.

17.10. Klingner, R. E., ed., "Performance of Masonry Structures in the Northridge, California Earthquake of January 17, 1994," *Technical Report 301-94*, The Masonry Society, Boulder, Colorado, June 1994, 160 pp.

17.11. Klingner, R. E., "Masonry Structures." Chapter 16 of *CRC Earthquake Handbook*, W. F. Chen and C. Scawthorn, eds., CRC Press LLC, Boca Raton, FL, September 2002.

17.12. Klingner, R. E., "Masonry Structures," Chapter of *Earthquake Engineering: From Engineering Seismology to Performance-Based Engineering*, Bozorgnia and Bertero, eds., CRC Press LLC, Boca Raton, FL, May 2004.

PROBLEMS FOR SOLUTION

17.1. Design for flexure and shear an 8 in. thick a grouted CMU masonry lintel having a 16 ft 6 in. span and a bearing length of 20 in. on the supporting wall to support a roof transmitting 400 plf load to the lintel

Given:

Effective t	7.63 in.
Unit weight	80 psf
Wall height to roof	14 ft.
Height of lintel	4′-9″
Parapet height	3′-6″
Service live load on roof	100 plf
Governing factored loading	$1.2D + 1.6L$
f_r	163 psi
f_m	1500 psi
f_y	60,000 psi

17.2. A fully grouted 8 in. CMU masonry wall in a nonseismic zone is 18 ft high and 25 ft long, extending through a parapet wall 4 ft high above the roof level. It is subjected to an axial load intensity at service of $DL = 500$ plf, $LL = 250$ plf, and a horizontal wind force of 30 psf. Design the wall and construct a P–M interaction diagram for this wall at the following coordinate points:

Steel control: c/d : 0.01, 0.20, 0.4

Masonry control: c/d : 0.6, 0.7, 1.0, 2.0

Given:

ϵ_m	0.0025
f_m	1500 psi
f_y	60,000 psi
E_m	$900\ f_m$
E_s	29×10^6
β_1	0.80
CMU unit weight	80 psf
Roof load eccentricity	2.5 in.
Effective wall thickness	$t = 7.63$ in.

17.3. Analyze the stability of the wall in Problem 17.2 if it is located in a high-intensity seismic zone, assuming that it is loaded out-of-plane at an eccentricity $e = 2.5$ in. with the roof at the roof level acting as a shear wall reaction to the wall.

Seismic load intensity $F_s = 0.4\ S_{ds}\ IW_p$, where $D_{ds} = 1.15$, $I = 1.25$, $W_p = 80\ psf$.

Vertical effect of seismic load $E = \pm 0.2\ S_{ds}\ P_{DL}$, where P_{DL} = Total dead load from Problem 17.2.

17.4. A prestressed CMU non–load bearing wall is 22 ft high and has movement joints at 25 ft on centers. It consists of an exterior clay masonry $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. thick veneer and inner

A

TABLES AND NOMOGRAMS

A.1 Selected Conversion Factors to SI Units.
A.2a Geometrical Properties of Reinforcing Bars.
A.2b ASTM Standard Metric Reinforcing Bars.
A.3 Cross-sectional Area of Bars for Various Bar Combinations.
A.4 Area of Bars in a 1-ft-Wide Slab Strip.
A.5 Gross Moment of Inertia of T-sections.
A.6 Cracked Section Moment of Inertia I_{cr} for Rectangular Sections with Tension Reinforcement Only.
A.7 Effective Moment of Inertia I_e.
A.8 Stirrup Design Requirements for Nonprestressed Beams with Vertical Stirrups and Normal-Weight Concrete Subjected to Flexure and Shear.
A.9 Nominal Strength Coefficients for Design of Rectangular Beams with Tension Reinforcement Only, $f'_c = 6000$ psi.
A.10 Nominal Strength Coefficients for Rectangular Beams with Compression Reinforcement in which $f'_s = f_y$ and for Flanged Sections with $h_f \angle a$; $f'_c = 3000$ & 4000 psi.
A.11 Nominal Moment Strength M_n for Compression Reinforcement in which $f'_s = f_y$.

Photo A.1 City Spire, one of the tallest concrete buildings in New York City. (Courtesy The Concrete Industry Board, Inc., New York.)

(Figures A-6 through A-42 are reprinted from ACI SP-17, 1997, with permission)

To convert from	to	multiply by
	Length	
inch	millimeter (mm)	25.4E*
foot	meter (m)	0.3048E
yard	meter (m)	0.9144E
mile (statute)	kilometer (km)	1.609
	Area	
square inch	square centimeter (cm^2)	6.452
square foot	square meter (m^2)	0.09290
square yard	square meter (m^2)	0.8361
	Volume (Capacity)	
ounce	cubic centimeter (cm^3)	29.57
gallon	cubic meter (m^3)	0.003785
cubic inch	cubic centimeter (cm^3)	16.4
cubic foot	cubic meter (m^3)	0.02832
cubic yard	cubic meter (m^3)	0.765
	Force	
kilogram-force	newton (N)	9.807
kip-force	kilonewton (kN)	4.448
pound-force	newton (N)	4.448
	Pressure or Stress (Force per Area)	
kilogram-force/square meter	pascal (Pa)	9.807
kip-force/square inch (ksi)	megapascal (MPa)	6.895
newton/square meter (N/m^2)	pascal (Pa)	1.000E
pound-force/square foot	pascal (Pa)	47.88
pound-force/square inch (psi)	pascal (Pa)	6895
	Bending Moment or Torque	
inch-pound-force	newton-meter (Nm)	0.1130
foot-pound-force	newton-meter (Nm)	1.356
meter-kilogram-force	newton-meter (Nm)	9.807
	Mass	
ounce-mass (avoirdupois)	gram (g)	28.35
pound-mass (avoirdupois)	kilogram (kg)	0.4536
ton (metric)	megagram (Mg)	1.000E
ton (short 2000 lbm)	megagram (Mg)	0.9072
	Mass per Volume	
pound-mass/cubic foot	kilogram/cubic meter (kg/m^3)	16.02
pound-mass/cubic yard	kilogram/cubic meter (kg/m^3)	0.5933
pound-mass/gallon	kilogram/cubic meter (kg/m^3)	119.8
	Temperature	
deg Fahrenheit (F)	deg Celsius (C)	$t_C = (t_F - 32)/1.8$
deg Celsius (C)	deg Fahrenheit (F)	$t_F = 1.8t_C + 32$

*E = English Unit

Figure A.1 Selected conversion factors to SI units.

Bar size designation	Nominal cross section area, sq. in.	Weight, lb per ft	Nominal diameter, in.
#3	0.11	0.376	0.375
#4	0.20	0.668	0.500
#5	0.31	1.043	0.625
#6	0.44	1.502	0.750
#7	0.60	2.044	0.875
#8	0.79	2.670	1.000
#9	1.00	3.400	1.128
#10	1.27	4.303	1.270
#11	1.56	5.313	1.410
#14	2.25	7.650	1.693
#18	4.00	13.600	2.257

Figure A.2a Geometrical properties of reinforcing bars.

Bar Size Designation	Nominal Dimensions		
	Mass (Kg/m)	Diameter (mm)	Area (mm^2)
10 M	0.785	11.3	100
15 M	1.570	16.0	200
20 M	2.355	19.5	300
25 M	3.925	25.2	500
30 M	5.495	29.9	700
35 M	7.850	35.7	1000
45 M	11.775	43.7	1500
55 M	19.625	56.4	2500

Note: ASTM A615M Grade 300 is limited to size Nos. 10 M through 20 M; otherwise grades 400 or 500 MPa for all the sizes. Check availability with local suppliers for Nos. 45 M and 55 M.

Figure A.2b ASTM standard metric reinforcing bars.

Areas, A_s (or A_s') in sq. in.
Columns headed 0 5 contain data for bars of one size in groups of one to ten.

Columns headed 1 2 3 4 5 contain data for bars of two sizes with from one to five of each size.

			0	5		1	2	3	4	5		1	2	3	4	5		1	2	3	4	5
#4	1	#4	0.20	1.20	#3	0.31	0.42	0.53	0.64	0.75												
	2		0.40	1.40		0.51	0.62	0.73	0.84	0.95												
	3		0.60	1.60		0.71	0.82	0.93	1.04	1.15												
	4		0.80	1.80		0.91	1.02	1.13	1.24	1.35												
	5		1.00	2.00		1.11	1.22	1.33	1.44	1.55												
#5	1	#5	0.31	1.86	#4	0.51	0.71	0.91	1.11	1.31	#3	0.42	0.53	0.64	0.75	0.86						
	2		0.62	2.17		0.82	1.02	1.22	1.42	1.62		0.73	0.84	0.95	1.06	1.17						
	3		0.93	2.48		1.13	1.33	1.53	1.73	1.93		1.04	1.15	1.26	1.37	1.48						
	4		1.24	2.79		1.44	1.64	1.84	2.04	2.24		1.35	1.46	1.57	1.68	1.79						
	5		1.55	3.10		1.75	1.95	2.15	2.35	2.55		1.66	1.77	1.88	1.99	2.10						
#6	1	#6	0.44	2.64	#5	0.75	1.06	1.37	1.68	1.99	#4	0.64	0.84	1.04	1.24	1.44	#3	0.55	0.66	0.77	0.88	0.99
	2		0.88	3.08		1.19	1.50	1.81	2.12	2.43		1.08	1.28	1.48	1.68	1.88		0.99	1.10	1.21	1.32	1.43
	3		1.32	3.52		1.63	1.94	2.25	2.56	2.87		1.52	1.72	1.92	2.12	2.32		1.43	1.54	1.65	1.76	1.87
	4		1.76	3.96		2.07	2.38	2.69	3.00	3.31		1.96	2.16	2.36	2.56	2.76		1.87	1.98	2.09	2.20	2.31
	5		2.20	4.40		2.51	2.82	3.13	3.44	3.75		2.40	2.60	2.80	3.00	3.20		2.31	2.42	2.53	2.64	2.75
#7	1	#7	0.60	3.60	#6	1.04	1.48	1.92	2.36	2.80	#5	0.91	1.22	1.53	1.84	2.15	#4	0.80	1.00	1.20	1.40	1.60
	2		1.20	4.20		1.64	2.08	2.52	2.96	3.40		1.51	1.82	2.13	2.44	2.75		1.40	1.60	1.80	2.00	2.20
	3		1.80	4.80		2.24	2.68	3.12	3.56	4.00		2.11	2.42	2.73	3.04	3.35		2.00	2.20	2.40	2.60	2.80
	4		2.40	5.40		2.84	3.28	3.72	4.16	4.60		2.71	3.02	3.33	3.64	3.95		2.60	2.80	3.00	3.20	3.40
	5		3.00	6.00		3.44	3.88	4.32	4.76	5.20		3.31	3.62	3.93	4.24	4.55		3.20	3.40	3.60	3.80	4.00
#8	1	#8	0.79	4.74	#7	1.39	1.99	2.59	3.19	3.79	#6	1.23	1.67	2.11	2.55	2.99	#5	1.10	1.41	1.72	2.03	2.34
	2		1.58	5.53		2.18	2.78	3.38	3.98	4.58		2.02	2.46	2.90	3.34	3.78		1.89	2.20	2.51	2.82	3.13
	3		2.37	6.32		2.97	3.57	4.17	4.77	5.37		2.81	3.25	3.69	4.13	4.57		2.68	2.99	3.30	3.61	3.92
	4		3.16	7.11		3.76	4.36	4.96	5.56	6.16		3.60	4.04	4.48	4.92	5.36		3.47	3.78	4.09	4.40	4.71
	5		3.95	7.90		4.55	5.15	5.75	6.35	6.95		4.39	4.83	5.27	5.71	6.15		4.26	4.57	4.88	5.19	5.50
#9	1	#9	1.00	6.00	#8	1.79	2.58	3.37	4.16	4.95	#7	1.60	2.20	2.80	3.40	4.00	#6	1.44	1.88	2.32	2.76	3.20
	2		2.00	7.00		2.79	3.58	4.37	5.16	5.95		2.60	3.20	3.80	4.40	5.00		2.44	2.88	3.32	3.76	4.20
	3		3.00	8.00		3.79	4.58	5.37	6.16	6.95		3.60	4.20	4.80	5.40	6.00		3.44	3.88	4.32	4.76	5.20
	4		4.00	9.00		4.79	5.58	6.37	7.16	7.95		4.60	5.20	5.80	6.40	7.00		4.44	4.88	5.32	5.76	6.20
	5		5.00	10.00		5.79	6.58	7.37	8.16	8.95		5.60	6.20	6.80	7.40	8.00		5.44	5.88	6.32	6.76	7.20
#10	1	#10	1.27	7.62	#9	2.27	3.27	4.27	5.27	6.27	#8	2.06	2.85	3.64	4.43	5.22	#7	1.87	2.47	3.07	3.67	4.27
	2		2.54	8.89		3.54	4.54	5.54	6.54	7.54		3.33	4.12	4.91	5.70	6.49		3.14	3.74	4.34	4.94	5.54
	3		3.81	10.16		4.81	5.81	6.81	7.81	8.81		4.60	5.39	6.18	6.97	7.76		4.41	5.01	5.61	6.21	6.81
	4		5.08	11.43		6.08	7.08	8.08	9.08	10.08		5.87	6.66	7.45	8.24	9.03		5.68	6.28	6.88	7.48	8.08
	5		6.35	12.70		7.35	8.35	9.35	10.35	11.35		7.14	7.93	8.72	9.51	10.30		6.95	7.55	8.15	8.75	9.35
#11	1	#11	1.56	9.36	#10	2.83	4.10	5.37	6.64	7.91	#9	2.56	3.56	4.56	5.56	6.56	#8	2.35	3.14	3.93	4.72	5.51
	2		3.12	10.92		4.39	5.66	6.93	8.20	9.47		4.12	5.12	6.12	7.12	8.12		3.91	4.70	5.49	6.28	7.07
	3		4.68	12.48		5.95	7.22	8.49	9.76	11.03		5.68	6.68	7.68	8.68	9.68		5.47	6.26	7.05	7.84	8.63
	4		6.24	14.04		7.51	8.78	10.05	11.32	12.59		7.24	8.24	9.24	10.24	11.24		7.03	7.82	8.61	9.40	10.19
	5		7.80	15.60		9.07	10.34	11.61	12.88	14.15		8.80	9.80	10.80	11.80	12.80		8.59	9.38	10.17	10.96	11.75
#14	1	#14	2.25	13.50	#11	3.81	5.37	6.93	8.49	10.05	#10	3.52	4.79	6.06	7.33	8.60	#9	3.25	4.25	5.25	6.25	7.25
	2		4.50	15.75		6.06	7.62	9.18	10.74	12.30		5.77	7.04	8.31	9.58	10.85		5.50	6.50	7.50	8.50	9.50
	3		6.75	18.00		8.31	9.87	11.43	12.99	14.55		8.02	9.29	10.56	11.83	13.10		7.75	8.75	9.75	10.75	11.75
	4		9.00	20.25		10.56	12.12	13.68	15.24	16.80		10.27	11.54	12.81	14.08	15.35		10.00	11.00	12.00	13.00	14.00
	5		11.25	22.50		12.81	14.37	15.93	17.49	19.05		12.52	13.79	15.06	16.33	17.60		12.25	13.25	14.25	15.25	16.25
#18	1	#18	4.00	24.00	#14	6.25	8.50	10.75	13.00	15.25	#11	5.56	7.12	8.68	10.24	11.80	#10	5.27	6.54	7.81	9.08	10.35
	2		8.00	28.00		10.25	12.50	14.75	17.00	19.25		9.56	11.12	12.68	14.24	15.80		9.27	10.54	11.81	13.08	14.35
	3		12.00	32.00		14.25	16.50	18.75	21.00	23.25		13.56	15.12	16.68	18.24	19.80		13.27	14.54	15.81	17.08	18.35
	4		16.00	36.00		18.25	20.50	22.75	25.00	27.25		17.56	19.12	20.68	22.24	23.80		17.27	18.54	19.81	21.08	22.35
	5		20.00	40.00		22.25	24.50	26.75	29.00	31.25		21.56	23.12	24.68	26.24	27.80		21.27	22.54	23.81	25.08	26.35

Figure A.3 Cross-sectional area of bars for various bar combinations.

Spacing, in	Cross section area of bar, A_s (or A_s'), in.^{2} — Bar size #3	#4	#5	#6	#7	#8	#9	#10	#11	#14	#18	Spacing, in.
4	0.33	0.60	0.93	1.32	1.80	2.37	3.00	3.81	4.68			4
4½	0.29	0.53	0.83	1.17	1.60	2.11	2.67	3.39	4.16	6.00		4½
5	0.26	0.48	0.74	1.06	1.44	1.90	2.40	3.05	3.74	5.40	9.60	5
5½	0.24	0.44	0.68	0.96	1.31	1.72	2.18	2.77	3.40	4.91	8.73	5½
6	0.22	0.40	0.62	0.88	1.20	1.58	2.00	2.54	3.12	4.50	8.00	6
6½	0.20	0.37	0.57	0.81	1.11	1.46	1.85	2.34	2.88	4.15	7.38	6½
7	0.19	0.34	0.53	0.75	1.03	1.35	1.71	2.18	2.67	3.86	6.86	7
7½	0.18	0.32	0.50	0.70	0.96	1.26	1.60	2.03	2.50	3.60	6.40	7½
8	0.17	0.30	0.47	0.66	0.90	1.19	1.50	1.91	2.34	3.38	6.00	8
8½	0.16	0.28	0.44	0.62	0.85	1.12	1.41	1.79	2.20	3.18	5.65	8½
9	0.15	0.27	0.41	0.59	0.80	1.05	1.33	1.69	2.08	3.00	5.33	9
9½	0.14	0.25	0.39	0.56	0.76	1.00	1.26	1.60	1.97	2.84	5.05	9½
10	0.13	0.24	0.37	0.53	0.72	0.95	1.20	1.52	1.87	2.70	4.80	10
10½	0.13	0.23	0.35	0.50	0.69	0.90	1.14	1.45	1.78	2.57	4.57	10½
11	0.12	0.22	0.34	0.48	0.65	0.86	1.09	1.39	1.70	2.45	4.36	11
11½	0.11	0.21	0.32	0.46	0.63	0.82	1.04	1.33	1.63	2.35	4.17	11½
12	0.11	0.20	0.31	0.44	0.60	0.79	1.00	1.27	1.56	2.25	4.00	12
13	0.10	0.18	0.29	0.41	0.55	0.73	0.92	1.17	1.44	2.08	3.69	13
14	0.09	0.17	0.27	0.38	0.51	0.68	0.86	1.09	1.34	1.93	3.43	14
15	0.09	0.16	0.25	0.35	0.48	0.63	0.80	1.02	1.25	1.80	3.20	15
16	0.08	0.15	0.23	0.33	0.45	0.59	0.75	0.95	1.17	1.69	3.00	16
17	0.08	0.14	0.22	0.31	0.42	0.56	0.71	0.90	1.10	1.59	2.82	17
18	0.07	0.13	0.21	0.29	0.40	0.53	0.67	0.85	1.04	1.50	2.67	18

Figure A.4 Area of bars in a 1-ft-wide slab strip.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

Hidden page

For a rectangular beam with compression reinforcement in which $f_s' = f_y$:

$$\rho - \rho' \geq 0.85\beta_1 \frac{f_c'}{f_y}\frac{d'}{d}\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 - f_y}$$

and $M_{n2} = A_{s2} d a_n'$, kip-ft

where $a_n' = \dfrac{f_y}{12{,}000}\left(1 - \dfrac{d'}{d}\right)$

$A_s = A_{s1} + A_{s2}$

$\rho = A_s/bd$, $M_n \geq M_u/\phi$

For a flanged section with $h_f < a$:

$M_{n2} = A_{sf} d a_{nf}$, kip-ft

where $A_{sf} = K_{nf} j_f b_w h_f / a_{nf}$, in.^{2}

$$K_{nf} = \frac{0.85 f_c'}{12{,}000}\left(\frac{b}{b_w} - 1\right)$$

$$a_{nf} = \frac{f_y}{12{,}000}\left(1 - \frac{h_f}{2d}\right)$$

$j_f = 1 - h_f/2d$

$A_s = A_{sw} + A_{sf}$

f_c'	3000						4000							
f_y	40,000		60,000		75,000		40,000		60,000		75,000			
d'/d	$\rho-\rho'$	a_n' or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a_n' or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a_n' or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a_n' or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a_n' or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a_n' or a_{nf}	h_f/d	j_f
0.01	0.0010	3.30	0.0012	4.95	0.0021	6.19	0.0013	3.30	0.0016	4.95	0.0028	6.19	0.02	0.99
0.02	0.0020	3.27	0.0023	4.90	0.0042	6.13	0.0027	3.27	0.0031	4.90	0.0056	6.13	0.04	0.98
0.03	0.0030	3.23	0.0035	4.85	0.0063	6.06	0.0040	3.23	0.0047	4.85	0.0084	6.06	0.06	0.97
0.04	0.0040	3.20	0.0047	4.80	0.0084	6.00	0.0053	3.20	0.0062	4.80	0.0112	6.00	0.08	0.96
0.05	0.0050	3.17	0.0058	4.75	0.0105	5.94	0.0067	3.17	0.0078	4.75	0.0140	5.94	0.10	0.95
0.06	0.0060	3.13	0.0070	4.70	0.0126	5.88	0.0080	3.13	0.0093	4.70	0.0168	5.88	0.12	0.94
0.07	0.0070	3.10	0.0081	4.65	0.0147	5.81	0.0094	3.10	0.0109	4.65	0.0196	5.81	0.14	0.93
0.08	0.0080	3.07	0.0093	4.60		5.75	0.0107	3.07	0.0124	4.60		5.75	0.16	0.92
0.09	0.0090	3.03	0.0105	4.55		5.69	0.0120	3.03	0.0140	4.55		5.69	0.18	0.91
0.10	0.0100	3.00	0.0116	4.50		5.63	0.0134	3.00	0.0155	4.50		5.63	0.20	0.90
0.11	0.0110	2.97	0.0128	4.45		5.56	0.0147	2.97	0.0171	4.45		5.56	0.22	0.89
0.12	0.0120	2.93	0.0140	4.40		5.50	0.0160	2.93	0.0186	4.40		5.50	0.24	0.88
0.13	0.0130	2.90	0.0151	4.35		5.44	0.0174	2.90	0.0202	4.35		5.44	0.26	0.87
0.14	0.0140	2.87	0.0163	4.30		5.38	0.0187	2.87	0.0217	4.30		5.38	0.28	0.86
0.15	0.0150	2.83	0.0175	4.25		5.31	0.0201	2.83	0.0233	4.25		5.31	0.30	0.85
0.16	0.0160	2.80	0.0186	4.20		5.25	0.0214	2.80	0.0248	4.20		5.25	0.32	0.84
0.17	0.0171	2.77	0.0198	4.15		5.19	0.0227	2.77	0.0264	4.15		5.19	0.34	0.83
0.18	0.0181	2.73	0.0210	4.10		5.13	0.0241	2.73	0.0279	4.10		5.13	0.36	0.82
0.19	0.0191	2.70		4.05		5.06	0.0254	2.70		4.05		5.06	0.38	0.81
0.20	0.0201	2.67		4.00		5.00	0.0267	2.67		4.00		5.00	0.40	0.80
0.21	0.0211	2.63		3.95		4.94	0.0281	2.63		3.95		4.94	0.42	0.79
0.22	0.0221	2.60		3.90		4.88	0.0294	2.60		3.90		4.88	0.44	0.78
0.23	0.0231	2.57		3.85		4.81	0.0308	2.57		3.85		4.81	0.46	0.77
0.24	0.0241	2.53		3.80		4.75	0.0321	2.53		3.80		4.75	0.48	0.76
0.25	0.0251	2.50		3.75		4.69	0.0334	2.50		3.75		4.69	0.50	0.75
0.26	0.0261	2.47		3.70		4.63	0.0348	2.47		3.70		4.63	0.52	0.74
0.27	0.0271	2.43		3.65		4.56	0.0361	2.43		3.65		4.56	0.54	0.73
0.28	0.0281	2.40		3.60		4.50	0.0374	2.40		3.60		4.50	0.56	0.72
0.29	0.0291	2.37		3.55		4.44	0.0388	2.37		3.55		4.44	0.58	0.71
0.30	0.0301	2.33		3.50		4.37	0.0401	2.33		3.50		4.37	0.60	0.70
0.31	0.0311	2.30		3.45		4.31	0.0415	2.30		3.45		4.31	0.62	0.69
0.32	0.0321	2.27		3.40		4.25	0.0428	2.27		3.40		4.25	0.64	0.68
0.33	0.0331	2.23		3.35		4.19	0.0441	2.23		3.35		4.19	0.66	0.67
0.34	0.0341	2.20		3.30		4.12	0.0455	2.20		3.30		4.12	0.68	0.66
0.35	0.0351	2.17		3.25		4.06	0.0468	2.17		3.25		4.06	0.70	0.65
0.36	0.0361	2.13		3.20		4.00	0.0481	2.13		3.20		4.00	0.72	0.64
0.37	0.0371	2.10		3.15		3.94	0.0495	2.10		3.15		3.94	0.74	0.63

Figure A.10 Nominal strength coefficients for rectangular beams with compression reinforcement in which $f_s' = f_y$ and for flanged sections with $h_f < a$; $f_c' = 3000$ and 4000 psi (Ref. 9.8).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

For a rectangular beam with compression reinforcement in which $f'_s = f_y$:

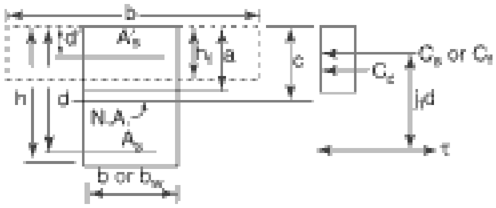
$$\rho - \rho' \ge 0.85\beta_1 \frac{f'_c}{f_y}\frac{d'}{d}\frac{87{,}000}{87{,}000 - f_y}$$

and $M_{n2} = A_{s2} d a'_n$, kip-ft

where $a'_n = \frac{f_y}{12{,}000}\left(1 - \frac{d'}{d}\right)$

$A_s = A_{s1} + A_{s2}$

$\rho = A_s/bd$, $M_n \ge M_u/\phi$



For a flanged section with $h_f < a$:

$M_{n2} = A_{sf} d a_{nf}$, kip-ft

where $A_{sf} = K_{nf} b_w h_f / a_{nf}$ in.^{2}

$$K_{nf} = \frac{0.85 f'_c}{12{,}000}\left(\frac{b}{b_w} - 1\right)$$

(K_{nf} from FLEXURE 3.3)

$$a_{nf} = \frac{f_y}{12{,}000}\left(1 - \frac{h_f}{2d}\right)$$

$j_f = 1 - h_f/2d$

$A_s = A_{sw} + A_{sf}$

f'_c	5000						6000							
f_y	40,000		60,000		75,000		40,000		60,000		75,000			
d'/d	$\rho-\rho'$	a'_n or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a'_n or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a'_n or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a'_n or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a'_n or a_{nf}	$\rho-\rho'$	a'_n or a_{nf}	h_f/d	j_f
0.01	0.0016	3.30	0.0018	4.95	0.0033	6.19	0.0018	3.30	0.0021	4.95	0.0037	6.19	0.02	0.99
0.02	0.0031	3.27	0.0037	4.90	0.0066	6.13	0.0035	3.27	0.0041	4.90	0.0074	6.13	0.04	0.98
0.03	0.0047	3.23	0.0055	4.85	0.0099	6.06	0.0053	3.23	0.0062	4.85	0.0111	6.06	0.06	0.97
0.04	0.0063	3.20	0.0073	4.80	0.0131	6.00	0.0071	3.20	0.0082	4.80	0.0148	6.00	0.08	0.96
0.05	0.0079	3.17	0.0091	4.75	0.0164	5.94	0.0089	3.17	0.0103	4.75	0.0185	5.94	0.10	0.95
0.06	0.0094	3.13	0.0110	4.70	0.0197	5.88	0.0106	3.13	0.0123	4.70	0.0222	5.88	0.12	0.94
0.07	0.0110	3.10	0.0128	4.65	0.0230	5.81	0.0124	3.10	0.0144	4.65	0.0259	5.81	0.14	0.93
0.08	0.0126	3.07	0.0146	4.60		5.75	0.0142	3.07	0.0164	4.60		5.75	0.16	0.92
0.09	0.0142	3.03	0.0164	4.55		5.69	0.0159	3.03	0.0185	4.55		5.69	0.18	0.91
0.10	0.0157	3.00	0.0183	4.50		5.63	0.0177	3.00	0.0205	4.50		5.63	0.20	0.90
0.11	0.0173	2.97	0.0201	4.45		5.56	0.0195	2.97	0.0226	4.45		5.56	0.22	0.89
0.12	0.0189	2.93	0.0219	4.40		5.50	0.0212	2.93	0.0246	4.40		5.50	0.24	0.88
0.13	0.0205	2.90	0.0237	4.35		5.44	0.0230	2.90	0.0267	4.35		5.44	0.26	0.87
0.14	0.0220	2.87	0.0256	4.30		5.38	0.0248	2.87	0.0288	4.30		5.38	0.28	0.86
0.15	0.0236	2.83	0.0274	4.25		5.31	0.0266	2.83	0.0308	4.25		5.31	0.30	0.85
0.16	0.0252	2.80	0.0292	4.20		5.25	0.0283	2.80	0.0329	4.20		5.25	0.32	0.84
0.17	0.0267	2.77	0.0310	4.15		5.19	0.0301	2.77	0.0349	4.15		5.19	0.34	0.83
0.18	0.0283	2.73	0.0329	4.10		5.13	0.0319	2.73	0.0370	4.10		5.13	0.36	0.82
0.19	0.0299	2.70		4.05		5.06	0.0336	2.70		4.05		5.06	0.38	0.81
0.20	0.0315	2.67		4.00		5.00	0.0354	2.67		4.00		5.00	0.40	0.80
0.21	0.0330	2.63		3.95		4.94	0.0372	2.63		3.95		4.94	0.42	0.79
0.22	0.0346	2.60		3.90		4.88	0.0389	2.60		3.90		4.88	0.44	0.78
0.23	0.0362	2.57		3.85		4.81	0.0407	2.57		3.85		4.81	0.46	0.77
0.24	0.0378	2.53		3.80		4.75	0.0425	2.53		3.80		4.75	0.48	0.76
0.25	0.0393	2.50		3.75		4.69	0.0443	2.50		3.75		4.69	0.50	0.75
0.26	0.0409	2.47		3.70		4.63	0.0460	2.47		3.70		4.63	0.52	0.74
0.27	0.0425	2.43		3.65		4.56	0.0478	2.43		3.65		4.56	0.54	0.73
0.28	0.0441	2.40		3.60		4.50	0.0496	2.40		3.60		4.50	0.56	0.72
0.29	0.0456	2.37		3.55		4.44	0.0513	2.37		3.55		4.44	0.58	0.71
0.30	0.0472	2.33		3.50		4.37	0.0531	2.33		3.50		4.37	0.60	0.70
0.31	0.0488	2.30		3.45		4.31	0.0549	2.30		3.45		4.31	0.62	0.69
0.32	0.0503	2.27		3.40		4.25	0.0566	2.27		3.40		4.25	0.64	0.68
0.33	0.0519	2.23		3.35		4.19	0.0584	2.23		3.35		4.19	0.66	0.67
0.34	0.0535	2.20		3.30		4.12	0.0602	2.20		3.30		4.12	0.68	0.66
0.35	0.0551	2.17		3.25		4.06	0.0620	2.17		3.25		4.06	0.70	0.65
0.36	0.0566	2.13		3.20		4.00	0.0637	2.13		3.20		4.00	0.72	0.64
0.37	0.0582	2.10		3.15		3.94	0.0655	2.10		3.15		3.94	0.74	0.63

Figure A.12 Nominal strength coefficients for rectangular beams with compression reinforcement in which $f'_s = f_y$ and for flanged sections with $h_f < a$; $f'_c = 5000$ and 6000 psi (Ref. 9.8).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

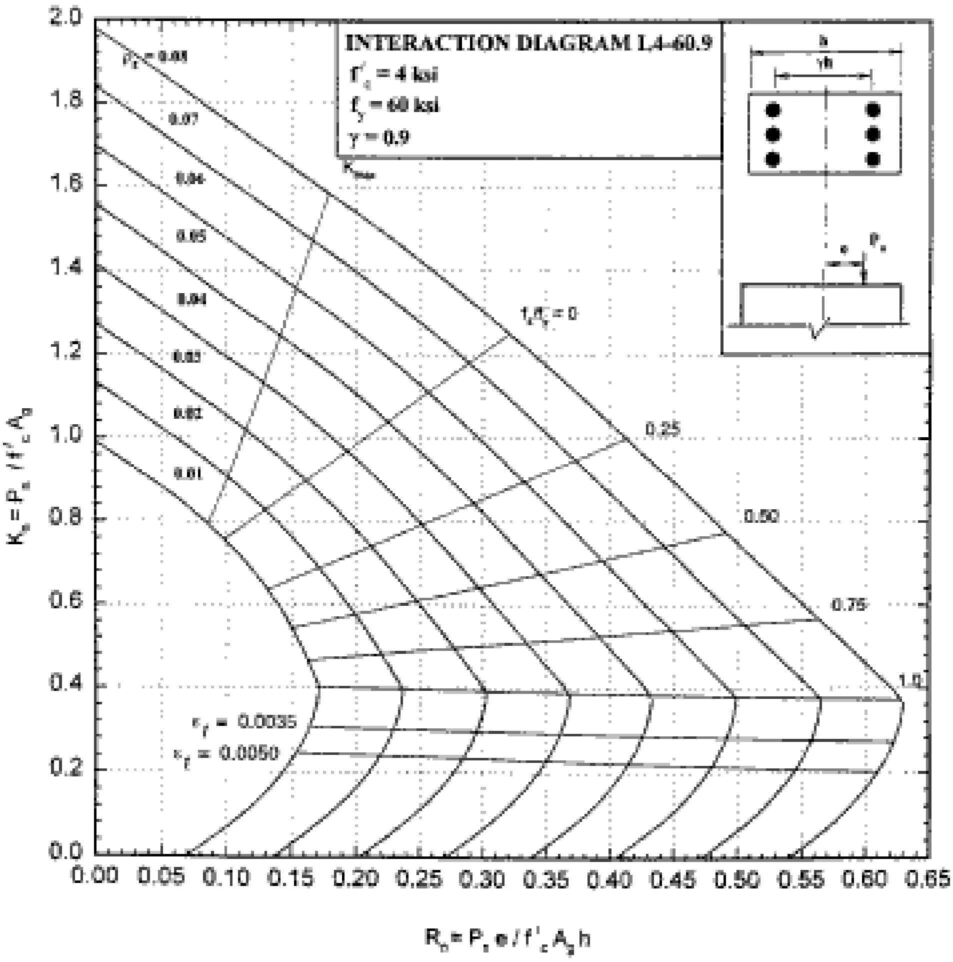


Figure A.16 Rectangular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: $f_c' = 4000$ psi, $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi, $\gamma = 0.9$ (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

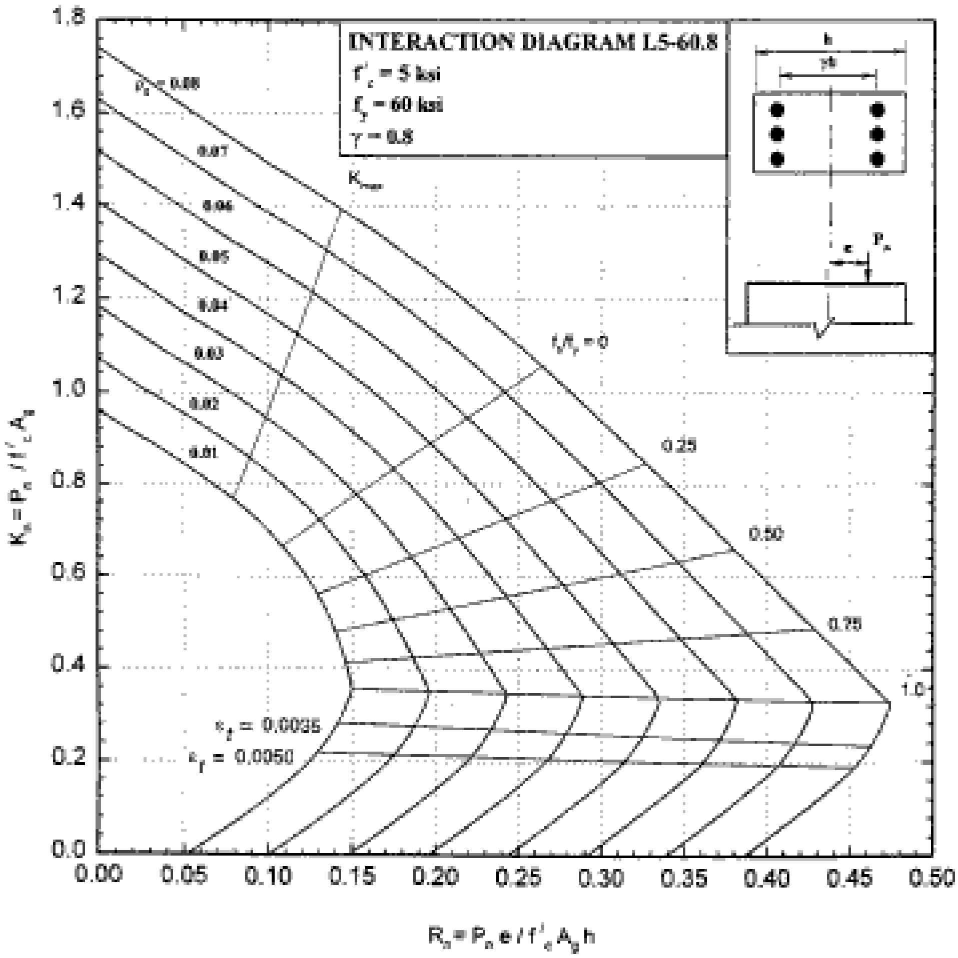


Figure A.17 Rectangular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: $f_c' = 5000$ psi, $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi, $\gamma = 0.8$ (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

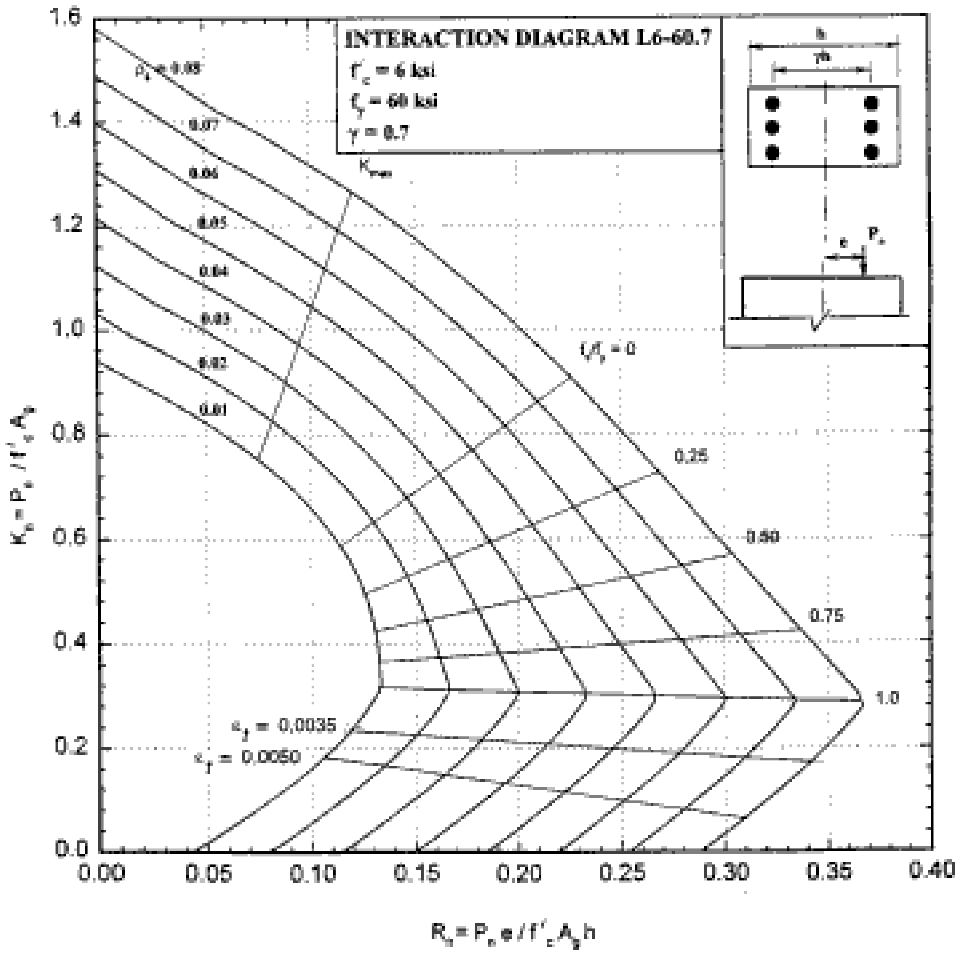


Figure A.19 Rectangular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: f'_c = 6000 psi, f_y = 60,000 psi, γ = 0.7 (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

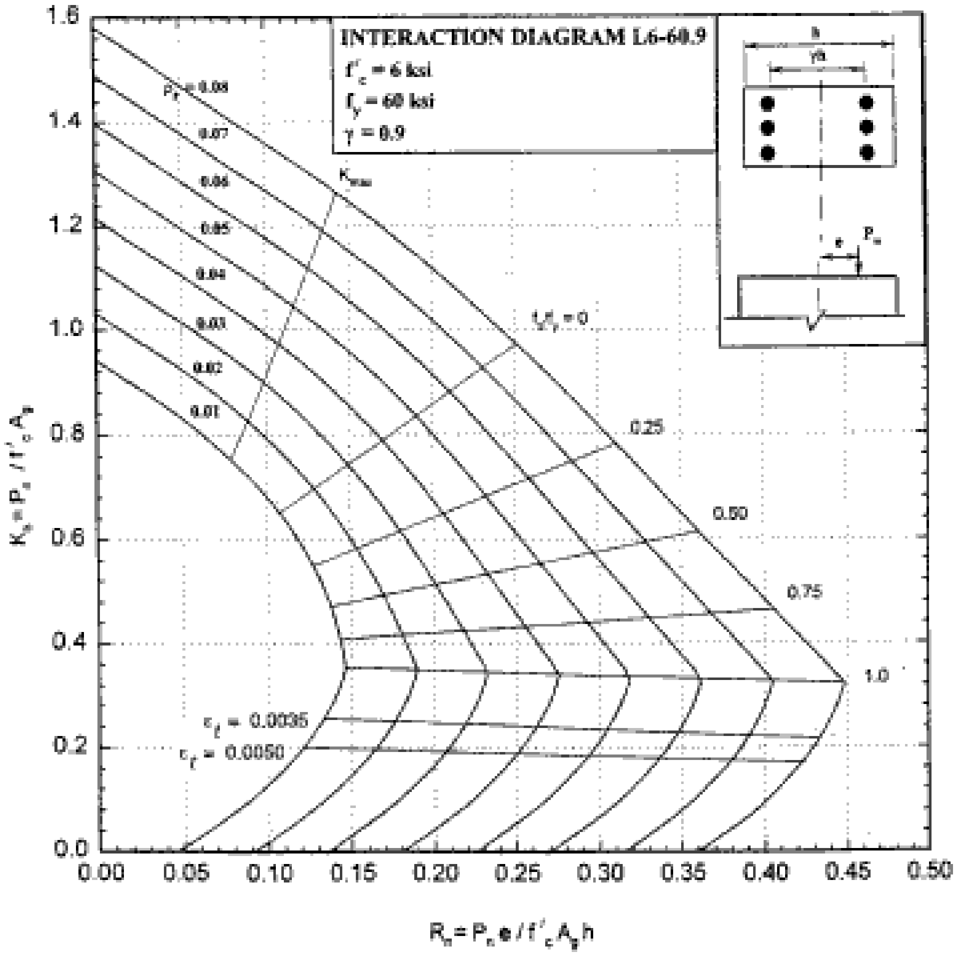


Figure A.20 Rectangular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: $f_c' = 6000$ psi, $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi, $\gamma = 0.9$ (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

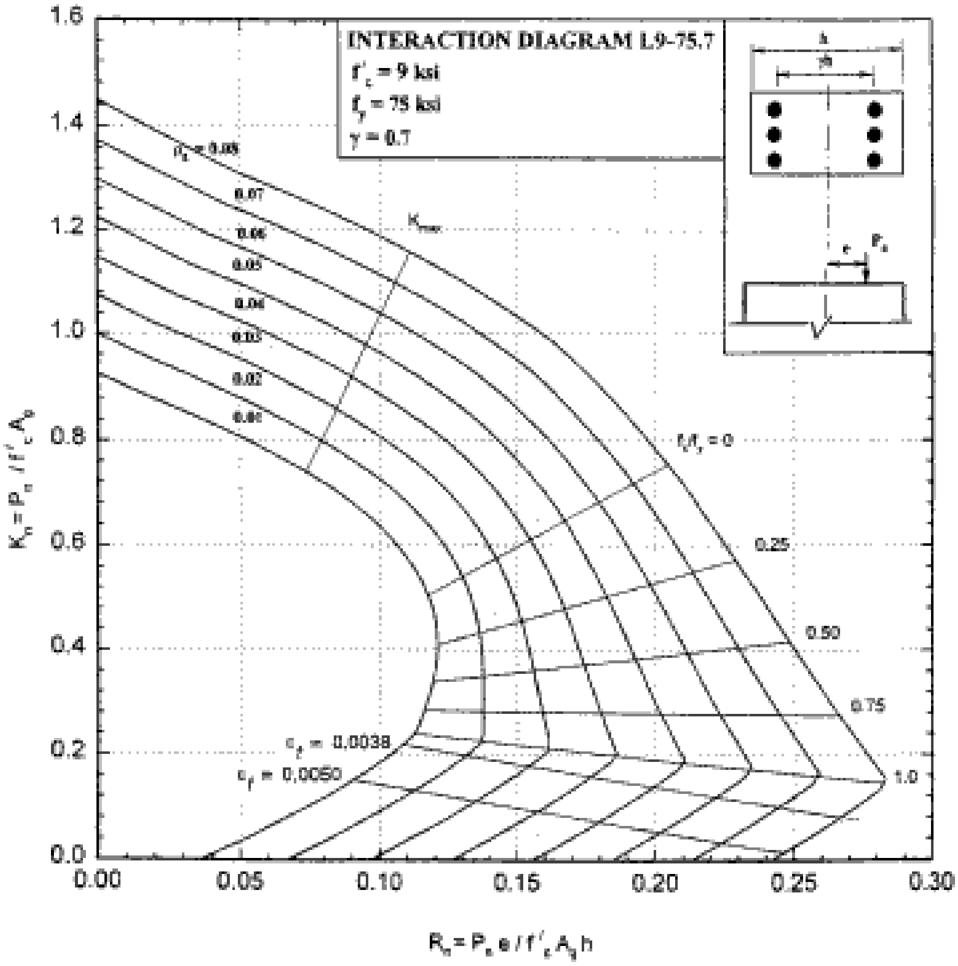


Figure A.21 Rectangular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: $f_c' = 9000$ psi, $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi, $\gamma = 0.7$ (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

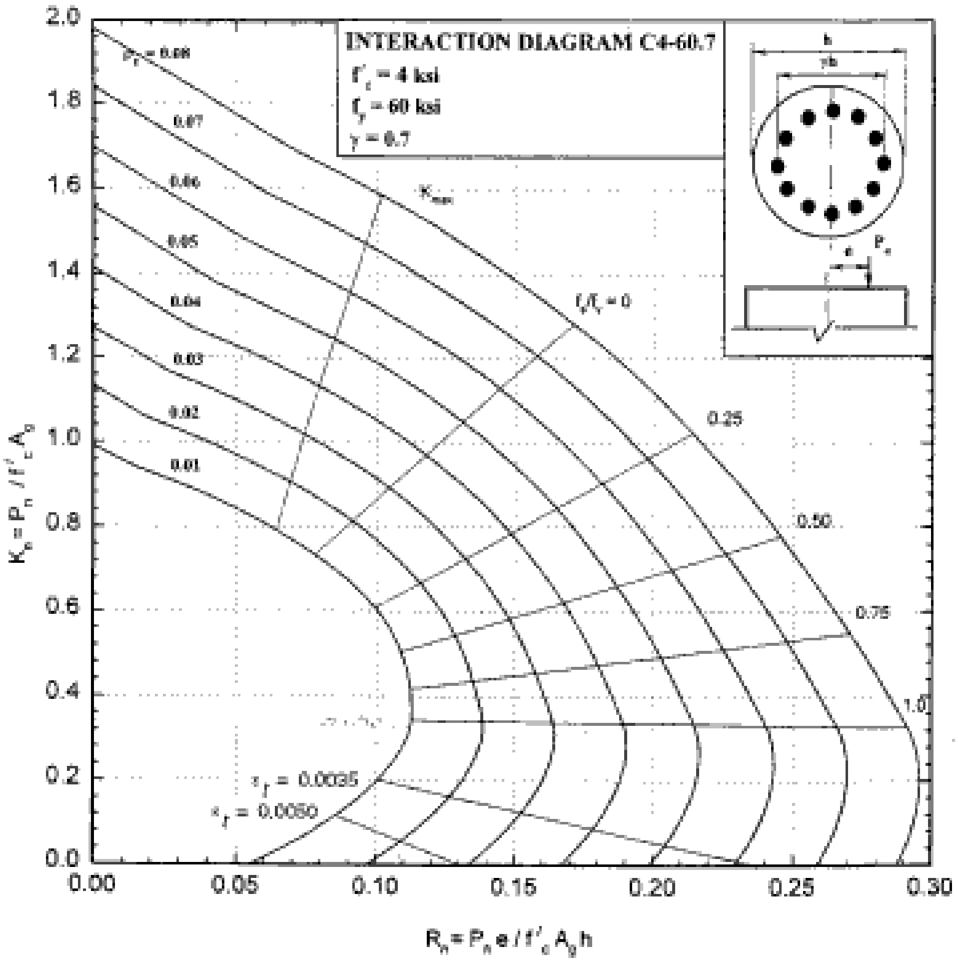


Figure A.23 Circular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: $f_c' = 4000$ psi, $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi, $\gamma = 0.7$ (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

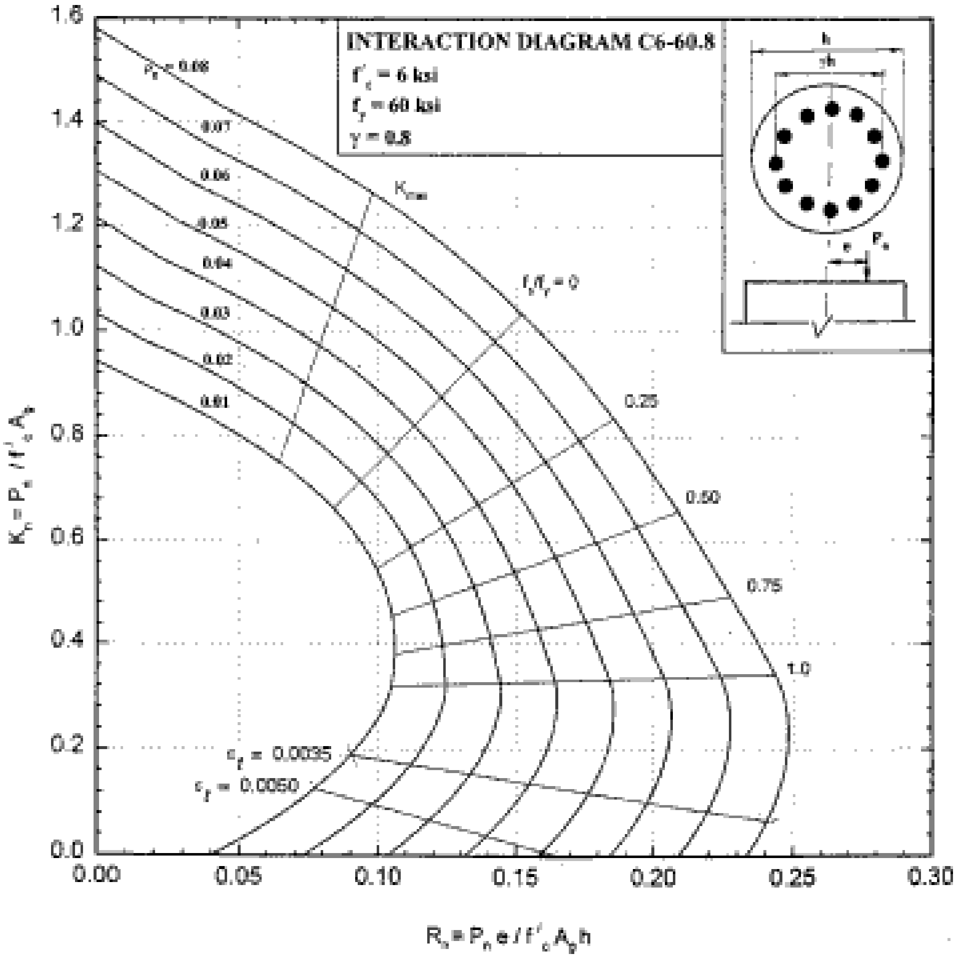


Figure A.26 Circular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: $f_c' = 6000$ psi, $f_y = 60{,}000$ psi, $\gamma = 0.8$ (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

Hidden page

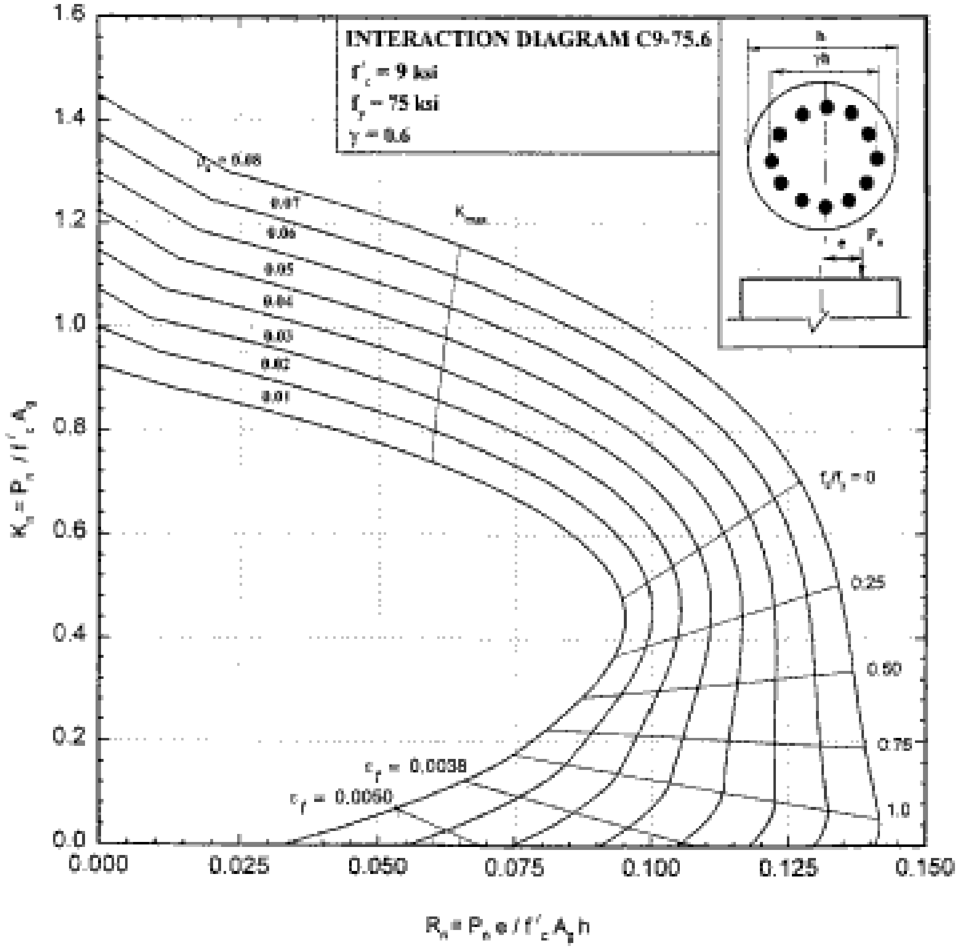


Figure A.28 Circular column nominal load-moment strength interaction diagram: $f_c' = 9000$ psi, $f_y = 75{,}000$ psi, $\gamma = 0.6$ (ACI-SP17 and Refs. 9.8, 9.10, 9.11).

FEM (uniform load w) = $Mw\ell_2\ell_1^2$ $\quad$ K (stiffness) = $kE\ell_2h^3/12\ell_1$
Carryover factor = COF

c_1/ℓ_1 \ c_2/ℓ_2		0.00	0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30
0.00	M	0.083	0.083	0.083	0.083	0.083	0.083	0.083
	k	4.000	4.000	4.000	4.000	4.000	4.000	4.000
	COF	0.500	0.500	0.500	0.500	0.500	0.500	0.500
0.05	M	0.083	0.084	0.084	0.084	0.085	0.085	0.085
	k	4.000	4.047	4.093	4.138	4.181	4.222	4.261
	COF	0.500	0.503	0.507	0.510	0.513	0.516	0.518
0.10	M	0.083	0.084	0.085	0.085	0.086	0.087	0.087
	k	4.000	4.091	4.182	4.272	4.362	4.449	4.535
	COF	0.500	0.506	0.513	0.519	0.524	0.530	0.535
0.15	M	0.083	0.084	0.085	0.086	0.087	0.088	0.089
	k	4.000	4.132	4.267	4.403	4.541	4.680	4.818
	COF	0.500	0.509	0.517	0.526	0.534	0.543	0.550
0.20	M	0.083	0.085	0.086	0.087	0.088	0.089	0.090
	k	4.000	4.170	4.346	4.529	4.717	4.910	5.108
	COF	0.500	0.511	0.522	0.532	0.543	0.554	0.564
0.25	M	0.083	0.085	0.086	0.087	0.089	0.090	0.091
	k	4.000	4.204	4.420	4.648	4.887	5.138	5.401
	COF	0.500	0.512	0.525	0.538	0.550	0.563	0.576
0.30	M	0.083	0.085	0.086	0.088	0.089	0.091	0.092
	k	4.000	4.235	4.488	4.760	5.050	5.361	5.692
	COF	0.500	0.514	0.527	0.542	0.566	0.571	0.585
$x = (1 - c_2/\ell_2^3)$		1.000	0.856	0.729	0.613	0.512	0.421	0.343

c_1 and c_2 are the widths of the column measured parallel to ℓ_1 and ℓ_2.

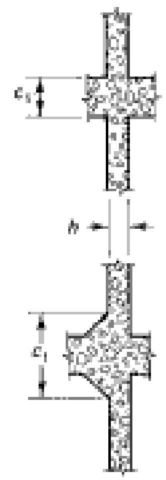


Figure A.29 Moment distribution factors for slabs without drop panels. (From S. H. Simmonds and M. Janko, "Design Factors for Equivalent Frame Method," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute*, Vol. 68, No. 11, November 1971. Figures A.30–A.32 are from this same source.)

FEM (uniform load w) = $Mw\ell_2\ell_1^2$ $\quad$ K (stiffness) = $kE\ell_2h^3/12\ell_1$
Carryover factor = COF

c_1/ℓ_1 \ c_2/ℓ_2		0.00	0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30
0.00	M	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088	0.088
	k	4.795	4.795	4.795	4.795	4.795	4.795	4.795
	COF	0.542	0.542	0.542	0.542	0.542	0.542	0.542
0.05	M	0.088	0.088	0.089	0.089	0.089	0.089	0.090
	k	4.795	4.846	4.896	4.944	4.990	5.035	5.077
	COF	0.542	0.545	0.548	0.551	0.553	0.556	0.558
0.10	M	0.088	0.088	0.089	0.090	0.090	0.091	0.091
	k	4.795	4.894	4.992	5.039	5.184	5.278	5.368
	COF	0.542	0.548	0.553	0.559	0.564	0.569	0.573
0.15	M	0.088	0.089	0.090	0.090	0.091	0.092	0.092
	k	4.795	4.938	5.082	5.228	5.374	5.520	5.665
	COF	0.542	0.550	0.558	0.565	0.573	0.580	0.587
0.20	M	0.088	0.089	0.090	0.091	0.092	0.093	0.094
	k	4.795	4.978	5.167	5.361	5.558	5.760	5.962
	COF	0.542	0.552	0.562	0.571	0.581	0.590	0.590
0.25	M	0.088	0.089	0.090	0.091	0.092	0.094	0.095
	k	4.795	5.015	5.245	5.485	5.735	5.994	6.261
	COF	0.542	0.553	0.565	0.576	0.587	0.598	0.600
0.30	M	0.088	0.089	0.090	0.092	0.093	0.094	0.095
	k	4.795	5.048	5.317	5.601	5.902	6.219	6.550
	COF	0.542	0.554	0.567	0.580	0.593	0.605	0.618

h, Slab thickness; h_1, total thickness in drop panel.

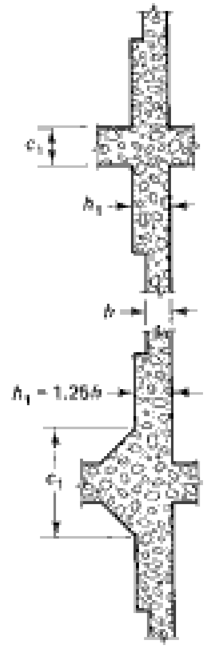


Figure A.30 Moment distribution factors for slabs with drop panels; $h_1 = 1.25h$.

FEM (uniform load w) = $Mw\ell_2\ell_1^2$ K (stiffness) = $kE\ell_2h^3/12\ell_1$ Carryover factor = COF								
c_1/ℓ_1 \ c_2/ℓ_2		0.00	0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30
0.00	M	0.093	0.093	0.093	0.093	0.093	0.093	0.093
	k	5.837	5.837	5.837	5.837	5.837	5.837	5.837
	COF	0.589	0.589	0.589	0.589	0.589	0.589	0.589
0.05	M	0.093	0.093	0.093	0.093	0.094	0.094	0.094
	k	5.837	5.890	5.942	5.993	6.041	6.087	6.131
	COF	0.589	0.591	0.594	0.596	0.598	0.600	0.602
0.10	M	0.093	0.093	0.094	0.094	0.094	0.095	0.095
	k	5.837	5.940	6.042	6.142	6.240	6.335	6.427
	COF	0.589	0.593	0.598	0.602	0.607	0.611	0.615
0.15	M	0.093	0.093	0.094	0.095	0.095	0.096	0.096
	k	5.837	5.986	6.135	6.284	6.432	6.579	6.723
	COF	0.589	0.595	0.602	0.608	0.614	0.620	0.626
0.20	M	0.093	0.093	0.094	0.095	0.096	0.096	0.097
	k	5.837	6.027	6.221	6.418	6.616	6.816	7.015
	COF	0.589	0.597	0.605	0.613	0.621	0.628	0.635
0.25	M	0.093	0.094	0.094	0.095	0.096	0.097	0.098
	k	5.837	6.065	6.300	6.543	6.790	7.043	7.298
	COF	0.589	0.598	0.608	0.617	0.626	0.635	0.644
0.30	M	0.093	0.094	0.095	0.096	0.097	0.098	0.090
	k	5.837	6.099	6.372	6.657	6.953	7.258	7.571
	COF	0.589	0.599	0.610	0.620	0.631	0.641	0.651

h, Slab thickness; h_1, total thickeness in drop panel.

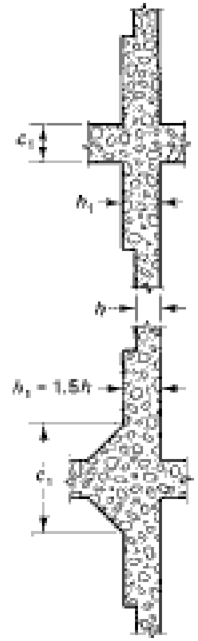
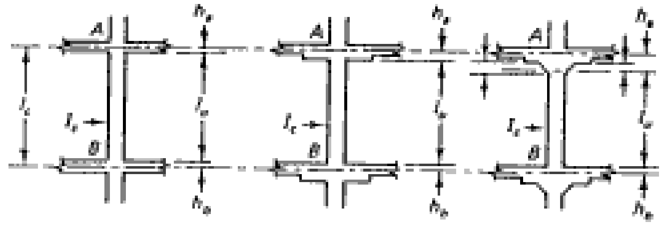


Figure A.31 Moment distribution factors for slabs with drop panels; $h_1 = 1.5h$.

$$K_c = k\frac{EI_c}{\ell_c}$$



h_a/h_b	ℓ_c/ℓ_u	1.05	1.10	1.15	1.20	1.25	1.30	1.35	1.40	1.45
0.00	k_{AB}	4.20	4.40	4.60	4.80	5.00	5.20	5.40	5.60	5.80
	C_{AB}	0.57	0.65	0.73	0.80	0.87	0.95	1.03	1.10	1.17
0.2	k_{AB}	4.31	4.62	4.95	5.30	5.65	6.02	6.40	6.79	7.20
	C_{AB}	0.56	0.62	0.68	0.74	0.80	0.85	0.91	0.96	1.01
0.4	k_{AB}	4.38	4.79	5.22	5.67	6.15	6.65	7.18	7.74	8.32
	C_{AB}	0.55	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.74	0.79	0.83	0.87	0.91
0.6	k_{AB}	4.44	4.91	5.42	5.96	6.54	7.15	7.81	8.50	9.23
	C_{AB}	0.55	0.59	0.63	0.67	0.70	0.74	0.77	0.80	0.83
0.8	k_{AB}	4.49	5.01	5.58	6.19	6.85	7.56	8.31	9.12	9.98
	C_{AB}	0.54	0.58	0.61	0.64	0.67	0.70	0.72	0.75	0.77
1.0	k_{AB}	4.52	5.09	5.71	6.38	7.11	7.89	8.73	9.63	10.60
	C_{AB}	0.54	0.57	0.60	0.62	0.65	0.67	0.69	0.71	0.73
1.2	k_{AB}	4.55	5.16	5.82	6.54	7.32	8.17	9.08	10.07	11.12
	C_{AB}	0.53	0.56	0.59	0.61	0.63	0.65	0.66	0.68	0.69
1.4	k_{AB}	4.58	5.21	5.91	6.68	7.51	8.41	9.38	10.43	11.57
	C_{AB}	0.53	0.55	0.58	0.60	0.61	0.63	0.64	0.65	0.66
1.6	k_{AB}	4.60	5.26	5.99	6.79	7.66	8.61	9.64	10.75	11.95
	C_{AB}	0.53	0.55	0.57	0.59	0.60	0.61	0.62	0.63	0.64
1.8	k_{AB}	4.62	5.30	6.06	6.89	7.80	8.79	9.87	11.03	12.29
	C_{AB}	0.52	0.55	0.56	0.58	0.59	0.60	0.61	0.61	0.62
2.0	k_{AB}	4.63	5.34	6.12	6.98	7.92	8.94	10.06	11.27	12.59
	C_{AB}	0.52	0.54	0.56	0.57	0.58	0.59	0.59	0.60	0.60
2.2	k_{AB}	4.65	5.37	6.17	7.05	8.02	9.08	10.24	11.49	12.85
	C_{AB}	0.52	0.54	0.55	0.56	0.57	0.58	0.58	0.59	0.59
2.4	k_{AB}	4.66	5.40	6.22	7.12	8.11	9.20	10.39	11.68	13.08
	C_{AB}	0.52	0.53	0.55	0.56	0.56	0.57	0.57	0.58	0.58
2.6	k_{AB}	4.67	5.42	6.26	7.18	8.20	9.31	10.53	11.86	13.29
	C_{AB}	0.52	0.53	0.54	0.55	0.56	0.56	0.56	0.57	0.57
2.8	k_{AB}	4.68	5.44	6.29	7.23	8.27	9.41	10.66	12.01	13.48
	C_{AB}	0.52	0.53	0.54	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.56	0.56	0.56
3.0	k_{AB}	4.69	5.46	6.33	7.28	8.34	9.50	10.77	12.15	13.65
	C_{AB}	0.52	0.53	0.54	0.54	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55
3.5	k_{AB}	4.71	5.50	6.40	7.39	8.48	9.69	11.01	12.46	14.02
	C_{AB}	0.51	0.52	0.53	0.53	0.54	0.54	0.54	0.53	0.53
4.0	k_{AB}	4.72	5.54	6.45	7.47	8.60	9.84	11.21	12.70	14.32
	C_{AB}	0.51	0.52	0.52	0.53	0.53	0.52	0.52	0.52	0.52
4.5	k_{AB}	4.73	5.56	6.50	7.54	8.69	9.97	11.37	12.89	14.57
	C_{AB}	0.51	0.52	0.52	0.52	0.52	0.52	0.51	0.51	0.51
5.0	k_{AB}	4.75	5.59	6.54	7.60	8.78	10.07	11.50	13.07	14.77
	C_{AB}	0.51	0.51	0.52	0.52	0.51	0.51	0.51	0.50	0.49
6.0	k_{AB}	4.76	5.63	6.60	7.69	8.90	10.24	11.72	13.33	15.10
	C_{AB}	0.51	0.51	0.51	0.51	0.50	0.50	0.49	0.49	0.48
7.0	k_{AB}	4.78	5.66	6.65	7.76	9.00	10.37	11.88	13.54	15.34
	C_{AB}	0.51	0.51	0.51	0.50	0.50	0.49	0.48	0.48	0.47
8.0	k_{AB}	4.78	5.68	6.69	7.82	9.07	10.47	12.01	13.70	15.54
	C_{AB}	0.51	0.51	0.50	0.50	0.49	0.49	0.48	0.47	0.46

Figure A.32 Stiffness and carryover factors for columns.

Table is based on

$$C = \Sigma \left(1 - 0.63\,\frac{x}{y}\right)\frac{x^3 y}{3}$$

where x is smaller dimension of rectangular cross section and y is the larger dimension of the rectangular cross section. If cross section of "torsional member" is other than rectangular, divide cross section into separate rectangles and sum the C values of the individual rectangles. Cross section should be divided into component rectangles in such a way as to result in the highest possible value of C.

	C, in.⁴																
x, in. / y, in.	3.5	4.0	4.5	5.0	5.5	6.0	6.5	7.0	7.5	8.0	9.0	10.0	11.0	12.0	14.0	16.0	x, in. / y, in.
6	54	74	96	119	141	160	—	—									6
7	69	95	126	160	196	232	266	296	—	—							7
8	83	117	157	202	252	304	357	410	460	505	—						8
9	97	138	187	244	307	376	449	525	600	675	809	—					9
10	111	160	218	285	362	448	541	639	742	846	1062	1233	—				10
11	126	181	248	327	418	520	632	754	882	1017	1295	1567	1805	—			11
12	140	202	278	369	473	592	724	868	1023	1188	1538	1900	2249	2557	—		12
14	168	245	339	452	584	736	907	1096	1304	1529	2024	2567	3136	3709	4738	—	14
16	197	288	400	535	695	880	1090	1325	1586	1870	2510	3233	4024	4861	6567	8083	16
18	226	330	461	619	806	1024	1273	1554	1867	2212	2996	3900	4911	6013	8397	10813	18
20	254	373	521	702	917	1168	1456	1782	2148	2553	3482	4567	5799	7165	10228	13544	20
22	283	416	582	785	1028	1312	1639	2011	2429	2895	3968	5233	6686	8317	12055	16275	22
24	311	458	643	869	1139	1456	1822	2240	2710	3236	4454	5900	7573	9469	13885	19005	24
26	340	501	704	952	1250	1600	2005	2469	2992	3577	4940	6567	8461	10621	15714	21736	26
28	369	544	764	1035	1361	1744	2188	2697	3273	3919	5426	7233	9348	11773	17543	24467	28
30	397	586	825	1119	1472	1888	2371	2926	3554	4260	5912	7900	10235	12925	19373	27197	30
33	440	650	916	1244	1638	2104	2646	3269	3976	4772	6641	8900	11566	14653	22117	31293	33
36	483	714	1007	1369	1804	2320	2921	3612	4398	5284	7370	9900	12897	16381	24860	35389	36
39	526	778	1098	1494	1971	2536	3195	3955	4820	5796	8099	10900	14228	18109	27605	29485	39
42	509	842	1190	1619	2137	2752	3470	4298	5242	6308	8828	11900	15559	19837	30349	43581	42
45	612	906	1281	1744	2303	2968	3745	4641	5663	6820	9557	12900	16890	21565	33093	47677	45
48	654	970	1372	1869	2470	3184	4019	4984	6085	7332	10286	13900	18221	23293	35837	51773	48
51	697	1034	1463	1994	2636	3400	4294	5327	6507	7844	11015	14900	19552	25021	38581	55869	51
54	740	1098	1554	2119	2803	3616	4568	5670	6929	8356	11744	15900	20883	26749	41325	59965	54
57	783	1162	1645	2244	2969	3832	4843	6013	7351	8868	12473	16900	22214	28477	44069	64061	57
60	826	1226	1736	2369	3135	4048	5118	6356	7773	9380	13202	17900	23545	30205	46813	68157	60
66	912	1354	1919	2619	3468	4480	5666	7042	8617	10404	14660	19900	26207	33661	52300	76349	66
72	998	1482	2100	2869	3800	4912	6216	7728	9460	11428	16118	21900	28869	37117	57789	84541	72

Figure A.33 Value of torsion constant C for use in equation for torsion stiffness K_t (Ref. 9.8).

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

$$\rho \geq 0.45\left(\frac{A_g}{A_c} - 1\right)\frac{f_c'}{f_{yt}} \quad and \geq 0.12\,\frac{f_c'}{f_{yt}}$$

A_g/A_c	$f_{yh} = 40{,}000$ psi			$f_{yh} = 60{,}000$ psi		
	$f_c' = 4000$ psi	$f_c' = 6000$ psi	$f_c' = 8000$ psi	$f_c' = 4000$ psi	$f_c' = 6000$ psi	$f_c' = 8000$ psi
			ρ_s			
1.1	0.012	0.018	0.024	0.008	0.012	0.016
1.2	0.012	0.018	0.024	0.008	0.012	0.016
1.3	0.014	0.020	0.027	0.009	0.014	0.018
1.4	0.018	0.027	0.036	0.012	0.018	0.024
1.5	0.023	0.034	0.045	0.015	0.023	0.030
1.6	0.027	0.041	0.054	0.018	0.027	0.036
1.7	0.032	0.047	0.063	0.021	0.032	0.042
1.8	0.036	0.054	0.072	0.024	0.036	0.048
1.9	0.041	0.081	0.027	0.027	0.041	0.054
2.0	0.045	0.068	0.090	0.030	0.045	0.060
2.1	0.050	0.074	0.099	0.033	0.050	0.066
2.2	0.054	0.081	0.108	0.036	0.054	0.072
2.3	0.058	0.088	0.117	0.039	0.058	0.078
2.4	0.063	0.094	0.126	0.042	0.063	0.084
2.5	0.067	0.101	0.135	0.045	0.067	0.090

Figure A.41 Volumetric ratio of spiral reinforcement ρ_s for concrete confinement (Ref. 16.16).

$$\rho_t \geq \frac{A_{sh}}{sh_c} \geq 0.3\left(\frac{A_g}{A_{ch}} - 1\right) \quad and \geq 0.09\,\frac{f_c'}{f_{yt}}$$

A_g/A_{ch}	$f_{yt} = 40{,}000$ psi			$f_{yt} = 60{,}000$ psi		
	$f_c' = 4000$ psi	$f_c' = 6000$ psi	$f_c' = 8000$ psi	$f_c' = 4000$ psi	$f_c' = 6000$ psi	$f_c' = 8000$ psi
			ρ_s			
1.1	0.009	0.014	0.018	0.006	0.009	0.012
1.2	0.009	0.014	0.018	0.006	0.009	0.012
1.3	0.009	0.014	0.018	0.006	0.009	0.012
1.4	0.012	0.018	0.024	0.008	0.012	0.016
1.5	0.015	0.023	0.030	0.010	0.015	0.020
1.6	0.018	0.027	0.036	0.012	0.018	0.024
1.7	0.021	0.032	0.042	0.014	0.021	0.028
1.8	0.024	0.036	0.048	0.016	0.024	0.032
1.9	0.027	0.041	0.054	0.018	0.027	0.036
2.0	0.030	0.045	0.060	0.020	0.030	0.040
2.1	0.033	0.050	0.066	0.022	0.033	0.044
2.2	0.036	0.054	0.072	0.024	0.036	0.048
2.3	0.039	0.058	0.078	0.026	0.039	0.052
2.4	0.042	0.063	0.084	0.028	0.042	0.056
2.5	0.045	0.067	0.090	0.030	0.045	0.060

Figure A.42 Area percentage of rectilinear hoop reinforcement ρ_t for concrete confinement (Ref. 16.16).

Figure A.43 Recommended Minimum Floor Live Loads*

Uniformly Distributed Loads: Occupancy or Use	Live Load (psf)
Apartments (*see* Residential)	
Armories and drill rooms	150
Assembly halls and other places of assembly:	
Fixed seats	60
Movable seats	100
Platforms (assembly)	100
Balcony (exterior)	100
On one- and two-family residences only and not exceeding 100 sq ft	60
Bowling alleys, poolrooms, and similar recreational areas	75
Corridors:	
First floor	100
Other floors, same as occupancy served except as indicated	
Dance halls and ballrooms	100
Dining rooms and restaurants	100
Dwellings (*see* Residential)	
Fire escapes	100
On multi- or single-family residential buildings only	40
Garages (passenger cars only)	50
For trucks and buses use AASHTO lane loads (1)	
Grandstands (*see* Stadium and arena bleachers)	
Gymnasiums, main floors and balconies	100
Hospitals:	
Operating rooms, laboratories	60
Private rooms	40
Wards	40
Corridors, above first floor	80

Uniformly Distributed Loads: Occupancy or Use	Live Load (psf)
Hotels (*see* Residential)	
Libraries:	
Reading rooms	60
Stack rooms (books & shelving at 65 pcf) but not less than	150
Corridors, above first floor	80
Manufacturing:	
Light	125
Heavy	250
Marquees and canopies	75
Office buildings:	
Offices	50
Lobbies	100
File and computer rooms require heavier loads based upon anticipated occupancy	
Penal institutions:	
Cell blocks	40
Corridors	100
Residential:	
Dwellings (one- and two-family)	
Uninhabitable attics without storage	10
Uninhabitable attics with storage	20
Habitable attics and sleeping areas	30
All other areas	40
Hotels and multifamily houses:	
Private rooms and corridors serving them	40
Public rooms and corridors serving them	100

@Seismicisolation

Figure A.44 Dead Weights of Floors, Ceilings, Roofs, and Walls

Floorings	Weight (psf)
Normal weight concrete topping, per inch of thickness	12
Sand-lightweight (120 pcf) concrete topping, per inch	10
Lightweight (90–100 pcf) concrete topping, per inch	8
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. hardwood floor on sleepers clipped to concrete without fill	5
$1\frac{1}{2}$ in. terrazzo floor finish directly on slab	19
$1\frac{1}{2}$ in. terrazzo floor finish on 1 in. mortar bed	30
1 in. terrazzo finish on 2 in. concrete bed	38
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. ceramic or quarry tile on $\frac{1}{2}$ in. mortar bed	16
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. ceramic or quarry tile on 1 in. mortar bed	22
$\frac{1}{8}$ in. linoleum or asphalt tile directly on concrete	1
$\frac{1}{4}$ in. linoleum or asphalt tile on 1 in. mortar bed	12
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. mastic floor	9
Hardwood flooring, $\frac{7}{8}$ in. thick	4
Subflooring (soft wood), $\frac{3}{4}$ in. thick	$2\frac{1}{2}$
Asphaltic concrete, $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. thick	18

Ceilings	
$\frac{1}{2}$ in. gypsum board	2
$\frac{5}{8}$ in. gypsum board	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. plaster directly on concrete	5
$\frac{3}{4}$ in. plaster on metal lath furring	8
Suspended ceilings	2
Acoustical tile	1
Acoustical tile on wood furring strips	3

Roofs	
Ballasted inverted membrane	16
Five-ply felt and gravel (or slag)	$6\frac{1}{2}$
Three-ply felt and gravel (or slag)	$5\frac{1}{2}$
Five-ply felt composition roof, no gravel	4
Three-ply felt composition roof, no gravel	3
Asphalt strip shingles	3
Rigid insulation, per inch	$\frac{1}{2}$
Gypsum, per inch of thickness	4
Insulating concrete, per inch	3

Walls	Un-plastered	One side plastered	Both sides plastered
4 in. brick wall	40	45	50
8 in. brick wall	80	85	90
12 in. brick wall	120	125	130
4 in. hollow normal weight concrete block	28	33	38
6 in. hollow normal weight concrete block	36	41	46
8 in. hollow normal weight concrete block	51	56	61
12 in. hollow normal weight concrete block	59	64	69

Figure A.44 *Continued*

Walls	Un-plastered	One side plastered	Both sides plastered
4 in. hollow lightweight block or tile	19	24	29
6 in. hollow lightweight block or tile	22	27	32
8 in. hollow lightweight block or tile	33	38	43
12 in. hollow lightweight block or tile	44	49	54
4 in. brick 4 in. hollow normal weight block baking	68	73	78
4 in. brick 8 in. hollow normal weight block backing	91	96	101
4 in. brick 12 in. hollow normal weight block backing	119	124	129
4 in. brick 4 in. hollow lightweight block or tile backing	59	64	69
4 in. brick 8 in. hollow lightweight block or tile backing	73	78	83
4 in. brick 12 in. hollow lightweight block or tile backing	84	89	94
4 in. brick, steel or wood studs. $\frac{5}{8}$ in. gypsum board	43		
Windows, glass, frame and sash	8		
4 in. stone	55		
Steel or wood studs, lath, $\frac{3}{4}$ in. plaster	18		
Steel or wood studs, $\frac{5}{8}$ in. gypsum board each side	6		
Steel or wood studs, 2 layers $\frac{5}{8}$ in. gypsum board each side	9		

@Seismicisolation

INDEX

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

a = depth of equivalent rectangular stress block.

A_{cp} = area enclosed by outside perimeter of concrete cross section.

A_g = gross area of section, in.^{2}

A_h = area of shear reinforcement parallel to flexural tension reinforcement, in.^{2}

A_j = Effective cross-sectional area within a joint, in.^{2} in a plane parallel to plane of reinforcement generating shear in the joint. The joint depth shall be the overall depth of the column. Where a beam frames into a support of larger width, the effective width of the joint shall not exceed the smaller of:
(a) beam width plus the joint depth
(b) twice the smaller perpendicular distance from the longitudinal axis of the beam to the column side.

A_l = total area of longitudinal reinforcement to resist torsion, in.^{2}

A_n = area of reinforcement in bracket or corbel resisting tensile force N_{uc}, in.^{2}

A_o = gross area enclosed by shear flow path, in.^{2}

A_{oh} = area enclosed by centerline of the outermost closed transverse torsional reinforcement, in.^{2}

A_{ps} = area of prestressed reinforcement in tension zone, in.^{2}

A_s = area of nonprestressed tension reinforcement, in.^{2}

A'_s = area of compression reinforcement, in.^{2}

A_{sh} = total cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement (including cross-ties) within spacing s and perpendicular to dimension h_c.

A_t = area of one leg of a closed stirrup resisting torsion within a distance s, in.^{2}

A_{tr} = total cross-sectional area of transverse reinforcement (stirrup or tie) within a spacing s and perpendicular to plane of bars being spliced or developed, in.^{2}

A_v = area of shear reinforcement within a distance s, or area of shear reinforcement perpendicular to flexural tension reinforcement within a distance s for deep flexural members, in.^{2}

A_{vf} = area of shear-friction reinforcement, in.^{2}

A_{vh} = area of shear reinforcement parallel to flexural tension reinforcement within a distance s_2, in.^{2}

b = width of compression face of member, in.

b_o = perimeter of critical section for slabs and footings, in.

b_t = width of that part of cross section containing the closed stirrups resisting torsion.

b_v = width of cross section at contact surface being investigated for horizontal shear.

b_w = web width, or diameter of circular section, in.

c = distance from extreme compression fiber to neutral axis, in.

c_1 = size of rectangular or equivalent rectangular column, capital, or bracket measured in the direction of the span for which moments are being determined, in.

c_2 = size of rectangular or equivalent rectangular column, capital, or bracket measured transverse to the direction of the span for which moments are being determined, in.

d = distance from extreme compression fiber to centroid of tension reinforcement, in.

d' = distance from extreme compression fiber to centroid of compression reinforcement, in.

d_b = nominal diameter of bar, wire, or prestressing strand, in.

d_c = thickness of concrete cover measured from extreme tension fiber to center of bar or wire located closest thereto, in.

d_p = distance from extreme compression fiber to centroid of prestressed reinforcement.

e = eccentricity of load parallel to axis of member measured from centroid of cross section.

E_c = modulus of elasticity of concrete, psi.

E_s = modulus of elasticity of bar reinforcement, psi.

E_{ps} = modulus of elasticity of prestressing reinforcement.

f'_c = specified compressive strength of concrete, psi.

f_{cr} = average strength to be used as basis for selecting concrete proportions, psi.

f'_{cr} = required average compressive strength of concrete used as the basis for selection of concrete proportions, psi.

$\sqrt{f'_c}$ = square root of specified compressive strength of concrete, psi.

f'_{ci} = compressive strength of concrete at time of initial prestress, psi.

$\sqrt{f'_{ci}}$ = square root of compressive strength of concrete at time of initial prestress, psi.

f_{ct} = average splitting tensile strength of lightweight aggregate concrete, psi.

Hidden page

@Seismicisolation

Hidden page

V_i = factored shear force at section due to externally applied loads occurring simultaneously with M_{max}.

V_n = nominal shear strength.

w_u = factored load per unit length of beam or per unit area of slab.

x = shorter overall dimension of rectangular part of cross section.

x_1 = shorter center-to-center dimension of closed rectangular stirrup.

y = longer overall dimension of rectangular part of cross section.

y_t = distance from centroidal axis of gross section, neglecting reinforcement, to extreme fiber in tension.

y_1 = longer center-to-center dimension of closed rectangular stirrup.

α = total angular change of prestressing tendon profile in radians from tendon jacking end to any point x.

α = ratio of flexural stiffness of beam section to flexural stiffness of a width of slab bounded laterally by centerlines of adjacent panels (if any) on each side of the beam.

$= \dfrac{E_{cb}I_b}{E_{cs}I_s}$

α_m = average value of α for all beams on edges of a panel.

β_a = ratio of dead load per unit area to live load per unit area (in each case without load factors).

β_d = ratio of maximum factored dead load moment to maximum factored total load moment, always positive.

β = a ratio of clear spans in long to short direction of two-way slabs.

γ_f = fraction of unbalanced moment transferred by flexure at slab-column connections.

γ_p = factor for type of prestressing tendon.

= 0.55 for f_{py}/f_{pu} not less than 0.80

= 0.40 for f_{py}/f_{pu} not less than 0.85

= 0.28 for f_{py}/f_{pu} not less than 0.90

γ_v = fraction of unbalanced moment transferred by eccentricity of shear at slab-column connections.

$= 1 - \gamma_f$

δ_m = moment magnification factor for frames braced against sidesway, to reflect effects of member curvature between ends of compression member.

δ_s = moment magnification factor for frames not braced against sidesway, to reflect lateral drift resulting from lateral and gravity loads.

μ = curvature friction coefficient.

$\xi_{(t,t)}$ = time-dependent factor for sustained load.

$\rho_{(rho)}$ = ratio of nonprestressed tension reinforcement.

$= A_s/bd$

ρ' = ratio of nonprestressed compression reinforcement

$= A'_s/bd$

ρ_b = reinforcement ratio producing balanced strain conditions.

ρ_p = ratio of prestressed reinforcement.

$= A_{ps}/bd_p$

ρ_v = A_{sv}/A_{cv}; where A_{sv} is the projection on A_{cv} of area of distributed shear reinforcement crossing the plane of A_{cv}.

θ = angle of compression diagonals in truss analogy for torsion.

ϕ = strength reduction factor.

ω = $\rho f_y/f'_c$.

ω' = $\rho' f_y/f'_c$.

ω_p = $\rho_p f_{ps}/f'_c$.

$\omega_{pw}, \omega_w, \omega'_w$

= reinforcement indices for flanged sections computed as for ω, ω_p, and ω' except that b shall be the web width, and reinforcement area shall be that required to develop compressive strength of web only.

To convert from	to	multiply by
Length		
inch (in.)	millimeter (mm)	25.4
inch (in.)	meter (m)	0.0254
foot (ft)	meter (m)	0.3048
yard (yd)	meter (m)	0.9144
Area		
square foot (sq. ft)	square meter (sq m)	0.09290
square inch (sq. in.)	square millimeter (sq mm)	645.2
square inch (sq. in.)	square meter (sq m)	0.0006452
square yard (sq yd)	square meter (sq m)	0.8361
acre (A)	hectare (ha) = 10,000 sq m	0.4047
Volume		
cubic inch (cu in.)	cubic meter (cu m)	0.00001639
cubic foot (cu ft)	cubic meter (cu m)	0.02832
cubic yard (cu yd)	cubic meter (cu m)	0.7646
gallon (gal) Can. liquid*	liter	4.546
gallon (gal) Can. liquid*	cubic meter (cu m)	0.004546
gallon (gal) U.S. liquid*	liter	3.785
gallon (gal) U.S. liquid*	cubic meter (cu m)	0.003785
Force		
kip	kilogram (kgf)	453.6
kip	newton (N)	4448.0
pound (lb)	kilogram (kgf)	0.4536
pound (lb)	newton (N)	4.448
Pressure or Stress		
kips/square inch (ksi)	megapascal (MPa)**	6.895
pound/square foot (psf)	kilopascal (kPa)**	0.04788
pound/square inch (psi)	kilopascal (kPa)**	6.895
pound/square inch (psi)	megapascal (MPa)**	0.006895
pounds/square foot (psf)	kilogram/square meter (kgf/sq m)	4.882
Mass		
pound (avdp)	kilogram (kg)	0.4536
ton (short, 2000 lb)	kilogram (kg)	907.2
ton (short, 2000 lb)	tonne (t)	0.9072
grain	kilogram (kg)	0.00006480
tonne (t)	kilogram (kg)	1000
Mass (weight per Length)		
kip/linear foot (klf)	kilogram/meter (kg/m)	1488
pound/linear foot (plf)	kilogram/meter kg/m	1.488
pound/linear foot (plf)	newton/meter (N/m)	14.593
Mass per volume (density)		
pound/cubic foot (pcf)	kilogram/cubic meter (kg/cu m)	16.02
pound/cubic yard (pcy)	kilogram/cubic meter (kg/cu m)	0.5933
gallon per yd^3	Kg/m^3	4.985
oz per yd^3	Kg/m^3	0.037
Bending Moment or Torque		
inch-pound (in.-lb)	newton-meter	0.1130
foot-pound (ft-lb)	newton-meter	1.356
foot-kip (ft-k)	newton-meter	1356
Temperature		
degree Fahrenheit (deg F)	degree Celsius (C)	$t_C = (t_F - 32)/1.8$
degree Fahrenheit (deg F)	degree Kelvin (K)	$t_K = (t_F + 459.7)/1.8$
Energy		
British thermal unit (Btu)	joule (j)	1056
kilowatt-hour (kwh)	joule (j)	3,600,000
Power		
horsepower (hp) (550 ft lb/sec)	watt (W)	745.7
Velocity		
mile/hour (mph)	kilometer/hour	1.609
mile/hour (mph)	meter/second (m/s)	0.4470
Other		
Section modulus (in.^{3})	mm^3	16,387
Moment of inertia (in.^{4})	mm^4	416,231
Coefficient of heat transfer (Btu/ft^2/h/°F)	W/m^2/°C	5.678
Modulus of elasticity (psi)	MPa	0.006895
Thermal conductivity (BTU-in./ft^2/h/°F)	Wm/m^2/°C	0.1442
Thermal expansion in./in./°F	mm/mm/°C	1.800
Area/length (in.^{2}/ft)	mm^2/m	2116.80

*One U.S. gallon equals 0.8321 Canadian gallon
**A pascal equals one newton/square meter